

Malton, Thomas, / Malton, Thomas, / Robson, James,

A Compleat Treatise On Perspective, In Theory And Practice On The True Principles Of Dr. Brook Taylor ; Made Clear, In Theory, By Various Moveable Schemes, And Diagrams; And Reduced To Practice, In The Most Familiar And Intelligent Manner ; Shewing, How To Delineate All Kinds Of Regular Objects, By Rule ; The Theory And Projection Of Shadows, By Sun-Shine, And By Candle-Light ; The Effects Of Reflected Light, On Objects;

London 1776

2 Math.a. 59

urn:nbn:de:bvb:12-bsb10942241-8



2^o Math. A-59

MSB

<36613682890017

<36613682890017

Bayer. Staatsbibliothek



COMPLETE TREATISE

PERSPECTIVE

THEORY AND PRACTICE

OF

THE ART OF DRAWING

AND ARCHITECTURE

IN PERSPECTIVE

AND OF THE THEORY OF PERSPECTIVE

AND OF THE THEORY OF ARCHITECTURE

AND OF THE THEORY OF PERSPECTIVE

AND OF THE THEORY OF ARCHITECTURE

AND OF THE THEORY OF PERSPECTIVE

AND OF THE THEORY OF ARCHITECTURE

AND OF THE THEORY OF PERSPECTIVE

AND OF THE THEORY OF ARCHITECTURE

AND OF THE THEORY OF PERSPECTIVE

AND OF THE THEORY OF ARCHITECTURE

AND OF THE THEORY OF PERSPECTIVE

AND OF THE THEORY OF ARCHITECTURE

AND OF THE THEORY OF PERSPECTIVE

AND OF THE THEORY OF ARCHITECTURE

AND OF THE THEORY OF PERSPECTIVE

AND OF THE THEORY OF ARCHITECTURE

AND OF THE THEORY OF PERSPECTIVE

AND OF THE THEORY OF ARCHITECTURE

Opt. 6009.

Matheſis. *Perspective* 579.

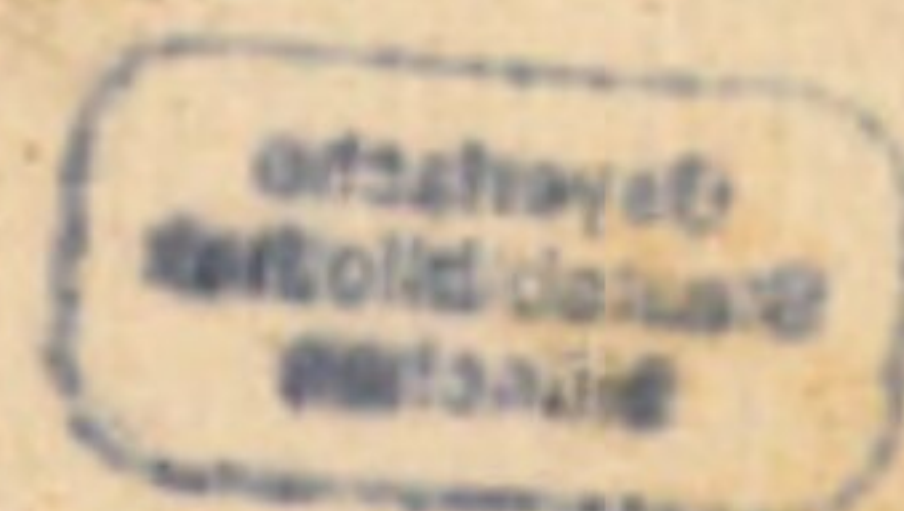
R

A
COMPLEAT TREATISE
ON
PERSPECTIVE,
IN
THEORY AND PRACTICE;
ON THE TRUE PRINCIPLES OF
DR. BROOK TAYLOR.
MADE CLEAR, IN THEORY, BY
VARIOUS MOVEABLE SCHEMES, AND DIAGRAMS;
AND
REDUCED TO PRACTICE,
IN THE
MOST FAMILIAR AND INTELLIGENT MANNER.
SHEWING,
HOW TO DELINEATE ALL KINDS OF REGULAR OBJECTS, BY RULE.
THE THEORY AND PROJECTION OF SHADOWS, BY SUN-SHINE, AND BY CANDLE-LIGHT.
THE EFFECTS OF REFLECTED LIGHT, ON OBJECTS;
THEIR REFLECTED IMAGES, ON THE SURFACE OF WATER,
AND ON POLISHED, PLANE SURFACES,
IN ALL POSITIONS.
KEEPING, AIREAL PERSPECTIVE, &c.
THE WHOLE EXPLICITLY TREATED;
AND ILLUSTRATED, IN A GREAT VARIETY OF FAMILIAR EXAMPLES;
IN FOUR BOOKS.
EMBELLISHED WITH
AN ELEGANT FRONTISPIECE, AND FORTY-SIX PLATES.
CONTAINING
DIAGRAMS, VIEWS, AND ORIGINAL DESIGNS, IN ARCHITECTURE, &c. NEATLY ENGRAVED,
ALL ORIGINALS;
INVENTED, DELINEATED, AND, GREAT PART, ENGRAVED BY THE AUTHOR,
THOMAS MALTON.

L O N D O N:

Printed for the Author; and sold by Messrs. ROBSON, in Bond-street; DODSLEY, Pall-Mall; BECKET, Adelphi,
Strand; TAYLOR, near Great Turn-Style, Holbourn; RICHARDSON and URQUHART, Royal Exchange;
and by the AUTHOR, No. 3, Poland-Street, Oxford Road, near the Pantheon.

MDCCLXXVI.



PERSEUTIVE
THEORY AND PRACTICE
ON THE PRINCIPLES OF
SCULPTURE, AND ARCHITECTURE
BY
D. R. B. O. K. A. Y. L. O. R.

VARIOUS MOVABLE SCHEMES, AND DIAGRAMS,
FOR THE PURPOSE OF HIS MOST GRACIOUS MAJESTY
REDUCED TO PRACTICE
IN THE
THIRD
MOST FAMILIAR AND INTELLIGENT MANNER.

HOW TO DETERMINE THE KINDS OF REGULAR OBJECTS BY RULE
THE THEORY AND PRACTICE OF THE ART OF SCULPTURE
THE THEORY AND PRACTICE OF THE ART OF ARCHITECTURE
THE THEORY AND PRACTICE OF THE ART OF PAINTING
THE THEORY AND PRACTICE OF THE ART OF MUSIC
THE THEORY AND PRACTICE OF THE ART OF POETRY
THE THEORY AND PRACTICE OF THE ART OF HISTORY
THE THEORY AND PRACTICE OF THE ART OF PHILOSOPHY
THE THEORY AND PRACTICE OF THE ART OF MEDICINE
THE THEORY AND PRACTICE OF THE ART OF AGRICULTURE
THE THEORY AND PRACTICE OF THE ART OF COMMERCE
THE THEORY AND PRACTICE OF THE ART OF POLITICS
THE THEORY AND PRACTICE OF THE ART OF WAR
THE THEORY AND PRACTICE OF THE ART OF NAVY
THE THEORY AND PRACTICE OF THE ART OF MILITARY ENGINEERING
THE THEORY AND PRACTICE OF THE ART OF CIVIL ENGINEERING
THE THEORY AND PRACTICE OF THE ART OF MECHANICS
THE THEORY AND PRACTICE OF THE ART OF ASTRONOMY
THE THEORY AND PRACTICE OF THE ART OF GEOGRAPHY
THE THEORY AND PRACTICE OF THE ART OF METEOROLOGY
THE THEORY AND PRACTICE OF THE ART OF AERONAUTICS
THE THEORY AND PRACTICE OF THE ART OF SUBMARINE NAVIGATION
THE THEORY AND PRACTICE OF THE ART OF AERIAL NAVIGATION
THE THEORY AND PRACTICE OF THE ART OF SPACE NAVIGATION
THE THEORY AND PRACTICE OF THE ART OF INTERPLANETARY NAVIGATION
THE THEORY AND PRACTICE OF THE ART OF GALACTIC NAVIGATION
THE THEORY AND PRACTICE OF THE ART OF COSMIC NAVIGATION
THE THEORY AND PRACTICE OF THE ART OF UNIVERSE NAVIGATION

AN ELEGANT FRONTISPIECE, AND FORTY-SIX PLATES
DIAGRAMS, MAPS, AND ORIGINAL DESIGNS, IN AUSTRIAN, TURKISH, AND ENGLISH
BY
D. R. B. O. K. A. Y. L. O. R.

T O T H E
P R E S I D E N T A N D M E M B E R S,
O F T H E
R O Y A L A C A D E M Y,
For PAINTING, SCULPTURE, and ARCHITECTURE;
INSTITUTED AT LONDON,

By, and under the Auspices of, his most gracious M A J E S T Y

G E O R G E T H E T H I R D.

Gentlemen,

IF the unremitted labour and assiduity, with which I have prosecuted the study of the Science and Art of Perspective, have thrown any new Light on that most necessary branch of the Polite Arts, so, as to render its Principles clearer and better understood, in Theory, more easily applicable, in Practice, more generally useful and subservient to the Arts, of which, it must be allowed to be the foundation, 'tis what I have chiefly aimed at; and presume, this Work may not be wholly undeserving your Patronage and Encouragement, although it may not merit your entire Approbation. Such as it is, Gentlemen, I submit to your Candour, and claim your Protection.

The propriety of dedicating such a Work to Gentlemen, who are, undoubtedly, the most competent Judges of it, will plead an excuse for my presumption; if, on an accurate examination of its Contents, it be found, that I have rendered an apparently intricate Science more familiar, and better adapted to the capacities of young Students, in so essential a part of their Studies; the neglect of which, amongst the rising Artists, is much to be lamented. Perspective seems to be looked on as an Appendage, only, which may be dispensed with, instead of the first requisite; in which, the Student, who would be a Candidate for Fame, should be well grounded.

It

D E D I C A T I O N.

It is with reluctance I add, but it is too obvious, that, in many fine Pieces, in respect of Design, Composition, Drawing; or Colouring, there seems to be a want of a just Idea of PERSPECTIVE.

Pardon me, Gentlemen, I do not mean to depreciate the Merits of such experienced Artists, in their several Performances; for, in my opinion, there only wants a thorough knowledge of Perspective, to render the present Age as famous as any former Æra; which, now, is established on the most permanent and infallible Principles; whereby, the trouble of projecting Objects, perspectively, is, in the process, greatly abridged and facilitated.

I am,

Gentlemen,

with great respect,

Your most obedient,

and obliged humble Servant,

THOMAS MALTON.

INDEX TO THE WORK.

BOOK THE FIRST.

OPTICS or VISION.

SECTION I. Of LIGHT and COLOUR.

LIGHT not the efficient cause of Colour	2
Colour cannot be perceived by the touch, as asserted by Boyle	3
Prism of Glass, Experiments thereby, no proof that Colour is not inherent	5
Vision, the ultimate cause thereof cannot be accounted for	7
Light not diffused around, in Rays, or Threads	7

SECTION II. Of the Structure of the Eye, &c.

The Eye dissected; its Structure, and chief furniture explained	8
Definitions of optical Terms used in Perspective	9
Images of Objects, formed in the Eye, is consonant to reason and Optics	10
Distance not perceived; judgement thereof, acquired by experience. The Sense of seeing very deceptive	10

SECTION III. Theory of direct VISION.

THEOREM I. Objects appear, to each other, in proportion to their Optic Angles	11
ART. 2. Mr. Hamilton's Objection to it, not warrantable	12
3. Refraction of the Rays, through the Humours of the Eye, cannot be the same, when the Object is seen through a Pin hole, as by the naked Eye, though the Object appears the same	13
4. The Theorem illustrated by Example	14
5. Objects of different Magnitudes, at equal Distances, do not appear in proportion to their Magnitudes	14
6. Equal Objects do not appear, exactly, in proportion to their several Distances from the Eye	15
THEO. II. Parallel Right Lines, however situated, appear to converge, and tend to meet each other	18
ART. 2. They appear to meet a Line, drawn from the Eye, parallel to them	19
3. Parallel Planes, also, appear to approach each other	20
4 and 5. The Perspective Representation, and the Appearance of an Object are two things	20
PROBLEM. To determine that Point in an Object, obliquely situated, to which, the Axe of the Eye should be directed, to see the whole Object, most distinctly, at one View	21
ART. 3 and 4. The Indefinite Representation of a Right Line, what. }	21
5. 6 and 7. The Bearings, or apparent Distances of Objects, what. }	21
8. 9 and 10. The difference between the perspective Representation, and the true Appearance of an Object, accounted for	22

SECTION IV. OBJECTIONS to the received opinion of the cause of VISION; of REFLECTION, TRANSPARENCY, &c.

Human knowledge, is superficial, and limited	24
Objections to the materiality of Light	26
ART. Vision not instantaneous, of Objects seen by reflected Light	27
2 and 3. Velocity of Light incredible, being material, as calculated from the Eclipses of Jupiter's Satellites	29
4. Objects immersed in Shade, how perceived, Quere? Light, being material, cannot be reflected from the same point in every direction; much less, from every point in a Surface	29
5. Light, being material, cannot pass through Glass, Crystal, &c. Transparency, in Bodies, cannot be accounted for	30 and 31
Pores, in Solid Bodies, cannot be the cause of Transparency	31
6. Direct Vision, through two Prisms, a Paradox	31
7. A stronger Objection, than all the foregoing, to Light being material	33

AN INDEX TO THE WORK,

SECTION V. Of REFRACTION, in dense Mediums, as Water, Glass, &c.

ART. 1.	Refraction through a convex Lens, the cause of its magnifying Property	35
2.	How Lenses, having the inclination of their Surfaces continually varying, can magnify Objects uniformly. Quere?	36
3.	Why Right Lines appear curved, through a Prism, when parallel to the refracting Angle. Quere?	37
5.	Prisms, Observation thereon, respecting the effect of Colours.	37
6.	Objects are not seen direct, through different Mediums, except in a perpendicular direction to the common Surface or Surfaces	38
7.	The real Object is not seen by Refraction, evinced by Experiment	38
8.	Refraction in Water, the proportion thereof evinced by Experiment	39
9.	Water so porous as to contain forty times more space than Matter, objected to	39
10.	The apparent magnitude of a Right Line does not increase and decrease in the Ratio asserted in Smith's Optics, and quoted by Mr. Kirby	40
	Also, that the apparent Magnitudes of equal parts of a Right Line, seen obliquely, are not in a duplicate Ratio of their Distances, reciprocally	41

BOOK THE SECOND.

Of the THEORY of PERSPECTIVE.

SECTION I. A general INTRODUCTION to the THEORY.

ART.	Of Planes, and Solids composed of, or bounded by Planes	43
1, 2 & 3.	Of Planes, and their Positions, in general	44
4.	The Inclination of two Planes; what	44 and 45
5 and 6.	Position of Planes, what	46
7.	The Positions of Right Lines, in general	47
8.	Of the Seats of Right Lines, and Planes, on Planes	47
9, 10 & 11.	Buildings, in general, are bounded by Planes and Right Lines	47 and 48

SECTION II. Is also Introductory.

Of PROJECTION in general	48
ICHOGRAPHIC, ORTHOGRAPHIC, and SCENOGRAPHIC	48 and 49
STEREOGRAPHY, or PERSPECTIVE, defined	50
Various representations of an Object, may affect the Eye alike	51
PROJECTED PERSPECTIVE, and transprojected, defined	52
Original Objects, Figures, Planes, Lines, and Points defined	53
Regular Objects, reducible to geometrical Solids, bounded by Planes, or other Surfaces, necessary for their delineation in Perspective	53 and 54

SECTION III. Of the ELEMENTS of PERSPECTIVE.

DEFINITIONS of the Elementary Planes and Terms made use of	55 to 60
AXIOMS, in the Theory of Perspective	60

SECTION IV. The THEORY of rectilinear PERSPECTIVE.

THEO. I.	The Perspective Projection of every Right Line is a Right Line	61
THEO. II.	Planes, parallel to the Picture, have neither Intersection nor Vanishing Line	62
COROLLARY.	Lines parallel to the Picture have no Vanishing Point	
THEO. III.	Vanishing Lines, &c. are parallel to the Intersection of the Original Plane with the Picture	62
	Two Corollaries	63
THEO. IV.	A Right Line joining the Center of the Picture and the center of a Vanishing Line is perpendicular to the Vanishing Line	64
COR. 2.	Distance of a Vanishing Line, how determined	65
THEO. V.	Parallel Planes have the same Vanishing Line	66
COR. 1.	Parallel Lines have the same Vanishing Point	67
THEO. VI.	Original Planes, which are perpendicular to the Picture, have their Vanishing Lines pass through its Center	68
COR.	Lines perpendicular to the Picture, vanish in its Center	69
THEO. VII.	Original Planes, whose common Intersection is parallel to the Picture, have parallel Intersections, and Vanishing Lines	69
COR. 1.	If the common Intersection of two Planes, be parallel to the Horizon, their Intersections and Vanishing Lines, are also parallel to the Horizon	70
COR. 2.	Planes which have parallel Vanishing Lines have the same Vertical Line, and Parallel of the Eye	

A N D T A B L E O F C O N T E N T S.

THEO. VIII.	Planes, which produce the Vanishing Lines of two Original Planes, make the same Angle, at the Eye, as the Originals. And, their common Intersections are parallel	71
COR. 1.	Lines, producing the Vanishing Points of two Original Lines, make the same Angle, at the Eye, as the Originals make with each other	72
COR. 2.	The Vanishing Point of the common Intersection of two Planes is the intersection of their Vanishing Lines	73
THEO. IX.	The Radial of a Line makes the same Angle with the Parallel of the Eye, and Vanishing Line, as the Original makes with the Intersecting and Directing Line	74
THEO. X.	The Representation of a Line parallel to the Picture, is parallel to the Original; and has that proportion to the Original, as, &c.	75
COR. 1.	Any number of Lines, being parallel to the Picture, have their Representations parallel	76
COR. 2.	An Original Line being any how divided, its Representation is divided in the same Ratio	
COR. 3.	The Eye being any where, in the Directing Plane, the Representation of a Line, and its several parts, have the same proportion to the Original Line, and its Parts.	
COR. 4.	The Angle made by the Representations of any two Lines, parallel to the Picture, is equal to the Angle made by the Original Lines	77
COR. 5.	Original Figures, in Planes parallel to the Picture, have their Representations similar to the Originals	
THEO. XI.	The Intersecting and Vanishing Points of Original Lines are all in the Intersection and Vanishing Line of the Plane those Lines are in	78
COR. 1.	A Right Line drawn through any two Vanishing Points is the Vanishing Line, and, being drawn through two Intersecting Points, it is the Intersecting Line, of the Plane the Original Lines are in.	
COR. 2.	Lines which are parallel, to any Original Plane, have their Vanishing Points in the Vanishing Line of that Plane	
COR. 3.	The Intersecting Point of the common Intersection of two Planes is that of their Intersections	79
COR. 4.	The Directing Point of the common Intersection of two Planes is that of their Directing Lines.	80
COR. 5.	The Representation of the Intersection of two Lines is the Intersection of their Representations	
THEO. XII.	The whole Indefinite Representation of a Right Line, passes through its Intersecting and Vanishing Points	80
COR. 1.	The whole perspective Projection of a Right Line, lies between its Intersecting and Vanishing Points	81
COR. 2.	The Representation of a finite Line is that part of the Indefinite Representation, which is intercepted between the Visual Rays	82
COR. 3.	The projective Representation of a Line lies on the hither Side of its Intersecting Point	
COR. 4.	All that lies on the other side of the Directing Lines is transprojected to the Picture.	
5 & 6.	The Indefinite Representation is not varied, by removing the Eye in the direction of the Radial, &c.	83
THEO. XIII.	The Distance between the Intersecting Point of a Line and the Representation of any Point in it, how determined	84
COR. 1. and 2.	The Distance of any Point from the Picture being known, and the Indefinite Representation drawn, the Representation of the Point, how determinable	
THEO. XIV.	The Perspective Representation of every Right Line is parallel to its Director	87
COR. 1.	Lines cutting the Directing Plane in the same Point have parallel Representations, on the Picture	88
COR. 2. and 3.	Also, if they cut the same Directing Line, any where.	
COR. 4.	Lines which cut the parallel of the Eye, of any Plane, have their Representations parallel to the Vanishing Line of that Plane.	

S E C T I O N V. The Theory of Curvilinear Perspective.

Definition of a Cone, Right and Scalene	—	90
THEO. I.	The Representation of a Circle, parallel to the Picture, is a Circle	91
COR.	Representations of Circles in the same Plane, &c. have the same proportion as the Originals	92
THEO. II.	The Representation of a Circle, not parallel to the Picture, is an Ellipsis; except in a certain Point of View, only	92
N. B.	How to determine the Point (according to the Distance) from which the Representation of a Circle, seen obliquely, will be a Circle	94
COR. 1.	When the Directing Line is a Tangent to the Original Circle, its Representation is a Parabola	
COR. 2.	If the Directing Line cuts the Circle, the Curve which represents it is an Hyperbola	95
THEO. III.	The Perspective Representation of a Globe or Sphere is an Ellipsis; except when the Center of the Sphere, coincides with the Center of the Picture	95

S E C T I O N VI. Contains a refutation of several Errors, and absurd Opinions of Perspective.

ART. I.	That the Perspective Representations of the Diameters of Columns, which are parallel to the Picture, are larger, the farther they are from the Center, and consequently from the Eye	98
2.	No defect in Perspective, in this Case.	100
3.	A Picture, in Perspective, can have but one Point of View	
4.	Several Objects, in the same Picture, cannot be represented, exactly, as they appear to the Eye	
5.	The chief reason of false notions of Perspective is, the not rightly distinguishing between the Representation of an Object, in Perspective, and its Appearance	101
6.	By Perspective, Objects are truly represented as they appear, the Eye being in the true Point of View	102

A N I N D E X T O T H E W O R K,

ART. 7.	<i>The true Representation and Appearance can only be represented on the Surface of a Sphere</i>	102
8.	<i>The Delineation of an Object on a spherical Surface is not Perspective, nor can it be assitant thereto</i>	103
9.	<i>An infallible method to evince the truth of all that is advanced in this Section</i>	103
10.	<i>What the business of Perspective is.</i>	
11.	<i>The cause of Distortion, chiefly owing to too little Distance.</i>	
12. & 13.	<i>The Representation of a direct Descent practical, on the same general Principles</i>	104
14.	<i>The Eye cannot judge, merely by the apparent width of a Plane, whether it be ascending or descending, or level</i>	105
15.	<i>Objects situated on a declining Plane assist the Ideas, and determine whether it ascends or descends.</i>	
16.	<i>Objects, elevated above the Horizon, perpendicularly, are represented equal with Objects, of the same Magnitude, on a level with the Eye.</i>	
17. & 18.	<i>Parallel Right Lines, of any length (any how situated) being parallel to the Picture, are represented by parallel Lines</i>	106

B O O K T H E T H I R D.

Of the PRACTICE of PERSPECTIVE.

SECTION I. Is an INTRODUCTORY PREFACE. 107

In which, the Terms, given by Brook Taylor, are vindicated and defended, as the best and most expressive possible. Also, his Principles, being general and universal, are the most applicable and infallible, in Practice. It also contains a Plan of the method observed in this Book. 107 to 111

SECTION II.

Is an elementary Introduction to the Practice of Perspective; containing Definitions of sundry Terms, not necessary in Theory; together with a brief Theory, for Practice, deduced from the general Definitions. 112 to 116

SECTION III.

Contains preliminary Observations on the proportion and position of the Picture, height and distance of the Eye, &c. 116

ART. 1. 2. and 3.	<i>Too great height for the Eye is as productive of Distortion as too little Distance</i>	117
	<i>Distance not less than the width of the Picture</i>	118
ART. 4.	<i>The Position and Distance of the Picture determined</i>	119
	<i>How to prepare the Picture for Practice; shewing how the Lines and Points, used in Practice, are generated, and determined</i>	

PROB. 1.	<i>To determine the Intersections and Vanishing Lines of Planes perpendicular to the Picture</i>	122
PROB. 2.	<i>To find the Vanishing Point of a Line, whose Inclination to the Picture is known, and Vanishing Line given</i>	123
PROB. 3.	<i>To determine the Intersection and Vanishing Line of a vertical Plane, inclined to the Picture</i>	
PROB. 4.	<i>The Vanishing Line of any Plane being given, and the Vanishing Point of some Line in it; to determine the Vanishing Point of other Lines, making a known Angle</i>	125
PROB. 5.	<i>The Inclination of a Plane to the Horizon, &c. being given; to determine its Vanishing Line.</i>	

SECTION IV. The ELEMENTS of practical Perspective. 126

PROB. 6.	<i>To find the Representation of a Point, whose seat on the Picture is given, and its Distance, from the Picture, known</i>	127
PROB. 7.	<i>The Seats of two Points in any Line being given and their Distances from their Seats; to determine its Inclination to the Picture, its Intersecting and Vanishing Points, &c.</i>	128
PROB. 8.	<i>The Representation of a Line, and its Vanishing Point, being given, how to divide the Line, perspectively, in any known Proportion</i>	130
PROB. 9.	<i>The Representations of two Lines being drawn; if one Line be any how divided, how to divide the other in the same Ratio</i>	131
PROB. 10.	<i>The Representations of two Lines being given, &c. to cut off, from any Point in one Line, a portion perspectively equal, or in any Ratio to the other</i>	131
PROB. 11.	<i>Three Points in the Circumference of a Circle being given or found; how to describe the Representation of the Circle</i>	134
PROB. 12.	<i>The Vanishing Line of any Plane being given; and the place of the Eye, and a Line being drawn, from the Eye, inclining to the Vanishing Line; to find the Center of the Vanishing Line; and, to determine the Distance of that Point, in which the inclined Line would cut the Vanishing Line, from the Center, and from the Eye</i>	135
PROB. 13.	<i>To draw Lines to a Vanishing Point, which is beyond the limits of the Picture, its Distance from the Center being known, or otherwise</i>	137

AND TABLE OF CONTENTS.

SECTION V. Of the Practice of Perspective ; in Plane Figures. 140

PROB. 14.	To find the Representation of a Point in the Picture, its place being given, on the Ground Plane; by various Methods	141
PROB. 15.	To find the Representation of a Line perpendicular to the Picture, its place being given in the Original Plane	142
PROB. 16.	To find the Representation of a Line parallel to the Picture	143
PROB. 17.	To find the Representation of a Line, inclined to the Picture, situate in a Plane perpendicular to the Picture	144
PROB. 18.	To find the Representation of a Triangle, situate in any Plane whose Intersection and Vanishing Line are given, and place of the Eye	146
PROB. 19.	To find the Representation of a Square, or other Rectangle, having one Side parallel to the Picture; its place being determined	147
COR.	<i>To make a Pavement of Squares so situated</i>	
PROB. 20.	When the Sides are equally inclined to the Picture	148
COR.	<i>To describe a Pavement of Squares so situated</i>	
PROB. 21.	When it is any how situated, oblique to the Picture, by various Methods	149
PROB. 22.	To find the Representation of a regular Pentagon, the Original Figure being given, in place and Position; in any Plane whose Vanishing Line, &c. are given	150
	To determine the Vanishing Points, from its Position only	151
PROB. 23.	How to find the Representation of a Pentagon, having one Side, only, given, in its place and position, in the Original Plane	151
PROB. 24.	To find the Representation of a regular Hexagon any how situated	152
COR.	<i>To make a Pavement of regular Hexagons parallel to the Picture</i>	
CASE 2.	Having only one Side given, any how inclined to the Picture, to find the Representation	153
	<i>To make a Pavement having two Sides perpendicular to the Picture</i>	
PROB. 25.	To find the Representation of a regular Octagon, and of a Circle inscribed, having one Side given, parallel to the Picture	153
PROB. 26.	The Intersection of a vertical Plane being given and its Inclination to the Picture; to find the Representation of any Plane Figure thereon	154
PROB. 27.	To find the Representation of an irregular right lined Figure, whose place and position to the Picture are known, the Intersection of the Plane it is in given, and its inclination to the Picture; whose Center and Distance are given	155
	According to the old Authors, how determined	157
PROB. 28.	To find the Representation of a Line or Plane Figure, by means of the Directing Line, and Directing Points (THEOREM 14)	158

SECTION VI. The application of Perspective to PLANE SOLIDS. 159

PROB. 29.	To delineate a Cube (or other right angled Parallelopiped) one Side being given, having its Faces parallel and perpendicular to the Picture	159
EXAMPLE 1.	<i>To draw a high Wall, whose dimensions are known; being perpendicular to the Picture</i>	160
EXAM. 2.	<i>How to represent several Parallelopipeds, as for the Basement of a Building, in a right Line perpendicular to the Picture</i>	161
EXAM. 3.	<i>To represent a rough Floor of Joists, &c. above the Horizon, parallel amongst themselves and perpendicular to the Picture</i>	161
PROB. 30.	To describe a Cube, &c. its Faces being equally inclined to the Picture	162
EXAM. 4.	<i>How to represent several Parallelopipeds in a Right Line, inclined to the Picture in any Angle</i>	163
EXAM. 5.	<i>To represent a hexagonal Prism, perpendicular to the Horizon</i>	164
EXAM. 6.	<i>To represent a pentagonal Prism, laid along on the Ground, or other horizontal Plane, its Seat being given thereon</i>	164
EXAM. 7.	<i>To represent a Pyramid, on any Base, standing upright</i>	165
EXAM. 8.	<i>How to represent streight steps, parallel to the Picture</i>	166
EXAM. 9.	<i>Ditto, with Kirbs of Stone, &c. at the Ends, upright and inclined</i>	
EXAM. 10.	<i>Ditto, when the Steps are inclined to the Picture in any known Angle</i>	167

SECTION VII. The application to streight MOULDINGS. 168

EXAM. 11.	<i>To delineate square Steps, parallel to the Picture, having four fronts, with a Parallelopiped on the upper Step</i>	169
EXAM. 12.	<i>Is a necessary Expedient, in delineating in Perspective</i>	170
EXAM. 13.	<i>To represent Square Steps, obliquely situated with a Pedestal on the upper Step, with Mouldings</i>	171
EXAM. 14.	<i>To represent Mouldings, around the Basement of a Building, with internal and external Angles</i>	172
EXAM. 15.	<i>To delineate Mouldings (being parallel and perpendicular to the Picture) by a general Method;</i>	173
EXAM. 16.	<i>To represent a Doric Entablature, with an internal and external Angles, by the foregoing Method</i>	175
EXAM. 17.	<i>Without the Profile, or drawing a perspective Plan</i>	178
EXAM. 18.	<i>To represent a Cornice inclined to the Picture, on both Sides</i>	
EXAM. 19.	<i>To represent an Entablature, obliquely situated; with Modillions, internal and external Angles</i>	180
EXAM. 20.	<i>To represent a Door-head, with a Pediment, supported by Trusses</i>	182
EXAM. 21.	<i>To delineate a Black Cornice, around a hexagonal Bow Window</i>	184

AN INDEX TO THE WORK,

SECTION VIII. Of curvilinear Objects. 186

PROB. 1.	To describe the representation of a Circle, according to Brook Taylor	187
PROB. 2.	To describe the representation of a Circle, having the representation of any Diameter	188
PROB. 3.	To describe the representation of a Circle, in any Plane, whose Van. Line, is given	189
EXAM. 21.	To represent plain circular Arches, inclined to the Picture	190
EXAM. 22.	To determine the Diameters of Columns, their situation, and station of the Spectator being determined	191
EXAM. 23.	To represent an upright Cylinder of a given Dimension	192
EXAM. 24.	Several Cylinders, in a right Line inclined to the Picture	192
EXAM. 25.	To describe a Tuscan Base, seen oblique; its Plinth parallel to the Picture	193
EXAM. 26.	To draw a Doric Capital inclined to the Picture, at discretion	194
EXAM. 27.	To delineate a large vertical Wheel, any how situated	194
EXAM. 28.	To represent circular Steps, perspective	196
EXAM. 29.	To represent a circular Pedestal, with Mouldings	198
EXAM. 30.	To represent a modern Ionic Capital, having one Face parallel to the Picture	200
EXAM. 31.	Is an Ionic Capital, according to the antique, inclined to the Picture	200
EXAM. 32.	Is an accurate representation of the Corinthian Capital, obliquely situated.	

SECTION IX. Applies the former Lessons to BUILDINGS. 202

The Station, or Point of View, being determined, from which a Building, of any kind, is intended to be delineated; the position of the Picture is also determined. How to determine the Position			202
One great cause of Distortion, is owing to the absurd position of the Picture			203
EXAM. 33.	The true Position is that, which is productive of the least Distortion		204
All affect the Eye alike, in the true Point of View; being truly delineated			
The representation on a direct Picture is nearest the true appearance			205
A display of the whole Theory; shewing the absolute dependance of the Practice of Perspective, thereon			205
EXAM. 34.	Is a Tuscan Arcade, having one Face parallel to the Picture		209
EXAM. 35.	Is an elegant Doric Arcade, and Colonnade, inclined to the Picture		210
EXAM. 36.	Is a representation of a complete Building, with a Portico of the Ionic Order, a Dome, and Cupola		211
EXAM. 37.	Is a Representation of St. Paul's, Covent Garden, and adjacent Buildings		213
EXAM. 38.	Is a Representation of the Royal Hospital at Chelsea		214
EXAM. 39.	Is a View of the Queen's Palace, in St. James' Park		216

SECTION X. Of INSIDE VIEWS, in general. 217

EXAM. 40.	How to represent Doors and Window-Shutters, &c. open, in any known or determined Angle	218
EXAM. 41.	Is a Representation of the Inside of a Room, with a Bow Window, &c.	219
EXAM. 42.	— of the Piazza, Covent Garden, internally, from the entrance into the Playhouse	222
EXAM. 43.	Is the representation of a Staircase; shewing the descending Stairs, direct	223

Of Horizontal Pictures. 225

EXAM. 44.	How to represent, on a horizontal Picture, the representation of a Gallery, &c. with a Dome, and Cupola, as seen from below	226
-----------	---	-----

SECTION XI. The application of Perspective to particular Subjects. 229

EXAM. 45.	To delineate a large library Bookcase, and Table	230
EXAM. 46.	Is the representation of a large Chamber Organ	231
EXAM. 47.	How to represent Chairs, perspective	232
EXAM. 48.	How to represent a Coach in any given Position	234
EXAM. 49.	How to represent Machines, of any kind (for driving Piles)	235
EXAM. 50.	Is the representation of a Crane, with a horizontal Wheel	237

SECTION XII. Of Inclined Pictures, and Planes. 238

PROB. 1.	The Intersecting Points of two Lines in a Plane being given, and the inclination of the Plane to the Picture; to find its Vanishing Line, Center, and Distance	238
PROB. 2.	The Vanishing Line of a Plane, inclined to the Picture, being given; to determine its Inclination thereto; and, to find the Van. Point of Lines perpendicular to that Plane	239
PROB. 3.	The Vanishing Point of Lines, perpendicular to some Plane, &c. being given; to find the Vanishing Line of that Plane	239
PROB. 4.	The Vanishing Line of a Plane being given, and the Vanishing Point of the Intersection of that Plane with some other, perpendicular to it; to find the Vanishing Line of the other	239
PROB. 5.	The Vanishing Line of a Plane being given, and the Vanishing Point of the common Intersection of that Plane with some other, whose Inclination to each other is known; to determine the Vanishing Line of the other Plane	240
PROB. 6.	The Intersection of any Plane which is perpendicular to the Picture, being given, and the intersecting Point of the common Intersection of that Plane with another, whose inclination to it is known; to determine its Intersection and Inclination to the Picture	240
PROB. 7.	The inclination of a Line to the Picture being given, and also of any Plane that Line is in; to determine the Inclination of the Line, to the Intersection of the Plane it is in	241
EXAM. 1.	To describe the representation of a right angled Parallelopiped, whose Sides are known, the Faces being variously inclined to the Picture, one is determined; also, the inclination of one Side, in that Face, to the Picture; the Seat, on the Picture, and Distance of the nearest Angle	242
EXAM. 2.	To represent an Octahedron; whose situation and position to the Picture, to the Horizon, and to the Eye, are determined	243
EXAM. 3.	Is the application of Perspective to regular Fortification	245
EXAM. 4.	How to represent Objects, on a Picture inclined to the Horizon, at discretion	246

AND TABLE OF CONTENTS.

BOOK THE FOURTH.

Of Shadows, in general ; of Light and Shade, Reflection,
Keeping, &c.

SECTION I. An Introductory Preface, concerning Light and Shade. 247

Those parts of Objects, which are most opposed to the Light, are brightest ; whether plane, convex, or concave 248
Remarks on the effect of Light on Mouldings, &c. 249

SECTION II. Theory of Shadows, by the Sun. 250

Rays of Light, from the Sun to the Earth, are parallel amongst themselves. 251
Altitude of the Luminary, what 251
Length of the Shadow determined by the Altitude of the Luminary 252
Situation of the Luminary respecting the Picture ; three Cases 252
Vanishing Point of the Rays of Light, how determined 252
Three general Rules to be observed, in projecting the Shadows of Right Lines on Planes 252

SECTION III. Of right lined Shadows. 253

- PROB. 1. The Sun's Elevation, and position to the Picture, &c. being given ; to find its place thereon, or the Vanishing Point of its Rays 253
PROB. 2. The Vanishing Point of the Sun's Rays, being given, &c. to find the representation of the Shadows of Right Lines, perpendicular to the Plane of Projection (whose Vanishing Line, is given) and their Vanishing Point 253
PROB. 3. To project the Shadows of Right Lines, parallel to the Plane of Projection 254
PROB. 4. To determine the Shadows of Lines, inclined to the Plane of Projection 256
EXAM. 1. To project the Shadow of a Plane Figure, on a Plane 257
EXAM. 2. To project the Shadows of right angled Parallelopipeds on the Ground, or other horizontal Plane 259
EXAM. 3. To project the Shadow of a plane Building, on the Ground 260
EXAM. 4. To project the Shadow of an Object, part on the Ground, and part on a vertical Plane, whose Intersection with the Ground Plane is given 261
EXAM. 5. To project the Shadow of an Object, part on an inclined Plane 262
EXAM. 6. Is the projection of the Shadow of a Line, any how inclined, on various Planes 263
EXAM. 7. To project the Shadow of a Building, and its several Parts 263

SECTION IV. Of the Shadows of curved Objects, on plane and curved Surfaces. 264

- EXAM. 8. To project the Shadows of Cylinders, lying on the Ground ; or standing upright, the Shadow of one crossing the other 265
EXAM. 9. To project the Shadows of Right Lines, on a convex cylindrical, or other Surface 266
EXAM. 10. Is the Shadow of a Tuscan Base, on the Ground Plane 267
EXAM. 11. Is the Shadow of a Doric Capital on a vertical Plane ; inclined to the Picture, at discretion 267
EXAM. 12. Is the projection of the edge of a concave Cylinder, on the interior Surface ; and of Right Lines, any how situated thereto 268
EXAM. 13. The same applied to Arches, in different situations of the Luminary, known or imagined 269
EXAM. 14. Of Shadows on concave spherical and cylindrical Surfaces ; applied to Niches 270

SECTION V. Of Shadows, projected by a Torch or Candle. 272

- PROB. 1. The representation of a luminous Point and its Seat on the Floor, with the Intersections of other Planes, with the Floor, being given ; how to determine its seat on the other Planes, and the Shadows of Right Lines, perpendicular to the Planes 273
PROB. 2. To project the Shadows of Right Lines, parallel to the Plane of projection 275
PROB. 3. To project the Shadows of Right Lines, any how inclined to the Plane of projection and to the Picture, by familiar Examples 276
Examples, by candle Light. Of the Shadows of curve lined Objects, on Planes, and curved Surfaces 278

SECTION VI. Of reflected Light ; and of the reflected Images of Objects, on Water, and other Mirrours ; Keeping, &c. 279

Of Reflection, abstractedly considered.
Objections to the Newtonian System, respecting Vision of Objects, immersed in Shade, by reflected Light.
Objects, in Shade, are as distinct and perfect, as before, when the Sun does not shine out ; but differ greatly in Colour to other Objects, on which the Sun shines 280
Reflected Light is not always equal on the same Surface ; but in degree, according as it is situated to other Objects. 281
Of the reflected Images of Objects on the Surface of Water 282
Illustrated and exemplified, in familiar Examples 283
Of reflected Images, on vertical and inclined Mirrours
Of Keeping, Aircal Perspective or the effect of Distance, &c.

E R R O R A T A.

IN Works of this kind, as false References may mislead, and bewilder young Students, especially in the elementary part, I have been very diligent to avoid errors of that nature. Nevertheless, in complex Objects, where there are a multiplicity of References, it is almost impossible to be free from Error; and, in spite of all my care and attention, some have escaped, which, I have been very assiduous to find out, and to correct such as are dangerous.

If the Reader will take the trouble to correct the following, I am in hopes that but few more will be found in the Work, literary errors excepted; from which it is impossible to be free, in so large a Work.

The Errors, to the Elements, are owing to that Work not being printed off, at the time; and in general, to both Works being in hand at the same time; which was too great a task, for a first Essay. I doubt not, the candid Reader will readily excuse the trouble given him, of correcting the Errors, on that account, if the Work be, in other respects, unexceptionable.

In order to find the Errors more readily, instead of numbering the Lines, from the Top or Bottom, only, I have remarked what Paragraph, Theorem, Example, &c. they are in, calling each Division with a space between, having more than one Line, a Paragraph; not every indented Line, except where there are but few other.

When they are numbered from the Bottom, a B. only, denotes it; otherwise, they are numbered from the Top, when there is no Number, or other remark, in the Paragraph Column

Page.	Par. &c.	Line.	Page.	Par. &c.	Line.
1.	3.	9. read, nor do I find.	172.	5.	for, left hand, read, right.
7.	Note.	6. read, and its altitude	3.	3.	for I and H, read J and I.
8.	4.	3. for be, read is.	Ex. 6 & 7.	make the e (viz. ae) ac , in Fig. 84.	
12.	3.	1. for and B, read and B	175.	B.	14. for AC, read AC.
14.	Dem. 2.	2. for 6. 6, read 3. 6. El.	B.	12.	for EC, read EC.
16.		2. for Hi, read HI. L. 15 & 16. for iek, read iEk.	176.	4.	1. for Dg, gf, read Dm, ml.
18.	Dem.	8. for OC, OF, read OC, OF.	B.	10.	for SC, read fC.
20.	B.	3. for fg, read fg.	177.	3.	for E', and C', read E', and c.
21.	4.	3. for cf, and ca, read cf, ca.	178.	Ex. 17.	for on a, read or a.
		4. for EC, read EA	180.	7.	for AehB, read AeDB
23.	3.	4. for G, read C.	B.	3.	for, and GN, read, and draw GN
39.	2.	14. for rather, read rarer		5.	for Ac, read Ac
40.	B.	4. for 20. 6, read 20. 3. El.	183.	3.	4. for e, read e
45.	B.	2. for EH, read KH.	184.	3. Ex.	3. for, & ac, read, a b. B. 4. dele (twice ag, &c.)
49.	N. B.	9. read, of the Mouldings, &c.	185.	last.	1. for (at n and o) read (at n and p)
52.	Margin.	for Fig. 15. read Fig. 14.	186.		2. for, through n, read, m. 13. for Ge, read Ge
59.	B.	3. for EI, read FI.	188.	4.	6. for, c, d, e, read, c, d, e
61.	Ex.	7. for seen, are, read are seen;	190.	last.	1. read, D, on the vertical Intersection (AG)
64.	B.	7. for C, read C.	191.	B.	5. for AC, read AC
67.	3.	7. for, is V, read is W	196.	Ex. 28.	6. for b ₁ , c ₂ , read a ₁ , b ₂
70.	10, 13 & 17.	for Th. 4th. read Th. 3d.	198.	3.	3. Suppose a CE (double CE)
71.	Dem.	7. for 13. 7, read 14. 7.	200.		8. for ABC, read ABC
74.	Dem.	last. read, and 5. 7. El.	203.	4.	4. dele, again
	4.	4. for Representation (IV) read (IV)	205.		13. for, Sect. 7. read, Sect. 8.
76.		3. for Cor. 3. 2. 6. El. read Th. 2, and 4. 6.	211.		last. dele, and C
77.	Cor. 5.	5. for BE, read BG.	215.	1.	last. at X. The Vanishing Points of the Pediments
79.	B.	3 & 4. for BE, read BE; and for E & H read E & H.			are in a perpendicular Line, passing through V.
83.	21, 24 & 27.	for Im, and m, read Im ² . and m ² .	224.	18.	for (Def. S) read (Def. G.)
85.	3.	last. for NG In, read NG x In.	B.	17.	Make GE. Suppose GN produced, and made
88.	5 & 9.	for ED, read ED; and for E, D, read E, D.			equal to GE (the Hypothenuse of ECG)
	Cor. 2.	7. read, no, or p q, and S r.	225.		9. for BI, read BP
92.		4. for AE, read AF.	228.		2. for at i, read at r
93.	N. B.	9. for AB (twice) read a b.	231.		9. for E, read E
94.	last.	1. for falls, read falling.	232.	2.	4. &c. for Fig. 128, read Fig. 127.
95.	2.	9. read, cuts the larger Segment.	233.		17. for, to Y, read, to X
	12, & 18.	for a E b d, and a E b, read a E b d.	236.		10. dele hk. L. 22. for n o, read nC, or k
98.	last.	for Cor. 14. 1. El. read Cor. 2. 12. 1.		2, 2, 4, & 11.	for IL, read JL. B. 15. for Right, read Left
99.	3.	3. for, ik, read ik	241.	5.	4. for, Plane V, read W
101.	4.	3. for h l, read b l.	242.	Ex.	4. read, CED equal to the Complement of
112.	5.	2. for Plate VI, read Plate IV.	243.	Ex.	3. for Inclination, read Intersection
	B.	5. for abdc, and AHDC, read abgb and AHGB.	244.		12. for DEH, read DE ² H
113.	Def. B.	3. for N ^o . 1 and 2, read N ^o . 1. and 3.	246.	8.	6. dele, D, H, and I; or read K, J, and L.
118.		14. for Da: ac, read Da: aC.	249.	B.	17. for (as aa) read (as ba)
119.	5.	2. for ABC, read AEC. L. 3. for DF read DF.	251.	5.	last. for E, read C (twice)
122.	Margin.	for 9. 11. El. (twice) read 9. 7. El.		Note.	4. after from the Sun; read, is to its Distance from
124.	Ex. 2.	6. for almost, read also.			the Plane, on which the Shadow is projected.
133.	2.	3. for AB, read A b.			8. for a, read a. 9. for b, read b. 11. dele, as at c or d.
	B.	6. for (Ax. 2.) read (Ax. 3.)	259.	SCH. 2.	last. for V, read G. P. last. for e, read e (thrice)
135.	3.	2. for DF, read BF.	260.	2ndly.	10. read, Shadow of DE. Case 3. 1. read, Let $\odot$ be.
141.	B.	13. read, or any how parallel.	262.	B.	10. for Point I, read Point L
142.	Dem.	3. for FAG, read FaG	263.	2.	last. for GI, read FI
143.	N. B.	4. for Point a, read Point b.	264.	B.	3. read, the Shadows, and their Representations
147.	B.	10. for aA, read aA.	265.	4.	Mar. caret, N ^o . 2. L. 6. for Ac & Ed, read AC & DB
149.		4. for fE, read fF.		5.	7. for a, read e (twice)
150.	4.	3. for DC, read BC.	266.	3.	last. for AE, read AF
154.	5.	2. for F, read F.	267.	1.	last. dele, as i of i
156.	3.	2. for E ¹ . C, read E ¹ . C.	268.	3.	1. dele, (as e the Shadow of e)
	5.	last. for di, read d i.		Ex. 11.	for V, read, where GF would cut SR, produced.
158.	B.	12. for S and P, read P and S.	269.	B. 8 & 15.	dele, the Shadows of
160.	5.	1. for left, read right.	270.	SCH. 8.	for Perpendiculars, read Right Lines.
	Dem.	12. for Jb, read, Ob. L. 19. for CZ read CJ	271.	Fig. 40.	5. dele, at V
163.	4.	4. for, Bj, read, Bc.	275.	B.	2. for Draw bV, read Draw bC
	D ^o .	8. caret, comma (,) after gH,		B.	11. for cutting them, read, cutting the perp. Shadows
167.	4.	1. for KC, LC, read KC, LC,	277.	4. 2 & 3.	for a, b, c, read a, b, c. and for C, read E.
	B.	5. for b e, read b c.	278.		1. for HI, read HI
168.	4.	7. for AIH, read IH.	281.		16. dele, X.
169.	B.	11. for Ad, read Ad.	283.	B.	21. for BG, CG, read BF, CF.
171.	Ex.	8. for b, read d. L. 15. Dele E.		4.	7. from L. (The point in which VL would cut FO)

P R E F A C E.

IN every Age, and in every Climate, where the Polite Arts are cultivated and encouraged, Emulation, and a desire of Fame, inspires the Breasts of the rising Generations; the ingenious Mechanic catches the ardent and laudable Flame; Trade and Commerce is extended, the People are necessarily enriched, and the State becomes potent and formidable. Architecture rears her stately Domes and lofty Turrets to the Skies; the sumptuous Edifices, raised by the hand of the able Mechanic, and embellished by the ingenious Sculptor, with breathing Statues and animated Marble, proclaim abroad the Magnificence of the Founder, and almost immortalize the skilful Architect; whose Works may vie with the most celebrated relicks of Antiquity, which seem to be of more than human Composition. Whilst Painting, their Sister Art, assists and unites in decorating the interior Domes, Cielings, &c. or, in well chosen Pieces and Subjects, and masterly Performances, adorn the Stair-Case, the Gallery, the Drawing-Room, and the Cabinet.

Perspective is allowed by all, who are well acquainted with it, to be the Basis of all the Polite Arts which have their foundation in Drawing; particularly Painting, or Delineating; for, Colouring does not come within its Rules. The Sculptor and Architect may receive great assistance from Perspective. I am sensible it is not absolutely necessary to the Art of Designing, but it is essentially so to see the effect of the Design. An Architect may doubtless be famous in his Art without Perspective, but more so if he had that accomplishment; as he would be better able to judge of the effect it would produce, and convey a just Idea of it to others, before the Design is executed. Drawings, in Perspective, from particular Stations, where the Building will be most conspicuous, would answer all the same Purpose as a Model, and at a much less expence.

At a Time when the Arts are in such perfection, a Treatise on Perspective may be thought an unnecessary Publication; either because there are, already extant, many valuable Books, containing all the Rules which are necessary or useful; and consequently, unless some new Principles are hit on, by which the trouble of projecting Objects perspectively may be lessened, 'tis useless to increase the Number. For, with some, unless the whole of Perspective can be brought into the compass of a Pamphlet, it will not be studied, by those, for whose use it is chiefly intended. In respect to the former, it is a certain truth; there are indeed a sufficient number of Authors on the Subject; and yet perhaps, no Subject has been worse handled, in general.

I do not pretend to have found out new Principles, nor do I think, there can or need be any other; those given, by Brook Taylor, being sufficient for any purpose, whatever; and that, the Principles, on which he has founded his System, are the most simple and perfect that can possibly be conceived. Notwithstanding what many, who have not a true Idea of Perspective, imagine, that there is imperfection in it; that the Rules, prescribed, do not always produce a true or pleasing Representation of Nature; I maintain, that all, which can be done by Rule, is performed on the most perfect and infallible Principles that can be devised; that Perspective is, absolutely, at its *ne plus ultra*; where then, it may reasonably be asked, is the necessity for, or use of this Treatise?

There are, generally, two Motives, which induce every Person to publish to the World, his Inventions or Improvements, or Studies of any kind. The first is Vanity; or, to give it a milder Name, a laudable thirst of Fame (for I believe, I shall not err wide if I affirm, that Vanity is the first, and chief spring of all that is great and laudable) the other is the lucrative Emolument, if not always the Consequence, at least, it may reasonably be expected an attendant on Fame; it is scarce determinable, whether Vanity or Interest stimulates most to action. To pretend that we are not actuated by either of these Motives is the height of folly; for tho' our Station, in Life, may set us above the sordid views of gain, yet no Station, whatever, is exempt from Vanity; which, most wisely, for the best of purposes (the Good of the whole) is made a necessary ingredient in our Composition.

Now, although I have not the least pretence to the invention of new Principles; yet I am firmly persuaded, that I have made use of those we have to the best advantage; that, from the irregular and imperfect Order, as they are given by Dr. Brook Taylor, I have digested it into an useful and practical System; not involved in a labyrinth of mathematical Demonstration, of things which are to little purpose in the Art of Delineating; as the voluminous Work of Mr. Hamilton, published in the Year 38; which, though a most elaborate and valuable Production, has not been of the least use, to the Arts it was intended to promote. In the mathematical part, I have not entered further than is really necessary, to evince and enforce the Principles, on which the Practice is founded; and, in Practice, I have shewn its immediate and absolute dependance on the Theory. I have by means of an Apparatus contrived for the purpose, united the Theory and Practice so together, that he must have very little penetration, and Capacity, who does not in a short Time and with little Study, conceive a clear and comprehensive Idea of it. I have, every where, given such instruction, and thrown such light on the Subject, as I flatter myself will make it justly deserve the Title I have given it: my Design, throughout, especially in Practice, having been to make the study of Perspective, at the same time, easy and entertaining. The Subjects I have chosen to display, and embellish it with, are such as are common and familiar; for, to what purpose is an intricate and puzzling delineation of the Dodecahedron, &c. except, to shew that the Author understood it? I am of opinion, that the Reader will be much better pleased, with the description of such Objects as are frequently before his Eyes, and such as are fit Subjects to introduce into a Picture; or to form a Picture on. I have not been satisfied with the common Lessons for plain Figures, and Solids composed of Planes, and left the Student to decorate his Buildings with the embellishments of Columns, Entablatures, &c. of the several Orders, but I have, minutely, shewn, how to delineate them, singly, and to compose a regular Building of the several Materials, described and treated separately of before.

Although Perspective cannot, properly, be called a part of the Education of a Gentleman, yet it must be looked on as a genteel and polite accomplishment, even to a Prince. For, has not our gracious Monarch cultivated and particularly encouraged it? nay, even descended to learn its Rules, and to delineate, with his own Hand, pieces of Architecture? Is it possible for a Gentleman to see, as he ought, much less to judge of a Picture, with true taste, and with the discernment of a Connoisseur, without having some notion of Perspective? it expands the Ideas, and makes a Person a fit judge of the proportion, and disposition of the several parts of a fine Picture; the Symetry and Harmony of the whole is perceived; if there be any discordant and unseemly Distortion in the Parts, owing to a bad, and injudicious choice of the Artist, either in the Distance or Situation of the Objects, or in the Position of the Picture, they will be quickly seen, especially when there are introduced Buildings, or regular pieces of Architecture. There are at this Time, but few Gentlemen, who are not pleased with a fine Picture, which truly represents Nature, on Canvas; the Deception being so well managed, that we can almost imagine we see the real Objects, themselves, through the aperture of the Frame. For, it is possible, by the Rules of Perspective, with a just distribution of Light and Shade, and the assistance of Colour (on Cielings, &c. where we cannot come near it) really to deceive the Eye and Judgment, so, as to imagine, what we see are real and solid existencies.

Of all the Mathematical Sciences, the study of Perspective is perhaps the most entertaining; the pleasure and satisfaction which result from it, in delineating, can only be felt, not described. Astronomy (to which Perspective greatly conduces) is the most sublime of all, and next to it I should rank Perspective. The entertainment, resulting from the former, is of a higher kind; we are, as it were, lifted from the Earth, in contemplation of the superior Works of the great Creator, in such wise, as to look on all below not worthy of our notice. The advantages to Society, which are deduced from this most exalted Science, are many

and great; and, being well known, would be impertinent to enumerate. On the other hand, the study of Perspective, scientifically, is highly entertaining to a rational Mind; to those who would pursue it, I recommend the Works of Mr. Hamilton. I have not chosen to go further into it, than is really useful; and yet, to some Persons, I shall be thought prolix enough; who want to know it, without the labour of Study; to which, Artists, in general, have great antipathy; I mean, to the Study of any thing mathematical.

Perspective being a branch of the Science of Optics (as it is founded on direct Vision) it becomes necessary to consider, in the first place, the structure of the human Eye, and the nature of Vision; to conceive (as far as our Intellects can trace) an Idea, how that extraordinary and astonishing Sense is performed; which being, in some degree, understood, we shall be well prepared for a clear understanding of Perspective, and enabled to distinguish between the Representation of an Object on a Plane, and its real Appearance; a Circumstance, which is a great stumbling Block to many, who have not rightly considered the difference.

I have prefaced this Work with a Section on Light and Colour; and as a more essential requisite, to Perspective, the second contains a brief description of the Eye, and of Vision. In the next is contained the very foundation of Perspective, which treats on direct Vision, comprized in two Theorems, of universal application; in which, is contained the very Essence of Perspective. The two remaining Sections, of the first Book, are wholly digressive; they not being at all necessary, to the understanding of what is contained in the following Work; the Reader may therefore pass them over, if he be so disposed, without breaking the thread of the Subject. They contain matter of mere Opinion; respecting the materiality of Light, Reflection, Refraction, &c.

Book the second contains the whole useful Theory of Perspective, rectilinear and curvilinear; which is somewhat copious, by reason of the Examples given for illustration, and Corollaries, necessarily deducible from the Theorems.

The first Section is a general Introduction, containing many preliminaries, necessary to be known, previous to what follows.

The Second is also introductory, and contains a full Explanation of all the various kinds of Projection, Ichnographic, Orthographic and Stereographic; with a circumstantial and comprehensive Definition of Perspective, and other introductory Matters.

The Third is more elementary; it contains a full, yet brief Definition of all the Terms made use of in the Theory.

The fourth Section contains the whole Theory of right-lined Perspective, in fourteen Theorems; from which are deduced several useful and practical Lessons, in Corollaries, Scholia, &c.

Some Persons have imagined, that Right Lines, in Objects of great length, as in Buildings, &c. seen in full Front, cannot be represented by Right Lines (being elevated above the Eye) because, each End appears to decline, towards the Horizon; yet, it is manifest, there can be no Angle, seeing it is a Right Line. Now, this absurd Opinion, which can arise only from ignorance, and not having a proper Idea of Perspective, will be easily erased, if we consider the thing rightly. It being, however, so very evident in itself, and the first essential in Rectilinear Perspective, I have, therefore, made it the first Theorem.

The second Theorem might, indeed, be an Axiom, it being so very evident.

In the six following Theorems, is contained all the necessary knowledge of Perspective, relative to Intersections and Vanishing Lines, in general; the first and most essential requisite in Practice.

By the 9th is determined Vanishing Points, in general; the 10th teaches all that relates to Planes parallel to the Picture; and the 11th where the Intersecting and Vanishing Points of all Lines, not parallel to the Picture, are to be found. The 12th and 13th contain all that relates to such Lines, in the most concise, yet full

full and clear manner that I can conceive. Perhaps the Demonstrations of them may deter some, who are not Geometricians, from examining them with that attention they require; let such remember, that, in order to practise Perspective, it is not absolutely necessary to be a Geometrician; because, I practised it long before I understood Geometry; excepting a little practical, and, some general knowledge of Lines, which are certainly requisite; as the whole of practical Perspective consists in it.

For which end I have selected, all that is necessary, not only for Perspective, but, also for various mechanical uses, into one Book (the first) in my Tract of Geometry, just published; perhaps, in the most easy and intelligent manner, ever yet done; to which I refer the Reader, for the geometrical Construction of all kinds of Figures and Lines here used; as well as to the Elements, for Demonstration, in the Theory.

If those Readers, who have neither time or inclination to become acquainted with the Elements of Geometry, at least acquire so much, as the Introduction to that Tract contains; I will vouch for the great advantage he will find to his study of Perspective. Indeed it is impossible to practise Perspective without it; for, being, in itself, wholly geometrical, the very Language, and Grammar, of Perspective is Geometry; let them take my word, for once, they will not find their Time mispent; but, on the contrary, so much knowledge, as it teaches, will be purchased at a very easy rate.

Being now acquainted with the Language and stile of this Work (though not with the Grammar) let them boldly pursue it, and venture on the Theory; omitting the Demonstration where they find they cannot comprehend it; which, in general, they will not find enveloped in mystery; having treated that part in the most familiar manner possible, by plain reasoning only, without other reference than to the Elements, for proof of what is advanced. Let them, at least, by the most attentive perusal of the Theorem, endeavour, clearly, to conceive the Premises of it; which, in some of them, perhaps, may not be perceived, clearly, at the first reading; the second will open some Ideas, and the third perhaps complete it; which, if it require a fourth, sometimes, will not be lost labour; for, be assured, when the Student can read over the Theorems, with that ease and energy, requisite to a clear understanding of what they contain, he will have made a considerable progress; when the Premises of a Theorem is clearly understood, the proof of it is not difficult, in many Cases. However, whether the proof of what is advanced be perceived or not, it is not essential to the Practice of Perspective; the Reader may give me credit for it, I will be responsible for the truth of it; he may be fully satisfied that the thing is certainly so, and makes use of that knowledge accordingly.

The Theorem being understood, let him, at least, go through one Example in each, as he proceeds; his Ideas will not only be strengthened, but he will, possibly, see the truth of the Premises. Then, the Corollaries, Scholia, &c. are but so many easy, useful, and practical Lessons, deduced from the Theorems, which will be found of the greatest use in Practice, and if the Theorem be clearly conceived, the Corollaries will be so too.

The fifth Section contains so much of the Theory of curvilinear Perspective, as is really useful in Practice; or necessary to be known, by any Artist, whatever. The sixth is a refutation of several capital Errors and absurd Opinions, which many Persons entertain of Perspective; and which are, there, clearly and fairly stated, and shewn to have no real existence.

The third Book is a copious Treatise on useful practical Perspective, containing Lessons and Examples in every necessary Case, that can occur in Practice; shewing also its dependance on the Theory, in brief Demonstrations, where it is necessary.

This Book is divided into twelve Sections; whose Contents are particularly described in the Index. The Method, in which I have treated this useful part of Perspective, is such, as I presume will sufficiently recommend it; each Section being

ing a separate and distinct Subject from the foregoing; begining with the most simple and first Principles or Elements, and going on, from the most simple, to the most complex Objects, in a regular, progressive succession.

After the necessary Preliminaries and Elements, in the three first Sections; the third shewing also how to find Vanishing Lines, and Vanishing Points, in general, the first requisite in Practice; in the fourth is contained all the practical elementary Problems in Brook Taylor's Essay, which are, of themselves, a compleat System of practical Perspective. These Elements, of the following Work, being well understood, will be found of great utility; which has induced me to perfect such as the great Author of them had left very imperfect; and some, particularly his 21st and 22nd Figures, are greatly defective; indeed it is a general Fault in the Doctor's Works; we are nevertheless infinitely obliged to him, for giving them to the World, such as they are.

To understand this Section clearly, and be enabled to apply the Problems it contains, in all Cases, practically, which, it must be observed, is the foundation of the whole, a tolerable share of geometrical knowledge is requisite; without which, it is impossible to turn them to that general use, in Practice, in which they are universally applicable; insomuch that, it may be truly said, he who can comprehend them, perfectly, and apply them in all Cases, generally, understands Perspective, thoroughly; but, being superficially looked over and not well digested, they will be found of little use.

This consideration, perhaps, has induced some Persons to imagine, and affirm, that the whole of Perspective may be comprized in a very small Compass. But, I must make free to tell them, they are under a mistake; for, notwithstanding the Principles are few and general, yet, to know how to apply the Rules, in all Cases that may occur in Practice, cannot be so soon acquired; if so, how comes it, that they are, no greater Proficients? Or, can they imagine, that, amongst the number of able Men, who have wrote on the Subject, none should hit on that much wished-for Expedient? either they must acknowledge that their own faculties are not so acute as others (which is paying but a sorry Compliment to their understandings) or they must suppose that there is more in it than they at first imagined.

'Tis true, the whole of Practical Perspective is comprized in this and the foregoing Sections; but how few would be enabled, from that knowledge, though clearly understood, to proceed in delineating a regular piece of Architecture, is but too obvious to enlarge on; without previous practical Lessons, diversified variously, to familiarize them. Some Persons know a great deal (in their own opinion) because they know, perhaps, that all Right Lines, which are parallel, have the same Vanishing Point; who yet, know not how to fix and ascertain any one, except the Center of the Picture (indeed they seldom, if ever, use any other) nor how to proportion a Line perspectively; and further, to shew their consummate knowledge in it, if you shew them a piece of Perspective, in which there is not one Line tending to the Center, or Point of View, they will call that Point on the Picture, in which the principal Lines converge, the Point of View; so that, there may, by this Criterion, be several Points of View in the same Picture; a Circumstance too palpably absurd to need a refutation.

If this be to know Perspective, it may indeed be very soon acquired; it may be taught to a Child. But, when they have drawn a Line to its proper Vanishing Point, how that indefinite Line is to be proportioned, in order to represent, certain finite parts of the Original, they are wholly ignorant, though the chief requisite in Practice, and the principal Business of the fourth Section of the third Book.

However, not to discourage them, from attempting to acquire so necessary a part of their Studies, they may be assured that a fixed resolution and perseverance, will soon surmount every apparent difficulty. Some are alarmed, and even frightened, at the sight of so many Lines in a Diagram, for a lesson in Perspective, imagining they can never comprehend them all. Certainly, they must, to a person wholly ignorant of the use and meaning of them all, appear a general confusion; but

when they have set about it, with a resolution to know, and have well digested the Definitions of them, they will, at one glance, comprehend the use of several; and the rest, by analyzing them regularly, will soon become familiar to the Eye, and to the understanding.

This, I believe, has induced several Persons, who have wrote on Perspective, to deal very unfairly in it, in not giving all the necessary Lines in their Diagrams. I have, in mine, given all, and more than are necessary to be drawn, at once; for let it be observed, that, several of the operative Lines, or Visual Rays, which are only used for cutting others, need not be drawn at all; a Ruler being applied to the two Points (the Eye and the Original Point) the indefinite Line may be cut, without drawing the whole Line, which could not answer, in a Diagram, so well as drawing the whole, in order to shew the direction of the Line; besides, in Practice, one part is effected and the Lines rubbed out before others are drawn, which cannot be done in a Diagram, all must remain together.

Others, again, there are, who have almost determined to make an effort, only want to know so much of the Practice as to be able to project a plain Building, &c. and seem quite affraid of attempting the Theory; because there is occasion for Geometry, which, to many, is a terrible Bugbear; so that, rather than exert themselves, they do without it, though the first essential, and chief requisite perhaps of their profession. They want to know Perspective, but are affraid to venture on the Theory. They deceive themselves if they imagine it an unnecessary Appendage; it is the foundation, on which the Practice is built; can it be unnecessary to know how, and why, before we attempt any thing, practically? is not one, the means of effecting the other? I do aver, that the shortest way to acquire Perspective is to understand it first, in Theory, the Practice of it will readily follow.

How different are the dispositions of mankind; after I had (from the Jesuits) acquired (as many would suppose) a proficiency in Practical Perspective. I was far from being satisfied with all that could be obtained from that Author; and although I was not a Geometrician, at that time, and he not giving any Theory, I set about contriving means to have conviction of the truth of his Rules; by which means, I fell insensibly into the method used by Vignola and Sirigatti; than which, nothing can be more convictive; and I was accordingly satisfied, that the Rules, given, might be depended on.

But, having, by dint of application only, acquired such a proficiency in Geometry, as to enable me to comprehend Brook Taylor's Principles, how trifling, how limited appeared all I had learned of it before; I was even ashamed of my own productions, some of which had, undeservedly, been admired: I found, indeed, I scarce knew what was meant by Perspective, till then. The greater progress I made in Geometry, the clearer, and more comprehensive Idea I had of his Principles; which, though founded on common observation of Objects (supported by Geometry) are beyond every thing ever thought on, by any who had wrote on the Subject; and yet, it seems so simple, when understood, that it is somewhat strange it should not have been brought to light sooner.

I have taught some Persons, who, to appearance, were indocile, in few Lessons, to understand the Theory sufficiently; but not without first learning Geometry; but, as I have before observed, the Theory may be comprehended, and applied to use, in Practice, without demonstrating it, geometrically. What, then, should hinder others from acquiring it? If they are affrighted at the thought of any thing related to Geometry, they have no grounds for their fear; it is a mere Bugbear to many, who would gladly know it; why then are they so indolent, as not to set about it with a determined resolution? I flatter myself I have removed that dreadful Scarecrow, in the Treatise I have published; at least, I have done my endeavour towards it, and am fully confident that it cannot be rendered easier and more comprehensive than it is there done; and, that it is within the compass of any tolerable Capacity.

It is usual, with most writers on Perspective, to introduce so much of Geometry into their Work, as they judge necessary for the use of Perspective. There would be, in my opinion, as much propriety in prefacing every Book, on Literature, with Grammar; lest the Reader, should not be acquainted with Syntax, and the Idiom of the Language. I fairly own it above my skill, to draw a Line between the necessary and unnecessary, for all is more or less so. Some Theorems, in Geometry, are only necessary for the attaining of others, which, nevertheless, cannot be obtained without them; consequently they are necessary. In short, if the Student be quite unacquainted with Geometry, he is not fit to study Perspective; let him first become intimate with Euclid, and then he may boldly pursue Perspective; the practical part of one is sufficient for the other. Wherefore, seeing I have compiled a System of Geometry, to which this Work is subservient, I have wholly omitted the Definitions of geometrical Terms, here used; because, it is reasonable to suppose the Student already acquainted with them; otherwise he must first Study that Grammar, of the Science of Perspective.

Having, in the fourth Section of the third Book, displayed the whole Elements of Practical Perspective, the fifth begins the application of them to real use; the whole, of which, consists in finding the representation of a Line or Point. For, Points are the Extremes of Lines, and Lines of Surfaces; and, Solids, or Objects, are bounded by their Surfaces; so that, the whole of Practical Perspective, consists in finding the representation of a Line, any how situated; seeing that, all Objects, whatever, which can be represented by the Rules of Perspective, are constructed either of Right Lines or curved, or both. The apparent Contours of some round Objects are somewhat difficult to determine, yet they may be done sufficiently correct. In this Section, the Construction of all kinds of plane Figures, perspective, in Planes any how situated, is comprized; and, in the sixth is shewn how to compose Solids, of Planes only; by which any Plane Building may be projected.

The seventh Section teaches, fully, how to represent Mouldings in general, and to break the same at the Angles of a Building, &c. internal or external, right angled or otherwise, with other necessary and decorative parts of Architecture, &c. as Triglyphs, Consoles, Modillions, &c. also, how to form a Pediment.

The eighth is wholly adapted to circular and round Objects of all kinds; as Arches, Columns, plain Bases and Capitals, Steps, Wheels, Vases, &c. and circular Mouldings; including also the Ionic and Corinthian Capital.

Being now furnished with all the materials of a Building, the ninth Section shews how to compound them, and to form a Building; from the most plain and simple to the most elegant and rich, decorated with the various Orders; and also detached Buildings, Views, &c.

The tenth is for internal Subjects, Arcades, Rooms, Staircases, and Ceiling-pieces, representing Domes, and Cupolas; which, though somewhat particular, is founded on the same invariable Principles.

The eleventh is adapted for Furniture, as Chairs, Tables, Book-Cases, &c. also for Coaches and Machines. And, the 12th, for inclined Pictures and Planes in general.

Thus, I have presented the Reader with a slight sketch of the Theory and Practice, in which is contained Lessons for all purposes, almost, whatever; and although, fewer Examples might be sufficient with some, who clearly comprehend the first Principles, and see their universal application, others will not find there is one superfluous.

Book the fourth treats on the Perspective of Shadows, which is indeed a copious Subject, and much more might be said of it; but, as I am sensible, that very few take the necessary pains to project their Shadows by Rule (general Effects being all that is studied, or regarded) and therefore, it would be to little purpose to give Rules, which will seldom, if ever, be followed. Nor is it at all necessary, or even practical, to project every Shadow, mathematically; it would be attended with great loss of time, and perhaps, in some Cases, produce a bad effect, though truly

truly projected. In this branch of Perspective, licence may therefore be taken; justifiably, provided they do not run into gross and palpable absurdities; such as projecting the Shadows of Objects, already immersed in Shade; or, as I have seen in the Works of eminent Masters, Shadows cast both ways, in the same Picture, to the Right, and to the Left. I have also seen, the Shadow of a Curve Line represented by a Right Line, when the Luminary was not nearly in the Plane of the Curve; which, with others, less obvious, ought carefully to be avoided, and guarded against.

Nevertheless, there are certain general Rules may be given, which ought strictly to be adhered to; and never, on any account, departed from. I have, therefore, in this Work, given so much as I conceive necessary to be known; for, in order to be conversant in Shadows, it is absolutely necessary to be acquainted with the invariable Law of Nature, in the projection of Shadows; although it may not always be necessary to follow her dictates, implicitly.

The effect of reflected Light on Objects, from other Bodies, in vicinity with them, is likewise treated of in this Book; also the effect of Distance, usually understood by the term Keeping, properly, aerial Perspective; both which, contribute greatly to the perfection of a Picture; insomuch that, without due regard being had to both, a Picture, ever so well designed and delineated, or coloured, will be but a flat and spiritless performance.

And lastly, the reflected Images of Objects on the surface of still Water, or on polished Mirrours, in any Position, are, in the last Section of this Book, treated on.

In the Appendix is shewn the Methods made use of by the old writers, and compared with the present; which, though a tedious way of proceeding, and liable to mistakes, which are almost unavoidable, will be found to produce the same thing, and in many Cases with great accuracy. Nevertheless, the much greater truth and certainty of the method of proceeding, on the Principles here laid down, will be obvious on the slightest inspection; for, when the Vanishing Point of a Line is fixed, which is ascertained with the greatest certainty, and its Intersecting Point, or the representation of any Point in the Line, found, there cannot possibly be any error in the tendency of the indefinite Representation; and any portion may be cut off, perspectively, from that Point, by the thirteenth Theorem, to the nicest mathematical exactness, and with the greatest ease imaginable.

The method of taking Views by Reticulation is also explained, in the Appendix, with an improvement in the construction of the Frame; and other interesting matters of a similar nature, of use in the art of Delineating. The whole is concluded with a brief and candid disquisition of the modern writers on Perspective; with Remarks on each.

Having, now, given a brief account of the Work, I shall just make one more observation, in respect of the Notions of some Artists; who being always accustomed to sketch by sight, only, and having not the least conception of projecting Objects by any Rule, they vainly imagine that Perspective will teach them how to represent Objects, exactly as they appear to the Eye, without knowing any thing of their Proportions or Situations, in respect of each other, or of the Picture; than which, nothing can be more absurd; so that, when they find there is a necessity for taking and applying their real Measures, or Proportions, being so foreign to what they conceived of it, they imagine so many obstacles to lie in the way, that, they soon desist from the attempt; choosing rather, to remain in ignorance, and proceed with uncertainty, than take the necessary pains to acquire, what, being acquired, they would deem invaluable.

He, therefore, who can hit on such an Expedient, as to teach them how to delineate Objects truly, by Rule, without applying any Rule at all, will be likely to meet with great encouragement from those indolent Artists. I acknowledge my incapacity for the task; and therefore, I shall abide by the Rules, as they are given in the following Work.

B O O K I.

OPTICS or VISION.

S E C T I O N I.

Of LIGHT and COLOUR.

TO treat on any Science, properly, it is necessary to begin with the Elements of it, or first Principles; which is the reason, as I suppose, that some writers, on Perspective, have prefaced their Works with a chapter on Optics and Vision. Some of whom, not daring to advance any thing of their own, on the subject, have favoured the world with extracts from Sir Isaac Newton's and Smith's Optics; which, indeed, is very little to the purpose, as the much greater part is no way subservient to Perspective; considering it not merely optical, but purely a mathematical Science, supported on the firm Basis of Geometry.

The ingenious Mr. Hamilton, in his compleat body of Stereography (a work which does great credit to the Author) to which I acknowledge myself indebted, has given some judicious observations on the subject of Vision; and some, which are rather exceptionable. But, the Theory of Colours (if that can be called a Theory, which is so little known, and nothing in it demonstrable) he, very wisely, declines enlarging on; as not being subservient to Perspective, nor indeed to Painting: I mean the Theory of the Prism, which, Sir Isaac Newton and others have so copiously expatiated on.

I would by no means have it thought that I intend, or have the least desire, to derogate from the character of so great a Man, whose name I highly revere; but I am persuaded, that the pursuits of the greatest Men are, sometimes, in themselves, trivial and merely amusing; when the character of a great Man is established, it gives a sanction of consequence to his most insignificant amusements; for, why may not the most profound reasoners relax from their intense studies, and amuse themselves, sometimes, with trifling matters? by which means things of great utility have been brought to light; as must have been the case in respect of the Prism: nor do I find that he has perfected what he had in view, but left his observations for others to improve on, having (in his own Words) no inclination to take it up again, and pursue it further, as he had intended.

Had the Theory of Colours, as deduced from the Prism, been amongst the first and chief of this great Man's pursuits, I am much in doubt, if the reputation he has acquired had ever been established, at least on that Basis; things of infinitely more importance to the Community, fixed his credit (most deservedly) on the highest pinnacle of Fame; for, what useful and necessary knowledge has been communicated to mankind, by this acquisition to the Science of Optics? which (with such, apparently wonderful, sagacity and penetration) he has explored and given to the world.

To define, with any degree of precision and perspicuity, what Light is, is not possible; seeing we cannot comprehend, and enter into an accurate disquisition of Fire; which, is the only cause we can conceive of Light. From the different and obstinate refrangibility of the different Colours produced by a Prism, when applied to the Sun's Beams, it is concluded, that Light is, in its nature, heterogeneous; that it is composed of Particles, of different qualities, which produce very different effects on Objects. I cannot, from any thing I have yet seen or read on the Subject, give my assent to that opinion; for, I believe, that, what we call Light (the vivid glow occasioned by any luminous body) is perfectly homogenous;

and that it is not composed of Particles; which implies that it is material, a Body; for, how else can it be a composition of Particles? which, by means of the Prism, are supposed to be disjoined, and separated from each other.

But, what reason can be assigned, that a Prism should have this most extraordinary power of separating them? owing to its form, only *, not the matter of which it is composed: But it is not owing to either, as it is manifest by Experiment. Allowing the rays of Light to be thus sifted or separated, what use is made of it, or what further knowledge is deduced from it?

'Tis obvious, that the same Object, having its surfaces differently disposed, or situated, exhibits different Colours, according as its surfaces are situated to the Light; that is, to that quarter, from which any thing luminous causes an illumination of them; and those parts, which are most directly opposed to it, are more intense in Colour; whilst the opposite faces (the Light being obstructed by the Object) are almost deprived of Colour; which they would be entirely, but for other Objects in vicinity with and opposed to them: which other Objects being strongly illumined, are said to reflect Light to them. Hence, a conclusion is drawn, that Objects have, in themselves, no inherent Colour; but that, all the sense we have of different Colours, in the same or in different Objects, is entirely owing to their different qualities and modifications (or rather, to the construction of their Surfaces, simply) by which they are fitted and disposed to reflect different coloured Rays, some more copiously than others. But, it does not necessarily follow, that they have no inherent Colour; for although Objects, when opposed to the Sun (that is, when nothing opaque intervenes) exhibit very different, and more brilliant colours than otherwise; yet, if its Rays are obstructed, instantaneously (the Light, around them, being then supposed stagnated) they still exhibit Colour, and of the same kind, or hue, though less vivid, and greatly inferior in the degree of it.

The chief Argument advanced in favour, and the only reason assigned in support of their Hypothesis is, that Objects exhibit no Colour, when they are entirely deprived of Light; which argument, cannot be denied; because, no Object, in such Case, is perceptible, by means of Vision; without Light our Optics are of no use at all. It is the same if we close our eyes, when Objects are fully illumined; but, certainly, the Colour, as well as the Object, remains, whether, by shutting our Eyes, we perceive it or not. I look on this as a specious and subtle, not to call it a sophistical way of reasoning; since without Light, there can be no Vision; and, consequently the sense of Colour, more than of the Figure, Magnitude, or Situation of Objects, cannot be communicated. But, if Light be considered as a Medium existing of itself, without the Luminary, how can there be a deprivation of it, if it fills the whole surrounding space, as Air does? which, seeing that, Air is also considered as a material Body, is somewhat repugnant to the established, and universally received Maxim, that two Bodies cannot fill or occupy the same space, at the same time. And, if Light be a Medium, of what use is it, without the Luminary? or, how can there be a perpetual emission, from the Luminary, the whole space being, every where, filled with Light? and, if it be material, what becomes of it? To suppose that it is absorbed, by the Earth and other Planets, would be ridiculous in the highest degree; because, the whole surfaces of all the Planets bear no sensible proportion to the immense space between them, in which there is no obstruction to the progression of Light, flowing from the Luminary in all directions.

That Light should exist in darkness (notwithstanding the scriptures say, that Light was created before the Sun) is not only a direct contradiction in terms, but to reason and common sense, and the nature of things. Also, that Objects exhibit no Colour,

* A Prism, as defined by Euclid (Def. 13. 11.) is a Solid, contained by Planes, of which, two opposite are equal, similar, and parallel; all the rest are Parallelograms; so that, any right angled Parallelepiped is a Prism, by which no effect of colour is produced. Now, as it depends, solely, on the inclination of one Plane to another, an acute angled Pyramid (in which all the planes are triangles) or frustum of a Pyramid, is the same, in respect of colour, as a Prism.

Colour, when deprived of Light is certain; because they are no longer visible; but, since every other quality remains, it is most probable (Colour being perceptible by sight only) were they objects of Vision, in total Darkness, Colour would remain likewise: For, though Colour cannot be perceived without Light, yet it is not the efficient cause of different Colours, in Objects composed of different materials.

In treating on Colours, the learned Boyle gives us a wonderful account of a blind man's distinguishing Colours by the touch; which, can only be, by the asperity or roughness of the surface of the coloured Body; and which, is construed as favouring their Opinion. It may be possible, that a difference in Colours, artificially laid on the surfaces of Bodies, may be felt; or, that the qualities of dyes or stains may also affect Bodies so, as to make them sensible to the touch. But, will any person venture to say, that, if Bodies, stained or otherwise coloured, were polished or made equally smooth, the difference, in Colour, could be perceived by feeling; or, that the natural Colours of Wood, Metals, or Stones, nearly of the same qualities, except Colour, when equally polished, could be distinguished by that mode of Perception? I affirm they could not; nor can I give any credit to such assertions. Then, since that, Bodies, equally hard and equally polished, exhibit different Colours, I see no reason for supposing, that the cause of their differing in Colour is owing to the different texture or construction of their Surfaces; or, that it is possible to distinguish them by their asperity; for, Bodies that are of equal hardness, and being equally polished, must have Surfaces alike, except in Figure and Colour.

Light, however propagated, has, I presume, the same properties and influence, and, consequently, acts the same on Bodies. I would ask then, what is the reason, why Blue and Green are scarce distinguishable by the light of Fire? If the action and reaction of Light, on the surfaces of Bodies, be uniform, by a certain law, according as they are fitted and disposed to reflect any particular species of colour-making Rays, whence arises the difference in this case? I should be glad to hear or read an ingenious disquisition of that point; as, I do not doubt, there are Men of sagacity and penetration sufficient to set it in the clearest light, and make it as evident, to the understanding, as any common Case in any Science whatever.

To return to the Prism. It is certainly true (and 'tis a curious and entertaining Experiment) that, through an acute angled Prism, we perceive Objects very differently coloured from what they really are, by Nature; also, by applying the Prism, properly, to the Sun's Beams, there is exhibited a curious and most extraordinary Phænomenon, viz. a diversity of Colours, the most lively and beautiful that can be conceived; and, the more uncoloured the Surface is, on which they fall, the more vivid they appear.

Now it is certain, that, here is a perception of Colour, on the surfaces of Bodies, which is not inherent; and so is there when the Sun's Beams, only, fall on them: yet, we cannot from thence conclude, that they have no inherent Colour. The Colours which the Prism exhibits are Red, Orange, Yellow, Green, Blue, Indigo, and Violet or Purple. But why is there, here, made a distinction of seven Colours, when, in reality, there are not above three or four simple Colours in Nature? (unless Black and White may be called Colours) viz. Red, Yellow, Blue; and Green, which may be compounded of Blue and Yellow. Indigo is Blue, Orange and Purple are Compounds, or mixed Colours. Now, if any Philosopher, or Artist whatever, can, from these three or four simple and brilliant Colours, produce all the variety which we see in Nature; or, did the Prism exhibit, distinctly, all the simple Colours which are in Nature, only, without mixture, I should then be better disposed to give credit to their Theory: or, when I can have conviction, that, a mixture of all these Colours, together, in any Ratio, will produce a perfect White (as Snow) I may then be a perfect Profelyte; till then, I am persuaded that I must dissent from their Opinions.

I shall, next, enquire, how a Prism, particularly, has the wonderful property of separating the different coloured Rays of Light. The Prism is a Body of Glass, or it may be of Chrystal, or other pellucid, uncoloured Stone;

is the property then in Glass, or Stone? No; in the Figure that is made of it, only; amazing! that the disposal of the same Matter into different forms, should produce such very different effects. Glass, disposed into a portion of a convex Sphere, will make Objects, seen through it, appear magnified; and opposed to the Sun's Beams, will collect real Fire; astonishing indeed! If the Surfaces be concave, Objects, seen through them, appear less than they really are; in the forms of Prisms it has various effects; but, we do not see the effect of exhibiting Colours through a right angled Prism; I mean, a four sided one, whose opposite faces are parallel, and the Angles right ones; neither has it that effect through the right Angle, of a right angled, triangular Prism, but, only through the acute Angles. The cause, then, of exhibiting Colour, is not in the Matter, itself, or Figure, nor in the Surfaces, simply, but in the inclination of the Surfaces to each other; for, being parallel, or at right angles, or nearly so, they do not produce that effect; and, we may as well ask, why convex Surfaces collect Fire, rather than plane or other parallel Surfaces, as, why a Prism, whose Planes are inclined to each other, should have the property of exhibiting the different Colours I have mentioned, rather than one that is right angled; and I am persuaded, that, with all the sagacity Man is endowed with, he will never be able to account, truly, for either.

Yet, I do not condemn all enquiries into the causes of the various effects which we perceive in Nature, but think the pursuit rational, and truly commendable, when it is founded on certain Data, and real Hypothesis; and, the result of our researches productive of real utility, deducible from it, as in some other branches of Optics. In the Theory of the Colours produced by a Prism, there is none yet discovered, and I do believe there never will; it has not the least apparent tendency to benefit mankind accruing from it. 'Tis asserted, that the perfection of Telescopes is owing to the Theory of the Prism. Now, as I am not conversant in the mechanical construction of Lenses, and in their application to Telescopes, I cannot say how far it may have been of use in that respect; but certain I am, that it is of no use to a Painter, to compound his Colours and form a Theory thereof; by means of which, he may sooner, and with certainty, arrive at perfection in his Art: and I must needs say, that the attempt made by Brook Taylor, in the Appendix to his second part, does not shew the Doctor's judgment, in that, to be of a piece with the rest of the Work.

The Sun's Beams passing through Glass, whose surfaces are neither parallel nor perpendicular to each other, or nearly so, exhibit the various Colours, spoken of above, in some degree, according to the inclination of the opposite Surfaces, and purity or clearness of the Glass; through the thick part, near the knob, in the middle of a table of Crown Glass, I have often observed the Phenomenon, in a window of those Squares: but, it is also observable, that the effect ceases when the Sun ceases to shine on them. It is also certain, that Objects appear coloured, otherwise than what Nature assigned them, when we look through Mediums denser than Air; whose surfaces, through which we look, are inclined to each other; and consequently, there will be the effect of Colour produced, in some degree, which is not natural to Objects, in looking through Object-Glasses or Lenses, with which Telescopes are constructed; seeing that, their surfaces are inclined, at the edges. The business, therefore, of an Optician, in this respect, is, so to contrive and dispose his Glasses, as to divest the Object, as much as possible, of the borrowed Colours which do not belong to them, naturally; and I could almost affirm, that the perfection, spoken of, has been found out by repeated trials, not from any certain established law, deduced from the Theory of the prismatic Colours: for, if a certain Theory had been established, what hindered the immediate perfection of them, as soon as the cause of the imperfection was known, and certain laws established, whereby, the unnatural effect of Colour might be removed from the field of View?

From what has been observed, respecting the effect of Colours produced by the Prism (unless it can be proved that the particles of Air, through which Light must necessarily

necessarily pass, are Prisms) to infer, that Nature has given no inherent Colour to Objects, is bold and assuming; it is also groundless, seeing that, the Colour, which is natural to each, remains when the Sun does not shine on them, though it differs greatly in the degree of it. We may with as much reason conclude, that Objects are much larger than we perceive them to be with the naked Eye, because they appear so, when view'd through Glasse whose surfaces are convex; and, we may as well enquire how Vegetables, as Flowers, Fruit, &c. spring out of the Earth, and are adorned with all that beautiful variety of Colours which we see in Nature; by what means they are continually varying in their Colours, from their first formation, in embryo, to maturity; as why, the Prism exhibits the various Colours of the Rainbow, to which they are, in a great measure, similar.

Colours produced by alkaline Salts, &c. and mixtures of different Fluids, with all such like chymical operations, I look on, equally, as entertaining Experiments; but no way productive of any advantage, accruing from it, to the Theory of Colours necessary for a Painter to know, in order to reduce it to real use, in practice.

I shall not, therefore, trespass any longer on the readers Time, as it is entirely foreign to the purpose of Perspective; but, confine my further observations to that part of Optics relative to Vision, only. In respect of direct Vision, it is certainly of use and subservient to Perspective; and essentially necessary to give a clear Idea of the Principles on which it exists, both in Theory and Practice.

Colour, whether inherent or incident to Bodies, is not material towards a perspective Description or Delineation; 'tis the Figure of the Object, only, it contemplates.

All Bodies, whatever, become the objects of Perception from their Figure or Colour. Figure is more particularly inseparable from our Ideas of Matter, than Colour; it being impossible, in the nature of things, to have any notion of Extension, abstracted from the Idea of Figure, which limits the Space Bodies occupy or fill. It is the same with or without Light, and may be perceived by the sense of feeling only. From the known external Figure and situations of Objects, may be delineated, by mathematical rules, a true perspective Representation, on a Plane; which, by the help of Light and Shade, will raise a perfect Idea in the Mind, of the figure of the Object, and the different forms and positions of its Surfaces, in respect of each other, without the assistance of Colour; but, to exhibit a true and natural Picture of Objects, and create a perfect Idea in every circumstance, Colour is absolutely necessary; and is the last degree of perfection, with which the omniscient Creator has embellished Nature, that can be given to a Picture.

Light, considered as a Medium by which Vision is convey'd to the Eye, is of too refined a nature for my speculations. But, as the great author of Nature has given a portion of reason to every human Being, we have certainly a right to make use of that reason; and, if we will exert it, properly, it is possible, nay certain, that one person may penetrate as deeply into the mysteries of Nature as another, tho' not bless'd with quite so much learning.

We are told by several great and profound Philosophers (for to be a Mathematician is not necessary) that we perceive Objects, only by means of Rays of Light, reflected from every point in their Surfaces to the Eye; which enter there, and form an Image, or Picture of the Objects perceived, on the Retina, or fine Membrane which surrounds all the back part of the Eye, internally. The Retina is said to proceed directly from the Optic Nerve, which dilates or spreads itself as before-mentioned; and, the impression being made thereon, we are further told, is conveyed, by the Optic Nerve, to the Brain or seat of Perception.

B

But,

But, why do they stop here? I expected and should be glad to be convey'd into the inmost recesses of the Brain, and be shewn or told, how the Image of the Object, on the Retina, is there perceived; for I must own it is astonishing! that, from what is perceiv'd or felt within, we should have a true Idea of the Figure, Colour and Magnitude, Situation and Distance of Objects, which are external, or situate without the Eye.

Now, after all this parade, and pompous display of great sagacity and deep penetration, what does the Sum total amount to? Why, that the Object is perceived, i. e. the Mind is sensible of the existence of such Objects as it perceives; and, that the Vision of them is convey'd in right or direct Lines from the Object to the Eye, or from that wonderful Organ to the Object; but how, or in what manner, remains as much a mystery as before. So that, after all which has been said on the Subject, and, allowing the Image, formed on the Retina (inverted or otherwise) as perfect as they please, what nearer are we? where is the Perception of that Image or Picture of the Object? how the Mind or Soul perceives the Image on the Retina, any more than the real Object, we are as much at a loss to account for as ever.

In vain, therefore, does Man torment himself, in endeavouring to explore the hidden mysteries of Nature, which are for ever hid from our researches. Let us then pursue what is within our reach, and not an airy Phantom, which will ever elude the pursuit. In mathematical Sciences we have some certain Data, whereon to frame an Hypothesis; and although we must not expect perfection, except in Theory, yet, we can discover so much of Truth as gives us sufficient encouragement to pursue it, and makes ample amends for the imperfection of human nature.

I do not intend, nor shall I attempt to explain the nature of Vision, or enquire into the true cause of it; being fully convinced of the insufficiency of our reasoning faculties, for such a disquisition. It is sufficient, for the science of Perspective, to know, or even to suppose that it is convey'd to the Eye, the seat of Sight, in Right Lines. But, whether it be by means of Rays of Light, reflected from all parts of Objects to the Eye (as is the general Opinion) or whether the Allwise former of the Eye has given a power to that truly wonderful and amazing Organ, to convey to the Mind, by Vision, the perception of Objects by other means, I do not mean to make the subject of my enquiry. Yet, I must acknowledge, that I have strong objections against the general Opinion, as it is now received and almost universally assented to; viz. that the perception we have of external Objects, from Vision, is by means of Rays of Light, reflected from all parts of their Surfaces to the Eye; and, that those Rays are material or composed of Matter.

But, as it is of no consequence, in Perspective, by what means Vision is performed, so it be convey'd in Right Lines, which may pass for an Axiom; seeing that, the refraction of the Rays (if there be any) in the Air which surrounds us, is so very little, in Objects that are at an immense distance beyond the whole Atmosphere, it cannot be sensible at any Distance we can perceive Objects, within it, supposing the refraction uniform or regularly curved, between the Object and the Eye. But I rather suppose the refraction of the Rays to be at the common Surface of two Mediums, only; at entering any other Medium denser or rarer than that through which they first pass, and thence proceed again in Right Lines; consequently, there is no refraction at all within the Medium; either in Air or Water, I suppose Vision to be convey'd in Right Lines, if the Object and the Eye are both in the same Medium.

At the same time, I would not have it thought, that I suppose any Rays to pass, by means of reflection, from opaque Bodies; and in luminous ones, the Light, which proceeds

proceeds from them, filling a concave Sphere, as far as they can be seen, I do not suppose to proceed in Rays, nor in Planes (as a modern Author has supposed) the Hypothesis is absurd; seeing, that the whole Space is illumined in every part, it is impossible, that from every Point in the Surface of the luminous Body, Rays can proceed to an immense distance, filling all the Space between.

Suppose every Point in the Surface of the Sun to emit a Ray of Light, proceeding in Right Lines from the Center; it is evident, that every Ray, at the distance of the semi-Diameter, will fill a Space four-fold of its first dimensions, viz. in a duplicate Ratio of the Distance; at the distance of the whole Diameter, it must fill a Space nine times as large; i. e. it increases in proportion to the Squares of the Distance; what, then, will be the magnitude of a Single Ray of Light, proceeding from the Sun to Jupiter or Saturn, before it reaches those Planets*? or how can the whole of the Space it occupies be filled (as it certainly is) with Light, which proceeded from a single Point, in the Luminary, only?

Can one individual Ray be shattered into thousands, into millions, lying close to each other? what direction do they proceed in, from the Luminary? not in the direction of a Right Line from the Center, I presume.

I know it may and will be alledged that it expands as it proceeds, still filling the whole Space. I presume then, it cannot proceed in Rays, or Right Lines from the Center of the Luminary, as it is imagined. Air may be rarified and expanded to a very great degree; also, Water and other Fluids are expanded, as in steam, by Fire, or, in Mists and Vapours, by Exhalation, till it floats on Air. But can one drop, or the minutest particle of Water be expanded infinitely? as a Ray of Light, emitted from one single Point in the Luminary, must, in this Case, necessarily be; else, how could we see those Stars, whose distances are, to all fence, infinite?

These things, which may amuse and pass for orthodox with the generality of mankind, cannot pass with a thinking Person. Therefore, since all which can be said about it is, at best, but an ingenious conjecture, and since it is in no wise subservient to Perspective, I shall at present take my leave of the Subject, to pursue that part or branch of Optics, which is essentially so, respecting direct Vision; and after that, make a separate Chapter or Section, of my objections to the received Opinion of the cause of Vision.

* I find by calculation (from the Table in Harris's Use of the Globes, which, I suppose are as much to be depended on as any other) that the distance of the Earth, from the Sun's Center, is 212 semi-diameters of the Sun, nearly. Wherefore, if, instead of a Point, we suppose a certain quantity of Light to flow from one square Inch in the surface of the Sun; each side of that square Inch will, at that distance, be increased to 212 inches, or 17 feet 8 inches; the square of which is 44944 square inches. Consequently, a quadrangular Pyramid, whose Base is 17 feet 8 inches square, and at its altitude, the distance of the Sun from the Earth, is filled with Light, from one square Inch, only; and consequently, each single Ray, proceeding from every Point in its Surface, will, at that distance, be multiplied 44944 times.

At the distance of Saturn (by the same Tables) a square Inch, and consequently a single Ray, will be increased or multiplied 4,149,369 times; its distance being 2037 semi-diameters of the Sun, nearly; consequently, a quadrangular Pyramid, whose Base is 169 feet 9 inches, on each side, and its altitude 777 millions of Miles, is filled with Light, flowing from every square Inch on the surface of the Sun; an amazing circumstance indeed! if it is supposed, or considered to be a material Body. But, how far Light may proceed, from the Sun, beyond the realms of Saturn, is not yet, I presume, determined.

N. B. If a single Ray be divided into so many thousands before it arrives at the Earth; but one, which is the Axis of the Pyramid, can proceed in the direction of a Right Line from the Center of the Sun.

S E C T I O N II.

Of the structure of the Eye, its parts described, and a short INTRODUCTION to the nature of VISION.

THE Construction or Figure of an entire human Eye, within its Sockit, is globular, of somewhat more than an inch in Diameter.

Plate I. Fig. 1. Let HIKL be a vertical Section through the center of the Eye, which, in this Figure, is considerably larger than Life; in order, that the several parts may be described with greater accuracy.

The external part, from H to I, is called the Cornea, or Horny Coat. It is perfectly transparent, and is somewhat more convex than the part which is within the Sockit, by means of a fine, clear aqueous or watry Humour, between the Cornea and the Iris (the coloured circle within.) Immediately behind the Iris, (ghik,) through which there is an Aperture, in the middle, to let in Light (or Vision by means of Light) is a whitish Substance (MN) like a strong Jelly, or cold Glue, of a moderate consistence. It is as clear and pellucid as Chrystal; from which, it is called the Chrystalline Humour. It is, in every respect of the same nature and use as a double convex, microscopic Lens; and is said to be more convex on one Side (the inward) than the other. Its use is to contract the Rays of Light, by which Vision is convey'd, to a Focus, beyond this Humour, in the Center of the Eye, at E; from whence, they become diverging, and fall on the bottom or back part of the Eye, at *acb*.

The Chrystalline Humour, (MN,) is said, by those who are acquainted with and accustomed to dissections of the Eye, to be furnished with muscular Fibres; by means of which, it is made either more or less convex; or, by contracting them, be brought forward or otherwise as occasion requires; in order, to render the Images, or Pictures of Objects perfect, in the bottom of the Eye, as the Objects are nearer to or further from the Eye; all which seems consonant to Reason.

The Aperture or Pupil, (hi,) is also, by some such means, expanded or contracted, as there is occasion for more or less Light to enter. I have observed, in the eye of a Child, in a Room just light enough to discover it, the Pupil enlarged to three tenths of an inch in diameter; and immediately, on bringing into a full Light, it was contracted to one tenth or less; amazing Structure! and this is performed involuntarily, whether we will or no. There can hardly be any Person who has not made the experiment; on going into a darkish Room, he can scarce, at first, distinguish any thing; when presently, he will begin, after the Aperture in the Iris is open'd to a proper dimension, to discern Objects distinctly; and again, on going into a full Light, he cannot bear to look on any illumined Object, till the Pupil is contracted; it is even painful to the Eye, at first, going out of a dark Room into a strong Light, especially if the Sun shines out.

All the back part of the Eye, within, is lined with a fine Membrane of a most curious and delicate texture; called the Retina, from its resemblance of net-work, The large cavity, VV, which is bounded by the Retina, backward, and the Crystalline Humour.

Humour, before (which is contained within it) is filled with a glutinous Fluid like the white of an Egg; being perfectly pellucid and uncoloured, it is called the vitreous or glassy Humour; in which, the Rays converge, at E, the center of the Eye; and, crossing each other, in that point of contraction, they fall diverging on the Retina, and form the Images of Objects thereon; the sensation, of which, is supposed to be communicated, by the Optic Nerve (which is connected with the Retina) to the Sensorium in the Brain.

As the manner in which the Rays of Light are refracted, in passing through the various humours of the Eye, is entirely conjectural; seeing that, through a small pin hole, applied close to the Eye, at q, there may be perfect Vision, of an Object of any magnitude. And, this Essay not being intended as a Treatise on Optics, I shall not insist on any thing; but, shall only suppose the Visual Rays (when the Eye is naked) to converge and cross each other in the Center of the Eye, at E (without considering their Refractions) from whence, I suppose, they diverge in equal Angles, falling on the Retina, at acb , in the back part of the Eye.

D E F I N I T I O N S.

1. The AXE of the EYE is a Right Line passing through the Center of the Eye and the Center of the Aperture or Pupil. As cEC .

When the Pupil is direct, the point c , where the Axe cuts the Retina, is the Center of the Retina, the Seat of distinct Vision.

2. VISUAL RAY. If AB be supposed an Object of Sight; the Right Lines AE , BE &c. from all parts of the Object to the Eye, or to its Center, E , under which, or by the means of which, the Object is seen, or supposed to be seen, are called Visual Rays.

3. OPTIC ANGLE. By Optic Angle may be understood, either a plane or solid Angle.

If the Object AB be considered as having no dimensions but length, only; i. e. if it be a Right Line, simply; the two Visual Rays EA , EB , from the Eye to each extreme, form a Plane Angle, AEB ; which is the Optic Angle; under which, the Line AB is seen. And, AED or DEB is the Optic Angle of the Segment AD or DB .

4. CONE, or PYRAMID of RAYS. If the Object of Sight be either globular, or circular; as ABG ; the Visual Rays, EA , EB , &c. from the Eye to every part of the extremes of its Surface, being towards the Eye, form a Figure resembling a Cone, which is called the OPTIC CONE.

But, when the Object is either a right lined Solid, or Plane Figure, as CD ; the Visual Rays EF , EC , EH , &c. form a solid Angle, composed of several plane Angles, FEC , CEH , &c. which, being of a pyramidal form, is called a PYRAMID of Rays.

Fig. 2.

The Visual Rays crossing each other, in E , and, from thence, become diverging to the Retina, each opposite plane Angle being equal,* there is formed a similar Pyramid, cEd , which is called the opposite Pyramid; and E is their common Vertex.

* 2. 1. El.

The Figure, ab or cd , which is the Base of the opposite Cone or Pyramid of Rays, is the Image or Picture of the Object, AB or CD , on the Retina.

The small Characters, corresponding with the Capitals, shew in what manner the Image is supposed to be inverted.

C

Let

Plate I.
Fig. 1.

Let AB be supposed an Object, direct before the Eye, that is, perpendicular to its Axe, EC. It is supposed to be seen, by means of the Visual Rays EA, EB, EC, &c. from every part or point in the Object, towards the Eye, whether it be Line, Plane, or Solid; which pass through the Crystalline Humour, to the Center, or point of contraction, E; from whence they proceed, diverging, to the back part of the Eye, where they fall on the Retina, and form the Picture, *acb*, of the Object AB.

The Image of the extreme point A, by means of the Visual Ray AE, falls on the Retina at *a*, and the other extreme, B, is represented at *b*; and CE, the Axe of the Eye, conveys the Image of the point C to *c*, in the Center of the Retina. From which it is evident, that the Picture of an Object, formed on the Retina, is necessarily inverted.

Nor is there any thing surprizing in this, as some may imagine. For, suppose A the top, and B, the bottom of the Object. It may be imagined, from the inverted position of the Image, *acb*, that the Object must necessarily appear upside down. But, if we consider, that the sensation of the Point A, being perceived or felt at *a*, is by the direction of the Visual Ray AE, which determines its place in the Object; the Mind, by long experience, having acquired a habit of determining that part of an Object, perceived at *a*, to be above, and that at *b*, below; and which, is no matter of surprize at all; no more than, that, by the same experience, we have acquired an Idea of the distance of any Object perceived.

If a Person, who was born blind, could, when grown to maturity, be made to see, he would have no Idea at all of Distance, or the situations of Objects; which way was up, or which down; and would as soon attempt to lay hold of the most distant Object, which he perceived by the sense of seeing, only, as others which were near him; it being impossible to distinguish, merely by Sight, whether the Point perceived at *c*, on the Retina, be at C or C, or at any distance beyond C, in the direction of EC. But, by custom and a familiarity with Objects, from our infancy, we have acquired the Art of seeing; and by comparing Objects, according to their known magnitudes or distinctness of parts; or, according to the length of ground, which we imagine to lie between us and the Objects, we judge them to be at such or such a Distance. Whereas, when we look at the Heavens, one Star appears as far off as another; nor can we form the least Idea of their distance from sight, simply; for, a Star may as well be ten thousand millions of Miles off as ten Miles, its Magnitude being in Proportion to its Distance. (See Fig. 7. A, B and C.)

The Art of Seeing is acquired, regularly and progressively, as all other Arts or Knowledge whatever. Do not we see a Child attempt to catch the Moon or other striking Objects, though at an immense Distance? but, growing up in a familiarity with them, by common and frequent experience, they become so intimately connected with our Ideas, that we form a judgement of their Magnitudes and Distances, instantaneously, at first sight; and also of their Situations, in respect of themselves and of each other.

Now, the judgement we form of Distance, &c. being grown up with us from a Child, is so little attended to, that, at first thought of these things, we suppose it to be merely from Sight; than which, no Sense is more delusive and uncertain. The deceptions of Vision are many and frequent; as, when we look at Objects through refracting Mediums, i. e. through any transparent Medium whatever, solid or fluid; according to the different density of the Medium, or to its Figure, &c. we frequently imagine an Object to be nearer or farther off, larger or smaller than it really is; or to be where it really is not; nay, it is possible, by Light and Shade, judiciously disposed, and the assistance of Perspective, to deceive both the

Eye

Eye and Judgement; in imagining a Figure described or projected on a Plane, to be a real solid Object.

That Vision is conveyed in Right Lines to the Eye, I presume no person will attempt to dispute (I would be understood to mean, of such Objects as are situate on or near the Earth; and when no other Medium, but Air, is between the Object and the Eye) I shall, therefore, give it as a general Axiom; which, nevertheless, may be illustrated or occularly demonstrated, by straining a fine filken thread, to a Right Line, from any Point, as F , of an Object (DF) to the Eye.

Then, if any other Object, as QR , be interposed, as soon as it touches the Thread EF , they will appear to be in contact; and if it be so interposed, as to hide the Point F , the Right Line or Thread, which may represent a Visual Ray, will be refracted, or broken into two Right Lines ER , RF forming an Angle, ERF .

Hence, it is evident, that the Points F and F ; also, the Point C or C being in the same Right Line with C 2, will perfectly coincide with each other, to the Eye at E .

S E C T I O N III.

Containing a brief THEORY of direct VISION.

T H E O R E M. I.

OBJECTS appear to have that Proportion to each other, respectively, as the Angles under which they are seen.

Let $ac b$ represent a section of the Retina, a portion of a concave Sphere; and, let AB be an Object direct before the Eye; divided, in any Ratio, in the Points D and F .

DEM. It is evident that the Object AB , by means of the Visual Rays EA , EB , is seen under the Angle AEB ; and the several Parts of AB , as AF , FD and DB , are seen under the several Angles AEF , &c. Fig. 1.

But, the opposite Angles $a E f$, $f E d$ and $d E b$, are, respectively equal to the Angles AEF , FED , and DEB — — — — — 2. 1. El.

And, the Images af , fd and db , on the Retina, of the Originals, AF , FD and DB , are the measures of those Angles, respectively (Th. P. Ang.*) the Retina being supposed a portion of a Sphere; each part is, therefore, equally distant from the Center.

But, the Ark af is to the Angle $a E f$, as the Ark fd is to the Angle $f E d$, and as db to $d E b$. — — — — — 19. 6. El.

Therefore, the Images or Pictures on the Retina, and consequently, the apparent magnitudes of Objects are in the same ratio, or proportion, as the Angles they subtend at the Eye. Q. E. D.

* (Th. P. Ang.) refers to the Theory of Plane Angles, in my Treatise of Geometry.

Plate I.

Nor is there occasion to have recourse to the Images on the Retina; but, allowing the Visual Rays EA , EB , &c. to be Right Lines, and an ark of a Circle, of any radius, being drawn, cutting those Rays; the portions of the Ark, $lmno$, intercepted between the Visual Rays, as lm , mn , &c. measure the several Angles AEF , FED , &c. respectively; and consequently, the parts AF , FD , &c. of the Object AB , will appear to the Eye, at E , in proportion to the Arks lm , mn , &c.

All remote Objects appear equally distant from the Eye; as the Planets, Stars, &c. appear as if they were all in the same concave Sphere; of which every Eye is the Center. So likewise, near Objects, when we stand in the line of direction of two, three, or more, appear to touch each other; nor could we judge, merely from sight, which was farthest off, or which the largest.

For, suppose the Visual Rays EF , ED , EB , produced to F , D and B ; any other Objects, as EF and BD , being in the same direction with FD , and DB , and touching the same Visual Rays, EF , ED , EB , will coincide with FD and DB ; the less will hide the greater from Sight, and appear to be of equal Magnitude.

2. I am somewhat surprized at what Mr. Hamilton has advanced in Art. 6, Sect. 1. where he supposes, that Objects do not appear in proportion to the Angles they subtend, but in proportion to the Tangent of half the Angle; and imagines the Retina to be, nearly, a Plane, in the center of the Seat of Vision.

How Mr. Hamilton could conceive and account for such a strange and unwarrantable Opinion I cannot imagine. If, as he has truly asserted, the space on the Retina, so far as there is distinct Vision, does not exceed an Angle of one or two Degrees, on every side of the Axe; which is as much as to say, it does not exceed an Angle of two or four degrees; and I am fully convinced, that it does not exceed one Degree; what difference can it make, whether that small portion of the Retina be nearly a Plane or a portion of a Sphere? for, he certainly could not suppose a large portion of the Retina to assume that Form.

Now, if the Retina does assume the form of a Plane, of the space ab , then it is certain that the Images, af , fd , and db , on that Plane, (of which, the Right Line ab may be supposed a Section) are not in proportion to the Angles AEF , FED , and DEB , equal aEf , fEd , and dEb , respectively.

DEM. For, the Tangent cf or cd is not in proportion to ca or cb as the Angle cEf is to cEa ; because, cf is equal fa (AF being equal FC) therefore, the Angle cEf is not equal fEa , or cEa double cEf . — 3. 6. El.

But, ab is parallel to ab ; therefore, af , fc and cb are in the same Ratio, as af , fc and cb . — — — — Cor. to 6. 6. El.

Thus it is clear, if the Retina does take the form of a Plane, that Objects do not appear in proportion to the Angles they subtend; but, as it is the only instance in which I ever knew it contested, so, I am persuaded it will never be universally adopted, on that Hypothesis. However, as it is merely conjectural, it seems to me more rational, to suppose the Retina to retain its original spherical Form, which the all-wise Creator has given it, than, that it should, continually, at every motion of the Eye, be changing to that of a Plane.

Wherefore, on the presumption that the internal Eye is truly spherical, it is very reasonable to suppose, that, Objects appear, exactly, in proportion to the Angles under which they are seen; and not in proportion to the Tangent of half the Angle, as Mr. Hamilton asserts and has endeavoured to demonstrate, in 7 and 8 of the same Section; which cannot be as himself has stated it, but on the supposition

tion of the Retina assuming the form of a Plane, which is absurd to suppose. Or granting it really so; the portion of the Retina, which the compass of an Angle of one or two Degrees, at most, takes up, is so very small, that it is impossible to distinguish it, in a Sphere of an inch in Diameter, from a Plane. As the 360th part of a Circle, of a small radius, is not distinguishable from a Right Line; consequently, there could be no difference in the apparent magnitude of an Object, in either Case, which is seen under so small an Angle. As, the small portion at *d*, on the Retina, subtending an Angle, at *E*, of about five Degrees, is not distinguishable from a Right Line.

3. It is also evident, if the Visual Rays are refracted in passing through the aqueous Humour, before they enter the Pupil (unless that Refraction be rectified again at the Crystalline Humour or elsewhere, and, by that means, proceed in the same Direction to the point of convergency, in the center of the Eye) that Objects cannot appear exactly in proportion to the Angles they subtend. Nor have I any conception how a Visual Ray, *AE*, falling remote on the Cornea, at *e*, can be refracted so as to pass in the same direction through the Aperture, *hi*, to the point of convergency, at *E*, and from thence to the Retina.

For, suppose a Visual Ray, *Ae*, from any Point *A* (seen very oblique) falls perpendicularly on the Cornea, at *e*; if it pass at all through the Pupil, *hi*, it must pass in the direction *eg*; where it falls on the Crystalline, at *g*, and where, it is possible it may again be refracted in the direction *gb*, to the Retina; making an equal Angle with the Axe, *EC*, as the original Ray, *Ae*; in which Case, the Image of the Point *A* is seen at *b*, in its proper position.

And since no one can assert that it is not so, I shall therefore conclude that it is, at best, but Conjecture; since, as I have already observed, the whole System of Rays will pass through the finest Pin Hole, at *q*, without the Eye; and from thence diverge to the Retina (for how can it be otherwise? seeing, it is manifest they must all pass through the same Point *q*, it is therefore their common point of convergency) forming on the Retina an Image of the Object, in every respect the same (except in Hue, for want of sufficient Light) and of the same Magnitude as it appears to the naked Eye. Which single circumstance explodes, in my opinion, the notion of Refraction at the Cornea and through the various Humours, in the passage of the Rays to the Retina. I shall therefore suppose, that, when the Eye is naked, the point of convergency is in its Center; and, on that supposition, infer, that Objects do appear in proportion to the Angles under which they are seen. Of which I will give an easy and familiar Example.

4. Let *AB*, *CD*, and *FG* be three Globes, at different Distances from the Eye, at *E*, and of different Magnitudes; seen under the Angles *AEB*, *CED*, and *FEG*, respectively.*

Fig. 3.

Now, if the Distance of the Globe *CD* be equal to twice the Distance of *AB*, and *FG* be double of *CD*, four times the Distance of *AB*; then will the Angles *AEB*, *CED*, and *FEG*, which they subtend at the Eye, if the Diameters of the Globes are in the same proportion as their Distances, be equal; and consequently, their apparent Magnitudes, to the Eye at *E*, are equal.

* The full Diameter (*FG*) of a Globe cannot be seen; for, the Visual Rays being Tangents to the Globe, from the same Point *E*, as *Ef*, *Eg*, are all equal (Cor. 2. 16. 3. El.) and, by reason of the convexity, towards the Eye, they cannot touch the two extremes of the same Diameter; unless the Distance be infinite; and then, the Visual Rays are considered as being parallel. *fg* is, therefore, the apparent Diameter of the Globe *FG*.

D

Draw

Plate I. Draw ES, to the Center of the Globe FG; draw CD perpendicular to ES, and equal to CD, the diameter of the Globe CD; also, draw BA perpendicular to ES, and equal to the Diameter of the Globe AB.

DEM. It is evident, that the Visual Rays FE and GE, from each extreme of the Diameter of the Globe FG, will pass through the extremes of CD and BA.

For, in the similar Triangles FEG, DEC and BEA; $FG : SE :: DC$ (equal CD) : KE, and, as BA : LE. — — — — — 6. 6. El.

Then, since they touch the same Visual Rays FE and GE; consequently, they are all seen under the same Angle, FEG. — — — — — by Theorem

And the Diameters AB, CD and FG, being in proportion to their central Distances, they are, therefore, all seen under equal Angles, AEB, CED and FEG.

Consequently, the Images, ab, bc and cd, on the Retina, subtending equal Angles, are equal; and therefore, the appearances of the three Globes AB, CD, and FG are equal. Q. E. D.

If the Globe CD be supposed to be moved to M, its central Distance EM being equal ES; and, being, in Diameter, equal half FG; it will subtend an Angle GEH, equal to CEI, half CED, equal FEG; as the Arks 1 2 3 4, which measure those Angles, exemplifies.

Consequently, the Image hc, of the Globe GH, at that Distance; is equal to half the Image cd, of the Globe CD of the same Magnitude, and seen at half the Distance; for, they are in the same ratio as the portions of the Ark 3 0 to 3 4.

5. Yet it is manifest, that two or more unequal Objects, at an equal Distance from the Eye, and seen direct, do not appear exactly of the proportion of their respective Magnitudes; likewise, equal parts of the same Object, on the same side of that Point where it is cut by the Axe of the Eye, do not appear equal.

Fig. 1.

Let AB be an Object, of length simply, bisected by the Axe EC, to which it is perpendicular, in the Point C; and suppose AC and CB again bisected, in F and G.

Then, the parts AF, FC, &c. are equal, and AB is double FG; but, they do not appear of that proportion, at E.

DEM. Now, because AF is equal to FC, the Angles AEF, FEC, under which they are seen, are unequal — — — — — 6. 6. El.

For, if the Angle AEC be bisected, the Right Line EO, bisecting it, will cut AC, in the Point O, in the ratio of EA to EC.

But, EA is greater than EC; for, EC is perpendicular to AC. — Cor. to 12. 1. El.

Wherefore, AO is greater than OC, and the Angles AEO, OEC, under which they are seen, are equal; consequently, the equal parts AF, FC, are seen under unequal Angles; therefore, they appear unequal, by the Theorem.

And, because the Angle CEF is greater than FEA, the equal part CF will appear greater than FA.

After the same manner it may be proved, that the equal part CG appears greater than GB. Consequently, CG + CF, i. e. FG, appears greater than half AB. Q. E. D.

COR. Hence, it is evident, that if AB be produced, and the equal divisions, CG, GB, BP, are continued, they will appear continually less, being seen under less Angles; for the Angle BEP is less than BEG, which, is less than GEC; as the measures, p o, o r, and r C, of those Angles, sufficiently evinces.

N. B. The farther any two or more Objects are from the Eye, the nearer they will appear in the proportion of their respective Magnitudes.

Because they are seen under less Angles; and, the Tangents of small Angles deviate less from the ratio of the Angles, than the Tangents of greater Angles.

6. As

6. As Objects of different Magnitudes, at equal Distances, do not appear in the proportion of their respective Magnitudes, so neither do Objects of equal Magnitude, seen at different Distances, appear exactly in the ratio of their several Distances.

Let AB be an Object at any Distance (Ed) from the Eye, at E; and, let CD be another Object, parallel to AB, of equal Magnitude, as to length simply; also, let CD be at twice the distance of AB (ED double Ed.)

Fig. 4.

By means of the Visual Rays EA, EB, &c. those Objects are seen under the Angles AEB and CED. I say, the Angle AEB is not double of the Angle CED.

Draw EG parallel to a Right Line (AC) drawn through the extremes, A and C, of the Lines or Objects AB and CD; likewise, draw EA, EC, ED and EB.

DEM. Then because AB is parallel to CD, $EF : FG :: Ed : dD$; }
and $EF : EG :: Ed : ED$ — — — — — } 2 and 4. 6. El.

But, Ed is equal to half ED (Hyp.) conf. EF is equal to FG.

And, because FG is parallel to AC, and AF to CG, $AF = CG$. — 15. 1. El.

Now, because AF is parallel to CG, the Triangles EcF, ECG are similar, consequently, as $EF : EG :: Fc : GC$ — — — — — 4. 6. El.

But, EF is equal to half EG; wherefore, Fc is equal to half GC.

Consequently, AF (equal CG) is bisected in c; i. e. Ac is equal to cF.

Now, since Ac is equal cF, the Angle AEc is not equal cEF.

For, if the Angle AEF had been bisected by EC, AF would be cut, by EC, in the ratio of EA to EF; i. e. Ac would be to cF :: EA : EF — 3. 6. El.

But, the Angle EFA is obtuse, consequently, EA is longer than EF — 12. 1.

But, it has been proved, that objects appear to the Eye in proportion to the Angles under which they are seen — — — — — by Theoerm

Conf. Ac does not appear equal to cF; because Ac is = cF; by the foregoing.

But, CG, being seen under the same Angle (CEG) as cF, appears to the Eye, at E, equal to cF. Wherefore, CG, equal AF, appears greater than half AF; notwithstanding its distance, ED, is double that of AF.

After the same manner, the remaining part, GD, equal FB, may be proved to appear equal to half FB.

For, let the Angle FEB be bisected by ED, cutting BF and DG, perpendicularly; the Triangle BEF is Isosceles; i. e. $EB = EF$. — 9. 1. El. Cor. 3.

Consequently, $Bd = dF$; and they are seen under equal Angles, $BEd = dEF$.

Wherefore, DG, being seen under the same Angle (DEG) as dF, will appear equal to dF, half BF. — — — — — Art. 4.

But, if equals be added to unequals the sums are unequal. — Ax. 8. El.

Wherefore, the Angle CEG + GED, i. e. CED, is greater than AEc + dEB; and consequently, CD (equal AB) appears greater than half AB, though seen at twice its Distance. Q. E. D.

Again, let IL be another Object, equal and parallel to AB, and, at three times the Distance; IL will appear greater than one third of AB.

Produce IL, and the Perpendicular, ED, to M; then EM is its Distance.

Draw EI and EL; also, produce AC and EG, to I and H.

It may be proved, nearly after the same manner as the former, that the Angle AEF is not trisected by the Right Line EI.

Also, that the Angle IEL is more than one third of AEB.

DEM.

Plate I. DEM. For, because AF and CG are both parallel to IH, the Triangles EiF, EnG and EIH are similar; consequently, $Fi : Gn$, or $Hi :: EF : EG$ or EH - 4. 6. El.

Fig. 4.

that is, $Fi : FA$ (equal HI) $:: EF : EH$;

Consequently, if HI was produced, making IK equal HI, and EK drawn cutting AF in k; then $Fk : HK :: EF : EH$.

But, $EH = 3EF$; wherefore $Fk =$ one third of HK ; and Fi of HI .

But, $FA = HI$, equal $\frac{2}{3} HK$; wherefore $Fi = \frac{1}{3}$ of HI , and $Fk =$ two thirds.

Conf. FA is trisected, in i and k ; i. e. the parts Fi , ik and kA are equal.

But, because, Fi is equal ik and $ik = kA$; the Angle FEi is greater than iEk , and iEk greater than kEA — — — — — 3. 6. El.

For, if the Angles FEk and iEA were bisected by the Right Lines Ei and Ek , Fi would have that ratio to ik as EF to Ek ; and, ik would be to $kA :: Ei : EA$.

But, EF is less than Ek , and Ei than EA — — — — — Cor. to 12. 1. El.

And Fi is equal to ik , equal kA — — — — — proved above

Wherefore, the Angle FEi , i. e. HEI , is greater than iEk ;

and iEk is greater than kEA ; — — — — — by the 3d of El. 6. as above

Consequently, the equal parts, Fi , ik and kA , do not appear equal - Art. 5.

Therefore, HI , seen under the same Angle (IEH) as Fi , appears to the Eye, at E , in a greater proportion than their respective Distances, EM to Ed , or EH to EF .

Let the remaining part, HL (equal FB) be equal to two thirds of HM ; it does not appear in that proportion, to the Eye at E .

DEM. Because, the Angle HEL is not two thirds of HEM , for LEM is more than one third; as above.

Conf. HL appears in a less proportion to FB , than their Distances, Ed to EM

But, the ratio of the Angle LEH to HEI is not as LH to HI , or LF to Fi

For, because they are both on the same side of the Perpendicular EM ;

if LH was equal HI , the Angle LEH , being nearest the Perpendicular, would be greater than HEI — — — — — 3. 6. El.

For, if they were equal, LH would be to $HI :: EL : EI$.

Therefore, the ratio of the Angle LEH to HEI is greater than LH to HI .

Consequently, the part HL , of the Object IL , appears greater in proportion to its Distance, EM , than HI ; but, it appears less in proportion to BF ; seeing, the Angle HEL , i. e. FEI , is not one third of FEB , or two thirds of HEM .

But, the Angle HEL being nearer the Perp. EM , has a less ratio to FEB , than HEI to AEF ; i. e. the deficiency of the Angle FEI , or HEL , to one third of FEB , is less than the excess of FEi , or HEI , to AEF .

Consequently, LH appears nearer to the proportion of BF , than HI to AF .

Therefore, the whole Angle IEL is more than one third of AEB ;

and consequently, IL appears greater than one third of AB ;

i. e. IL appears in proportion to AB , greater than Ed to EM , their respective Distances.

Thus, I have made it appear, to Demonstration, that Objects do not appear in that proportion to each other, as their respective Distances; in which I have been more particular, because, it is expressly said, by a certain Author, Page 13, that these Pictures (i. e. the appearances of Objects) will be to each other, as their several Distances are to each other.* Rohault says, nearly so; Page 243.

* The Appearances, i. e. Angles, being in proportion to the Distances is, literally, absurd; because, as the distance of an Object is increased, the Angle, under which it is seen, decreases; which kind of reciprocal Proportion is always to be understood in this Case.

7. If the Eye be removed from E to E , equal GH , and EI , EL be drawn, AB will be cut in the same Points, c and d , as by the Visual Rays EC , ED ;
 But, IL will not appear of the same proportion to AB , at the Point E , as CD , at E , the Objects AB , CD and IL being equal.

DEM. 1. Because AB , CD and IL are parallel amongst themselves, the Triangles EcF , ECG , also EcF and EIH are similar;
 wherefore, as $EF : EG :: Fc : GC$; and, as $EF : EH :: Fc : HI$ } 2 and 4. 6. El.
 But, $EF = \text{half } EG$, and $EF = \text{half } EH$, by the Hypothesis;
 consequently, $Fc = \text{half } GC$, and also equal to half HI , equal GC .
 By the same reasoning, Fd may be proved equal to half GD , or HL .
 Therefore, AB is cut in the same points, c and d , by the Visual Rays EC , EI , &c. from both Points of View, E and E . Q. E. D.

2. CD appears to the Eye, at E , in proportion to AB , as the Angle CED to AEB ; and IL appears, at E , as the Angle IEL to AEB .
 Let EH be drawn parallel to AI .

DEM. The ratio of the Angle GEC to GEA , is greater than HEI to HEA .
 For, the Angle GEA is greater than HEA (equal GEC) } — 10. 1. El.
 i. e. the Angle FEA is greater than FEA (equal FEC) }
 wherefore, the ratio of FEC to FEA is greater than that of FEC to FEA .
 For, draw Eo parallel to Ec ; then, the Angle $FEo = FEC$, or HEI — 4. 1.
 consequently, the ratio of FEo to $FEC =$ to the ratio of FEC to FEA ;
 because, the Angles on both Sides are equal, respectively.

But Fc is equal to cA (proved above) wherefore, $Fo = oc$.

And, it has been proved, that equal Divisions, on the same side of a Perpendicular, from the Eye, to a Right Line, subtends a less Angle, the farther they are from the Perpendicular. — — — — — Art. 5.

Therefore, the Angle FEo to FEC , i. e. HEI to HEA , has a less Ratio than FEC , or GEC , to GEA ; for they are nearer to equality.

Consequently, HI appears to the Eye, at E , less in proportion to AB , than GC , in the point of View, E .

After the same manner, HL may be proved to appear less in proportion to FB at the Point E , than GD at the Point E .

Consequently, the whole, IL , appears less, in proportion to AB , at E , than CD at the Point E ; i. e. the Angle IEL is less, in proportion to AEB , than CED , at half the Distance from AB , to AEB ; the Subtenses CD and IL being equal. Q. E. D.

Hence it is manifest, that, notwithstanding the sections of the Visual Rays EI and EC , EL and ED , with AB , are the same; the Distances, on both sides of AB , being proportional; i. e. the Distance of the Eye on one side of AB , and of the Object on the other; yet, the appearances of the Objects, to each other, are varied, considerably, as the Distance is greater or less.

For, two Objects of equal height, at a great Distance from each other, and parallel between themselves, and the Eye at the same Distance from one of them, and in a Right Line with both, will appear, in proportion to each other, nearly as their Distances; i. e. the farthest off will appear half the height and half the width of the nearest, being at twice the Distance, and, one third in height and width at three times the Distance, nearly.

As IH appears, at E , nearly equal half AF ,* the distance of the Eye from IH , being double the Distance of AF .

* Nearly equal, in this place, means somewhat more; for, IH appears more than half AF , the two Distances EF and FH being equal.

Plate I. But CG (equal IH) appears much greater than half AF, at the point E; notwithstanding the section of the Visual Rays EI and EC, in the point c, is the same; and, Fc is equal cA.

If the Eye be at three times the Distance from one, of two equal and parallel Objects, (and alike posited, to the Eye) as from the other, the farthest off will be represented, on a Plane parallel to them, one third in height and width of the nearest.

As, at E, the Distance of the Eye, from AF, is one third of the Distance from HI; and the portion Fi, of FA, where it is cut by the Visual Ray EI, is equal to one third of FA.

But, I have already proved that it does not appear in that proportion, but in proportion to the Angle HEI, which is considerably more than one third of AEF; as the portion Fi, on the Ark *aid*, manifestly evinces.

And, it is also manifest, that the Distance must be, to all sense, infinite, before they can appear in equal ratio to their Distances; i. e. the Visual Rays, EA, EI and EH, must be parallel or nearly so.

T H E O R E M . II.

Parallel Right Lines, however situated, being produced, appear to approach towards each other; and, if produced infinitely, they will appear to meet in a Point at an infinite Distance.*

Fig. 5.

Let IF and HG be two parallel Lines; and E, an Eye, situated any how between them.

Let K, B, D, and G represent various Distances in the Line HG, and let the Lines IK, AB, &c. be drawn perpendicular to HG, cutting the other Line (also perpendicularly) in the points I, A, C and F.

Now, if the Visual Rays, or Right Lines EI, EK, EA, &c. be drawn, the space between the Lines AF and BG at the several Distances ES, EO, &c. will appear, to the Eye at E, under the several Angles IEK, AEB, &c. each of which, as the Distance is further from the Eye, is less than the other.

For, the Space between the parallel Lines (measured by the Perpendiculars AB, CD, &c.) is every where equal. — — — — — Def. 7. Geo.

DEM. The Space, between those parallel Lines, at IK, is seen under the Angle IEK; and the space between them, at AB, under the Angle AEB; which, it is evident is less than IEK, nearly in proportion to the Distances ES to EO; the Space at CD subtends the Angle CED, and FG the Angle FEG; each of which is less than the former; for their Subtenses, AB, CD, &c. are equal; and the Lines EA, EB; EC, ED, &c. forming or containing the Angle, are continually longer; wherefore, the Angle FEG is less than CED, which is less than AEB, &c. C. 14. 1. El.

And those Angles diminish nearly as the Tangents OA, OC, OF, when the Angles are small.†

* It is said in Smith's Optics (Vol. I. Art. 156, Page 58) that parallel Lines, seen obliquely, appear to converge more and more as they are farther Extended from the Eye; which, will ever be the case however the Eye is situated, in respect of the parallel Lines. For, being seen obliquely, means nothing more than when we look towards either of their extremes; as no part of both Lines can be seen direct according to his Diagram, the Eye being situate between them; or, being situated without them, they are seen direct only where a Right Line, from the Eye, cuts them both at Right Angles; on either side of the Perpendicular they are necessarily seen oblique.

† When the Angle, AEB or CED, under which any Object, as AB, is seen, does not exceed 20 or 30 Degrees, at the most, and that Object is removed to the several Distances, from EO, to EP, EQ, &c. the

From which it is manifest, that at a greater Distance the Angles will be still less; consequently, it will, at last, become insensible, and the interval, between the Lines, lost to Sight. Q. E. D.

Hence, the Lines, IF and HG, and, consequently, the space between them, is said to vanish.

2. Let ER be drawn, from the Eye, parallel to IF and HG; those Lines will appear to approach, continually, towards ER; and being produced, infinitely, they will all appear to meet in the same Point; however ER may be nearer to one than the other; for, the further any parallel Line is from ER (which may be called its Radial) the more sudden is its apparent approach to that Radial.

The Space IA, of the one, appears to advance from b to i ; an equal Space KB of the other, advances from p to o ; which is less than the other, in proportion to the Angle KEB to IEA; i. e. as the Ark po to bi . The Space from A to C appears to advance from i to k ; an equal Space, BD, in the other from o to n . From C to F it advances from k to l , an equal Space, DG, from n to m ; in the proportion of the Arks kl to mn .

It is evident, that if those Lines were produced longer, they would still appear to approach nearer to the point e , as EL, EM, evinces. And, being infinitely produced, they would at last appear to terminate in the Point e and be lost to sight.

For, it is manifest, that the further any Points L and M (considered as being in the parallel Lines IF and GH) are distant, the nearer the Visual Rays EL, EM are to a coincidence with ER; which, it is evident, must be infinite before they can coincide perfectly; in which case, EL, EM, and ER will be the same; and they will all appear to unite in the Point S, or R.

3. Hence, it is easy to account for the appearance of a horizontal Plane, or continued level Surface; which, being below the Eye, will gradually appear to ascend; and, being above the Eye it will appear to descend; and if they were produced infinitely, they would appear to meet in a Right Line, on a level with the Eye.

Let the Right Line HG be a section of a horizontal Plane, below the Eye, at E; and let IF be a section of one above the Eye.

Also, let IK be a section of a Plane direct before the Eye* (at E) perpendicular to the other two,

Now if the Visual Rays, EA, EB, EC, &c. be drawn, they must necessarily cut the Plane of which IK is a Section; in a , b , c , &c.

It is evident that the space KB will appear to rise, towards S, on the Plane IK, from K, its intersection, to b , where the Visual Ray EB cuts that Plane; the space KD will rise to d , and KG to g .

For the same reason, the space IA will appear to descend from I to a ; IC from I to c ; and IF, from I to f ; each Plane appearing gradually to approach towards S, where a Perpendicular, ES, to that Plane, cuts it.

And, if the Planes were produced infinitely, they would at last vanish, or be lost to sight, in a Right Line passing through the Point S, parallel to the intersection of the other two Planes, with the Plane IK.

the difference between the Tangents OA, OC, &c. deviates but little from the Arks OCq , OC , &c. and that still less as the Angle is less; as PC, PF₂, &c.

* By being direct before the Eye, I would be understood to mean, in a vertical Position; i. e. perpendicular to the Horizon; and when a Right Line, from the Eye, parallel to the Horizon, would fall within its Bounds, cutting the Plane perpendicularly.

For, if the Eye be not in the Plane, or in a continuation of it, the Eye, being considered as a Point, can have but one position, either to a Plane or to a Right Line, being produced; however the Plane may be situated, in respect of the Horizon.

And

Plate I.
Fig. 5.

And this is evidently the case however a Plane be situated; whether horizontal, vertical or inclined, it is still the same; for, a Plane is still a Plane in all positions, and has no properties peculiar to any position, in respect of the Horizon.

Therefore, there may be drawn this Conclusion, that every Plane, in which the Eye is not situate, will appear to approach towards, and at length to meet, another Plane, passing through the Eye, parallel to the former.

4. Let AB, CD, and FG represent three Objects of equal height, at the several Distances, EO, EP, and EQ, from the Eye, at E.

The Visual Rays EA, EB, EC, &c. being drawn, those Objects will appear in proportion to the Angles AEB, CED, and FEG.

* 19. 6. El. For, the portions of an ark of a Circle, whose Center is E, intercepted between the Visual Rays, are the measures of each Angle, respectively, and determines the apparent proportion of the Objects AB, CD, and FG; and, whatever number of Degrees those Arks contain, the Angles which they subtend are in the same Ratio.*

Wherefore, since, in Perspective, the Representation is always on a Plane, and not on a spherical Surface; suppose IK a section of a Plane, in a direct position; the Spaces, ab, cd, and fg, between the Points where the Visual Rays cut and pass through that Plane, considered as a Picture, are the proportions of the Representations of the Objects, AB, CD, and FG; but their apparent Magnitudes are the portions *io*, *kn*, and *lm* of the Ark *bep*.

For, let HG represent, a section of the level Ground, or any other horizontal Plane; and AB, CD, and FG, Objects perpendicular thereto.

If IK be supposed a section of a vertical Plane, the foot or seat B, of the Object AB, will appear, on that Plane, at b; and consequently, Kb will represent the space of Ground, KB, between the Picture and the Object AB; i. e. it will appear to rise so high on the Picture; Kd will represent the Space of KD, and Kg of KG. So likewise, a, c, and f shew how much the tops of those Objects appear to descend, on the Picture.

5. Now, if the position of the Picture be inclined to the Horizon, as *aK*, the Objects and the Eye remaining as before; the Representations *ab*, *cd*, and *fg*, on that Plane, are very different from the proportions of *ab*, *cd*, &c. on the Plane IK.

But, the apparent proportions, of both, are the same; viz. the portions on the Ark *bep*, which measure the Angles AEB, CED and FEG.

Nor, is it possible to be otherwise; seeing that the Objects, AB, CD, &c. remain the same, in respect of each other; and the situation of the Eye, at E, is not varied; consequently, the Angles AEB, CED, &c. are not altered, and the Objects AB, CD, &c. the Subtenses of these Angles, must, necessarily, appear the same, represented on any Surface whatever, and in any Position, cutting the Visual Rays EA, EB, &c.

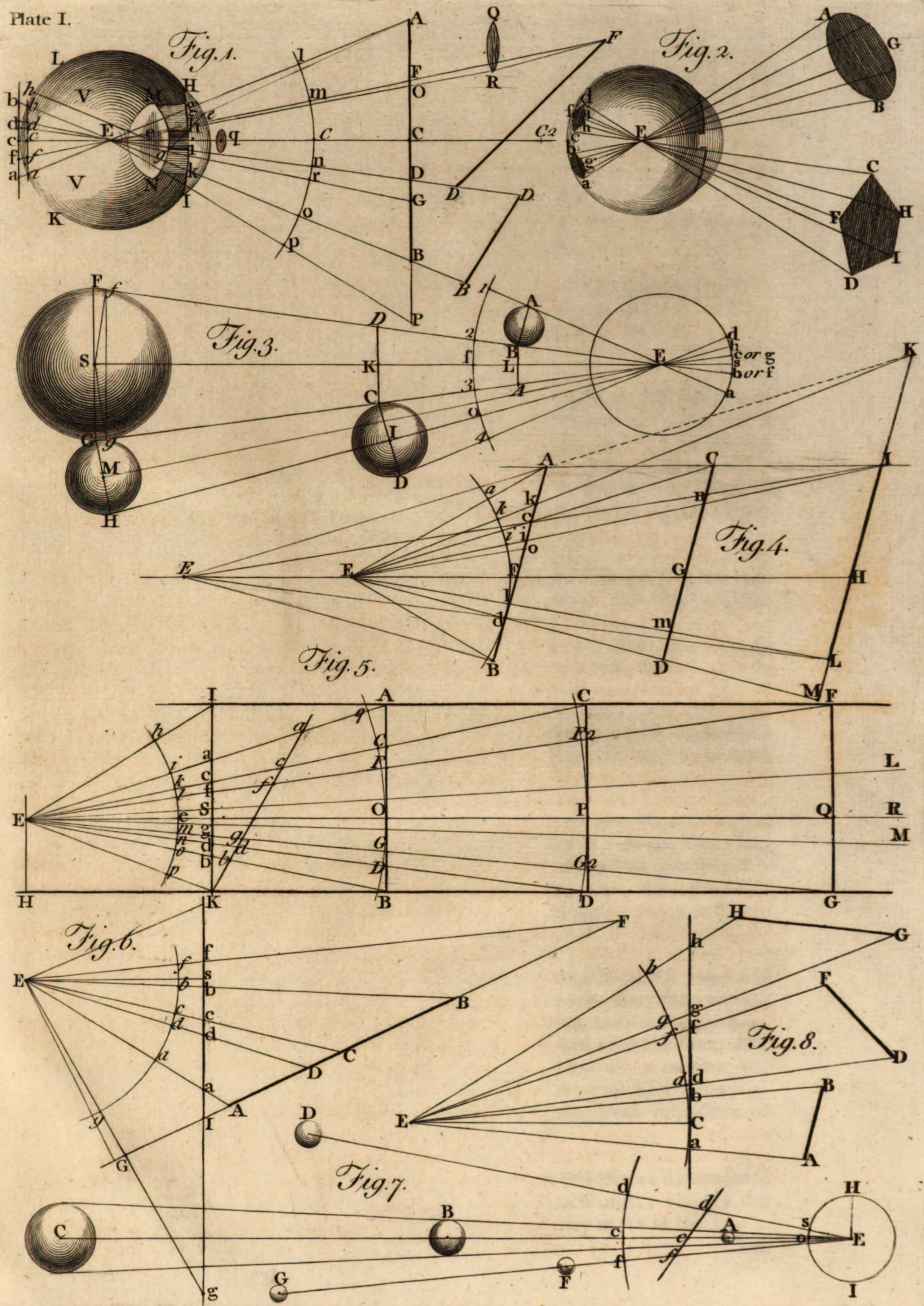
N. B. The Proportions CD, and FG, &c. on AB, are the same, as *cd* and *fg* on IK (AB being parallel to IK); wherefore, the Triangles AEB, aEb, also CED, CED, and cEd, &c. are similar; and therefore, as *fg*:*cd*, or to *ab*, :: *FG*:*CD*, or to AB. — — — — — 4. 6. El.

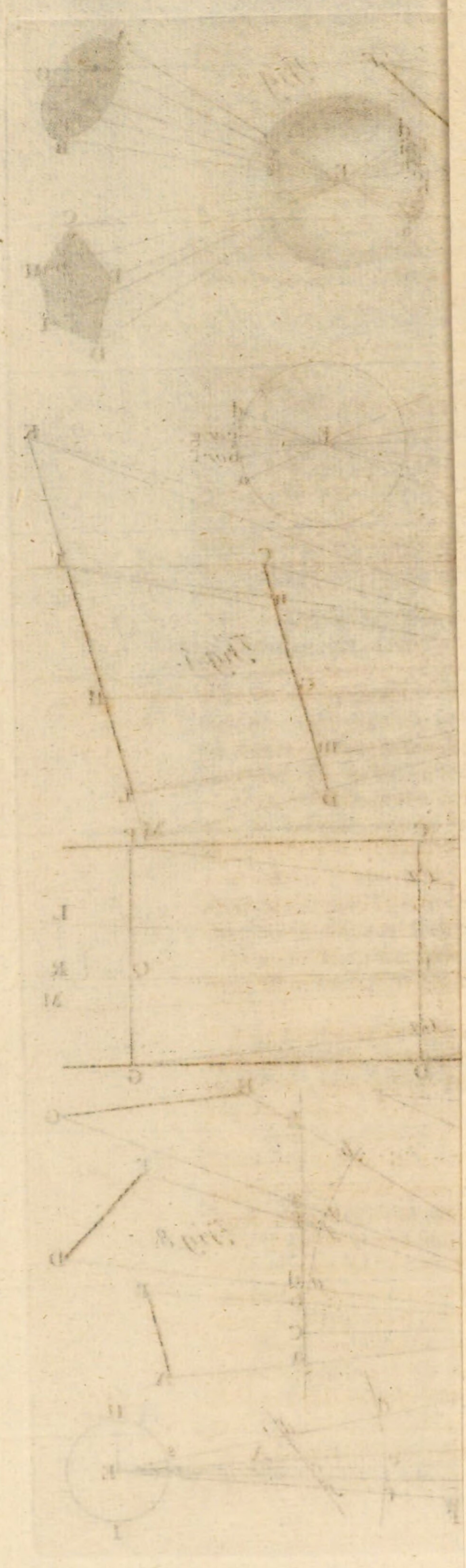
Consequently, Visual Rays, being cut by parallel Planes, in any position; are not only themselves cut in equal Ratio, but also the Sections, or the Projections on the Planes, by their sections with the Rays.

* 6. 6. El. And, their Proportions are as their Distances ES, EO, EP; i. e. as *fg*:*ES*::*FG*:*EO*::*F2G2*:*EP* and, as *FG*:*EQ*;* and so of any other.

Hence, it is manifest, that the Sections of any system of Rays, by parallel Planes, are similar.

PROBLEM.





P R O B L E M.

A Right Line, AB, being obliquely situated in respect of the Eye, at E, to determine the Point D, to which if the Axe of the Eye be directed, the two extremes, A and B, will appear alike distinct; so that AD and DB shall be seen under equal Angles.

Fig. 6.

Without drawing the Visual Rays.

Make AD to AB, as the distance of the Point A, from the Eye, E, is to the distance of the same Point A, added to the distance of B. — Pr. 32. El. Then, $AD:AB::EA:EA+EB$; and, $AD:DB::EA:EB$.

DEM. The Visual Rays EA, ED, EB being drawn, the Angle AEB is bisected by ED; wherefore, AD and DB are seen under equal Angles, at the Point E. For, if the Optic Angle AEB be bisected by the Right Line ED; then is $AD:DB::EA:EB$. — — — — — 3. 6. El.

2. If the Axe of the Eye be directed to C, the middle Point of AB, then will the Point B be more distinctly seen; because its Image falls nearer to the Image of C than the Point A. And, if the Ark cf be made equal ca and Ef be drawn, meeting AB produced in F; AC will then be to CF as EC to EF; and, notwithstanding the difference between AC and CF, their Images on the Retina, and consequently their apparent Proportions, are equal, being seen under equal Angles AEC equal CEF.

Now if those Visual Rays are cut by a Plane in the position IK; the part ac, the greater portion of af, will represent AC, the lesser Segment of AF; and cf, the lesser portion, represents CF, the greater Segment; For, since the Optic Angle, AEF, is bisected, by EC; $ac:cf::Ea:Ef$; — 3. 6. also, as $AC:CF::EA:EF$; consequently, ac, cf represents AC, CF.

3. If the Right Line AB be produced, at the extreme A, cutting the Plane IK, at I, the whole indefinite representation of that Line; on the Plane IK, is the section IK, of a Plane passing through the Line AB and the Eye, E, and terminated by a parallel Line, EK, in that Plane.

For, because EK is parallel to AB, they will appear to meet in a Point at an infinite Distance;* which Point is represented by the Point K, on the Plane IK; for, seeing that the Line EK passes through the Eye, E, its whole appearance is but a Point; consequently, the Point K represents the whole Line EK, produced infinitely; and consequently, AB, infinitely produced, will appear to meet EK in that Point.

* Theo. 2.

4. If the Line AB be produced on the other Side of the Plane IK, and any Point, G, be assumed, between the Eye and the Plane; its representation, on that Plane, is the Point g, in which the Right Line EG produced, cuts KI produced; the part Ig, beyond the Intersection I, represents IG, the portion of the Line, AB, lying on the side of the Plane, IK, towards the Eye; as Ia or Ib represents the part IA or IB on the other Side; and, if the Angle AEB be equal AEG, the portion AG appears equal to AB. All which is so very obvious, from inspection of the Diagram, it is needless to say more about it.

5. After the same manner as the apparent magnitudes of Objects are determined, so are their apparent Distances, or Bearings, in respect of each other; viz. by the Degrees on the Ark of a Circle, which measure the Angles they make at the Eye.

F

Let

Plate I. Let C, D, and F, be three Objects, and E the place of the Eye.

Fig. 7.

Draw the Visual Rays CE, DE, FE; then, the Angles DEC, CEF are the Optic Angles of their apparent Distances, or Bearings at the Station E.

Notwithstanding their real Distances from each other, CF is nearly double that of CD, yet, the Angle CEF, is much less than the Angle DEC; as it is evident, from the portions, cf and cd, of the Ark df.

If fd be supposed the section of a Plane, the appearances, or places of those Objects thereon, are at f , c , and d .

6. Suppose C, D, and F to be Stars, in the unbounded Expanse of the Heavens, at an immense distance from each other and from the Eye, at E.

It is impossible to form an Idea of their real Distances or Situations, in respect of each other; for, if the Star C was at B, and F at G, or any where else in the direction EG, their apparent places are still at c and f , in an imaginary Arch of the Heavens, as it appears to us, equally distant in every part.

Now, since the whole Diameter of the Earth's Orbit is not sufficient to make any sensible difference in their Bearings, and, consequently, of their apparent Places, in the Arch df , there cannot be any positive Idea formed of their real Distances; for the portions fc and cd , of the Arch fd , are the measures of their apparent Distances, only; i. e. of the Angles dEc , cEf , or the Originals of these Angles DEC, CEF under which they are seen.

7. Hence, is constructed the Celestial Globe or Sphere, which is a true Picture of the Heavens, of Stars, &c. divided into various Figures called Constellations.

If $d c f$ be supposed a portion of a Sphere; or, let HI be an entire Globe.

It is evident, that from its Center, E, which is also the Center of the Arch df (E being supposed the Eye of a Spectator) the Star C will appear on the Globe at o , and D at s , &c. in the same position, situation and distance, in proportion to the Radius, EH or Eo, to Ec, as in the imaginary Arch of the Heavens, df . So that, whether the real Star be at A, B, or C, or any where else in the Right Line EC; its apparent or representative Place, on the Globe HI, will still be at o ; and consequently, can make no difference, in its true Place thereon; but its apparent Magnitude will be in proportion to its Distance, nearly.

8. From what has been advanced in this Section, it is evident that there is a manifest difference between the Representation of an Object on a Plane and its true Appearance; which Difference is the greater, as the Eye is nearer to the Object. For, since the Visual Rays must necessarily cut any Plane, on which they fall, more and more oblique, the farther their Intersections are from that Point, in which a perpendicular Line from the Eye would cut the Plane; consequently, the Representations of Objects, on a Plane, cannot be in proportion to their true Appearance, but deviate continually, more and more, as they fall farther from the Point described. Whereas, on a spherical Surface, which is every where equally distant from its Center, every Right Line, and in every Direction, which tends to its Center, is perpendicular to its Surface, and none of them can be said to cut it oblique; consequently, the true Representations, and also the true Appearances of Objects, can only be depicted on the Surface of a Sphere; that is, the Representation on its Surface and the true Appearance of the Object, from the Center, as the Point of View, are the same.

9. Let

9. Let AB, DF and GH be three Objects, promiscuously situated in respect of the Eye, at E.

Fig. 8.

It is manifest, that, whilst the Eye remains at E, the three Objects must necessarily appear the same, upon any Surface whatever, cutting the Visual Rays EA, EB, &c.

Suppose a h a section of the Rays, made by a Plane, and EC a Perpendicular from the Eye to the Plane, cutting it at C. Then, the Visual Rays EA, EB, which are nearest to the Point C, cut that Plane less oblique than EF; and EG, EH are still more oblique, as they are more remote from C. Whereas, on a spherical Surface of which a *dfb* may be supposed a Section, being an ark of a Circle, described on the center E, the Rays EA, EF, EH, &c. are all perpendicular to its Surface, being perpendicular to the Ark *Cfb*. Wherefore, since Ea, Ed, Eg, &c. are equal, for, they are all Radii; consequently, the surface of a Sphere is equidistant from its Center, in every part; and, the Representations, a b, *df*, and *gh*, of the Objects AB, DF and GH, on its Surface, are also their true Appearances, from the Point of View E.

But, on the Plane, or its Section, a h, the Object AB, has its Representation, a b, nearly equal to a b on the Curve; whereas, *df*, it is obvious and demonstrable, is larger than *df*; and *gh* still larger than *gh*, as it is more remote from the Point C; nevertheless, its true appearance is *gh* on the Curve, or spherical Surface; for, they both represent the same Object, from the same Point of View, which cannot vary in its Appearance.

Therefore, the Representations of Objects, on various Surfaces, and in various Situations, although they may differ greatly in Figure, will, if truly represented, appear the same in the true Point of View.

10. The three Objects AB, DF and GH, though of various dimensions, appear equal; not owing to their Distances, but to their Positions in respect of the Eye, being seen under equal Angles, AEB, DEF and GEH; as the portions a b, *df*, and *gh*, of the Ark *Cfb* indicates. Whereas, their Representations on the Plane, of which a h is supposed a Section, are unequal; for, a b, the representation of AB, being nearest to the Center, C, is the least; *df* is greater than a b, and *gh* than *df*.

Yet, it is manifest that the Representations, a b, *df*, and *gh*, have the same appearance to the Eye at E, as their corresponding Images, a b, *df* and *gh*, on the spherical Surface. For, the Eye being in the true point of View, at E, they are both seen by the same Visual Rays as the original Objects themselves; and, consequently, under the same Optic Angles. Wherefore their Appearances are the same on either Surface; by Theorem 1st.

SECTION

S E C T I O N IV.

Containing some objections to the received Opinion of the Cause of VISION.

IN the last Section I have explained, demonstrated, and briefly illustrated the whole Theory of Direct Vision; or so much, at least, as is essential, to give a clear and just Idea of Perspective. To dwell longer on it, in this place, is unnecessary; seeing that, Perspective itself, in Theory, is nothing more than a continuation of the same Science. But, before I enter upon the subject of Perspective, I shall, in this Section, give my objections to the received Opinion of the cause of Vision.

It is not an easy matter to remove prejudices, which are deep rooted; especially, if they are strengthened with the sanction of Men of known abilities. I am at a loss to conceive why it is, that the generality of mankind so willingly impose on their own judgments, or are so ready to be imposed upon by others; eager of being amused with deep and profound Discourses, pretending to penetrate into the mysteries of Nature; which, neither themselves nor their Authors know any thing of. In fact, we see and know nothing further than the surfaces of Bodies; the formation of them, or their constituent parts, we are, and ever shall be, totally ignorant of. We daily see the effects of one Body acting on another, and, by repeated Experiments, we find their full force; that they are regularly and uniformly the same; but, the true cause of those effects are to us unknown; we cannot form an adequate Idea, how, and in what manner, they act and produce such wonderful effects, although so simple in their Nature.

We have not the least Idea how a Solid can become a Fluid and a Fluid become again a Solid, by different Degrees of Heat; what Fire is we know not, nor how it acts on Bodies, so as to dissolve some, to change the nature of others, and, in a great measure to annihilate them. We know as little of the Element of the Air we breathe in; or, by what means it is often so violently agitated in one place (as in high Winds) whilst it remains at rest, or has a contrary motion in another. We know not how any Solid is dissolved by a Fluid, and the Solid become perfectly liquidated; how two different Fluids mix and incorporate, so as to be beyond the power or art of Man to separate again, if they have an equal specific Gravity; nay two Solids, as Metals, &c. may be so incorporated as to be quite another kind of Body; and the constituent parts, of each, beyond the power of Art to dissolve, or to distinguish them apart. Some again may be separated, if they have not the same specific gravity, as Gold or Silver, from any other baser Metal. Some Fluids can never incorporate; as Oil or Spirits with Water, &c.

How a Fluid is composed, or what form its minutest particles are of, we are totally ignorant. Is it not ridiculous to suppose Particles of any Figure? It is the common Opinion that they are globular; because, the least drop of Water or other Fluid assumes that form, than which nothing is more absurd; because, perfect Globes may be piled into a Pyramid, as firm and permanent, almost, as Cubes, with very little lateral pressure; consequently, a Fluid might be suspended in the same Figure, if its constituent Particles were solid Globes. For, on the supposition of Particles, they must necessarily be solid, or each Particle must, again, be composed of Particles.

To compare a Fluid with fine Sand is truly ridiculous. Sand will support itself in a pyramidal form; and, if the grains were perfectly globular, it would always assume one, of the figure of its Base, terminating in a single grain at the Vertex.

It is not so with Fluids; a Fluid cannot rest till it recovers an equilibrium in every part; presently acquiring a perfectly level surface. Besides, if its Particles were globular, there must be interstices between them filled with Air, which cannot possibly be incorporated with Water, as, in that case, it would be, to all sense. Also, if Metals, &c. when in a fluid state, by means of Fire, were composed of globular Particles, it is reasonable to suppose they would remain so when fixed; consequently, they would be extremely porous and admit Air to pass freely through, which is repugnant to common experience. No, say those acute reasoners, it is by reason of the Particles changing their Figure that they become fixed. Amazing truly! that the least particles of Matter, which I should suppose (on their Hypothesis) impenetrable by any means, can be varied in their Shape or Figure. It is also amazing, that, by being globular, they are so easily separated, when in a Fluid state, and, when fixed, are so extremely difficult to dis sever.

If the Particles of solid Bodies are kept together only by cohesion, why does not the same power act on them in their fluid state? or why, when the particles of a solid Body are, by any means, separated, do they not cohere together again? or, what reason can be given, why they should cohere more strongly one way than another; as in Wood of all kinds? It is downright Sophistry, all; a language, or rather jargon, without meaning. That Bodies may be separated into Parts or Particles is undoubted; but, that they are composed of Particles, is what I cannot give them credit for. Every Body, whether Solid or Fluid, before any of its parts are separated, is one entire Mass of Matter.

Again, if Fluids are composed of Particles, and allowing them to be transparent in their nature, their globular form would render them, in some degree, opaque; so that, a Fluid would not admit of distinct Vision through it. Now, I am clearly of opinion that all the parts of a Fluid lie perfectly close to each other, without any Cavities interspersed; it is impossible there can be any; consequently, there is not the least particle of Air contained in Fluids. If any dissoluble Body be immersed, as Sugar, &c. in Water; does not the Air, which is contained in its cavities, immediately ascend to the Surface, as soon as it is at liberty, by the dissolution of the immersed Body?

The cause of Transparency, either in Fluids, or, more particularly, in solid Bodies, is, to us, an impenetrable mystery. It is astonishing that there should be distinct and perfect Vision through Glass, or pellucid Stones; and, with all the knowledge and penetration human wisdom can pretend to, we cannot form an Idea tending to comprehend it. Yet, this aspiring, presumptuous, all-sufficient Man, would pretend to account for the cause of Vision, itself, and for all the other Senses; nay (if we will take their words for it) for every operation in Nature. But I shall make free to tell them, plainly, that they cannot account for one. First, let them account for their own existence; can they tell where the first spring of self-motion begins? no, not so much as for the motion of a Finger.

As for the generality of Mankind, they neither do nor are capable of judging for themselves, in many cases; and only give their assent, or dissent as they are influenced, or depending on the judgment of others, whom they either know or believe to have Judgment. That this is the case, in general, is certain; and is the reason why the opinions of some great Men are, though ever so arbitrary, adopted as orthodox; because, there are but few who dare venture to contradict them, and think or judge for themselves. And, because those Persons have advanced some received and established truths, these therefore conclude, that all which they presume to advance must necessarily be so; than which, nothing is more uncertain.

Those profound Gentlemen knowing their own importance, and the deference which the World pays to their Opinions, are but too apt to be intoxicated with it,

and often take too much Consequence to themselves; imagining, that they are really endowed with a penetration beyond the rest of Mankind. Or, from the knowledge they have of Mankind, the great deference they pay to their own superiority over them, and the implicit assent which is given to all their productions, make them forget, that they, as well as the rest, are fallible.

Respecting Vision. It is said in Smith's Optics, Page the first, and that from the Authority of Sir Isaac Newton, "that we shall find it difficult to conceive, "Light to be any thing else but very small and distinct particles of Matter, incessantly thrown out from shining substances; and every way dispersed by reflection from all others." I freely own, that I am at a loss to conceive how it can be Matter, and that for several reasons which may be given.

First; it is an indisputable Maxim, universally allowed by all Men of common understandings, that two Bodies cannot occupy or fill the same Space at the same Time; even Air cannot be where there is already any other Body. Steam, or Water expanded, almost, if not totally, excludes Air; consequently, no other Body can occupy the same Space where there is Air. Now, since the whole of Space, within our Atmosphere, at least, is filled with Air, how can it be also filled with Light, if Light be, also, a Body composed of Matter? for, since it is manifest, to ocular conviction, that, in full Day Light, there is no part of the Space around us but what is wholly illumined; because, if any part was unillumined it could not be seen; consequently, being wholly and in every part filled with Light, if it be a Body, Air must be totally excluded; agreeable to the general Maxim, that two Bodies cannot fill the same Space. But, I presume, we do not find that to be the Case; for, the Space is filled with Air, and cannot possibly be excluded by Light.

I expect it will be alledged, that Air, being a Fluid, is composed of globular Particles; and, that Light fills up the interstices between them. Of what shape and magnitude, then, are the particles of Light, compared with the particles of Air? If Light be an existing Medium it must also be a Fluid; consequently, its Particles are also globular. And, if it be supposed to proceed from the Luminary, progressively, in Right Lines, in all directions, I own I am at a loss to conceive how that can possibly be effected, through innumerable globular particles of Air; to say nothing of the inconceivable velocity of its motion, being supposed to proceed from the Sun to the Earth in seven minutes and a half. For which extremely nice calculation we are indebted to Romer; who first observed, that the Eclipses of the Satellites of Jupiter happen, when in Opposition, that is, when the Earth is in a Right Line between the Sun and Jupiter, fifteen minutes sooner than when in Conjunction, or the Sun in a Right Line between the Earth and Jupiter.* The difference of the distance of Jupiter from the Earth, at these two periods, is the whole Diameter of the Earth's Orbit; computed at more than 160 millions of Miles; half of which is the Distance of the Sun from the Earth. From which curious observation it is conjectured, that we receive fresh Light from the Sun every seven or eight minutes; that is, the Sun being supposed to be continually emitting Light, it fills a concave Sphere, equal in Diameter to the Earth's Orbit, in that Time. Quere; how is the Sun supplied? and, being Matter, what becomes of it?

* It very rarely, if ever, happens, that they are in a Right Line, in a strict sense; because, the Plane of the Orbit of Jupiter is inclined to the Ecliptic, that is, to the Plane of the Earth's Orbit, in an Angle of one Degree and 20 Minutes. But, the Line of the Nodes, that is, the Line of intersection of the Planes of the two Orbits, is supposed to have a revolution (as the Moon's Orbit in 19 Years) but in what time is not, I believe, as yet determined. Consequently, they can never be perfectly in a Right Line, but only when the Line of the Nodes passes through the Centers of all the three; viz. the Sun, the Earth, and Jupiter. Wherefore, at a Conjunction, Jupiter will appear either above or below the Sun, according as he is in the upper or lower part of his Orbit; and, at an Opposition, the Earth will be either above or below a Right Line passing through the Centers of the Sun and Jupiter.

Now,

Now, admitting this extraordinary observation to be truly calculated, it undoubtedly proves that Vision is not instantaneous, at any distance; which seems reasonable; but I cannot see that it proves the progression of Matter from Jupiter to us. Besides, the Light which proceeds from Jupiter, or his Satellites, is but reflected, at second Hand; perhaps, Light, coming immediately from the Sun, may be much swifter in its motion. I am almost of opinion, that if it were possible to screen the Sun from our sight, by the interposition of an opaque Body, close to its Surface, being removed in an instant, that we should see the Luminary instantaneously; and, the whole Space between be instantly illumined.

The Law of reflected Bodies, that is, the velocity with which an elastic Body rebounds, according to the force by which it is first impelled, I am not acquainted with. But, of this I am well convinced, that the velocity of any impelled Body is not uniformly regular, but is continually varying, and the Body, in motion, tending to rest; consequently, it cannot acquire an additional force by striking against another Body, at rest, so as to rebound with the same velocity by which it was at first impelled; and, if Light, as a Body, acts on the same principles, it must come, immediately from the Sun to us, with a greater velocity than when reflected from any other Body.

The Distance of Jupiter from the Sun is computed at 424 millions of Miles; and the Earth but 81 millions; which, is not one fifth part of the Distance of Jupiter. Consequently, the velocity with which Light is first impelled must be greatly diminished before it reaches Jupiter, and more so in being reflected back from Jupiter to the Earth. I shall endeavour to illustrate what I advance.

Let S represent the Sun, in the center of our System, of Planets, &c. and CDEF the Earth's Orbit, whose semidiameter SE is 81,000,000, of Miles. Plate II.
Fig. 9.

Let AB be a portion of the Orbit of Jupiter, and J the place of Jupiter therein; whose Distance, SJ, is above five times SE or SC. Let a b be the Orbit of one of Jupiter's Satellites, in which the Satellite is supposed to be, at a, emerging from behind Jupiter, after an Eclipse.

2. It is affirmed that we see Objects, only by means of material Rays of Light, reflected from them to the Eye; which impress on that Organ the perception of Vision.

Suppose the Satellite, at c, to be in a direct Line behind Jupiter; it is plain that it could not be seen at C or E, because it would be hid by the Body of Jupiter; but, as soon as it emerges, that is, as soon as it can appear, as at a, in the Right Line Ca or Ea, it becomes visible; not, merely, because there is no other Body between, but because it becomes illumined from the Sun, in the Right Line Sa; which, whilst behind Jupiter, from a to b, was deprived of Light.

Let Sa represent a Ray of Light from the Sun to the Satellite at a; the Earth, at C, being directly between. The same individual particles of Light, which pass from the Sun to Jupiter, pass by the Earth to Jupiter, and back again, before either Jupiter or the Satellite can be seen; according to their Hypothesis.

It is reasonable to suppose, that the velocity with which those particles of Matter first set off, from the Sun, is greater than when they arrive at the Earth; how much, then, must it be decreased before they reach Jupiter? Which Opinion, Rohault (Chap. 27, Art. 34,) endeavours, though in a very lame manner, to confirm, by a comparison with a conical Vessel filled with Water; being raised, at its Surface, by ejecting in more Water at the Vertex. The comparison has indeed some affinity, though a very gross one, because Light is supposed to expand as it spreads; by which means, its direct motion may be equible.

Suppose

Plate II.

Fig. 9.

Suppose Light loses one fourth of its velocity before it reaches Jupiter, it can have lost but one twentieth part at the Earth; and it is reasonable to suppose that the force with which it returns from Jupiter, cannot be equal to what it came with. Suppose then it has lost a fourth part more of its force, before it reaches the Earth again, at C; which, considering how languid its Light is, compared with the Light of the Sun, is very moderate. According then to this supposition, Light comes from Jupiter to the Earth, with little more than half the velocity with which it comes from the Sun, directly.

C represents the place of the Earth, at an Opposition and E at the Conjunction; the difference in the Distance of those two situations, from Jupiter to the Earth, is CE, the Diameter of the Earth's Orbit.

Now the motion of a Particle of Light (for a Ray, or continued Right Line of Light, I have no conception of) in its passage from the Sun to the Earth, from S to C, is, I presume, at its first and greatest velocity, always the same; but, at J, it has lost one fourth of its force; and, from J to C again, it has lost a fourth more; and consequently, in its passage from C to E, which is nearly half JC, it must necessarily have lost one eighth of the velocity it had, at its return to C; at which time the calculation is made.

Wherefore, the motion of Light, from C to E, has, at most, but half the velocity it has from S, to C or E, directly; and, it passes, according to Romer's calculation, from C to E in 15 Minutes; consequently, it passes from S to E (with double velocity) in a fourth part of the time, that is in 3 minutes and 3 quarters.

But, if the velocity, to and again, be regular and uniform (which I believe is contrary to the laws of motion, of Bodies impelled and reflected again) being 15 minutes in passing from C to E, half of which, SE, must consequently take 7 minutes and a half. For, a Satellite, emerging at a, when the Earth is at C, appears 7 minutes and a half sooner, and at E 7 minutes and a half later, than at D or F, where the distance of Jupiter from the Sun and the Earth is equal, according to the calculations made by the ablest Men. But since it is not possible, or, at least, probable that the velocity of Light can be uniform and equal, at all Distances from the Sun (if it has any motion at all) the greatest velocity must be at its first emission from the Luminary; and consequently, it takes less time in passing from the Sun to the Earth than half CE, in its return from Jupiter.

3. It is certain that no opaque Body, that is, such as are not luminous, can be seen at a great Distance; unless its magnitude be sufficient to obstruct a great quantity of the Light of the Heavens; or when in a direct Line with a luminous Body, so as to obstruct its Light; or, when it is so situated, in respect of a luminous Body, that the Light, it receives from the Luminary, is reflected again,* of which, the various appearances of the Moon is sufficient proof. Consequently, we could not discern either Jupiter or his Satellites (whose immense Distance is more than seventeen hundred times the Moon's Distance) if they were not illumined by the Sun.

Jupiter being a superior Planet, that is, he moves in an Orbit beyond, yet concentric with the Earth's, he is, consequently, always illumined on that Face towards the Earth; and consequently, may always be seen, when above the Horizon, by the naked Eye; except when in near vicinity with the Sun. But, the Satellites are secondary Planets or Moons (of which Jupiter has four) accompanying the primary ones, as the Moon does the Earth; and are so very small, in comparison of their primaries, that they cannot be seen at that distance without a good Telescope.

* By Light being reflected, I would not be understood to mean, that there is any kind of real Matter projected from the reflecting Body; but only, by being illumined, itself, it becomes, in some degree, luminous, so as to shine with its borrowed lustre, and illumine others.

Now,

Fig:9.

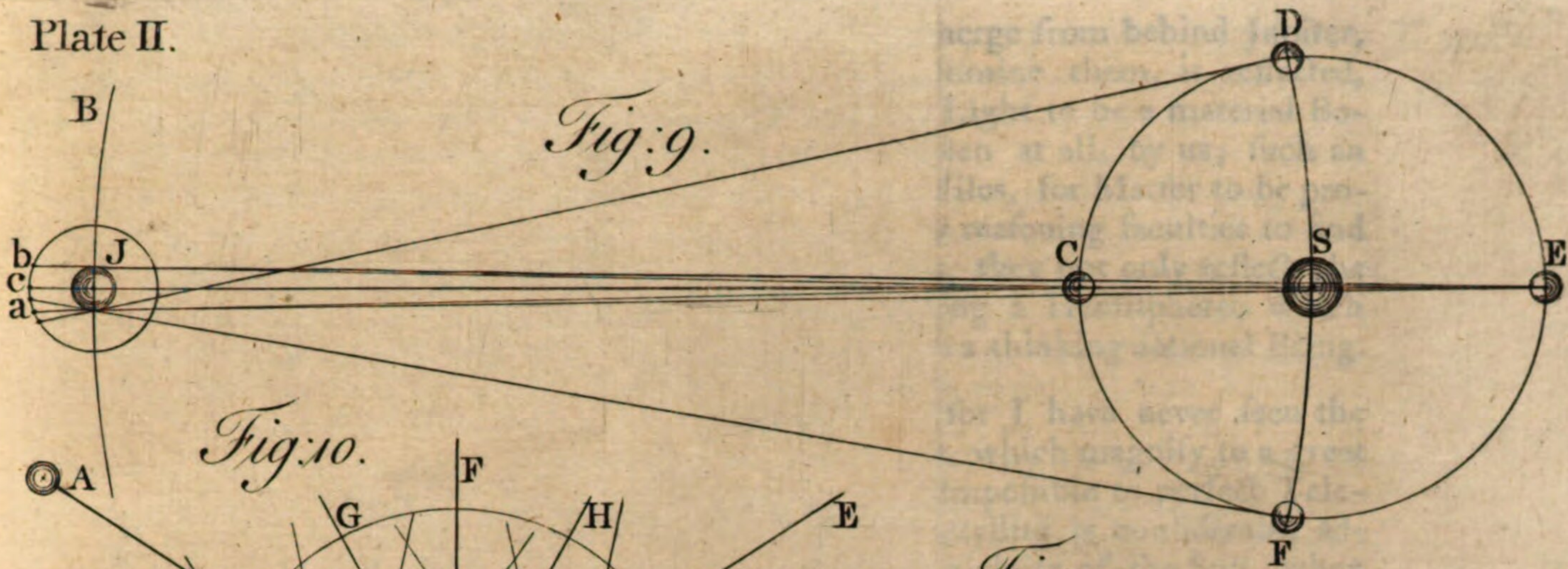


Fig:10.

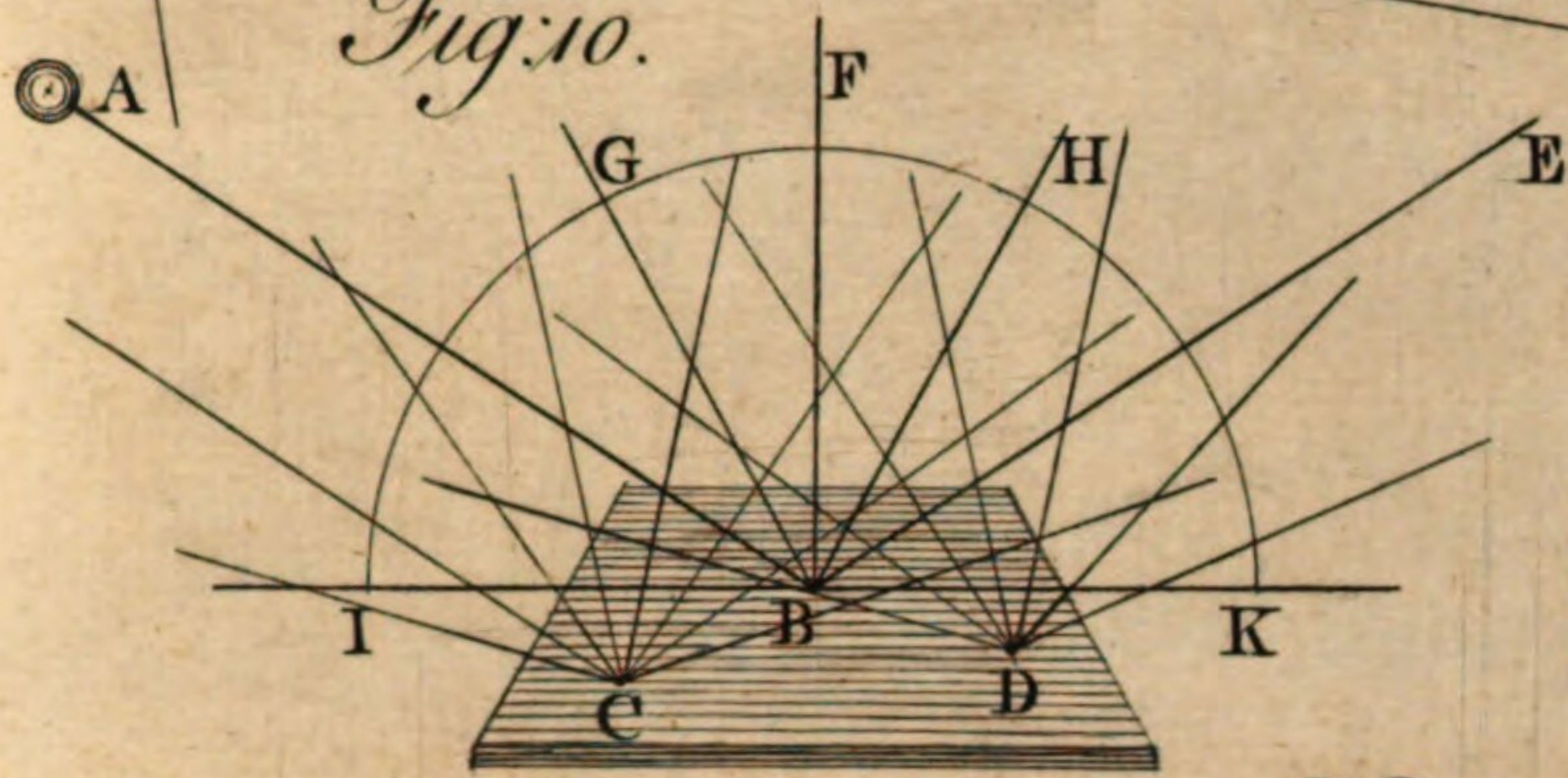


Fig:11.

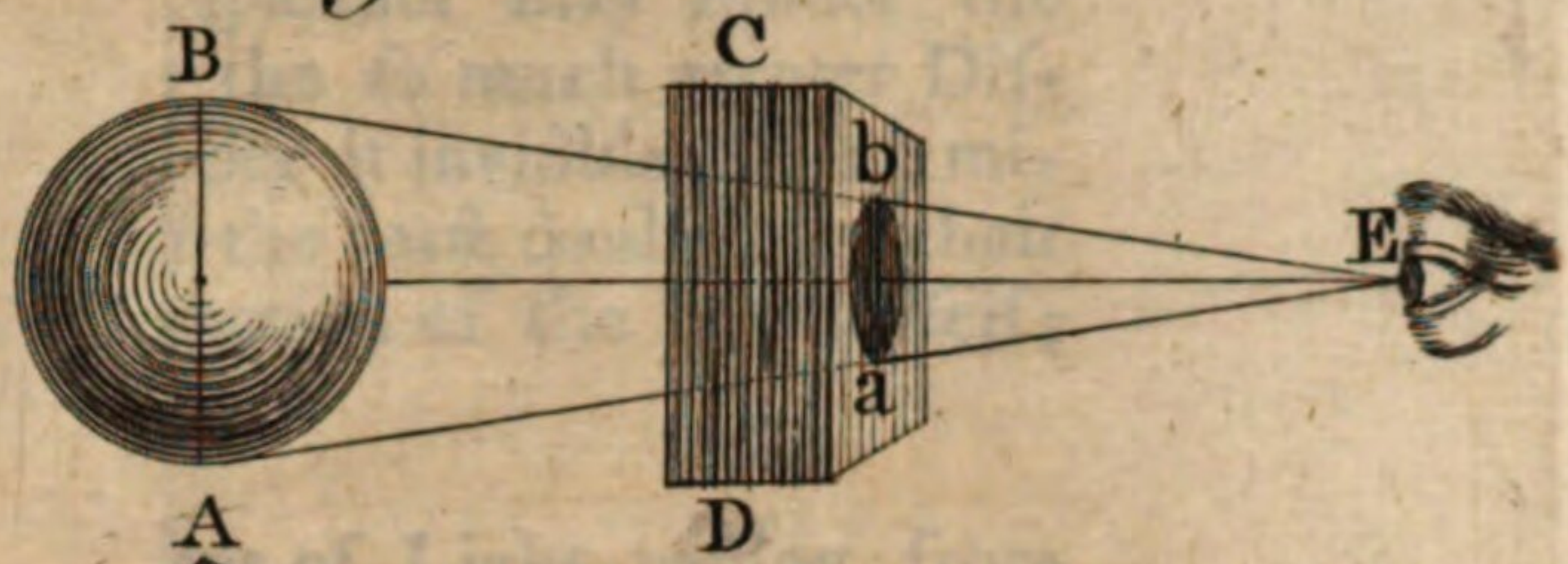


Fig:12.

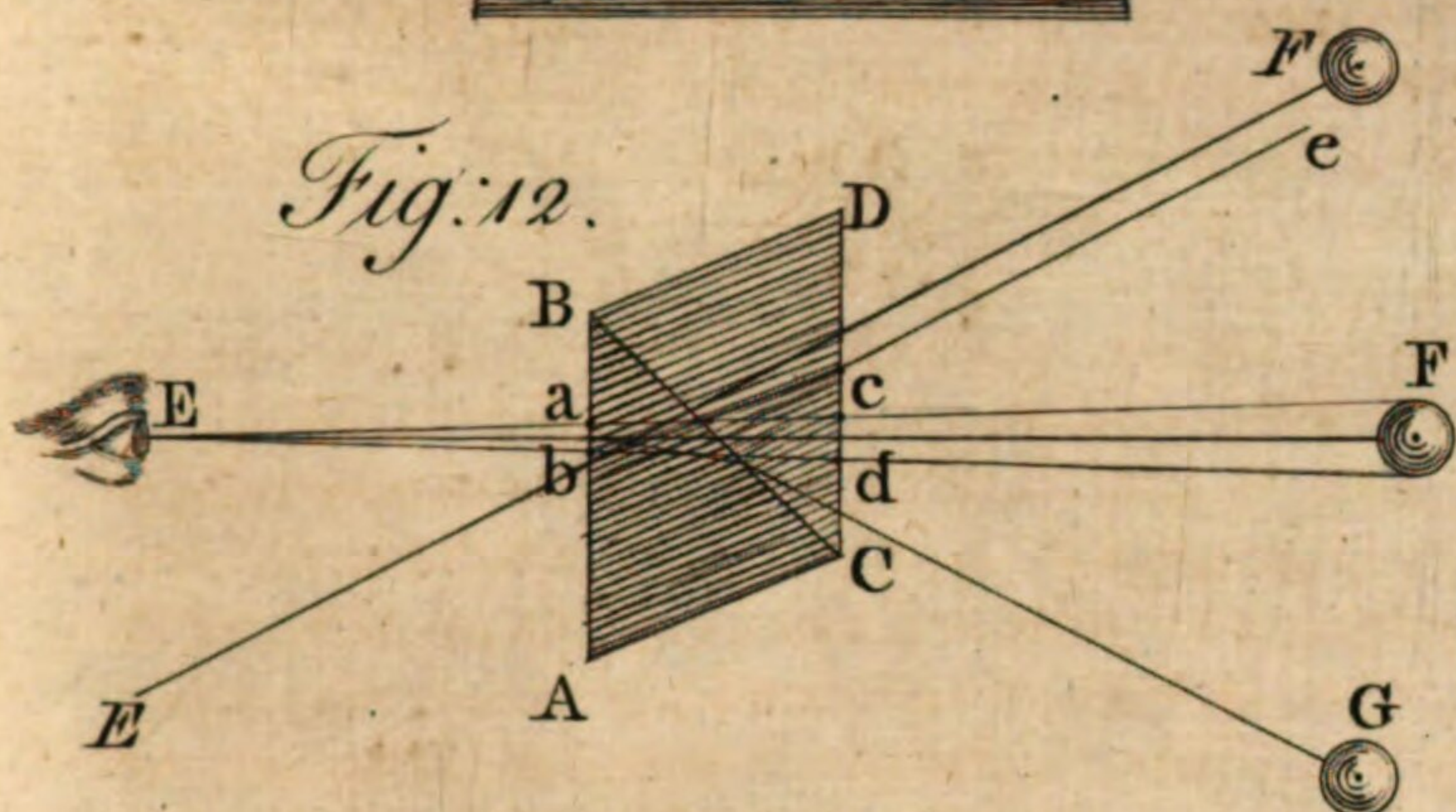


Fig:13.

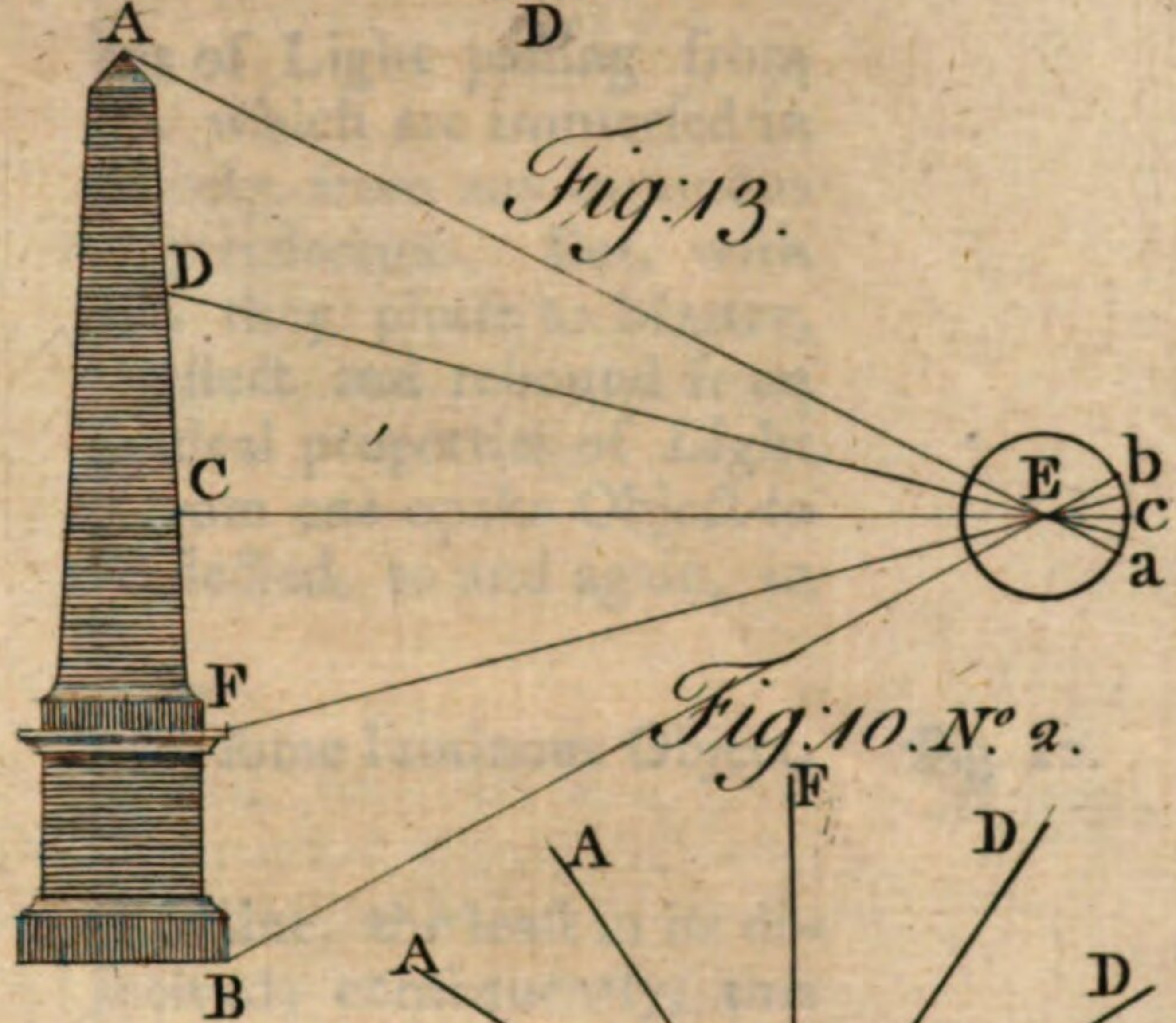


Fig:14.

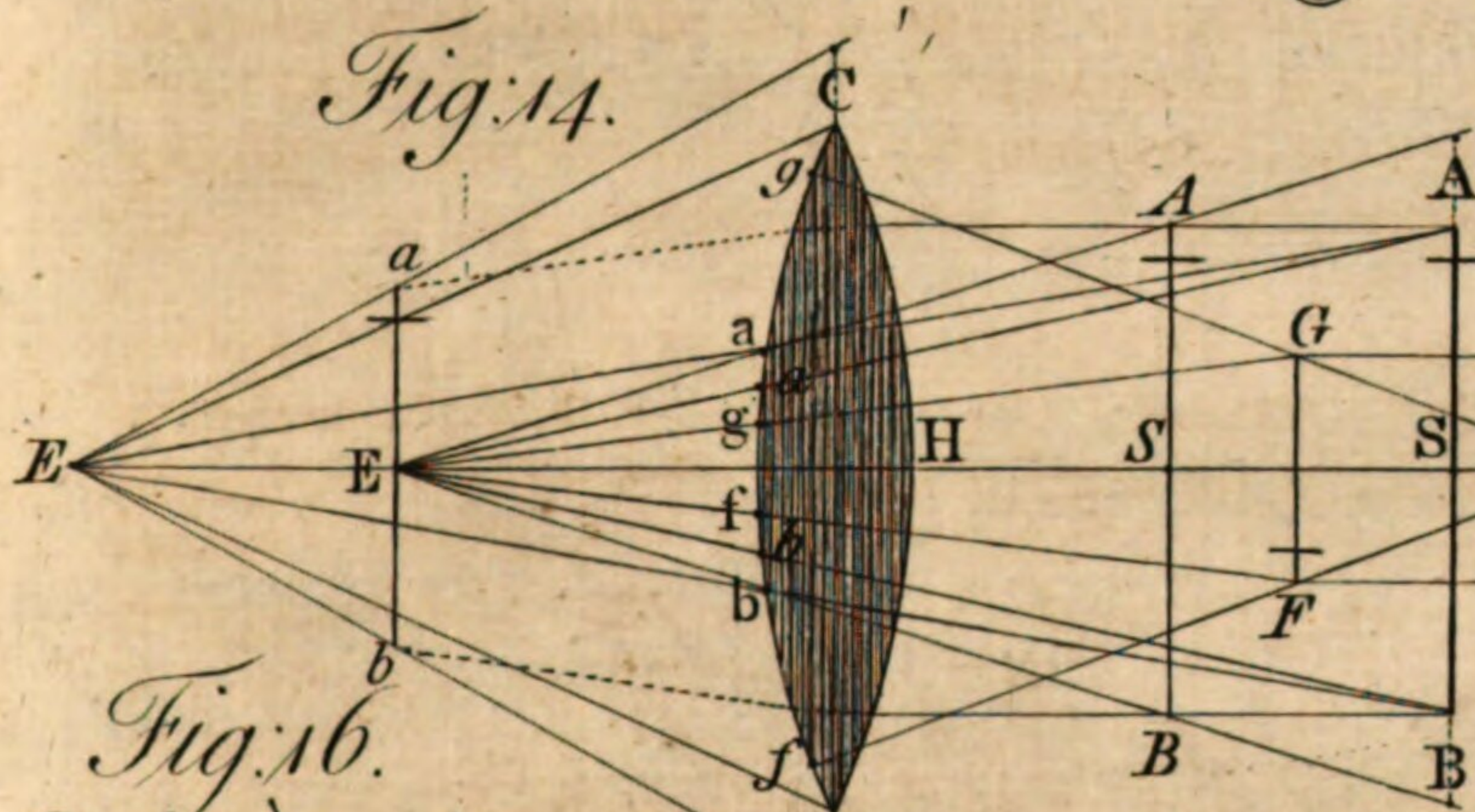


Fig:10. N° 2.

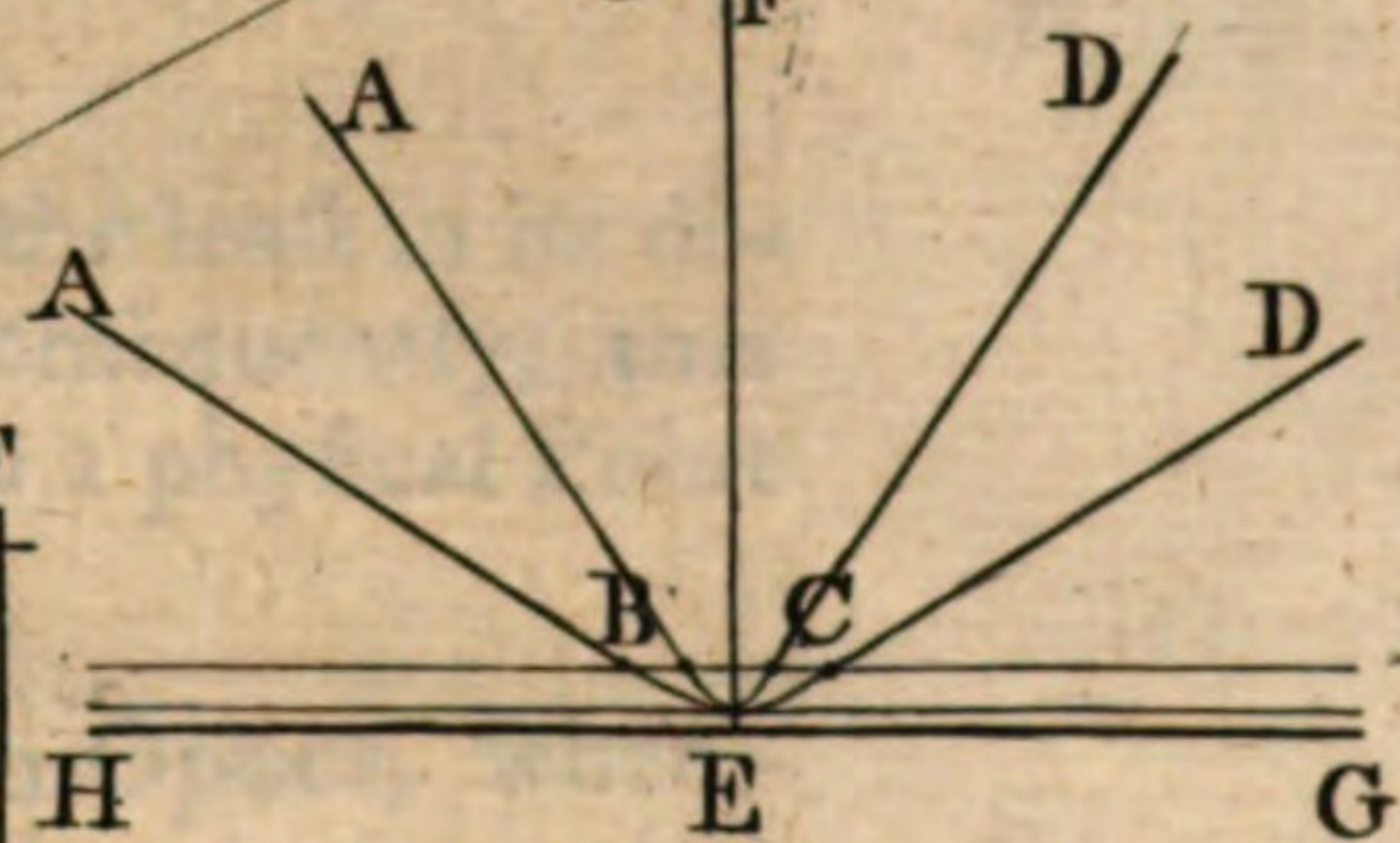


Fig:16.

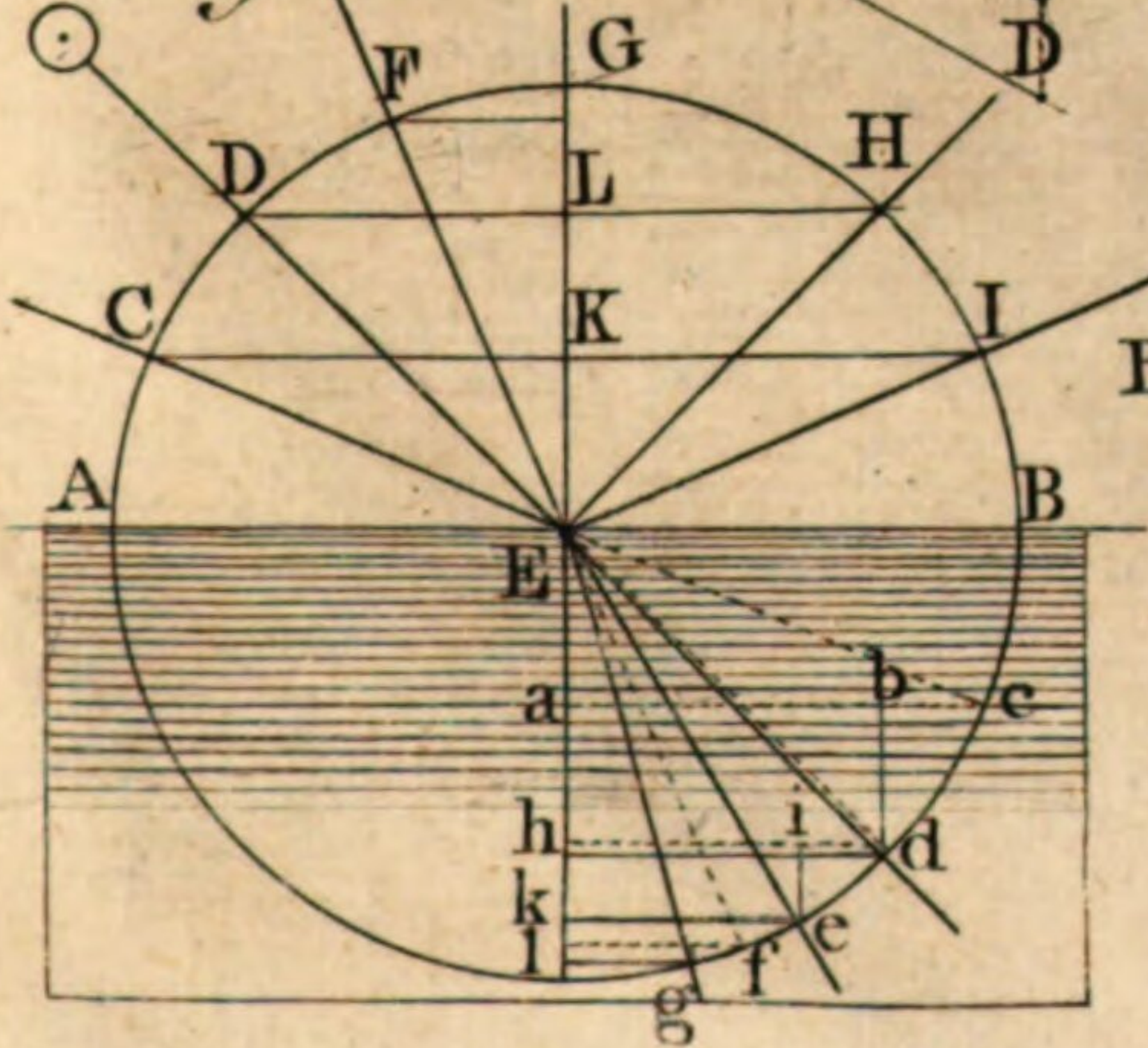


Fig:15.

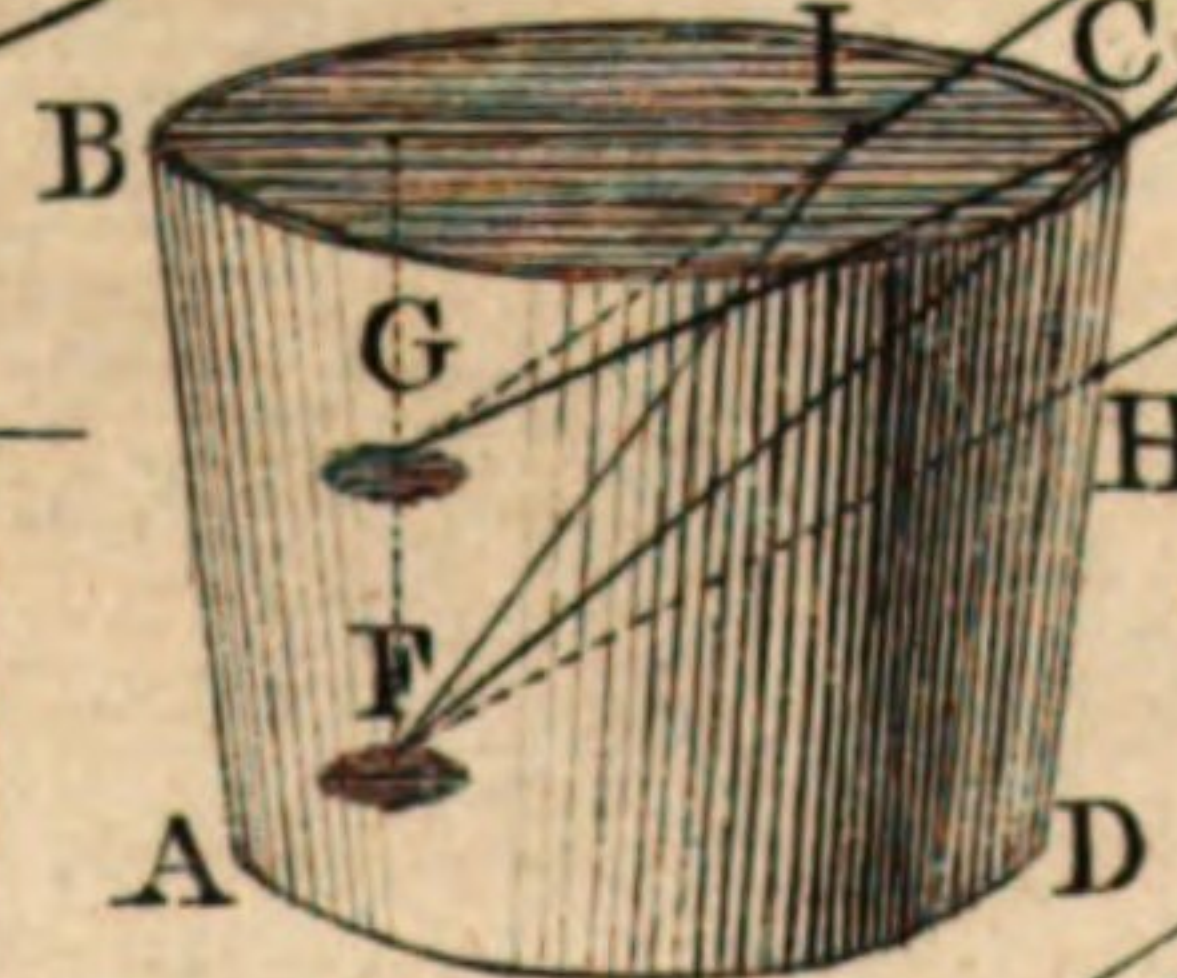
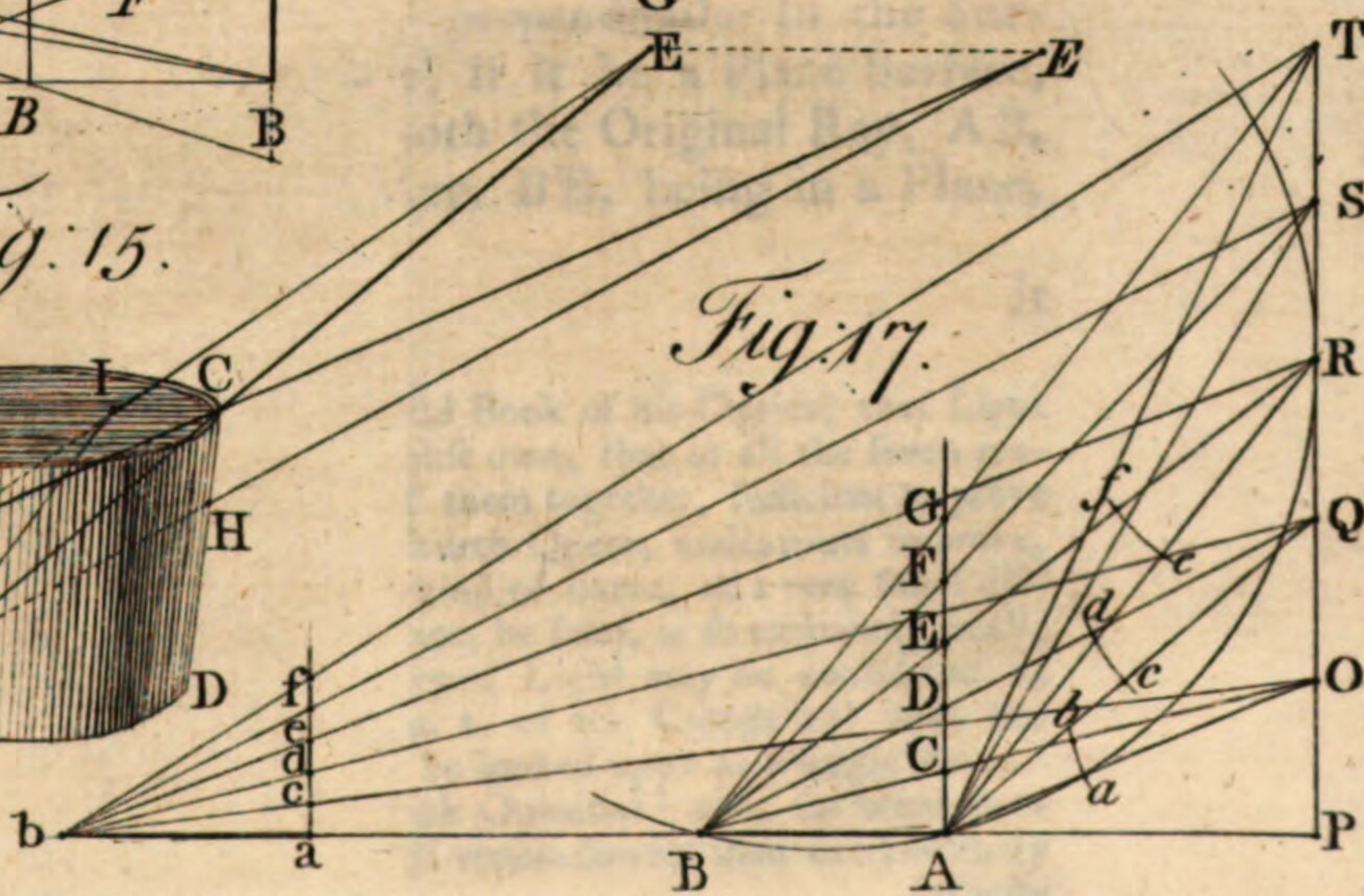
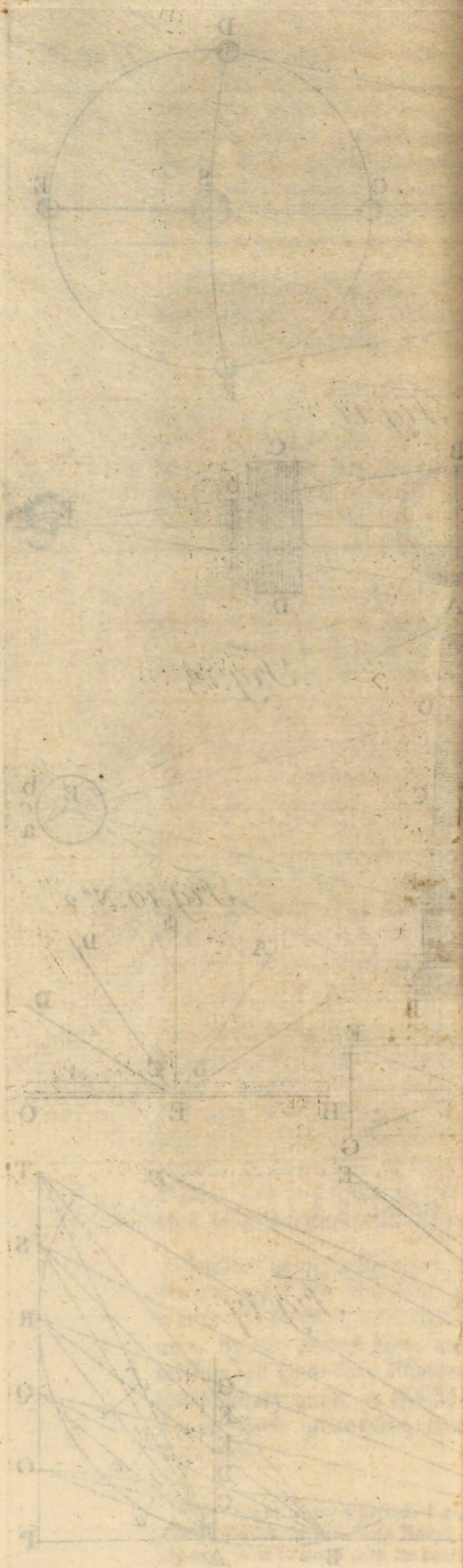


Fig:17.





Now, if those Satellites cannot be seen, after they emerge from behind Jupiter, untill the Light, which is always ready at hand to illumine them, is reflected, back again, from the Satellite to us; and, suppose this Light to be a material Body, I am firmly persuaded that they would never be seen at all, by us; such an immense Space, from a to E, above 500 millions of Miles, for Matter to be projected in about 45 minutes, is beyond the power of my reasoning faculties to find credit for (with God nothing is impossible.) Besides, they not only reflect the Light directly, but also obliquely in all Directions, filling a Hemisphere; which is too gross an improbability (being Matter) to pass with a thinking rational Being.

The whole of this Phænomenon I suppose is this; (for I have never seen the Experiment; as it must require extraordinary Telescopes, which magnify to a great Degree, to discern the emerſion distinctly) either it is impossible to perfect Telescopes sufficient to discern the emerſion, till after the Satellite is considerably advanced from behind Jupiter; and also, from the near vicinity of the Sun, when in Conjunction with the Earth, at E, whose superior splendor may hinder the Satellite from being seen, for some time; together with the so much greater Distance, than when at C; all which, may concur to render it invisible for 15 minutes, after it might be visible from C. For I make not the least doubt, that their motions and revolutions are as regular and equal as the motion of the Earth itself; which, to us, is the only standard measure of Time.

4. If we see Objects, only by means of material Rays of Light passing from the Object to the Eye; by what means are opaque Objects, which are immersed in Shade, seen at all? as they do not receive Light, immediately, from any luminous Body; nor, perhaps, from any other, opposed to them, by reflection. But, with such sophistical reasoners, who can give what properties they please to Matter, there is no arguing; seeing that, they can make Light reflect and rebound from one Object to another, at pleasure. But, are not those ideal properties of Light of their own creating, entirely? That Light is reflected from one opaque Object to another is beyond a doubt; but, that real Matter is reflected, to and again, in every direction, I cannot acquiesce in.

Let AB represent, what is called, a Ray of Light, from some luminous Object, falling on any Surface, as CD.

Fig. 10.

I shall suppose this Ray of Light to be a physical Right Line, the least in its dimensions, of breadth and thickness, that can be conceived; consequently, this physical Ray of Light can strike any Surface, on which it falls, in a physical Point only, the smallest that can be conceived.

Now, by the laws of reflection, according to all the writers on Optics, whenever a Ray of Light strikes or impinges on any Body, it is reflected again from that Body, making an equal Angle with a Right Line (BF) perpendicular to the Surface, at the Point in which it strikes the Surface.* Or, if it be a Plane Surface, it makes equal Angles with the Plane ($ABI = EBK$) both the Original Ray, AB, which is called the incident Ray, and the reflected Ray, BE, being in a Plane, which is vertical to the other Plane.

H

It

* It is advanced by Sir Isaac Newton, (Prop. 8, Part 3. of the Second Book of his Optics) that Light is reflected from Bodies before it impinges on their Surfaces. But I must own, that in all the seven reasons he gives for that Opinion, I cannot find one of weight, nor all of them together, sufficient to prove it. Which, Smith, from that authority, and from Sir Isaac's first and fourth Quere, endeavours to prove, is not reflected immediately in an Angle, but makes a regular parabolic kind of curve, at a very small distance from the Body, which he calls the space of activity; and which space, he saies, is so extremely small, that, consequently, in physical Experiments, the incurvation of a Ray of Light may be considered as performed in a physical Point. Emerson saies (in a Scholium to Prop. 1. of his Catoptrics) that the Curve, described by a Ray of Light, is so extremely small, that it may be looked upon as a single Point.

It is, to me, astonishing, how any Person dare presume to advance such Opinions! and, for what purpose they do advance them! except it be to make the World have a high veneration for their extraordinary sagacity

Plate II.

Fig. 10.

It is reasonable to conclude, if this Ray of Light, AB, be material, and it is by means of material Rays striking the Organs of Sight, that Vision is performed, or the sense of Seeing is effected, that, the Point B could only be seen by an Eye placed any where in the direction of BE, as at E; BE being considered as the same individual Ray, AB, reflected or broken at the Surface, in the Point B. It is certain, that if the surface CD be Water, or a polished Mirrour, the Image of any Object, at A, will be seen at B, only, by the Eye at E, or any where in the direction BE.

But, experience convinces us, that the Point B, or any other Point in the Surface CD, may be seen as perfectly in a thousand other Directions; as at F, G, H, &c. Consequently, if Eyes were placed all around, within the compass of a Hemisphere, of which the Plane CD may be considered as the Base, or being elevated but a few Degrees above the Plane CD, the Point B may be seen by them all, at the same moment of Time.

Now, since the Point B can receive but one Ray of Light from the luminous Body, how can that identical Ray be reflected in ten thousand Directions, or in all Directions above the Plane CD, and those Rays to be material? at the same Time, the whole Space is filled with Air in every part. But, the same Eyes can also see every other physical Point in the whole Surface CD, as C, D, &c. consequently, every Point in the Surface must also reflect Rays in all Directions, crossing and cutting the former in every Point; which, unless, not only two, but, an infinite number of Bodies may occupy the same Space, and at the same Time, cannot possibly be, on the supposition that Light is a material Body.

4. Again. Since, as I have observed before, it is asserted that Vision is performed by means of those material Rays of Light, which enter the Aperture of the Eye, and, impinging on the Retina, affects the Optic Nerves with the perception of the Objects from which they flow, how shall we account for Vision through Glafs, or much harder diaphanous Substances, as Crystal, or Adamant? which is impenetrable by any tool made of the hardest Steel.

Fig. 11.

Let any Object, as AB, be seen, by an Eye at E, by means of the Visual Rays AE, BE, &c. and, let any transparent uncoloured Stone, as Crystal, &c. be interposed directly between the Eye and the Object, as CD, of any thickness; having its opposite Surfaces parallel Planes, and well polished. The Object, AB, will be seen thro' it instantaneously, as represented at a b, with every circumstance of Colour, &c.

Now, I should be glad to know, how or by what means those Rays of Light, transmitted or reflected from the Object, AB, to the Eye, at E, pass in an instant through this solid Body of Crystal or Adamant, if they are material? and first, I should be glad to know, what is the cause of Transparency? or, in what does the difference consist, between transparent and opaque Bodies?

The reasons given by Sir Isaac Newton, in the third part of the second Book, and which, Smith, in his Optics (Ch. 8, P. 95) has very wisely copied, word for word, concerning the cause of Transparency, Opacity, and Colours, in Bodies, is nothing at all to the purpose; it does not convey, to me, the least Idea of the cause of Transparency, and how Vision is conveyed through transparent Mediums, in every direction, instantaneously.

sagacity and penetration. Can they, either by experiment or otherwise, prove the truth of their Hypothesis? or do they suppose mankind so credulous as to give them credit for it, from the ridiculous experiment of a Hair, or of the Knives, and fringes of Colours produced by them? And yet it is certain, that some (not to be behind them in penetration) either do or pretend to do; for I have heard the same thing advanced, verbally, by a Person who has a tolerable share of mathematical knowledge.

See Fig. 10. No. 2. AB is supposed to be an incident Ray, and CD the reflected Ray; making a Curve, BEC; before it touches the Surface GH; which Curve is performed in so small a Space, that the Points, B and C, are supposed to coincide. Quere; how is the Curve to be ascertained, and determined? or, how shall we have conviction that it does not touch the Surface GH?

The

The learned and reverend Dr. Harris, in his Lexicon, tells us (under the article Transparency) that, a diaphanous or transparent Body is one which, probably, has its Pores all Right or Direct, and nearly perpendicular to the Plane of its Surface.

By the Pores being all right or direct is meant, I presume, that they go directly through, in Right Lines, without any obstruction; that they are perpendicular, or nearly so, to the Surface, I must needs say, he was extremely sagacious who first found out that extraordinary quality. But how shall we interpret the Word, probably? is it not indeed a candid acknowledgement, that it is all nothing more than Conjecture? I cannot say that it is even a probable Conjecture.

I am afraid that the Doctor was not very happy in his memory; for, in another place he tells us (under the article Diaphaneity) that the Pores of a diaphanous Body are so ranged and disposed, that the Beams of Light can pass freely through them, every way; which plainly contradicts the former assertion, that they are nearly perpendicular to its Surface; and which, in reality, is saying nothing, because, a Surface may be made at pleasure; and we cannot suppose that the Pores can change their Position, as a Surface may be altered at discretion; or how a Ray of Light, in passing through a triangular Prism, can be nearly perpendicular to both Planes, I am at a loss to devise.

For my part, I look on it as ridiculous and presuming, to tell us that Glass and all transparent Bodies are full of Pores and minute Interstices, through which the Rays of Light have a free passage; because, these Pores must be in every part of it, and in all Directions; neither can there be any solid part, between one Pore and the contiguous or adjoining Pores; for, if there be, it must necessarily impede, or entirely stop the progress of some Rays of Light in their passage to the Eye, and, consequently, will prevent the Vision of the Object from being perfect. Wherefore, since these Pores are so very numerous, have no solid part between them, and that, in all Directions; for it is plain, that they are not confined to one position, but must lie in all directions, which is evident; for, turn the Glass or Crystal, CD, as you please, the perception of the Object is as distinct as before; from which it is clear, that the Pores must be the same in all Directions, and then, I would ask, what becomes of the solid Body? for, in reality, it must be all Pores.

It is an insult on our understandings, on our reason, and on common sense, to suppose, or for any person to attempt to persuade us, that Glass, or Adamant, the most compact of Stones, is more porous, or that the Pores are more direct than in soft Wood, or in any Wood; which every one, who has considered it, knows to be full of Pores (like Veins in the animal Body) through which the Juices pass for its nutriment; and, in many kinds of Wood, they are perceivable to the naked Eye, and lie in direct Lines. Can any Person persuade himself, that the Pores are more numerous, or more direct, or that they are more capacious, so as to admit a freer passage, through Adamant, for the most subtle Fluid whatever (which I will suppose Light to be) than through a thin piece of Wood; in which the Pores are obvious, and clearly visible? Air, which is much denser than Light, or Water, still denser than Air, has a free passage through; but not through Glass, I presume. Yet, if you oppose it to a Candle (being cut very thin across the Pores) you may perceive, indeed, a few scattered Rays of Light pass through, but very far from having distinct Vision of the Candle, or even the out Line of the Flame, only. The reason is very obvious; because, the parts between the visible Pores, being more condensed and compact, receive the Light which falls on them, and either absorb or reflect it; which, therefore, does not pass through to the Eye; consequently, the parts of the Object, from which it flows in a direct line to the Eye, cannot be seen; therefore, the Vision of the Object is imperfect.

As this is evidently the case when it is opposed to a luminous Body, which is seen by its own Light; what will be the consequence when it is opposed to an opake

Plate II. opake Body, which (as we are told) is seen only by means of reflected Light? Why, that there is not the least appearance of it to be seen at all; not even through fine oiled Paper, which, I must needs suppose, is infinitely more porous than any Glass or Stone whatever.

Whereas, through perfectly pellucid substances, every visible Point, in any Object whether luminous or opake, is distinctly seen, without the least impediment; consequently, if Light is material, and a Ray is transmitted from every Point, in a visible Surface, to the Eye (for every physical point may be seen) and if those Rays are conveyed through transparent solid Bodies, they must necessarily pass through Pores, direct in all positions.

Now I am fully convinced, that the Pores in Glass &c. are of those ingenious Gentlemen's own creating; who, when they are at a loss for proof of certain Hypotheses (for want of better) they imagine Bodies to possess such and such qualities as may best answer their purpose. But, are those Chimeras, of their own fertile imaginations, to pass on the World for real existencies? are the Conclusions drawn from such Premises candid? by no means, they are very disingenuous, inasmuch, that I deny it to be in the power of any Man, to give ocular or other demonstrative proof that there are Pores in Glass or transparent Stones; and, I do believe that the most pellucid substances are the freest from Pores; for all porous Bodies are compressible into less compass, which neither Glass nor Stones can possibly be; nor Water, which is perfectly transparent.

Pores are, in my opinion, rather the cause of Opacity than of Transparency in Bodies, seeing that they absorb the Light in their recesses. Yet, I do not suppose that all Bodies, as Wood or Metals, which are the freest of the kind from Pores, have any degree of transparency, but when they are exceeding thin; as leaf Gold, &c. but, they approach nearer to transparency than the more gross and porous kinds. The real cause of Transparency, and how Vision is conveyed through transparent Bodies, are (I am firmly persuaded) among the hidden mysteries of Nature, which is not given Man to explore.

Fig. 12.

6. It is, I believe, a Paradox, not easily accounted for, that, if two triangular Prisms, of Glass or other diaphanous Substance, having equal Angles, are so placed together (as ABC, BCD) that the outside Faces (AB and CD) are parallel, we have direct Vision through them both (from the Eye, at E, to an Object at F); whereas, if either of them (as BCD) be taken away, the Object is lost to sight from that Point of View, by reason of the supposed Refraction of the Rays of Light, in passing through the Prism ABC.

Now, if the Pores, through which the Rays Ea, Eb, &c. pass, go directly through both Prisms (from a to c, and from b to d) how can they be varied by the removal of one of them? the taking away of one Prism can certainly have no effect on the Pores of the other, so as to alter their Direction; yet (whatever be the Cause) it is certain, if either Prism, as BCD, be removed, that the Vision, of the Object F, is turned aside out of a Right Line, and totally lost to sight, from that Station; for, it will be seen by an Eye at E, and not at E, and appear to be in the direction EF. Or, the Object, at F, being removed to G, will appear to be at F, in the direction of EF; and F will be its apparent place.

Again; if the Pores go direct through Glass, &c. the Rays of Light do not stop at the Surface, and consequently, they cannot suffer either Reflection or Refraction by it. For, I presume, the true definition of a Pore is a small Cavity or Interstice, which admits a free passage for Fluids. If, therefore, they do enter, and pass freely through, how can the surface affect them? or how can the Rays of Light, if Light is a Body, be turned aside, within the Glass, in any other direction than that of the Pores?

It

It is affirmed and allowed, that the Angle of Refraction is always to that of Incidence in a certain Ratio or Proportion; and since the Angle of Incidence may be any Angle at pleasure, it necessarily follows, that Light passes freely through in all Directions; which (according to the established Hypothesis, that it is corporeal) implies Pores in all Directions, according to the Doctor's Definition; and if it were possible for Pores to go right or direct through, in all Directions (which is repugnant to reason and absurd to suppose) the whole Prism must be all Pores; which omniporous quality, being attributed to any kind of bodily Substance, I am persuaded, no Man, in his senses, will acquiesce in.

7. I shall just give one more objection to the materiality of Light, and conclude this Section, and Subject.

Suppose the Eye, at E, viewing an Object, AB. There is supposed to be Rays of Light, AE, BE, &c. transmitted from every point to the Eye, forming an Image of the Object on the Retina, which is generally allowed to be inverted; although a late writer has given some reasons to the contrary. Be that as it may, it is certain, that if these Rays of Light enter the Eye, they must pass through the Aperture or Pupil, and converge to a Point, E, within, before they can diverge again to form an Image of the Object; at a c b. Fig. 13.

Now if the Eye be so situated (in respect of Distance) to the Object, that the extreme Rays, AE and BE, incline to each other in an Angle, AEB, not exceeding 60 Degrees; it is certain, that the Eye is capable of taking in the whole of that Object at one View; although, every part cannot be distinctly seen at once. Every physical Point, in the Surface of the Object, as C, D, F, &c. is supposed to transmit a Ray of Light to the Eye, as well as in all other Directions, at the same moment of Time. Consequently, the whole System of Rays generate a Cone or Pyramid of Rays, close wedged together in every part; which, all enter the Eye at the same instant, passing through a Point of the same dimension as one single Ray, at E, the Vertex of the Pyramid or Cone; which Circumstance is so egregiously absurd, that it is sufficient, in my opinion, to refute all that can be alledged concerning the Rays of Light being material.

For, can a great quantity of Air (the rarest Fluid that we are acquainted with) pass through a Pin-hole in an instant? Will it not (like Water) require more or less time, according to the dimensions of the Hole, to pass through? can any force drive the same quantity of Air through a Hole of half an inch in Diameter, in the same Time as through one of an inch? No; the ratio of the Time required, with the same force, will ever be in proportion to the Area of the Aperture; that is, the Ratio of different Apertures, to each other, is equal to the Ratio of the Time required, with equal force.

And yet, a Pyramid of Light, whose Base is equal to St. Paul's Cathedral, nay, millions of times greater (for the Eye can take in, not only the Sun, but, a great part of the Hemisphere, at once) and its Altitude of any Dimension, as far as the fixed Stars; yet, I say, this prodigious Pyramid of Light, a material Body, a Fluid, can pass (without any known impulse) through ten thousand imaginary Pores in the Cornea in their passage to an imaginary Point within; through which, the whole is conveyed in an instant, to the seat of Vision; and what becomes of it after? the Eye must be very capacious to contain it all. Nay more; the very same Base, or Object, can send forth millions of Pyramids of Light, to other Eyes all around, at the same Time, and in all Directions. Impossible! being Matter. Can any Person form an Idea, to comprehend how the same Body, or Surface, simply, can emit, or reflect what it receives, this instant, from any other Body, in innumerable directions at the same Instant? Let those, who can, find belief and give credit for it.

Much more might be said in support of this argument; but, as it is not directly to the purpose of Perspective, I shall not trespass any longer on the Readers time and patience, in this Digression from the Subject. I shall only beg leave to draw from it this conclusion; that Light is not an existing Medium composed of Particles; which, being reflected from Objects in all Directions, and striking on the Organs of Sight, conveys the Vision of them to the Mind, and occasions the sense of Seeing; intimating, by means of the different qualities of its heterogeneous Rays, not merely the existence of the surrounding Objects, but, they are also supposed to excite, in the Mind, the idea of Colours on their Surfaces, which otherwise have no existence: strange Doctrine!

But, with submission, I think, that the perpetual existence of such a Medium is repugnant to the notion of luminous Bodies emitting Light, incessantly; which, proceeding from them progressively, in Right Lines, excites Vision; not instantaneously, but propagated in Time: which, Opinion, is more consistent with the notion of its being reflected from other Bodies. For, how a stagnating Medium, a Fluid, can be so actuated, as to be reflected, from Objects, in all Directions within itself, and consequently, in direct Opposition to its first, or incident motion, and with such amazing velocity, is beyond the reach of human reason to conceive; much less to comprehend and explain.

It is the distinguishing Property of lucid or luminous Bodies to dispense Light all around them; but how, or in what manner, it is not my intention to enquire into; being well assured, that the attempt would be as fruitless as presumptuous. Such Phænomena are, and ever will be, to Man, impenetrable and inscrutable; mysteries not to be unfolded but by infinite wisdom, itself. To us, there is a large field of knowledge, open and in view, whereon to exercise our reasoning faculties, and which lies within our reach; let us not, then, step aside into intricate Mazes and Labrinths, out of which it is impossible to extricate ourselves; in which, the farther we wander the more we are bewildered; till, wearied with the vain pursuit, we are, at last, obliged to own, that all our boasted knowledge is but to know how little can be known.

S E C T I O N V.

Of REFRACTED VISION.

THE last Section touched, though very slightly, on that part of Optics called Catoptrics, or reflected Vision. In this I shall briefly touch on Dioptrics or refracted Vision; both which, I look on, in many respects, as Deceptions in Vision. For it is evident, that, in the case of Reflection, on the surface of Water, &c. or polished Mirrours, we do not see the Object, but only its Image or Appearance. So likewise, in the case of Refraction through transparent Mediums, solid or fluid, we do not see the real Object, but its Image or Representation only; which is likewise a Deception; seeing that, the Object appears, in some cases, larger, in others, smaller than it really is, and always appears to be where it really is not; although, we imagine, that we are looking directly at the Object.

Perspective Representations, are also manifest Deceptions in Vision. The business of Perspective is to represent Objects on a Plane Surface, by the rules of Optics; which,

which, in the true Point of View, will give the Idea of a real solid Object (being properly and judiciously shaded) having the appearance of projectures and recedings, of one part before or behind another; and having also the same hue or teint of Colour, the Deception becomes stronger; insomuch, that it is possible so to deceive the Eye, as to imagine the Representation to be real and substantial. Plate II.

In looking at Objects through a Telescope, either reflecting or refracting; although we level it exactly to the Object, in a Right Line, and imagine we look directly at the Object, through the Tube; yet, it is plain that we do not see the Object. For, in a Reflector, we look directly at a concave Mirrour, which is placed direct between the Object and the Eye; consequently, in that case, it is impossible to see the Object, but only its reflected Image on the Mirrour, which is first received on another Mirrour, at the other end through which we look, and reflected again to the former, opposite to the Eye, (a most curious and ingenious invention; which was first constructed by Gregory, and thence called the gregorian Telescope.) The Image, of the Object received on the Mirrour, is magnified, by means of convex glasses in the small Tube; so that, we do not see even the reflected Image on the Speculum, but the Image of that, only, magnified to a great degree. In respect of the refracting Telescope, the Object itself is magnified, in the same manner as the Image on the Mirrour, in the Reflector; so that, we do not, in either case, see the real Object, but only its magnified Image, between the Object Glasses and the Eye. I shall illustrate it by a single magnifying Lens.

1. Suppose an object, as AB , and a convex Lens, CD , placed between the Object and the Eye, at E . It is manifest, since Vision is conveyed in Right Lines from the Object to the Eye, that, if we saw the real Object, by the Visual Rays AE and BE &c. it would appear, in proportion to the Lens CD , of the magnitude ab , only; but we find, that it appears larger than its real magnitude, in proportion to the Lens. Fig. 14.

For, if the Rays Aa and Bb fall perpendicularly on the convex Surface, CHD , towards the Object, they will pass directly to the other Surface, which is concave towards the Object, cutting it at a and b , and are thence refracted, to the Eye at E , as aE , bE ; then if AA and BB be drawn parallel to the Axe of the Lens, EI , and Ea , Eb is produced, cutting AA and BB in A and B , then, is AB the apparent place of AB , or its Image; which, being seen under a larger Angle AEB than the real Object AB , if the Lens was removed, or Plane, it will consequently appear larger; by Theorem 1st.

Hence it is manifest, that the real Object, AB , is not seen; for it is not possible that the real Point, A , can be seen under the refracted Lines Aa , aE ; and if Ea , Eb be produced, it is evident that the Object AB , in that place, must be larger, to appear equal to ab , on the Lens.

This way of determining the Image or the apparent place of the Object, is according to Smith, P. 51. Art. 139. which, in some respects, seems right (He does not indeed determine the Refraction by drawing a right line, from A or B , to the Center of either Surface; nor does he give any certain Rule to determine the Refraction. It is impossible to ascertain the point where any incident Ray, from an Object, cuts the Lens; seeing that the inclination of its Surfaces is continually varying, from the Center to its Extremes) but I find there are Cases in which it is very exceptionable. For, according to this method of determining the apparent magnitude, or place of the Object, it can never appear larger than at the distance of the Lens. But it is certain, that the Eye and the Object may be so situated, in respect of the Lens, that notwithstanding, the Object, AB , is considerably less than the Lens, it will appear larger; and consequently, its apparent place is on this Side (in the focus of the incident Rays) between the Eye and the Lens, as at aEb , the Eye

Plate II. Eye being removed to E ; for ab , the Image of AB , appears, to the Eye at E , under a greater Angle, aEb , than the Lens CD , under the Angle CED ; and therefore, AB , or its Image ab , appears, to the Eye at E , larger than the Lens CD , which it never could do, if its apparent place was on the other side of the Lens.

In this Case, the Object AB appears erect; but, if another Object, FG , be placed beyond the Focus of the Lens, and Right Lines Ff , Gg , be drawn, through the Center, I , of the opposite Surface, consequently perpendicular to it; and if FG , Gf be drawn parallel to the Axe cutting Ff and Gg in G and F ; then is FG the Image, or apparent place of FG , which, in this Case, is inverted; and consequently, the real Object FG is not seen; for the extreme F is seen at f , and G at g , on the surface of the Lens, in a contrary direction to their true places.

The contrary effect is produced through a concave Lens, in which, the Object always appears less than its real magnitude, according to its Distance; which, being but the reverse of the other, 'tis needless to illustrate it.

It is evident, that Vision is conveyed through any transparent Medium whatever, obliquely situated, in refracted or broken Lines; consequently, in such Case, the Object never is where it appears to be. For, the Point A , which is supposed to be seen by the Eye at E , appears to be at A or a , and not at A where it really is; and the Point S , which is seen directly through the Center of the Lens, although it be seen in the Right Line ES (for there is no refraction perpendicularly thro' parallel Surfaces of any kind) yet, its apparent place is at S ; and, if either the Eye or the Lens be removed, the apparent place of the Object is varied.

2. Lenses of all kinds, excepting such as are plane on both Sides, or such Meniscus, (hollow on one Side and convex on the other) as being portions of concentric Spheres, consequently parallel Surfaces, partake of the nature and properties of Prisms, whose surfaces are inclined to each other. Wherefore, the Rays, in passing through them, are more or less refracted, according as the Surfaces are more or less inclined; that is, the less the radius of the Sphere, to which the Lens is formed, the greater is the magnifying power; because, the refracting Angle is greater; and, consequently, projects the Rays to a greater distance from the Center.

Hence it becomes a Paradox, how a large Object (I mean one, which, according to its Distance, occupies, or appears equal to the whole surface of the Lens) can be regularly magnified; for since it is manifest, that through parallel Surfaces there is no sensible refraction (except the Surfaces are considerably distant from each other and seen through obliquely as $E b c e$, Fig. 12.) and the surfaces of every Lens are parallel at the Vertex, and nearly so at a small Distance from it; and, the greater the angle of Inclination, the refraction is greater; wherefore (the surfaces of a convex Lens, being least inclined at its extremes, i. e. the refracting Angle is the greatest; and, seeing it is continually varying, from the Vertex to the Extremes) it seems reasonable, to conclude, that the Object would be more distorted about the edges of the Lens than near the middle; which I do not find to be the Case. Quere; by what means is the Object magnified equally.

3. There is another circumstance, which I do not remember to have seen noticed, by those who treat of the properties of Prisms, in respect of Refraction; and which, I do not see a sufficient reason for. Right Lines, seen through a triangular Prism, or any two inclined plane Surfaces, being parallel to the intersecting Line of the two Planes, that is, to the refracting Angle of the Prism, do not appear Right Lines, but, curved; and which is more or less curved, as the Angle of refraction is greater or less; the Curve being concave towards the Angle of Refraction.

Now

Now it is reasonable to suppose, that the System of Rays from any Right Line to the surface of the Prism, which is a Plane, would also form a Plane; which, by its intersection with the surface of the Prism, must necessarily generate a Right Line, in any position of the Prism; which, would be the Representation of the original Line; and, when the angle of Refraction is parallel to the original Line, they will also cut the other Surface, towards the Eye, in a Right Line, parallel to the opposite; how is it then that it appears curved? The vertex of the Curve, whatever it be, is where it would be cut by a Plane, passing through the Eye, perpendicular to the Original Line and the Planes of the Prism.

4. I have already described a Prism, in the last Section, and the nature of Refraction by it, as much as is my design, in respect of the Deception of Vision through a Prism. Those who would be more acquainted with the properties of Prisms and Lenses, in general, I refer to Sir Isaac Newton's, or, where they are treated more at large, to Smith's Optics; where, if he has patience to go through it, he will find enough to exercise his patience on. I do not mean to disparage the Work, for I believe it to be the best of the kind, in many respects; yet, I think it deficient, in some Cases; but, in respect, of Colour, &c. it is of a piece with the rest, and, being dwelt too long on, becomes tedious, if not trifling.

5. As to the Phænomenon of Colours seen through a Prism it is really surprising; but, it is only the Edges of Objects that are tinged or produce the Colours, on which there is any bright reflection of Light, not the whole Surface; and those edges or apparent Lines are most coloured when they are parallel to the refracting Angle; for, when they are perpendicular to it, and seen direct through, they have no Colour at all, but the natural Colour of the Body, whatever it be. Also, the Colours seen through the Prism, do not always follow in the same order as when a Beam of the Sun's Rays passes through; for the Red and Blue are often joined; an intense Red always follows after any Line or edge of an Object which is opposed to, or which obstructs the Light in one position of the Prism, the brighter Colours succeeding; which being reversed, is a deep Purple and Blue following, the other Colours are but very faint. The Colours are more intense and vivid the brighter the Object, or the greater the opposition or obstruction of the Light by an opaque Object; which, being uniformly coloured, and having no sudden reflections of Light thereon, is not at all varied in looking through a Prism; but only at the edges, where there is an immediate opposition with a darker Body. And, how it is possible to deduce or to draw a conclusion, that all Objects, which we perceive, are by Nature of the same, or have no Colour at all, save what is effected by the Light reflecting from their Surfaces is, I must freely own, to me, as much a Paradox as ever. (See the second Paragraph, Sect. 1. Page 2.)

6. As, in Nature, there is necessarily Refraction at the common Surface of any two different Mediums, whether solid or fluid, except when we look perpendicularly through the Surface or Surfaces at the Object, although the true reason of it be to us unknown; so it would be superfluous and foreign to my Design to multiply Cases wherein it happens. I shall, therefore, only take notice of one common Case, which is so very common, though but little attended to, as to be obvious to every Person who is blessed with the faculty of Seeing.

Let any Person put a straight Stick into Water, slanting in any direction, and it immediately appears to be broken, at the surface of the Water; the part within, taking a contrary direction to that which is out of the Water; and the more it deviates from a Perpendicular, the more it is refracted or broken, till the Stick makes an Angle, with the surface of the Water, of about 45 Degrees; and then, the Refraction is continually less, which is evident; for, when the inclination of the Stick, to the Surface, is such, that the Angle it makes with the Surface is very small, consequently, the Refraction cannot be great; and being immersed perpendicularly,

Plate II. dicularly, there is no Refraction; which is the same thing as looking directly into the Medium, at an Object in the Water, or through a Body of Glafs, very thick; in which Cafe, the Object appears to be considerably nearer, but, it is in the same Direction as we see it. Also when we look at the Heavens of Stars, &c. those which are in the Zenith are seen in a Right Line; and the farther they are from that Point, the more the line of direction is refracted or broken, so that, they are not in that place in the Heavens where they appear to be; which Refraction, is owing to the Atmosphere of Air and Vapours, which surrounds the Earth, being denser than the upper Regions.

7. It is a common, though curious and entertaining, Experiment, to immerse a piece of Money or other Object in a Bason full of Water; which will appear to be raised considerably higher than when the Vessel is empty.

Fig. 15. Let ABCD represent a Vessel, suppose of Glafs; and suppose E an Eye looking at an Object, at F, at the bottom of the Vessel, being empty. Whilst the Eye remains fixed, at E, so that the Object, at F, can just be seen over the edge, at c, let there be Water poured gently into the Vessel, and the Object will appear to rise, gradually, to G, so as to be seen quite clear of the edge of the Vessel, in the direction EG.

Now it is certain, that the Object is at F, which appears to be at G; consequently, if the real Object be seen at all, it is seen in the refracted Lines FI, IE, where the Right Line EG, to its apparent place, cuts the surface of the Water; but, more probably, the Image of the Object, only, is seen at G. Consequently, a straight Stick or Wire being put into the Water, from E to F, will appear broken at the Surface (at C) and appear to go in the Direction CG.

Again. Let the Eye be removed to E, the Water remaining in the Vessel, so that the Object is apparently seen over the edge, at C; and, whilst the Eye remains fixed, let the Water be drawn gently off, by means of a Cock, or otherwise, at the bottom; the Object, apparently at G, will gradually sink lower in the Vessel, and totally disappear from that Station.

Hence it is manifest, that when the Water is in the Vessel, the real Object, at F, is not seen by an Eye at E; for, if it was possible, it must be seen through the Side of the Vessel, at H, which it is plain is not the Case; and, hence it is plain, that the Object being seen, apparently at G, is a manifest Deception in Vision. The Case is the very same, in Objects seen oblique through Glafs, or any other pellucid Substance; excepting some small variations in the degree of Refraction.

8. Refraction in Water, according to all writers on Optics, is subject to one invariable Law, without any sensible error, but it is not to be demonstrated mathematically. I have made the Experiment myself, as accurately as it will admit of, and find it to be nearly as follows.

Fig. 16. If AB be supposed the Surface of Water, and CE, DE or FE an incident Ray of Light falling on it, at E; on which Point, if a Circle be described, and a Perpendicular, EG, be drawn, let CK, DL, &c. be drawn, perpendicular to EG. Then, if CE be produced to c, and a c, equal CK, be drawn; take a b equal to three fourths of a c, and draw bd perpendicular to ac, cutting the Circumference in d; the Ray CE is supposed to be refracted, at E, and go in the direction Ed, into the Water. By the same Rule, DE goes in the direction Ee, and FE in Eg.

But, the same Rays CE, DE, &c. will also be reflected in equal Angles GEH equal DEG, &c. Can the same Ray be both reflected and refracted? impossible; yet, an Object, o, may be seen at H, by the reflected Ray EH, as well as at e, by the refracted

refracted Ray E e. It is however certain, that if a Circle be described on a Plane, as A G B g, and the Lines are described thereon, as in this Figure; being immersed perpendicularly in Water, to the Diameter A B; C E d, D E e, and F E g will appear Right Lines; which is very surprizing; but I do not see which way it proves, that the Rays of Light go in those Directions into the Water; they rather come in those directions, out of the Water.

9. Before I conclude this Section and Subject, I cannot help taking notice of an extraordinary passage; which is in the Conclusion drawn from Prop. 8, Part 3, of the second Book of Newton's Optics, Page 69; concerning the extraordinary porosity of Water; which is 19 times lighter, and consequently, he saies, 19 times rarer than Gold; and Gold is so rare, that Water may be forced through its Pores. For, as he was informed, by an Eye witness, a Globe of Gold being filled with Water and sodered up (but of what thickness he does not tell us; I have heard say above a quarter of an Inch) and being pressed with great force, the Water squeezed through its Pores; and stood, all over its Surface, in multitudes of small drops like Dew. From which, he concludes that Gold has more Pores than solid Parts; but how such a conclusion can possibly be drawn I cannot conceive. I should suppose, that, in such Case, the Water would spout out in streams, rather than stand on the Surface like Dew. Yet Gold will not admit either Air or Light through its Pores, though much rather Fluids than Water; which, he also concludes, from the same Experiment, has above forty times more Pores than Parts; and consequently, Gold (the compactest Metal we know of) according to that Ratio, contains above twice as much empty Space as Matter.

It is no wonder that Water is pellucid, being so extremely porous, and admits Light so freely through its Pores; but, it is somewhat surprizing that it is not compressible, which all porous substances must be. And I think it also surprizing, that a Man of Sir Isaac's sagacity should advance so much on the credit of any Experiment he never tried himself; which he certainly had opportunity enough for, being Master of the Mint near thirty years.

If Water be so full of Pores, as Sir Isaac imagines, it might be compressed into less Space; which, the same Experiment absolutely proves that it cannot. If it be composed of globular Particles, they may certainly be squeezed so close together, that (supposing every Globe inscribed in a Cube) the difference between the quantity of Matter and of Space, is no more than the difference between a Globe and a Cube, whose Diameter and Side are equal, which is nearly double (I mean, that the quantity of Matter contained in Cubes, which admit of no Space between them, is nearly double of that which is contained in the inscribed Globes; and consequently, the Space between Globes, lying in that position, is nearly equal to the Globes) for the same Ratio must continue *ad infinitum*.

But it is manifest, that Globes will lie considerably closer together; as Circles leave only triangular spaces between them; so Globes of equal Diameters, will lie so together as to leave a kind of triangular pyramidal or prismatical Space between, joining each other. The difference between the Globes and the Space may be very nearly ascertained, by putting a quantity of equal Globes or Bullets into a hollow triangular Pyramid, which may easily be made, the true figure of a pyramid of Globes (for it is a regular Tetrahedron) and, having placed them regularly, pour in Water just to cover them, filling up the Interstices between; then take out the Globes and fill the Box equally with Water. I myself have tried the Experiment, and find the difference between the Globes and Space to be, as 2 to 1, as near as can be; in the former Case they are nearly equal. Quere; where is the remaining 40 times to be found? are the least particles of Matter, which cannot be conceived of any dimensions, to contain, in each, 40 times more Space than Matter? for, as I have observed before, the ratio, of Globes to the Space between them, will continue to infinity; and what other regular Figure can there be, to contain more Space between them than Globes? The

Plate II. The Question then is, whether we are to give credit to such Assertions, or are we to credit the evidence of our own Senses and Reason? I shall trust the latter, before the bare assertion of the greatest Man that ever lived.

10. As I have had neither time nor inclination to go through the whole of Smith's Optics; I shall just take notice of one passage in it, in which his geometrical reasoning is very erroneous; but, whether it be of Consequence, in the following part of the Work, I have not enquired; as the Subject is not to my present purpose. I shall, literally, quote his own words, as follows.

In Vol. 1. Page 59. Art. 157, he saies. "The apparent magnitude of a given line, AB, seen very obliquely at a given distance, OA, increases and decreases in proportion to the increase and decrease of OP, the perpendicular distance of the Eye from the line AB produced; provided the distance AO be very large in comparison to AB. For let the Ray BO cut a line AC perpendicular to AB in C; and while the Eye is raised or depressed in the perpendicular OP, the line AC will increase and decrease as OP does; and so will the angle AOC, subtended by AC, and this Angle measures the apparent magnitude of AB."

Fig. 17.

First, he saies, that the apparent magnitude of AB increases and decreases as the Eye is raised or depressed, in the perpendicular OP; and the Angle, it subtends, measures the apparent magnitude of AB.

Let PO be produced to T; in which, take several Divisions, each equal to PO, at Q, R, S, and T; and draw QA, QB and RA, RB, &c.

Now, because PQ is double PO, and PR is triple, the Angle BQA, (according to him) will be double BOA, and BRA triple; for, AF being drawn perpendicular to AB, it is certain, that the Divisions AC, CD, &c. are equal, AF being parallel to PO;* consequently, AC increases as OP does; and so, he saies, does the Angle AOC, subtended by AC; wherefore, the Angle at Q is double, and, at R triple, of the Angle AOB. But, the Perpendiculars AC, AD, and AE are not the measures of those Angles; for they are truly measured by an Ark of a Circle, of the same or an equal Radius, only.

* Cor 6.6. El.

According, then, to his Words, the Angle AOB increases as PO increases; which I deny, and will prove to the contrary,

It is obvious, that the Angle AQB is considerably larger than AOB, but it is not double, although PQ is double PO; but, ARB is very little larger than AQB; and notwithstanding, PR is triple PO, yet the Angle ARB is not double AOB; as the Arks *ab*, *cd* and *ef* evinces.

Now by the same reason, the Angles ASB, ATB are continually greater than ARB; but, they are continually less. For, if PR be a mean Proportional between PA and PB, the Angle ARB is the greatest that can be made, by Right Lines drawn from the Extremes of AB, and touching the Perpendicular PT.

DEM. Describe a Circle through the three Points R, A and B; by Prob. 40 Geo.

Then, because PR is a mean Proportional between PA and PB (by Hyp.)

the square of PR is equal to a Rectangle under PA and PB; } Cor. 9. 6. El.

i. e. $PB \times PA = PR^2$ — — — — —

Consequently, PR will touch, or be a Tangent to that Circle, drawn through the Points R, A, B — — — — — P. 16. 3. El.

But, the Angle ARB is at the Circumference of that Circle; conf. ASB and ATB, which are beyond the Circumference, are less than ARB. — 20. 6.

Therefore, ARB is the greatest Angle, touching the Tangent PT, subtended by AB; and consequently, the Angle ASB is not encreased, as the Eye is raised in the Perpendicular OP.

Again.

Again. He saies, in the following Paragraph, as deduced from the foregoing, that “ the apparent magnitudes of equal parts, AB , ab , of a Line, PAa , seen very obliquely, at great distances from the Eye, are reciprocally in a duplicate proportion of those distances. For example; let Ob be double of OB , and the angle OBP will be double of ObP ; and accordingly, since AB , ab are equal, the perpendicular AC will be double of ac , and being seen twice as near as ac , will appear four times bigger than ac . Again, if Ob be treble of OB , the line AC will be treble of ac , and being seen three times nearer than ac , will appear nine times bigger than ac ; and so on.

Let Ob be double OB ; I say, the Angle OBP is greater than twice ObP ; Fig. 17. and he expressly saies that OBP is double ObP .

DEM. Because $Ob = 2OB$, bB is greater than OB . — — P. 13. 1. El.
 wherefore, the Angle bOB is greater than ObP . — — 12. 1.
 But, the Angle OBP , being external, in respect of the Triangle bOB , is equal to $bOB + ObB$ or P — — — — 10. 1.
 Wherefore, it is greater than double ObP ; and consequently AC is greater than double ac ; AB being equal to ab .

Therefore, the ratio of AC to ac is more than duplicate, considering them as similar Surfaces; but, as Lines, simply, their Ratio is but as AC to ac ; and he saies, the apparent Magnitudes of equal parts of a Line PAa , &c.

Now I am far from supposing, that this Author was so deficient in Geometry as these examples seem to indicate; nay, I am well convinced he was not, as is evident in the next Book; and his Provisos are some extenuation of the errors: he ought, then, to have told us that they are nearly so, by approximation, and not that they are so, in express Terms. But, in any Case whatever, there is not an equal ratio, or nearly, between the increase and decrease of the Perpendicular AC , and the Angle AOC .

As this and the preceding Article are the only passages which any way tend to advance the Theory of Perspective (having been quoted for that purpose) I have, therefore, been more particular in my remarks on them. And, as what I have advanced in the two last Sections, and part of the first, is not directly to the purpose of Perspective, it will, I know, by some, be deemed impertinent and foreign to the Design of this Treatise; let them, if they please, pass it over and proceed immediately to the Subject, which is not vitiated by it. It was not my intent to swell either the bulk or price of the Book by such means (having other Matter enough) for I have run it to a much greater length than I at first intended, and that, after the price was fixed, in my Proposals. But, as I do not intend to publish a Treatise on Optics, and as Perspective has a near affinity to that Science, what exceptions I have always had, to sundry passages in the works of optical writers, I thought proper to give here, where I was treating on an essential part of the Theory of Perspective, and a branch of the Science of Optics.

I hope I have not trespassed, too much, on the time and patience of the candid and impartial Reader. I shall now proceed to Book the second, which treats on the Theory of Perspective; where, I shall endeavour to make some amends for his time spent, I hope not lost, in perusing this Digression.

B O O K II.

Of the Theory of Perspective, rectilinear and curvilinear.

S E C T I O N I.

Containing a general INTRODUCTION to PERSPECTIVE.

TO define the Terms of Art peculiar to any Science with brevity and perspicuity, I have always looked on as a particular excellence in the Work; but I have frequently found, that an affectation of brevity has left the Term, intended to be explained, rather obscure, at least doubtful; whilst others, endeavouring to render it clear by a multiplicity of words, have, at last, involved it in perplexity.

Although my design is to be as brief as the nature of the Subject will admit of, yet, I am afraid I shall rather be thought prolix, than otherwise, in some of the following Definitions or Explanations; but certain I am, that, the Time spent in acquiring a perfect knowledge of all the Terms I have defined, will not be lost, as they contain many useful hints and lessons to a young Student. I have endeavoured to explain every Term in the most easy and familiar manner; not saying more than was necessary, yet, where it is needful, enough to be clearly understood. To be too brief is worse than prolixity, so it be not tedious and trifling; the one leaves us doubtful, the other, probably, makes it clear at last.

I may, perhaps, be particular and singular in my opinions; but, I think it better to define each Term separately, than to include several in one Definition, as is very frequent; and I always choose to name the Term, I mean to define, first, rather than end the Definition with it, or name it promiscuously. My reason for which is, that 'tis much easier to find when refer'd to; or, when there is occasion to look for any particular Definition, without reference, the Number not being known.

The Order in which Definitions are treated is, with me, a material circumstance; beginning at the Foundation, and going gradually on in a regular succession; never using any Term, if possible to avoid it, in the explanation of another, which has not already been defined. In general, I find them promiscuously jumbled together, without Order; going, as it were from one end of the Science to the other, to and again; too hastily introducing, perhaps, some new or favourite Term, before others which seem necessary to be first known, in order to prepare the way, by removing some impediment. How I have succeeded, must be left to the decision of the candid and impartial Reader.

I am no favourer or admirer of new and uncommon Terms; nor, indeed, do I think that every writer, on any Science, has a right to impose new Terms; unless he has found out some new Principles, on which it was not possible for him to expatiate, by the Terms already known and in use; as Dr. Brook Taylor has done in Perspective;

spective; on which, I have spoke more largely in another place. It was impossible for him to convey the Ideas he intended to inculcate by the old Terms, and therefore, he was under the necessity of inventing and enforcing new ones; which are, most certainly, extremely expressive of the thing meant. But, if every writer on that or any other Subject (who, because he knows something of it, imagines that he knows more than any who have writ before him) was to take the liberty to impose new and unmeaning Terms, of his own, suited only to his own trifling Ideas of the Subject, the Science would, by that means, become perplexed and intricate; each Person, who happened to receive his knowledge of it from different Books, would, consequently, understand and call the same Thing by different Names; than which, especially when they are absurdly or falsely named, nothing tends more to perplex, and involve the Science in obscurity.

I have already, in the Preface, given my reasons for omitting, in this Treatise, geometrical Definitions and Problems; because, I suppose the reader already tolerably versed in Geometry; if not, I advise him first to study it, at least Practical Geometry; without which, it is useless to attempt, and impossible to succeed in the Study of Perspective: the better he is acquainted with Geometry, the greater progress will he make in Perspective; of which, Geometry is the foundation. To assist him in it, I have compiled and composed a Volume, which may be called an abridgment; it, nevertheless, contains all that is essential. In it, I have, for particular reasons, collected all the useful Problems in Plane Geometry into one Book (which is the first) before I begin with the Elements, entitled Practical Geometry; in which, I have, in a great measure, omitted, and refer to the Elements for further Demonstration.

My chief aim, in that work, was to make it useful, the Study of it pleasant, and attainable to any tolerable Capacity, and applicable to various uses in Life; particularly subservient to this Treatise of Perspective, as I always refer to it for Demonstration: in which case, it may be deemed a part of this Work, and ought always go together. But, although I have, there, fully defined a Plane (Def. 6th) yet, as it is so very essential in Perspective, it was by no means proper to omit it here; seeing that, on it the whole Theory of Perspective is built.

A PLANE is a perfectly even, straight, and regular Surface, which is neither convex nor concave in any part; but agrees, in every part, with a Right Line or straight Ruler, applied, any how, to the Surface.

2. By the motion of a Right Line, a Plane may be conceived to be generated; either by a direct, lateral motion, on two parallel Right Lines, or, by supposing it whirled around (so as not to generate a Cone) on any Point in it.

3. It is easy to conceive, that, if the Eye of a Person be in a Plane, or in a continuation of it, the nearest extremes or limits, towards the Eye, hide all the rest of the Plane; for, the whole Plane vanishes, and is lost to an Eye in the Plane; which appears but a Right Line, extended in length to the apparent dimensions of the Plane, considered as having only length and breadth: thickness or substance is the property of Solids, a Plane has none.

N. B. The Picture (in Perspective) is always understood to be a Plane. Therefore, the Board, Canvas or Paper, on which we draw, is the Plane of the Picture. See Def. 2d.

N. B. 2. A Plane may be of any Shape or Figure; and, in Perspective, it is frequently considered as being infinitely extended, without regard to Figure, or to its limits.

If

Plate III. If a Solid be composed of, or bounded on all sides by Planes, its Surfaces, only, are the Planes; of which, no Solid can be formed having less than four; and that, must necessarily be a Pyramid.

§ Fig. 1. A CUBE is composed of six Planes, which are all Squares; as A, B, X§. Every other Parallelopiped has also six Planes, which are all Parallelograms; either right angled, as Fig. 2, or acute angled, as Fig. 3.

* Fig. 4. A PRISM is a Solid whose Base, A and Top, B, are either similar Triangles, * Qua-
† Fig. 1, drangles, † or Polygons ‡ of any Number of Sides. The other Planes or Surfaces
2, and 3. (X,X) are always Parallelograms.

‡ Fig. 5.
Fig. 6. PYRAMIDS have their Bases (A) of any Number of Sides. The Planes of the Sides are always Triangles. As Y,Y.

Of PLANES and their POSITIONS in GENERAL.

1. HORIZONTAL, is the first and most natural position of Planes. Such, are all Planes which are parallel to the Horizon; consequently, all horizontal Planes are parallel amongst themselves; as Z,H,H.

Fig. 7. 2. VERTICAL, are all such Planes as are perpendicular to, or which cut the Horizon at right Angles; as V. Fig. 7, 8, and 9.

Fig. 8. Vertical Planes may be in all positions, in respect of each other, viz. parallel, perpendicular or inclined; as may be conceived, by revolving a vertical Plane, on a Right Line, AB, perpendicular to the Plane of the Horizon; consequently, they will, if produced, all pass through the Zenith and Nadir * of our Horizon.

3. INCLINED. All Planes whatever, which are neither parallel nor perpendicular to the Horizon, are Inclined Planes.

For, if a Plane cut the Horizon, or would if produced, in an acute Angle, it is not Vertical or Perpendicular; consequently, it inclines to the Horizon on one side more than the other; which, Inclination, is always measured on that side making the acute Angle. e. g.

Fig. 9. The Plane X inclines to the Horizon, in the Angle BCA; and it is also said to incline to a Vertical Plane, in the Angle BCE; which Angle, if they have the same Intersection, CD, or parallel Intersections with the Horizon, is the Complement of its inclination to the Horizon. See N. B. Def. 13th. Geo.

4. It may not be improper, here, to observe, (for it is necessary to know and understand well) that the Angle of Inclination, of one Plane to another, can be measured, only in a Plane to which both the other are perpendicular; or, which is the same thing, if a Line be drawn in each Plane, from the same Point in their common Intersection, and perpendicular to it, an acute Angle made by these Lines is the Inclination of the Planes; for it is evident, that a Plane drawn through those two Lines will be perpendicular to the common Intersection † and consequently to both Planes. To illustrate it.

† 2. 7. El.

Suppose the horizontal Plane Z raised up into the Position of X, inclined to the Horizon; the line CD, on which it was supposed to turn, may be considered as the common Intersection of the two Planes, X and Z.

It

* Imaginary Points in the Heavens, diametrically opposite to each other; the one perpendicular over our Heads, the other under our Feet, in the lower Hemisphere.

It is evident, that the point A will, in that motion, have described the Ark AB; and, if the Angle ACD be a Right one (as it is supposed) BCD is still a Right Angle; wherefore AC and CB are both perpendicular to CD; § and the Plane ABC, described by the motion of CB, is also perpendicular to CD, † and consequently, to the two Planes X and Z. ‡ Therefore, the Angle ACB, in the Plane ABC, is the Angle of Inclination of those two Planes.

§ Def. 11.
Geom.
† 2. 7. El.
‡ 9. 7.

Through A, draw AD, at pleasure, cutting the common Intersection, CD, in D; and, from the same point D, draw DB, in the inclined Plane X.

DEM. Now, if ACD be a Right Angle, ADC is acute — Cor. 3. 10. 1. El. wherefore, AD is longer than AC; and also, BD than BC — P. 12. 1. El. But, the Chord, or Subtense, AB subtends both the Angles ACB and ADB; consequently, the angle ADB is less than ACB. — — Cor. to 14. 1. El.

Or, suppose BF perpendicular to the Plane Z; and let FD be drawn.

Then, a Plane DBF, passing through BF, is perpendicular to the Plane Z, but not to X. And, because FD is longer than FC, and BD than BC, it is manifest, that the Angle BCF is greater than BDF.

But, the Plane CBF is perpendicular to both the Planes X and Z (as before) and, consequently, to their common Intersection CD.

From which it is clear, that the Angle made by a Plane cutting two other Planes, perpendicular to their common Intersection, is the Angle of Inclination of those two Planes; seeing that, the Angle made by any other Plane, passing through AB or BF, will necessarily be less, the greater the Inclination of AD, or FD, to CD.

To set this matter in the clearest Light possible, it being so very essential in Perspective, as well as in other Sciences and Arts, I have added the following Figure.

Let ABC and CBD be two rectangular Planes, cutting each other in BC, their common Intersection. Let EF and FGH be two Right Lines, one in each Plane, perpendicular to their Intersection BC, at the same Point, F.

Fig. 10.

Wherefore, the Plane EIFG, passing through those Lines, is perpendicular to both Planes, AC and CD; § and, the Angle EFG, made by that Section, is the largest that can possibly be made by a Plane which is perpendicular to either of them.

§ 2. 7. El.

For, suppose the Line EH perpendicular to the Plane ACB, only; and, a Plane EIKL to pass through that Line, it will be perpendicular to the Plane AC; † and because the Plane EFG is perpendicular to both the Planes AC and CD, and passes through the same Point E, it will, also necessarily, pass thro' the Line EH; wherefore, EH is the common Intersection of those two Planes,* EIFG and EIKL produced. I say, that the Angle EFH, made by the Plane EIFG, is greater than EKH.

† 9. 7. El.

DEM. Now, EH, the common Intersection of the two Planes IFG and IKL, together with the Intersections EK and KH, of the Plane IKL with the two Planes AC and CD, form a Triangle; and so does the same line EH with the two Intersections EF and FH, made by the Plane IFG, with the same Planes AC and CD.

But HFK is a Triangle, and, the Angle HFK is presumed to be a Right one; wherefore, HK is longer than HF; ‡ and, for the same reason, EK is longer EF; and consequently, the Triangle EFH, having one Side, (EH) common with the other Triangle EKH, and, having the other two Sides, EF and FH, less than the two Sides EK and EH, respectively, they, therefore, contain a larger Angle, viz. EFH than EKH. — — Cor. to 14. 1. El.

‡ 12. 1. El.

* EI is the true Intersection, perpendicular to the Plane AC; and consequently, EH would be IE produced. But, as it would have run into the Figure below, I thought it best to dispense with it, as the Demonstration would be the same.

Plate III.

But, the Plane IFG is perpendicular to both the Planes, AC and CD; and the Plane IKL is perpendicular to one of them (AC) only.

Fig. 10.

Therefore, the Angle EFG, made by the section of a Plane which is perpendicular to both the other, is larger than any Angle made by any other Section, of a Plane perpendicular to one of them only; and consequently, the Section EFG measures the true Angle of Inclination of the Planes ABC and CBD.

N. B. The Angle made by the section of a Plane inclined to both Planes, AC and CD, may be either greater or less than EFG.

Fig. 11.

5. Although it is not possible to conceive an Idea of a Plane abstracted from one or another of the three Positions I have explained, yet, in the application of Planes in Perspective, as in Geometry, no particular regard is had to them; for one Plane is said to be perpendicular to another, if it makes Right Angles with the other Plane, as H to V: each of which is said to be perpendicular to the other, notwithstanding one of them (H) is really horizontal.

The Planes X and Y are also said to be perpendicular to each other, altho' both are inclined to the Horizon; and, whatever their Inclination to the Horizon may be, it matters not, if they make Right Angles with each other, as at C. For, if the Plane Y was turned up, on AB, its intersection with the Horizon, into the vertical Position W, and, along with it, the Plane X, into the horizontal Position Z; their Position, in respect of each other, is not altered, if the Angle, at D, be still a Right one, as before, at C.

6. So likewise, one Plane is said to incline to another, if they do not intersect at right Angles, as H and X, or would not if produced, as X and V.

The Plane X being inclined to both H and V, (Art. 3. of Planes) they are, for the same reason, both inclined to X; yet, one is horizontal and the other vertical; for, the inclination of two Planes is mutual. So that, when it is said that one Plane is perpendicular or inclined to another, it means nothing more, than, that they are at right Angles, or otherwise with each other; no regard being had to the horizontal or vertical Position of either; except the Position, of one, is previously known or determined, to which the other is said to be perpendicular or inclined.

Fig. 12.

7. In Perspective, it is also frequently said, that Lines are perpendicular to certain Planes; whereas, if the Plane be vertical, it is easy to conceive, from what has been said, that all Lines, which are perpendicular to a vertical Plane, are horizontal, and parallel amongst themselves; as AB, EF, and CD, to the Plane GIK. Yet, the Planes, in which these Lines are, may be either horizontal, as ABEF; vertical, as EFCD; or inclined to the Horizon, as ABCD.

If the Plane be horizontal, the Lines perpendicular to it are really perpendicular, i. e. to the Horizon; as AG, ED and FC. But, if the Plane be inclined to the Horizon, then, the Lines, which are perpendicular to it, are also inclined to the Horizon, yet parallel amongst themselves.

Suppose the Plane ILMN vertical, and perpendicular to the inclined Plane GH; the lines LI and MN, which are at right Angles with its Intersection, IN, are perpendicular to the Plane GH. But the line IP, which is perpendicular to the Horizon, is inclined to the Plane GH, in the Angle LIO. And OI, at right Angles with IP, is horizontal; but, it is also inclined to the Plane GH, in the Angle OIN equal LIP.

DEM. Let NI be produced, towards H. LI is perpendicular to NH.

Then, because LIN is a Right Angle, LIH is, also, a Right one - C. 2. 1. El. consequently, LIO, equal LIN - OIN, is equal to PIH, or LIH - LIP.

Every

Every Right Line, therefore, which is neither parallel nor perpendicular to a Plane, is, consequently, inclined to that Plane; and its Inclination may be known, by drawing a Perpendicular from the extreme, or any other Point, as MN, in the Line IM, to the Plane GH; the Complement of the Angle IMN, i. e. IML equal MIN, is the Inclination of IM to the Plane GH.

Or, if a Plane (ILMN) be drawn, through the Line IM, perpendicular to the Plane GH; the Angle MIN, which the line IM makes with IN, the intersection of the perpendicular Plane with GH, is the Angle of its inclination to the Plane GH.

N. B. IN is the Seat of the Line IM or IO, and also of ML, or, of the Plane NL, on GH; produced by the Intersection of a perpendicular Plane passing thro' the Line, as above. Therefore, the Angle which any Line makes with its Seat, on a Plane, is the Angle of its inclination to that Plane.

8. PQRS is a horizontal Plane, cutting the inclined Plane KPQ in the Line PQ. But, PQ is not the Seat of the Plane PR, on KQ, it being inclined to KPQ, in the Angle SPT; for, if ST and RU be drawn, perpendicular to the Plane KPQ, the Lines PT and QU (joining the Points, T and U, where the perpendiculars cut the Plane, with P and Q) are the Seats of the Lines PS and QR; TU is the Seat of the Line RS, or of the Plane TURS; and consequently, PQUT is the Seat of the Plane PQRS, on KPQ. Also, turs is the Seat of that part which is over the Ground Plane.

I would advise the young Student, who is not well versed in these things, to make them familiar to him; for which, the reading over a second time, with due attention to the Figures, will be sufficient.

I have been more particular on this Subject, because I have frequently known Pupils to be mislead, by calling Lines and Planes perpendicular, imagining them to be really so, i. e. to the Horizon; from the common acceptance of the Term, Perpendicular, (to hang down as a plumb Line) not considering the Position of that Plane or Line, to which the other Planes or Lines are said to be perpendicular.

9. Suppose the Object AIKC to be, in the lower part, a right angled Parallelopiped (the most general form for Buildings, or the several Parts of a Building) the Planes BEDC, and AIB, of the Front and End, and their opposites, are Vertical; for they are perpendicular to the Horizon, or Ground (considered as a Plane) on which it stands.

Fig. 13.

Now, the Lines AB and FE, in the Plane AIB, are perpendicular to the Plane BEDC; and the Lines BC, ED, and IK, are all perpendicular to the Plane AIB (i. e. the originals of those Lines are so, in the real Object) yet, they are all parallel to the Horizon, and the three last, parallel between themselves, though in different Planes; § for, a Plane may pass thro' any two Lines that are parallel. (Ax. 5.)

§ 4. 7. El.

10. In the Practice of Perspective, it is often necessary to suppose the Object, we are delineating, transparent, as if the whole Object was Glass; and, the Planes or parts of the Building, which are adjacent, are supposed to be seen through the hither Planes; as ABCH, the ground Plane, and FEDG parallel to it; AFGH parallel (or otherwise) to BEDC, and HGDC opposite to AFEB.

These six Planes, forming a right angled Parallelopiped, compose the Body of the Building; every Angle of which, A, B, E, D, &c. is a solid Right Angle; each being composed of three plane Right Angles, as ABC, ABE, and EBC, of the Angle B; consequently, AB, BC, and BE are each perpendicular to the other.

By means of this supposed transparency, the connection of the several parts of an Object are distinctly seen, and delineated with greater accuracy; which, in some Cases, could not, without that expedient, be so certainly ascertained.

11. The

Plate III. 11. The Roof, FIKDGE, is a triangular Prism, in its construction. The Planes, of which, are inclined to the Horizon; EIKD on this side, and FIKG on the other side, seen through; yet, these Planes may be perpendicular to each other, if the Angles, FIE, GKD, are Right. (See Art. 5.)

They are also inclined to the Front and its opposite, which are vertical Planes; but observe, that, their Inclination is not the internal Angle IEB or IFA, for those Angles are obtuse; but, if either of the Planes be produced, as BEDC to LM, there is made an acute Angle (IEL) with that Plane, equal to the Complement of IEB to two Right Angles; which, is the Angle of Inclination of those Planes.

N. B. The inclined Planes of the Roof, as well as the horizontal and vertical Planes AC, EC, &c. are perpendicular to the Plane AIB, and to HKC, its opposite.

This, I hope, is sufficient to make all I have said, relative to Planes and Lines, clearly understood; if so, it is a very material point gained towards understanding Perspective clearly; and will, also, greatly facilitate the Practice.

S E C T I O N II.

Of the several kinds of PROJECTION, and other introductory Matters.

Plate IV. **P**ROJECTION, is the description or delineation of Objects in Plano, or on a Plane, according to a certain Law; by means of Right Lines, called Rays, supposed to be drawn from every Angle of the Object to some Plane.

Fig. 14. As Aa, Bb, Cc, &c. which, taken altogether, are called the SYSTEM OF RAYS.

When those Rays are all united in a Point (as AO, BO, &c.) it is called a CONE or PYRAMID OF RAYS; and that Point (O) being supposed an Eye, and the Right Lines OA, OB, &c. Visual Rays, the System of Rays is then called, the OPTIC CONE. (See the 4th Definition, in Optics; Book I. Page 9.)

The Figure described, as aefb, on the Plane V, abee, on the Plane Z, or, abde, on the Plane X, is the Projection of the Object ABC.

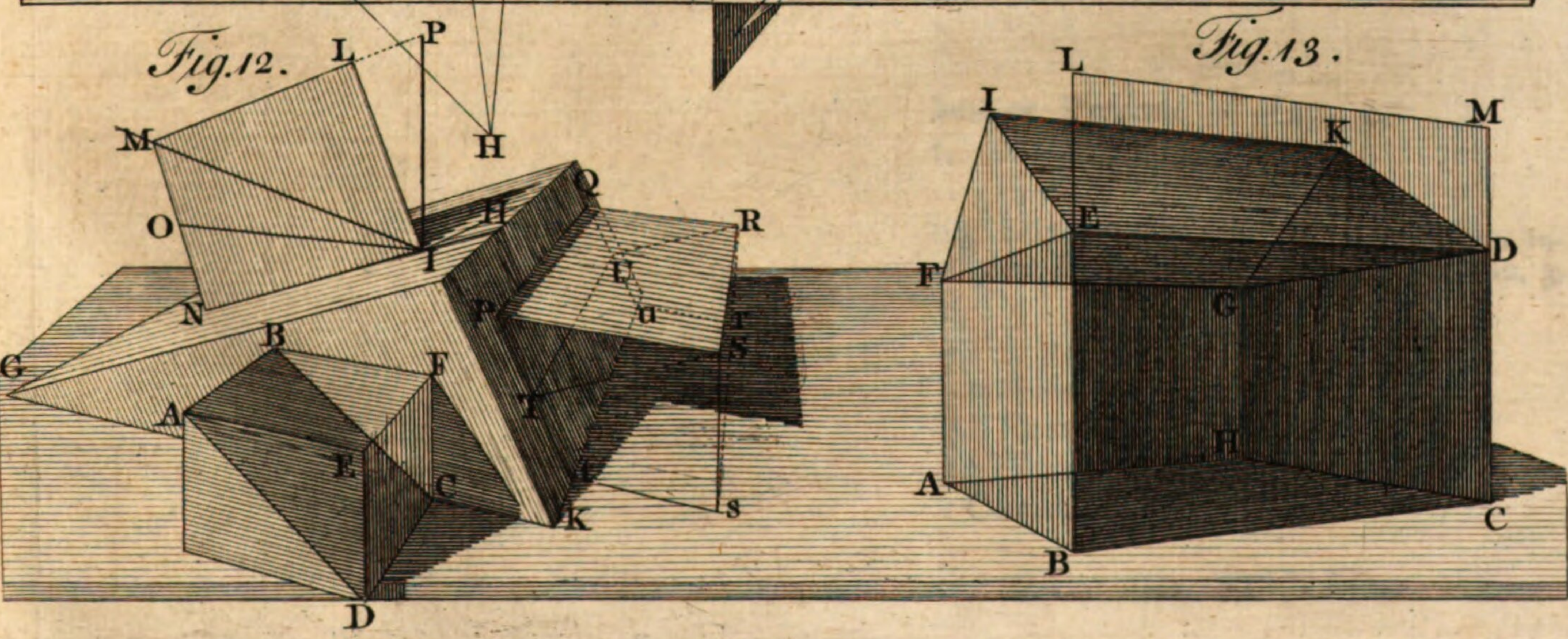
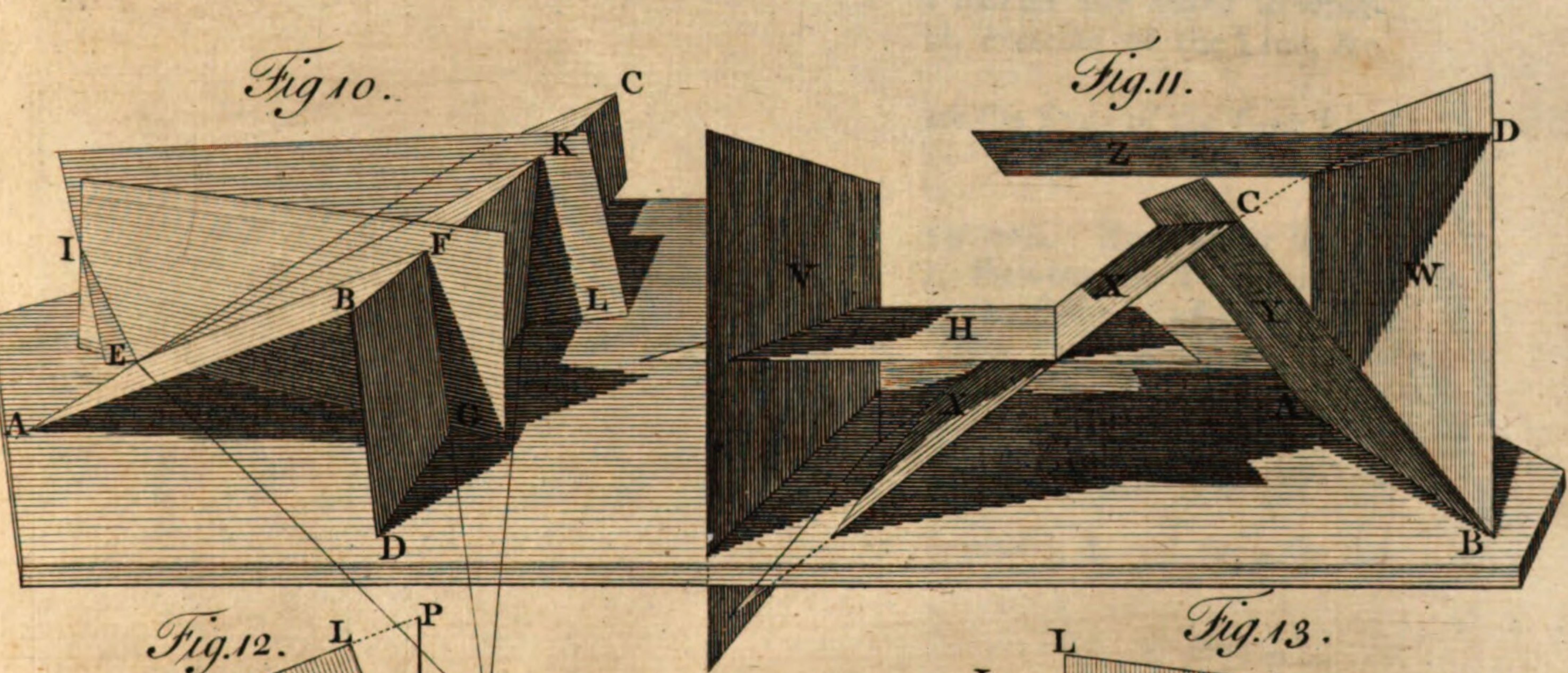
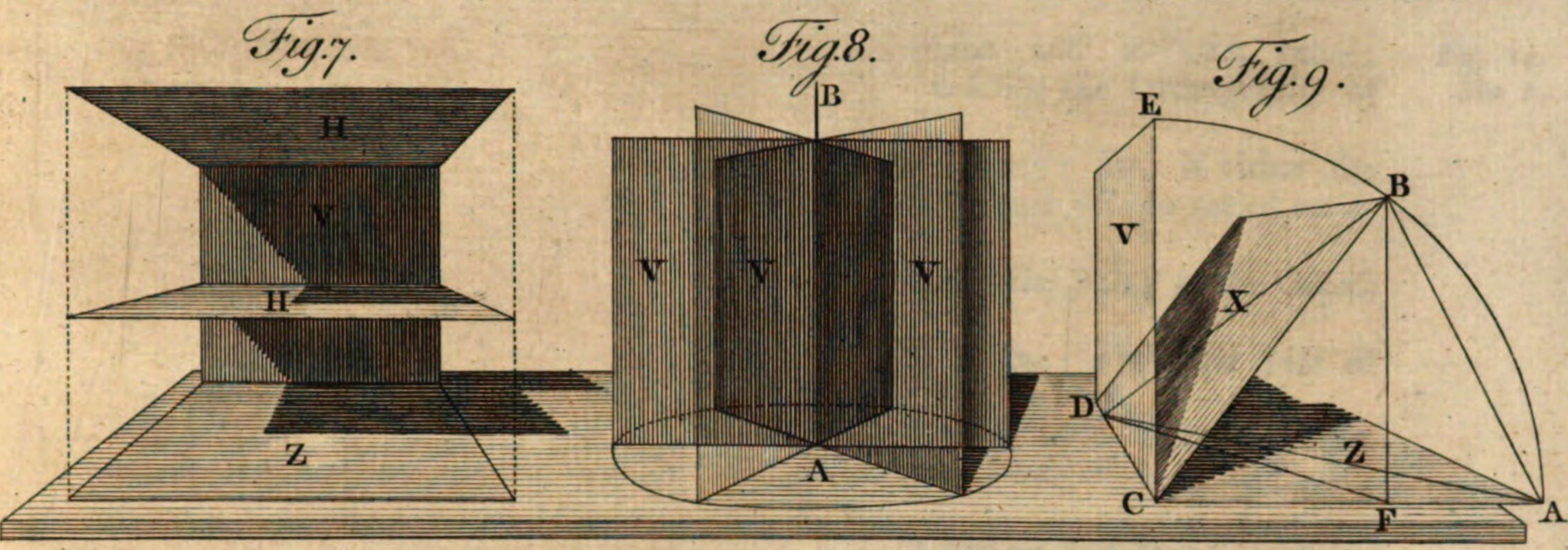
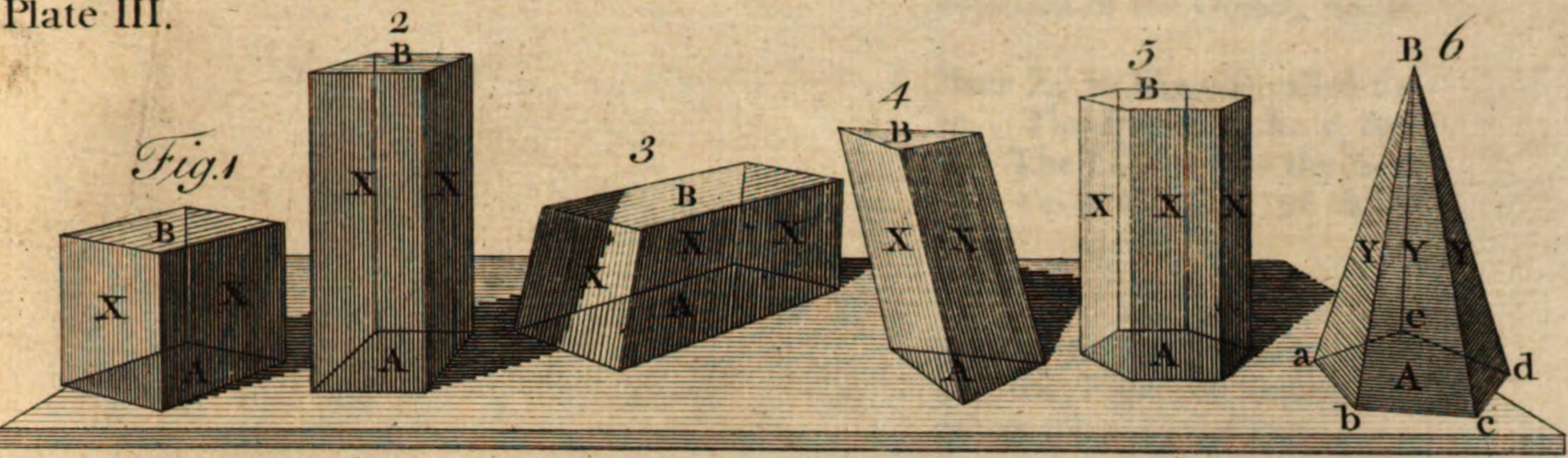
N. B. When the Object to be delineated is circular or globular, the System of Rays is then properly called a Cone, for it is really so; but when the Object is right lined, or mixed, it is more properly called a Pyramid, as in Fig. 6.

Plate 3. the Base, A, only, being considered as the Object, and aB, bB, &c. as Visual Rays to the Eye, at B, in the Vertex of the Pyramid, aBd, formed by the Rays.

ICHOGRAPHY, or Ichnographic Projection, is that which is described by Right Lines, parallel amongst themselves and perpendicular to the Horizon, from every Angle of the Object, on a Plane parallel to the Horizon.

Fig. 14. No. 1. As Aa, Bb, Cc, &c. from the Angles A, B, C, &c. of the Object, to the Plane Z, which is horizontal. The points, a, b, c, d, &c. where the perpendicular Lines

Plate III.





Lines, or Rays, cut that Plane, being joined by Right Lines $a b$, $b c$, $c d$, &c. and diagonal wise, as $a c$, $b d$, &c. is the Ichnographic Projection of the Object, $A C B$.

The Figure, $a e c b$, projected on the horizontal Plane Z , is likewise called the **PLAN**, or **SEAT** of that Object on the Ground Plane. The Points a , b , c &c. are the Seats of the Angles, A , B , C , of the Object. The Line $a b$ is the Seat of the Side AB , and $b c$ of BC , &c. also the Diagonal $a c$ is the Seat of AC ; by which means, the Plan of the whole Figure is formed.

ORTHOGRAPHY. If the projecting Rays are parallel to the Horizon, and fall perpendicularly on a Plane (consequently Vertical) the Figure described, on that Plane, by the Intersection of the Rays, is the Orthographic Projection.

The Lines $A a$, $B b$, &c. are parallel to the Horizon and to each other; which, falling perpendicular on the vertical Plane V , describe the Orthography of the Object $A B C$, on that Plane.

Fig. 14.
No. 2.

Of these kinds of Projection there may be infinite variety; for, if either the Plane or the Object be turned, though ever so little, the Figure will be varied on it.

The Figure, $a e f b$, thus projected, may likewise be called the **SEAT** of the Object $A B C$ on that Plane; as $a e c b$ on the Ground Plane.

a is the Seat of the Angle A , and b of the Angle B , &c; $a b$ is the Seat of the Side AB , $a e$ of $A E$, and the Diagonal $a f$ of the Side $A F$.

$a e$ may also be considered as the Projection, or Seat, of the Plane $A E C$, and $a b$ of $A B C$; for, if they were produced, they would cut the Plane V in those Lines.

N. B. The Seat of a Point, Line, or Plane, may be had on any Plane in whatever Position; by drawing Right Lines from each extreme of the Line, &c. perpendicular to the Plane.

$b f$ on the Plane Z , and $b f$ on the Plane V , are the Seats of the same Line $B F$, in the Object $A B C$; and so of the rest.

Orthographic Projection is usually called the **ELEVATION**. But, when it exhibits the End of a Building, or part of the End only, shewing the Projecture of the several parts, from the main Body of the Building, the Contour of the Curves of Moulding, &c. it is called a **PROFILE**. And, when the Building is supposed to be cut by a vertical Plane, in any direction through the Building, the hither part being supposed to be removed, and the inside exposed to view, shewing the thickness, &c. of the Walls and Floors, the structure of the Roof and proportion of the Timbers, &c. it is called, a **SECTION**.

All these different kinds of Projection are entirely geometrical, and supposes the Eye of the Spectator at an infinite Distance.

SCENOGRAPHY, is the Projection made by a Cone or Pyramid of Rays, or Right Lines, from every Angle, or part of the Object, converging to a Point.

As $O A$, $O B$, $O C$, &c.

For, if those Rays are cut by a Plane (X) passing between the Object and the Vertex (O) the Figure projected, by the Rays, on that Plane, is the Scenographic Projection of the Object $A B C$.

Fig. 14.
No. 3.

If the Vertex, O , of this Pyramid of Rays, be considered as the Eye of a Spectator, and the Right Lines $O A$, $O B$, &c. as visual Rays, the optic Pyramid being cut by the Plane X , considered as a Picture, the Figure, $a b d e$, projected thereon, is the **PERSPECTIVE REPRESENTATION** of the Object $A B C$.

N

STEREO-

Plate V. **STEREOGRAPHY** comprehends the whole Art of representing Solids * on a Plane; which differs from geometrical Projection, in what was explained in the preceding Definition; that the projecting Rays, supposed to proceed from every part of the Object, terminate in a point, at any distance from the Object; which Point, is always considered as the Eye of a Spectator, and the intersecting Plane as the Picture. The Section of the Rays is the Representation.

By this kind of Projection, the several dimensions of Bodies, viz. length, breadth and thickness, are all represented at one View, in the greatest degree of perfection that Art is capable of; insomuch, that, with the assistance of Colour and Shade, judiciously disposed, it is possible to deceive the Eye and Judgment; in supposing the Representation, on a Plane, to be a real Object.

As the Stereographic Projection (of Objects) is various, I shall explain it, more fully, under the three several Heads, Perspective, Projected Perspective or Projection, and Transprojection. And first, of PERSPECTIVE, which is more immediately the Subject of the following Treatise; that part of Stereography being more particularly adapted to the purpose of delineating all kinds of regular Objects, than either of the other; which are, therefore, but seldom practised; and indeed, because they are but little understood, or the difference between them known; yet, they have their several uses in delineating.

They are particularly useful in projecting the Shadows of Objects, delineated, in some positions of the Luminary; which, produce the best effect in the Picture.

I shall now proceed to a full explanation of the Term PERSPECTIVE, and endeavour to place it in the clearest point of view that I am capable of.

N. B. Let the Reader take particular notice, that all the References to Fig. 15. refers, likewise, to the Apparatus.

PERSPECTIVE, is a Science founded on Geometry; which teaches how to delineate, or draw, on a plane Superficies (or, simply, on a Plane) the true representations of Objects, according to their Distance and Situation, and Bearings of the Objects to each other; from any Station, at pleasure, real or imaginary.

To give a clear and perfect Idea of the Principles on which the Science of Perspective is built, it is necessary that the Objects, to be represented, are considered as being beyond, or on the other Side of the Picture; that is, having fixed on the Station, from which you intend to delineate an Object, imagine a transparent Plane interposed between the Eye and the Object, or Objects; through which you have distinct Vision, of the Objects on the other Side.

It is evident, to all who have considered it, that if, with a steady hand, you trace every Line, of Objects, accurately, as they appear on the transparent Plane (which may be supposed a Window, or a perfectly regular Plate of Glass) keeping the Eye fixed in a Point, there will be a true, linear Perspective, Representation of all the Objects on that Plane; which, is considered as the Picture. Now, the performance of this, by geometrical Rules, is what is properly called PERSPECTIVE.

Fig. 15. Let BFIKL be an Object having the three Dimensions, length, breadth, and thickness; which may be supposed a Building, or what you please, to be represented on the Plane, or Picture MNOP, standing perpendicular on the Ground Plane, SRZ; whose Intersection with it, MP, is at right Angles with the line of Station, SL. The Picture, MNOP, is, therefore, direct, between the Object and the Spectator, ES. EA, EB, EF, &c. may be considered as Visual Rays, in which the vision of the Object, BFIL, is conveyed to the Eye, at E. It

* Every Object, having length, breadth and thickness or depth, comes under the Denomination, geometrically, of a Solid; the concavity, if any, not being considered; but only the external Form, consisting of Planes or other Surfaces, variously disposed.

2. It is obvious, that if this Plane, or Picture, was transparent, the Representation, $aifc$, on that Plane, of the Object, $BFIL$, on the other Side, would, by means of the Right Lines EA , EI , EF , &c, from each Angle of the Object to the Eye, exactly coincide, and agree in every part, with the original Object.

For, as it is not possible for Vision to be conveyed but in Right Lines to the Eye (except through dense, refracting Mediums) the Angle A , of the Object, must necessarily appear at a , on the Picture, B will appear at b , and F at f , &c. where the Right Lines, from the Angles of the Object to the Eye, pass through the Picture; and is the supposed reason for the genesis of a Point on the Picture, in Theory. The Right Line ab , or bg , on the Picture, joining the representations of the Angles, or Points, A and B , or B and G , in the Object, will also coincide with, and hide the Original Line, AB , or BG , from the Eye, at E ; and is, therefore, its Representation; and so of all the other Lines on the Picture.

This, I think, needs no other Demonstration, for it is ocular, and evident, that the Angle, made by the Pyramid of Rays forming a solid Angle (AEF , FEC) at E , is, not only equal, but, the same, under which, both the Object and its Representation are seen.

3. So likewise, the Representation, fi or fd , on the Picture, of any Line, FI or FD , in the Object, is seen under the same Plane Angle, IEF or FED . Consequently, fi coincides with FI , and fd with FD ; the representations, $abgh$ of the Plane $ABGH$, $fghi$ of $FGHI$, and bfc of the Plane BFC , coincide with each other, respectively; and consequently, the whole Representation, $aifc$, or Projection of the Object, $AIFC$, perfectly coincides with the Original, in the Point of View E , in that Position and Situation of the Picture and Object.

Wherefore, since the Eye is affected, in the same manner, by the Lines and Angles on the Picture, as by the corresponding Lines and Angles of the Object, it is evident, that, if the Picture had the same degree of Light and Shade, and also the true teint of Colour, as the Object, it would be impossible for the Eye, at E , to distinguish whether it was a Picture, delineated on the Plane $MNOP$, or the real Object, on the other Side, that was perceived.

4. Hence it is manifest, that there is, and may be, great deception in Vision; and also, that there may be various Representations, of the same Object, from the same Station or Point of View; which, notwithstanding their difference in figure and dimensions, will have the same Appearance in the true Point of view.

For, if any other Plane, as $MNOP$, be placed between the Eye and the Object, not parallel to $MNOP$, the Representation, of the same Object, projected on that Plane, by its intersection with the Visual Rays, will not only be smaller, but, also, very different in Figure and Proportion. For, having drawn the Right Lines SA , SB , SC , from the Foot of the Spectator, at S , to each angle of the Object, towards the Picture, on the Ground Plane, they will determine the extreme width of the representation of that Object on each Picture; and also the proportion, of the representation of the Plane AG to that of GC , which is, as kl to lm , on the Picture $MNOP$, where the lines SA , SB , and SC cut the bottom edge of the Picture; and, on $MNOP$, the Proportion is as no to op ; but, MP is not parallel to MP ; consequently, the proportion, of no to op , is not as kl to lm .

If the Picture was placed on MQ , it is obvious that the Representation would be still less, and also different in its Figure and Proportion; as the parts Qr , rq , intercepted between the lines SA , SB , and SC , sufficiently evinces.

Thus, may there be as many different Representations, of the same Object, as you please, and from the same Point of View; from the different Position and Distance of the Picture; all which, will affect the Eye alike, at the Point E , in the Vertex of the Optic Cone or Pyramid of Rays.

P R O-

Plate IV. PROJECTED PERSPECTIVE, or PROJECTION.

Fig. 15.
No. 4.

If the Visual Rays EB, EC, ED, &c. are supposed to be produced, or projected beyond the Object ABCD (a quadrangular Pyramid) and there fall on, or are cut by a Plane (V) the Representation (a d b c) of the Object, projected on that Plane, is the Projection of the Object ABC.

No. 5.

No. 4.

Projected Perspective is the very same, except in the operation, as common Perspective, *i. e.* when the Rays are cut by a Plane passing between the Object and the Eye, with only this difference, that, in common Perspective, the Representation is always less than the Object; because the section of the Rays, by the Plane X, is on this Side, towards the Eye; in projected Perspective, the Representation must necessarily be larger than the Object, because the Plane of the Section, V, is beyond the Object; but, if the Planes are parallel between themselves, whether the Rays are cut on this or on the other Side of the Object, or both, the Representations will be perfectly similar.

a, b, c, and d are the projective Representations of the several Angles of the Pyramid, A, B, C, D; which, joined by Right Lines, is the Projection of that Object on the Plane V.

GHIF is the Plan or Seat of the Object ABCD, on the Ground Plane, to which the Base, ACdD, is parallel.

By means of the Seat and the Station Point, S, the Representation, a b c d, on the Plane V, may be projected.

The difference between Perspective and Projection is very obvious.

In Perspective, the Object, to be represented, is always supposed beyond the Picture, X; in Projection, the Picture V, is beyond the Object; which is projected, or supposed to be thrown forward to the Picture, and which is full as rational to suppose. Nor is there occasion, in this Case, to suppose the Picture transparent, as in the former, when the Picture is supposed to be on this Side of the Object.

The difference in the Operation is very little, and is illustrated by frequent use in the practical part of this Work.

Fig. 15.
No. 6.

TRANSPROJECTION. If the Visual Rays, from the Object (ABCD) are supposed to pass through the Eye (at E) forming an opposite Pyramid of Rays (a E b) and there fall on, or are cut by a Plane (Y) the Figure (a c b d) projected on that plane, by its intersection with the Rays, is the Transprojection of the Object (ABCD).

It is evident, that, in this kind of Projection, the Representation may be either larger or smaller, or equal to the Object; as the Plane, Y, is removed further or nearer to the point E; or, as the point E is removed nearer to, or further from the Object. For, if the point E be in the middle, between the Object and the Plane of the Section, the Representation will be equal to the Object; and, whether it be nearer to, or further from the Object, the Representation will have that Proportion, to the Original, as their Distances from the point E.

It is also evident, that Projections of this kind must necessarily be inverted; as the Rays all pass through one common Point (a is the transprojected place of the Angle A, on the Plane Y, c of C, and b of the Vertex, B, of the Pyramid) in the same manner as Optical Philosophers endeavour to account for Vision; by supposing an Image, of every Object perceived, formed in the back part of the Eye, on the Retina, in the same inverted Position. The Eye being in this respect like a *Camera Obscura*, which is a kind of artificial Eye; in which, the Picture is always inverted. (See Page 10, 1st. and 2nd. Par. Also, see Fig. 13, Plate II.)

Notwith-

Notwithstanding, if the Plane Y, of the transprojective Picture, be parallel to either the perspective, X, or the projective, V, the Representation thereon will be similar to the other, or to both, if they are all parallel amongst themselves.

An ORIGINAL OBJECT is any Object whatever, which is the Subject of the Picture we are delineating.

BFIL is an Object, of which, the Projection, *aifc*, on the Plane MNOP, or *aifc*, on the Plane MNOP, are Representations.

Also, parts of an entire Object, as a Column, a Chimney, &c. are the Originals of their separate Representations.

By ORIGINAL PLANE is meant, not only, according to Dr. Brook Taylor, the Ground, or other Planes upon which Objects are seated, but also, the Planes of which original Objects are composed.

ABGH and BFC, &c. in the Original Object BFIL, are Original Planes, as well as the Ground Plane Z on which it stands.

It may be necessary to make a distinction between Figures and Objects, although every Plane Figure may be called an Object; but, I think, that Term is, more properly, applicable to Solids than to Plane Figures.

By ORIGINAL FIGURE, I shall therefore mean, only, Figures in Original Planes, as Doors, Windows, &c. in Original Objects; or the Figure of the Original Plane itself. As FGHI, or BGFDC, &c.

Any geometrical Plane Figure whatever, in Original Objects, is, therefore, an ORIGINAL FIGURE.

ORIGINAL LINE is any Line in an Original Object, whether Right Line or curved; as the Bounds or Limits of all Original Planes, or Figures, are Lines.

AB, BG, FG, FD, &c. are Original Lines, in the Original Planes ABGH and BFC, each, of which, is likewise in another Plane; for, each is the common Intersection of two Planes; consequently, each Line is in two Planes.

By Prop. 1. 7. El. the common Intersection of two Planes is a Right Line.

AB is the common Intersection of the Ground Plane and the Plane ABGH, and is, therefore, in both Planes; and, BG is, for the same reason, in both the Planes ABGH and BFC; and so of all the rest.

2. The Intersection of two Lines is a Point; and the extremes of Lines are also Points; wherefore, the Angles F, G, H, &c. of the Object BFIL, are Points; for they are the intersections, and also the extremes of Lines; and are called ORIGINAL POINTS.

All Original Objects, whatever, that are formed by Art, as Buildings of all kinds, &c. (which are the fittest subject for Perspective) are composed either of Planes or of curved Surfaces. Every Building and parts of Buildings come under the Denomination of some one or other geometrical Solid; as Parallelopiped, Prism, Pyramid, Cylinder, Cone, or Sphere; or they are compounded of several, together. For, the Body of the Building is either one Parallelopiped, or it is composed of several, variously disposed, at the discretion of the Architect. The Roofs are, generally, either triangular Prisms, or Pyramids. The Planes, of which Roofs are chiefly composed, are either Triangles, Parallelograms, or Trapezia. The Planes which compose the Fronts and Ends, &c. of a Building are, for the most part, Parallelograms; sometimes Pentagons (as BGFDC) or other Poligons;

Fig. 15.

3. 11. Euc.

which contain other geometrical Figures, variously disposed, as Doors, Windows, &c. which are generally Parallelograms, sometimes Circles, Ellipses, or mixed Figures.

Temples, in Gardens, Cupolas, &c. are either cylindrical, or polygonal Prisms; the Roofs, of which, are either pyramidal, spherical, or mix'd curved Surfaces.

Columns approach nearly to Cylinders; in the lower part they are perfectly so.

+ Def. 55,
Geo.

Thus, may every part of a Building, or other regular Object, be reduced to some geometrical Figure or other. Solids are composed of Planes or other Surfaces, all which, may again be reduced, to their first Principle Lines; for, as the boundaries of Solids are Planes, or other Surfaces, so the bounds of Planes, &c. are Lines.† Also the Figures in Planes, whether Doors, Windows, &c. or other Figures, are composed of Lines; all which, are ORIGINAL LINES.

So likewise, Mouldings, Steps, &c. are represented by Lines; which, in the Originals, are generated either by Planes, only, as streight Steps, or by Planes and curved Surfaces, as in Mouldings and circular Steps. Each Moulding, if it be right lined, is composed of Planes and cylindrical Surfaces; which, by their parallel intersections, generate Right Lines. Circular Mouldings, in Cornices, &c. are composed of Planes, with cylindrical and other curved Surfaces; which, by their regular intersections, generate circular Lines.

The Edges of Columns and other cylindrical Objects, which are represented by Lines, on the Picture, have no real existence in the Originals, but are only apparent; for there is no real Line; as it is but one continued Surface which returns again into itself, without cutting or intersecting, by which Lines are generated. The Lines, which form the representations of Bases, &c. of Columns, are, in the Originals, some of them real and some only apparent; as the contour of the Curve of the Torus, &c. and have various Forms, on the Picture, according to the situation of the Eye, or Picture.

Having thus reduced compound Original Objects into their first Principles or Elements, viz. Planes and Lines; the next thing, to be considered, is the Position and Situation of those Planes and Lines, in respect of the Picture and of each other; which being premised and well considered, the whole mystery of linear Perspective will be found comprised in a small Compass, both in Theory and Practice. The Principles on which the Theory is built are few, but they are general, and applicable in all positions of the Picture and situation of the Object, or of the Eye. Wherefore, the Distance and Situation of the Object being determined; that is, the Station being fixed, from which an Object is to be delineated, and the Position of the Picture determined, the Representation is also determinable; which Representation, is always in proportion to the Distance of the Picture,

Thus far I have proceeded, merely by way of Introduction. I have called it an Introduction to Perspective, because, it cannot be called a part or branch of that Science; seeing, all which it contains may be, and is, known to several, who are not acquainted with one Theorem, or any Rules for the practice of Perspective. Nevertheless, I am well convinced, that, the knowledge inculcated by this Introduction is by no means to be dispensed with, being as essential to be previously known, as the Definitions of the Terms used in Perspective; which, might also be contained in the Introduction, but not with propriety, being elementary. It is certainly possible, by Rules laid down, for a Person to practise Perspective without knowing what Perspective means; but that is not compatible with my Design, having entitled this Work a Compleat Treatise, which could not possibly be, without accounting for the Rules given; which I shall do, as briefly as is consistent with the Subject, not dwelling on any unnecessary part of the Science.

I shall now proceed to define the more elementary Terms, on which the whole Theory of Perspective is built; the Rules for Practice are deduced from that Theory.

SECTION

S E C T I O N III.

Containing the ELEMENTS OF PERSPECTIVE.

IN order to investigate the Theory of Perspective, with clearness and precision, it is necessary to have recourse to certain imaginary Planes, which may be conceived to pass through the Eye of a Spectator, or Point of View, from which an Object is supposed to be delineated, in all Positions as occasion requires.

The Picture, as it has already been observed, (under the Article Perspective) is supposed to be between the Eye and the Object.

Three of those imaginary Planes, together with the Picture and any Original Plane whatever, are supposed to be constructed as they are represented in Plate IV, Fig. 16, 17, 18, 19, 20 and 21. The Planes, thus constructed, I shall first define; afterwards, the Lines generated by their Intersections; and lastly, the Points produced by the intersections of the Lines; all which, are so essentially necessary, that, in short, without the assistance of these five fundamental Planes, and the Lines and Points generated by their Intersections with each other, Perspective would be a very intricate and perplexed Study; and, in Theory, a most imperfect Science.

I would, before I proceed further, particularly advertise young Students, not to pay the least regard to the general positions of the Planes I am about to define, but only their position in respect of each other; for which reason I have given them in various Positions, and advise the Reader not to give particular attention to the first. For, in the Theory of Perspective, the position they have to the Horizon is not considered, at all; as the Theorems are general, and applicable in all positions and situations of the Picture, whatever; since (as Dr. Brook Taylor, in the Preface to his second Treatise, justly observes) all Planes, simply as Planes, are alike in Geometry, and have the same properties however situated.

D E F I N I T I O N S.

Plate IV.

I. Let ABGH be considered as a part, or a continuation of an ORIGINAL PLANE; being supposed to be produced (if necessary) from any Original Object to the Picture; and, till it cuts a Plane passing through the Eye of a Spectator, parallel to the Picture.

Fig. 16,
17, 18, 19,
20 and 21.

D E F I N I T I O N II.

The PLANE of the PICTURE (ABLM, or the Plane X) is considered as the Board, Paper, or Canvas, on which is to be delineated the representation of some Original Object, or Plane Figure.

The PICTURE is, generally and for the most part, vertical, and direct between the Eye and the Object to be delineated; as in Fig. 16, 18 and 19; but may be in any Position whatever; as in Fig. 17, 20 and 21.

D E F I N I T I O N III.

VANISHING PLANE. If a Plane be imagined to pass through the Eye parallel to any Original Plane, it is called the VANISHING PLANE of that Original Plane; or, simply, the PARALLEL of the Original Plane.

As V, or IKLM, parallel to Z or ABGH, Fig. 16, 17, &c.

And, a Perpendicular, EC, from the Eye to its Intersection with the Picture, is the RADIAL of the Vanishing Plane.

D E F I-

Plate IV.

D E F I N I T I O N IV.

The DIRECTING PLANE is an imaginary Plane, supposed to pass through the Eye of a Spectator, parallel to the Picture.

GHIK, or the Plane Y, parallel to the Picture, X, is the Directing Plane; the Eye of a Spectator being supposed at E, in the Directing Plane.

N. B. The Distance of the Directing Plane, from the Picture, is always equal to the Distance of the Eye (as EC) and being parallel to the Picture, it makes equal Angles with the Original Plane, as the Picture. (IHA equal MAN).

D E F I N I T I O N V.

The VERTICAL PLANE (ECDF) is supposed to pass through the Eye, perpendicular to the Original Plane and to the Picture. Wherefore, it cuts all the four preceding Planes at right Angles, in all positions of the Picture whatever.

D E F I N I T I O N VI.

RADIAL PLANE is an imaginary Plane, passing through the Eye and any Original Line, whatever.

Fig. 20.

As EVID, or ECPD; which, being produced, would pass through the original Line ON, or QP.

In Fig. 16. the Original Plane (AG) is supposed horizontal, and the Picture (AL) vertical; consequently, the Vanishing Plane (MK) and Directing Plane (KH) have the same Positions, and cut each other at right Angles; and also the Vertical Plane (ECDF).

In Fig. 17. suppose the Picture (ABLM) and the Directing Plane (HIKG) in the same vertical Position; and suppose the four Planes, viz. the Original Plane, the Picture, the Vanishing and the Directing Planes, so fixed together, as to be moveable on their Intersections, AB, GH, IK and LM, as on hinges; and then, let us suppose, the Picture and Directing Plane (and along with them the Vanishing Plane) pushed into an inclined position, on either Side of the original, vertical Position (AMB, HIKG; or AmlB, HikG) the Intersections AB and GH remaining, as they were, unmoved.

It is evident, that the parallelism of the Planes is not destroyed by this motion; for, the Vanishing Plane (IKLM) is still in the same horizontal position as before, though removed lower, to iklm; and, the Directing Plane, HikG or HIKG, is still parallel to the Picture, AmlB or AMB, both being inclined to the Original Plane and its Vanishing Plane, in equal Angles.

In Fig. 18. the Picture (X) and the Directing Plane (Y) are still Vertical, but the Original Plane (Z) and its Vanishing Plane (V) are inclined to them, and to the Horizon; making equal Angles with each other, as in the former Case.

Nor, is there understood to be any difference in the Position, between this and the preceding Figure; for, either Plane (AL or HK) may be supposed the Picture, and the other the Directing Plane; by which means, it has both the Positions of the former; only, supposing the Original Plane horizontal, the Picture and Directing Plane are consequently inclined.

In

In Fig. 19. both the Original Plane and Picture (NBH, and ABLM) are supposed Vertical; therefore, the Vanishing and Directing Planes are, also, Vertical; and the Vertical Plane (C D F E) in this Case, is consequently Horizontal.

In Fig. 20. the Planes are all inclined to the Horizon, and also to each other; excepting the Vertical Plane; which always cuts the other four at right Angles, and is, therefore, perpendicular to them all.

This Figure I recommend, more particularly than any of the other four, to be contemplated by the young Student (although it is the same in all) in order to divest him entirely, of partiality to any particular Position, respecting the Horizon.

In Fig. 21. The four primary Planes are all moveable, and may be put into all the Positions of the former; either at right Angles, as Fig. 16; or inclined, on either Side, as in Fig. 17, in any Angle at pleasure.

As these Planes are all marked with the same Characters, as in the five preceding Figures, it would be superfluous to particularize them here; and if a Plane be supposed to pass through the four Points, E, C, D and F, it will be vertical or perpendicular to them all, in every Position.

N. B. Any one of the four Planes may be the Original Plane, the opposite one is, consequently, its Vanishing Plane; either of the other may be the Picture, and the opposite to it is the Directing Plane; ECDF is still the Vertical Plane.

Of LINES, generated by the Intersections of the five elementary Planes.

D E F I N I T I O N VII.

INTERSECTION of the PICTURE, with an Original Plane, is the Line in which any Original Plane cuts the Picture; or, in which an Original Plane, being produced, would cut the Picture.

AB; is the Intersection of the Picture ABLM, with the Original Plane ABGH.

Fig. 16,
17, 18, 19,
20 and 21.

D E F I N I T I O N VIII.

VANISHING LINE is a Line produced by the Intersection of an imaginary Plane, passing through the Eye parallel to any original Plane, with the Picture.

LM, the Intersection of the Vanishing Plane, IKLM or V, with the Picture ABLM or X, is the Vanishing Line of the Original Plane, ABGH or Z.

D E F I N I T I O N IX.

PARALLEL of the EYE is the Line IK, in which the Vanishing Plane (V) and the Directing Plane (Y) intersect each other.

As both these Planes are imagined to pass through the Eye (at E) consequently, their Intersection (IK) passes through the Eye; and, because the Directing Plane is parallel to the Picture, the Parallel of the Eye is parallel to the Picture.

D E F I N I T I O N X.

DIRECTING LINE is the Line GH, in which, an Original Plane (Z) cuts, or would, if produced, cut the Directing Plane (Y).

P

D E F I

Plate IV.

D E F I N I T I O N XI.

Fig. 16, &c.

The VERTICAL LINE is the Line CD, in which, the Vertical Plane (ECDF) cuts the Picture; at right Angles with the Vanishing Line and Intersection of the Original Plane.

D E F I N I T I O N XII.

The DIRECTOR of an Original Line. If an Original Line be produced till it cuts the Directing Plane, a Right Line passing through the Eye and that Point is the Director of the Original Line.

ED (Fig. 20 and 21) is the Director of the Line NO, produced to D; where it cuts the Directing Plane.

D E F I N I T I O N XIII.

VISUAL RAY. With optical writers, this Term signifies an imaginary Ray of Light; by which, Vision is supposed to be conveyed from the Object to the Eye; therefore, in Perspective, it is a Right Line drawn from any Point, in an Object, to the Eye.

EA, EI, EF, &c. (Fig. 15.) and EN, EO, EP, &c. (Fig. 20 and 21) are Visual Rays.

D E F I N I T I O N XIV.

RADIAL LINE is the parallel of any Original Line, producing its Vanishing Point. (See Def. XXII.) As EV, Fig. 15, 20, and 21.

D E F I N I T I O N XV.

DIRECT RADIAL is a Right Line, from the Eye or Point of View, perpendicular to the Picture. As EC.

N. B. If the Original Plane be at right Angles with the Picture (as in Fig. 16.) the Direct Radial (EC) is the common Intersection of the Vanishing Plane, (IKLM) and the Vertical Plane (ECDF); and is, always, in the Vertical Plane.

Of POINTS, and their Distance from the Eye.

D E F I N I T I O N XVI.

The POINT of SIGHT is that Point where the Eye, of a Spectator, ought to be placed to look at a Picture; for, in that Point, only, can a perspective Picture be seen perfectly.

E is the place of the Eye, or Point of View, to look on the Picture ABLM. It is the Point where the three imaginary Planes, viz. the Vanishing, the Directing and the Vertical Planes, intersect; consequently, the Eye is in all the three. Or, it is the Point of Intersection between the Parallel of the Eye, IK, and the PRIME DIRECTOR, EF.

Fig. 15.

N. B. It is the Vertex of the Optic Pyramid of Rays (EA, EB, EF, &c.) the only Point in which the Images, or Representations (aifc,) on the Planes or Pictures, MNOP or OP, can exhibit a true Appearance of the Original Object (BFIL) on the other Side.

D E F I-

DEFINITION XVII.

The CENTER of the PICTURE is the Point C, in which the Picture is cut by a perpendicular Line from the Eye, or Point of Sight.

The Direct Radial (EC) being perpendicular to the Picture, is, therefore, in the Vertical Plane (ECDF) consequently, the Center of the Picture, produced by the Perpendicular EC, is in the Vertical Line (CD) and, when the Original Plane is perpendicular to the Picture, it is the Intersection of the Vertical Line (CD) and its Vanishing Line (LM)

Fig. 16.

DEFINITION XVIII.

DISTANCE of the PICTURE, or principal Distance, is the Direct Radial, or perpendicular Line, EC, from the Eye to the Picture, or to its Center.

N. B. The Center and Distance of the Picture are very essential, and ought to be well understood; for they govern all the rest.

DEFINITION XIX.

CENTER of a VANISHING LINE, is the Point where it is cut by a perpendicular Line from the Eye or Point of Sight.

EC (Fig. 15 and 16) or EC (Fig. 18, 19 and 20) being a Perpendicular from the Eye (E) to the Vanishing Line (LM) C or C is, therefore, its Center.

DEFINITION XX.

DISTANCE of a VANISHING LINE, is the Perpendicular, EC or EG, from the Eye to its Center.

For, it is the shortest Line that can be drawn from the Eye to the Vanishing Line.

DEFINITION XXI.

POINT of INTERSECTION, is that Point in which any Original Line (being produced, if needful) cuts the Picture; or the Plane of the Picture produced, if it be necessary

I is the Intersecting Point of the Line NO, produced to the Picture; B and F are the Intersecting Points, of the Lines AB and FI, on the Pictures MNOP.

Fig. 20. 21.
Fig. 15.

DEFINITION XXII.

VANISHING POINT. If a Line be drawn from the Eye, parallel to any Original Right Line, the Point, where it cuts the Picture, is the Vanishing Point of that Original Line.

NO is an Original Line, in the Original Plane HN BG; EV is a Line from the Eye, (E) parallel to NO, cutting the Picture in V, which is, therefore, the Vanishing Point of NO; and EV is its RADIAL, or simply, the PARALLEL of the Original Line; and it is, consequently, in the Vanishing Plane, or parallel of that Plane the Original Line is in.

Fig. 20.
and 21.

EC or EV being parallel to the Original Lines AB, GH, EI, &c. C or V, where it cuts the Picture, is, therefore, the Vanishing Point of those Lines.

Fig. 15.

N. B. The RADIAL, EC or EV, is the Distance of the Vanishing Point, C or V.

DEFI-

Plate IV,

DEFINITION XXIII.

DIRECTING POINT is that Point in which any Original Line, being produced, would cut the Directing Plane.

Fig. 20
and 21.

D is the Directing Point of the Original Line *NO*, or *PQ* being produced to the Directing Plane (*GHJK*).

It is the Intersection of the Original Line and the Directing Line, of the Plane the Original Line is in.

Fig. 16.

In Fig. 23. *O*, *P*, and *Q* are the Directing Points of the Lines *CB*, *AB*, and *AD*, where those Lines cut the Directing Plane, *GIKH*, produced.

DEFINITION XXIV.

STATION POINT is the Point in which a perpendicular Line, from the Eye or Point of Sight, cuts the Ground, considered as a horizontal Plane; or any other horizontal Plane, on which an Object, to be delineated, is seated.

Fig. 15.

S, is the real Point of Station, at the foot of a Spectator (*ES*.)

In Theory, it is that Point, in which a Right Line, from the Eye, cuts the Directing Line perpendicularly.

Fig. 16,
17, &c.

As *F*, in the Directing Line *GH*; *EF* being, supposed, perpendicular to *GH*.

AXIOMS.

I. One part of a Right Line cannot be in any Plane, and another Part of the Line out of that Plane.

II. Two Planes which are parallel cannot intersect.

III. The common Intersection of two Planes is a Right Line.

IV. The Intersection of two Lines is a Point.

V. Two Right Lines, that are parallel, are in the same Plane; i. e. a Plane may pass through both Lines.

VI. Two Right Lines, meeting in a Point, or which, if produced, would intersect, may be in the same Plane.

VII. Two Right Lines, being parallel, and both cut by another Right Line, are all in the same Plane.

VIII. Three Right Lines, touching or intersecting each other, are all in the same Plane; consequently, every right lined Triangle is in a Plane.

Fig. 20.
and 21.

Several of these Axioms are demonstrable Propositions, in the eleventh Book of Euclid's Elements; but, when a true Idea of a Plane is inculcated, they are so very evident, that it is but trifling to little purpose to attempt to prove them. Nevertheless, as the Student is supposed to understand Geometry, they may, without scruple, pass for Axioms here.

SECTION

Fig. 14. N^o 3.

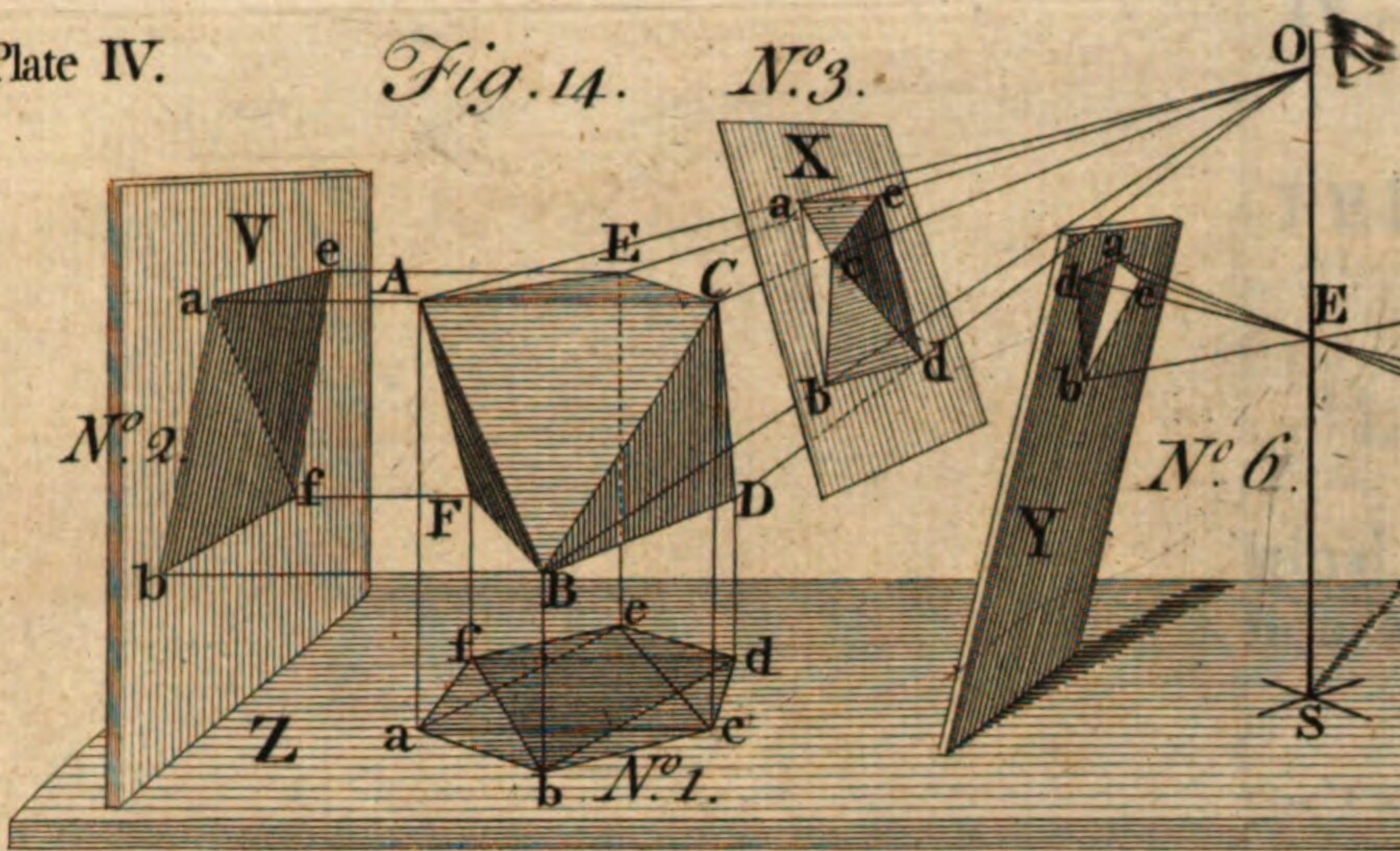


Fig. 14. N^o 4.

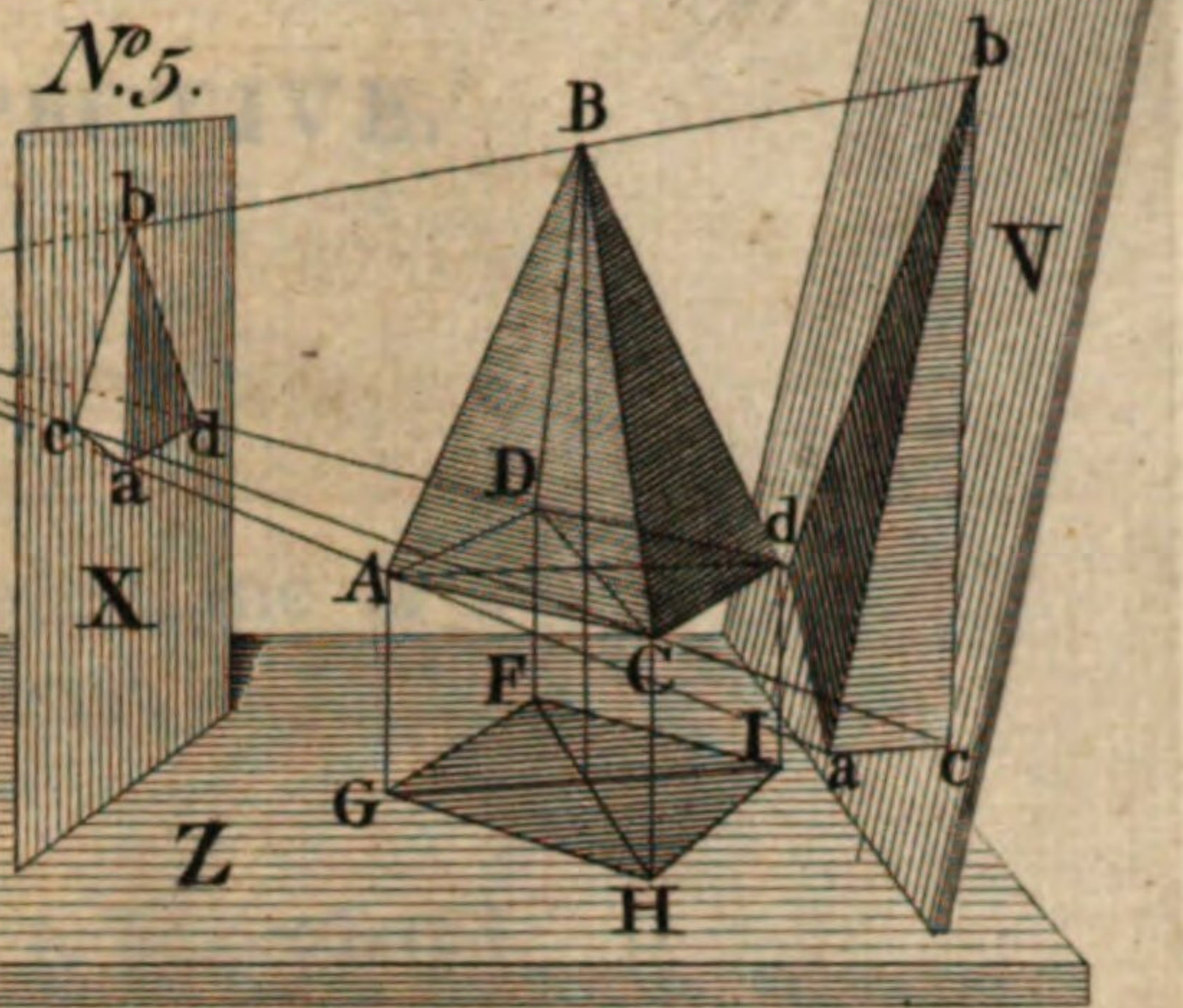


Fig. 16.

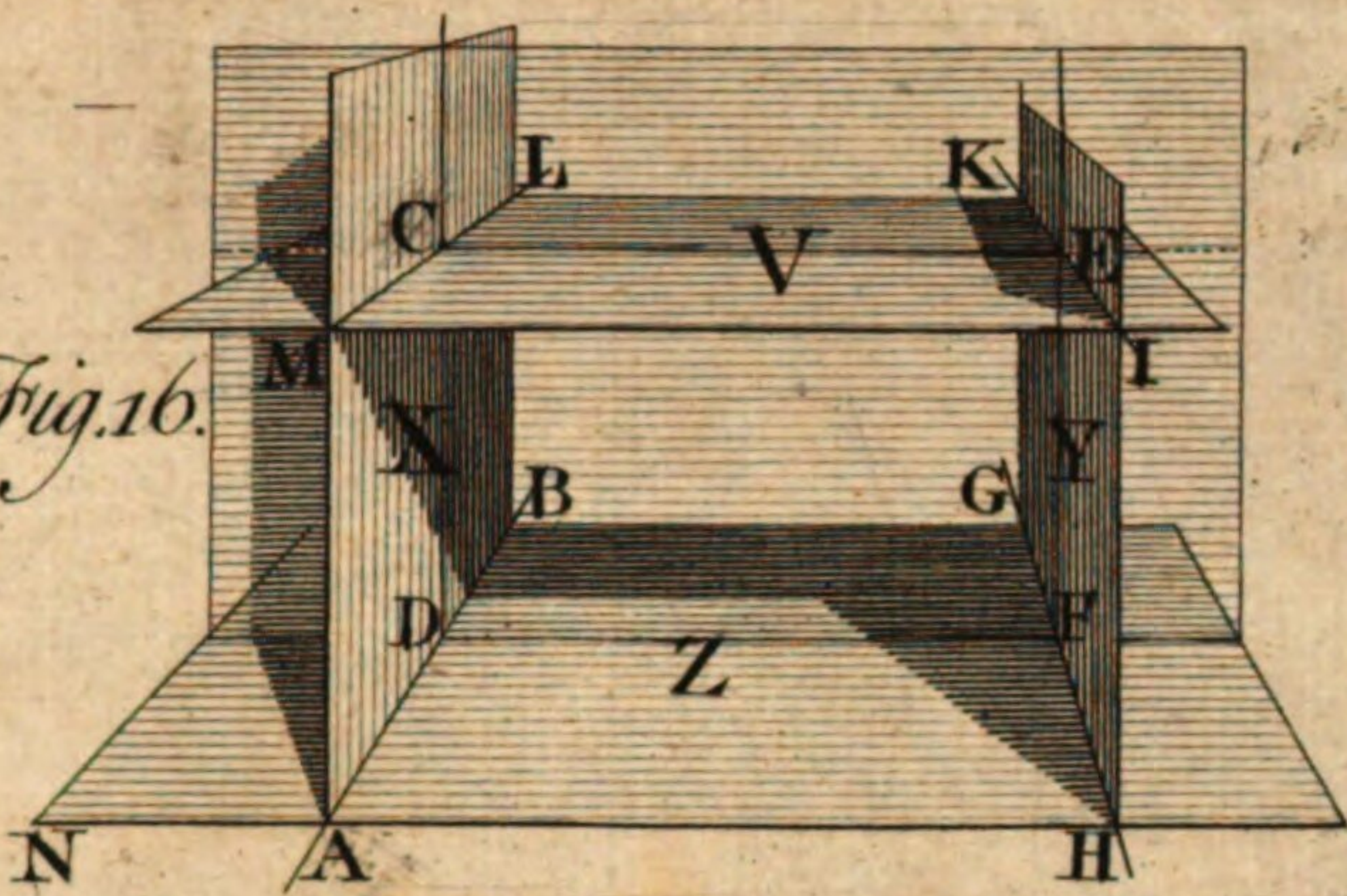


Fig. 17.

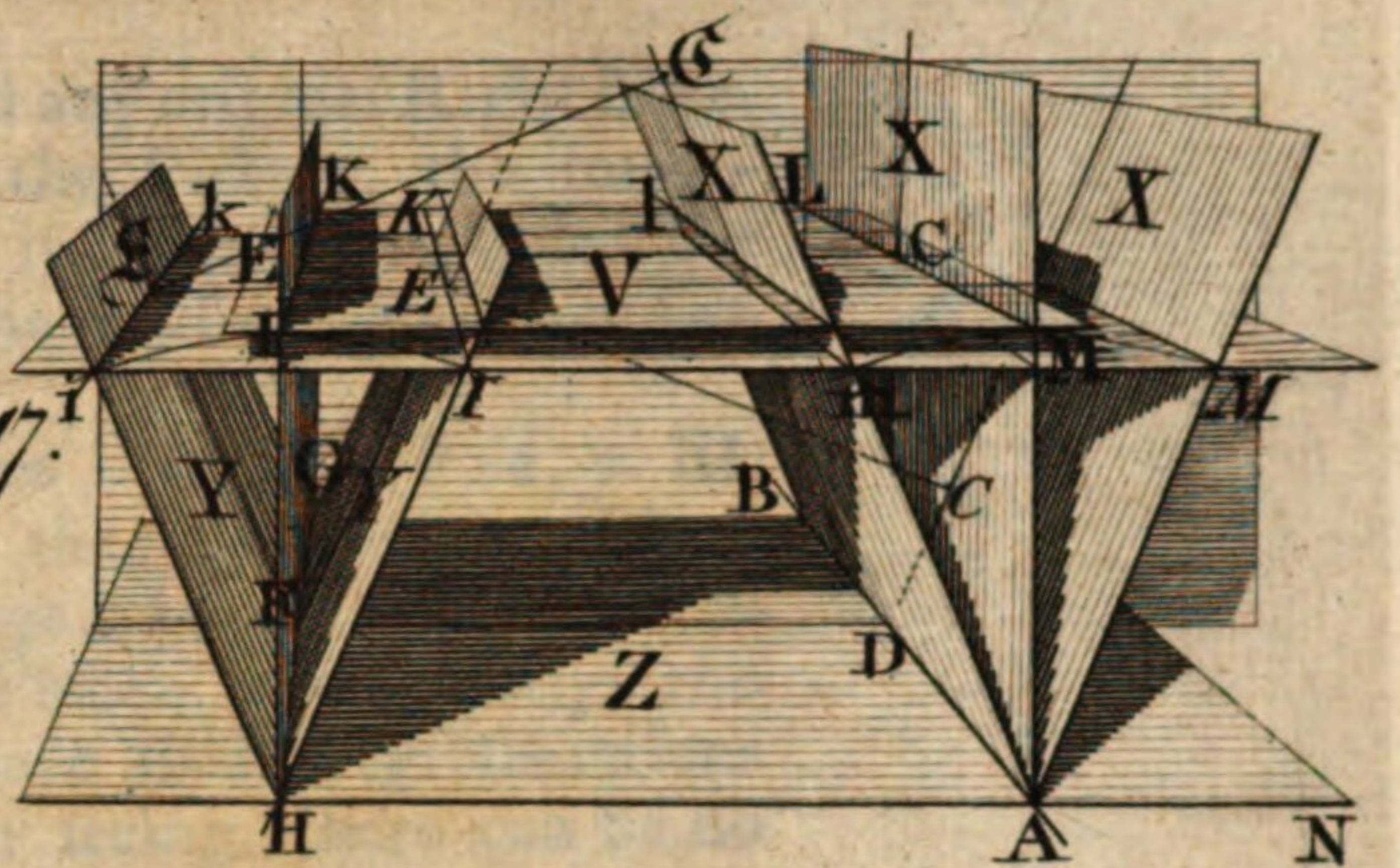


Fig. 19.

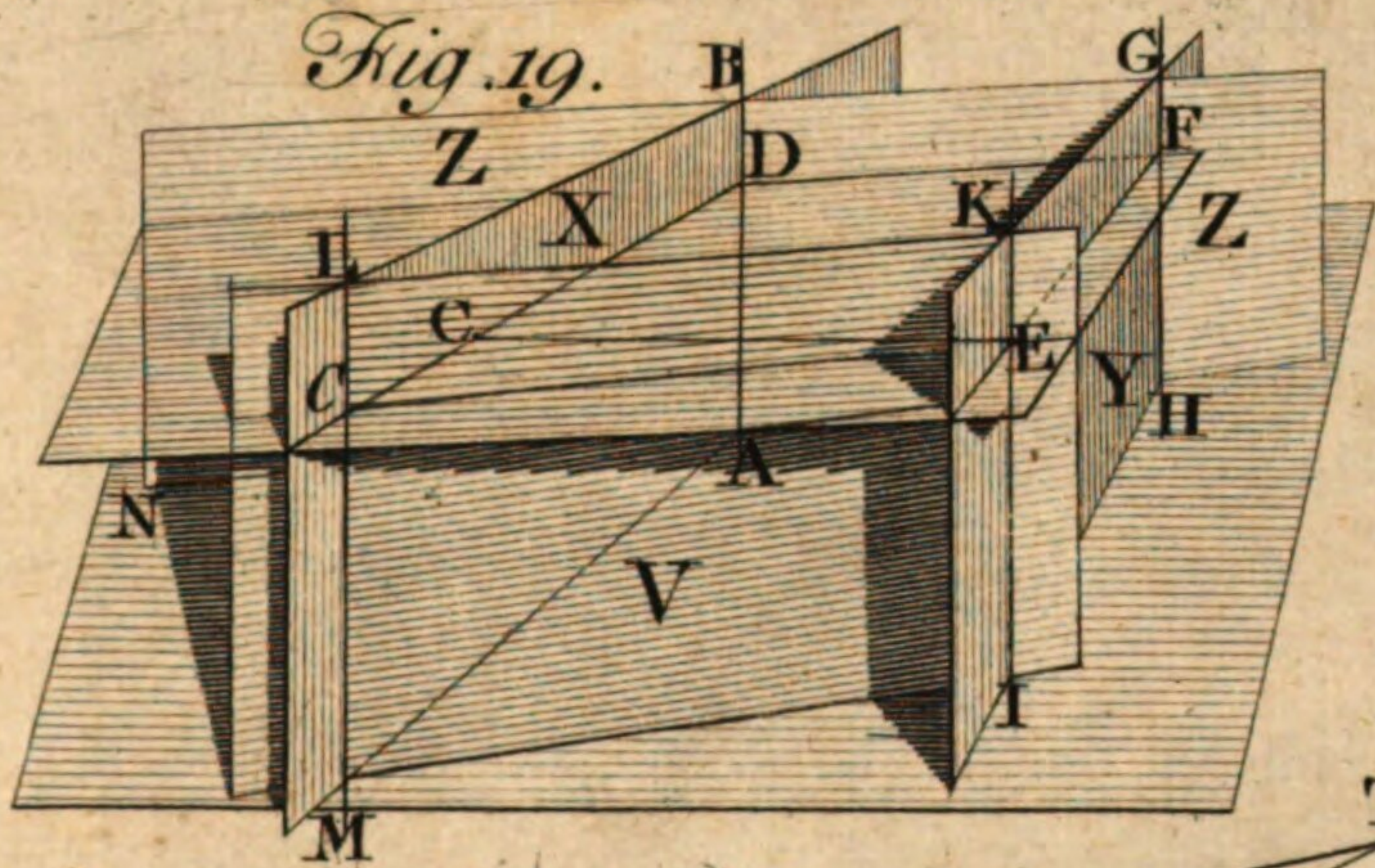


Fig. 18.

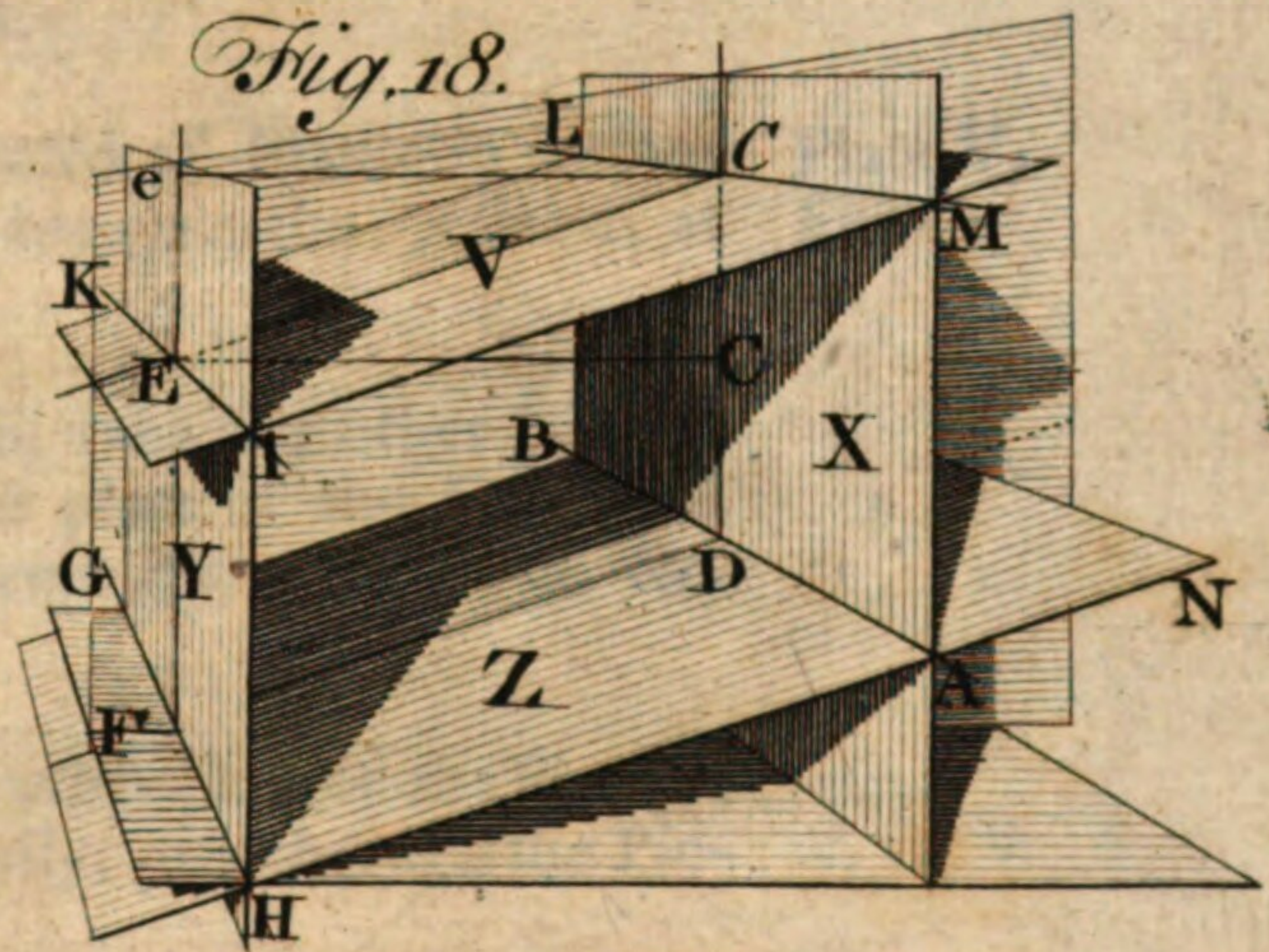


Fig. 20.

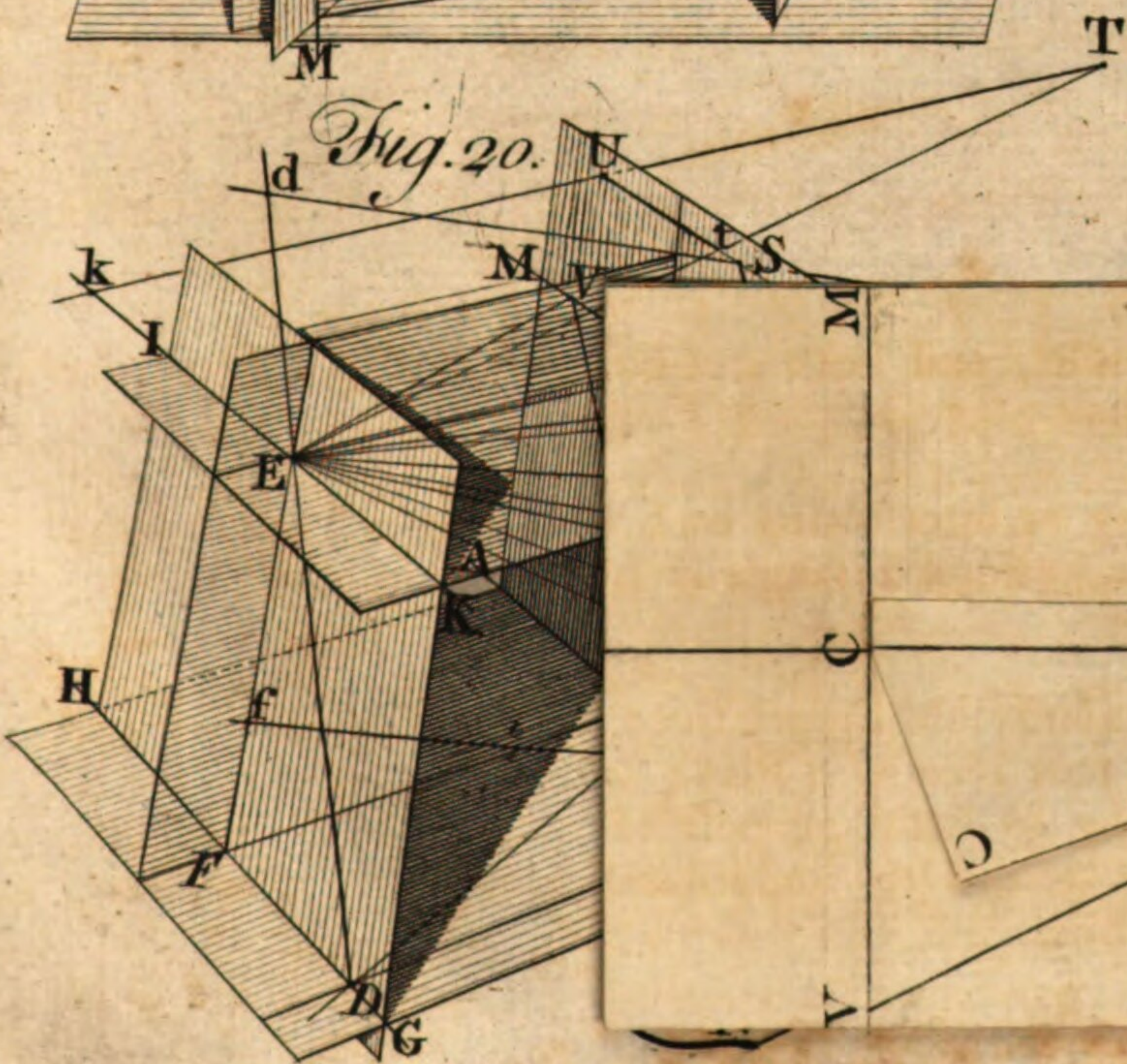
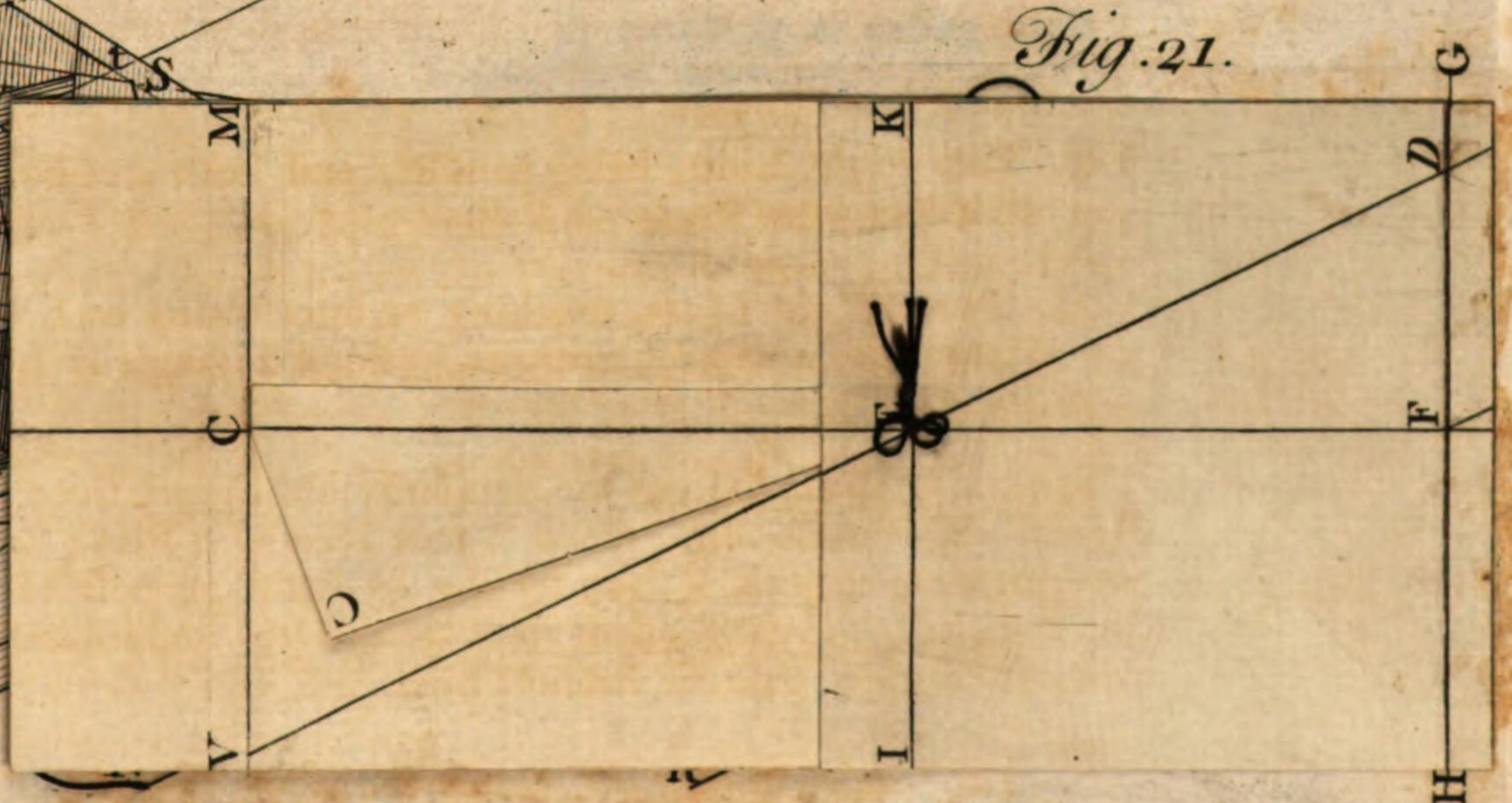
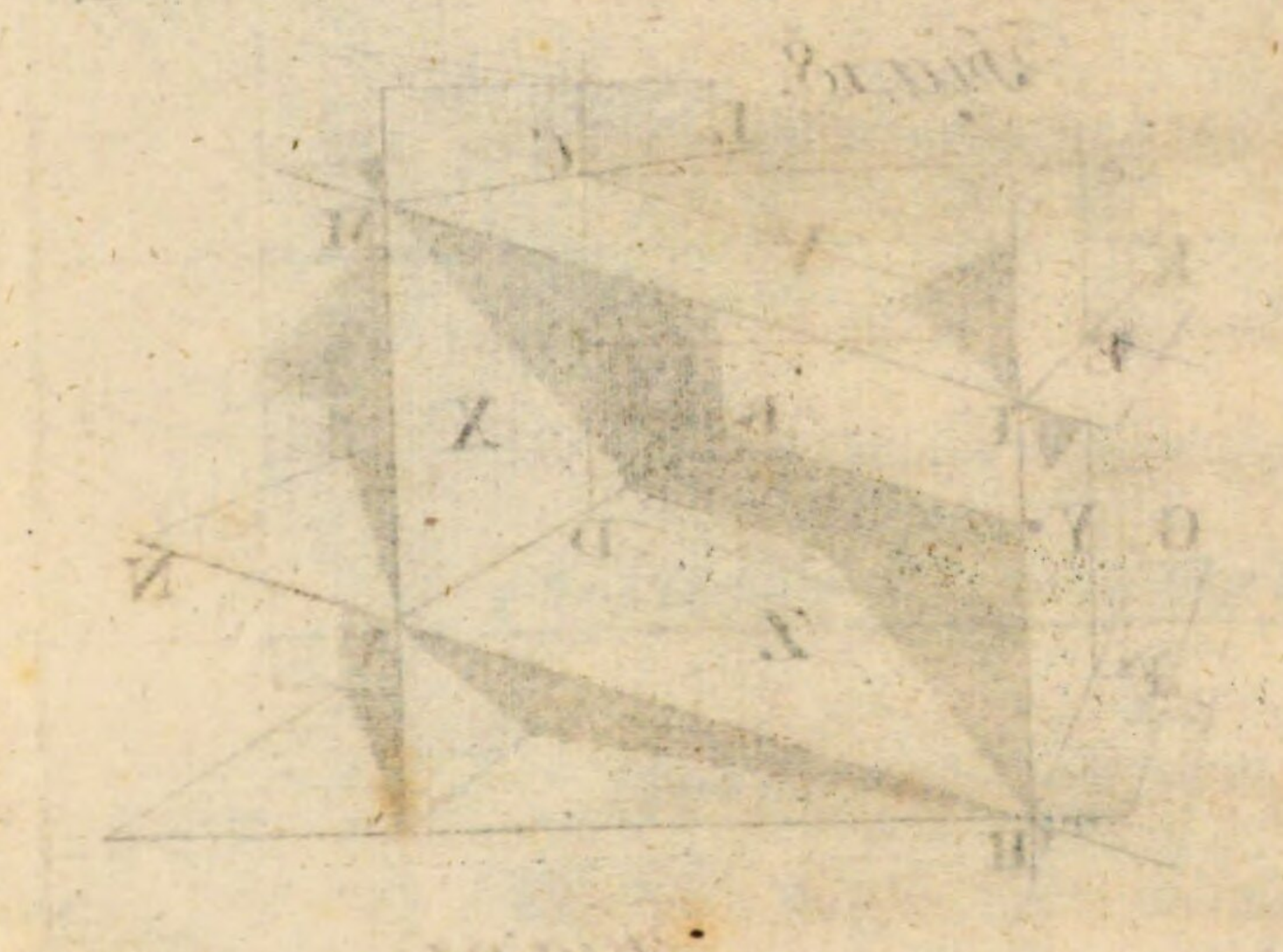


Fig. 21.





S E C T I O N IV.

Containing the THEORY of Rectilinear PERSPECTIVE.

T H E O R E M I.

THE Perspective Projection of every original Right Line is a Right Line, in every Position or Situation whatever.

The Representation of every Right Line is supposed, in Theory, to be produced by the Intersection of an imaginary Plane with the Picture.

DEM. Suppose a radial Plane to pass through the Eye and any original Right Line.

If the Line be situated on the other Side of the Picture, the imaginary Plane must, necessarily, cut the Picture; and, if it lie on this Side, the Plane will cut the Picture if produced; provided, the original Line be not in the Directing Plane.

But, the Intersection of two Planes is a Right Line - - P. 1. 7. E1.

And, since the Eye is in this imaginary Plane, the whole of that Plane appears but a Line. (See Definition of a Plane, Page 43.)

But, the original Line is supposed to be in that Plane; consequently, the Original Line and every Line in the radial Plane, have their Representations in the Intersection of that Plane with the Picture; seeing, there can be no other Line common to both Planes. To illustrate it.

EXAMPLE. Let, BFIL be a rectilinear Object, composed of Planes in various positions. Let MNOP be the Picture, placed direct between the Spectator, at ES, and the Object, BFIL. Plate V.
Fig. 15.

FI, FG, or FD, is an Original Line (or, if you please, take any other Line in the Original Object BFIL. E is the Point of Sight, or place of the Eye; and EI, EF, EG, &c. are Visual Rays, in which the extreme Points, I, F, G, &c. seen, are forming the Optic Angles FEI, FEG, &c.

Now since the Original Line FI, FG, &c. is on the other Side of the Picture, MNOP, the Visual Rays EF, EI, &c. must necessarily, pass through the Picture, to the Eye.

But, FEI is a Triangle; for, it is three Right Lines touching or cutting each other, and is, therefore, in a Plane. - - - Axiom 8.

The Ray EF cuts and passes through the Picture in the Point f, and EI in the Point i, &c. the Points f, i, g, &c. are, therefore, the Representations of the Original Points F, I, and G. For, they coincide with their respective Originals. Wherefore, the Line fi, or fg, joining the Points f and i, or g, is the Intersection of the Plane Triangle FEI, or FEG, with the Picture.

But, the common Intersection of two Planes is a Right Line. - - Ax. 3. And fi is the Representation, or perspective Projection of the original Line FI, or fg of FG. (See Projection, Scenography, Page 49.)

For, to the Eye, at E, the Point f coincides with the Original Point, F, i with I, and g with G; consequently, the Line fi coincides with its Original FI, and fg with FG.

N. B. It is the same, in respect of any other Right Line in the Original Object BFIL; or applied to any Right Line whatever.

Q

THEO-

Plate V.

THEOREM II.

An Original Plane, which is parallel to the Picture, has no Intersection with the Picture, nor Vanishing Line.

DEM. The Original Plane being parallel to the Picture cannot intersect it. Ax. 1. And, a Plane passing through the Eye parallel to the Original Plane, which should produce the Vanishing Line, by its Intersection with the Picture, is, in this Case, also parallel to the Picture, and the same with the Directing Plane; consequently, it can never cut the Picture, and therefore, cannot produce a Vanishing Line. Q. E. D.

Fig. 15. EX. Let $MNOP$ be the Plane of the Picture, parallel to the Plane BFC , of the Original Object $BFIL$.

Then, because the Plane BFC is parallel to the Picture, it cannot cut the Picture (though produced infinitely) therefore can have no Intersection with it. Ax. 2. And a Plane $RSTU$ passing through the Eye, at E , parallel to the Original Plane, BFC , is also parallel to the Picture; therefore, it cannot cut the Picture and produce a Vanishing Line; (agreeable to Def. 8.) for, it is the Directing Plane of that Picture; which is parallel to the Picture. - - Def. 4.

COR. Original Lines, which are parallel to the Picture, have neither Vanishing Point, Intersecting, nor Directing Points.

† Def. 22. For, an Original Line, parallel to the Picture, is, or may be, in a Plane that is parallel to the Picture; and, a Line passing through the Eye parallel to the Original Line, which should produce its Vanishing Point †, is, in this Case, also parallel to the Picture; and is, therefore, in the Directing Plane, which is parallel to the Picture. Wherefore, it can never cut the Picture and produce a Vanishing Point; or, it may be supposed at an infinite Distance.

Neither can the Original Line, for the same reason, cut the Picture or Directing Plane; therefore, it has neither Intersecting nor Directing Point.

EX. Because the Plane BFC is parallel to the Picture, every Line in that Plane is also parallel to the Picture; therefore, BG , GD , &c.

† Ax. 1. Consequently, since one part of a Right Line cannot be in any Plane, and another Part of it out of the Plane †, the Line BG , or GD , &c. can never cut the Picture and Directing Plane, and produce an Intersecting and Directing Point; agreeable to Definitions 21 and 23.

For the same reason a Line passing through the Eye parallel to the Original Line BG , GF , or GD , &c. must necessarily be in the Directing Plane $RSTU$; consequently, it can never cut the Picture and produce a Vanishing Point; agreeable to Definition 22.

THEOREM III.

The Vanishing Line, the Directing Line, and the Parallel of the Eye of any Original Plane, not parallel to the Picture, are parallel to the Intersection of that Plane with the Picture.

The Construction of the five elementary Planes with their uses and relation to each other, (as explained or defined), 'tis presumed, is well understood.

Sup-

Suppose, then, the first four, viz. the Original Plane, Z, its Parallel, or Vanishing Plane, V, the Picture, X, and Directing Plane, Y, forming a right angled Parallelopiped; or that part of them, only, which lies between their Intersections AB, ML, KI, and GH.

Plate IV.

Fig. 16.

DEM. Now, the Picture and the Directing Plane are parallel, and they are cut by an Original Plane and its Vanishing Plane, which are also parallel.

But, if two Planes, being parallel, are cut by another Plane, their common Sections are parallel. - - - - - P. 8. 7. El.

Consequently, if two parallel Planes are cut by two parallel Planes, their Intersections are all parallel amongst themselves.

But, AB, the Section of the Original Plane, Z, and the Picture, X, is the Intersection of the Picture. - - - - - Def. 7.

ML, the Section of the Picture, X, and the Vanishing Plane, V, is the Vanishing Line of the Original Plane, Z. - - - - - Def. 8.

KI, the Section of the Vanishing Plane, V, and the Directing Plane, Y, is the Parallel of the Eye. - - - - - Def. 9.

And, GH, the Section of the Directing Plane, Y, and the Original Plane, Z, is the Directing Line. - - - - - Def. 10.

Therefore, the Vanishing Line, ML, the Directing Line, GH, and the Parallel of the Eye, KI, are all parallel amongst themselves, and to the Intersection, AB, of the Original Plane with the Picture. Q. E. D.--4. 7. El.

N. B. Whether the Original Plane be at right Angles, or otherwise, with the Picture, the Demonstration holds good, in all positions whatever; since the Directing Plane is always parallel to the Picture, and the Vanishing Plane to the Original Plane; consequently, their common Intersections are still parallel amongst themselves.

To assist the Imagination, I have given a Figure with the four principal Planes, moveable; which may be raised up, to a Right Angle or any other, at pleasure. Fig. 21.

In every Position, it is evident, that the parallelism of the Planes, and consequently of their Intersections, remains; and the distance of the Intersections from each two, which are in the same Plane, is invariable.

The Vertical Plane may be supposed to pass through the middle, and perpendicular to them all; cutting the Vanishing and Directing Plane, in EC and EF; the Picture and Original Plane, in CD and DF.

COR. 1. If any one of the four Lines be given or determined, and one Point, in any of the other, be also given or found, the whole Line is determined.

For, it is a Right Line, drawn through that Point, parallel to the given Line; seeing, they are all parallel amongst themselves, by the Theorem.

COR. 2. If the Original Plane passes through the Eye, its Intersection and Vanishing Line is the same; and, the Parallel of the Eye is the same as the Directing Line.

Plate VI.

Fig. 22.

For, seeing that the Original Plane (U, or cde, being produced) passes through the Eye (E) there can be no other Plane pass through the Eye parallel to it; but, in this Case, the Original Plane and its Parallel coincide; consequently, its Intersection (LM) with the Picture (AMLB) is also its Vanishing Line.

And, for the same reason, the Parallel of the Eye (IK) coincides with the Directing Line; being produced by the same Original Plane.

In

Plate IV. In which case, no Figure in the Original Plane can be represented.

For, as the Original Plane passes through the Eye, the whole Representation of that Plane, and every Figure in it, is its Intersection with the Picture; and is the reason, why, Figures, in Horizontal Planes, that are on a level with the Eye, cannot be represented; for they are all in the Vanishing Line of Horizontal Planes, and, therefore, cannot appear in the Picture.

THEOREM IV.

A Line drawn from the Center of the Picture, to the Center of a Vanishing Line, is perpendicular to that Vanishing Line.

§ Def. 15.

† Def. 19.

† Ax. 8.

DEM. For, because the Direct Radial, producing the Center of the Picture, is perpendicular to the Picture; and the Center of every Vanishing Line is produced by a Right Line from the Eye perpendicular to the Vanishing Line; consequently, the Radial of the Vanishing Line, producing its Center, and the Direct Radial, together with the Line which joins the two Centers, form a Triangle, and are all in the same Plane† which Plane is perpendicular to the Picture. - - - - - P. 9. 7. El.

For, it passes through the Direct Radial, which is perpendicular to the Picture. And, it is also perpendicular to the Vanishing Line; because, it is perpendicular to the Picture, and also to the Plane which produced the Vanishing Line. - - - - - Cor. 1. 9. 7. El.

Wherefore, since the Radial of the Vanishing Line, and the Right Line joining the Center of the Picture and the Center of the Vanishing Line, are both drawn to the same Point in a Plane, at which Point the Vanishing Line is perpendicular to that Plane; consequently, the Line, joining the Center of the Picture and the Center of the Vanishing Line, is perpendicular to the Vanishing Line. Q. E. D. - - - - - Cor. 2. 2. 7. El.

Fig. 18.
and 19.

EX. LM is the Vanishing Line of the Original Plane Z; C is its Center, and C the Center of the Picture. Draw CC.

I say, that the Line CC is perpendicular to the Vanishing Line LM.

† Def. 5.

By Def. 17. EC producing the Center of the Picture is perpendicular to the Picture; wherefore, it is in the Vertical Plane (ECDF.)

For, it is perpendicular to the Picture, X, and also to the Vanishing Plane, V.† Consequently, LM, the common Section of the two Planes, V and X, is perpendicular to the Vertical Plane, ECDF. - - - - - 9. 7. El.

Wherefore, EC, the Intersection of that Plane and the Vanishing Plane, V, is perpendicular to LM. - - - - - 2. 7. El.

§ Def. 19.

But, EC produced the Center (C) of the Vanishing Line LM; and consequently, CC, the Intersection of the Vertical Plane with the Picture, is, also, perpendicular to LM; for, EC and CC are two Lines, cutting each other, in the same Plane (ECDF) to which the Vanishing Line, LM, is perpendicular, at the Point, C, of their common Section.

COR. 1. When the Original Plane is perpendicular to the Picture, the Center of the Picture is the Center of the Vanishing Line.

Fig. 16.

For, a perpendicular (EC) from the Eye to the Vanishing Line (ML) producing its Center is the Direct Radial, which is perpendicular to the Picture; and, consequently, produces the Center of the Picture; which is the Center of every Vanishing Line, of Planes perpendicular to the Picture. See Th. 6.

COR.

COR. 2. The Distance of every Vanishing Line, which does not pass through the Center of the Picture, is the Hypothenufe of a Right angled Triangle, whose Catheti, or Legs, are the Distance of the Picture, and the Distance between the Center of the Picture and the Center of the Vanishing Line.

For, EC is the Distance of the Picture, CC is the Distance between the two Centers; and, EC, the Hypothenufe of the Right angled Triangle ECC, is the Distance of the Vanishing Line LM. Fig. 18.

To fet this Matter in the clearest light possible I have illustrated it by moveable Planes, in Fig. 21.; which, let be raised up, in any Angle, at pleasure.

Underneath the Vanishing Plane (IKLM) is a triangular Plane (ECC) which, being turned down, perpendicular to the Vanishing Plane, will represent a Part of the Vertical Plane, and determines the Center of the Picture, in a certain angle of inclination, inclined from the Eye, in the Angle ECC.

The Triangle ECC is right angled, at C; consequently, EC is perpendicular to the Picture, and C is therefore its Center.†

† Def. 17.

It is evident that CE and CC are both perpendicular to LM, or VM, the Vanishing Line of an Original Plane, NGH.

But, C is the Center of the Vanishing Line, and C is the Center of the Picture; therefore, a Right Line joining the Center of the Picture and the Center of a Vanishing Line is perpendicular to that Vanishing Line.

Above the Vanishing Plane is another Right angled Triangle; which being erected, perpendicular to the Vanishing Plane and the Picture, determines its Center, when the Picture is inclined towards the Eye, in the Angle ECC.

In which Case, the Center of the Picture necessarily falls above the Vanishing Line; as in the former Case it falls below.

Both these Positions are represented in the 17th Figure, and also in the 18th, considering either Plane, X or Y, as the Picture, and E or C as the place of the Eye.

But when the Picture and its Directing Plane are perpendicular to the Original Plane, as in the 16th, and the 17th Figure also shews the same, the Center of the Vanishing Line is the Center of the Picture.*

SCHOL. In this Scheme, and some of the following Diagrams, the original Plane, NGH, must not be considered as necessarily being horizontal; for, the whole Theory, here given, is quite general, and applicable to all positions whatever, either of the Original Plane or of the Picture.

* It may perhaps, to some, seem unnecessary to dwell so long on this Proposition, which, at first, may not appear of much Consequence; but, trifling as it may seem, I know it to be of the greatest Consequence, in the most difficult part of Perspective, viz. in the practice on inclined Planes; the Theory, of which, being well digested and understood, the Practice will be found almost as easy as in the most familiar Cases, being founded on the same invariable Principles, as will be exemplified in Practice; and therefore, the pains I have been at to enforce it, I am confident, is by no means to be dispensed with.

The Reader may be well assured, that every Part of the Theory, given in this Work, is of utility, and necessary to be known; and that, the better it is understood, the progress in practical Perspective will be greatly facilitated.

R

THEO-

Plate VI.

THEOREM V.

All Original Planes, which are parallel amongst themselves, but not to the Picture, have the same Vanishing Line.

DEM. Vanishing Lines, in general, are produced, in Theory, by imaginary Planes, passing through the Eye or Point of View, parallel to the Original Planes. - - - - - Def. 8.

Wherefore, a Plane passing through the Eye parallel to any Original Plane, producing its Vanishing Line, is also parallel to every Plane which is parallel to the Original Plane; and since this parallel Plane can produce but one Line on the Picture, by its Intersection with it, that Line is, consequently, the Vanishing Line of all the Planes to which it is parallel.

This Theorem needs no further Demonstration.

Fig. 22. EX. V, U and W are three Original Planes, parallel amongst themselves; ABLM is the Picture, and E the Eye, in the Directing Plane, IKGH.

Now, the Vanishing Line of any Original Plane is produced by a parallel Plane passing through the Eye and cutting the Picture. - - - - - Def. 8.

IKLM is parallel to the Plane U; or, rather, they coincide, for it is a continuation of that Plane; consequently, it is parallel to the Planes V and W; and, seeing that no other Plane can be drawn through the Eye parallel to them, therefore LM is the Vanishing Line of the three parallel Planes V, U and W.

Plate V.
Fig. 15.

This may be further illustrated by Fig. 15. and by the Apparatus.

Suppose a Plane (RSTU) to pass through the Eye (E) parallel to the Planes BFC and AIL in the Original Object BFIL, cutting the Picture, MNOP, produced, in RU; which is, therefore, the Vanishing Line of those parallel Planes; and, consequently, of all other Planes parallel to them.

For the same reason, a Plane, TOPS, passing through the Eye, parallel to the Planes ABGH and CDKL, cutting the Picture MNOP in OP; and the Picture RUOP in OP; OP, or OP, is the Vanishing Line of those Planes, on each Picture, respectively.

But, the Plane RSTU, passing through the Eye, being parallel to the Planes BFC and AIL, is parallel to the Picture MNOP, and therefore, can never cut it; consequently, those Planes have no Vanishing Line on that Picture; but, the Representation, *bfc*, is parallel, and similar to its Original, BFC.

SCHOL. All horizontal Planes have horizontal Vanishing Lines; except, the Picture be also horizontal; in which Case they have no Vanishing Line, the Picture being parallel to the Original Plane.

It is also evident, that all vertical Planes have, when the Picture is also Vertical, perpendicular or vertical Vanishing Lines; i. e. the Vanishing Lines are, in such Case, perpendicular Lines on the Picture, and at right Angles with such as are horizontal.

For, 1st. The Intersection of a horizontal Plane, with any other Plane, is necessarily a horizontal Line, seeing it is produced by a horizontal Plane, in which the intersecting Line must always be.

2nd. The common Intersection of two Vertical Planes, is a Right Line perpendicular to the Horizon; seeing that, the Line of their common section, is, necessarily, in both Planes.

COR.

COR. 1. All Original Lines that are parallel amongst themselves, and not to the Picture, have the same Vanishing Point.

For, by the same reasoning as in the Theorem, it is evident, that, since the Vanishing Points of Original Lines are produced, in Theory, by imaginary Lines passing through the Eye parallel to the Original Lines †; it necessarily follows, that a Line passing through the Eye, producing the Vanishing Point of any Original Line, by its Intersection with the Picture, being parallel to the Original Line, is also parallel to all Lines which are parallel to the Original Line; and, since it can produce but one Point on the Picture, it is, consequently, the Vanishing Point of them all. (See Theor. 2. Book 1st.)

† Def. 8.

In the same Figure, the Original Lines AB, GH and FI are parallel amongst themselves; EC V is a Right Line from the Eye, parallel to them all, cutting the Picture RUOP in V, and MNOP, in C, its Center; the Points C and V, on each Picture, respectively, are, therefore, the Vanishing Points of the Original Lines AB, GH, and FI. Fig. 15.

The same may be said in respect of the parallel Lines GF and HI, whose Vanishing Point, on the Picture RUOP, produced, is V.

Also, of GD and BC, whose Vanishing Point is Y, on the Picture RUOP; but, being parallel to MNOP, they have, consequently, no Vanishing Point on that Picture, but are parallel to their Representations.

COR. 2. Hence, it is demonstrable, that all Lines which are perpendicular to the Picture vanish in the Center, of the Picture.

For, AB, GH and FI are Original Lines, perpendicular to the Picture MNOP, whose Vanishing Point is C; produced by the Line EC from the Eye, E, parallel to the Original Lines. - - - - - Def. 22.

Now, the Original Lines are perpendicular to the Picture, therefore, EC, producing their Vanishing Point is perpendicular to the Picture.

But, a Right Line from, or passing through the Eye, perpendicular to the Picture, produces the Center of the Picture. - - - - - Def. 17.

Therefore, the Center of the Picture is the Vanishing Point of all Lines that are perpendicular to the Picture.

SCHOL. It may be necessary to observe here, that, in this last and in most of the Schemes or Diagrams made use of in this Theory, (being drawn perspectively) whenever any two or more Lines are said to be parallel, if they are not really so; they tend to the same Point; agreeable to Coroll. 1. For, I think it unpardonable, in a Treatise on Perspective, to give an Appearance of Objects, or Schemes, not truly and perspectively drawn; merely, for the sake of preserving the parallelism of certain Lines; as several Authors have done. Unluckily, for them, they cannot also preserve the true Angles, which are worse represented by that means.

Therefore, whenever Angles are said to be Right, or otherwise; and such or such Lines, to be parallel or perpendicular; if they are not really so, they must be understood to be so; and, I am persuaded, that they will always appear to be so, when truly delineated, perspectively.

T H E O-

Plate V.

THEOREM VI.

The Vanishing Lines of all Planes, which are perpendicular to the Picture, pass through the Center of the Picture.

DEM. For, since the Vanishing Line of a Plane is produced by an imaginary Plane passing through the Eye parallel to the Original Plane[†], and the Center of the Picture is determined by a Perpendicular, from the Eye to the Picture[§], the Original Plane being, in this Case, perpendicular to the Picture, it follows, that its Parallel or Vanishing Plane (and the Parallel of every Plane that is perpendicular to the Picture) seeing it passes through the Eye, must, necessarily, pass through the Direct Radial, which is perpendicular to the Picture[‡], and consequently, through the Center of the Picture.

† Def. 8.

§ Def. 17.

‡ Def. 15.

Therefore, the Vanishing Line, produced by the Intersection of every such Plane with the Picture, must pass through the Center of the Picture.

Fig. 15.

EX. 1. All horizontal Planes are perpendicular to a vertical Picture; wherefore, the Plane GHKD, and also the Ground Plane BL, or Z, are perpendicular to both Pictures, MNOP or OP; their Vanishing Plane, therefore, passes through the Direct Radial, EC, of each Picture, and consequently, through C, their Centers.

CX and XV (on each Picture, respectively) parallel to those Planes, and drawn through the Centers, C, of both Pictures, are the Vanishing Lines of those Planes.

For, by Theo. 3d. the Vanishing Line of every Plane is parallel to its Intersection; and consequently to the Original Plane.

EX. 2. The Planes AHGB and CDKL are perpendicular to MNOP, only; their Vanishing Plane, STOP, therefore, passes through its Radial, EC, and their Vanishing Line, OP, through the Center, C, of that Picture.

As these two Examples are particular Cases; viz. when the Original Plane is either Horizontal or Vertical, I shall give another general Case, which will illustrate the Theorem universally.

Fig. 15.
N^o 2.

The Original Plane IKLM is moveable on the Line TU, its common Section with the Ground or other horizontal Plane. Let AONB, the Plane of the Picture, be raised into a vertical Position; and, let TU, the common Section of the Original Plane, be at right Angles with AB, the Intersection of the Picture with the Plane Z.

Now, it is evident, that, if the Original Plane be turned over (on TU) to the other Side, the point L will describe a Semicircle; in which motion, the Plane IKLM is always perpendicular to the Plane or Picture, AONB; for, in every position of the Plane in that semi-revolution, the Line TU is still perpendicular to the Picture.

The Plane GHIK, being raised up with the Picture, and parallel to it, is the Directing Plane.

Let E be supposed the Eye of a Spectator, and EC the Direct Radial, producing the Center of the Picture, C.

Now, if a Plane IKLM be supposed to pass through the Eye of the Spectator, at E, and make also a semi-revolution, being all the while parallel to the Original Plane, it must revolve on EC, the Direct Radial, which is parallel to TU; and, in every Position, its Intersection with the Picture must necessarily pass through C, the Center of the Picture; produced by the Perpendicular EC.

For,

For, if the Plane $IKLM$, passing through the Eye, makes the same Angle with the Horizon, viz. PQR ; i. e. if it be parallel to the Plane $IKLM$, it will cut the Picture in ON , the Vanishing Line of that Plane, and pass through C , the Center of the Picture; making the Angle, NCM , with LM , the Vanishing Line of Horizontal Planes, equal to the Angle PQR , of the Original Plane with the Ground Plane.

After the same manner, the Vanishing Lines of all Planes, which are perpendicular to the Picture, may be ascertained and drawn on the Picture; knowing the Angle which the Original Plane makes with any horizontal Plane; or with a vertical Plane, which is perpendicular to the Picture.

N. B. The Center of the Picture is the Center of all Vanishing Lines, of Planes perpendicular to the Picture; and they have all the same Distance or Radial, (EC) by Def. 19. and 20.

COR. Hence, also, it is evident, that the Center of the Picture is the Vanishing Point of all Lines which are perpendicular to the Picture.

For, EC , a perpendicular Line from the Eye, producing the Center of the Picture, is the Common Radial of all Vanishing Planes, that are perpendicular to the Picture; and consequently, parallel to all Lines that are perpendicular to the Picture (for, they are all parallel amongst themselves, and to the Direct Radial, EC) as AB , GH , FI , &c. Fig. 15.

Therefore, since EC is parallel to all such Lines, the Point C , which it produces on the Picture, is their Vanishing Point; by Def. 22.

But, C is the Center of the Picture; consequently, the Center of the Picture is the Vanishing Point of all Lines that are perpendicular to the Picture.

This Corollary is also deduced from the last Theorem.

In this single and particular Vanishing Point, many Artists seem to rest all their knowledge of Perspective (commonly called the Point of Sight) and, whenever a number of Lines tend to the same Point, it is, by them, called a Point of Sight; not considering, or perhaps knowing, that the Center of the Picture is a Vanishing Point, in common with all other, only by virtue of the general Definition (Def. 22.) And, because the knowledge of it is more general, and, as they imagine, the practice much easier, we find it more used than any other; as most regular Objects, particularly Buildings, are right-angled; which, having one Side or Front parallel to the Picture, all the Horizontal Lines in the adjoining Sides are, consequently, perpendicular to the Picture, and therefore vanish in its Center; which, from the certainty of the Position of such Lines, is determined and fixed at once, though often very injudiciously.

T H E O R E M VII.

Original Planes, whose common Intersection is parallel to the Picture, have parallel Intersections with the Picture, and parallel Vanishing Lines.

DEM. The common Intersection of the Original Planes being parallel to the Picture, a Plane may be supposed to pass through that Intersection which is also parallel to the Picture.

Now, the Original Planes being produced, through their common Section, to the Picture, each Plane must necessarily cut the Picture in a Line parallel to their common Section† (which is in a Plane parallel to the Picture, by Supposition) wherefore, since the Intersection of each Original Plane, with the Picture, is parallel to the common Section of both Planes, they are, consequently, parallel between themselves. — Q. E. D. —

† 8. 7. El.

S

4. 7. El.
EX. W

Plate VI. EX. W and X are two Original Planes, whose common Section, NO, is parallel to the Picture, ABLM. *ghi* is a Plane, supposed to pass through their common Section, NO, parallel to the Picture.

Now, the Plane W being produced to the Picture, cuts it in *AB*; and the Plane X, being produced, cuts it in *AB*; wherefore, since the Picture and the Plane *ghi* are parallel, and are both cut by the Planes *ABNO* and *ABNO*, the Intersections, *AB* and *AB*, are, each, parallel to the common Section, NO, and therefore they are parallel between themselves.

DEM.2. The second Part, viz. that their Vanishing Lines are also parallel, is already demonstrated, in the 4th Theorem; which proves, that the Vanishing Line of every Original Plane is always parallel to its Intersection.

Wherefore, having proved that the Intersections are parallel, and, by the 4th, the Vanishing Line of each, respectively, is parallel to its Intersection, consequently, the Vanishing Lines, of the two Planes, are parallel between themselves. Q. E. D. - - - - - 5. 1. El.

EX. LM is the Vanishing Line of the Plane X, and *LM* of the Planes V, U, & W; which are, respectively, parallel to the Intersections *AB*, *JF*, &c. (by Theo. 4.) and therefore they are parallel, also, between themselves.

3. After what has been said, it is manifest that the Directing Lines of Planes, in such Case, are also parallel.

For, since their Intersections with the Picture are parallel, consequently, if they were produced till they cut the Directing Plane, their Intersections with it would likewise be parallel; the Directing Plane being parallel to the Picture.

COR. 1. The common Intersection of a Plane, inclined to the Horizon, with any horizontal Plane whatever, being parallel to the Picture, the Vanishing Line, of that inclined Plane, is a Line parallel to the Horizon.

For, because the common Intersection is parallel to the Picture, the Vanishing Lines of both Planes are parallel to each other; by Theorem.

But, one of those Planes is horizontal, therefore its Vanishing Line is parallel to the Horizon; by Def. 8.

Consequently the other Vanishing Line is, also, parallel to the Horizon.

COR. 2. All Original Planes, that have parallel Vanishing Lines, have the same Vertical Plane; and, consequently, the same Vertical Line; and, also, the same Parallel of the Eye.

Z is an Original, horizontal Plane; and *X*, is a Plane inclined to the Horizon; their common Intersection, *ab*, is parallel to the Picture, *AMLB*.

AIKB is the parallel of *Z*, cutting the Picture in *AB*, the Vanishing Line of *Z*, and all horizontal Planes; and *KLMI* is the Parallel, or Vanishing Plane of the Original Plane *X*, passing through the Eye, at *E*, and cutting the Picture in *LM*, the Vanishing Line of that Plane; whose common Section, *ab*, with *Z*, being parallel to the Picture, its Vanishing Line, *LM*, is, consequently, parallel to *AB*, by the Theorem.

But, *QTQ* is the Vertical Plane of both *X* and *Z* (also of *W* and *Y*) and of all Planes parallel to them; i. e. it cuts them both at right Angles, being perpendicular to their common Section *ab*; and it cuts the Picture in *CD* the Vertical Line of them both (or of them all) for, the same Plane cannot cut the Picture in two Lines.

IK is also the Parallel of the Eye of all those Planes, for, it is the common Section of all their Vanishing Planes, *IKLM*, *IKLM*, and *IKBA*, with the Directing Plane *IKGH*.

This

This Theorem, and the last Corollary, may also be illustrated by Figure 15.

1. For, BG, the common Intersection of the two Planes ABGH and BFC, is parallel to both Pictures, MNOP or OP; their Intersections BE and BK, on MNOP, are therefore parallel; also their Vanishing Lines, RU and OP, on that Picture. Fig. 15.

The other Picture MNOP, being parallel to the Plane BFC, has but one Vanishing Line, OP; which is parallel to the Intersections BG and MN.

2. The two Planes, ABGH and BFC, being Vertical, a Plane vertical to them, is, consequently, Horizontal; for, no other Plane can cut both, or either of them and the Picture, perpendicularly. (See Fig. 19. and Par. 1. p. 57.)

Wherefore, they have the same Vertical Plane; which, in reality, is a horizontal Plane, passing through the Eye; and, consequently, they have also the same Vertical Line; which, in this Case, is the Vanishing Line of horizontal Planes; viz. CX or VX, on either Picture, respectively.

N. B. It is the same in all Positions, whatever, of the Original Planes.

T H E O R E M VIII.

The Planes, which produce the Vanishing Lines of two Original Planes, are inclined to each other in the same Angle as the Originals; and, have their common Intersection, passing through the Eye, parallel to the common Intersection of the Original Planes.

DEM. For, first, since the Planes, producing the Vanishing Lines of any two Original Planes, are, respectively, parallel to the Originals, they have consequently the same Inclination to each other, as the Originals.

For, if all the Planes are produced (viz. the Original Planes and their Parallels) they will cut each other in parallel Lines, and form a Parallelopiped, between their Intersections. - - - - - 8. 7. El.

Therefore, they have the same Inclination to each other, respectively. - 13. 7.

EX. W, X, and Z are Original Planes, and KM, KM and KA their respective Vanishing Planes. Fig. 22.

The Angle, which the Original Plane, X, or ANOP, makes with Z, is Oak (a O and a k being both perpendicular to their common Section a b) and it is equal to the Angle MIA or S, which their Vanishing Planes KM, and KA, make with each other.

Because IM is parallel to a O, and IA to a k, the Angle MIA is equal to Oak †. † 6. 1. El.

For, let IA be produced till it cuts a O in S, the Angle MIS is equal to ISa †; † 4. 1. El.

And, because IA is parallel to a k, the Angle ISa is equal to Sak; by the same. consequently, MIA is equal to Oak; by the 3d Axiom. 1st El.

Therefore, the Planes, extended through those Lines, being respectively parallel, (KM to X, and KA to Z), are inclined to each other in the same Angle; i. e. KM has the same inclination to KA as X to Z.

Also, the Plane KM being parallel to X, and KM to V, U, and W; they are, therefore, inclined to each other in equal Angles; viz. MIM equal AOa.

Secondly. Because, in this Case, the common Sections (a b and NO) of the Original Planes are parallel to the Picture, the Intersection, IK, of the Vanishing Planes, passing through the Eye, E, is also parallel to the Picture; and consequently, to the common Sections, a b and NO, of the Original Planes. Q. E. D. - - - - - 4. 7. El.

For it is in the Directing Plane, which is parallel to the Picture; by Def. 4. To

Plate V.

To illustrate this Theorem more familiarly, by moveable Planes.

- Fig. 15. 1. Raise up the Plane of the Picture $AONB$, perpendicular, or otherwise, to the
No. 2. Horizon. The Directing Plane, GEH will be parallel to it; and $IKLM$ to the Plane of the Horizon.
- No. 3. Then, if the Plane $ADFB$ (any Original Plane) whose Intersection, AB , with the Horizon, or any horizontal Plane, is parallel to the Picture, be raised up, on AB , making any Angle (PQR) with the Horizon, and, a Plane, $IKON$, pass through the Eye, at E , parallel to that Original Plane; it is, ocularly, manifest, that this Vanishing Plane, $IKON$, makes the same Angle with $IKLM$, as $ADFB$ with the Horizon; and IK (the parallel of the Eye) the Intersection of the Vanishing Planes, is parallel to AB , the common Intersection of the Original Planes.
2. The Picture, &c. remaining in the same Position, perpendicular to the Ground Plane, and to the common Intersection TU of the Original Plane $IKLM$.
- No. 2. Then, the Vanishing Plane $IKLM$ being placed parallel to the Original Plane $IKLM$, it is evident, that it will make the same Angle with the Horizon, or with a Plane supposed to pass through the Eye, parallel to the Horizon, and cutting the Picture in LM (the Vanishing Line of horizontal Planes) as the Original Plane $IKLM$ with the Horizon.
- Also, EC (the Direct Radial) the Intersection of those Vanishing Planes is parallel to TU , the common Intersection of the Original Planes.
- For, they are both perpendicular to the Picture.

To say more on this is unnecessary, for it is evident, that let the Picture be situated, as you please, to the Original Planes; since the Planes producing their vanishing Lines are, respectively, parallel to them, they are inclined to each other in equal Angles, respectively; their common Sections are also parallel, and make equal Angles with the Picture, if they are not parallel to it; as in Case 1st.

In Fig. 23. this Theorem is quite general, i. e. the Position the Original Planes have to the Horizon, or to the Picture, is not regarded; I mean, as to parallel or perpendicular.

Plate VI.

Fig. 23.

X and Y are two Original Planes, both inclined to the Horizon, and to the Picture $JTUN$; which is also inclined to the Horizon, towards the Eye, at E .
 AB is the common Intersection of those two Planes.

Then, if a Plane, $IKLM$, be supposed to pass through the Eye (E) parallel to the Plane, X ; and another Plane, $IKLM$, parallel to ABD , or Y , cutting the Picture in the Vanishing Lines, LM and ML , of those Planes; they will, necessarily, be inclined to each other in equal Angles, respectively; i. e. the Vanishing Planes, as the Original Planes; and the common Section, EV , of the Vanishing Planes, is parallel to the common Section, AB , of the Original Planes.

COR. 1. The Lines, which produce the Vanishing Points of any two Original Lines, make the same Angle, at the Eye, as the Original Lines make with each other.

For, they are respectively parallel to their Originals (Def. 22.) and, consequently, they make equal Angles, respectively.†

† 6. 1. El.

Fig. 15.

EX. EV is the Radial or Parallel of AB , and EY of CB .
 V and Y are, therefore, the Vanishing Points of AB and CB ; the Radials EV , EY being parallel, respectively, to the Originals, AB and CB .
Consequently they make the same Angle at the Eye, E , as the Original Lines make with each other; viz. VEY equal ABC .
But, ABC is a Right Angle; therefore, VEY is a Right Angle.

5. 7. El.

This

This is also illustrated in Fig. 23. and, by changing Y for M, it is described in the foregoing; save only, that ABC is not a Right Angle, consequently VEM is not a Right one, being equal to ABC.

This Corollary, though general, is applicable only to such Lines as are, or may be, in the same Plane; for, if two Lines, being produced, would cut each other, a Plane may pass through them both §.

§ Ax. 6.

But, if the Original Lines are so situated, that they cross, or would cross, each other, without cutting; then, the Angle, which the Radials of such Lines make with each other, is equal to the Angle that would be made, between the Originals, if either of them be moved, parallel to itself, in any direction, till it cuts the other.

COR. 2. The Vanishing Point of the common Intersection of two Original Planes, is the Point in which their Vanishing Lines intersect each other.

For, the Intersection of the parallel Planes, producing the Vanishing Lines, passes through the Eye, parallel to the common Intersection of the Original Planes (by the Theorem) and consequently, will cut the Picture in that Point where the Vanishing Lines intersect.

But, (by Def. 22.) the Vanishing Point of a Line is that Point, in which, a parallel Line, from the Eye, cuts the Picture.

Therefore, the Point of Intersection of the Vanishing Lines is the Vanishing Point of the common Intersection of the Original Planes.

EX. AB is the common Intersection of the Planes X and Y. ML is the Vanishing Line of the Plane X, and ML of the Plane Y; their intersecting Point, V, is, therefore, the Vanishing Point of AB.

Fig. 23.

The Visual Rays EA, EB, together with the Line AB, form a plane Triangle, which cuts the Picture in ab (the Representation of AB) whose Vanishing Point is V; for, it is the Section of a Radial Plane, passing through the Original Line and the Eye, with the Picture; which must necessarily pass through EV, the Radial of AB†, and cut the Picture in JV, the whole indefinite Representation of AB; by Theorem 1st.

† Ax. 5.

Mm is the Vanishing Line of the vertical Plane W, and Mq of horizontal Planes; both which, cut ML, the Vanishing Line of the inclined Plane, X, in M; therefore, M is the Vanishing Point of CB, the common Intersection of the Planes W and X, and a horizontal Plane, CBD.

EX. 2. In Fig. 15. VY is the Vanishing Line of horizontal Planes; RU, of the vertical Planes BFC and AIL; and VW†, of the inclined Plane FGHI. V, Y, and W† are, therefore, the Vanishing Points of the common Intersections of those Planes, respectively; viz. V, of GH, the common Intersection of DGHK and FGHI; and also of ABGH, whose Vanishing Line is OP. Y is the Vanishing Point of the common Intersection of horizontal Planes, and of the vertical Planes BFC and AIL; and, W is the Vanishing Point of GF and HI, the common Intersections of those vertical Planes and the inclined Plane FGHI.

† The Van. Point W is where EW parallel to FGH cuts RU produced. See Apparatus.

I have given various Examples of this Corollary, it being very essential in Practice, and cannot be too much enforced.

For, having found the Vanishing Point of a Line (in any Plane whatever) which is either the common Intersection of that Plane with some other adjoining Plane, or a Line parallel to it; the Vanishing Line of that other Plane must, necessarily, pass through that Vanishing Point; and, if the Position of the other Vanishing Line be known, its place on the Picture is determined; otherwise, it is necessary to have the Vanishing Point of some other Line in the same Plane.

T

T H E O-

Plate IV.

THEOREM IX.

The Radial, or Parallel, of an Original Line producing its Vanishing Point, makes the same Angle with the parallel of the Eye and Vanishing Line, as the Original Line makes with the Intersection and Directing Line, of the Plane that Original Line is in.

DEM. Since the Intersection and Vanishing Line, the Parallel of the Eye and Directing Line, of every Original Plane, are parallel amongst themselves; (Th. 3.) and the Radial, producing the Vanishing Point of an Original Line, is parallel to the Original, (Def. 22.); it necessarily follows, that, whatever inclination the Original Line has to the Intersection and Directing Line (which are all in the same Plane) the Radial of that Line has the same Inclination to, or makes equal Angles with, the Parallel of the Eye and Vanishing Line, which are all in a parallel Plane. - - - 4. of 1. and 7. El.

Fig. 20.
and 21.

EX. NO is an Original Line, which, being produced, cuts the Intersection and Directing Line, AB and GH, in equal Angles. - - - 4. 1. El.

EV is the Radial of NO, producing its Vanishing Point, V, in the Vanishing Line ML, of the Plane NGH, making the Angles EVL, with the Vanishing Line, and VEI, with the Parallel of the Eye, equal.

And, they are also equal to the Angles NIA, NDH, which the Original Line, NO, makes with AB and GH, the Intersecting and Directing Lines.

Because, the Original Line (NO) and its Radial (EV) are parallel (Def. 22.) and, because they cut parallel Lines in parallel Planes.

2. From the same reasoning, it is evident, that the Angles KED, EDH, made by the Director, ED, of the Line NO, with the Parallel of the Eye and Directing Line, are equal to the Angles LVI, VIA, which the indefinite Representation (IV) of the Original Line (NO) makes with the Intersection (AB) and the Vanishing Line (VL).

For, they are parallel Lines in parallel Planes; and they are cut by parallel Lines.

3. Hence, it is also manifest, that, the Angle, VEC, made by the Radial, EV, of the Original Line NO, and EC, the Radial of the Vanishing Line, VL, producing its Center (C) is equal to the Angle which the Original Line, NID, makes with FD, the Intersection of the Vertical Plane, ECDF, with the Plane NGH, in which the Original Line (NO) is situated.

For, these Angles are the Complements of the Angles made by the Original Line and its Radial, with the Intersection of the Picture, and the Parallel of the Eye or Vanishing Line.

I would recommend it to young Students, to be very clear in this Theorem, as it is most essential in Practice. For, from the knowledge it inculcates, the Vanishing Points of Lines, in any Plane whatever, may be readily found; knowing the Angle which the Original Line makes with the Intersection of the Plane it is in, with the Picture; or with a Line passing through the Station Point, and cutting the Intersection at Right Angles; making an equal Angle, at the Eye, with the Parallel of the Eye; or, with the Radial of the Vanishing Line, producing its Center.

THEO-

T H E O R E M X.

The Representation, on the Picture, of a Line parallel to the Picture, is parallel to the Original; and, has that proportion to the Original, as the Distance of the Picture to the Distance of a Plane, passing through the Original Line, parallel to the Picture.

DEM. The Perspective Projection of every Right Line on the Picture, is a Right Line; and it is produced, in Theory, by the Interfection of a Plane, with the Picture, passing through the Eye and the Original Line. - Theo. 1.

Wherefore, since the Original Line is, in this Case, supposed parallel to the Picture, a Plane may pass through that Line, also parallel to the Picture.

But, if two Planes being parallel, are both cut by another Plane, their Intersections are parallel. - 8. 7. El.

But the Original Line is one of the Sections, and its Projection, on the Picture, is the other (the cutting Plane being supposed to pass through the Original Line and the Eye).

Therefore, the Representation of a Line, which is parallel to the Picture, is parallel to the Original. Q. E. D.

EX. NO is an Original Line, parallel to the Picture, AMLB; E is the Eye, in the Directing Plane, IKGH. Fig. 22.

Let ghi be supposed a Plane, passing through the Original Line, NO, parallel to the Picture; and, EN, EO, Visual Rays, from the Eye, to each extreme of the Original Line; which, are in the same Plane with NO. - Ax. 8.

Wherefore, NEO is a Radial Plane passing through the Original Line and the Eye, and cutting the Picture in no, the Representation of NO. - Th. 1.

But, the Plane ghi is parallel to the Picture, and NO is in that Plane; consequently, no, its Representation, which is the Interfection of the Radial Plane, NEO, with the Picture, is parallel to the Original Line, NO.

For, they are the common Sections of two Planes, which are parallel, by another Plane.

In the same manner, rs, the Representation of RS, may be proved parallel to RS.

EX. 2. AH, BG, CD, &c. are Original Lines, parallel to both Pictures, MNOP or OP. EB and EG are Visual Rays, from the Eye, E, to the Line BG; which are all in the same Radial Plane, cutting the Pictures in bg, and *bg*, which are, therefore, the Representations of BG, on each Picture, respectively (by Theorem 1st.) Fig. 15.

But, BG, the Original Line, is perpendicular to the Horizon or Ground Plane, SMZ; and the Pictures are Vertical Planes.

And, the Radial Plane GEB is also Vertical, seeing it passes through GB. - 9. 7. El.

Consequently, the common Sections of those Planes are Right Lines, perpendicular to the Ground Plane. - Cor. to 9. 7. El.

and, consequently, they are parallel between themselves. - 3. 7.

Therefore, bg or *bg*, the Representation of BG, is parallel to BG.

Also, cd, or *cd*, is parallel to CD; and ah, or *ah*, to AH.

After the same manner, the Representation of any other Line, BC, GD or GF, &c. in the Plane BFC, which is parallel to the Picture MNOP, only, may be proved parallel to their respective Originals.

DEM.

Plate IV. DEM. 2. The Representation, no (of NO) is proved parallel to NO , by the 1st Part.
 Fig. 22.
 N^o 2.

Wherefore, the Triangles NEO , nEo , are similar;
 and $no : NO :: En : EN$, or as $Eo : EO$. - - - Cor. 3. 2. 6. El.

But, ECf is a Right Line perpendicular to the Picture AB , and consequently, to the Plane ghi , which is parallel to the Picture, cutting the Picture in C , its Center, and the Plane ghi in f .

Now, because ECf is perpendicular to the Picture, and to the parallel Plane ghi , in which the Original Line, NO , is situated, it is the shortest Line that can be drawn to those Planes, and consequently measures their Distances. - - - Cor. to 12. 1. El.

But, if two or more Right Lines are cut by parallel Planes, they will be cut proportionally (whether they proceed from one Point or not) - - 10. 7. El.
 wherefore, $EC : Ef :: En : EN$, or, as Eo is to EO .

But, $no : NO :: En : EN$. Th. $no : NO :: EC : Ef$, by equality of Ratios.

That is, the Representation, no , has that Proportion to NO , its Original, as, the Distance of the Picture, EC , has to Ef , the Distance of a Plane passing through the Original Line parallel to the Picture.

N. B. The same Demonstration holds good if NO be considered as the Original Line, on this Side of the Picture.

COR. 1. From the former part, It is evident, that the Projections of any number of Lines, which are parallel amongst themselves and to the Picture, are also parallel amongst themselves and to the Originals.

Fig. 15. AH, BG and CD are parallel amongst themselves, and to both Pictures; their Representations, on both, are therefore parallel.

Also, BC and GD are parallel between themselves and to the Picture MNOP only; their Representations, on that Picture, are therefore parallel between themselves and to the Originals.

COR. 2. From the second part of this Theorem, may be clearly deduced; that if an Original Line parallel to the Picture, be any how divided, the Representations of the several Parts will have the same Proportion to each other, and to the whole Representation, as the Parts of the Original Line have to each other, and to the whole Line.

If from the divisions, 1 and 2, of the Line CD , the Visual Rays E_1 , E_2 be drawn, they will cut the Representations, cd , on both Pictures, to which the Original, CD , is parallel, in the same Ratio, in the Points y and z .

For, because cd is parallel to CD , the Triangles CED , cEd are similar.

And, for the same reason, CE_1 , CE_2 , are similar to cEy , cEz , &c. C. 3. 2. 6. El.

Wherefore, $cy : C_1 :: cz : C_2$; i. e. as $cd : CD$; - - - 4. 6. El.

And, consequently, $cy : yz :: C_1 : 12 : 2D$; or as cd to CD .

COR. 3. Hence it is manifest, that if the Eye be moved, still keeping the same Distance from the Picture; i. e. let the Eye be any where in the Directing Plane; the whole Representation, and each Segment, will still have the same proportion to the Original Line.

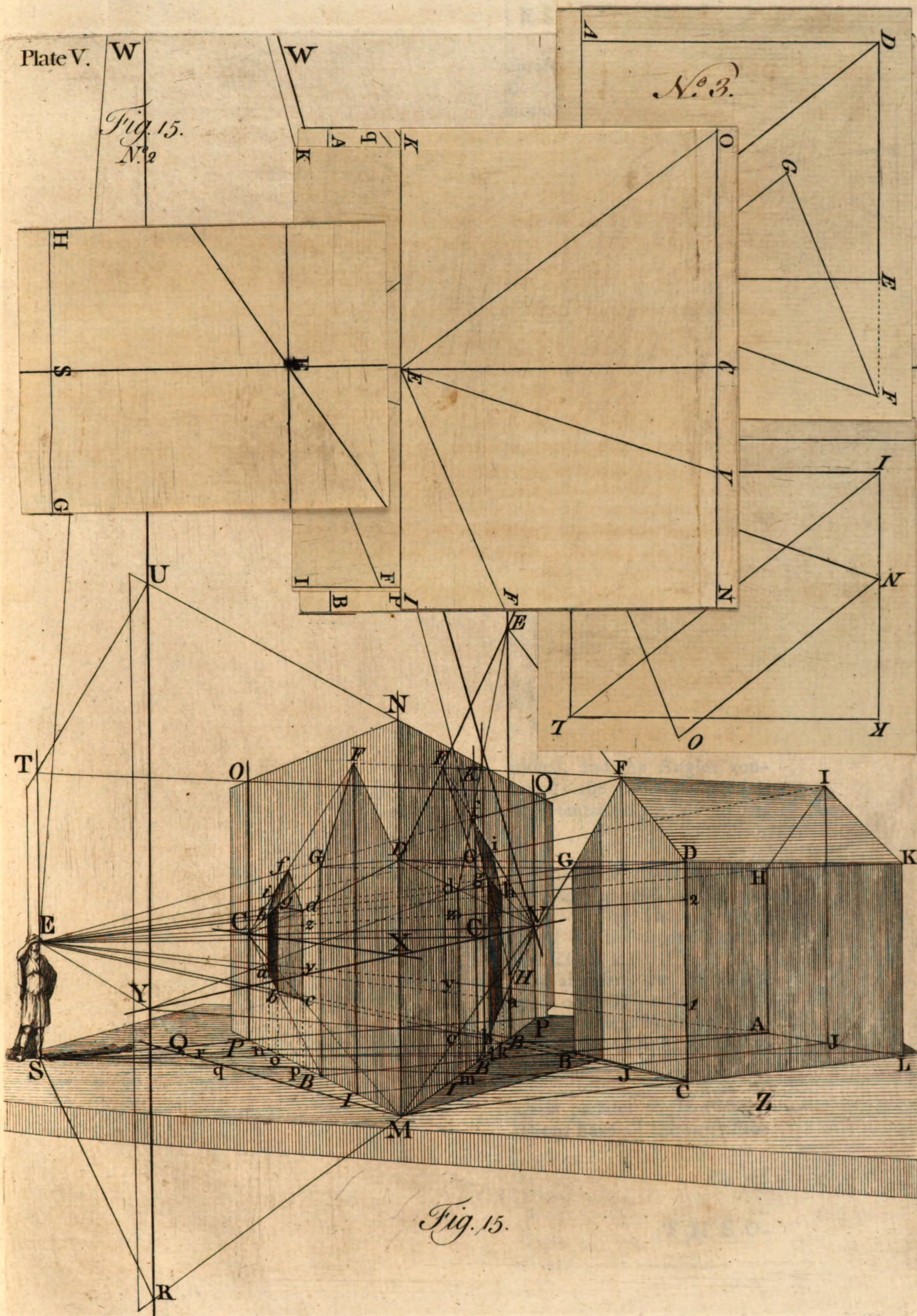
For, by the second part of the Theorem, the Representation of a Line parallel to the Picture, has the same Proportion to the Original, as the Distance of the Picture to the Distance of a Plane, passing through that Line, parallel to the Picture.

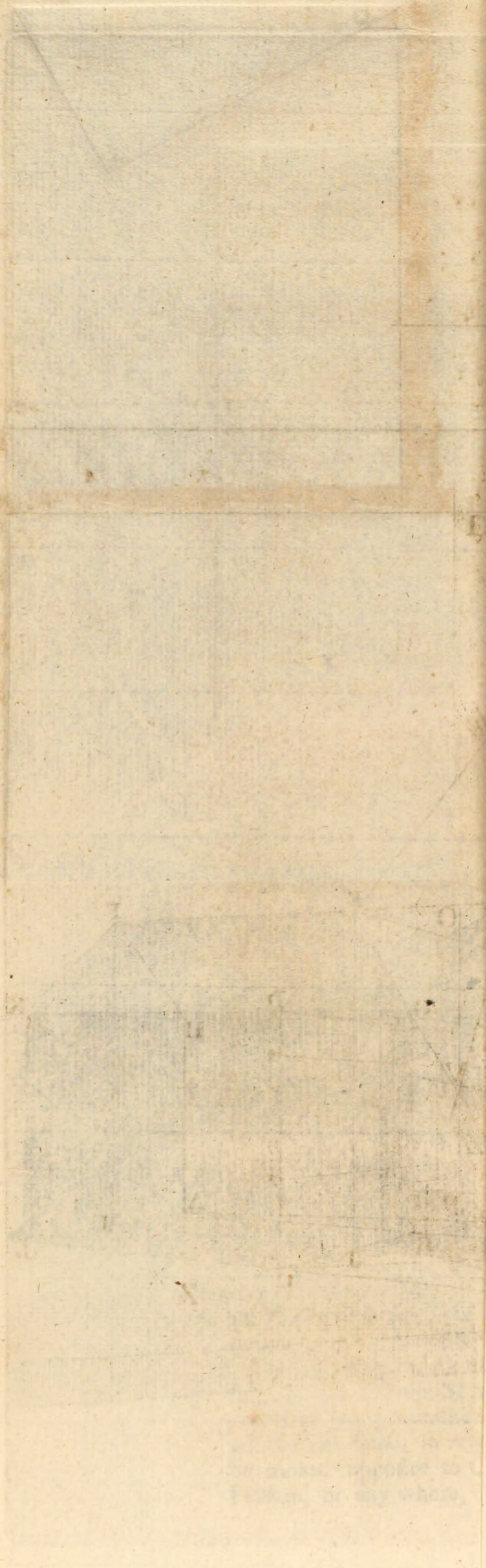
Consequently. if the Original Line CD , (which is seen very oblique in respect of the Picture MNOP), was directly opposite to the Eye; so that EC produced was perpendicular to CD , the Proportion of cd , its Representation, will be the same, in respect of its Original; and, consequently, if the Eye be moved opposite to CD , still keeping the same Distance, EC , from the Picture, or any where, situated in the Directing Plane, which is parallel to the

Plate V.

Fig. 15.
N.º 2

N.º 3.





the Picture, therefore equidistant; the whole Representation and each of the Divisions have still the same Ratio to the Original.

For, the Distance of the Picture and the Distance of the Plane the Original Line is in, remain the same.

COR. 4. The Angle, which the Representations of any two Original Lines that are parallel to the Picture, make with each other, is equal to the Angle made by the Original Lines.

For, the Representations are respectively parallel to their Originals.

In Fig. 22. No. 2. Let the Original Lines, ON and SR, be produced till they intersect, in P, making an Angle OPS.

Fig. 22.
No. 2.

Because no is parallel to NO and rs to RS , being produced, they will, necessarily, make the Angle ops equal to OPS , made by the Original Lines.

5. 7. El.

In Fig. 15. the Angle gfd , on the Picture $MNOP$, to which the Plane BFC is parallel, is equal to the Angle GFD ; and fgd to FGD , &c.

Fig. 15.

For, fg is parallel to FG , fd to FD , and gd to GD ; - by the Theorem.

COR. 5. Original Figures, in Planes parallel to the Picture, have their Representations similar to the Originals.

The Plane $BGFDC$ is parallel to the Picture $MNOP$.

By Cor. 1. bg and cd are parallel between themselves, and to the Originals, BE and CD ; and so are gf and fd to their Originals.

And by Cor. 4. the Angles bgf and gfd , &c. are equal, respectively, to the Angles BGF and GFD , &c.

But, it is demonstrated, in the Theorem, that $bg : EG :: gf : GF$, or, $gd : GD$, &c. for, each is to its Original, as the Distance of the Picture to the Distance of the Plane they are in; consequently, they have the same Proportion between themselves.

Therefore, since the Sides are directly proportional, and the Angles contained by corresponding Sides, or Diagonals, equal; the Triangle gfd is similar to the Original GFD ; and the whole Representation $bgfdc$ to the Original $BGFDC$.

The Plane ghi is parallel to the Picture, AB ; wherefore, the Representation op is parallel to the Original Line, OP ; ps is also parallel to PS ; and, if os , OS be drawn, os will be parallel to OS , - by Theo. Part 1st.

Fig. 22.
No. 2.

By Cor. 4. the Angle ops is equal to OPS ; and by the second Part of the Theorem, $op : OP :: ps : PS$; for, each is as EC to Es .

Consequently, the Triangles pos , POS are equi-angular; the Angle o is equal O , and s equal S ; and consequently, $os : OS :: op : OP$, or as $ps : PS$.

Therefore, the Representation, pos , is similar to the Original Triangle, POS .

For, $SEOP$ may be supposed a Pyramid, cut by a Plane, AB , parallel to its Base, POS . E , the Eye, is the Vertex of the Pyramid.

N. B. All Lines, that can be drawn in a Plane, which is parallel to the Picture, are parallel to the Picture; and their Representations have all the same Proportion to their respective Originals.

U

T H E O -

Plate VI.

THEOREM XI.

All Right Lines, in any Original Plane, not parallel to the Picture, have their Intersecting Points in the Intersecting Line, and their Directing Points in the Directing Line of that Plane.

Also; the Vanishing Points, of Original Lines, are all in the Vanishing Line of the Planes the Original Lines are in.

DEM. For, first, if a Right Line be not parallel to the Picture, it will, if produced, cut the Picture, and also the Directing Plane, in its Intersecting and Directing Points - - - - - Def. 21 and 23.

† Ax. 1.

Now, since one part of a Right Line cannot be in a Plane and another part of it out of that Plane;† consequently, the Original Line must cut the Picture, somewhere, in the Intersection of the Plane, it is in, with the Picture.

And, for the same reason, it will cut the Directing Plane, in the Intersection of the Plane it is in with the Directing Plane, i. e. in the Directing Line of that Plane. Therefore, all Lines, &c. Q. E. D.

Fig. 23.

EX. AB and CB are two Original Lines in the Plane X; which, being produced, cut the Picture (JTUN) in J and d, and the Directing Plane, in P and O.

NA, in the same Plane, X, cuts the Picture in I, and would, if produced to the Directing Plane, cut it, somewhere, in the Line PO, produced.

But, if the Plane ABC, was produced, it would cut the Picture in the Line JI, which is, therefore, its Intersection. - - - - - Def. 7.

And, it would cut the Directing Plane, GRH, in PO (parallel to JI) its Directing Line. - - - - - Def. 10.

Wherefore, the intersecting Points J, d, and I, of the Original Lines, AB, CB, and NA, are in the Intersection, JI, of the Plane (ABC, or X) those Lines are in, with the Picture; and the Directing Points, of those Lines, P, O, &c. are in the Directing Line, PO, of the Plane X.

Also, J and N are the intersecting Points of AB and AD, in the Plane Y or BAD. Wherefore, JN is the Intersection of the Plane Y, which, by reason of the Inclination of that Plane, falls, almost wholly, below the Ground Plane, Z, and its Intersection FI.

P and Q are the Directing Points of those Lines; PQ is, therefore, the Directing Line of the Plane Y which is parallel to JN (by Theorem 3d.)

EF is the Line in which the Plane BDFG would cut the Picture, if it was produced; E and F are, the Intersecting Points of BD and FG in that Plane.

id is the Intersection of the Plane W, in which are the Intersecting Points, i and d, of the Lines HG, and CB, in that Plane; which Lines would, if produced, also cut the Directing Plane, in the Directing Points of those Lines.

DEM. 2. Because the Original Lines, whose Vanishing Points are required, are all in the same Plane, the Radials of those Lines, producing their Vanishing Points, being parallel to the Originals, are, consequently, in the Vanishing Plane, or Parallel of the Plane the Original Lines are in; and, since they cannot go out of that Parallel Plane†, their Intersections with the Picture, are, consequently, in the Intersection of the Vanishing Plane with the Picture.

† Ax. 1.

But, the Intersection of the Vanishing Plane, of any Original Plane with the Picture, is the Vanishing Line of that Original Plane. - - - - - Def. 8.

Therefore, the Vanishing Point of every Original Line, is in the Vanishing Line of the Plane that Original Line is in. Q. E. D.

EX. The

EX. The Vanishing Points V and M , of the Original Lines AB and CB , are in the Vanishing Line of the Plane, X , those Lines are in. Fig. 23.

For, the Vanishing Line, ML , of the Plane X , is produced by the Intersection of the Plane $IKLM$ passing through the Eye, E , parallel to the Original Plane. Def. 8.

Wherefore, since the Lines, EV and EM , which produce the Vanishing Points of the Original Lines, AB and CB , are parallel to the Originals $\S$, they are in the Vanishing Plane, $IKLM$, which produces the Vanishing Line of the Plane X , those Lines are in; and consequently, the Vanishing Points of those Lines are in the Vanishing Line, ML , of that Plane. § Def. 22.

COR. 1. Hence, it is manifest, that a Right Line, drawn through any two Vanishing Points, of Lines in any Original Plane, is the Vanishing Line of that Plane.

For, the Vanishing Point of every Line, in that Plane, is in its Vanishing Line; by the Theorem.

Also, a Right Line, drawn through any two Intersecting Points, is the Intersecting Line; and, a Line drawn through two Directing Points is the Directing Line of the Plane, in which the Original Lines are situated.

EX. ML , drawn through the Vanishing Points M and V , is the Vanishing Line; JI , drawn through the Intersecting Points J , d , and I , is the Intersection of the Plane, X , with the Picture; and PO , drawn through the directing Points, P and O , is the Directing Line, of the Plane X , in which, the Original Lines, AB and CB , are situated.

For, if two Points in a Right Line are given, the whole Line is determined.

COR. 2. All Original Lines, which are parallel to any Original Plane, have their Vanishing Points in the Vanishing Line of that Plane.

Because, a Plane may be drawn, through any one of the Lines, parallel to the Original Plane; and two or more Planes, being parallel, have the same Vanishing Line; by Theorem 5th.

COR. 3. The Intersecting Point of the common Intersection, of two Original Planes, is the Point in which the Intersecting Lines of those Planes, cut each other.

For, the common Intersection of two Planes is a Right Line, and is in both Planes.

Wherefore, the Intersecting Point, of that Line, is in the Intersections of both Planes; consequently, it is that Point in which the Intersections cut each other.

For, there is no other Point common to both Lines.

EX. JI is the Intersection of the Plane X , and JN of the Plane Y . J the Point of their common Intersection, is, therefore, the Intersecting Point of AB , the common Intersection of the Planes, X and Y .

JI is the Intersection of the Plane X ; and id of the Plane W ; d is, therefore, the Intersecting Point of CB , the common Intersection of the Planes X and W .

2. FD and FG are the Intersections of the vertical Plane BFC , and the inclined Planes, FK and FH ; wherefore, E and H are the intersecting Points of those Lines, on the Picture $MNOP$, where the vertical Intersection, BE , of the Plane BFC , is cut, by the Intersections, DF and FG , of the inclined Planes, FK and FH . Fig. 15.

Hence

Plate VI. Hence, it is evident, may also be deduced the 2nd Corollary to the 8th Theorem, viz. The Vanishing Point of the common Intersection of two Original Planes, is the Intersection of their Vanishing Lines. Which, being so very essential in Practice, cannot be too strongly enforced; and which, I advise the Student to be quite clear in; for, by that means, he will be able to determine the Vanishing Lines of contiguous Planes; and so proceed, in the delineation of Objects, from one Plane to another, with the greatest facility.

COR. 4. And hence, it is also evident, that the Directing Point of the common Intersection of two Planes, is the Intersection of their Directing Lines. Which, being of so little use in Practice, is not worth the while to enforce, by more than one Example.

Fig. 23. EX. PO is the Directing Line of the Plane X, and PQ of the Plane Y; consequently, P, the Point of their Intersection, is the Directing Point of AB the common Intersection of those two Planes.

COR. 5. The Representation of the common Intersection of two Original Lines, is the Point, in which the Indefinite Representations intersect each other.

For, the Point B, of the Intersection of the two Original Lines AB and BC, is common to both Lines; wherefore, its Representation is in the Indefinite Representations of both Lines; and, consequently, it is in the Point, b, of their mutual Intersection; for, there can be no other Point common to both.

Also, a, the common Intersection of JV and NV, the indefinite Representations of AB and AD is the Representation of A, the Intersection of those Lines.

SCHOL. I thought proper to give this Diagram in this manner, rather than to continue the Original Plane Y, in which the Original Lines, AB and AD, are, to the Picture, without being intercepted by the Horizontal Plane, Z, on which the Picture and Object are supposed to stand; in order to enforce the Theorem; and to shew, that no regard is to be had to any other Plane or Intersection whatever, lying between; but only, to the Intersection of that Plane in which the Original Lines are situated. And also, to shew (as it will be shewn in Practice) that the Intersecting and Vanishing Points are found or produced, by supposing the Original Line and its Radial to be produced, through every impediment, to the Picture*.

THEOREM XII. Defin. 25th.

The Indefinite Representation, or Projection on the Picture, of an Original Right Line, not parallel to the Picture, is a Line drawn through its Intersecting and Vanishing Points.

DEM. For, every Right Line, which is not parallel to the Picture, will, if produced, cut the Picture, somewhere in the Intersecting Line of the Plane it is in. - - - - - by Theorem 11.

And the Radial of every Line producing its Vanishing Point must cut the Picture, in the Vanishing Line of the Plane the Original Line is in; by the same Theorem.

* I look on this Diagram as the compleatest in the whole Theory, for illustrating it generally; without regard being had to any Position, in respect of the Horizon; and I think it cannot fail of answering the intention I aimed at, viz. the divesting the Reader of that partiality which most dabblers in Perspective have to the Horizontal Vanishing Line. It is, at first sight, to a Novice in Perspective, somewhat intricate, and some have affirmed it to be so. This I know, it cost me more pains, to form it correctly, than any other three; and I am also certain, that every Person, who has given due attention to all the References it contains, will be convinced that it is not intricate, so far from being so, they will find it quite easy, being regularly analyzed.

Wherefore

Wherefore, a Radial Plane passing through the Original Line and the Eye, must necessarily pass through the Radial of that Original Line, and consequently through its Vanishing Point. - - - Ax. 5.

For, the Radial of every Line is parallel to the Line. - - - Def. 14.

But, the Perspective Projection of every Right Line on the Picture, is a Right Line, produced by the Intersection of a Radial Plane with the Picture. - - - by Theo. 1.

And, the Radial Plane, passes through its intersecting and vanishing Points.

Consequently the Indefinite Representation of the Original Line on the Picture passes through its Intersecting and Vanishing Point. Q. E. D.

EX. Let HL be a Right Line, cutting the Picture (ACB) in I, and the Directing Plane in D; let E be the Eye; EV is the Radial of HL, cutting the Picture in its Vanishing Point, V; by Def. 22.

Fig. 24.

Let a Radial Plane, NOPQ, be supposed to pass through the Original Line and the Eye, at E; consequently through the Radial EV (for it is parallel to HL) and also through I, the Intersecting Point of HL.

Now, the Points I and V are in this imaginary Plane, and they are also in the Picture; therefore, a Right Line, drawn through the Points I and V, is the Intersection of the Plane NOPQ with the Picture, ACB.

But, the Plane NOPQ passes through the Eye, E; therefore, the Eye is in that Plane; and, consequently, the whole of that Plane, and every Line in it, appears but a Right Line.

Wherefore, the Intersection IVr, of that Plane with the Picture, is the indefinite Representation of the Original Line, HL, on the Picture; seeing that, every Line, drawn, through E, to any Point N, M, F, K, &c. of that Line (except the Point D) is in the Plane NOPQ, and will, if produced, cut the Picture, somewhere in IV, produced both ways, to g and r;

But, the Points n, m, f, &c. where the Visual Rays, or Right Lines, EN, EM, EF, &c. cut the Picture, are the Representations of the Points N, M, F, &c. in the Original Line; consequently, the Representation of every Point, in the Line HL, except the Point D, where it cuts the Directing Plane, is in the Intersection gVr, produced indefinitely.

§ Persp.
Art. 2.

But, the Intersecting Point, I, and, V, the Vanishing Point of the Original Line, are in that Intersection.

Therefore, the Indefinite Representation of every Right Line is a Right Line, drawn through its Intersecting and Vanishing Points.

COR. 1. The Representation of an indefinite Right Line, situate on the other Side the Picture, lies between its Intersecting and Vanishing Points

If that part of the Original Line, IN, which lies beyond its Intersecting Point, I, was produced infinitely, towards H, its whole Representation, on the Picture, is IV.

For, the Point I is its own Representation; Im is the Representation of IM, and mn of the part MN; and if the Point H be supposed at any finite Distance, its Representation h, must lie between n and V.

For, since the Radial EV, producing the Vanishing Point, V, is parallel to the Original Line, IN, the Angle VEH will always be equal to EHD.

And, if the Point H be supposed at an infinite Distance, its Representation, h, will coincide with V; the Angle VEH will not be sensible, and consequently the Point H will vanish, or be lost to sight; and, therefore, the whole indefinite Representation of IH, infinitely produced, lies between its Intersecting Point, I, and its Vanishing Point, V.

Plate VI. COR. 2. The Perspective Representation, of a finite Right Line, is part of a Line drawn from its Intersecting to its Vanishing Point.

Fig. 24. For the Visual Rays EM, EN, EH, &c. from the finite Parts of the Original Line, MN, NH, &c. to the Eye, determine the finite Representations of those Parts; and, since the whole infinite Line, from I its Intersection, is represented between its Intersection and its Vanishing Point, I and V; consequently, the Representation of every finite Part is a part of IV.

Im, represents the Part IM, mn represents MN, and, nh represents NH; the remaining Part, hV, represents all the Line beyond H, infinitely produced.

COR. 3. The Projective Representation of that Part of an Original Line, which lies between the Picture and the Directing Plane, falls on the other side of its Intersecting Point; and, its whole Representation is infinite.

I is the Intersecting and D the Directing Point of the Line HL; wherefore, ID lies between the Picture, ACB, and the Directing Plane, ED.

EX. The Point F will be projected to f, where the Visual Ray EF, produced, cuts the Picture; and the Point G to g. See Proj. Perf. P. 52.

If is, therefore, the Projective Representation of IF, and fg of FG.

If any Point, K, be taken, near D, its Representation will be projected at a great distance from the Intersection I; and, the nearer the Original Point is to D, the farther will it be projected, from I; for, Ek will always make an Angle with Ig equal to DEK; but, when the Point K coincides with D, it will be projected to an infinite Distance.

Therefore, the Part, ID is represented by Ig, infinitely produced; and consequently, the Directing Point D, can have no Representation.

SCHOL. It may be observed, that, as the Perspective Part, IV, of the Indefinite Representation, represents all that Part beyond its Intersection, I, to an infinite Distance, so the finite part of the Original Line, ID, between the Intersecting and Directing Point, is infinite in its Representation, from I through g.

COR. 4. All that part of the Original Line, which lies on the other side of the Directing Plane, infinitely produced from its Directing Point, is trans-projected to the Picture, beyond its Vanishing Point; and the whole Representation is infinite.

EX. The Representation of the Point Q is at q, and of R at r; and, the nearer any Point, S, is taken to D, the farther will its Representation be from V; but, when S coincides with D, its Representation will be at an infinite Distance. See Transprojection, Page 52.

Also, the farther any Point, L, is taken beyond Q the nearer its Representation, C, will approach to V; but, unless the Point be at an infinite Distance, it cannot coincide with V.

SCHOL. Here, it may be observed, that an indefinite Original Line is represented by an indefinite Line, the Terms being inverted; and that, a Point, on the other Side of D, will be trans-projected to an infinite Distance, above the Vanishing Point, V. On this side, it will be projected to an infinite Distance, below the Vanishing Point; whereas, but one Point, D, lies between; and also, that the Representations of two Points, H and L, the extremes of a Right Line, at infinite Distances, both ways, from the Intersecting Point, I, coincide at V.

The

The trans-projected part of the indefinite Projection, CV , may represent a Line, in the same Plane above the Eye; from the Point C produced indefinitely, through O ; which must, also, be infinite, if it be parallel to EV , before the Points O and V will coincide.

N. B. If the Original Line TV pass through the Eye, its whole Representation is in its Vanishing Point; for, its Intersecting and Vanishing Point is the same; and, the Point of Sight, E is its Directing Point.

COR. 5. The whole indefinite Representation (IV) of an Original Line, from its Intersecting Point (I) is not varied on the Picture, the Eye being in any Part of its Radial (EV) at any Distance, less than Infinite.

Suppose the Eye, at E , removed to E , in the Direction VE .

EV , being parallel to IN , the Original Line, the Vanishing Point, V , remains the same; and, I , being its Intersecting Point is invariable; consequently, the Indefinite Representation, IV , will be the same at any Distance of the Eye, from V ; in VE , produced.

But, it must be observed, that, it is only so in respect of the whole of IV ; for the finite Parts of the Representation are continually varied, while the Eye moves from V to E ; m being the perspective Representation of the Original Point M , from the Eye at E ; but, removed to E , it will appear at m^2 ; consequently, Im is the Representation of the finite Part IM , of the Original Line, from the first Point of View, and Im^2 from the Point E . And so, of any other part of the whole Line.

Again, if the Eye move from E or E in the direction of EM or EM , the Representation m , or m , remains the same, and the indefinite Representation is varied.

For, at E , the indefinite Representation is IV ; but, at E_2 , it is IN ; yet Im , the Representation of the finite part IM , is the same, from both Points of View.

COR. 6. Hence, it is also evident, that, if the Eye be removed to any other Point in ED (the Director of the Original Line, IN) its whole Indefinite Representation, as well as the finite Parts are varied from every Station.

For, if the Eye be raised to E^3 the Radial is E^3C ; consequently, IC is the whole indefinite Representation; but if it be depressed to E^2 , then is E^2n the Radial, and In the whole indefinite Representation; and the finite Parts Im , mn , &c. are raised higher, or the Points, m , n , fall nearer to the Intersection, I , as the Eye is raised or depressed.

As this Theorem, and what is deducible from it, contains the whole essence of of practical, rectilinear Perspective, I would advise the young Student to make himself particularly well versed in it before he proceeds to Practice; for if this Theorem be clearly understood and retained, he will find the Practice easy to be acquired, and, at the same time, rationally accounted for.

THEO-

Plate VI.

THEOREM XIII.

The Distance between the Intersecting Point of an Original Line, and the Representation of any Point in that Line, is to the whole Indefinite Representation; as the Distance between the Original Point and the Intersecting Point, is to the Distance between the Original Point and the Directing Point, of that Line.

This Theorem will be best demonstrated in the Example.

Fig. 24. EX. MN is an Original Line produced to D; I is its Intersecting, and D its Directing Point; and V is the Vanishing Point of that Line, the Eye being at E; EV is, therefore, its Radial.

Now, if any Point, M or N, be taken in the Original Line, apart from its Intersecting Point; its Representation, on the Picture, will be, somewhere, between I, the Intersecting, and V, the Vanishing Point of the Original Line.

I say, that, the Distance of m or n, from I, the Intersecting Point, is, in proportion to the Indefinite Representation, IV; as MI or NI, the Distance of the Original Point from the Intersecting Point, is to MD or ND, the Distance of the Original Point from the Directing Point.

DEM. Having drawn the Visual Ray, EM or EN; the Representation, m or n, of the Point M or N, is where the Visual Ray cuts the Picture. Persp. Art. 2.

+ Def. 22. Now, EV is parallel to NMD†, and, IV is parallel to ED. - 8. 7. El.

† Def. 33. Consequently, IVED is a Parallelogram‡; and the Triangles NED, NnI are similar; wherefore, In : ED :: IN : ND. - 4. 6. El.

|| 15. 1. El. But, IV is equal to ED||; therefore, In : IV :: IN : ND. Q. E. D.

Or, it may be demonstrated thus.

Because EV is parallel to IN, the Triangles INN, nEV are similar.

Wherefore, In : nV :: IN : VE; and consequently, In : In + nV (= IV) :: IN : IN + VE (= ND) i.e. In : IV :: IN : ND. } 4. 6. El.

N. B. This Proportion is invariable, whether the Eye be farther from, as at E, or nearer to the Picture; or whether the Eye be raised or depressed, as at E³ or E²; for, E³D being still parallel and equal to the Indefinite Representation, IC; consequently, In : IC : IN : ND; and Im : IC :: IM : MD.

COR. 1. From this Theorem, the Indefinite Representation of a Line being given or drawn, and the Distance of any determinate Point, in the Original Line, from the Picture, known, the Representation of that Point, on the Picture, is also determinable.

For, whatever Plane the Original Line is in, is not material, the Distance of the Point, in question, from the Picture, answers the same purpose, as its Distance from the Intersecting Point of the Line it is in; or, from the Intersection of any Plane with the Picture in which that Line is situated. e. g.

EX. NM is an Original Line cutting the Picture, in the Point I, in the Intersection, AB, of the Plane, NBC, that Line is in; and the Directing Plane, DEC, in its Directing Point D.

Fig. 25.

I say,

I say, that NF (the Distance of the Point N from the Picture, AVB) is to FG, the Distance of the Picture, as NI to ID (the Distance of the Point N from the Intersecting Point, to the Distance between the Intersecting and Directing Points, of the Line MN) or, as NA to AC, its Distance from the Intersection, to the Distance between the Intersection and Directing Line, of the Plane the Original Line is in.

DEM. For (having joined IF and DG) because the Directing Plane is parallel to the Picture, IF is parallel to DG - - - - - 8. 7. El. (for the Triangle GND is a Plane cutting them both; Ax. 8.)

Wherefore, the Triangles GND, FNI are similar; and, for the same reason, GNC, FNA, and also DNC, INA are similar; consequently $NF : NG :: NI : ND$; or, as $NA : NC$. - - - 4. 6. El.

Wherefore, the Distance of the Original Point from the Picture, and the Distance of the Picture being known; the Distance of its Representation, from the Intersecting Point, is a fourth Proportional, viz. as the Distance of the Original Point from the Picture, added to the Distance of the Picture, i. e. as the Distance NG (of the Original Point, N, from the Directing Plane) is to NF (the Distance of that Point from the Picture) so is the Indefinite Representation, IV (of the Original Line MN) to In; the Distance of n (the Representation of the Point N) from I, the Intersecting Point of the Original Line. Q. E. D. It is, therefore, as $NG : NF :: IV : In$.

For, (by the Theorem) it is, inversely, as $ND : NI :: IV : In$.

Or, from the Vanishing Point, it will be, as $NG : FG :: IV : nV$.

In Numbers, it is thus calculated. The Distance NF of the Original Point from the Picture, and the Distance of the Picture, FG, being added (equal NG). The Indefinite Representation, IV, being multiplied by NF, and that Product divided by NG (the Distance of the Original Point from the Directing Plane) gives In; the Distance of n, the Representation of the Original Point, from the Intersecting Point, of the Line it is in. For, $NG : NF :: IV : In$; as above.

Wherefore, the Rectangle, under NG and In, is equal to the Rectangle under NF and IV; and consequently, $NG \cdot In = NF \times IV$; - - - 9. 6. El.

It more frequently occurs, in Practice, that the Representation of a certain portion of a Line is required, from some Point already found; the Intersecting Point of the Original Line not being within reach, nor attainable, but only the Vanishing Point. For, the Intersection of every Plane is neither wanted nor can be had, when the Vanishing Line of the Plane is absolutely necessary; it is the same in respect of the Vanishing and Intersecting Points, of Original Lines; as it will be exemplified in the practical part of this Treatise.

COR. 2. If the whole Indefinite Representation be not given, but only a part, from some determinate Point, in the Original Line; any other portion, of that Line, may be perspectively proportioned, geometrically.

EX. The Representation, m, of the Point M, in the Original Line, MN, being given or found, and the Indefinite Representation, mV, from that Point drawn (V being the Vanishing Point) the Representation, n, of any other Point, N, in the Original Line, will be; as $NM : MD :: mn : nV$; or, as $NM : ND :: mn : mV$.

DEM. For, as $NI : ND :: In : IV$; and, as $MI : MD :: Im : IV$; by Theo. But, - - $ND : ID :: IV : nV$; and - $MD : ID :: IV : mV$; 4. 6. El. for, the Triangles NED, VEN are similar; DE is equal to IV, and ID to VE (because NDEV is a Radial Plane, passing through the Original Line, NM, and the Eye (E) cutting the Picture and Directing Plane; in IV and ED; and, EV, producing the Vanishing Point, V, is parallel to ND; by Def. 22.)

Y

Now,

Plate VI.
Fig. 25.

Now, $ND : ID :: IV : nV$; also $MD : ID :: IV : mV$;
inversely $ID : MD :: mV : IV$.
Wherefore, by inordinate equality, $ND : MD :: mV : nV$.
Consequently, $ND - MD (=NM) : MD :: mV - nV (=mn) : nV$.
that is, $NM : MD :: mn : nV$, as it was affirmed.
Wherefore, by addition, $NM : ND :: mn : mV$;
and consequently, by inversion, $ND : NM :: mV : mn$.

Wherefore, the Distance of M (whose Representation, m , is given) and the Distance of any other Point, N , in the Original Line, from the Picture, being known; the difference being Nm , it will, consequently, be, as $NG : Nm :: mV : mn$; Q. E. D. For, $NG : Nm :: ND : NM$.

Thus, may the Perspective Proportion, of the known proportions of any Original Line, from any Point in it, be ascertained, geometrically; having the Representation of that Point, in the Indefinite Representation given, and the Distance of that Point, with any other Point in the Original Line, from the Picture, known; seeing, that the Distances of the several Points, from the Picture, are in the same Ratio, as their Distances from the Intersecting Point; and the Distance of those Points, from the Picture, may be had, when often their Distances from the Intersecting Point of that Line cannot; for several reasons.

EX. The Distances of the Points M and N , from the Picture, being known, and the Distance from any other Point, in that Line, as O , required; it will be, as $MN : MO$ or $NO :: mN : mo$ or No ; Oo being supposed parallel to Mm .

So that, if mF , the Distance of the Point M from the Picture, be added, we have the Distance of the Point O from the Picture, equal oF .

And the Distance of the Picture (FG) being known, the Representation, o , of the Point O , is determinable; for, it will be, as $om : mG :: mo : oV$;
and, by addition, $om : oG :: mo : mV$.

By which means, the Perspective Representations of several Divisions in a Right Line may be had, geometrically, their Distance from each other being known.

Fig. 26.

EX. Let ABC be an Original Line, and $CDEG$ a Radial Plane, passing through the Eye, E , and also through the Original Line; cutting the Picture in IV , their common Section.

EV , parallel to AC , is its Radial, IV is, therefore, the whole Indefinite Representation of ABC ; I is its Intersecting, D its Directing, and V its Vanishing Point.

Now, if the Representation, a , of any Point, A , in the Original Line, be determined, all other Divisions, B , C , &c. in that Line, are also determinable, without the Intersection I ; the Distance of A and B , from the Picture, and the Distance of the Picture being known.

For, $ab : aV :: AB : BD$; $ac : aV :: AC : CD$; and also, $bc : bV :: BC : CD$.

DEM. For, (having drawn AF and BG , parallel to IV) because aV is parallel to AF , $ab : aV :: Ab : AF$; also, $ac : aV :: Ac : AF$;
and, for the same reason, $bc : bV :: bc : bF$; and, as $BC : BG$. } Cor. to 6.6. El.

But, the Triangles GEC , CCB are similar, for EG is parallel to CB ; wherefore, $BC : CG :: CB : GE$ (equal BD) 4. 6. El.

Consequently, by compounding, $BC : BG :: BC : CD$, equal $CB + GE$.

But, as $BC : BG :: bc : bV$; therefore, $bc : bV :: BC : CD$.

c is, therefore, the Representation of the Original Point C , and b of B ; which are determined from the given Representation of A ; the Distance of A and any other Original Point from the Picture, being known; no regard being had to the Distance of the Point A , from the Intersecting Point I , or from D , the

the Directing Point of the Original Line ; seeing that, the Distance of the Original Points, from the Picture and Directing Plane, are in the same Ratio, as their Distances from the Intersecting and Directing Points of the Original Line.

In this Theorem is the Perfection of Practical Perspective. It is, at the same time, the most mathematical, and the Demonstrations the most perfect, elegant, and convictive, of the whole Theory. By it, we not only know that there is Analogy of Ratios, between the several Distances of Points, in an Indefinite Representation, from the Intersecting Point, and the whole Indefinite Representation ; to the several Distances of the Original Points from the Intersecting and Directing Points, or from the Picture and Directing Plane ; but, by its means, the Representations of the several portions of an Original Line, in the Indefinite Representation, are determined, with the greatest facility, accuracy, and expedition, geometrically ; or they may be determined numerically, by a Scale of equal Parts ; but that is seldom practiced, the method of doing it geometrically, being much readier and more accurate than it is possible to calculate, by Numbers.

T H E O R E M XIV.

The Perspective Projection, or Representation, of every Right Line, is parallel to its Director.

DEM. The Radial of an Original Line, producing its Vanishing Point, is parallel to the Original Line ; - - - - - Def. 22.

wherefore, a Radial Plane may pass through the Original Line and its Radial ; consequently the Eye is in that Radial Plane. - - - - - Ax. 5.

Now, since one part of a Right Line cannot be in a Plane, and another part of the Line out of that Plane, the Radial Plane will cut the intersecting Line (of the Plane the Original Line is in) in the intersecting Point, and the Directing Line, in the Directing Point, of the Original Line. - - - - - Ax. 1.

But, the Radial Plane passes through the Eye ; - - - - - Def. 6. and, consequently, through the Vanishing Point ; seeing it passes through the Radial Line, producing the Vanishing Point.

Wherefore, the Section of this Radial Plane, with the Picture, is the Indefinite Representation of the Original Line ; seeing, it passes through its Intersecting and Vanishing Points. - - - - - Theorem 12.

But, it also passes through the Eye, and Directing Point, of the Original Line ; consequently, it cuts the Directing Plane in the Director of the Original Line. - - - - - Def. 12.

But, the Directing Plane is parallel to the Picture. - - - - - Def. 4.

Wherefore, the Sections of the Radial Plane, with the Picture and Directing Plane, are parallel to one another. - - - - - 8. 7. El.

But, its Section with the Picture is the Indefinite Representation ; and, its Section with the Directing Plane is the Director of the Original Line ; as above.

Therefore, the Perspective Projection of an Original Line, being a part of its indefinite Representation, is parallel to its Director. Q. E. D.

EX. Imagine a Plane, NDEV, passing through the Eye and the Original Line, NO. This Radial Plane must necessarily cut the Picture and Directing Plane, in IV and ED ; for EV is parallel to DIN, i. e. to NO ; wherefore, EVID is a part of the Radial Plane ; which, being produced, would pass through NO, the Original Line.

Fig. 20.

But

Plate IV. But, I is the Intersecting, and, V is the Vanishing Point of NO ; Def. 21. and 22.
 wherefore, IV is the Indefinite Representation of NO ; - - Def. 25.
 and, since the Radial Plane passes also through the Eye and Directing Point,
 † Def. 12. E and D , its Section with the Directing Plane, ED , is the Director of NO †.
 Consequently, IV , or no , a part of IV , is parallel to ED . - 8. 7. El.

Fig. 20 and 21. In Fig. 21. this is more perfectly illustrated, by means of Visual Rays, from the Extremes, N and O , of the Original Line, NO .

For, NO being produced to the Directing Plane, D is its Directing Point; and E, D , being joined, is the Director of NO , as before.

But END is a Triangle, consequently it is a Plane. - - - Ax. 8.

which cuts the Picture in In , or IV , the Indefinite Representation of NO ; and, consequently, it is parallel to ED , its Director.

COR. 1. If two, or more Right Lines cut the Directing Plane in the same Point, they will have parallel Representations.

For they have the same Director, to which they are all parallel.

EX. PQ cuts the Picture in P , and the Directing Plane in D , the Directing Point of NO ; and, because it is perpendicular to AB , the Intersection of the Picture, C is, therefore, its Vanishing Point. (EC being perpendicular to LM , is therefore parallel to PQ , being in parallel Planes.)

Consequently, PC is the indefinite Representation of PQ ; which is parallel to IV , the indefinite Representation of NO ; by Theorem, and, 4. 7. El.

And also, by Theo. 7; for, ED , the Director of both, NO and PQ , is the common Intersection of the Radial Planes, $DEVI$ and $DECP$; passing through both Lines. Therefore, their Intersections, IV and PC , are parallel.

N. B. This Corollary is true if the Lines, NO and PQ , are not in the same Plane.

COR. 2. All Lines, not having the same Directing Point, but, which cut the same Director, indefinitely produced (through the Eye) both ways, have parallel Representations.

For, if two Original Lines, NO , or PQ , and RS , cut the Directing Plane in the two Points D and d , in such wise, that a Right Line drawn through the Eye and the Directing Point of one, shall also pass through the Directing Point of the other, their Representations, no and pq , are parallel.

Because they have the same Director, DEd .

EV is the Radial or Parallel of NO , V is therefore its Vanishing Point; and Ev is parallel to RS ; therefore v is its Vanishing Point; and, Sv its Indefinite Representation.

COR. 3. All Lines cutting the Directing Plane in EF , the Intersection of the Vertical and Directing Planes, will have their Representations parallel to the Vertical Line, CD .

Because, they all have the same Director, EF , to which the Vertical Line, CD , is parallel; being produced by the Section of the Vertical Plane, $ECDF$, with the Picture and Directing Plane. - - - 8, 7. El.

As PY , parallel to RS , cutting EF , the Prime Director, in f .

Ev is its Radial and Pv its indefinite Representation.

COR. 4. All Lines which cut the Parallel of the Eye, of any Original Plane, have their Representations parallel to the Vanishing Line of that Plane.

Because, the Parallel of the Eye is the Director of all such Lines, and it is parallel to the Vanishing Line; by Theorem 3d.

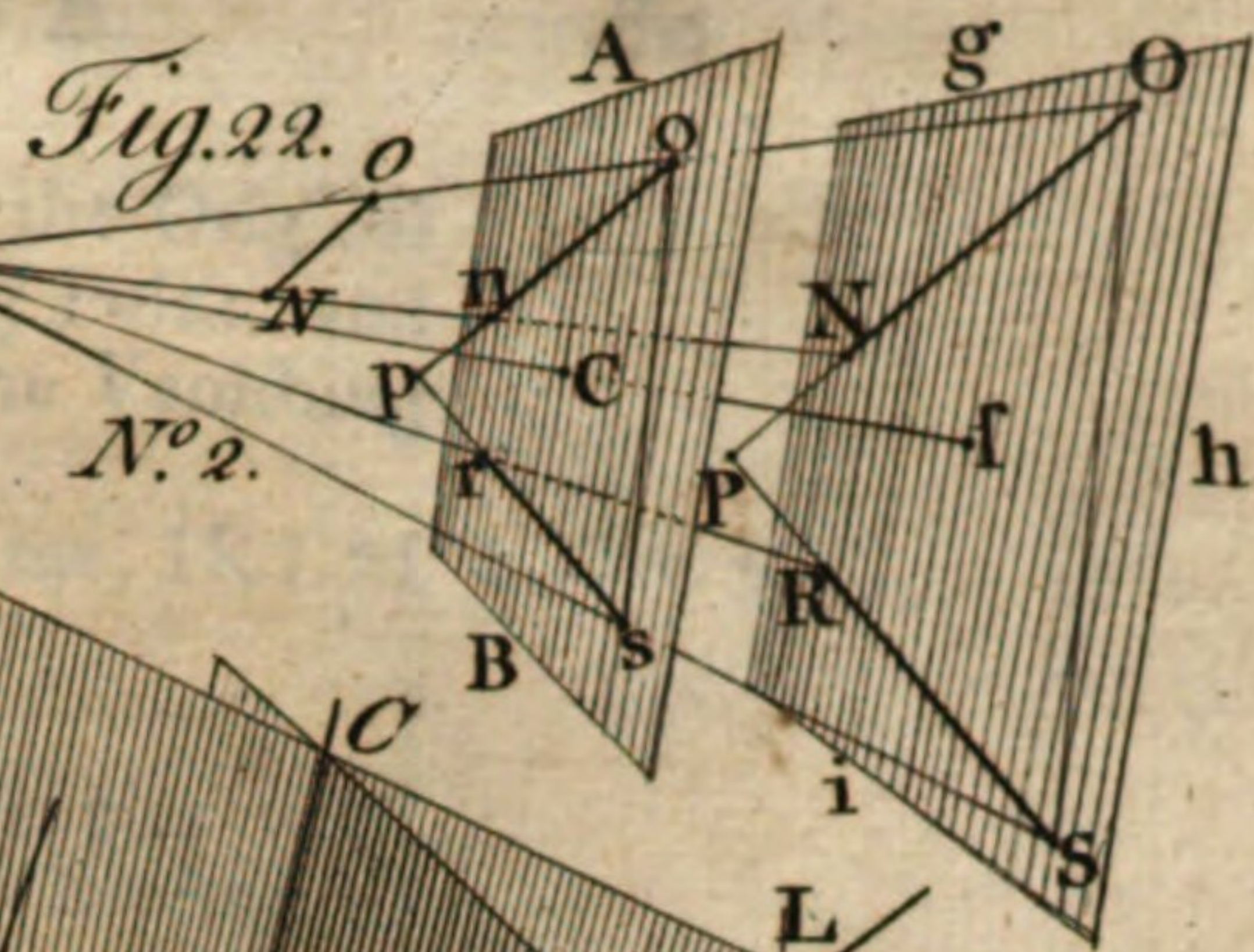
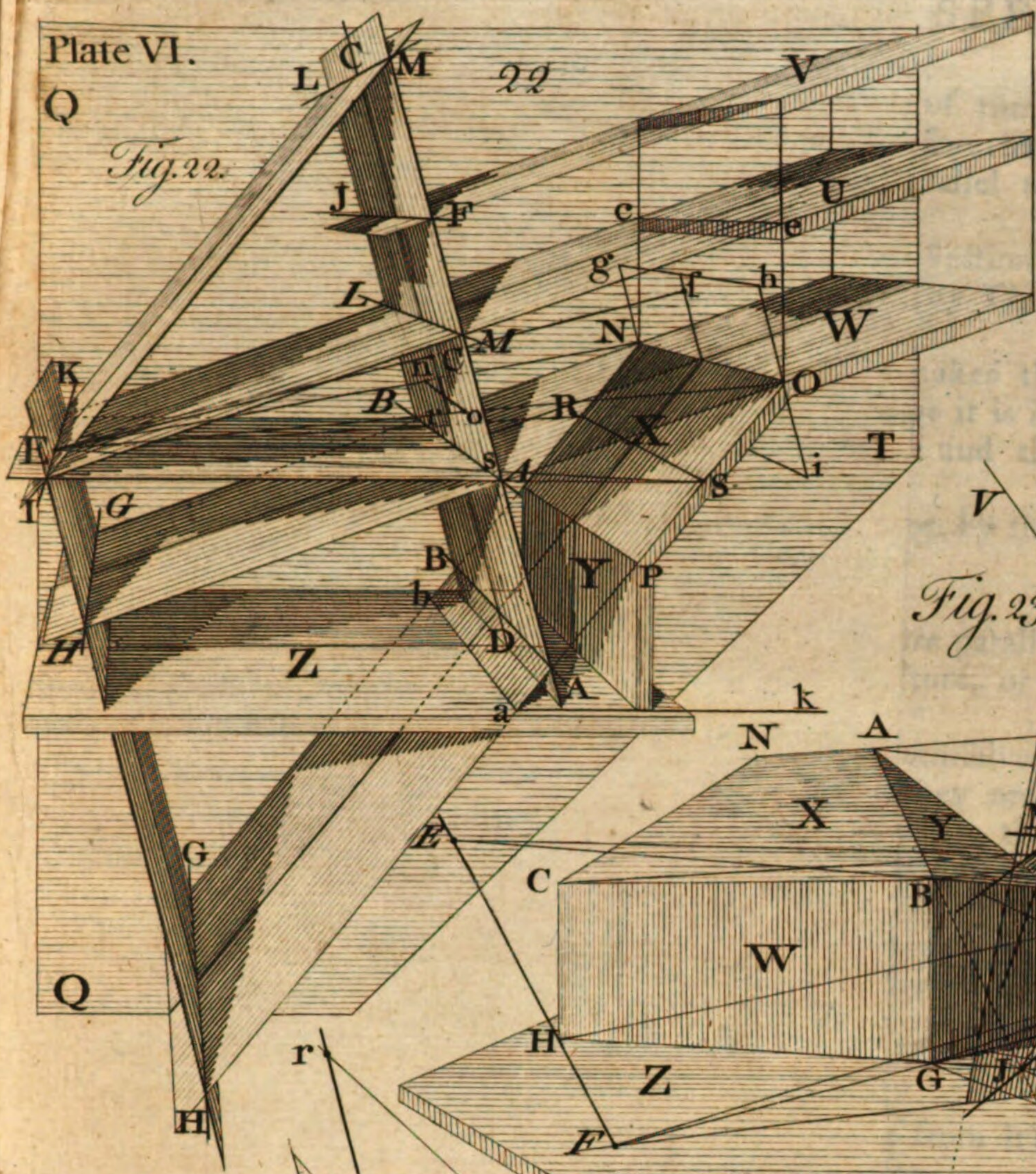


Fig. 23.

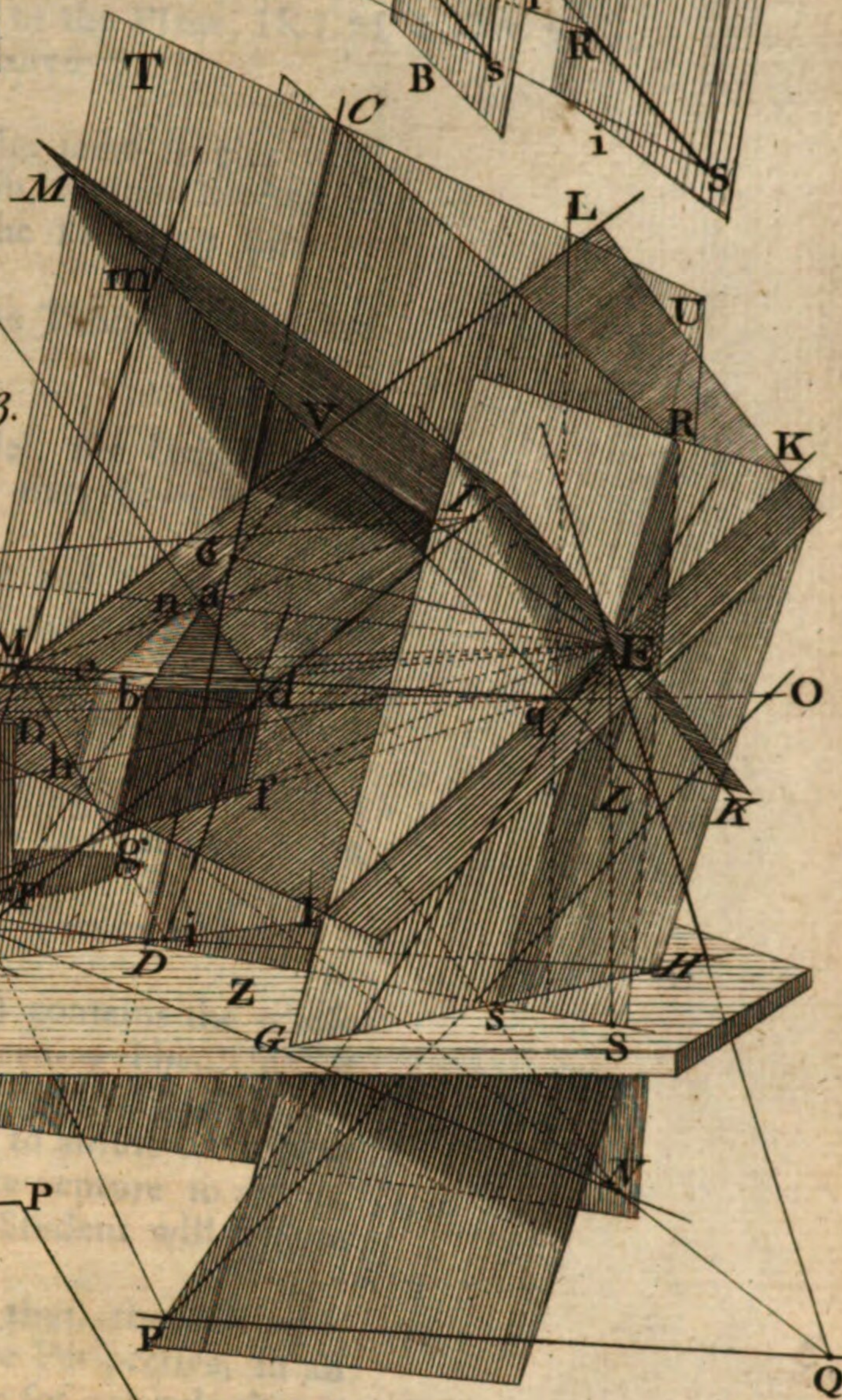


Fig. 24.

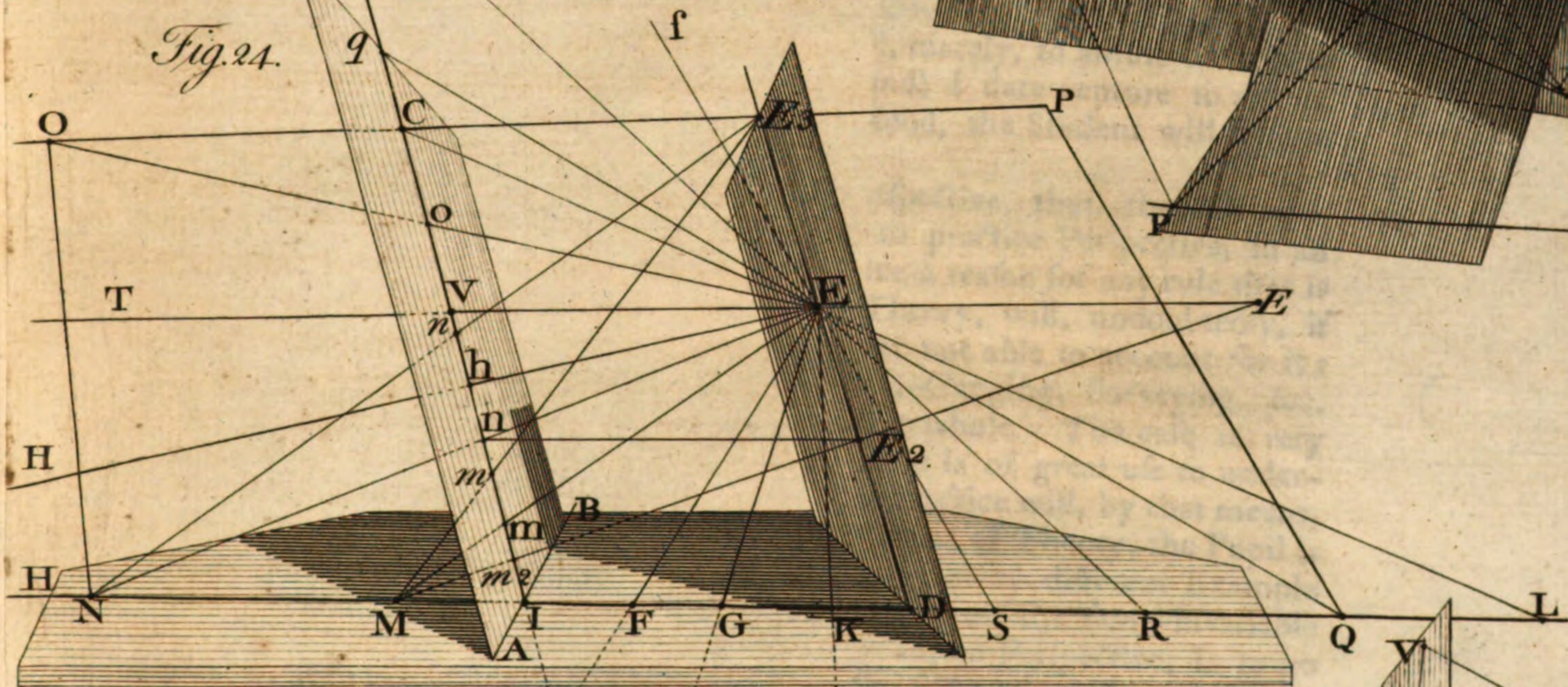


Fig. 26.

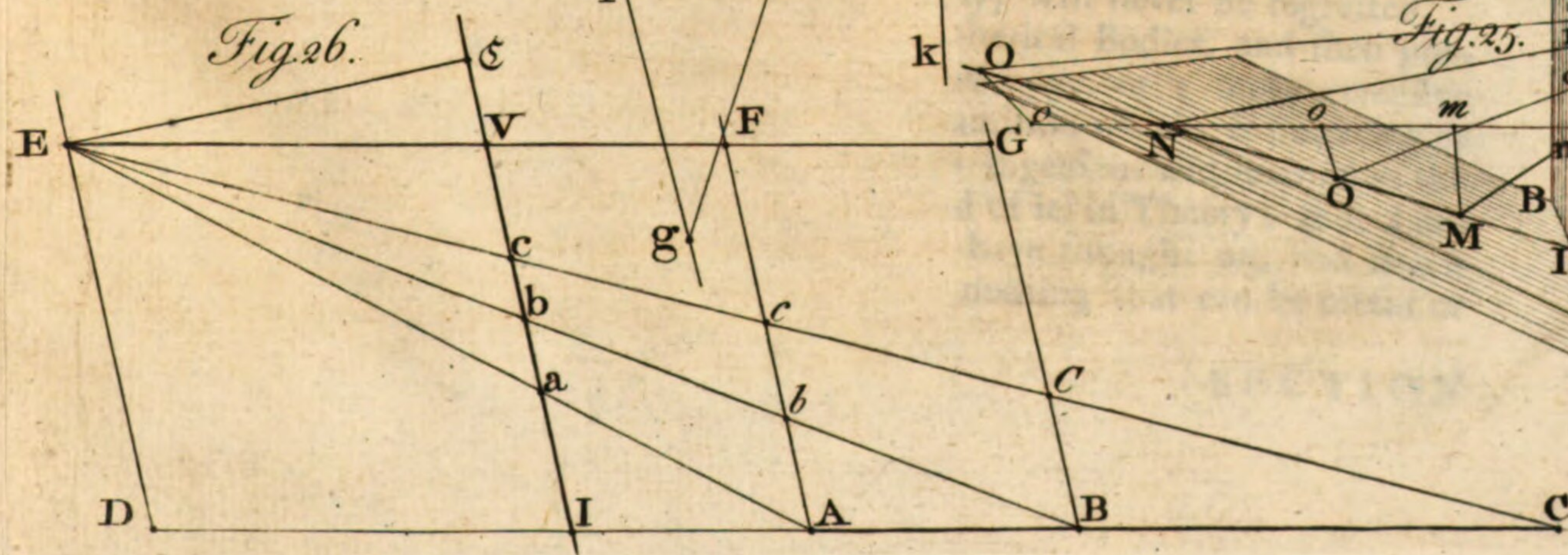
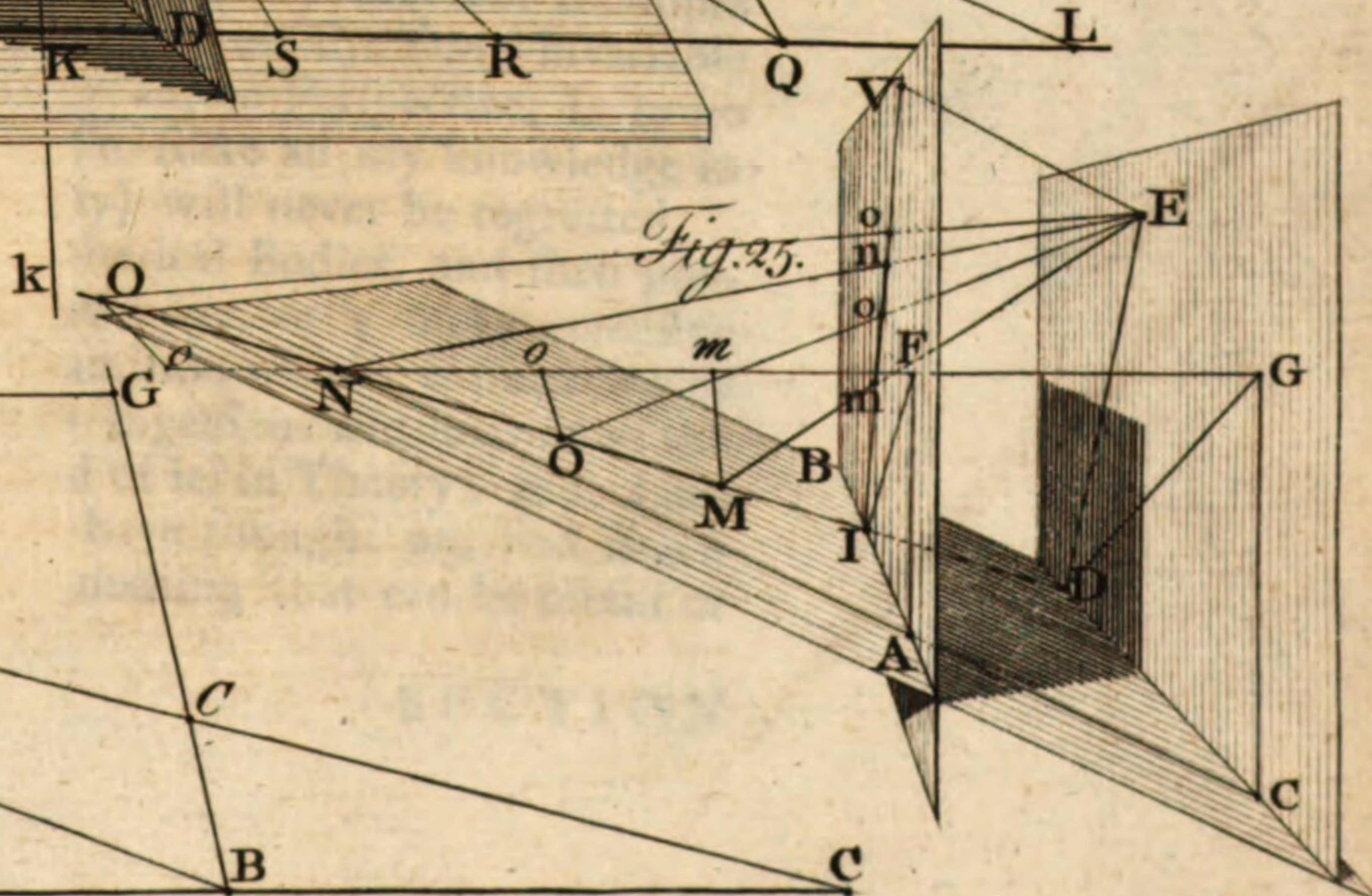
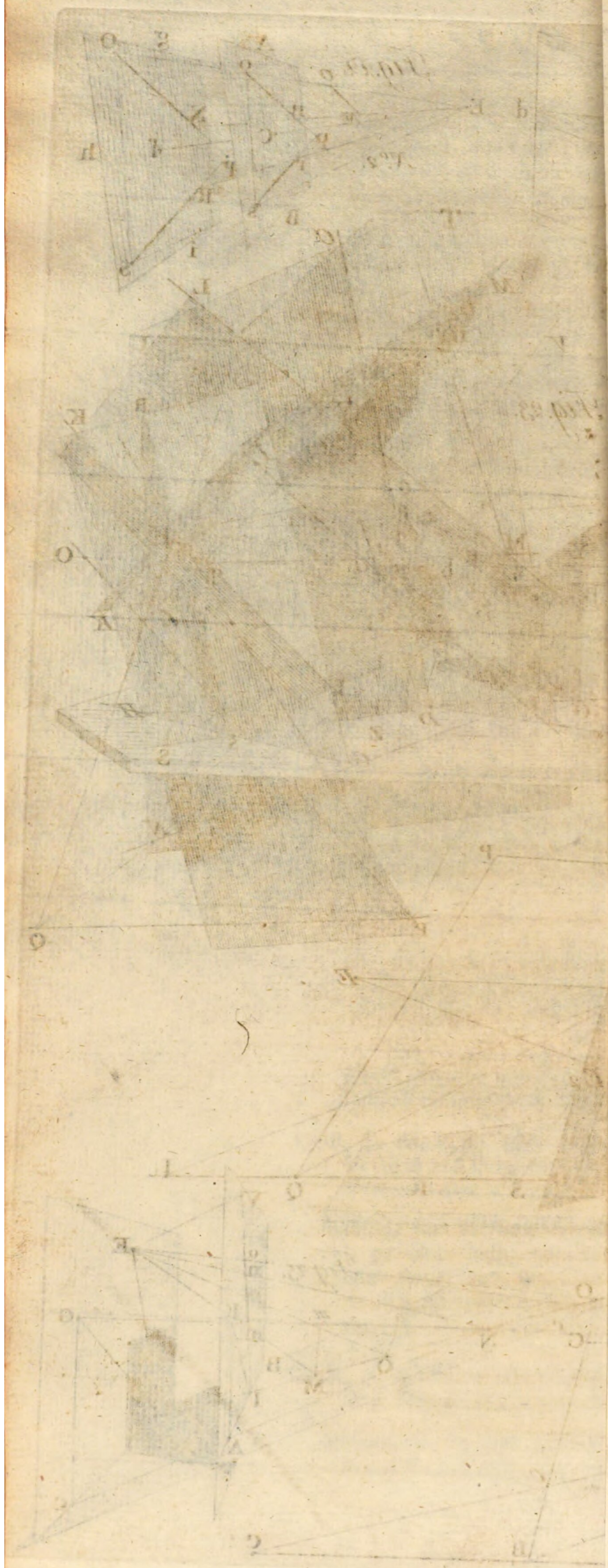


Fig. 25.





TU is an Original Line, cutting IK, the Parallel of the Eye, of the Original Plane NBH, in k ; Ex is its Radial, x is therefore its Vanishing Point, and Ux its indefinite Representation; which is parallel to LM, the Vanishing Line of the Plane NBH.

For, IK is parallel to LM[†], and it is the common Section of the Plane, IKLM + Theo. 3. and E & Ux; therefore, Ux is parallel to LM, by Theorem 7.

COR. 5. The Representation of any Original Line makes the same Angles with the Intersection and Vanishing Line, of the Plane it is in, as the Director, of that Line, makes with the Parallel of the Eye and the Directing Line of that Plane.

Because the Representation is parallel to its Director, by the Theorem; and because they cut parallel Lines in parallel Planes.

COR. 6. If the Representations of any two Lines are parallel, the Originals are either parallel between themselves and to the Picture, or they have the same Director.

For, if the Original Lines are parallel between themselves and to the Picture, their Representations will be parallel; but, if they are not parallel to the Picture, they must have the same Director; seeing, there can be but one Line drawn in the Directing Plane, parallel to both Representations.

N. B. Lines, which are parallel to the Picture, have no Directing Point, but the Director of every such Line, is a Line drawn through the Eye parallel to the Original Line.

For, the Representations are parallel to the Originals; by Theorem 10.

This last Theorem (and the Corollaries deducible from it) contains the whole Theory of the Directing Plane; as, in it and the thirteen preceding Theorems, is contained the whole knowledge of rectilinear Perspective; or, at least, all that I conceive to be really useful. It has been my aim, not, merely, to amuse or to shew my knowledge in it, but to give useful Instruction; and, I dare venture to affirm, that, if the whole of this Theory be clearly understood, the Student will seldom be at a loss in Practice.

It is a mistaken notion which many entertain of Perspective, that, the Theory is unnecessary to a Practitioner. It is certainly possible to practice Perspective, in all common Cases, without being able to account, or give a reason for any rule that is followed; for, the Rules, being deduced from the Theory, will, undoubtedly, if strictly followed, produce certain effects though we are not able to account for it: as there are many Persons very acute in Mensuration, Gauging, Surveying, &c. who know nothing of Geometry, the foundation of the whole. The case is very different in Perspective; for I am well convinced that it is of great use to understand the Theory well, in the first place; and, that the Practice will, by that means, be sooner acquired, and more securely retained. For want of Theory, the Pupil is frequently bewildered, and knows not what he is about; every different Example appearing difficult and strange, though, perhaps, founded on the same invariable Principles. In short, the nearest and most certain road, to Perspective, is to go through the Theory to Practice; and, I will venture to stake all my knowledge in it, that when acquired, the loss of Time (if it be any) will never be regretted.

I shall give three more Theorems, on Circles and spherical Bodies, and then proceed to Practice. If any Person require further knowledge, or a more extensive Theory, I refer him to the elaborate Work of Mr. Hamilton which, is deserving of the highest encomiums, if it was as useful as it is ingenious and learned in the Science; for, he has certainly said all that can be said of it, in Theory; and, I am persuaded, more than any other Person would ever have thought on, and much more than is of real use; for, I think I have omitted nothing that can be useful or necessary to be known, by any Practitioner, whatever.

S E C T I O N V.

Plate VII. Of the THEORY of CURVILINEAR PERSPECTIVE.

IN this Section, I shall chiefly consider the Theory of Perspective relative to circular Objects; which are the most common, and most useful of all curve lined Figures. Other Curves cannot be comprised in any certain Theory, by which their perspective Representations can, with certainty, be ascertained; or if they could, it would answer no purpose to an Artist, seeing that, irregular curved Figures or Objects but seldom occur, in Practice. I would not be understood to mean the curves of the apparent Contours of human or other Figures (endowed with Life or not) which occur in almost every Picture, but which, can never be reduced to Rules, for Practice, from an established Theory; but, irregular curved Figures, in Planes or other Surfaces. Winding or serpentine Rivers, Rocks, Mountains, Trees, &c. which are composed of, or bounded by, irregular curved Lines or Surfaces, cannot be reduced to Practice, in delineating them, by any Theory in the Science of Perspective. Notwithstanding they may be delineated with great accuracy, by any Person, who is a little accustomed to sketch by sight only, by means of an Apparatus, which I shall describe in the Appendix to this Work.

To treat, at large, of the various Curves which the Representation of a Circle may take, such as the Parabola or Hyperbola, is foreign to my Design; as it so rarely assumes those forms. Nor is the knowledge thereof of any real use in delineating; seeing that, the small part of the Representations of such Circles as are or can be represented, when they do assume either, could not readily be distinguished from a portion of an Ellipsis; which Curve, as it is the most general and useful, so it is the easiest to describe, and the only one of real use, in Perspective.

In order to a clear understanding of the nature of an Ellipsis and its Properties, it is necessary to be acquainted with the Conic Sections; since every Representation of a Circle or Sphere, in Perspective, is either one or other of the Sections of a Cone. But, as a thorough investigation of it is not necessary, here, I shall refer the Reader, who desires to be perfectly acquainted with the Conic Sections, to Mr. Steel's, or to a later Work, by Mr. Emerson.

Nevertheless, I find it impossible to treat the Theory of the Circle, in Perspective, without having recourse to them, in some degree; therefore I shall, in the first place, define what is a Cone, and the difference between a Right and a Scalene Cone; for, without that knowledge, all that can be said of it would be to little or no purpose.

The methods of describing an Ellipsis, and all which appertains to it, are treated fully, yet briefly, in six Problems in an Appendix to the practical Part (Book 1st) of my Treatise on Geometry; together with a concise Theory, of its most essential Properties; to which I refer the Reader; I shall consider it, here, only as being the Perspective Representation of a Circle or Sphere.

D E F I N I T I O N S.

Fig. 27. **A CONE** is a geometrical Solid, whose Base is a Circle, which terminates in a Point, called its VERTEX; and, a Right Line, passing through the Vertex and the center of its Base, is called its AXE or AXIS*.

It may be considered as a Pyramid whose Base is a Polygon of an infinite number of Sides; every Section of which, by a Plane parallel to its Base, will, consequently, be a similar Figure; wherefore, the Section of a Cone, parallel to its Base, is a Circle.

* The Axis of any thing is either a real or imaginary Right Line passing through its middle, in a certain and determined Position.

If the Object be a Plane Figure, its Axe may be either perpendicular to, or in the Plane of the Figure. If the Axe be in the Plane of the Figure, it is divided, by the Axe, into two equal and similar Figures. Any Diameter of a Circle may be its Axe, an Ellipsis has but two Diameters which are Axes, viz. the Transverse and its Conjugate, at Right Angles with each other.

2. A RIGHT CONE is that which is formed, or supposed to be generated, by the Revolution of a Right Angled Triangle, on one of its Legs.

ABC is a right angled Triangle; C is the Right Angle; BC is, therefore, perpendicular to AC, its Base. Fig. 27.
No. 1.

If you suppose the Triangle ABC to be revolved quite around, on BC, as an Axis, its Base, AC, will describe the Circle AEDF, which is the Base of the Cone ABD; and the Hypothenufe, AB, will have described the Surface of the Cone; which, in a Right Cone, is every where equal, from the Vertex B to the Periphery of its Base (as, BA, BE, BD, &c.) while the Perpendicular, BC, which is the Axe of the Cone, remains at rest; one extreme in B, the Vertex, the other in C, the Center of its Base.

3. A SCALENE CONE has, also, a Circle for its Base, but its Axe is inclined to its Base, as BC to AD. No. 2.

As if the Vertex (B) of a Right Cone, was drag'd on one side, out of its perpendicular position; consequently, the real Axe, of such a Cone, does not pass through the center of its Base, yet BC is called its Axe.

A Right Line bisecting any Angle of a Triangle is called its Axe; wherefore, BE, bisecting the Angle ABD, is the Axe of the Triangle ABD, and consequently of the Cone; for it passes through the middle of such a Solid, whose roundness is elliptical, seeing, its Dimensions, perpendicular to its Axe, are unequal; and, the more the Axe is inclined to the Base, the more its Dimensions differ (its Base remaining the same) and the real Axe is removed further from the Center, C, towards A.

If a Section of a Scalene Cone be made, by a Plane, perpendicular to its real Axe, BE, it is considered as an oblique Section of it; which Section is an Ellipsis, and BE would pass through its Center; consequently, the Solid would revolve regularly on BE, its real Axe. Whereas, on BC it would revolve very irregularly and unequal; but the Cone, ABD, would be equally poised on BC, in a horizontal Position; wherefore, every Section of a Cone, through the Axe BC, bisects the Cone; for the Triangles, ABC, CBD, are equal, in every Section, through BC; by Prop. 18. 1. El.

T H E O R E M I.

The Representation, or perspective Projection, of every Circle, in a Plane to which the Picture is parallel, is a Circle.

The scenographic Projection or perspective Representation of an Object, is the Section of the Optic Cone or Pyramid of Rays, by a Plane, passing between the Eye and the Object. (See Scenography, p. 49.)

DEM. Let ADGH be a Circle, in any Original Plane, Z; E is the Eye, and EA, EB, &c. Visual Rays, from every Point in the Circumference, to the Eye, forming a Scalene Cone, AEF. Fig. 28.

Now, if the Cone of Rays be cut by a Plane, X, parallel to the Plane Z, in which is the Original Circle; adgh, the Section of the Rays, by that Plane, is a Circle.

For, it is the section of a Cone, by a Plane, parallel to its Base; and, whether it be a Right or Scalene Cone, every such Section is a Circle; seeing that, the Cone, aEf, cut off by the Plane X, is similar to the larger Cone, AEF.

This

Plate VII.

This is otherwise demonstrable, from Theo. 10, and Corollaries; in which it is demonstrated, that the Representation of every Plane Figure, parallel to the Picture, is similar to the Original.

Every Diameter in the Original Circle AE, DH, &c. being equal, the Representations af, dh, &c. have that proportion to their Originals, as the Distance of the Picture to the Distance of the Plane of the Original Circle; consequently they are also equal; therefore, the Representation, adgh, is a Circle. Q. E. D. For, all Circles are similar Figures.

COR. Hence it is manifest, that the Representations, in Perspective, of various Circles, in the same Plane, parallel to the Picture, have all the same Ratio amongst themselves, and to each other, as the Original Circles.

THEOREM II.

The Representation of a Circle, in a Plane not parallel to the Picture is an Ellipsis: except in one certain Point of View, in which, its Representation is, also, a Circle.

Fig. 28.

Let ADG be an Original Circle in the Plane Z; E is the Eye, and EA, EB, &c. Visual Rays forming (as before) a Scalene Cone. C is the Center of the Circle.

DEM. If the Cone of Rays be cut by a Plane, Y, which is considered as the Picture, passing through both Sides of the Cone, not parallel to the Base, it is an oblique Section; and, consequently, every such Section, of a Cone, is an Ellipsis. - - - - - Prop. 90. P. 73. Em. Con. Sec.

Wherefore, the Representation, adg, on the Plane Y, (which is an oblique Section of the Cone of Rays EA, EB, ED, &c.) is an Ellipsis. Q. E. D.

Every Circle, which is visible, appears an Ellipsis, except when the Axe of the Eye is perpendicular to the Plane of the Circle, and passes through its Center; for, in that Case, only, the Visual Rays, from the Eye to every Point in the Circumference, are equal, and consequently they generate a Right Cone, the Axe of the Eye being the Axe of the Cone. In every other Position, whatever, they must necessarily form a Scalene Cone, seeing that, the Axe of the Eye (which is always the Axe of the Cone) must be inclined to the Plane of the Circle, if it be not perpendicular; and consequently, the Visual Rays, forming the surface of the Cone, have various Inclinations to the Plane of the Circle, and therefore they are unequal.

Wherefore, since the section of a Scalene Cone, perpendicular to its central Axe, is an Ellipsis, and the more the Axe is inclined to the Base, the more excentric is the Section; seeing that, if the Eye be nearly in the Plane of the Circle, the Section approaches nearly to a Right Line; and, the Section, made by a Plane in that Position, is the only true Appearance of the Circle; or rather, by a spherical Surface, perpendicular to the Axe, which truly measures the Optic Angle (the Radius being equal to the Distance) under which, the solid Dimensions of the Cone, every way, are seen.

N. B. If the height of the Eye, or its Distance from the Directing Line, be taken a mean Proportional, between the distance of the nearest convex part of the Circumference and the distance of the farthest concave part, from the Directing Line, the Representation will then be a Circle.

Fig. 29.

Let AB be a Diameter of the Circle, ADG, perpendicular to the Directing Line, KL; BS is the distance of the Circle from it.

Make SE : SA :: SB : SE; i. e. let SB : SE :: SE : SA. by Pr. 30. Geo. At

At E, as the Point of View, the Representation of the Circle ADG, on any Plane, X, parallel to the Plane KEL, will be a Circle, and in no other Point whatever, on that Plane, and at the distance BS.

DEM. Draw BI parallel to SE; and, suppose AEB a Section, by a vertical Plane, through CE, the Axe of the Cone, and the Diameter AB, of its Base; and passing through S.

Then, because BI is parallel to SE, the Triangles AIB, AES are similar;

Wherefore, $AB : BI :: AS : SE.$

But, by Construction, $AS : SE :: SE : SB.$

Wherefore, $SE : SB :: AB : BI;$

and therefore, the Triangles AIB, BES are similar[†], for the Angle ABI is equal to ESB^{||}; EBS is equal AIB, and IAB equal BES; seeing that, the Sides which subtend those Angles are proportional. † 5. 6. El. || 4. 1.

But, the Angle BES is equal EBI[‡], for they are alternate; wherefore, ^{† 4. 1. El.} EBI is equal IAB (of the Cone AEB) and consequently, the lesser Cone aEb, cut off by the Plane X (parallel to BI, and the Plane KEL) is similar to the Cone BEA; for, the Angle E, at the Vertex, is common to both; the Angle Eba (equal EBI) is equal EAB, consequently, Eab is equal EBA[§], § C. 5. 10. 1. and therefore, the Cone AEB is cut sub-contrary, by the Plane X.

But, if a Scalene Cone be cut sub-contrary, the Section is a Circle.

Therefore the Representation, ahbg, on the Plane X, of the Original Circle ADBF, is a Circle. Q. E. D. Prop. 89. P. 73. Em. Con. Sec.

N. B. The Center, s, of the Representation, is not the Representation of the Center, C, of the Original Circle; for it is at c, where the Visual Ray EC cuts ab, the Representation of the Diameter AB. Wherefore, CE is not the real Axe; seeing that, it cannot be the Axe of the Cone AEB, and also, of the lesser Cone aEb, which is cut sub-contrary, and is therefore similar to AEB; consequently, the true Axe is common to both Cones.

So likewise, df, the Representation of the Diameter, DF, in the Original Circle, is not a Diameter of the Representation; but, gh, the Representation of the Chord GH, (which bisects AB) is its Diameter perpendicular to AB.

Wherefore, the Representation of the Segment GBH is the lower Semicircle gbh; and, gah, the upper Semicircle, represents the large Segment GAH.

It is evident, that, if the Eye be raised, as at E², the Diameter ab, in the Representation, will be lengthened; seeing, that the Visual Rays, E²A, E²B, cut the Picture more oblique; whilst the other Diameter, gh, remains of the same length[§]; and consequently, the Representation of the Circle, from that Point of View, will be an Ellipsis, and ab its Transverse Diameter, or Axe. § Cor. 3. Theo. 10.

But, if the Eye be lowered, to E³, the Diameter ab (now ce) will be shorter than the Diameter gh (which, being parallel to the Intersection of the Picture, will have the same length, seen from any Point in the Directing Plane, as above) and it will then be the Transverse Axe; and ce (the Conjugate to it) is the shortest Diameter of the Ellipsis.

If the Eye be removed on either Side of the Point E, the Representation will be an Ellipsis; for, the Section will not, then, be sub-contrary (the Picture remaining as before). The Representation, ab, of the Diameter AB, will still be a Diameter of the Ellipsis, because it will pass through its Center; but it will be neither the Transverse nor the Conjugate Axe, for they are always at Right Angles with each other.

Hence, the Point of View, from which the Representation of a given Circle, on any Picture, however situated, will be a Circle, is easily determined.

The Original Plane, KAL, in which the Circle is situated, being produced if necessary, cuts the Picture in MN, its Intersection.

A a

Having

Plate VII. Having fixed on the Distance, or Station Point, S (at pleasure) in the Diameter AB, produced, which is perpendicular to the Intersection of the Picture; let KL be drawn, through S, parallel to MN; KL is the Directing Line. - Def. 10.

Draw SE perpendicular to KL, and parallel to the Picture.

Make SE a Mean Proportional, between SA and SB; - - - Pr. 30. Geo.

E is the place of the Eye, or the Point required; from which, a Circle, agbh, (on the Plane X) whose Center is c, and Diameter ab, will truly represent the Original Circle ADBF, on the Plane AKL.

N. B. The distance of the Picture, in this Case, is not material; for, the Point E being fixed (as above) every Section of the Cone of Rays EA, EF, EB, &c. parallel to the Plane X, or to the Directing Plane KEL, being cut subcontrary, will, consequently, be a Circle.

From what has been advanced, it is evident, that the Representation of every Circle, in Perspective, is some one or other of the Conic Sections; which, being of itself, a distinct Science, would not be proper to enter on here; but, from that consideration and the preceding Theorems, the two following Corollaries may be deduced.

COR. 1. If the Circumference of the Original Circle touch the Directing Line in a Point only, and is not cut by it, the Representation of that Circle will be a Parabola.

Fig. 30.

For, whether the Original Circle, ADBF, touch the Directing Line, in S, the Station Point, or in any other Point, B, it is the same; since that Point, and also the Eye, E, which is the Vertex of the Optic Cone of Rays, are both in the Directing Plane, Y; it is evident, that the Directing Plane touches the Cone in the Right Line EB, from its Vertex, E, to its Base, at B.

† Def. 4.

Wherefore, since the Picture, X, is always parallel to the Directing Plane†, the Cone, AEB, is cut by a Plane parallel to its Side, EB; the Curve produced by every such Section is a Parabola. Prop. 76. P. 223. Em. Con. Sec.

That part of the Original Circle, MGAN, which lies beyond the Picture, is represented perspectively, and falls above the Intersection MN, as MaN; the remainder of the Circle, lying between the Picture and the Directing Line, is projected below the Intersection; as l is the representation of the Original Point L. Every other Point, as K, is projected further from the Intersection as it lies nearer to the Directing Line, BS; and, except the Point B, in which it touches the Directing Line, may be supposed to have a Representation, on the Picture, though at an immense distance; but, the Point B can have none; because, the Line EB, which should produce it, is parallel to the Picture, seeing, it lies in the Directing Plane, and therefore can never cut the Picture. The Representation of which Point, only, is wanting to compleat the Figure and form an Ellipsis; but, for want of that Point, in the Representation, it is kept open, and falls off in Right Lines, nearly, at a Distance, to all sense, infinite.

Hence it is plain, that, on Account of the Distance that part of the Curve falls below the Intersection, a small portion of it, only, can be represented, in a Picture; and the part which can, together with the Part which lies beyond the Picture, differs so little, in its Representation, from an elliptic Curve, that, in delineating, it would be needless to deviate from it; and I question that ever a distinction was made, in Practice. Nor, can it ever be of use, but in delineating the inside of a large Rotunda, Circus, or circular Area; when the Spectator may be supposed to stand on the hither part of the Circumference, or in a Line which is a Tangent to it, and parallel to the Picture; in which Case, only the farther, concave part of the Curve can, properly, be represented.

COR.

COR. 2. If the Directing Line (KL) cuts the Original Circle in two Parts; that part (KFAHL) which is on the same side with the Picture, will, in its Representation, form an Hyperbola, below the Vanishing Line (OP) of the Plane of the Circle; the other part (KBL) of the Circle (if it be represented on the same Picture) will be transprojected, and form an opposite Hyperbola, above the Vanishing Line, which is equal and similar to the other.

Fig. 31.

For, if the Directing Line passes through the Center of the Original Circle, and consequently, divides the Circumference equally in two; the Eye being always supposed the Vertex of the Cone, is cut by the Directing Plane; in which Case, the Section, made by the Picture, is parallel to the Axe of the Cone, and the opposite Hyperbolas are equal, and equally distant from the Vanishing Line OP.

But, when the Circle is cut unequally, by the Directing Line, KL, the Cone, BEAF, is also unequally cut by the Directing Plane, KEL; the Section of which, with the Cone, is the Triangle KEL; the Picture, NOPM, being parallel to the Directing Plane, the larger Segment of the Circle, in MN, and cuts also the Cone, in the Curve f g a N, which is an Hyperbola. Prop. 104. P. 160. Em. C. Sec.

If the Sides AE, FE, BE, &c. of the Cone BEA, are produced through the Vertex, E, forming an opposite Cone, a E b d; the Picture being produced, will also cut that Cone produced; its Section with it is the opposite Hyperbola, or transprojected Representation of that part of the Circumference of the Circle, KBL, which lies on the other Side of the Directing Line, by means of the Rays BEb, QE q, &c. produced to the Picture; which, notwithstanding it is the Representation of the lesser Segment of the Circle, it is generated by a similar Cone, a E b; and although the Section is made at a greater distance from their common Vertex, E, it is equal and similar to the perspective and projective Representation (fM g a Nd) of the larger Segment.

This Curve, like the Parabola, can never be generated, or of use, but when the Area of the Circle is so large, that the Spectator is supposed to stand within it; and that Segment, MGAHN, which lies beyond the Picture, only, is required; and which differs so little from an elliptical Curve, in its Representation, Mg a h N, that the distinction is not very obvious, and seldom, if ever, regarded.

These are all the variety of Curves which a Circle in Perspective can assume, however situated in respect of the Picture, or of the Eye; the chief of which is the Ellipsis. Every Circle, which the Eye is capable of taking, in at one View, has the Appearance of an Ellipsis; except, when the Axe of the Eye is perpendicular to the Plane of the Circle, and passes through its Center; in that position only it can appear, to the Eye, a true Circle; although all Representations of Circles, in Planes parallel to the Picture, are Circles†; but, being seen oblique, when the Eye is in the true Point of View, they have the Appearance of Ellipses.

† Theo. 1.

THEOREM III.

The Representation, in Perspective, of a Globe, or Sphere, is an Ellipsis*; except when the Center of the Sphere coincides with the Center of the Picture; in which Case, only, it is a Circle.

The Cone of Rays from the Eye, as its Vertex, to the apparent Circumference of a Sphere, is always a Right Cone. For, a Sphere can have but one Position, either to a Plane, Line or Point; and consequently, the Diameter, every way, always presents itself to the Eye, and always forms a Right Cone.

* I have found it very difficult, nay almost impossible, to convince some Persons of this plain and well known truth; because, as they truly observe, the Diameters of a Sphere always appear equal; which is as much as to say, that the Visual Rays, under which a Globe is supposed to be seen, always form a Right Cone, i. e. whose Axe is perpendicular to its Base; which is not so with Circles, but in one Position only. But, such Persons seem to forget, that the Representation is on a Plane, and that Plane is considered as the Plane of the Section; which must, consequently, cut every Cone oblique, but that which has its Axe perpendicular to the Picture.

Now,

Plate VII. Now, it is evident, that, when a Sphere is so situated, in respect of the Picture and the Eye, that, the Direct Radial coincides with the Axe of the Cone, i. e. when it passes through the Center of the Sphere; the Section of the Cone, made by the Picture, is parallel to every apparent Diameter of the Sphere, which is the Base of the Cone, and being equal every way, it is consequently a Circle.

But, the Direct Radial is the Axe of the Cone, which passes through the Center of its Base, and also through the Center of the Picture.

Consequently, the Center of the Picture coincides with the Center of the Sphere, in this Section; and therefore, the Representation is a Circle. See Theorem 1st.

For it is the Section of a Cone, parallel to its Base.

2. If a Sphere be so situated that the Direct Radial does not pass through its Center, the Axe of the Cone must be inclined to the Picture; which, being the Plane of the Section, the Cone of Rays are cut obliquely by the Picture.

But the oblique Section of a Cone, through both its Sides, is an Ellipsis. Pr. 90. Em.

Therefore, the Representation of a Sphere, whose Center is not the Center of the Picture, is an Ellipsis. Q. E. D. For it is an oblique Section of a Cone.

Fig. 32. EX. Let AB be a Sphere and C its Center, supposed to be seen. Let E be supposed the Eye of a Spectator, and EA, EB, Visual Rays, from the Eye, E, to the apparent Diameter, AB*. AEB may, therefore, be supposed a Section of a Right Cone, through its Axe, EC, which is an Isosceles Triangle; the Sides, EA, EB, &c. of a Right Cone being equal†.

† Def. 2.

Now, if FG be the Picture (which is a Plane) parallel to AHBI, the Base of the Cone, the Line ab, in which the Plane AEB cuts that Plane, is a Diameter of that Section; which Section, being every way equal, is, consequently, a Circle.

§ 6. 7. El.

But, EC, the Axe of the Cone, being perpendicular to its Base, is perpendicular to the Picture§, and to its Section, FG, with the Triangle AEB; the Point, c, where the Picture is cut by the Axe of the Cone, EC, is the Representation of C, the Center of the Sphere.

|| 7. 1. El.

‡ 2. 6. El.

And, because AB is a Diameter of the Base of the Cone, and C its Center, AB is bisected in C; consequently, ab is also bisected in c; for, the Triangles CEA, CEB are congruous||; and, because ab is parallel to AB, the Triangles aEc, AEC, and cEb, CEB are all similar‡.

¶ Def. 15.

§ Def. 17.

But, E is supposed the Eye of a Spectator, and, Ec, being perpendicular to FG, the Picture, is the Direct Radial¶; and the Point c, where it cuts the Picture, is the Center of the Picture§, which is also the Center of the Representation of the Sphere, on that Picture; therefore it is a Circle. Th. 1.

Now, if the Cone AEB be supposed to be cut by any other Plane, passing through the Diameter hi, and consequently through c, the Center of the Picture; that Section will be an Ellipsis.

Let SD be a Section of another Plane or Picture, with the Triangle AEB, cutting the Rays EA, EB, in e and d; then is ed, in that Section, the Representation of the apparent Diameter of the Sphere, and c is the representation of its Center, as before, in the Section ab; but, ed is not bisected in c.

† C. 3. 10.
1. El.

DEM. Let ace be an Isosceles Triangle; $ac=ec$; and, $ac=cb$; th. $ec=cb$ Ax. 3. El.

But, because bce, in the Triangle bec, is a Right Angle, cbe is acute†, and, the Angle cbd, in the Triangle dcb, is, consequently, obtuse. C. 2. 1. 1.

Wherefore, cd, subtending the obtuse Angle, is greater than cb; 12. 1. El.

And consequently, $ec+cd$, equal ed, is greater than $ac+cb$, equal ab.

But, the Section HEI, which is vertical to AEB, cuts both Pictures in the same Line, hi, equal to ab; as above.

* See the Note to Art. 4. Page 13, on Direct Vision.

Therefore, the Section, $ehdi$, is an Ellipsis; for, the Diameter ed is larger than any other, in that Section.

But, ES , perpendicular to SD , is the Direct Radial; wherefore, S is the Center of that Picture; and it does not coincide with the Center of the Sphere (the Eye being at E) consequently, the Representation of a Sphere cannot be a Circle, except when the Center of the Picture coincides with the Center of the Sphere, in the Center of its Representation. || Def. 17.

EX. 2. To illustrate this further. Let X , Y , and Z be three Globes, whose Centers are all in the same Right Line, parallel to ah , the Intersection of the Picture; whose Center is C , and EC its Distance. Fig. 33.

Draw the Tangents EA , EB , ED , &c. to the three Globes, the Chords, AB , DF and GH , of those Tangents, are the apparent Diameters of each; which, it may be observed, is still turned towards the Eye; and are considered as the Diameters of the Bases of the three Cones AEB , DEF , and GEH , which are all Right Cones.

Now, since they are all cut by the same Plane (of which ah is a Section) each Cone, except the first, AEB (whose Axe, EX , coincides with the Direct Radial, EC) is cut oblique; and, consequently, one Diameter, of the Section, is larger, as the Globe is farther from the perpendicular EC ; as ab , df , and gh , the Representations of a Diameter of each Globe, X , Y , and Z ; df being larger than $a b$, and gh still larger than df .

But, the other Diameters, perpendicular to these, are equal, in all §, for they are supposed parallel to the Picture and equally distant from it; consequently, the Representation of the Globe X , only, which is in the middle of the Picture, or, the Center, C , of its Representation, in the Center of the Picture is a Circle; because, the Diameters perpendicular to each other are equal: all others, as Y and Z are Ellipses, because they are oblique Sections of Cones, whose Diameters are proved to be unequal. § Cor. 3.
Th. 10.

N. B. It is the same however the Globes are situated; whether above, below, or sideways of the Center of the Picture. If they are equally removed from the Perpendicular EC , and equally distant from the Picture, the Globes being equal, their Representations are equal and perfectly similar, though differently situated; and the farther they are remote, from the Perpendicular, the more excentric is the Ellipsis.

It is also obvious and demonstrable, that ab , the representation of the Diameter AB , is bisected in C , the Center of the Picture, and the representation of the Center of the Globe; for, the Triangle aEb is Isosceles. But, df , and gh are not bisected, in i and k , the representations of the Centers of the Globes Y and Z .

For, because the Right Lines EY and EZ , from the Eye to the Centers of the Globes, are perpendicular to the Chords, DF and GH , the Angles DEF , GEH are bisected by those Lines; because the Chords are bisected. C. 9. 1. El.

But, in the Triangles dEf and gEh , because the Angles, at E , are bisected, by the Right Lines Ei , Ek ; df and gh are cut, by those Lines, in the Ratio of the other sides of the Triangles; - - - - - 3. 6. El. and consequently, $di:if::Ed:Ef$; and $gk:kh::Eg:Eh$.

But Eg is less than Eh †; because, the Angle ghE is acute, and Egh is † 12. 1. El. obtuse; wherefore, gk is less than kh ; and also, di than if .

Therefore, df and gh are not bisected, by the Lines EY and EZ .

SECTION VI.

Containing a full refutation of several Errors and absurd Opinions, which many Artists entertain of Perspective; and, therefore, look on it as an imperfect and fallacious Science.

I Shall, in this Section, in the first place, explain the reason why the Representations of the Diameters of Columns, on a Picture which is parallel, or nearly so, to the Columns, are continually larger the farther they are removed from the Center of the Picture, and consequently from the Eye.

As this is a particular circumstance, which many Persons seem inclined to dispute, or, if it be admitted, they look on it as an imperfection in Perspective, I shall endeavour, and doubt not, to make it appear consonant to reason and Perspective, to their entire satisfaction. It has so near Affinity to what has been said, in respect of a Sphere, that the same Diagram might have done for both; but, in order to avoid mistakes, and to keep the Ideas distinct and separate, I have given another.

Fig. 34.

Let V, X, Y, and Z be the Sections of four Columns, by a horizontal Plane, in which is the Eye, at E. Let LM be a Section of the Picture, parallel to the Columns, and EI, EK, EA, EB, &c. Visual Rays, from the Eye to the apparent Diameters of the Columns, which are still turned towards the Eye, as Globes.

It is evident, that the Visual Rays cut the Picture more oblique, the farther the Columns are from the Perpendicular EC; and, notwithstanding the Optic Angles DEF, GEH are less, as the Columns are continued, their apparent Diameters, df, and gh, intercepted between the Visual Rays, continually increase; and would, if the Columns were continued, till the Interval between them was lost; the Representations of their Diameters still increasing till they touch and cut each other. For, the Space from Center to Center, of the Columns, are equal, and are, consequently, represented so on a parallel Picture, if continued infinitely; what, then, can become of the Space between the Columns, if it be not added to their Diameters, or Representations on the Picture?

I presume, no Person will say that there is any imperfection in Perspective, in this Case; I do affirm there is none in Perspective, the business, of which, is to represent Objects, truly, on a Plane; according to their Magnitudes, Distances, and Situations in respect of each other, of the Eye and of the Picture; where, then, is the imperfection in this?

If a Person, not knowing how to choose a proper Distance, take, into the Picture, more than the Eye is capable of taking in at one View; or if, through ignorance, the Picture be absurdly situated, in respect of the Object, is the fault in Perspective, or in his Judgment? In Perspective there is not, nor can be, on the Principles here laid down, any, the least error, if the Elements of Euclid are to be depended on, upon which the whole Fabric is erected; if one falls, the other falls with it.

The Art of Perspective is to represent Objects on a Plane, exactly as they appear, according to their Situations, &c. (See Perspective, Page 50.)

It is well known (or ought to be) that no Perspective Representation can appear perfect, i. e. it cannot truly represent the Original Object, though ever so accurately delineated, but when the Eye is in the true Point of View.

Suppose, then, E to be that Point; and AEB, DEF, &c. the Optic Angles under which the Columns X, Y, Z (being equal) are seen.

It is, also, I presume, allowed, that Objects appear to have the same proportion to each other, respectively, as the Angles under which they are seen. Th. 1. Sec. 3. D. Vision.

But, the Angle DEF is less than the Angle AEB; because their Subtenses are equal, AB=DF (supposing the full Diameter of a Column to be seen) and the Visual Rays EB, ED, EF, &c. the Sides of those Angles, still longer, the farther

† C. 14. 1. El. they are from the Perpendicular, EC†. How comes it then, that the Diameter of that

that Column (on the Picture) is the largest, which is seen under the least Angle? The reason is obvious; because, the Picture, LM, cuts those Rays most oblique, where the Angle is the least; in the Points *g* and *h*, &c.

DEM. If EF and EH are produced till they cut a Right Line drawn through the Centers of the Columns (which is parallel to the Picture) in *F* and *H*; ED and EG cut that Line in *D* and *G*; all which are beyond the Circumferences of the Circles; wherefore, *DF* and *GH* are, each larger than a Diameter; and, if it was not sufficiently obvious, it would be easy to prove that *GH* is larger than *DF*. But, *AB* is less than a Diameter; consequently, *ab* is less than *df*, and *df* than *gh*; for *ah* is parallel to *AH*. - - - 4. 6. El.

Now, if the Eye, at *E*, be turned towards the Column *V*; or, if the Situation of the Picture be changed to *NM*, perpendicular to *ES*; then is *S*, where *ES* cuts *NM*, the Center of that Picture; on which, it is evident, that, *ik*, the representative Diameter of the Column *V*, being nearest the Center, is the least; which, on the Picture *LM* is equal to that of *Y*; for, they are equally distant from the Center of that Picture; and *gh*, on the Picture *MN*, the representation of the Diameter of the Column *Z*, is considerably larger than *gh* on the other. Yet, to the Eye, at *E*, both these Pictures truly represent the Diameters of the four Columns *V*, *X*, *Y*, and *Z*; *V* and *Y* appear equal on both, they being equally distant from the Eye; *X*, the nearest, will appear the largest, and *Z*, the farthest, from the Eye, will appear the least.

DEM. With any radius, as *ES*, on *E* as a Center, describe an Ark of a Circle, cutting all the Visual Rays *EI*, *EK*, &c. from the four Columns.

The parts, *ab*, *df*, &c. intercepted between the Rays, are the true proportions of the apparent Diameters of the Columns, and consequently, of their Representations on both Pictures.

But the Ark *ab* is the greatest, *ik* is equal to *df*, and *gb* is the least.

Wherefore, the Angle *aEb* is greater than *dEf* (equal *iEk*) and *gEh* is the least; and consequently, the apparent Magnitudes of the Columns, *X*, *Y*, and *Z*, are in the same Ratio. - - - Theo. 1. Direct Vision.

It is almost unnecessary to enforce this, by dwelling longer on it; as it is certain, if either of these Pictures be viewed from any other Station, they could not represent the four Columns *V*, *X*, *Y*, and *Z* in the Position and Situation they are in.

Suppose the Eye removed to *E²* (the Point of View ought always to be opposite to the middle) and, from that Station, to view the Picture *NM*.

Draw the Visual Rays *E²a*, *E²b*, &c. and on *E²* describe an Ark of a Circle, cutting them, in 1, 2, 3, &c. The slightest glance of the disproportion of their Appearance from that Station is sufficient conviction; for *ab* (which appears the largest from the true Point of View) whose apparent Magnitude is the Ark 34, does not appear half so large as *df*; and *gh* appears larger than *df* (which ought to appear the least) as the Arks 34, 56, and 78 sufficiently evinces.

That the true, apparent magnitudes of the Columns *V*, *X*, *Y*, and *Z* from the Point of View, *E*, is the portions *ab*, *df*, &c. of the Ark *idb*, is manifest, when we consider, that the Picture, on which the Columns are represented, is a Plane; but, that their true Appearances can only be represented on a spherical Surface; i. e. on the Surface of a Sphere, the Representation and the Appearance are the same, the Eye being in its Center.

Does any one imagine that there is a real Arch in the Heavens, which has that Appearance? in which, the Stars, &c. appear; equally distant from the Eye in its Center. The Celestial Globe, for instance, is a Picture of the Heavens, Planets, Stars, &c. each Representation of a Star, on its Surface, if they are truly depicted, would, to an Eye in the Center of the Sphere, exactly coincide, and be in the same Right Line with its Original in the Heavens; and, their apparent Distances, from each other, are measured by an Ark of the Sphere; whereas, their real Distances from the Eye and from each other, respectively, have not the least affinity

Plate VII. nity to their Distances, as represented on the Surface of the Globe or from its Center. Wherefore, to an Eye at E, the true Point of View for either Picture (LM or MN) each Diameter, being seen under its true Angle, and the same as its Original, will appear less and less, the farther they are distant from the Eye, or from the Center of the Picture; although their Representations are continually larger and larger, on those Pictures, as the Original Columns recede.

And this will ever be the Case, on a Picture parallel to the Columns, in some degree, at any distance of the Picture; but, at a proper Distance, for taking in the whole, the difference is so little, and that still less as the Distance is increased, that, it is and ought to be dispensed with, by making them equal: but, I must observe, it is not, then, true Perspective.

2. Methinks I hear some carping Critic say, I must allow, then, that Perspective is somewhat defective; by no means; I have not yet given up the Point in debate. I say, that, although, at any Distance, there must and will be a difference, though scarce perceptible, at a proper Distance, yet I would never advise a Person, who would represent a row of Columns, in full Front, to make the least difference in their Diameters; for, since they support an Entablature, which is represented perfectly horizontal, their Pedestals or Bases the same, consequently parallel, it would be very improper to make the Columns differ in width when they are equal in height, for this reason; because it is impossible to confine the Eye to the true Point of View, always; from which if you deviate, ever so little, the whole Representation is distorted and imperfect.

But, if it was possible to confine the Eye, I would not step the least aside from Perspective, on any account; let the Representation be ever so distorted and preposterous, it will, and must, if truly represented (by the Rules hereafter prescribed) appear to the Eye, in the Point of View, as the Original. If we may be allowed to take liberties, in any Case, where shall we draw the line between the perfect and imperfect Representation? for the whole is more or less distorted; consequently, the Rules of Perspective are not to be depended on at all. To what, then, must we have recourse? the Eye is not, in many Cases, a competent judge; we should, if we follow its dictates, implicitly, have as many Points of View, in a Picture, as Objects; because, if every Object was to be represented exactly as it appears to the Eye, on the same Plane or Picture, there could be no point of View for the whole; and consequently, in a long, connected, and continued Object, composed of Planes and Right Lines (as in Buildings of any kind, or regular piece of Architecture) it would be beyond the power of Art to connect the several detached pieces or projectures so, together, as to compose one entire and uniform Picture of the whole.

3. Notwithstanding an ingenious Author has treated it wantonly, or ludicrously, in a supposed Dialogue between a Lady and an Artist, who was determined to abide by the Rules of Perspective, his Argument, has not the least weight, and must be imputed to him, as not having a right notion of Perspective. The Eye is considered as a Point; therefore, whether we suppose it confined to a Pin-hole or not 'tis the same; for he must allow (or he was unfit to write on Perspective) that there can be but one Point of View for a Picture, in which it can be perfectly seen, as intended by the Artist; consequently, when the Eye is not in that Point, the Objects must necessarily appear more or less distorted, according as they are situated nearer or farther from the Center of the Picture, or that Point which is opposite to the Eye.

4. I shall, however, for the sake of the Argument, allow each Object to be truly represented, as they appear to the Eye, on a Plane Picture of a tolerable length, as ah:

Fig. 33.

Globes are the fittest Subject to expatiate on, because they are every way the same. Let C be the Center of the Picture, the Eye being at E; and therefore, the Picture may be supposed to be extended equally towards a as to h.

Now it is certain, that the three Globes appear round, let the Eye be situated where it may; but they cannot, or ought not to be so represented, on the Plane ah, to be viewed by the Eye at E; for if they were, they would not appear round, but gibbous, or Egg like,

like, standing erect, all but the Globe X, in the Center; and the more so, as they are farther removed from it; but the Eye must be removed opposite to each, and consequently, there would be as many Points of View as there are Objects, which is an absurd Hypothesis, in one Picture.

Suppose, from the Point of View E, I would represent the three Globes, X, Y, and Z, as they appear; that is, the outline of each to be a Circle; the Eye, and its Axe, EC, must be turned towards Y and Z, as EY, EZ; and consequently, the Picture is turned with it, into the Position bl, and lm. For, the Picture must be perpendicular to the Axe of the Eye, if the Object be represented as it appears; in which Case, there are three distinct Pictures, viz. ab, bl, and lm; each having a distinct Center, and the same Distance, EC or Ec; on which Pictures, each Globe is represented by a Circle, and the farthest from the Eye (Z) is the least in its Representation.

If the Objects, X, Y, and Z, were represented, truly as they appear, on one Plane (of which ah is supposed a Section, and C its Center) they would be under a worse predicament than those represented strictly perspectively: such a Picture could not appear true in any Point of View, whatever, every Object having a distinct and separate one.

For, suppose the three Globes, X, Y, and Z, to be represented, on the Plane, ah, as they appear to the Eye, at E, i. e. round; the Representation of the Globe Y less than that of X, and, of Z, less than Y, as they are represented on bl and lm; would they appear in the proportion they are represented, at E, or in any other Point? No, certainly; for, at E, the Representations would appear much less than the Original Objects, and not round (except X, only) Y would appear more round than Z, and Z would also appear rounder than any other, more remote from C; but they would, all, except X, appear elliptical Spheroids, and not Globes (which is obvious, to any Person tolerably acquainted with Optics or Direct Vision) the farthest, from X, still more so than the last.

Now, let the Eye be removed to E, or opposite to Z; Y, or Z, would then appear round, but not of the same proportion, as from the Point of View E; but, at E, neither X nor Z would appear round; and, although equally distant from the Eye, X would appear much the largest; where, then, in this Case, must the Eye be placed to see the three Globes X, Y, and Z, such as they really appear? There cannot be a Point determined, for each Representation has a separate Point of View. Can, then, the Picture ah, in this Case, be a true perspective Representation of the three Globes X, Y, and Z, as they appear to the Eye? certainly no, but each Representation, on the Plane ah, is as much a distinct and separate Picture, as the three Pictures, ab, bl, and lm; the difference is only, that the three Pictures have but one Point of View, and the Picture ah has three, equally distant from it; supposing the three Pictures placed in a Right Line, ah.

5. If what I have here advanced be not sufficient to divest those Artists of their absurd notions of Perspective, I shall give them one observation more, which they have not, perhaps, considered with that attention it requires; and then leave them to pursue their own way, if it appears to them more eligible and reasonable, and will produce a better and more agreeable Representation, of any Object whatever.

They quarrel and find fault with Perspective, but without reason; because, it is an infallible and most perfect Science. They would have all Objects represented, in Perspective, exactly as they appear to the Eye; there is no such thing to be done; 'tis not in the power either of Art or Science to represent, on a Plane, any single Object, except a Sphere, or a regular Plane Figure, having the Eye opposite to its Center, and the Picture parallel to it, as it appears; and yet, Perspective will give a true and just Representation of every regular Object.

The cause of all their errors and false notions of Perspective is their not rightly distinguishing between the Representation of an Object, on a Plane, and the true Appearance of it; two distinct things, which can never be united, on a Plane Surface or Picture.

The Representation of any Object, on a Plane, is the Section of the Cone or Pyramid of Rays, by a Plane; and the Appearance of an Object is the Section of the Rays by the Surface of a Sphere, only; to which, every Visual Ray, from the Eye to the Object, must be Perpendicular; consequently, the portions of the Arks, intercepted between the Visual Rays, measure the Optic Angles, under which, every part of the Representation is seen (the Ark a , or a, db , Fig. 33 and 34, may be supposed a Section of a Sphere, cutting the Visual Rays EA , EB , &c.) consequently, the true Representation, and, at the same time, the true Appearance, can only be represented on a spherical Surface, the Eye being in its Center; but that is not a perspective Representation.

6. I expect it will, again, by some Persons, be alledged, here, that Perspective, then, is not sufficient, to represent Objects as they appear to the Eye. I affirm that it is. Let us, therefore, once more enquire, candidly, what is meant by Perspective, and what effects it is expected to produce.

Perspective is a representation, on a Plane, of an Object, or Objects, in a fixed and determined Position and Point of View. (See Perspective, Page 50.)

I have already shewn the bad effect of viewing a perspective Picture, out of the true Point of View; from which, if we do deviate, we cannot expect that the several parts of a Picture can vary their Bearings and Proportions, to each other, as the real Objects; no, certainly, that must be a reality, not a Perspective; which is but a Deception, a Representation of a real Object, on a Plane; and, which can never represent the Object truly, from any other Point of View, but that for which it was delineated.

I have also shewn, to ocular conviction, by the Apparatus, that there may be as many various Representations of the same Object, from the same Station, or Point of View, as there can be positions of the Picture; all which, are true Perspective, and will affect the Eye alike in the true Point of View; which is the Vertex of the Pyramid of Rays; seeing that, every corresponding Line, on each Picture, is seen under the same Plane Angle as the Original, and every Surface, as well as the whole Object, is seen under the same solid Angle, or Pyramid of Rays, as the corresponding Original Surfaces, or as the Original Object.

What, then, is it we are caviling about? would ye have a real, solid Object on a Plane, or a Representation of it only, in a certain Position? Certainly then, if the Eye be not in the true Point of View, the Picture does not truly exhibit an appearance of the intended Object, at the fixed Station; and although it may be a just, perspective Representation, it may, nevertheless, be a very distorted and disagreeable Picture; not owing to any fault, or imperfection in Perspective, but, to the choice of the Situation of the Picture, or the Distance and Position of the Object and the Picture.

Does not almost every Object, except a Sphere, appear different from every different Point of View? and can any Person be so unreasonable as to expect, that a Representation of a solid Object, on a Plane Surface, can appear truly to represent the Original in any other Point of View, but in the Vertex of the Pyramid of the Visual Rays, under which the Object itself is supposed to be seen? the very supposition of it is absurd to the last degree; because, no two parts of the Representation can, at the same time, be seen under the true Optic Angle, in any other Point; consequently, the Representation, must appear erroneous.

7. Now, although the true Representation, and also the true Appearance are depicted on a spherical Surface, yet, I affirm that such a Picture is subject to much greater imperfection than a true Perspective, on a Plane Surface; because, if the Eye be the least removed out of the Center, the whole Appearance and Effect is destroyed, and exhibits a much worse Image of the Object, than a Perspective Representation, on a Plane Picture, can possibly exhibit, in any Point of View; which is so very obvious, that it is needless to point out the reason. For, suppose the Eye, at E , viewing the spherical Picture, adb ; the Visual Rays, Ea , Ed , &c. shew, at first sight

light, how much worse such a Picture must appear, than that on the Plane, a h, from the same, though false Point of View; not one of them will appear round, and the Appearance, of all, is preposterous. Fig. 33.

8. From the circumstance I have mentioned, in respect of the true Representation and Appearance being depicted, at once, on a spherical Surface, some Artists imagine, that the Representation on a Plane ought to be so delineated; it cannot be; 'tis impossible, in the nature of things. Suppose a true Representation of a long Building, in full front, delineated on a spherical Surface, and it were possible, afterwards, to reduce the spherical Surface to a Plane; is any Person so weak as to suppose, that such a Representation would appear like the Original, in any Point of View? he must be weak, indeed, and have strange mistaken notions of Perspective, who can; and yet I have heard this Point strenuously supported, or rather argued for, (supported it could not be) for any thinking Person (who can think with propriety about it) must be sensible, that, what should represent Right Lines will be curved, and, the whole, will give the Idea of a Rotunda, or externally round Building; seeing that, the extremes would fall off, not in Right Lines but curved, and they would appear less than the real Object; to say nothing of the almost impossibility of producing or delineating such a Picture, at all, or by any means; I should be glad to be informed, how, or by what Rules.

9. I have just bethought me of one Circumstance, which, I think, must convince an Atheist in Perspective. I am persuaded, no Person will deny, that, if the Eye could be fixed in a Point, at a proper Distance from a transparent Plane, placed between the Eye and an Object, whilst the Hand traced, accurately, every Line of the Object, as it appeared on the transparent Plane; such a delineation, all must allow, would be a true one. Let those, who are not otherwise to be convinced, try the experiment. I will stake all my knowledge in Perspective, that every Representation of a Right Line is a Right Line, on the Plane; that Columns or Cylinders of equal magnitude, and parallel to the Plane, will be larger as they are more remote from that Point, on the Plane, to which the Eye is opposite; that the Representation of a Circle or Sphere, seen oblique, is an Ellipsis; that Objects of equal magnitude, and equally distant from the Picture parallel to them, however otherwise situated or elevated will be represented equal; with various other circumstances; all which may be fully proved to ocular conviction, which will not admit of the least doubt. Surely then, if Perspective performs the very same thing, which it certainly will, in every respect, it must exhibit a true Representation of Objects.

10. It is the business of Perspective to produce the Figure of a Section of the Cone or Pyramid of Rays, from the Eye to the Object, by a Plane, in any determined Position; which, if the Rules it prescribes be truly followed, it will most certainly effect, without any sensible Error. For, wherever any Point, or Angle of an Object, appears on a Plane, or other Surface, between the Eye and the Object, there the Visual Ray would cut and pass through the Plane, to the Eye; but when the distance of the Eye is such, that the Visual Rays, from the Eye to the Object, cut the Plane very oblique, or in Angles, nearly, or perhaps less than, half Right ones, the Representation will consequently be distorted and preposterous, and in other Points of View, will have a disagreeable and unnatural Appearance.

11. Here, then, lies the mistake, which, through ignorance or inadvertency, is attributed to Perspective, and supposed to be a deficiency or imperfection in it. 'Tis, generally, in the Point of View, the Situation, &c. of the Picture or Object; which, by being too near the Eye, occasions that Distortion and preposterous Representation we perceive in several Pictures; for, if the Optic Angle, under which the whole Picture is seen, exceeds 50, or, at the most, 60 Degrees, the Distance is not sufficient; as, the Visual Rays will cut the Picture very oblique, near its Extremes, and occasion a disagreeable distortion of the Objects on the extreme parts of it. Yet, as I have observed, at any Distance, the representations of Columns, or other cylindrical Objects, on a Picture parallel to them, will, in true Perspective, ever be the least which are nearest to the Center.

2. I shall

Plate VII. 12. I shall now take notice of another great difficulty, which seems to be a stumbling Block to many Artists; who, one would imagine, would not hesitate one Moment, to determine about it with propriety; which is, to represent, on a vertical Picture, the appearance of a direct Descent; which, some have affirmed impossible, in the Nature of things, to be done; that it is a strong instance of the insufficiency of Perspective, and that, we must have recourse to experience, only, in such Cases; intimating, that it is not possible, by the Rules of Perspective, to give the Representation of an inclining Plane; which is so ridiculous an Assertion, that, any Person, who understands Geometry tolerably, will easily be convinced of the contrary.

For, first, we are to consider whether the Descent (which I shall suppose a Plane) is perceivable or not. If this descending Plane can be seen, at all, from any fixed Station, it may, undoubtedly, be represented on the Picture, from that Station, by the strict Rules of Perspective, or there is no truth in Perspective; either it is a perfect and infallible Rule, or it is no Rule at all. If the Plane can be seen, it is a subject of Perspective; if it cannot be seen, it is no subject for a Picture; which needs no Demonstration. To tell us, what descends, and we actually know to go down-hill in Nature, will, if ever so correctly drawn, appear to rise upwards on the Picture, is saying nothing to the purpose, the expression is vague and nugatory; for, if the Plane descended so much as not to appear to rise on the Picture, it could have no place or representation thereon; but if it can be seen at all, it must necessarily and unavoidably appear to rise; or rather, it must, really, rise on the Picture, for, the Appearance is to descend.

To draw two parallel and horizontal Lines across the Picture, and to give an Idea, that the space, between them, represents a descending Plane (of a certain length) without shape, bounds or limits, sideways, or any Object situated on the inclination is indeed impossible; but that is giving too great latitude to the meaning of the expression. And yet I question if a skilful and ingenious Painter, in aerial Perspective, might not, simply, by the effect of Colour, even in this Case, deceive the Eye, and give the appearance of a Descent. But, if there are Objects situated on the inclined Plane, or, if the shape or figure of the Plane, itself, is to be described; whatever can be seen of such Objects (whether Tops or Bottoms it matters not) they may, and can be represented, truly and exactly, as they appear, by the infallible Rules of Perspective; and that, on the same invariable Principles, as the most common and ordinary Cases, whatever, are subject to.

13. To illustrate what I have advanced, by a simple geometrical Scheme, will not be very difficult; which may be considered as a vertical Section through the whole. Each Plane is, therefore, represented by a Right Line, making the true Angle of the Inclination of the Planes (as I shall call them) with each other.

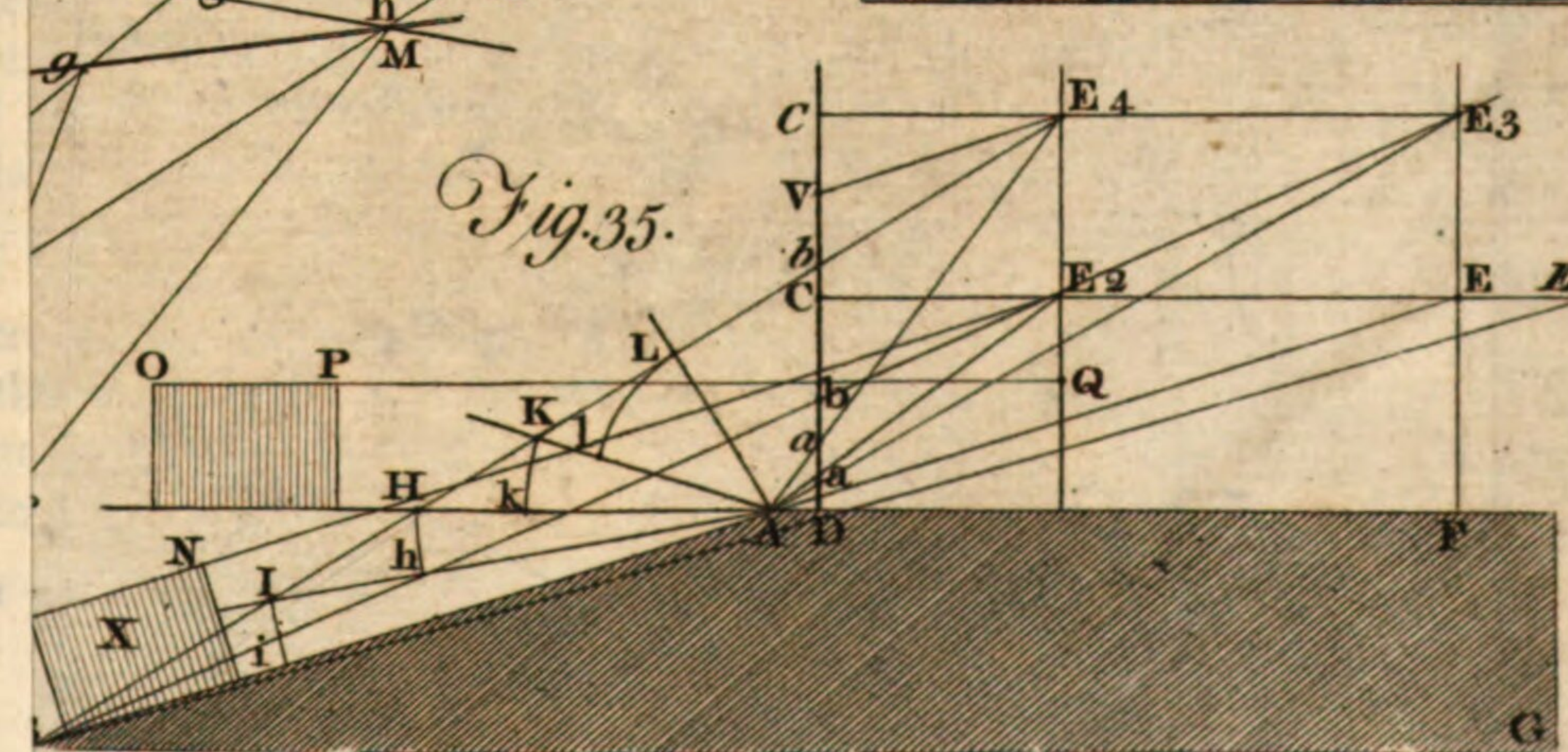
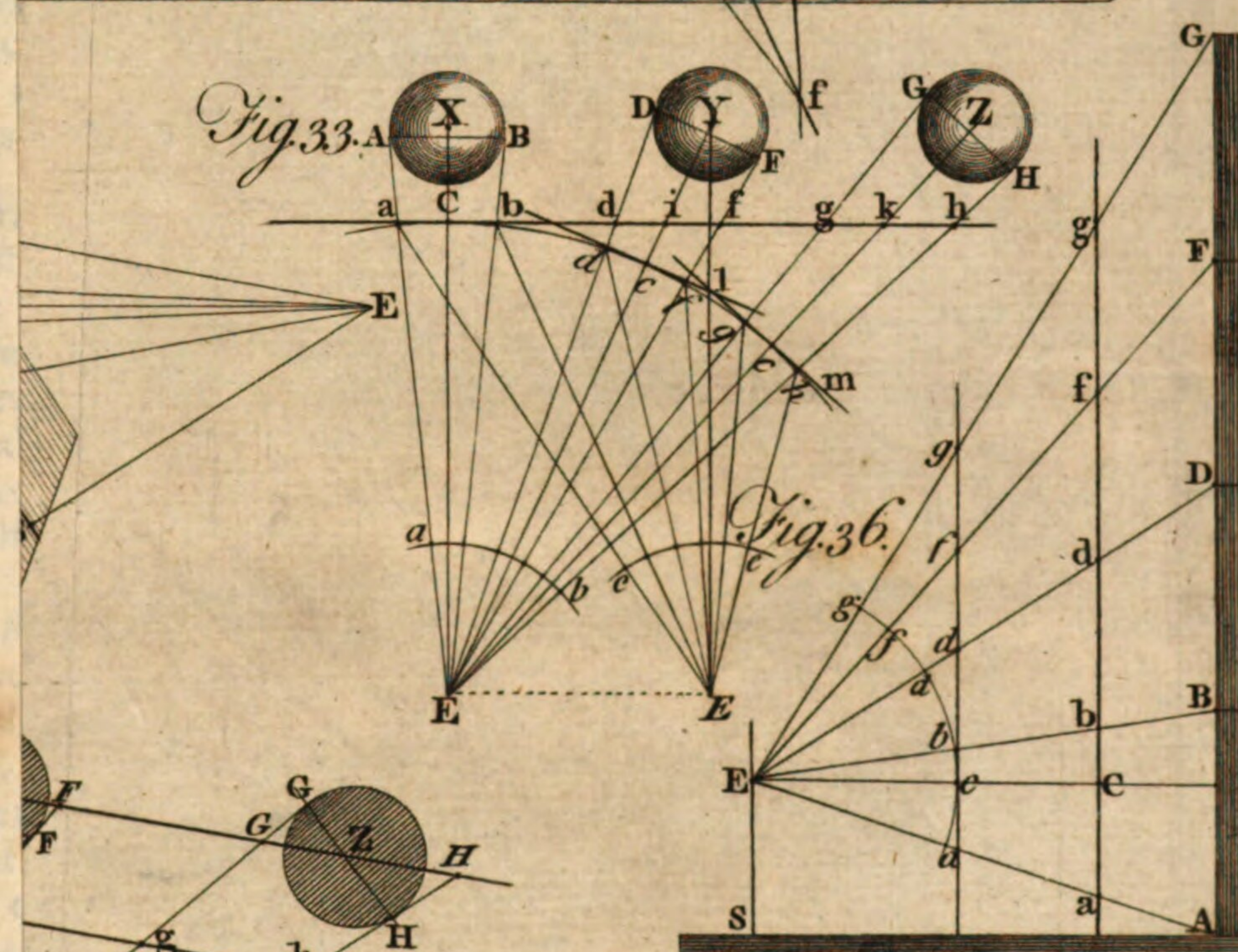
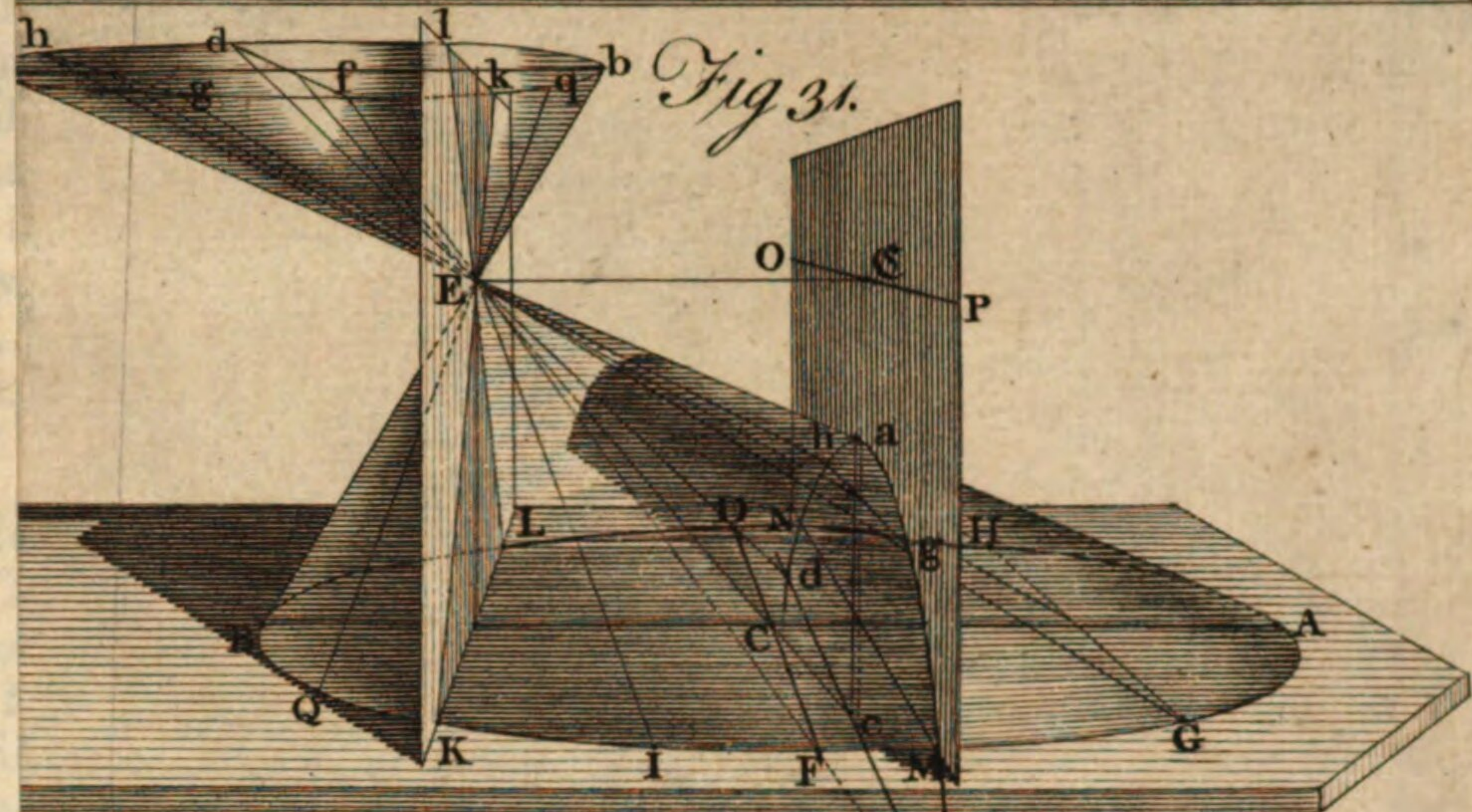
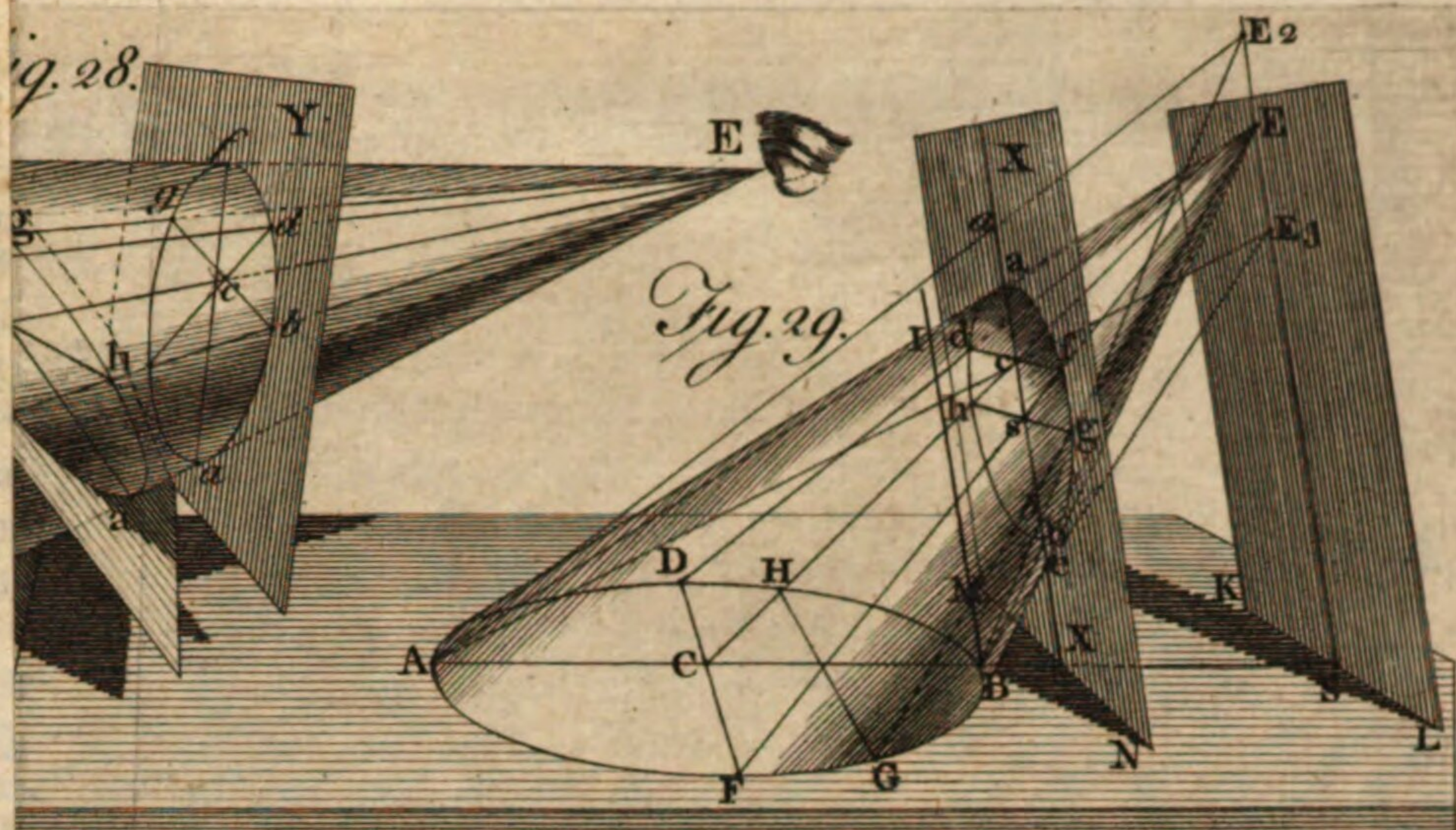
Fig. 35.

Let AF represent the Plane of the Horizon, and AB a Descent, as a slope Bank, or any other Declivity; making the Angle ABG with the Horizon. Let CD be a Section of the Picture, E the place of the Eye, and EF its Altitude above the Horizon, at the Distance EC from the Picture, whose Center is at C.

† See Cor. 2.
Theo. 3.

Now, if the Eye, at E, be so situated, that a continuation of the inclined Plane would pass through the Eye, as BAE, it is evident that the Plane, AB, from that Station, is totally lost to sight; its whole Representation being the Line of its Intersection with the Picture†. Consequently, if the Eye be moved further back, as at E, its appearance, or place on the Picture, would descend; which cannot be, unless the Plane be considered simply, a Plane, without substance, and seen on the under side; its apparent width from that Station is a D; but if the Eye be removed, nearer to the Picture, in a horizontal Direction (or in any direction above BAE) the Representation of the Plane rises on the Picture. At E², its width on the Picture is a b, as the Visual Rays, E²A, E²B, evinces.

If



If the Eye be moved back again, in the direction BE^2 , to E^3 , it is plain that; b , the apparent height of B , remains the same, wherever the Eye is situated in that Line; but the representative width, $a b$, of AB , will be increased, towards D , as it recedes, if the Picture be at any distance from the descending Plane. Suppose the Eye brought forward again to E^4 ; the representation of the Slope AB from that Station is $a b$; and, if the Inclined Plane was continued indefinitely, $a V$ is its whole indefinite Representation; for, $E^4 V$, parallel to AB , determines the distance of its Vanishing Line, from its Intersection, equal $a V$.

14. I presume, this is intelligible and clear, hitherto. I will, next, shew that 'tis impossible for the Eye to judge, merely from the width of its Representation on the Picture, whether the Plane be descending or ascending, or perfectly on a level.

From the situation of the Eye at E^4 , the representative width, on the Picture, of the Slope, AB , is $a b$; whereas, if the Plane was more inclined to the Horizon, i. e. if the Descent was more gradual, as AI , it would represent a less space; if it was horizontal, the same $a b$ represents the length AH , only; but, if the Plane ascended from the Picture, as AK , it still represents a shorter length (AK) on that Plane; the Arks Ii , Hh , &c. shew how much each is shorter than the other; and AL , making right Angles, BLA , $AL E^4$, with the Visual Ray $E^4 B$ is the shortest length, from the Point A , that can be represented, by $a b$, from that Station, situation, and position of the Picture.

15. Now, if any Object, as X , be situated on the Inclination AB ; it is evident, if the continuation of the Plane of its Top, MN , pass above or through the Eye, at E^2 , it cannot be seen from that Point; whereas, if the same, or an equal and similar Object was situated on the Horizontal Plane AH , the top, OP , may be seen from that Station, notwithstanding the Object is more elevated; because, a continuation of the Plane of the Top, OPQ , falls below the Eye, at E^2 .

The figure of the inclined Plane, itself, or the figure of any Object situated upon it, is described, perspectively, in the same manner, and on the same Principles as on a horizontal Plane; which is exemplified in the practical part of this Work:

16. In the last place, I shall demonstrate, that the representations of Objects, which are elevated perpendicularly, above the Horizon, have the same proportion*, on a vertical Picture, as those of the same Magnitude, situated on or near the Horizon; the Object being parallel to the Picture.

It is a mistaken notion which several Persons entertain, that the parts of a Building, which are elevated high above the Horizon, appear to diminish in a greater Ratio than those which are extended horizontally; such an opinion may be easily refuted. If the second Part of the 10th Theorem be well considered, it is sufficient refutation.

Let AG be supposed a high Obelisk, and AB , BD , &c. several equal Divisions thereon. Let ES be a Spectator, E the Eye, and ag , or ag , a Section of the Picture; which, being vertical, is parallel to the Object AG . Fig. 36.

Now, if the Visual Rays EA , EB , &c. be drawn, they will cut the Picture in a , b , d , &c. then is fg , the representation of FG , equal to $a b$, the representation of AB , or to $b d$, the representation of BD †.

For, since the parts AB , BD , &c. of the Original Object, AG , are equal, the representations of them, on the Picture, being parallel to the Object, are also equal.

But, AB is an Object, direct before the Eye, at E , on the Horizon AS ; and, FG is one of equal length, elevated greatly above it; therefore, the Representations of equal Objects at an equal Distance from the Picture, and parallel to the Picture, are equal. Q. E. D.

The same Object may be considered as a Building, extended horizontally, and AEG a horizontal Plane, in which is the Eye, and also the Visual Rays EA , EB , &c. ag , or ag , is a Section of the Picture, as before. The Intersections of the Visual Rays with the Picture, it is evident, are the same.

* What I would signify by the proportion of Objects, in this place, is, simply, length and breadth.

17. There is yet another Point of controversy I have some times been entertained with; which is, that, when we stand, opposite the middle, near a long Building, or range of Buildings in a Right Line, the horizontal Lines, in the Cornice, &c. seem to decline towards either end, yet make no Angle; and therefore, they imagine that the Representations of those Lines, in such Case, will be curved. What a poor Idea must a Person have of Perspective, who advances and is really prepossessed of such an Opinion.

† Art. 3.
of a Plane.
‡ 1. 7. El.

I shall say very little on this Point, because, the first Theorem is full and perfect Demonstration, that the Representation (on the Picture) of every Right Line, is a Right Line; and, it is so if extended infinitely. Because, a Plane may be supposed to pass through that Line and the Eye; and, the Intersection of this imaginary Plane, with the Picture, is the indefinite Representation of every Line it passes through; for the whole Plane is lost to sight, the Eye being in a continuation of it†. Consequently, since the Picture is a Plane, the Line in which it cuts the Picture is a Right Line‡; and it is the whole Representation of the Plane, and of every Line in the Plane. Therefore, the Representation of every Right Line is a Right Line.

18. The truth, of which, any Person may soon be convinced of, by applying a perfectly straight Ruler, before his Eye, parallel, or otherwise, to a Right Line, in an Object, of any length, and imagine the edge of the Ruler to cut the Picture, which is a Plane; then certainly, if the Ruler coincides with the Original Line, from one end to the other (which it undoubtedly will) the Right Line, in which it cuts the Picture, is the Representation of the Original Line.

Or, if a transparent Plane be placed between the Eye and the Object, and any Right Line, in the Object, traced on it, exactly, whilst the Eye remains fixed in a Point; the Line, so described, will be a Right Line.

Those Persons never consider (but 'tis plain they are not furnished with the means) that the Picture, being placed in the true Point of View (consequently at its proper Distance) will appear the same as the Original; for the Ratio of the Parts is always in proportion to the Distance. Consequently, every part of the Picture, being seen under the same Angle as the Original, will have the same Appearance, in every respect; and consequently, the Right Lines, on it, will appear to decline either way, or both ways, the same as in the Object.

I have now, I hope, fully refuted those truly ridiculous and absurd Opinions, of Perspective, which many have imbibed, and are not easily divested of; they, rather, obstinately persist in them, without being able to give a solid reason for their Opinions, and are determined not to give up their prejudices, at any rate, right or wrong. What strange infatuation must possess that Person, who, having no argument of weight, to support his false notions of Things, has recourse only to sophistry; and, because he cannot come at sterling truth, himself, imagines there is no such thing to be found. In Points of natural Philosophy, &c. where no certain criterion can be obtained, to fix our assent, it is no wonder that we meet with so many, widely different, Opinions; and, though not one argument advanced has the least foundation in Reason, 'tis amazing with what eagerness and warmth each assailant attacks his opponent. But, in Sciences, purely mathematical, all must agree; when truth appears, there is no resistance can be made; we cannot withhold our assent, so prevalent is her influence.

To such as are open to conviction, and are desirous of coming at truth, I think I have said enough for their conviction, on the Points debated; but, if they are not, all that can be said is to no purpose, 'tis waste of time and words. I shall, therefore, leave them to enjoy their Opinions, and please themselves with their great Sagacity; and proceed to lay down certain and infallible Rules for the Practice of Perspective, deduced from a perfect and well founded Theory; which, if truly followed, and proper attention be given to the Lessons, contained in the Introduction, will most certainly produce Harmony and true Effect, of any regular Object, so far as comes within the province of linear Perspective.

BOOK

B O O K III.

Of the Practice of PERSPECTIVE.

S E C T I O N I.

An INTRODUCTORY PREFACE.

I Come, now, to the practical and, in that, the useful part of Perspective; to which, the foregoing Book is as a Key or Introduction, only, but a very necessary Introduction; insomuch, that, without the knowledge inculcated by it, we should proceed in ignorance and uncertainty. Nevertheless, those Persons who have not studied Geometry, and have not, now, perhaps, either leisure or inclination to study it (though, in my Treatise of Geometry, they will find it neither so abstruse, tedious, or dry a Study, as many look on it to be, having treated that most useful branch of Science in a more familiar and intelligible manner, than has been done heretofore) I say, that, without a sufficient fund of Geometry, to go through the Demonstrations, if they will but treasure up, in memory, the Theorems and Corollaries, and take all for granted (as they may depend on the truths contained in them) they will find the great advantage of it, in Practice.

Every branch of Science is in two parts, viz. theoretic and practical. Theory teaches the knowledge of all that is necessary for Practice, in Speculation; the other applies that Knowledge to real use. It is necessary, first, to know how, before we can perform any thing; but notwithstanding, many Persons may be said to know Perspective (as a mathematical Science) yet know not how to apply it to Practice, with success. So, every Art, dependant on Science, may be acquired without the Theory of it, by custom or habit; as in mechanic Trades, derived from Geometry and Mechanics; all which, require time and application, to become familiar to us. So likewise, Perspective may be practiced, without being said, properly, that we understand it; seeing, we may not be able to give a sufficient or satisfactory reason for the effects of it, in any instance. And, being well versed in the Theory, we shall nevertheless find, that it will require time and assiduity to apply it, in all Cases that may occur, in Practice, although founded on the same invariable Principles, without familiar Lessons, in every Case, being given. But we shall, certainly, with the assistance of Theory, be able to comprehend, and to understand the various methods of applying the Rules, better than without it; as very little reflection, when we are at a loss, will set us right again, and enforce the universality of its Principles.

It is not, to be wondered at, that the best of Treatises on Perspective has been the least understood; viz. that, by Dr. Brook Taylor; because it is very obscure. I call it the best, on account of his general Principles, not from its real utility to Artists, in respect of practicing from its Rules. It can scarce be said that Perspective existed before; it certainly was not understood, as a Science. How insipid and imperfect are all the Books on the Subject before his, except Gravesande's, which seems to touch on the same Principles, but is far short of being a perfect System.

There is, in that small Treatise, Rules sufficient, in almost all Cases, for Plane Objects; but, various Examples requiring various ways of applying them, he has not made it so useful as it would have been, had he, instead of referring to former Problems, shewn how to apply it there. As, in Example 3d, P. 24, Book the first, Fig. 21. We are told to make CB represent a Line equal to that which is
repre-

represented by CA (by Prop. 15.) Now, I question that one in fifty (who understands the whole) ever saw the Affinity between the two Examples; the different situations of the Lines makes it appear a very different Operation; and so it really is, though built on the same foundation.

Respecting Plane Objects, only, Perspective is soon acquired; knowing how to delineate Figures in horizontal Planes, it is the same in any other; having found their Vanishing Lines, with their Centers and Distances; which I shall first shew, in Practice (as in Theory) how to find, in all useful Cases whatever. But, without the embellishments of Mouldings and other architectural Ornaments, in Buildings, &c. all the rest would be to little purpose. That Treatise comprehends only Perspective in Plano; but I shall, in this Book, shew how to apply it in every necessary Case that can be devised; and doubt not, to render it, by that means, the most useful work, of the kind, yet published in any Language, that we know of.

Brook Taylor has, indeed, to his immortal Fame (in Perspective) furnished us with new and extensive Principles; but his Work, at best, is imperfect, and greatly deficient. His Theory is too concise, and is not regularly digested. It may perhaps, by some, be objected, that I have made too much of the Theory. I must freely own, that the length of it has exceeded my own design and expectation; and yet, I have greatly abridged my first settled Plan. I could say much more on it, but know not where to curtail it, except in the Examples, given for Illustration rather than Demonstration; and which, I am persuaded, will not be found unnecessary, to some, or trifling to any. One Example, to some Persons, would be sufficient; to others there can scarce be too many, so they are various, and not a repetition of the former. I shall be guilty of the same fault (if it be a fault) in Practice; I had rather say too much than not say enough, yet I would not be tedious; because, all that can be said, to some, will be too little, or rather too much, seeing it will be all to no purpose. To steer the middle course is a difficulty not easily obviated; but, it is my fixed design to aim at it; others must determine how I have succeeded.

It is the opinion of many Artists, that the whole of useful Perspective may be comprised in a little Compass; that nothing is a greater discouragement to the study of it, than to see a voluminous Work on the Subject. 'Tis certain, that the Principles, on which the Theory of it is founded, are contained in a very small Compass; and, I would recommend Brook Taylor's Epitome for that very reason, which contains *multum in parvo*. Yet, notwithstanding that valuable Treatise has been so long published, it is, at this time, but little known, and less understood; which is a sufficient reason, with me, to suppose that he has not said enough on the Subject. The elaborate Work of Mr. Hamilton is spun out to an immoderate length; yet to as little use as the other. 'Tis my Design to comprise the whole of useful Perspective in this Book. Neither of these Authors, I am persuaded, had either taught or practised the Art of delineating; and consequently, they were not qualified for treating it in an easy and familiar manner; one great requisite in a Work of this kind. I have had experience in both, and am well convinced, that, to make it useful, it cannot be comprised in so little compass as many imagine; that it requires frequent repetitions of the same Lessons, somewhat diversified, to familiarize the Rules, in various Cases; without which, not one in twenty will ever be a Proficient. Dr. Taylor truly says, it is much better for the Student to devise Examples, himself, in particular Cases, than to go through those of others; but how few are capable of doing so? nay, I find, many are not able to comprehend them at any rate, nor by any means; and therefore, to make such a Work really useful, variety of Cases and Examples must be devised, for practice and experience.

In Practice, our Author has given some Problems, containing the most elegant and general Rules that can be, notwithstanding they are but seldom practiced; because he has not shewn, properly, how to apply them; that shall be my care to do, where they can be applied usefully. His Diagrams are, in general, very imperfect, and badly devised; 'tis evident he was no practitioner or delineator, himself, even in

in Plane Objects (for he has given us no other). But, he has departed from his own Principles, in Example V. Fig. 19. Part II. having projected the Dodecahedron, in Perspective, by means of the Ichnography and Orthography, as by the old Authors, instead of Vanishing Lines and Vanishing Points; which is much more masterly, elegant, and perfect; and is what the difference chiefly consists in. Such Subjects are indeed of little use, except to familiarize us to find Vanishing Lines in all Positions of Planes to the Picture, and Situations of the Object, or Picture.

Some Persons are so bigoted to the old Authors, that they cannot be reconciled to the new Terms, by Brook Taylor; nor indeed to his new Principles, till they find their Excellence by experience.

It is not indeed to be wondered at. 'Tis not easy to divest any Person of old habits and methods of practice, though ever so absurd; because it is impossible that they can see the difference, at first, and consequently cannot judge of it; but it is surprising that they are not to be prevailed on to try; and if they do, it is with seeming reluctance, and with a fixed resolution to prefer, and persevere in their old Prejudices. I am as much against capricious innovations in Science as any Person; but, if there be an appearance of any Acquisition to it, we ought, candidly and unprejudiced, to make a fair trial of their merits; without which we cannot judge of their Excellence.

In respect of the new Terms given us by Dr. Brook Taylor, such as Intersection of the Picture, Center of the Picture, Vanishing Lines and Points, &c. (together with Directing Plane and Line, which are most essential, in Theory, though but of little use, in Practice) I am of Opinion that no better Terms could possibly be devised; nor any other so expressive of what is meant by them. How narrow, how limited is the Base Line and Horizontal Line (the only Vanishing Line known to the old writers on Perspective) when compared with them. What difference is there, either in Theory or Practice, between the Horizontal Vanishing Line and any other, of Planes perpendicular to the Picture? None at all, seeing, they have the same Center and Distance (Th. 6.) nor indeed in any other, except in finding them; the Practice, in all, is the same, in every respect.

It was impossible for him to make the Principles of Perspective general, but by general Terms; which does not regard any Position either of the Picture or of the Original Plane, since all Planes (simply as Planes) are the same. The Intersection of the Picture includes every Intersection whatever, as well as the Base Line, and they are all of the same use. Vanishing Line is not only general, but is, at the same time, so simple and expressive, that it conveys its utility at once to the Mind.

In Theorem 2. Book I. of Direct Vision, it is proved, that parallel Right Lines, however situated, appear to approach towards each other; and, consequently, if they are produced, infinitely, they will appear to meet, and vanish in a Point at an infinite Distance. So likewise, parallel Planes appear to meet each other, and to vanish in a Right Line, (supposed to be infinite) or, properly, in a Point.

Now, if this Theorem be well considered (together with the foregoing) it will be found to be the very foundation of the new Principles of Perspective. For if a Plane be supposed to pass through the Eye, parallel to any Plane, whatever, or any number of parallel Planes, and being produced, or continued till they are lost to sight, they will all appear to unite, and to meet the Plane passing through the Eye at an infinite Distance.

But if the Eye be in the continuation of a Plane, the whole of that Plane is lost to sight, and appears but a Right Line (Art. 3. of a Plane, P. 43.)

And, the Intersection of two Planes is a Right Line, (Ax. 3.) - 1. 7. El. Wherefore, if a Plane (which may be considered as the Picture) be situated any how; the Line, in which this imaginary Plane would cut the Picture, is that in which the parallel Planes unite, and vanish; consequently it represents an infinite Distance; and consequently, the Line, so produced, is their Vanishing Line; for they cannot, if continued infinitely, go beyond it.

E e

Hence,

Hence, those Planes are, very aptly, said to vanish, they being lost to sight. Therefore, all Parallel Planes have the same Vanishing Line. (Theo. 5.)

Also, if a Right Line be supposed to pass through the Eye parallel to any number of Lines (not parallel to the Picture) they will appear to converge towards that Line, and to meet it in one Point, at an infinite Distance (Theo. 2. Direct Vis.)

Wherefore, if this Right Line from the Eye cuts a Plane, any how situated, it will cut the Plane in a Point only; which represents a Point at any Distance whatever, in that Direction, and consequently, it represents the Point in which the Lines, parallel to it, converge; which is infinite. Therefore, it is their Vanishing Point; for, they are lost to sight before they reach it, seeing it is infinite.

And, since the Line, producing that Point, passes through the Eye, the whole Line is lost to sight, seeing, one Extreme is at the Eye; and the Extremes of Lines are Points. Therefore, the Point, in which it cuts the Picture, is its whole Representation; and consequently, all Lines, parallel to it, tend to that Point.

Now I must own, that I cannot conceive any Term so fit to express that Line, or Point, in which parallel Planes, or Lines, meet each other, as Vanishing Line, and Vanishing Point; because they are truly said to vanish in them. For the same reason, perhaps, Mr. Noble, the last writer on Perspective, has made use of the Terms Entering Line, and Entering Point; seeing that, the Plane, or Line, begins at the one and vanishes in the other. Had this Author been the inventor of those Principles, I should not have found fault with the Names he had given them; but, since there were Names already given, by the Author, which are more significant, I must blame even an attempt to alter them; because, a multiplicity of Names, for the same thing, occasions a confusion of Ideas, in the Mind, of their significance and use; and cannot possibly be of advantage to the Science.

In the process of this Book, after some necessary observations, on the Proportion of the Picture, the Height and Distance of the Eye, &c. in the third Section, I shall, first, shew how to determine on the Position of the Picture, in respect of the Object and the Eye, the Station being previously determined; then, how to prepare the Picture, for Practice, according to the Principles contained in this Theory.

The Picture being prepared, the Situation and Distance of the Object, and the Position of the Picture being determined, the following Problems, in this Section, shew how to find the Intersections and Vanishing Lines of Planes, in all Positions to the Picture, if they are not parallel to it (for all such have no Vanishing Line. Theo. 2.) with their Centers and Distances. Then, to fix the Vanishing Points of certain Lines in those Planes, and determine their Distances; by which, the Lines, vanishing in them, are proportioned.

The Position, Situation, and Distance of the Picture (in respect of the Object and the Eye) being determined, the Original Lines, in the Objects, are produced (if necessary, and not parallel to the Picture) to their Intersecting Points; which are always found in the Intersection of the Plane they are in (Theo. 11.) or being much inclined to the Picture they do not, perhaps, fall within the compass of the Picture; then, other expedients are used, to find the Representation of some principal Point in the Line, from which Point, the indefinite Representation is drawn (Theo. 12.) And lastly, the finite Parts, which represent certain portions of Lines in the Original Object, are determined (by Theorem 13th) by which means, the Object is compleated; proceeding from one Plane, or Face of the Object, to another; drawing all the Figures, in each, by means of their respective Vanishing Lines. Each two adjoining Faces, having one Line common to both, the Vanishing Point, of that Line, is in both Vanishing Lines (Theo. 11.) consequently, it is in their common Intersection (Cor. 2. Th. 8.) by the help of which, the Vanishing Lines of contiguous Faces are determined.

In

In Section 4th; I shall briefly illustrate all the remaining, practical Problems in Brook Taylor's Essay, respecting the proportioning of Right Lines, perspectively, and shew their great and extensive utility; each of which, founded on the most solid and permanent Principles, is of immense value. For, without knowing the whole of Perspective, or practicing its Rules, rigidly, an Artist, who is accustomed to sketch, by sight, whatever he sees before him, with seeming accuracy, may, by these Problems, rectify any errors, in right lined, or circular, Plane Objects, from the known proportion of one part to another; the affinity of the Planes and Lines to, each other, being known, and the Ratio of one Part to another; which, may frequently be obtained, when the true measures of those Parts can not, by reason of sundry impediments.

These Problems contain all the Rules necessary for Practice. They may be compared to the five fundamental Rules in Arithmetic, by which all others are worked; and, a Person might, with as much propriety, imagine that he had given Arithmetic enough, for every Occasion, in the five Rules, as Brook Taylor had of Perspective, in his first Essay; whereas, the Rules, he has there given, are no more than the Elements of practical Perspective.

This Section contains, also, various Expedients; viz. for finding or determining Vanishing Points, when they fall beyond the limits of the Picture, geometrically and arithmetically, i. e. to determine their Distance from the Center of the Vanishing Line and from the Eye, both which are necessary to be known; how to draw Lines to a Vanishing Point which is not on the Picture, with several others.

In Section 5th, those Rules are applied to real use, in delineating all kinds of Plane Figures; and, on Planes in various Positions. First, by means of the Figure being geometrically drawn, in the Original Plane. Secondly, without it, by their known Proportions, their position to the Picture, and the properties of the Figure, being regular.

In the 6th Section, I shall, from Plane Figures, proceed to Solids, composed of Planes, of various Figures; and in various Positions.

In the 7th, I shall apply them to streight Mouldings, composed of Planes and cylindrical Surfaces, in Cornices, Entablatures, &c.

Section the 8th treats of curve lined Objects, in general.

The 9th shews how to apply the whole to compound Objects, in regular pieces of Architecture, and Buildings of various kinds.

The 10th is for internal Views, and horizontal Pictures, Ceiling Pieces, &c.

The 11th is adapted for the particular Professions of Cabinet-makers, Coach-makers, &c. and for Machines, in general.

The 12th, and last, is on inclined Pictures and Planes, in general; and, applied to Fortification, or military Architecture.

N. B. A Scale of equal Parts is always adapted, or determined on, of the Proportion we intend to delineate the Objects, on the Picture.

The methods of making Scales, for various purposes, are given in the Appendix to my Treatise of Geometry.

SECTION

S E C T I O N II.

A preparatory and elementary INTRODUCTION, to the PRACTICE of PERSPECTIVE.

AS this Book is intended to be a compleat practical Treatise, I shall treat it in such a manner (in this Section) as if no Theory, or Elements, had been given. For which reason, I shall define a few more Terms, which are suited to Practice only; as there are several Terms in the theoretic list which may be omitted here; and, there are also, in Practice, several which are not useful, in Theory. I shall deduce from the Definitions such useful Lessons, which, if carefully attended to, will contain all the necessary Theory for a Practitioner.

PERSPECTIVE, is the Art of delineating the true Representations of Objects, on a Plane Surface, by geometrical Rules; according to the Position, and Distance of the Objects, in respect of the Picture and of the Eye. (See the Apparatus.)

The **PERSPECTIVE REPRESENTATION** of an **OBJECT**, is the Section of the Pyramid of Rays, **AEI**, by a Plane, in any Position; which, will be the Subject of the following Sheets of this Third Book. For, the Picture of every Object, truly delineated in Perspective, is supposed to be so situated, in respect of the Object and the Eye, that, if Visual Rays, or Threads, i. e. if Right Lines were drawn from each Angle, or other Point in the Object, to the Eye, they would pass through the corresponding Points in the Representation, on the Picture.

As **EA**, **EB**, **EF**, &c. cut the Pictures in *a*, *b*, *f*; *a*, *b*, *f*, &c. which are, therefore, the Perspective Representations, of the Points, **A**, **B**, **F**, &c. on each Picture.

It is evident, that the Perspective Representation of an Object is nothing more than the Figure projected on a Plane, by its Intersection with the Visual Rays from the Eye to the Object; wherefore, the whole business, of practical Perspective, is to find the true Figure of the Section of the Rays, in all Positions, whatever, of the Picture (which is considered as the intersecting Plane) and in every situation of the Object, or of the Eye.

In order to which, it is necessary to reconsider, well, the construction of the elementary Planes; as in Plate VI. or, to make them more familiar, I have given another, which is better suited for Practice; they are the foundation of the whole, and the origin of all the Lines and Points used in Practice. Also the general Introduction to this Work should be attentively perused, and tolerably well understood, by every one who would be a Proficient in the Practice of Perspective.

Fig. 15.

Let **BFIL** be an Original Object, representing a Building, and, **ES** a Spectator, viewing that Object, from the Point of View **E** (the Eye.)

It is manifest, that whilst the Eye remains fixed, in that Point, the Object cannot vary in its Appearance. But, it is also obvious and demonstrable, that every different Section of the Pyramid of Rays, by a Plane in different Positions, will exhibit a different Picture; so very different, indeed, they may be, that they can scarcely be supposed to be Representations of the same Object, much less from the same Point of View and Position of the Object, when viewed direct.

Compare the Pictures, **MNOP** and **OP**; how different is the Image of the same Object, to each other. The one, on **MNOP**, has the Representation, *bgfdc*, of the end of the Building, **BFC**, similar to the Original, in every respect; the Representation, *abdc*, of the Front, **AHDC**, is distorted, and drag'd out to a preposterous length, when the Eye is opposite to it; whilst the other Picture exhibits a pleasing and natural Appearance, in almost any Point of View, but most so in the true one. Yet, both Pictures affect the Eye alike, in the true Point of View, and appear the same as the Original Object, itself; each Line, Plane,
or

or Figure (it is evident) being seen under the same Optic Angle as in the Object. Consequently, the Picture being a true Perspective Representation of the Original, if it had likewise the same degree of Colour, Light and Shade, it would not be possible for the Eye, at E, to distinguish whether the Image (*aifc*, or *aifc*) delineated on a Plane, or the Object itself (AIFC) was presented to view.

Having, thus clearly, explained what Perspective is, I shall next define all the practical Terms, by means of which, the whole process is performed, and the Representations effected.

Let the Plane AIKB (which may be supposed the Picture) be raised up into a vertical Position, i. e. perpendicular to the Plane it is fixed to; which is the most natural, most general and convenient Position.

Also, raise up the Plane GKI $\bar{H}$, parallel to the Picture. This Plane is called; the Directing Plane (Def. 4.) and is very useful, in Theory. In it, the Eye is always supposed to be, as at E; and if the Plane NIKL be turned down, parallel to ABGH, the Line IK meeting IK, in the Directing Plane; then, EC is the Distance of the Eye from the Picture (equal FD); and EF, (equal CD) is its height above the Plane ABGH, on which, the Spectator (EF) is supposed to stand. Therefore, at whatever Distance the Eye is from the Picture (as EC) a Plane GKI $\bar{H}$ is supposed to pass through the Eye, parallel to the Picture.

The Plane V being turned up, perpendicular to the Picture, is considered as a part of the prime or chief Vertical Plane; and, NIKL is called the Horizontal Plane; both which are supposed to pass through the Eye, at E.

N. B. This Construction of the elementary Planes, so essential in Theory, is, also, very necessary to be well considered by every Practitioner, who may not have an inclination to go through the Theory; he will, most certainly, find his account in it.

DEFINITIONS.

DEF. A. The GEOMETRICAL or GROUND PLANE, is that Plane on which an Original Object, intended to be delineated, is seated.

As GHZZ; on which the Plans, ACDF and XYZ (supposed to be the Seats of some Objects) are geometrically drawn, which are to be represented on the Picture, AIKB.

On this Plane is always drawn, or supposed to be drawn, the Figures of the Seats or Plans of Objects situated on it, in their true geometrical Proportion, according as they are situated, in respect of each other and of the Picture; and they are (in common Perspective) always understood to be beyond the Picture.

In the Apparatus, the Plane ZSZ is the Ground Plane, representing the real Ground, on which the Object, BFIL, stands. The Rectangle ABCL is its Plan, or Seat on the Ground Plane.

Note. If the Object stands on a Floor or Table, &c. it is considered as the Ground Plane.

DEF. B. The GROUND LINE, or BASE LINE, is a Right Line on the Picture, drawn parallel to its Top and Bottom, i. e. parallel to the Horizon.

As AB, Fig. 37. No. 1 and 2. (See Intersection. Def. 7.)

The Plane AIKB, being erected, represents the Picture, and ABZZ, being horizontal, is considered as the Ground Plane. Therefore, the Line AB is the Intersection of the Picture with the Ground Plane. And, since all Objects which are to be represented, on the Picture, are supposed to be beyond it, they must necessarily appear above the Line of Intersection; for which reason, it is, very properly, called the Ground Line.

Note. On the Ground Line is applied all the measures, geometrically, of all Figures (as Plans, &c.) of Objects on the Ground Plane, to be delineated; and frequently, for other horizontal Planes, whose Intersection with the Picture is not given or drawn.

N. B. Of the same use is the Intersection of any other Original Plane with the Picture, viz. for proportioning Lines and Figures drawn on that Plane.

DEF. C. The HORIZONTAL LINE, is a Right Line drawn parallel to and above the Ground Line; as ML. (See Vanishing Line Def. 8.)

F f

The

Pl. VIII.
Fig. 37.

Pl. VIII.

The Horizontal Line is called so by way of eminence, or for distinction from all other horizontal Lines, being the first, or principal Vanishing Line; which, from its fixed and determined Position and Distance, determines and governs all other Vanishing Lines, whatever, except the Vertical; which is determinable without it.

Fig. 37.

N. B. Its Distance from the Ground Line is always equal to the height of the Eye from the Ground, being considered as a Plane, on which the Object, to be delineated, is seated. So that, whether we be sitting, standing, or elevated, the height of the Eye, from the Ground Plane, being determined, and AE , or DC , being made equal to it (by the Scale of Proportion) NL drawn through that Point, parallel to AB , is the Horizontal Line; or Vanishing Line of horizontal Planes.

Note. It is supposed (in Theory) to be produced by a horizontal Plane ($NIKL$) passing through the Eye and cutting the Picture, in NL , their mutual Intersection.

DEF. D. The VERTICAL LINE, is a Right Line drawn at right angles with the Horizontal and Ground Line; cutting the Picture into two equal Parts, perpendicularly. As ED . (See Defn. 11. Th.)

DEF. E. CENTER of the PICTURE, or POINT of VIEW, is the Point C , in which the Horizontal and Vertical Lines cut each other. (See Def. 16 and 17.)

N. B. The real Point of View is the place of the Eye, where it ought to be fixed when viewing a perspective Picture. The Point C , on the Picture, opposite to it, where a Perpendicular from the Eye would cut the Picture, is, therefore, its Center; and is, generally, understood to be the Point of Sight; i. e. to which the Eye must be opposite.

Hence, if the Center of the Picture, C , be first determined (as it frequently is) then a Right Line drawn through C , parallel to the Horizon, as LM , is the Horizontal Line; and, another Line, drawn through C , perpendicular to it, as ED , is the Vertical Line.

DEF. F. PARALLEL of the EYE.

If EC be taken, in the Vertical Line, equal to the Distance of the Picture; and, through the Point E (which is considered as the Eye) if a Right Line be drawn, parallel to the Horizontal Line, as IK , it is called the Parallel of the Eye, of horizontal Planes. (See Def. 9. Th.)

DEF. G. VANISHING LINE.

The Vanishing Line, of any Original Plane, is a Right Line on the Picture, supposed to be produced by an imaginary Plane passing through the Eye, or Point of View, parallel to the Original Plane; the Line, in which such a Plane would cut the Picture, is the Vanishing Line of that Original Plane.

COR. Hence, the Horizontal Line is the Vanishing Line of the Ground Plane, and all other horizontal Planes.

For, it is produced by a horizontal Plane ($NIKL$) passing through the Eye, and cutting the Picture.

† Theo. 5. COR. 2. And hence, all Planes, which are parallel between themselves, have the same Vanishing Line†.

For, there can be but one Plane passing through the Eye parallel to them all; and since it can produce but one Line on the Picture, by its intersection with it, that Line is, consequently, the Vanishing Line of them all.

‡ Theo. 3. N. B. The Vanishing Line, and the Parallel of the Eye, of any Original Plane, are parallel to the Intersection of that Plane with the Picture‡.
Therefore, LM , the Horizontal Line, and IK , the Parallel of the Eye, of horizontal Planes, are both parallel to AB , the Ground Line; which is the Intersection of the Ground Plane, with the Picture.

§ Theo. 2. N. B. 2. Original Planes which are parallel to the Picture have no Vanishing Line, nor Intersection§.

DEF. H. VISUAL RAY, is a Right Line drawn from the Eye to any Point in an Original Object.

Let the Picture, $AIKB$, be turned up into a vertical Position; and, let the Plane W be turned over, till C coincides with the Center of the Picture; then will E coincide with the Eye, or Point of View, E , if † Def. 4. the Directing Plane, GEH † be turned up parallel to the Picture.

Let

Let the Plane AFDC, on the other Side of the Picture, be also turned over, till it falls into the same Plane with W. Then, the Right Lines EA, EB, EC, are Visual Rays from the Eye, E, to the Original Points, A, B, and C, on the other side of the Picture; which, by their Intersections with the Picture, gives the Representations a, b, and c, of the Original Points, A, B, and C, on the Picture.

Fig. 37.

See the Apparatus; in which, the Threads EA, EB, EF, EG, &c. are Visual Rays; producing, by their Intersections with the Picture, the Representations, a, b, g; and a, b, g, &c. of the Original Points A, B, G, &c. in the Original Object.

PM and PM are the Ground Lines of those Pictures; VY, and CX are the Horizontal Lines; and, CL, and OP are the Vertical Lines. C, their Intersection, is the Center, or Point of View of each Picture; for, the Eye, considered as a Point, is opposite to either.

DEF. I. DISTANCE of the PICTURE; it is the length of the Perpendicular, or the shortest Line that can be drawn from the Eye of a Spectator, in the true Point of View, to the Picture; or the Distance between the Eye and the Center of the Picture. As EC. (See Def. 15 and 18.)

DEF. K. INTERSECTING POINT, of an Original Line, is that, in which any Original Line (being produced) would cut the Picture.

B, P, and S are the intersecting Points of XY, ZY, and ZX of the Three Sides of the Triangle XYZ.

In the Apparatus, F, G, and H, are the Intersecting Points of the Original Lines, IF, HG, and FG.

N. B. The Intersecting Point, of every Line, is in the Intersection of the Plane the Line is in, with the Picture (Theo. 11.) Therefore, FGH, drawn through the Intersecting Points F, G, and H, is the Intersection of the Plane FGH. Also, BG, drawn through the intersecting Points, B and G, of the Lines AB and HG, is the Intersection of the Plane ABGH.

DEF. L. VANISHING POINT, of an Original Line, is that Point, on the Picture, in which, a Right Line, from the Eye or Point of View, parallel to any Original Line, would cut the Picture.

N, O, and L are the Vanishing Points of the three sides of the Triangle XYZ. C is the Vanishing Point of the Lines ABC and FD; and, M and L of the Diagonals AE, BF, &c.

In the Apparatus, V is the Vanishing Point of all the Lines AB, GH, and FI; Y is the Vanishing Point of BC, and GD, &c. and W, of the Lines GF and HI; on the Picture MN OP.

Fig. 154

The Vanishing Point of FD is out of the Picture, below the Ground Line.

In the Picture MNOP, C, its Center, is the only Vanishing Point; viz. of the Lines AB, GH, &c. to which EC is parallel. For they are perpendicular to that Picture.

All the other Lines in the Original Object, in the Plane BFC, are parallel to that Picture; and therefore, they have no Vanishing Point †.

† Cor. to Theo. 2.

Also, BG, AH, &c. being parallel to both Pictures, have no Vanishing Point, on either.

N. B. The Vanishing Point, of every Line, is in the Vanishing Line of the Plane it is in. (Th. 11.)

Therefore, a Right Line drawn through V and W, the Vanishing Points of IF and HG, HI and GF, is the Vanishing Line of the Plane FGH.

Also, RW, drawn through the Vanishing Points, Y and W, is the Vanishing Line of the Plane BFC; in which, the Lines BC, or GD, and GF are situated.

COR. All Lines which are parallel amongst themselves have the same Vanishing Point ‡; except they are parallel to the Picture; in which Case they have no Vanishing Point (Cor. to Theo. 2.)

‡ Theo. 5. Cor. 1.

For, EV, producing the Vanishing Points, C and V, on both Pictures, being parallel to AB, is consequently parallel to GH, FI, &c. §. and since it can produce but one Point on each Picture, that Point is, consequently, the Vanishing Point of them all.

§ 4. 7. El.

Also, EW, being parallel to FG and HI, produces their Vanishing Point, W.

COR. 2. Hence, the Center of the Picture is the Vanishing Point of all Lines which are perpendicular to the Picture.

For EC, the Direct Radial, produces the Center of the Picture, (Def. 17.) and, because it is perpendicular to the Picture, it is parallel to all Lines that are perpendicular to the Picture, and consequently it produces their Vanishing Point; by this Definition.

DEF.

DEF. M. STATION POINT is at the foot of the Spectator ; or, it is that Point, in which a perpendicular from the Eye would cut the Ground Plane.

Fig. 37.

If the Directing Plane, GHIK, be turned up, on GH the Directing Line, perpendicular to the Ground Plane ; E being the Eye, EF perpendicular to GH, cuts it in F, the Station Point ; and EF is the height of the Eye above the Ground Plane.

† Def. 5.

DEF. N. STATION LINE, is a Right Line drawn from the Station Point, in the Ground Plane, perpendicular to the Ground Line ; or, it is the Intersection of the Vertical Plane†, with the Ground Plane. As FD, produced.

In the Apparatus, S is the Station Point, and SB the Station Line, of the Picture MNOP ; and SP is the Station Line of the Picture MNOP.

S E C T I O N III.

Containing some preliminary observations, concerning the Proportion and Position of the Picture ; of the Height and Distance of the Eye, &c. 2ndly, How to prepare the Picture, for Practice. 3dly, How to find Vanishing Lines, in all common Cases ; and to fix the Vanishing Points, of Lines in all Positions, in respect of each other and of the Picture.

IT may appear somewhat strange, and unaccountable to many, of what use are all the imaginary and elementary Planes in delineating Objects ; or how so many Planes, cutting each other (at right angles, or otherwise) can possibly be applied, in Practice ; seeing, that the Plane or Picture, on which the Object is delineated, is the only real Plane made use of. It may also be a matter of wonder, how a Visual Ray can be drawn from an Object, which is beyond the Picture, to the Eye, on this Side ; by means of which, it is very obvious (from the Apparatus) the Representations of the several Angles, &c. in the Object, are projected on the Picture ; but how this can be effected in delineating, must appear strange to a Novice in Perspective. All which, will be accounted for, very satisfactorily, and shewn, how to manage all the Planes with great facility.

The Art of drawing in Perspective has this advantage of all other. It is not a random sketch, depending on the Hand and Eye ; but, every Line (Right Line at least) may be drawn to the utmost exactness ; and the Points, where the Visual Rays would pass through the Picture, are determined, mathematically ; yet may be done by a Person entirely unacquainted with Mathematics, who shall adhere to the Rules contained in the following Sections.

It is evident, seeing that Vision is conveyed (from the Object to the Eye) in Right Lines, that every Section of the Pyramid of Rays will appear the same, to an Eye in the Vertex. Consequently, whether the Section be made nearer to the Eye or to the Object, whether by a Plane or other Surface, whether it be direct or an oblique Section, the effect, to the Eye, is the same ; but it is obvious, that it can be so only in that Point of View ; for, every different Section has a different Representation ; but, all parallel Sections are similar Representations. So that, whether the Picture be drawn by a larger or a smaller Scale of Proportion, the Representation is the very same, except in Dimensions ; and supposes the Section to be made further from, or nearer to, the Vertex of the Pyramid of Rays, from the Object to the Eye.

It

It may also be observed, that, if the Visual Rays were produced or continued, beyond the Model, they would diverge, so, as to take in a real Building, situated exactly as the Model, of any Dimensions. Which being premised, it is manifest, that a Picture, delineated, truly, by a scale of equal Parts, of any Proportion, from a real or imaginary Model, of a Building, &c. will as truly represent the Original, as if the full measures of it were applied; which could not possibly be done.

This consideration may account for the Measures applied in Practice; which must always be in the same Ratio or Proportion, to each other, as the real Measures of the corresponding Parts in the Original Object.

PRELIMINARY OBSERVATIONS.

IN respect of the Shape and dimensions of the Picture, no Rules can be prescribed, it is always at the discretion of the Artist; unless it be proportioned to some particular Place which determines its Figure and Dimensions. The oblong Rectangle is, in general, a more agreeable and convenient shape than a Square; about the Proportion of 3 to 2, i. e. if the length be three feet, the width may be two, or thereabout; as conveniency, for taking in the Objects, may require. Some Objects requiring it upright; others, and more generally, length-ways.

2. Neither can a certain and invariable Rule be given for fixing the height of the Eye, and, consequently, of the Horizontal Line. To fix it to half or a third part of the height, absolutely, would be ridiculous; it must ever be at Discretion, in proportion to the Scale of the Drawing; a Landscape View, from an Eminence, may raise the Horizon to the middle of the Picture, or higher, yet may be very natural. In general, five feet, or five feet six inches, the natural height of the Eye, is the most agreeable, being most accustomed to see Objects at that height; altho' it may not be, perhaps, above one fifth or sixth part of the height of the Picture. Too low, in a general View, is not agreeable, because the recedings of the parts of Objects, on the Ground Plane, are not so distinguishable, as, they approach nearly to Right Lines.

3. Respecting the Distance, something may be ascertained. The Distance of the Picture is a material Circumstance which ought to be well attended to; otherwise the whole performance may be a disagreeable Distortion, instead of a pleasing and natural Representation. The Distance ought always to be considerably more than the height of the Eye; although Brook Taylor and some others, in their Diagrams, have made it much less, which produces a very bad effect; the Representations of the receding parts of the Object, on the Ground Plane are, by that means, drag'd out to an immoderate length. To illustrate it.

EX. Let AFEB be supposed the prime Vertical Plane, in which the Eye is situated, at E. Let EC, be its Distance from the Picture, of which CD may be supposed a Section.

Fig. 37.
No. 2.

This, I presume, is easy to conceive; for, suppose two Planes cutting each other at right angles, one of which is considered as the Picture; the other, a Plane passing through the Eye, perpendicular to it. The Right Line CD being considered as their common Section; and the Planes turned around on it, as an Axis; (see Fig. 8. Pl. 3. in the general Introduction) in which revolution, either Plane will become Direct before the Eye, and the other perpendicular to it, at CD, their mutual Section.

Now, E is supposed the Eye of a Spectator, and, C the Center of the Picture; EC is, therefore, its Distance. Let an Object be supposed beyond the Picture, whose Seat on the Ground Line is AD.

If a Right Line, EA, be drawn, cutting CD, the common Section of the Picture and the Vertical Plane, in a; it is obvious, that to the Eye at E, the representation of the Point A will be at a, on the Picture; and the length of Ground, between the Picture and the Point A (equal DA) is represented by Da. For, EA is a Visual Ray, from the Eye to the Point A; in which Direction, that Point is seen; and consequently, a is the Point in which it would pass through the Picture.

As it may be observed in the Apparatus, by placing the Eye in a continuation of either Picture and the Ground Plane; i. e. in the Line of their common Section, PM.

G g

The

Pl. VIII. Then (considering the Eye of the Spectator as the Point E; and, A, or any other Point, on the Ground Plane, answering to A, in the Figure) EA represents the Visual Ray, and a, the Point where it passes through the Picture; which is represented by the Right Line CD.

Fig. 37.

No. 2.

Now Da represents the length of Ground between the Picture and the Point A, the Eye being at E; but, being moved to E, the Appearance of it is at a; and, the Point a represents, at that Station, the length DG only, which is preposterous.

For, since DC is the whole indefinite Representation of DA, produced (Theo. 12.) and Da, a represents the finite, small Portions DG, GA, only; consequently, the remainder, aC, of the indefinite Representation, DC, represent the whole of DA, produced infinitely beyond A.

It is evident, that the Points, a or a, from either Station, is mathematically determined; agreeable to Theorem 13th. For, DC being the whole indefinite Representation of DA (Th. 12.) the representation of any Point, A, is found, by making Da (or Da) to DC, as AD to AB (or AD added to CE) i. e. $Da : DC :: AD : AB$, as it is demonstrated in that Theorem.

The Triangles AaD, AEB, and CEa being similar; $Da : ac :: AD : CE$; consequently, $Da : Da + aC$ (i. e. DC, equal BE) $:: AD : AD + CE$, equal DB (i. e. AB.)

† Cor. 5.

Th. 12.

N. B. While the Eye moves in the Direction EC, the Indefinite Representation DC remains the same, and the finite Parts (Da or Da) of AD is continually varied †.

Also, whilst it moves in the Direction EA the finite part Da remains the same, and the indefinite Representation is varied. As, at e, the whole indefinite Representation is Da, and the finite part is still Da.

Thus, it is evident, that the Height of the Eye is productive of as great Distortion as the Distance; but, to determine, absolutely, in what proportion one shall be to the other, is not possible, as various circumstances may render all such Rules exceptionable. In general, the Distance ought not to be less than twice the Height of the Eye (as at E) or, at the least, as three to two (as at E²) but there may be a necessity, in some Cases, to make it equal, or perhaps higher, for the conveniency of shewing some particular parts of the Object.

Some Persons make it a general Rule to make the Distance equal to half the Diagonal of the Picture, which is, certainly (if the Center of the Picture be in the middle) a method, if rightly understood and applied, will never produce great Distortion, in the Representations of Objects thereon.

No. 3.

For, if S be the Center, or Point of View, of the Picture ANOB, the Distance SN, or SO, may be sufficient, if there be no Objects near the Extremes, at A or B; but if there are, they will be distorted; because, it is evident that the Optic Angle, under which they are seen, is a Right Angle, or 90 Degrees.

But, this Rule, for fixing the Distance, is sometimes injudiciously adhered to; when the Center, or Point of View, is near either Extreme, as at M or L; in which Case, especially if the View be internal, or have Objects situated near the other Extremes A or B, they will be greatly distorted.

Let AS or SN be taken for Radius, and, on M, describe an Ark of a Circle, from E to F. It is manifest that all the part beyond that Circle, towards L, being seen under an obtuse Angle (which the Eye cannot possibly take in) will be preposterous.

Now, this is so very obvious, to a Person of any discernment, or a small share of knowledge in Geometry, that 'tis needless to expatiate longer on it. Yet, this is one principal reason, why many Artists quarrel with Perspective, and pronounce it deficient. For, not being acquainted with the Theory, they would have, on every part of the Picture, the Objects represented as they appear; which cannot possibly be, if they are remote from the Center; for the reason given above.

Wherefore, if the Center of the Picture be judiciously fixed (as at C) in the middle of the Picture (respecting its length, only, not height) as it ought always, except in particular Cases, to be, and CN or CO be taken for the Distance, there can no great inconvenience accrue, especially in external Views; as there will, very probably, be nothing but Clouds represented, at N, or O.

The reason of all this is evident. For, wherever the Center of the Picture is fixed, every part of the Picture, ought to come within a Circle, whose Radius, or semi-diameter, is its Distance.

I shall however give one general Rule; which is, to make the Distance, at least, equal to the length of the Picture, EF, the Center, C, being in the middle; but, if it be on either Side, as at M, or L, it must be equal twice MF, or EL, inclusive;

five; seeing that, the Eye is always supposed to take into the Optic Angle, as much on one side of the Center as the other.

4. The Position of the Picture, in respect of the Object and the Eye, is another essential Point to be well considered, and determined on. Without due regard to that, the other Preliminaries are to little purpose; as all the imagined caution, in the Height and Distance, may be rendered abortive, by that means.

The Distance of the Picture ought always to be regulated and governed by the real Distance of the Object, if it be a single one; or, if there are a multiplicity of Objects, it must be calculated from the nearest, intended to be represented.

Let ABC, be the Seat or Plan of a Building, which is intended to be delineated from the Station E; the Distance from the nearest part is EB.

Let DF be the Intersection of the Picture with the Ground Plane, or Horizontal Plane; and E the Station Point, or the Eye; then is ES the Distance of the Picture, applied close to the nearest part of the Object, AC, which is seen under the Optic Angle AEC.

The Distance ES (equal DF) is sufficient for that Picture; i. e. for the Object AC. But, if two, or more Objects, X and Z, are extended to the full length of the Picture, it is little enough; they being seen under the Angle DEF, which the whole length of the Picture subtends; viz 55 Degrees, on the Ark *df*, and is the least Distance I would ever use, in such Case, when the Objects extend the full width of the Picture.

ES is therefore the Distance of the Picture DF, and also of the Objects, or of a Plane passing through the nearest Planes of X and Z; in which Case, it is evident that the Picture must be as large as the Objects themselves, being applied close to them.

If they are supposed real Buildings, and the Scale of proportion be determined on, viz. a 10th or 12th part, or any other; take Ef (one third part of ES) for the Distance, and draw *df* parallel to DF; then is Ef equal *df*; for Ef : *df* :: ES : DF; i. e. they are equal, and consequently, the Objects x, y, and z being reduced to the same Proportion will all subtend the same Angles, respectively, as the Originals. By which means the Picture may be delineated of any Proportion.

Now, if the Station, E, be determined, from which the Object, AC is to be drawn, the Position of the Picture is also determined. For, ES, the Station Line, bisecting the Optic Angle, ABC or DEF, ought always to be perpendicular to the Picture; consequently, the Position of the Picture, DF or *df*, is determined; i. e. it must be perpendicular to ES.

For, when the Station, or Point of View, E, is fixed, from which we are determined to delineate the Object, is it not most rational to suppose the Picture, on which the Object is to be represented, placed direct before the Eye? (as MNOP in the Apparatus) or is it more eligible to place it parallel to either Plane, ABGH or BCDG (as MNOP) i. e. to AB or BC, as DC or BG, whose Center, or Point of View, is at C or G. The very supposition of it is absurd to the last degree; and yet this absurdity is committed by every Artist who places the Point of View at either Extreme, or perhaps entirely off the Picture, as it is very frequently done.

The difference must be obvious to every Person who considers it. For, the Picture being placed direct, according to DF, the Optic Angle is no more than AEC, or *aEc*, about 23 or 4 Degrees; but, being placed in the Position DC, the Optic Angle is, *aEg*, 102 or 3 Degrees; for, EC, perpendicular to DC, bisects the Optic Angle, on that Picture; as ES bisects the Angle AEC, on the Picture DF; notwithstanding, the Object, ABC, does not occupy one fourth part of the Angle *aEg*.

In the Apparatus, SP, on the Ground Plane, bisects the Optic Angle, pSt, under which the Object is seen, according to the Position of the Picture MNOP; for, the Angle, at the Station Point, S, is the same as in the Horizontal Plane, at the Eye.

How to prepare the PICTURE for PRACTICE.

Let AIKB (when raised perpendicular to the Ground Plane) be supposed the Picture; also, let the Directing Plane, GHIK, and Horizontal Plane, IKLM, be placed parallel to the Picture, and the Ground Plane.

Suppose the Objects AD, and XYZ, on the other Side, are to be represented on the Picture; and the Points a, b, c, &c. where the Visual Rays EA, EB, &c. would pass through the Picture, to be geometrically determined thereon.

In order to which, several preparatory Lines are necessary to be drawn on the Picture; the Center and Distance must always be known or determined, together with the position or situation of the Object, in respect of the Picture and of the Eye, and also its Height, above the Ground Plane.

Now

Fig. 38.

Fig. 37.

Pl. VIII.
Fig. 37.

Now E is the place of the Eye, EC is the Distance of the Picture; and EF is the height of the Eye; the Point C, where the Perpendicular EC cuts the Picture, is its Center. ML, the Line in which the Horizontal Plane cuts the Picture, is the Horizontal Line (Def. C) or the Vanishing Line of horizontal Planes; and AB in which the Picture cuts the Ground Plane is the Ground Line (Def. B.) consequently parallel to the Horizontal Line. These two are the first and most useful Lines; the Center of the Picture (C) in this Case, is in the Horizontal Line, the Picture being vertical.

The next Line to be considered, and of use, is the Vertical Line, ED (Def. D.) If the Plane V be turned up, perpendicular to the Picture, it will pass through the Eye, at E, and consequently through EC, cutting the Picture in EC, the Vertical Line; which, being produced will pass through D.

This Line always passes through the Center of the Picture, and is of the same use for all vertical Planes, which are perpendicular to the Picture, as the Horizontal Line for horizontal Planes; i. e. it is their Vanishing Line, which has, consequently, the same Center, C, and Distance, EC.

Let the Construction of these five Planes be well considered, and the Lines they generate, by their Intersections; three of which, viz. the Ground Line, the Horizontal Line, and the Vertical Line, are already produced on the Picture, and the Parallel of the Eye, IK (whose real place is out of the Picture) is transposed to the Picture, by turning up the Horizontal Plane on ML, its Intersection, till it coincides with, or falls into the Picture; and with it the Direct Radial, or Distance, EC, together with the Eye, E, which falls into the Vertical Line, at E.

When this Construction has been considered attentively, let them be pushed either from or towards you, keeping the Directing and Horizontal Planes, joined in IK; the Vertical Plane (V) may still be supposed to cut them all at Right Angles, and generates still the same Line on each. In all Positions, i. e. let the Angles they make with each other be what it may, the Planes are still parallel to each other respectively; and their Intersections are still parallel amongst themselves. (Th. 3.)

Now, let the Picture be turned down, on AB, its Intersection with the Ground Plane, till they coincide; and let the Horizontal Plane, with the Eye, E, and the Parallel of the Eye, IK, be also turned down into the Picture (as it is represented on the Picture) also, let the Vertical Plane, V, be turned down on either Side, into the Picture, and with it the Direct Radial, EC, i. e. the Distance of the Picture, falling into the Horizontal Line, with the Eye at E. And, lastly, let that part of the Ground Plane, which lies beyond the Picture (on which the Seats of Objects are geometrically drawn out) be supposed to be turned, on AB (its Intersection with the Picture) quite over to the other Side; and imagine it, simply, a Plane, without thickness; so that, all the Figures, described on it, are seen on the other Side, inverted; as *ABEF*, and *XYZ*; in which Case, it is obvious, that they have the same Position, or Situation to the Picture, as before; and the Lines (which are not parallel to the Picture) being produced, cut the Picture, in the Intersection (AB) in the same Points, as before.

Thus, is the Picture prepared for Practice, in common Perspective; and all the elementary Planes are reduced to one Plane, viz. the Picture*.

All the same Lines and Points, may be seen in No. 3. which is divested of that apparent intricacy of Planes on Planes, consequently it is more simple and intelligible; having only the preparatory Lines, answering to the Intersections of the elementary Planes with the Picture, on it. The Figures below AB, the Ground Line, are Plans of Objects, on the Ground Plane, intended to be delineated.

* The Directing Plane (GHK) not being of use in common Perspective is supposed to be turned down, or removed out of the way.

Fig. 38.

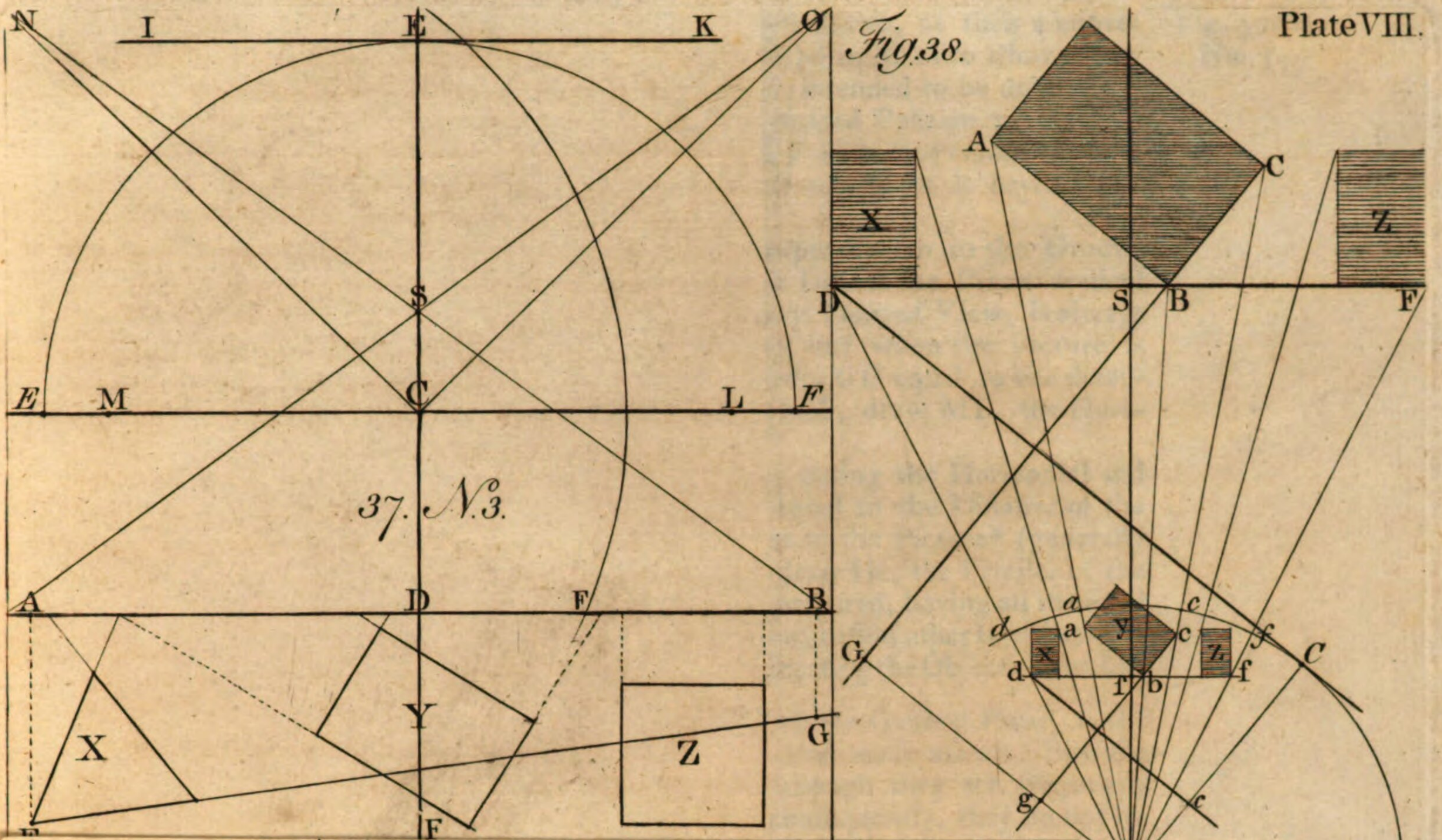
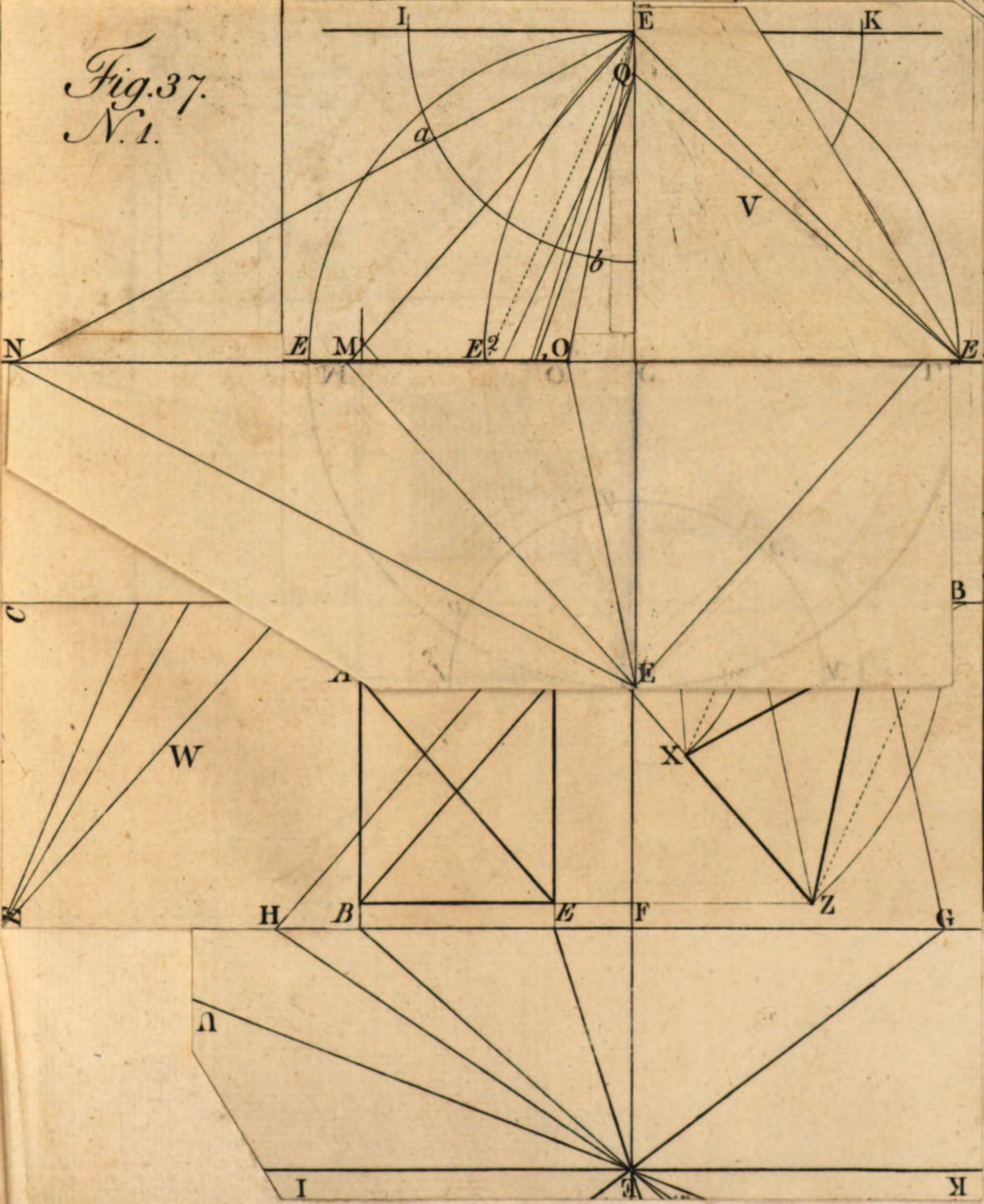


Fig. 37.
N. 1.



37. N. 2.

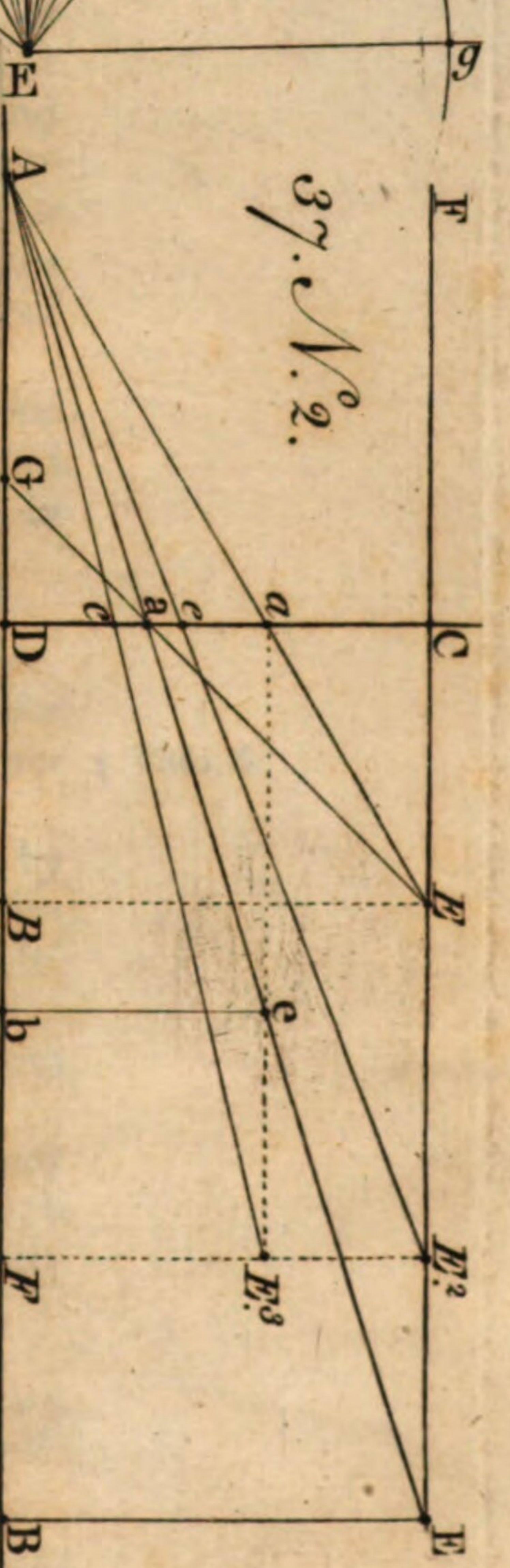
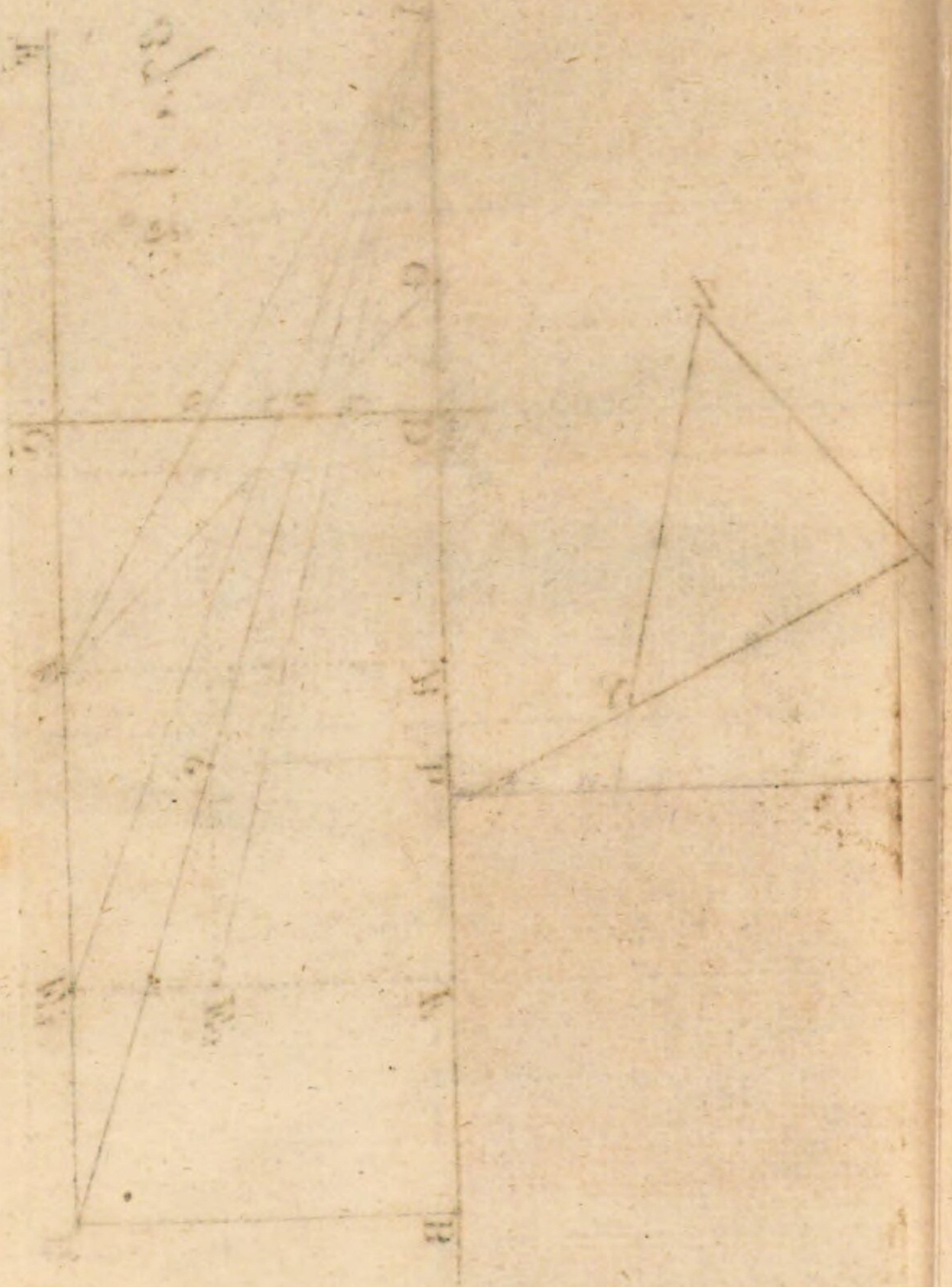
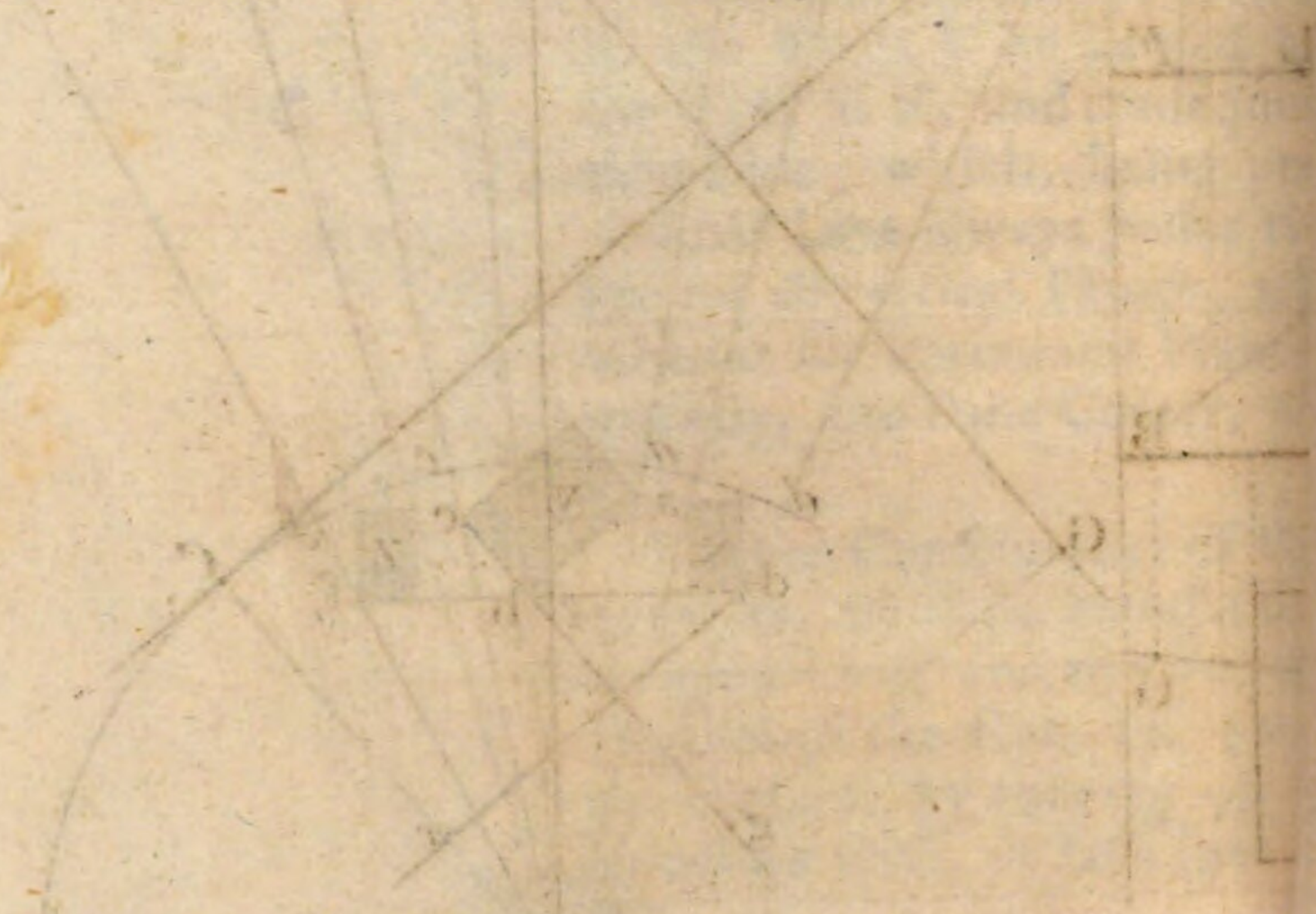


Fig. 111

Fig. 112



To prepare which, let the Ground Line, AB, be first drawn, at such a convenient Distance from the bottom of the Picture, and parallel to it, as to allow room, below it, for drawing the Plans of Objects (as X, Y, Z, intended to be delineated) in their true geometrical Proportion, Place, and determined Position to the Picture, if necessary. All which space, below AB (as AFB) is not considered as a part of the Picture, but of the Ground Plane, whose real place is beyond the Picture.

Fig. 37.
No. 3.

Through the middle of the Picture, draw ED, perpendicular to the Ground Line, dividing the Picture into two equal Parts. This Line is the Prime vertical Vanishing Line, in which, the Center of the Picture, or Point of View, is always (though not always in the Horizontal Vanishing Line; but when the Picture is vertical, as it is now supposed to be.) Therefore, make CD equal to the determined height of the Eye, C is the Center; through which, draw ML, the Horizontal Line, parallel to AB, the Ground Line.

Then, with the Radius EC, describe a Semicircle, cutting the Horizontal and Vertical Lines in E, E, and F; i. e. make CE, &c. equal to the Distance of the Picture, which are all considered as the Eye, transposed to the Picture* (generally understood by the Points of Distance) and, through E, draw IK, the Parallel of the Eye, parallel to the Horizontal Line; then is the Picture prepared, having all the fixed Lines and Points determined thereon. It only remains, now, to find other Intersections, Vanishing Lines, and Vanishing Points, necessary for delineating the Objects intended.

The Ground Line, or Intersection of the Picture with the Ground Plane, is the first and principal Intersection, and the only one in general made use of. But, the Intersections of other Planes are often wanted, and although they are frequently made use of, yet very few consider them as such; and consequently, they do not see the generality of the Principles and Rules by which the Work is performed; as they look on the operation in Planes which are vertical or inclined, in a different light from such as are horizontal; whereas, if it be well considered, they will find it is the very same; for, wherever the geometrical measures are applied, in proportioning any Line, it is considered as an Intersection of some Plane, in which that Line is or may be situated. And, since the Intersection of any Plane determines the Position of its Vanishing Line, I shall shew how to find the Intersections of Original Planes, in all necessary and generally useful Cases.

Inclined Planes, in general, I have reserved for the last Section; but, as various Planes, which are perpendicular to the Picture, are inclined to the Horizon, and vertical Planes are frequently inclined to the Picture, I shall not consider them, in either Case, as inclined Planes, but such only as are inclined to both.

As the Horizontal and Vertical Lines both pass through the Center of the Picture, they are, therefore, the Vanishing Lines of Planes perpendicular to the Picture†; which from their fixed and invariable Position, determine all other Vanishing Lines whatever. † Theo. 6.

Therefore, in the following Problems, I shall, in the first place, shew how, by them, to determine the Vanishing Lines of all Planes, that are perpendicular to the Picture, either with or without the Intersection; which are subject to one general Rule.

Secondly, how to find the Vanishing Lines of vertical Planes, in all Positions to the Picture (except parallel) and also, of certain inclined Planes, which are subject to the same invariable Rule, as vertical Planes.

The fifth Problem shews how to find the Vanishing Lines of Planes any how inclined, both to the Horizon and to the Picture (being vertical) from their known inclination to the Horizon, &c. as specified in the Problem. All which are frequently necessary in common Practice.

* The Eye, or Point of Distance, may be any where in the Circumference of a Circle, whose Radius is EC; as occasion requires; or, according to the Position of Original Planes, which are perpendicular to the Picture, and their Vanishing Lines; all which, have the same Center and Distance (Theo. 6.)

Plate IX.

P R O B L E M I.

The Intersecting Point of any Line, in a Plane which is perpendicular to the Picture, being given, together with the Angle of its Inclination to the Horizon, to determine its Intersection and Vanishing Line; the Center of the Picture being given.

Fig. 39. Let I be the Intersecting Point of some Line given, C is the Center of the Picture; and X is the Angle of Inclination of the Plane to the Horizon.

Through C , draw AB , the Horizontal Line, parallel to the Bottom of the Picture, and through I , draw ID parallel to AB .

Make the Angle DIF equal to the given Angle X , and IF is the Intersection required.

Through C , the Center, draw GH parallel to IF ; GH is the Vanishing Line.

Note. The Vanishing Line may be determined, by making the Angle ACG or BCH equal to the Inclination known; without the Intersection.

DEM. Let ID be supposed the Ground Line, and I the Intersecting Point of the common Intersection of the Ground Plane and the other Plane; which, seeing both Planes are perpendicular to the Picture, is also perpendicular to the Picture $\dagger$.

$\dagger$ Cor. to 9.

II. El.

$\dagger$ Th. II.

$\parallel$ 4. I. El.

And, since I is the Intersecting Point, of a Line in the Plane, the Intersection of the Plane must necessarily pass through that Point $\dagger$; and consequently, it will make the same Angle with the Ground Line and Horizontal Line, as the Planes make with each other (DIF , equal BLF $\parallel$) equal to the given Angle X . (See Article 4th, of Planes and their Positions. Page 44.)

Therefore, IF is the Intersecting Line of that Plane.

$\S$ Theo. 6.

But, the Vanishing Lines of all Planes, which are perpendicular to the Picture, pass through the Center of the Picture C . And, the Vanishing Line of every Plane is parallel to its Intersection. (Theo. 3.)

Therefore, GH is the Vanishing Line of a Plane perpendicular to the Picture, and inclined to the Horizon in the Angle HCB equal FID , equal X .

N. B. If F be the Intersecting Point of any other Line in that Plane, and EF be drawn parallel to the Horizontal Line; the Angle EFI equal FID (equal X) produces the same Intersection.

Also, if K be the Intersecting Point of any Line in another Plane, parallel to the former; then, AK , parallel to IF , is its Intersection.

For, all parallel Planes have parallel Intersections. But they have the same Vanishing Line (GH).

If EC , or EC , be equal to the Distance of the Picture; AK , or EF , may be considered as the Parallel of the Eye; and EC , or EC , (perpendicular to GH , or AB) is the Vertical Line.

Note. If the Angle of Inclination be greater or less, the process is the same. But, if the Angle be increased or enlarged to a Right one, the Plane is no longer inclined, but vertical; and, if the Intersecting Point, J , be in a Line, passing through C , perpendicular to AB , the Intersection and Vanishing Line are the same, viz. the Vertical Line EJ ; which is the Vanishing Line of all vertical Planes that are perpendicular to the Picture. (See this Problem illustrated by moveable Planes; Fig. 15. No. 2.)

Fig. 15.
No. 2.

$IKLM$ is the Original Plane, TU is its Intersection with the Ground Plane, or other horizontal Plane; I is its Intersecting Point, and IN is the Intersection of that Plane with the Picture; making the Angle NIB equal to the Angle PQR , of the Original Plane with the Ground Plane.

And, if $IKLM$ (the Vanishing Plane of all Planes which are perpendicular to the Picture) be placed parallel to the Original Plane, $IKLM$, it will cut the Picture in ON , the Vanishing Line of $IKLM$, in that Position.

$\dagger$ 9. II. El. For, it passes through the Eye (at E) and the Direct Radial EC ; consequently it is perpendicular to the Picture $\dagger$, and passes through C its Center.

Hence; all Vanishing Lines, which pass through the Center of the Picture, have the same Center and Distance, viz. the Center and Distance of the Picture.

Note. If the Plane incline on the other Side of its Intersection TU , the Angle of its Inclination is made on the other side of the Vertical Line; to which, particular regard must always be had.

PROBLEM

P R O B L E M II.

The Vanishing Line of a Plane being given, with its Center and Distance; and the Angle of inclination which any Original Line makes with the Intersection, of the Plane that Line is in, with the Picture; to find the Vanishing Point of that Line, and to determine its Distance.

AB is the given Vanishing Line, and C is its Center.

Fig. 40.

Draw CE perpendicular to AB, and equal to the Distance of the Vanishing Line, given or found.

Through E draw GH (the Parallel of the Eye) parallel to the Vanishing Line: Make the Angle GEA equal to the Angle which the Original Line makes with the Intersection, cutting the Vanishing Line in A the Vanishing Point sought; and EA is its Distance, E being considered as the Eye.

Note. Regard must always be had, on which side the Original Line inclines, and the Angle GEA, or HEB must be made accordingly.

DEM. Imagine the Plane AGHB turned over, on AB, till E coincides with the Eye; then is GH (in its true Place) still parallel to the Picture; and EA will be parallel to the Original Line, producing its Vanishing Point† and making the same Angle with the Vanishing Line (AB) and Parallel of the Eye, as the Original Line makes with the Intersection and Directing Line, of the Plane it is in ||.

† Def. 22.
|| Theo. 9.

EX. The Picture, AIKB, being erected, turn over the Vanishing Plane, IKNL, parallel to the Original Plane.

Fig. 37.

Then, the Radials EN, EO, EL, &c. are respectively parallel to their Originals, XY, YZ, and XZ, in the Triangle XYZ; and consequently, they make equal Angles, respectively, with NL, and IK, as the Originals make with AB, the Intersection of the Plane they are in.

P R O B L E M III.

The Intersecting Point of any Line, in a vertical Plane, being given, and the Angle of Inclination of the Plane to the Picture, to find its Intersection and Vanishing Line; the Center and Distance of the Picture being given, and the Picture supposed vertical.

Let I be the intersecting Point given, and C the Center of the Picture.

Fig. 40.

Through C, draw AB, the Horizontal Line, and ED the Vertical Line at right angles; and through I, the Intersecting Point given, draw IH, parallel to ED; which is the Intersection required.

Make CE equal to the Distance of the Picture; and make the Angle CEA equal to the Complement of the given Angle of Inclination; cutting AB in A.

Or, having drawn EG parallel to AB, make GEA equal to the given Angle; and through A, draw FG parallel to IH, which is the Vanishing Line required.

DEM. Because the Picture and the Original Plane are both Vertical, their Intersection is perpendicular to the Horizon†; and consequently, since I is the Intersecting Point of some Line in that Plane, IH perpendicular to FI, the Ground Line, is the Intersection; by Theorem 11th.

† Cor., to
9. 7. El.

And, because EAC (equal AEG) is equal to the Angle of Inclination, EA is the Radial, or Parallel of the common Intersection of the vertical Plane with horizontal Planes, producing its Vanishing Point. (By Prob. 2.) Therefore, FG, drawn through A, parallel to IH, or ED (i. e. perpendicular to FI) is the Vanishing Line.

For,

Plate IX.

For, imagine the Picture $FGHI$ turned up, vertical, and the Triangle AEC vertical to it, i. e. horizontal; representing a part of the Horizontal Plane; E is the Eye.

Then, a vertical Plane, passing through the Eye and the Line EA , will cut the Picture in FG , the Vanishing Line, which is parallel to IH , the Intersection; by Theorem 3rd.

For, they are the Sections of parallel Planes with the Picture.

N. B. If the Intersecting Point of any other Line, in the Plane, had been given, as B or H , the Intersection IH would be the same.

And consequently, if the Vanishing Point of that Line, or any other, as F , or G , in any vertical Plane, be given or found, the Vanishing Line is determined.

For, it passes through that Point (Th. 11.) perpendicular to the Ground Line, from its Position.

EXAMPLE, by the Apparatus.

Fig. 15.

If the Planes $ABGH$ and BFC were produced, they would cut the Picture $MNOP$, in BG , the Intersections of those Planes; which are parallel between themselves, because their common Section BG , is parallel to the Picture $\dagger$; and, because BG is vertical, they are, also consequently, vertical, being parallel to BG respectively $\dagger$.

 $\dagger$ Theo. 7. $\dagger$ 4. 7. El.

And, if a Plane $RSTU$ be supposed to pass through E (the Eye of the Spectator) parallel to BFC , cutting the Picture $MNOP$, produced, in RU , it is the Vanishing Line of that Plane, parallel to the Intersection, BG .

Also, a Plane ($STOP$) parallel to $ABGH$, cuts both Pictures, in OP and OP , the Vanishing Lines of that Plane, on both; also parallel to RU or W , i. e. to BG .

When the Original Plane is inclined both to the Horizon and the Picture, having its common Section with horizontal Planes, parallel to the Picture; it is a similar Case to this; and by turning the Picture sideways, on IH , (Fig. 40.) 'tis the very same in every respect; as it is fully illustrated in Fig. 15. No. 3.

No. 3.

EX. $ADFB$ is the Original Plane; AB , its Intersection with the Ground Plane, is parallel to the Picture; i. e. to AB . Let it be raised up, making the Angle PQR , with the Horizon. $AONB$ is the Picture, which being raised up vertical, the Plane $IKON$, passing through the Eye, at E , will be parallel to the original Plane, $ADFB$; and cuts the Picture in ON , its Vanishing Line, parallel to the Horizontal Line, LM .

And, if the Original Plane was produced, it would almost cut the Picture in a Line parallel to LM , or AB (i. e. to ON) below AB , the Ground Line.

But, if the Original Plane inclined towards the Picture, on the other Side of AB ; then, its Vanishing Line would fall below the Horizontal Line, and the Intersection above it.

COR. Hence it is manifest, that if the Intersection of an Original Plane, in any Position whatever, be given, and the Inclination of that Plane to the Picture known, its Vanishing Line is determined as by this Problem; seeing that, the Vanishing Line of a Plane is always parallel to its Intersection with the Picture. Consequently, if the Intersection, be parallel either to the Horizontal or Vertical Line, the Vanishing Line sought is also parallel to them.

But, when the Intersection of the Original Plane is not given; and which, by reason of the great Distance of the Plane, from the Picture, or Inclination to it, cannot be had, nor its Position ascertained; then other Expedients are used, to find the Vanishing Lines of such Planes; viz. by finding the Vanishing Points of two Lines in the Original Plane. (See Prob. 5.)

N. B. The Center of every vertical Vanishing Line is the Point in which it is cut by the Horizontal Line; and the Center of every Vanishing Line, which is horizontal, is the Point in which it is cut by the Vertical Line (by the 4th Theorem.)

Fig. 40.

The Distance of every Vanishing Line which does not pass through the Center of the Picture, is the Hypotenuse of a Right angled Triangle (as AEC) whose Base and Perpendicular are the Distance of the Picture, and the Distance, AC or EC , between the Center of the Picture and the Vanishing Line.

For, in respect of the Vanishing Line, FG , of vertical Planes, if CE be the Distance of the Picture, EA is the Distance of the Vanishing Line, and A is its Center.

But, if GH be a Vanishing Line of a Plane inclined to the Horizon, in the Angle GEA , and to the Picture, in AEC ; having the same Distance AE , E is its Center, and AC is the Distance of the Picture.

P R O B L E M IV.

The Vanishing Line of a Plane, its Center and Distance, being given, and the Vanishing Point of some Line in that Plane; to find the Vanishing Point of other Lines, making a given Angle with that Line, whose Vanishing Point is given.

AB is the Vanishing Line, C is its Center, and A the given Vanishing Point. Fig. 41.

Draw CE perpendicular to AB, and equal to the Distance of the Vanishing Line, given or found.

Join AE; and make AED, or AEB, equal to the Angle, which the Original Lines make with each other, cutting the Vanishing Line in D or B, the Vanishing Point sought.

DEM. Imagine the Triangle AEB turned up, on AB, perpendicular to the Picture (if AB be considered as the Vanishing Line of a Plane perpendicular to the Picture) or, making the same Angle with the Picture, as a Plane passing through the Original Lines.

Then is AEB the Parallel of whatever Plane the Original Lines are in, producing its Vanishing Line AB†; E coincides with the Eye, and EA, EB, &c. are respectively parallel to the Original Lines; seeing they pass through the Eye and the Vanishing Points of those Lines (Def. 22.)

† Def. 8.

But, the Radials of two Lines producing their Vanishing Points, make the same Angle, at the Eye, as the Original Lines make with each other †. Therefore, D, or B is the Vanishing Point required.

† Theo. 9.

N. B. If the Angle AEB be obtuse, it is not the Angle of Inclination of the Lines. In which Case, regard ought particularly to be had to the Position of the Original Lines, in respect of each other, and of the Picture.

For, suppose FG to be the Representation of a Line, whose Vanishing Point is A; then, if FB be drawn, AFB represents an Angle equal to AEB; consequently, the obtuse Angle is towards the Picture. In which Case, let the Angle of Inclination be made on the other Side; that is, produce AE to I, and make IEB equal to the given Angle; for if the Angle AEB (i. e. AED) was made equal to the Angle of Inclination, the Point D (in that Case) would not be the Vanishing Point required.

P R O B L E M V.

The Angle of the Inclination of a Plane to the Horizon, together with the Angle which its Intersection, with any horizontal Plane, makes with the Picture, being given, to find its Vanishing Line; the Intersection of the Plane not being given, nor its Position known. The Center and Distance of the Picture is given.

Let AB be the Horizontal Line, and C the Center of the Picture. Fig. 42.

Draw CE perpendicular to AB, and equal to the Distance of the Picture; and, through E, draw DE parallel to AB.

Draw EA, making the Angle DEA equal to the Angle which the Intersection of the inclined Plane (with horizontal Planes) makes with the Picture, cutting the Horizontal Line in A, the Vanishing Point of the common Intersection.

Draw EB, perpendicular to AE, cutting AB in B; and, through B, draw BG perpendicular to AB, indefinite.

Make BF equal BE; and make the Angle BFG equal to the Inclination of the Original Plane to the Horizon, cutting BG in G, and draw AG, the Vanishing Line sought.

This Problem, for finding the Vanishing Lines of Planes, casually inclined to the Horizon and to the Picture, is universal, and applicable in all Cases, when the Angles are determinable; as in the Roofs of Buildings, Pediments, &c. which, being frequently necessary in common Subjects, could not be dispensed

Plate IX. with here; otherwise, I should have omitted it till the last Section, which will treat more fully on such Subjects. I shall therefore reserve the Demonstration of it till then; where, every Case and Circumstance, respecting inclined Planes, will be fully demonstrated, and exemplified by moveable Planes.

† Th. 4.

N. B. The Center of the Vanishing Line AG is determined by drawing CH perpendicular to the Vanishing Line, cutting it in H, its Center †, nor does it differ, in that respect, from any other, except in Position; for, CH is the Vertical Line of the Original Plane.

And, if CI be drawn, parallel to the Vanishing Line, and equal to the Distance of the Picture, the Line IH, to the Center, is the Distance of the Vanishing Line AG; which, Distance, is as applicable to that Vanishing Line, as the Distance of the Picture to all Vanishing Lines which pass through its Center, i. e. of Planes perpendicular to the Picture.

Fig. 15. EX. In the Apparatus, VW, the Vanishing Line of the Plane of the Roof, HIFG, is determined by this Problem; V being the Vanishing Point of the common Section, GH, with a Horizontal Plane, DGHK, and EW, i. e. the Radial or Right Line from the Eye, parallel to GF determines W, in RU produced, the Vanishing Point of GF and HI, on the Picture MNOP.

For, E in the Horizontal Line, represents the Eye transposed to the Picture; EY being equal to the Distance of the Eye from the Point Y; and YEW is equal to the Angle DGF of the Inclination of the Roof to horizontal Planes.

Wherefore, since V is the Vanishing Point of one Line (GH or IF) in the inclined Plane, and W is the Vanishing Point of another Line (GF or HI) in the same Plane; consequently, VW (a Right Line drawn through those Points) is the Vanishing Line of the Plane HIFG (Th. 11. and Cor. 1.)

For, a Plane passing through the Eye, and those Vanishing Points, would be parallel to HIFG, and would cut the Picture in the Line VW; which is, therefore, the Vanishing Line of that Plane. Def. G.

SECTION IV.

The ELEMENTS of PERSPECTIVE.

HAVING, in the foregoing Section, shewn how to find and determine the Intersections and Vanishing Lines, of Planes, in all common Cases; and also the Vanishing Points of Lines, in any Plane whose Vanishing Line is given or found; by means of which Vanishing Points, all original Right Lines (not parallel to the Picture) have their indefinite Representations, on the Picture, truly and accurately described. In this Section I shall shew how to cut off certain portions, from the indefinite Representation, which are the perspective Representations of certain portions, or segments, of Lines in the Original Object.

I would advise the young Student to read over again, with strict attention, the conclusion of the second Section, Book II. P. 53 and 54.

Having well considered, that most regular Objects are bounded by Planes, and the bounds of Planes are Lines; it is evident, that to find the Representations of Lines, in all Positions, is to find the Representation of the Figure, or Object, bounded or circumscribed by those Lines. And, since the extremes of Lines are Points, it follows, that, if the two Extremes, of a Right Line, be found, the whole Line is determined; and, by finding sundry Points in curved Lines, the Representation of the Curve is determinable. Wherefore, the whole, of practical Perspective, consists in finding the Representation of a Point, any how situated.

But, since Points are the intersections of Lines, and, to find the Representation of a Point, in Perspective, it must, necessarily, be supposed in some Line; hence it follows, that, to determine Lines, in all Cases, is the whole sum and substance of Practical Perspective.

Now,

Now, Right Lines can have but three Positions, in respect of themselves and of the Picture, viz. they must be either parallel, perpendicular, or inclined; and, having learnt how to manage Lines in all these Cases, by the following Problems, there remains little more to be done; for, by constructing a number of Lines together, properly, an Object is formed.

By Theo. 12. the Indefinite Representation of a Right Line, not parallel to the Picture, is a Line drawn through its Intersecting and Vanishing Points. But, since the Intersecting Point is not always wanted (nor is it always attainable) if any Point in the indefinite Representation be determined, a Line drawn through that Point, to the Vanishing Point, is the same; for, it would, if produced, pass through the Intersecting Point of the Original Line.

In this Section, which contains the whole Substance of practical, rectilinear Perspective, I shall shew how the indefinite Representations of Lines, in all Positions, are determined, and then how to proportion them, in any given or known ratio to the Original, and afterwards, how to manage them, when the Vanishing Point is not within the limits of the Picture, by various Expedients.

Let the Reader take particular notice, that I shall, always (to save repetition) in the following Problems, suppose the Center of the Picture to be given, and its Distance known; except, in particular Cases, when it is otherwise expressed.

The Distance of the Picture (being determined) is applied, in Practice, by the same Scale of Proportion to which the Picture is delineated.

Let it also be observed, that I shall always (in the Diagrams) make use of the initial Letters of the following Terms, viz. C for the Center of the Picture, S for the Seat of a Point, &c. E for the Eye, in its first or principal place on the Picture, and E for its first transposed place, in any Vanishing Line, &c. and E² for the next transposition, &c. and VL for any particular Vanishing Line. But, seeing that the Ground Line, the Horizontal, and Vertical Lines never vary their Places, and are always stronger drawn than the operative Lines, I think it needless to particularize them otherwise.

P R O B L E M VI.

How to find the Representation of a Point whose Seat on the Picture is given, and its Distance from the Picture known.

Let C be the Center of the Picture, and S the Seat of the Original Point.

Fig. 43.

Draw a Right Line CS, through the Center of the Picture, and the given Seat, indefinitely beyond S. Draw CA, at pleasure; and SB parallel to CA.

Make AC equal to the distance of the Picture, and SB equal to the distance of the Original Point from its Seat. Draw AB, which will cut CS in b, the Point sought.

Or, if the Original Point be between the Eye and the Picture, make SB equal to its distance as before, and draw AB, which produce to the Picture, cutting it in b.

Then is b the projected Representation, of the Point B, on the Picture.

Compleat the Parallelogram ACSD.

DEM. AC is equal to the Distance of the Picture, SB to the Distance of the Original Point from its Seat, and AC is parallel to SB (Con.) Consequently, the Triangles ACb, and bBS are similar.

Wherefore, Sb : bC :: SB : AC; and, consequently, Sb : Sb + bC (i. e. SC) :: SB : SB + CA, equal SD (i. e. BD.) that is, Sb : SC :: SB : BD. Also Sb : SC :: SB : BD. - Theo. 13.

Now, because SB is the Distance of the Original Point, from the Picture, and AC is equal to the Distance of the Picture; draw CE and SF, both perpendicular to CS, consequently parallel; make CE equal CA, and SF to SB, and draw EF; which will cut SC in the same Point, b.

For, the Triangles CEb, bFS are similar. Wherefore, Sb : bC :: SF : EC; i. e. as SB : AC.

Hence

Plate IX. Hence it is evident, that the projection of the Point *b* does not in the least, depend on the situation of the Lines *CA* and *SB* in respect of *CS*, but on their parallelism and proportion to each other; wherefore, if the true Distances are not known, but only their Ratio, the Point *b*, will be projected the same. e. g.

Fig. 43.

Take *CI* at pleasure; and make *SG* to *CI*, as *SB* to *AC*, and draw *IG*; the Point *b* will be projected the same, on the Picture.

For, since $SG : CI :: SB : CA$, and $Sb : bC :: SB : CA$; consequently, $Sb : bC :: SG : CI$, and consequently, the Point *b* is the same.

Hence, may be seen the universality of the 13th Theorem. For, conceiving *E* to be the Eye, and *EC* the Direct Radial, i. e. the Distance of the Picture, and *SF* the Distance of the Original Point from its Seat, i. e. from the Picture, imagine the Triangle *ECb* to be turned up, on *bC*, till *EC* is perpendicular to the Picture, and suppose *bFS* turned back, on *Sb*, till *SF* is also perpendicular to the Picture, on the other Side; then is *E* in the true place of the Eye, and *F* is in the Place of the Original Point, and consequently, *EF* is a Visual Ray from the Eye to the Point; which it is evident will pass through the Picture, in the Point *b*; and, since Vision is conveyed in Right Lines to the Eye, the Point *F* will appear, on the Picture, at *b*; which is, therefore, the perspective Representation of the Point *F*. (See App.)

† Theo. 12.

Def. 25.

† Ax. 7.

§ Theo. 13.

Again, because *EC* is parallel to *SF* and cuts the Picture in *C*, its Center, *C* is the Vanishing Point of *SF*; (Cor. 2. Def. L.) for, the Line *SF* is perpendicular to the Picture; and *S* is its intersecting Point; (Def. K.) wherefore, *SC* is its indefinite Representation†; and *EF* is a Visual Ray from the Eye to the Original Point; (Def. H.)

And, because *EC* is parallel to *SF*, and *EF* cuts them both, they are, therefore, all in the same Plane‡, consequently, the Visual Ray, *EF*, will cut the Picture somewhere in *SC*, the Intersection of that Radial Plane with the Picture, and consequently in *b*; making *Sb* to *bC*, as *SF* (or *SB*) to *EC* (or *AC*) or, *Sb* to *SC*, as *SF* or *SB*, added to *EC*, or *AC*; i. e. to *BD*, or *FH*§; for, *D* is the Directing Point of *BS*, and *H* of *FS*.

Thus, the whole business of practical Perspective will be found (when well understood) to consist in finding the representation or projection of a Point on the Picture, any how situated; i. e. to determine that Point, in which a Visual Ray, from the Original Point to the Eye, would cut and pass through the Picture.

For, if the two Extremes of a Right Line are found, the whole Line is determined; and curved Lines can only be represented by finding the representations of several Points in the Original Curve, and joining them carefully, by hand. I would therefore advise the young Student to bestow the utmost attention on this and the following Problems, as they really contain the whole essence of Practical Perspective.

P R O B L E M VII.

The Seats, on the Picture, of any two Points in an Original Line being given, and the Distance of the Points from the Picture; to find the Inclination of the Line to the Picture, its Intersecting and Vanishing Points; to draw its indefinite Representation, and to find the Representation of each Point.

Fig. 44.

A and *B* are the Seats of the Points given, and *C* is the Center of the Picture.

Draw *AB* indefinite; draw *AF* and *BG* perpendicular to *AB*, and equal to the Distance of the Original Points from their Seats, respectively; and draw *FG* meeting *AB* in the Point *I*.

Then is *I* the Intersecting Point of the Line, in which the Original Points are situated; and *AIF* is the Angle of its Inclination to the Picture.

Through *C*, draw *CV* parallel to *AI*, indefinite; draw *CE* perpendicular to *CV*, and equal to the Distance of the Picture; and, draw *EV* parallel to *IF*, cutting *CV* in *V*, the Vanishing Point.

Draw *IV*, the indefinite Representation of the Original Line; and lastly, draw *EF* and *EG*, or *AC* and *BC*, cutting *IV* in *a* and *b*, the Representations of the Original Points, *F* and *G*.

DEM.

DEM. Because A and B are the Seats of the Original Points, AB is the Seat of the Line they are in, and consequently, it is the Intersection of a Plane passing through the Line perpendicular to the Picture. (See N. B. Art. 7. General Introduction, Page 47.)

Now, since AF and BG are perpendicular to AB, i. e. to the Picture, and measure the Distance of each Point, respectively, from its Seat, if the Triangle AFI was turned back, behind the Picture and perpendicular to it, F and G would be in the true places of the Original Points, in respect of the Picture, and FG would represent the Original Line; which being produced to the Picture would cut it in I, in the Line AB, produced.

For, AF and BG are parallel Lines, and consequently, all other Right Lines which cut them both are in the same Plane †.

Therefore, I is the Intersecting Point of the Line FG, and AIF is the Angle of its Inclination to the Picture, i. e. to its Seat, AB.

† Ax. 7.

Again. Suppose the Triangle CEV turned up perpendicular to the Picture, it will be parallel to AFI; for CV is parallel to IA, and, AFI and CEV are both perpendicular to the same Plane.

Now CE is perpendicular to the Picture, and, since it is equal to the Distance, E is the true place of the Eye; and because EV is parallel to IF, and cuts the Picture in V, V is the Vanishing Point of IF; for they make equal Angles with the Picture; (EVC equal AIF; by Theorem 9th.)

But, I is the Intersecting Point of FG, and V is its Vanishing Point; wherefore, IV is its Indefinite Representation; by Theorem 12th.

And, EF, EG, are Visual Rays, from the Eye, E, on this Side, to the Points F and G, on the other side of the Picture, which would cut and pass through the Picture at a and b.

For, EV is parallel to IF, and they are both cut by IV and EF; wherefore, they are all in the same Plane †; and IV is the Section of that Plane with the Picture, because, the Points I and V are both in the Picture; the Line FG cutting it in I, and EV in V, (Def. K and L.)

† Ax. 7 & 8.

Now, since EF and EG are also in the same Plane, they must cut the Picture, somewhere, in the Intersection, IV, of the Plane they are in, consequently in a and b.

For, the Triangles VEA and aIF, VEB and bIG are similar; and therefore, Ia : aV :: IF : EV :: Fa : aE; and Ib : bV :: IG : EV; as by Theorem 13th.

2nd. AC and BC also determine the same Points, a and b.

For, AF and BG are Lines perpendicular to the Picture; therefore, the Center of the Picture is their Vanishing Point §; EC being parallel to them ||; also, A and B are their Intersecting Points; therefore, AC and BC are the indefinite Representations of AF and BG; by Theorem 12th.

§ Cor. to Theo. 6.
|| Def. 22.

But, the Representation of the common Section of two Lines, is the Point in which the Indefinite Representations cut each other. (Cor. 5. Theo. 11th.)

Therefore, a, the Point in which IV and AC cut each other, is the Representation of F; and b of G, in which the Lines BC and IV cut each other.

Also, because CE is parallel to AF, the Triangles CEa, aFA are similar; wherefore, Aa : aC :: Fa : aE :: AF : EC, i. e. :: Ia or IF : aV, or EV. Q. E. D.

Or, if the Distances of the Points F and G, from the Intersecting Point, are transfered to D and H; and the Distance of the Vanishing Point, EV, be set off, from V to E; ED and EH, being drawn, will give the same Points; that is, they will cut IV the same, in a and b.

For the Ratio of Ia or Ib, to aV or bV, is still as IF or IG, to EV; i. e. as ID or IH, to EV.

Also; if AC, or BC be considered as the indefinite Representation of a Line (BG) in which the Point G is situated; make BK equal BG, and CE (on the contrary side) equal CE; KE will determine the same Point b, &c.

N. B. The Seat of a Point, on any Plane, is the Point where a Perpendicular from the Original Point cuts the Plane, and consequently measures its Distance. See Ichnog. and Orthog. Sect. 2. Page 49.

The Distance of any Point, in an Original Object, from the Picture, may be obtained when the Intersecting Point, of the Line it is in, and its Distance from the Intersecting Point, cannot, for various reasons; and, since it is demonstrated (Theo. 13.) that the Distances of several Points in a Line respectively, from the Picture, are in the same Ratio as their Distances from the Intersecting Point of that Line; consequently, having their Seats on the Picture, and Distance from their Seats, respectively, their Representations, on the Picture, may be determined without the Intersecting Point.

If the Original Points are in a Plane which is perpendicular to the Picture the Seats of those Points are in the Intersection of that Plane with the Picture.

Wherefore, if F and G are two Points in a Line on the Ground Plane, the Seats of those Points are in the Ground Line (AB) where the Perpendiculars FA and GB cut it; A and B are the Seats; and their Distances AF to BG, are as the Distance of the Point F is to the Distance of G, from the Intersecting Point of the Line FG, where it would meet AB produced.

Fig. 37.
No. 3.

K k

COR.

Pl. IX. COR. AI being the Intersection of the Plane in which the Line FG is situated,
Fig. 44. VC is its Vanishing Line (Theo. 3. and 11.) and because it passes through C, the Center of the Picture, it is, consequently, the Vanishing Line of a Plane perpendicular to the Picture (Theo. 6.) whose Distance is EC.

COR. 2. If the Intersection, (IA) and Vanishing Line (CV) of any Plane, with its Center, (C) and Distance, (EC) be given, and any Line (FG) in the Original Plane; its Intersecting Point (I) is found by producing the Line; and its Vanishing Point, (V) by drawing EV parallel to FG; or, by making the Angle EVC equal to AIF.

P R O B L E M VIII.

The Representation of a Line and its Vanishing Point being given or found, to divide the Line in any known Proportion.

AB is the Line given, and V is its Vanishing Point.

Fig. 45. Draw AH, at pleasure, and EV parallel to AH.
Make AF, FG, and GH in the Ratio, or known Proportion, of the Original.
Draw EH, through B, cutting VE, in E; and draw EF, and EG, cutting AB in C and D.

Then is AB divided, in C and D, perspectively, as AH is divided; in F and G.

† Cor. to DEM. If VE be considered as the Vanishing Line of a Plane in which the Original of AB is situated, AH may be considered as its Intersection; and EF, EG and EH represent parallel Lines†; for they are all in the same Plane, whose Vanishing Line is EV, and E is their Vanishing Point.

Wherefore, since ABH is a Triangle, and CF and DG are supposed parallel to BH; consequently, AB and AH are divided in the same Ratio, in the Points C, D, and F, G†.

‡ 2. 6. El.

N. B. If a B had been drawn through the other Extreme, B, instead of AH, and a B divided, in the same Ratio as AH, that is, in the given Proportion; Aa being drawn cutting EV in E, and Ef, Ed, produced, will cut AB in the same Points C and D.

Any other Line, AH, being divided in the same Ratio as AH, and EV being drawn parallel to AH; EH drawn, through B, and EF, EG also drawn, will give the same Points C and D, which may be demonstrated in the same manner.

By this Problem, any Right Line in any Object sketched by hand and depending on the Eye, may be divided, with certainty, in the Proportion of the Original, being known, no regard being had to what Plane the Line is in, nor its Vanishing Line.

By the same means, a Line drawn in Perspective may be bisected, as AD, or CB, by making AF, FG, or FG, GH equal; consequently, if the Parts AF, FG, and GH, are all equal, AB is trisected, perspectively.

COR. If AV be the indefinite Representation of a Line, and AC represents some certain portion of the Original; and it is required to cut off another Portion, as CD or CB, in a known Ratio to that represented by AC.

Draw AH, and VE parallel to it, at discretion; assume any Point, E, in EV, and draw EF, through C, cutting AH in F.

Make FG, or FH, to AF in the known proportion of the Original, and draw EG, or EH; which will cut off CD, or CB, in the proportion required.

COR. 2. If CA represents a certain portion, and it is required to cut off, from any other Point, as D, a part, DB, which shall be to AC in a certain Ratio.

Proceed as before, and, from any Point E in EV, draw EF, EG through C and D. Make GH to AF in the known Proportion, and draw EH cutting AV in B, the Point sought.

PRO-

P R O B L E M IX.

The Vanishing Line of a Plane being drawn, and the Representations of two Lines in that Plane; if one of the Lines be divided any how, how to divide the other in the same Ratio.

Let AB and CD be the given Representations, of which, let AB be divided, any how, in E ; it is required to divide CD in the same Proportion.

Fig. 46.

GH is the Vanishing Line of the Plane they are in.

At any Distance, at discretion, draw ad parallel to GH ; and, from any Point, G , in the Vanishing Line, draw GA , GE , and GB , and produce them till they cut ad , in a , e , and b .

From the same Point, G , or any other, in the Vanishing Line, as H , draw Hc , Hd , through C and D .

Divide cd , in f , as ab is divided, in e ; i. e. make cf to cd , as ae to ab †.

 † Prob. 32.
Geom.

Draw Hf , which will divide CD , in F , in the same Ratio as AB is divided

This Problem may be performed as well by one Point, O , as by two; if the Line, CD , be so situated, as to come within compass. From which construction it is evident, that AB and CD represent equal Lines, as well as being equally divided; ab and cd being equal, and the two Lines having the same Vanishing Point.

For, they represent parallel Lines, and they are both cut by parallel Lines, aO , bO , cO , &c. at equal Distances, ab equal cd , &c.

Or, it may be done by drawing two Lines, AI and CK , which are parallel to GH , through either Extremes, A and C , of the given Lines; by which construction, the Demonstration evidently appears from the last; seeing that, AI , and ab , or ab ; CK and cd are all divided in the same Ratio.

After the same manner, CD may be divided, perspectively, into as many parts as AB is divided into, and in the same ratio to each other.

The utility of this Problem is much of the same nature as the other; the former being, how to divide a Line, perspectively, in the proportion of the Original; and this shews how, to find the Proportion of the Original from the perspective Representation; by which means, any other Line may be divided the same.

In the former, the Vanishing Line was not necessary, only the Vanishing Point of the Line, which may be in any Plane whose Vanishing Line would pass through V , its Vanishing Point, as VE or VE . But, in this Case (the Lines having different Vanishing Points) the Vanishing Line, of the Plane they are in, must be had; and, it must also be observed, that both Lines are in the same Plane, or the Operation cannot be performed by one Vanishing Line.

P R O B L E M X.

The Vanishing Line of a Plane being given, and the Representations of two Lines in that Plane, having different Vanishing Points, to cut off, from any Point in one of them, a portion equal to that represented by the other, or in any known Ratio.

The different positions or situations of the Lines, to each other, may make this Operation appear very different; for which reason I shall give it variously, of which, the first is according to Brook Taylor.

Let AB be a given Representation of a Line, and FG the indefinite Representation of another Line. NM is the given Vanishing Line, and C its Centre. Fig. 47.

It is required to cut off (from the Point F) a portion, which shall be to that represented by AB in a known Ratio:

Pro-

Plate X. Produce AB to its Vanishing Point, D; and, through F, draw AH, to the
Fig. 47. Vanishing Line.

Draw CE perpendicular to the Vanishing Line and equal to its Distance, and join ED and EG.

Make EK and EL in the Ratio required; i. e. make EK to EL as the Original Line, represented by AB, is to the other; and draw EM, or EN, parallel to KL.

Draw BH and FD, intersecting in I; draw IM, or NI, cutting FG, in O or P.

Then, FO, or FP, represents a Line having that Proportion, to the Line which AB represents, as EL to EK.

DEM. If NM be considered as the Vanishing Line of a Plane perpendicular to the Picture; imagine the Triangle NEM turned up perpendicular to the Picture; or, if the Plane in which the Original Lines are situated, be inclined to the Picture, let NEM be supposed parallel to it; then, E is in the true place of the Eye.

Now, ED and EG are the Radials of AD and FG, producing their Vanishing Points, consequently they are parallel to them, respectively;† and make the same Angle DEG, at the Eye, as the Original Lines make with each other. (Cor. 1. Theo. 8.)

And, because EM is parallel to KL, D, G, and M are the Vanishing Points of the three Sides of a Triangle, EKL.

But, the three Lines, FI, FO, and IO, vanish in those Points, respectively; consequently, FIO represents a Triangle similar to EKL; the Angle DFG represents the Angle DEG (Prob. 4.) and consequently, IM represents a Line parallel to EM; i. e. to KL.

Therefore, the other two sides, FI and FO, or FP, have that Proportion to each other, respectively, as EL to EK.

But, because AB and FI, AF and BI have the same Vanishing Points, D and H, respectively, ABIF represents a Parallelogram; consequently FI represents a Line equal to the Original of AB;† and therefore, FO, or FP, represents a Line which has that Proportion to the Original of AB, as EK to EL.

N. B. If the Situation of the Line AB was such, that a Right Line, joining A and F, was parallel to the Vanishing Line NM, then BI must be drawn parallel also.

But, if a b, the given Line, be so situated, that the Line a F is so much inclined to the Vanishing Line as not to reach it within the compass of the Picture, take any Point, J, in the Vanishing Line, and draw Ja, Jb, indefinite; draw AD, at discretion, cutting them in A and B, and proceed as before.

For, AB and a b having the same Vanishing Point, D, also, Aa and Bb have the same Vanishing Point J, a b B A represents a Parallelogram; and consequently, AB, a b, represent equal Lines.

Fig. 48. Case 2nd. Let the given Lines, AB and FP, be so situated as to cross each other; and, it is required to cut off, from the Point I, of their Intersection (or any other) a part IF or IP equal, or in any Ratio to the Original of AB.

Draw Ac parallel to the Vanishing Line, MD, indefinite; and, from the Point H, or any other, at discretion, in the Vanishing Line, draw HI and HB, cutting Ac in c and b; then, Ab is to bc in the Ratio of the Original of AB to BI.

Make ac equal to Ab and draw aH, cutting AB in d; dI represents the same measure as AB (Prob. 8.) viz. ac equal to Ab.

Produce AB to its Vanishing Point, D, and FI, to H, if it be necessary.

C being the Center of the Vanishing Line, draw CE perpendicular to HD, and equal to its Distance; and draw ED, EH.

Make EK, EL equal, or in the Ratio required, and join KL; to which, draw EG parallel.

Draw Gd, cutting IF in F; then, if EK be equal EL, IF represents a Line equal to the Original of dI, that is, of AB, as it was required; or, whatever Ratio EK has to EL, FI represents the same to AB.

Again. Draw mn, through I, parallel to Ac, cutting aH in m.

Make In equal Im; draw nH cutting AD in O; and draw OG, cutting FH in P.

IP represents a Line equal to IF, equal AB; i. e. to their Originals; or in the Ratio of EK to EL, whether equal or otherwise.

For, because am and FI have the same Vanishing Point, H, they represent parallel Lines; and, because mIn is parallel to ac, and to the Vanishing Line HD, amIc represents a Parallelogram; consequently, the Originals of mI and ac are equal.

But

Plate IX.

Fig. 39.

A geometric diagram illustrating a construction. It features a horizontal line AB and a vertical line EF intersecting at point C . Several diagonal lines are drawn, including AK , HL , GI , and JD . Points E and F are marked on the vertical line above C , while I and J are marked below C . A line segment EL connects point E to point L on line AB . Another line segment GI connects point G to point I on line JD . A small triangle is labeled X in the lower-left quadrant. The diagram is labeled "Fig. 39." in the upper center.

Fig. 41.

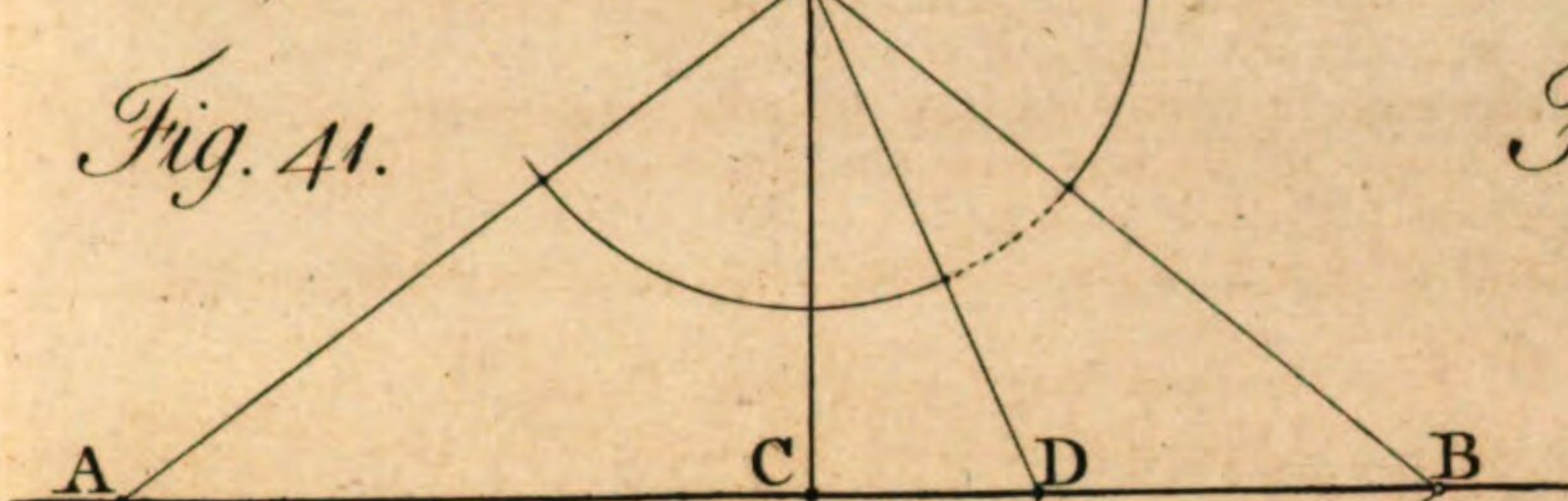


Fig. 43.

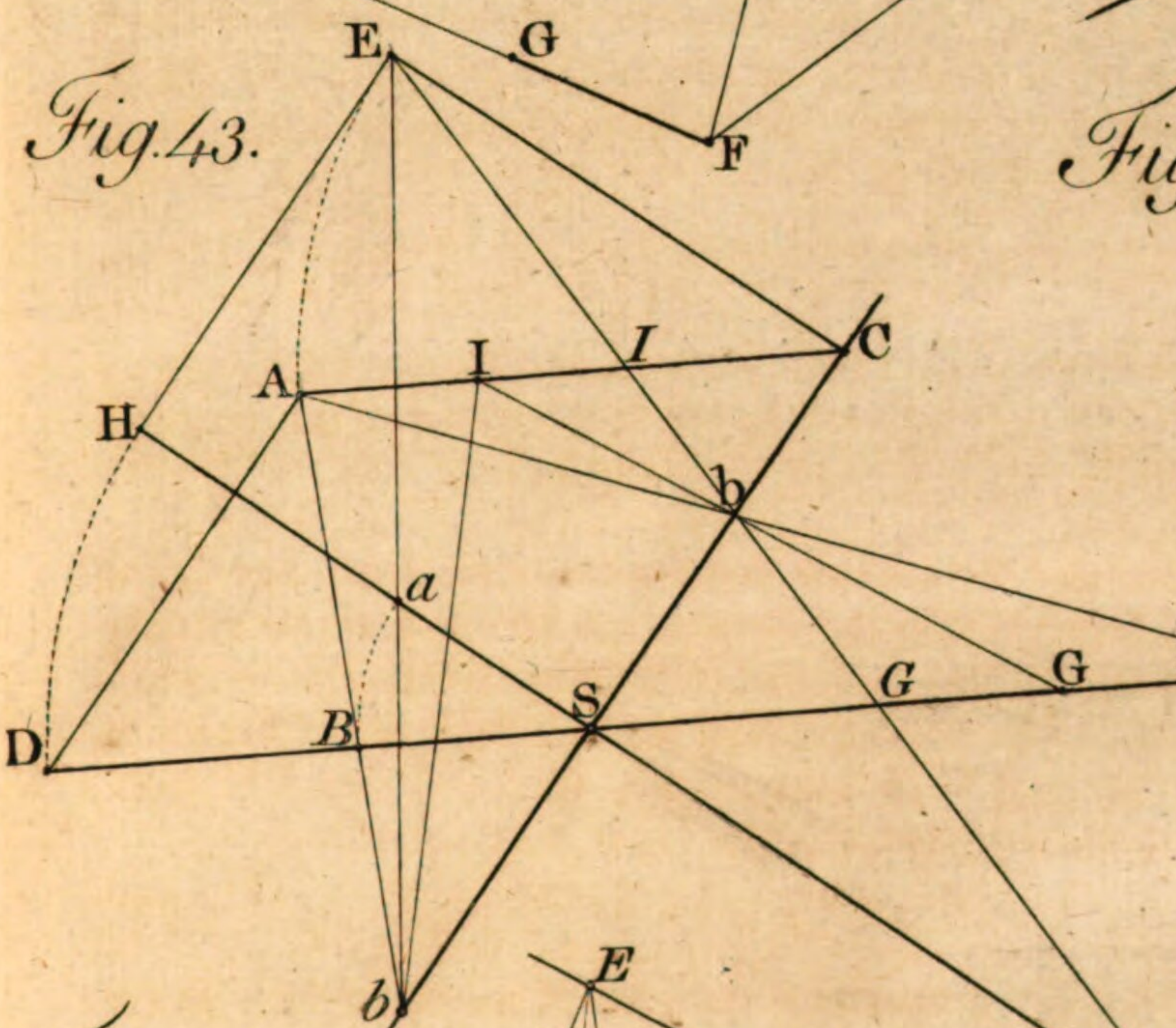


Fig. 45.

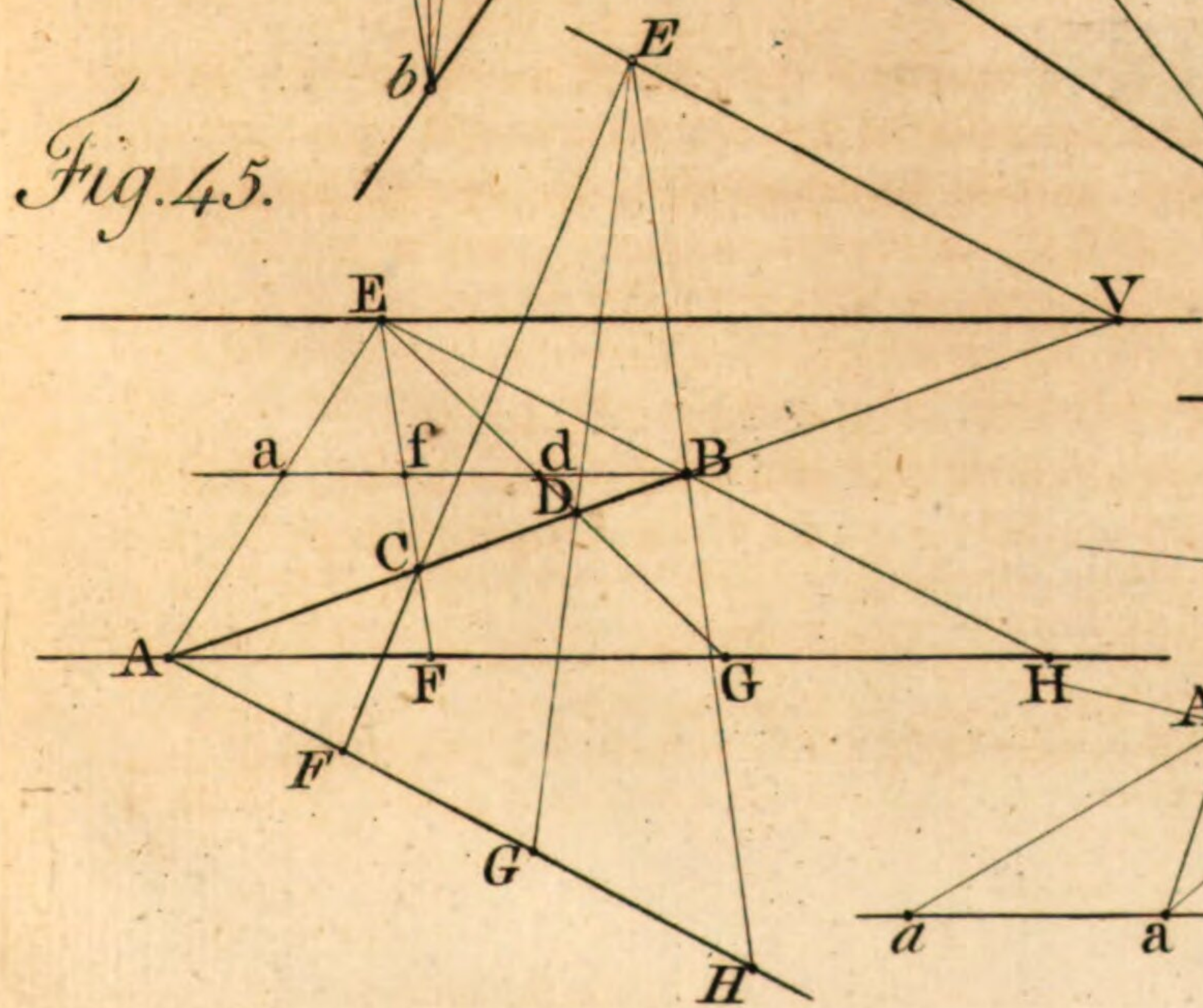


Fig. 40.

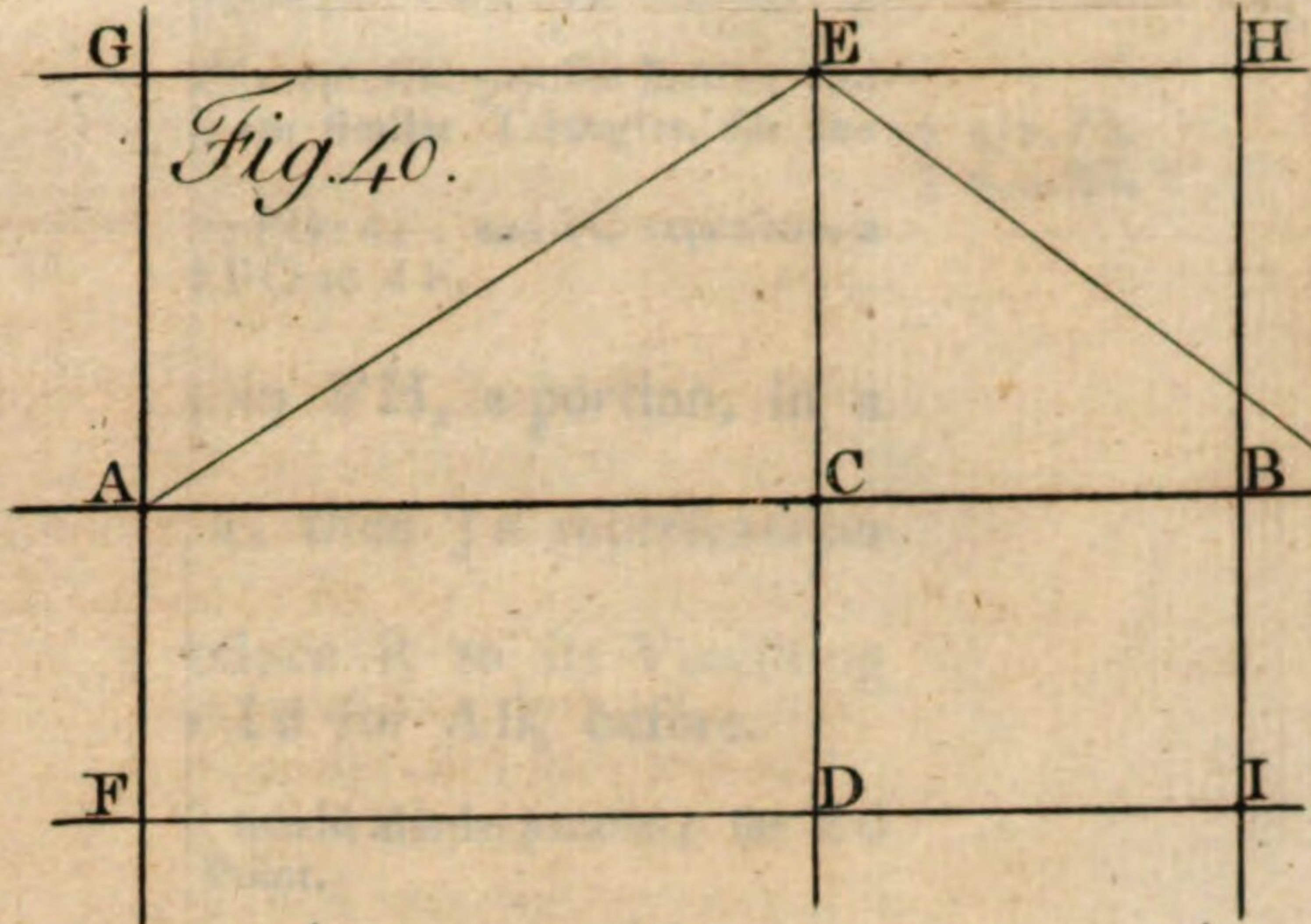


Fig. 42.

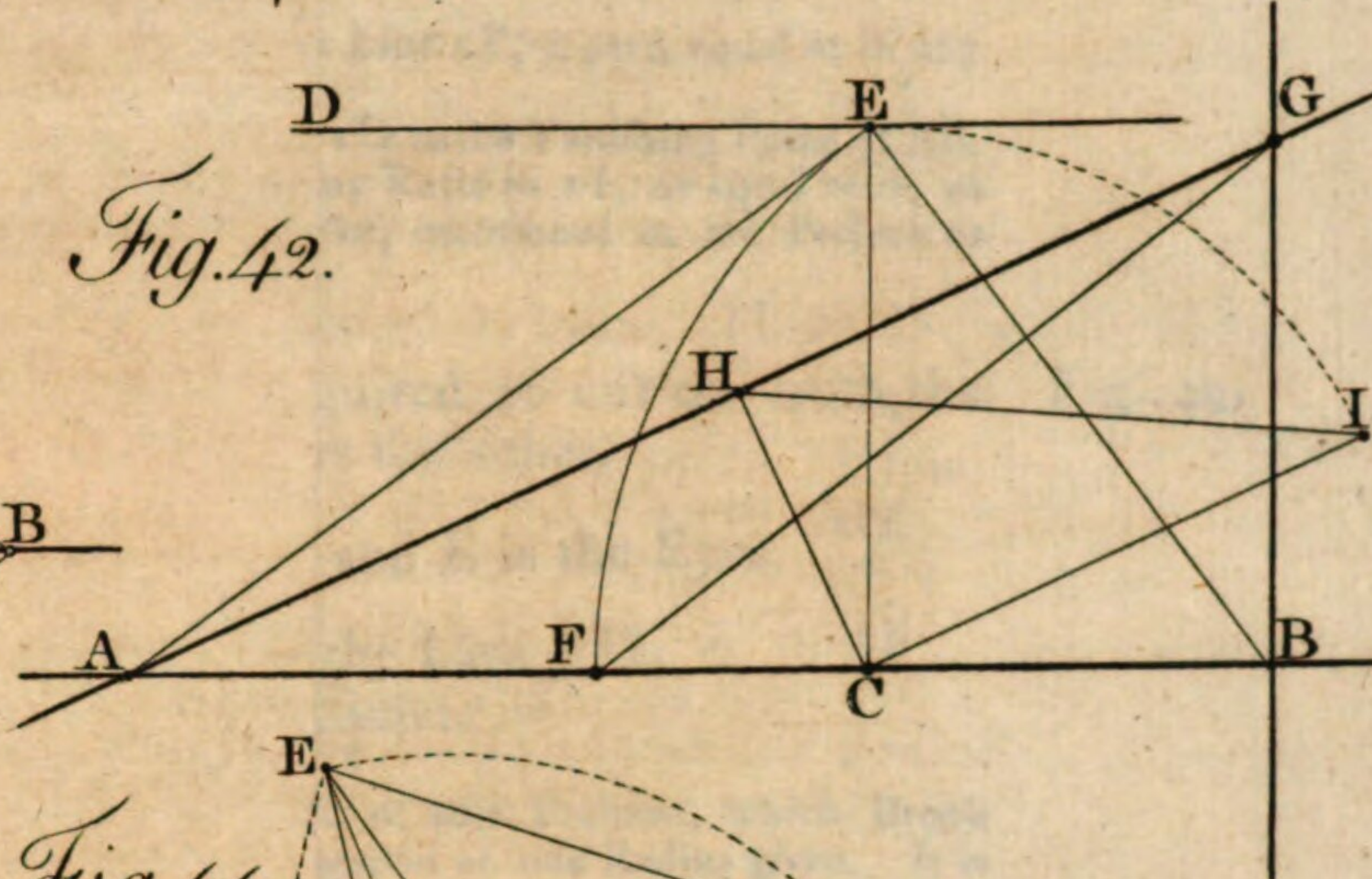


Fig. 44.

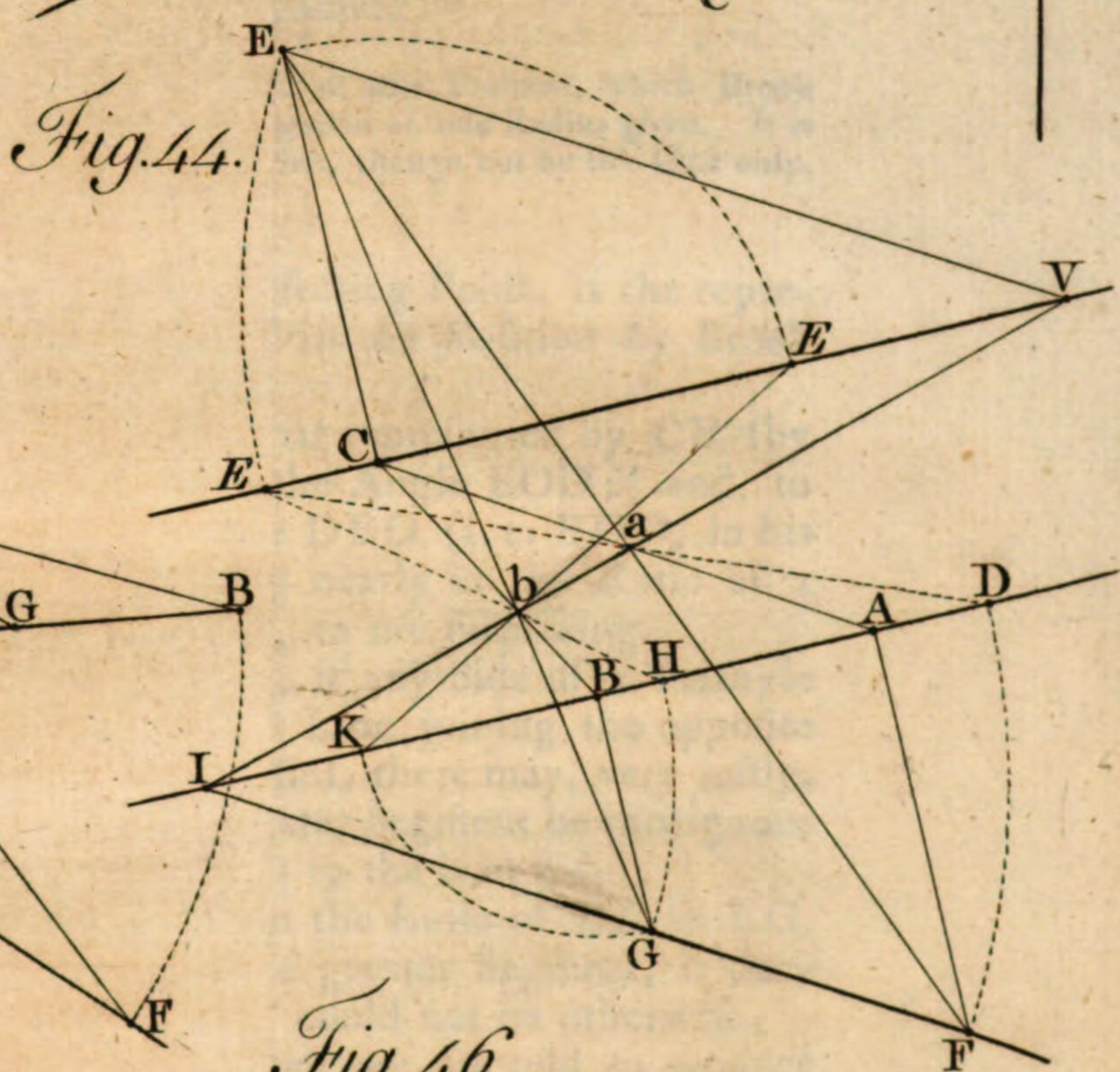
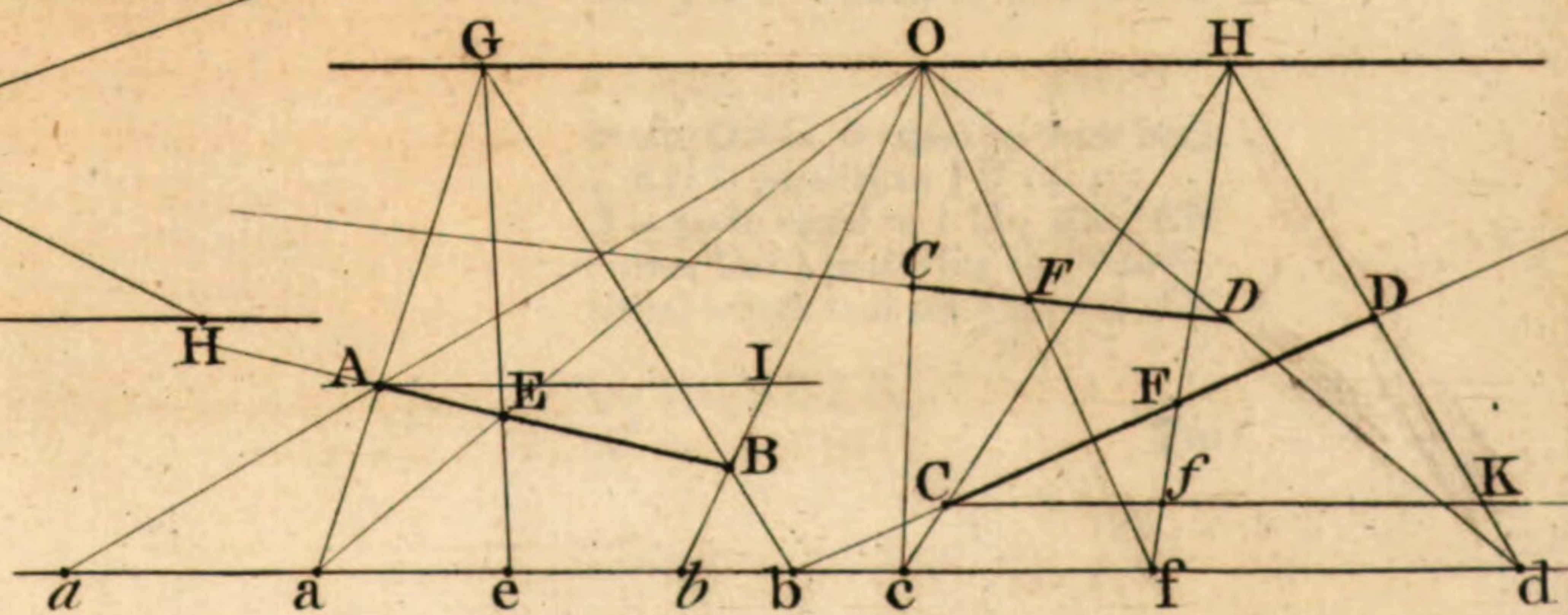
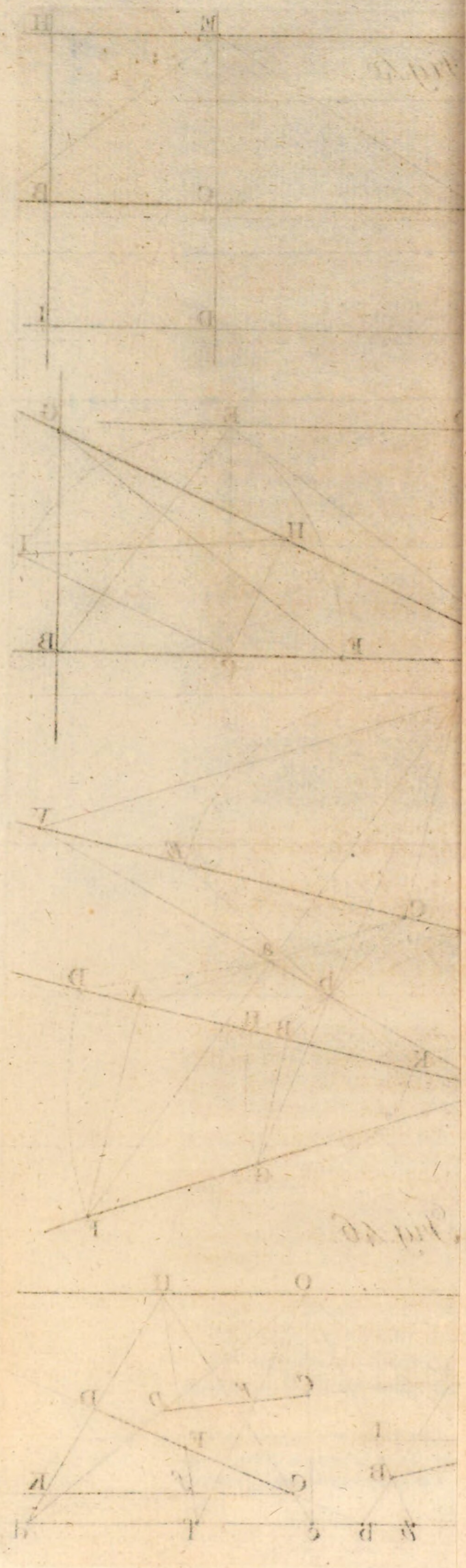


Fig. 46.





But, In was made equal Im , and nH represents a Line parallel to dH ; consequently, IO and Id represent equal Lines. (See Problem 8th.)

And, since OP and Fd have the same Vanishing Point, G , they also represent parallel Lines; and consequently, IOP , IdF represent equal Angles†; wherefore, they are similar Triangles, for the Angles PIO , dIF , are equal†.

But, they also represent congruous Triangles, for $IP:IF::IO:Id::PO:dF$; and IO represents a Line equal to Id ; consequently, IP represents a Line equal to IF , and PO to dF .

† 4. 1. El.
† 2. 1. El.

If it had been required to cut off, from the Point J , in FH , a portion, in a certain Ratio to AB ; draw BJ .

If BJ be parallel to HD , draw DJ cutting AB in a ; then Ja represents an equal Line as AB .

But, if BJ be not parallel to the Vanishing Line, produce it to its Vanishing Point, and proceed as by Fig. 47, using Ja for AB , as Id for AB , before.

N. B. If KL was parallel to the Vanishing Line, then PO and dF would also be parallel; for EG would be parallel, and consequently, could not produce a Vanishing Point.

Suppose it was required to cut off, from the Point a (Fig. 47.) in the Line aF , a part, equal or in any Ratio to the Original of AB .

Draw Aa till it cuts the Vanishing Line in J , and draw JB ; also draw aD to the Vanishing Point of AB . Then aD represents an equal measure as AB , and aF may be cut in any Ratio to aD , or equal to it, as in the next Case; which is the 3d Example, Prop. 16, of Brook Taylor, mentioned in the Preface to this Book.

Case 3d, Let AC or CB be the given Line. It is required to cut off from the Point C , a part, which represents an equal measure as the other. Fig. 49.

D and G are the Vanishing Points of the two Lines, and E is the Eye.

Draw ED and EG , and bisect the Angle DEG , by the Line EH .

Draw AH , which will cut CG in the Point B , as required.

This Case, or this position of the Lines, is but another Example of this Problem, which Brook Taylor calls finding the Representation of a Circle from the representation of one Radius given. It is certain that the whole Circle may be compleated, from a Radius given, though not by this Case only, but by both, as I shall exemplify.

Let AD and FG be drawn indefinite; C , their Intersecting Point, is the representation of the Center, and CB is the Radius given, in the Position by Brook Taylor.

He says, "make CA to represent a Line equal to that represented by CB (by the 15th)" viz. by the first Case of this; "i. e. bisect the Angle EOD ;" and, to make it still less intelligible, in his Diagram, the Angle DEG (i. e. EOD , in his Treatise) is not bisected, nor trisected, but is cut very nearly in the Ratio of 2 to 5, which negligence, in a Person of his sagacity, is, to me surprizing.

It is demonstrated in the 3d of the 6th of El. that, if any Side of a Triangle be divided in the Ratio of the other two Sides, a Right Line joining the opposite Angle and the point of Section will bisect that Angle. But, there may, very justly, be an exception to this; for, it is necessary that the greater Segment be contiguous to the greater Side, and consequently the lesser Segment to the least Side.

In the Triangle DEG , if DG be divided, in H , in the Ratio of DE to EG , then, EH bisects the Angle DEG ; because GH , the greater Segment, is contiguous to the greater Side, EG ; which, it is obvious, could not be otherwise.

In forming the Construction for proof of the Assertion, we are told to produce either Side, as GE , and make EJ equal to ED : and join JD ; which is proved to be parallel to EH .

For, because $ED=EJ$ the Angle $EJD=EJ D$ (9. 1.) and, because DEG is equal to them both (10. 1.) and $DEH=HEG$ (Con.) $JDE=DEH$ (Ax. 2.) therefore, EH is parallel to JD (4. 1.)

But, JE is the Radial of CB , produced, and ED of AC ; and EJ is made equal to ED ; also, EH is a Right Line from the Eye, parallel to JD (i. e. to KL , as in the former Case) producing the Vanishing Point H , of the Line AB (i. e. of IO and Fd , in the two former Cases) which cuts off CA and CB , representing equal portions of those Lines.

Hence may be seen the affinity between the two Cases, in bisecting the Angle DEG .

L 1

For

Plate X.
Fig. 49.

† 1. 1. El.

For $EJ = ED$, i. e. EK to EL , and EH is parallel to KL ; consequently, ACB represents a Triangle similar to KEL , or JED ; and consequently, D , G , and H are the Vanishing Points of the three Sides AC , CB and AB ; which is Isosceles, by Construction.

And, since DCG represents an Angle equal to DEG (Prob. 4.) consequently, ACG represents an equal Angle to DEJ †; therefore, the Sides, containing the external Angle DEJ , a. e. in this Case, made in the ratio (EK to EL) of the Originals, which AC and CB represent; and since they are equal, consequently, AC and CB represent equal Lines.

Now, CA and CB represent equal Lines, from the same Point C ; wherefore, if C be considered as the Center of a Circle, in Perspective, CA and CB are Radii of the Circle; and this is all that Brook Taylor has done towards finding the whole Representation, which is far from being sufficient.

In BC produced, make CF represent a part equal to what CB represents, and CI to CA , or CB ; then, BF and AI represent Diameters of the Circle.

Proceed as in Case 1st. by making EK equal to EL , and draw EN parallel to KL ; draw AN and BN , cutting BF and AD in F and I , the Points sought.

Or, having drawn AN , only, cutting BF in F ; draw FH , cutting AD in I .

The four Points, A , B , I , and F , are all in the Circumference of a Circle, whose Center is C ; for, CA , CB , &c. represent equal Lines.

But these four Points are not sufficient for completing a Circle in Perspective.

Draw HC and NC indefinite, and cut off, from the Center (C) Ca , Cb , Ci , and Cf , representing also equal measures, to those represented by CA , &c.

Make EM equal to EL ; join ML , and draw EO parallel to ML .

Also, make EL equal EK ; and draw EP parallel to KL .

Draw AO , OI , BP , and PF , cutting the indefinite Lines in a , i , b , and f .

The Angle NEH being bisected, by EQ , shews the Affinity to the first Case.

Through the eight Points, A , a , B , b , I , i , F , and f , an Ellipsis may be described, which will be the representation of a Circle in Perspective; from the given representation of one Radius, AC or CB .

P R O B L E M XI.

From three Points given, in the Circumference of a Circle, to find the Representation of the Circle; having the Vanishing Line of the Plane the Circle is in, and the place of the Eye.

Fig. 50. A , B , and C are the three given Points, LM is the Vanishing Line, and E is the place of the Eye, ES is the Distance of the Vanishing Line.

Draw AB and CB , cutting the Vanishing Line in I and K ; draw EI and EK .

Make the Angles KEL and IEM each equal IEK , producing the Points L and M , in the Vanishing Line.

Draw AK and AM , CL and CI , intersecting in D and F ; the Points D and F are in the Circumference, which passes through A , B , and C .

DEM. Because the Angles KEL , KEL , and IEM are equal (Con.) and E is the Eye, the Angles LDK , KBI , and IFM represent equal Angles (Prob. 4.) and consequently ADC , ABC , and AFC also represent equal Angles†.

† 2. 1. El.
§ 10. 3. El.

Therefore, those Angles touch the Circumference §; for they are in the same Segment, or stand on the same Ark, AbC .

Brook Taylor has made a very lame affair of this elegant Problem; notwithstanding his Principles are the same. By reason of the short Distance he has taken for the Eye, and the prodigious Dimensions of the Circle, it is the most distorted and preposterous Diagram in the whole Book. He finds no more than one Point and leaves his Readers to find out the rest. One thing I am much surprized at; he says, "make the Angle dOe equal to DOE ; or, having made an Instrument, containing

the Angle DOE, turn it round the Center till it comes into the Position dOe," &c. which, is so ungeometrical, that I could scarce conceive it to be the expression of so great a Man.

Now, here are five Points, A, D, B, F, and C, in the Circumference; but they are not sufficient for ascertaining the true Curve of the Ellipsis.

Therefore, draw AH at pleasure, cutting the Vanishing Line, in H.

Make the Angle HEJ equal IEK, and draw CJ, cutting AH in G, which is another Point in the Circumference of a Circle.

Thus may as many Points be found in the Circumference as are necessary to describe the whole Curve; which, passing through all the Points, A, G, D, B, &c. will be an Ellipsis; for, it is the Representation of a Circle in Perspective, seeing that those Points are all in its Circumference.

If there be too much Space between any two Points, another Point may readily be found; as a, or b, between A and C.

Draw a B, or b B, at pleasure, cutting the Vanishing Line in S, or O. Join SE, or OE, and make the Angles SEH and SEN, or OEP, equal to IEK, cutting the Vanishing Line in H, N, or P, respectively.

Draw HD, or NF, cutting aB in a; or PF, cutting bB in b; which Points, a and b, are also in the Circumference.

For, because AD and CB have the same Vanishing Point, K; also, AB and CF having the same Vanishing Point I, the Originals of the Arks, DB and DF, are each equal AC†; for AD and CB represent parallel Lines‡; consequently, BaD or F, and BAD or F, or BbF, represent equal Angles§, each being equal to the Original of ABC; i. e. IEK.

† Cor. to 10. 3. El.
‡ Cor. 1. Theo. 5.
§ Cor. 2. 9. 3. El.

Otherwise; draw MC, indefinite; produce ME, and make the Angle QER equal to IEK; ER, being produced, will cut the Vanishing Line, somewhere, if it be not parallel to it.

If ER be parallel to the Vanishing Line, draw Aa also parallel; or to the Point R, in which ER would cut the Vanishing Line, cutting MC in a.

For, the Angle QER + REM = two Right Angles†. And, the Angle MaR (i. e. AaC) represents the obtuse Angle MER; and, ABC represents an Angle equal to QER.

† 1. 1. El.

But, the opposite Angles of every Quadrilateral, inscribed in a Circle, are equal to two Right Angles‡. Consequently, AaC represents an Angle in the opposite Segment; for, AaC and ABC are opposite Angles, in the Quadrilateral ABCa.

‡ 11. 3.

There is not, perhaps, in the whole Book, a more elegant Problem than this, which induced me to give it a place, and to perfect it. Its utility is not so great; yet it may frequently be applied, by those Artists who do not care to be confined strictly to the Rules of Perspective.

For, having obtained three or more Points, the whole Circle may readily and accurately be determined; if they know the Distance of the Picture, and the Vanishing Line of the Plane of the Circle.

Having had occasion, in this Problem, for a Vanishing Point (R) which was not within the compass of the Picture, the next Problem shews how to determine the Distance of such Vanishing Points from the Center of the Picture, or Vanishing Line, and also from the Eye.

P R O B L E M XII.

The Vanishing Line of a Plane being given, and the place of the Eye, with a Line, from the Eye, inclining to the Vanishing Line; to find the Center of the Vanishing Line, and to determine the Distance of that Point, in which the inclined Line would cut the Vanishing Line, from the Center, and from the Eye.

AB is the Vanishing Line given, and ED is the inclined Line from the Eye, at E. Fig. 51.

Db is considered as the bounds, or limits of the Picture, and B is the Point in which ED, produced, would cut the Vanishing Line, AF, produced.

Draw

Plate X. Draw EC perpendicular to the Vanishing Line, cutting it in C, its Center.
 Fig. 51. Take CG any part of CE, a half, a third, a fourth, as ED is less or more inclined to AB, and draw GF parallel to ED.

† 2. and 4. of 6. El. Then, as $CG : CE :: CF : CB$ †; that is, if CG be a third part of CE then CF is a third part of CB, and GF of EB.

Or, draw EA perpendicular to ED, cutting the Vanishing Line in A.

Then, find a third Proportional to AC and CE (Prob. 31. Geo.) it will be CB.

For, AEB is a Right Angle (by Construction) and EC is perpendicular to AB;

† 7. 6. El. therefore, as $AC : CE :: CE : CB$ †;

Also as $AC : AE :: CE : EB$; i. e. EB is a fourth Proportional to AC, CE, & AE.

In Numbers, they are thus determined, by a Scale of equal Parts.

§ 9. 6. El. First. Take AC and CE by the Scale; square CE, and divide the Product by AC, which, will give CB§; for AC, CE, and CB are three Proportionals.

† fame. Or, if the Triangle CFG be used, multiply CF by CE, and divide the Product by CG; the Quotient will be CB†. For, CG, CF, CE, and CB are four Proportionals.

2nd. Since $AC : CE :: AE : EB$, consequently they are four Proportionals. Wherefore, multiply CE into AE, and divide the Product by AC, the Quotient will be EB, the Distance of the Vanishing Point, B, from the Eye.

If the Distance of the Picture, CE, be known, and the Angle of the inclination to the Picture, of one Side of a right angled Object, be determined; the Vanishing Points, and their Distances, are determinable.

Let AB be the Horizontal vanishing Line, and C the Center of the Picture.

Draw CE perpendicular to AB, and equal to the Distance given.

† Def. 22. Make the Angle CEA equal to the Angle given (or to its Complement) cutting the Vanishing Line in A, the Vanishing Point of one Side†; from which all the rest are determinable.

Or, if the Distance, CE, be so great, that it cannot be laid down on the Picture (as is frequently the Case) take CG half, a third, a fourth, or any portion of CE, and proceed as before; making the Angle CGH equal to CEA, the given Angle. Then will CH be half, a third, &c. of AC, or whatever portion CG was taken of CE§; by which means, the distance of the Vanishing Point A, from the Center, C, is ascertained.

§ 4. 6. El.

Make HGF a Right Angle, i. e. draw GF perpendicular to GH, cutting the Vanishing Line in F; then will CF be also half, a third, &c. of CB, the distance of the other Vanishing Point, B, from the Center C. Also, GF will be the same portion of EB.

Thus may the real Distances, be found, and the place of the Eye transposed to the Picture, as it will be exemplified in Practice, when their real places cannot be had thereon; all which may be found arithmetically, as follows.

Let the Distance of the Picture, CE, be given, equal 6,5 (Feet, or what you please) and let the Vanishing Point A be determined as above, or at discretion, on the Picture; viz. AC equal 2,6, from which all the rest may be determined.

First; to find the Distance of the Vanishing Point, A, from the Eye.

† Prob. 3. 7. 6. El. Square AC and CE, which being added together, the square Root of that Product will be AE†; for AE square is equal to AC added to CE square†.

† 20. 1.

§ Prob. 3.

7. 6. El.

Secondly; to find the Distance of the other Vanishing Point B, from the Center.

Square CE, and divide that Product by AC, the Quotient will be CB§.

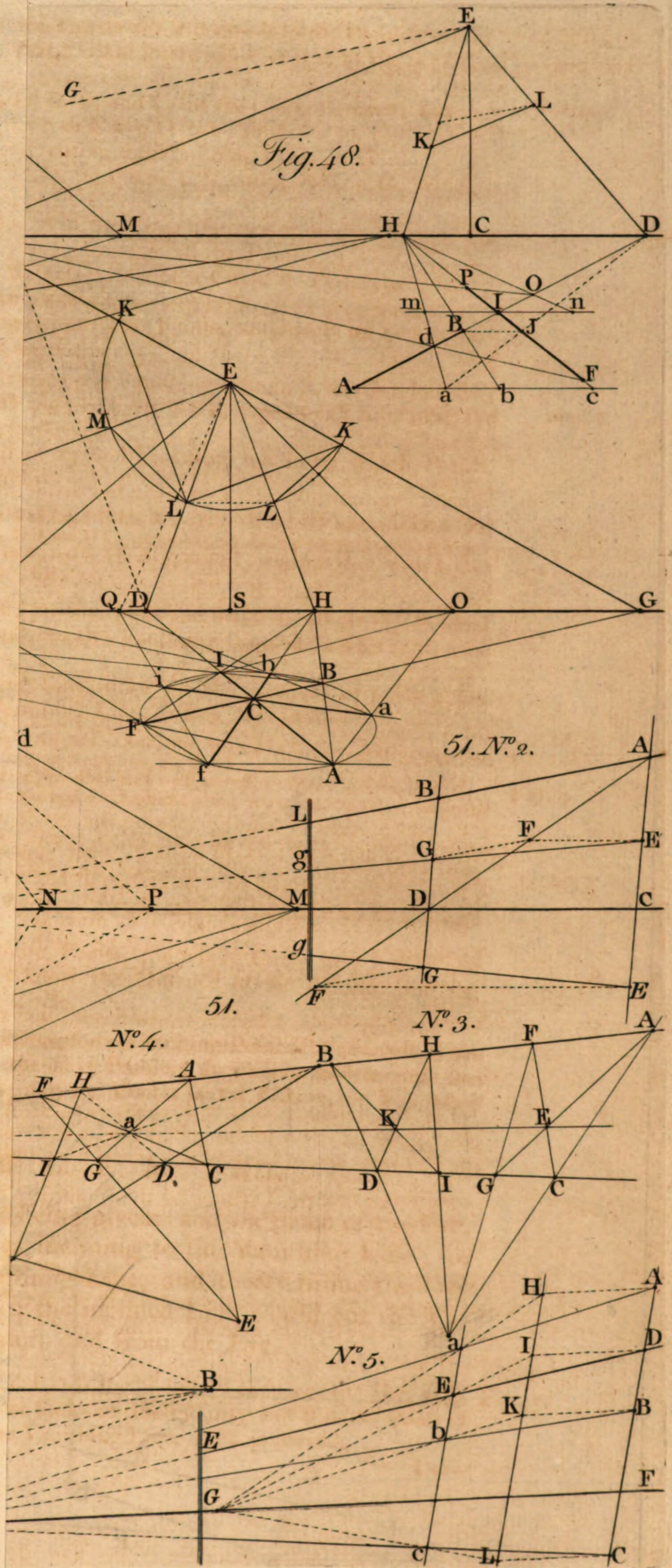
For, $AC : CE :: CE : CB$. Also, $AC : AE :: AE : AB$.

Thirdly; to find the Distance of the Point B from the Eye.

Having obtained AE, by the first, multiply CE by AE, and divide that Product by AC, the Quotient will be EB; for $AC : CE :: AE : EB$.

Th

Draw



The Distance of each Vanishing Point, A and B, from the Eye E, are as necessary to be had as their places on the Picture, which I shall exemplify and explain in its proper place.

First. AC and CE being given, to find AE; the Distance of A.

Square AC, viz. 2,6; multiplied by 2,6 15,6 52 67,6 Square of AC.	also, square CE, viz. 6,5 multiplied by 6,5 325 390 42,25 square of AC added 6,76 49,01	AE=7 7 squared 49 sum of both)49,01(7, sq. Root; =AE.
---	--	--

2ndly: To find CB; AC and CE being given.

3dly. To find EB.

Square CE; 6,5 6,5 divide by AC=2,6)42,25(16,25=CB	Multiply CE=6,5 by AE=7, divide by AC=2,6)45,5(17,5=EB.
--	---

Or; having found CB (by the 2nd) add the two Squares, of CE and CB, into one Sum; the square Root, of which, will be EB. (By 20. 1. El.)

When the two Vanishing Points, A and B, are known, to find the Distance of the Picture, CE; the Center C being given.

Multiply CB by AC, and extract the square Root of that Product, it will give CE the Distance of the Picture; by Prob. 4. 7. 6. El.

To find the Distance, CE, geometrically; A and B being given, the vanishing Points of Lines at right angles with each other, and C, the Center.

Draw CE, perpendicular to AB; and, having bisected AB, on F (the point of bisection) with the Radius AF, describe the Ark AE, cutting CE in E. CE is the Distance required, of the Picture, or of the Vanishing Line, AB.

For, AC:CE::CE:CB; consequently, AEB is a Right Angle; by 7. 6. El.

P R O B L E M XIII.

To draw a Line to a Vanishing Point which is not on the Picture,* its Distance from the Center being given, or some Line tending to the Point; the Vanishing Line of the Plane it is in, being also given.

Let AB be the given Vanishing Line, and C its Center.

Let I be the Intersecting Point of some Line; or the Representation of any other Point in the Line, given or found.

It is required to draw a Right Line, from the Point I, tending to B, which is out of the Picture; by the known Distance of the Vanishing Point B, from C, the Center of the Vanishing Line. Db is the limits of the Picture.

Fig. 51.
No. 1.

* By the Vanishing Point not being on the Picture is meant, only, that it does not fall within the prescribed Bounds or Limits. But the Picture may be imagined to be produced, as occasion may require, so that the Vanishing Points are always supposed to be on the Plane of the Picture.

Plate X. **Take CF equal half, a third, or any other equal part of CB.**
 Fig. 51. **Draw CI, and FJ parallel to CI. Make $FJ:CI::FB:CB$; i. e. make JF**
 No. 1. **equal half, two thirds, or the same Complement of IC, as FB is of CB.**
Draw IJ which will tend to the Point B.

Or; make $CK:CI::CF:CB$; i. e. if CF be a third part of CB, make CK one third of CI. Join KF, and draw IJ parallel to KF.

DEM. First. In the Triangle CBI, because JF is parallel to IC, $CF:FB::IJ:JB$. - 2. 6. El.
 Consequently, $CF:CF+FB$ (equal CB) $::IJ:IJ+JB$ (equal IB) i. e. as JF is to IC.

Therefore, IJB is a Right Line; for CBI is a right lined Triangle. - 2 and 4. 6. El.
 2nd. In the Triangle ICB, because $CK:KI::CF:FB$ (Con.) KF is parallel to IB. Q. E. D.

2ndly; by a Right Line tending to the Point B; the Distance not being known.

Let IJ be a Line tending to the Point B, in the Vanishing Line, AB.

It is required to draw, from the Point a, a Line tending to the same Point.

Draw aC and aI, at pleasure, making an Angle IaC, cutting the Vanishing Line in any Point, C, and the given Line at I.

Join IC; take any Point, K, in IC, and draw KF parallel to IJ, cutting the Vanishing Line in F. Draw KL parallel to Ia, and join LF.

A Right Line, ab, drawn through a, parallel to LF, will tend to the Point B.

Note. The Point is given at a and a, both without and between the given Lines; and the process would be the same if the Point was given on the other Side of the Vanishing Line; or any other Line, instead of the Vanishing Line, which tended to the same Vanishing Point.

DEM. In the Triangles IaC, IaC, because KL is parallel to Ia, $CL:La::CK:KI$. - 2. 6. El.

But, $CK:KI::CF:FB$; for KF is parallel to IB, by Construction.

Consequently, $CL:La::CF:FB$; therefore, LF is parallel to aB. Q. E. D.

Or, the same thing may be done in another manner.

No. 2. Let AB and CD be the two given Lines, and E is a Point given, through which it is required to draw a Line tending to that Point, in which AB and CD would intersect.

Draw AC, at pleasure (through E) and BD, parallel to AC, at discretion.

Draw either Diagonal, as AD; draw EF parallel to CD, and FG to AB, cutting BD in G; a Right Line, drawn through E and G, will tend to the same Point with AB and CD.

DEM. In the Triangle ADC, because EF is parallel to CD, the Sides AC and AD, are cut proportionally, in E and F; i. e. $AE:EC::AF:FD$; and because FG is par. to AB, $AF:FD::BG:GD$; wherefore, $BG:GD::AE:EC$; i. e. as AB is to BS, or CD to DS, the Point where the Lines meet.
 2ndly. When E falls without the two Lines Because EF is parallel to CD, $AC:CE::AD:DF$; and because FG is parallel to AB, $BD:DG::AD:DF$, i. e. as AC is to CE; i. e. as AB to BS.

‡ 2. 6. El.

Hence it appears, that nothing more is required than to find a fourth Proportional. For, having drawn a Right Line, AC, at pleasure, through the given Point, E, cutting any two Lines which tend to the same Vanishing Point; and, at a proper Distance, another, BD, parallel to the former (the farther off the better) BG (or LM) being divided, in G, as AC is divided in E; then, if a Right Line be drawn through the Points E and G (or g) it must necessarily tend to the same Point; for Right Lines, proceeding from the same Point, cut parallel Lines proportionally. This method is the most eligible because it is the readiest.

§ Cor. to 6. 6. El.

There are various ways of performing this, of which, those by Brook Taylor are very ingenious, and do not require any parallel Lines to be drawn.

No. 3 & 4. Let AB and CD be two given Lines, tending to one Vanishing Point, P.

It is required to draw a Line, through E, which shall represent a Line parallel to the Originals of AB and CD; and consequently, it must tend to the same Vanishing Point; seeing they are not parallel.

First,

First, when the Point *E* is between the two Lines.

Through the Point *E* draw two Lines, at pleasure, cutting the two given Lines, in *A*, *G*, *C*, and *F*; and, through *A*, *C*, and *F*, *G*, draw two Lines, meeting at *a*.
Draw *aH* and *aB*, at pleasure, cutting the given Lines in *I*, *H*, *B*, and *D*; join *BI* and *DH*, intersecting at *K*.

No. 3:

A Right Line drawn through *E* and *K* will tend to the same Point, with *AB* & *CD*.

2nd. When the Point *E* is situated without the two given Lines, *AB* and *CD*.

No. 4:

Draw *EA* and *EF* at pleasure, cutting the two Lines, *BF* and *CI*, in *C*, *A*, *F*, and *G*; join *AG* and *CF*, intersecting at *a*.

Draw any other Line, *BK*, indefinite; and, at *D*, where it cuts *CI*, draw *DH*, through *a*; also, draw *BI*, through *a*.

Lastly, through *H* and *I*, draw *HK*, cutting *BD* produced, at *K*.

A Right Line, drawn through *E* and *K*, will represent a Line parallel to the Originals of *AF* and *CI*; and consequently it will tend to the same Van. Point, *P*.

Although Dr. Taylor has given Demonstration of all the Problems, previous to this, he has not favoured us with a Demonstration of it. But a little consideration will make it very obvious, on inspection of the Figure.

In No. 3, because *AB* and *CD* have the same Vanishing Point, they represent parallel Lines; and if *a* be considered as the Vanishing Point of *AC*, *FG*, &c. they, consequently, represent parallel Lines.

Wherefore, *AFGC* and *IHBD* represent Parallelograms; and consequently, *E* and *K*, the Intersections of their Diagonals *AG*, *CF*, &c. represent the Centers of those Parallelograms†.

† 16. 1. El.

And since the Parallelograms are between the same Parallels, their Centers are, consequently, equally distant from each; therefore, *EK* represents a Line parallel to *AB* and *CD*.

In No. 4; because *BF* and *CI* represent parallel Lines, the Lines *AG*, *CF*, &c. which pass through the Point *a* are all cut proportionally in that Point; wherefore, the Originals of *BH* and *ID*, of *AF* and *CG* are in the same Ratio respectively, i. e. the Originals of *BH:DI::AF:CG*; consequently, *EA:EC::EF:EG*, i. e. as *KH:KI*, or *KB:KD*.

N.B. Cor. 1.
2. 6. El.

Wherefore, since *EA:EC::KH:KI*, consequently, *EC:CA::KI:IH*; or as any other Line drawn from *K*, whose Original is parallel to *EA*, would be cut, by *BF* and *CI*.

But, if *KH* be supposed parallel to *EA*, and *AH* to *CI*, *CAHI* represents a Parallelogram; wherefore *IH* is equal *CA*; consequently, *IK* represents a Line equal to *EC*; and consequently, *EK* represents a Line parallel to *CI*. For, *ECIK* also represents a Parallelogram.

5. If it be required to draw several Lines to a Vanishing Point which is out of the Picture, from various Points, in a given Line.

Let *A*, *B*, and *C*, be three Points in the Line, *AC*; let *DE* and *FG* be two Lines which tend to the same Vanishing Point, *P*.

No. 5.

At any Distance, at discretion, draw *HL* parallel to *AC*, and draw *AH*, *DI*, *BK*, and *CL* parallel to either Line (as *FG*) cutting *HL*, in the Points *H*, *I*, *K*, & *L*.

Assume any Point, *G*, in the same Line, *FG*, and draw *GI*, cutting *DE* in *E*; and, through *E*, draw *ac* parallel to *AC* and *HL*; lastly, draw *GH*, *GK*, and *GL*, cutting *ac*, in the Points *a*, *b*, and *c*.

Then, if Right Lines *Aa*, *Bb*, and *Cc* are drawn, they will tend to the same Point, *P*.

For, considering the Originals of *AC* and *HL* to be parallel to the Picture, and *FG* as the Vanishing Line of some Plane; because *AH*, *DI*, &c. are parallel to *FG*, and *Ha*, *Ie*, &c. have the same Vanishing Point, *G*, they are all in parallel Planes, of which *FG* is the Vanishing Line; and, because *ac* is parallel to *AC* and *HL*, the Original of *ac* is parallel to their Originals, and consequently may be in the same Plane with either (Ax. 5.) wherefore, *Aa*, *DE*, &c. represent parallel Lines, in the same Plane, *AacC*, or in parallel Planes *AHa*, *DIE*, &c. of which *FG* is considered as the Vanishing Line; and consequently, they vanish in the same Point in that Line.

In the Preface to this 3rd Book, I proposed giving some other Expedients, in this Section; but, on more mature consideration, I shall omit them, till they occasionally occur in the Work; when they will be more intelligible and better understood; and, being immediately applicable, in Practice, they will, at the same time that we acquire them, shew their use; by which means, they will be deeper rooted in the Mind, and the application of them, in future Examples, will be more familiar.

S E C T I O N V.

Of the PRACTICE of PERSPECTIVE, respecting P L A N E F I G U R E S.

HAVING, in the foregoing Section, exemplified and illustrated the Elements of Practical Perspective, according to Brook Taylor; which, notwithstanding they are so excellent in themselves, and of great utility in Practice, yet they do not lay a foundation whereon to begin; but teach, only, how to proportion one Part by another, either given or found, on the Picture; so that, a Novice, in these matters, cannot possibly apply them to real use. Nor, in my Opinion, would any Person ever be made a Practitioner, from that Treatise, unless he was endowed with an extraordinary Talent, and a very comprehensive Capacity; being quite conversant in Geometry, and particularly acquainted with the Doctrine of Proportion; having a clear Idea of Planes and their Intersections with each other, and of Right Lines cut by Planes.

Before I proceed to Figures, I shall shew, in three Problems, how to find the perspective Representations of Right Lines, in the three Positions, parallel, perpendicular, and inclined to the Picture; having the Intersection and Vanishing Line of the Plane they are in (their Distance from the Picture being known and the Position of the inclined Line; that is, the Angle of its inclination to the Picture, or to the Intersection, and its intersecting Point, or the seat of some Point in it; or the Representation of some Point in the Line.) How to proportion them, that is, to cut off such Portions, or Parts, as are the true perspective Representations of certain Parts in the Originals, (in which the whole foundation of Practical Perspective consists) is contained in the last Section (Prob. 8th, 9th and 10th) and are exemplified in this.

Prob. 6th shews how to find the representation of a Point on the Picture, any how situated; its Seat on the Picture and its Distance from its Seat being given; which, in reality, contains the whole; as it will be found hereafter. I shall, in the next Problem, give a more familiar and introductory Lesson, how to find the representation of a Point, situated on the Ground Plane; which is, undoubtedly, the first Plane to be considered. At the same time, let it be observed, that there is not the least difference, in the Operation, between the Ground Plane and any other, whose Intersection and Vanishing Line is given, and its Distance known; as it will be shewn.

Having, in the preceding, and in the next four, Problems, given the Elements of the whole, and fully demonstrated it; I shall not trouble the Reader with the Demonstration of every Operation, in the following Work; but only in particular Cases, which may not readily be deduced from the foregoing; as it would only swell the Work to an enormous bulk, but would not be of use to the Practitioner. Therefore, where I see occasion, I shall refer to the elementary Problems, or Theorems, for Demonstration, and to shew how each particular Problem is applicable in Practice, in various Cases, in the course of the Work.

Let it, here, again, be observed, that whenever any Point, Line, or Figure, is given in the Original Plane (the Intersection of the Plane being also given) it is supposed to be so situated on the other side of the Intersection, as it would be, if the Original Plane was turned over, on the Intersection, to the other Side of the Picture, making the same Angle with it; and (if it be not perpendicular) inclined towards the same Part.

See Fig. 37; the Triangle XYZ, on the other Side of the Picture, is inverted on this Side, for Practice.

P R O B L E M

P R O B L E M XIV.

To find the Representation of a Point, situate on the Ground Plane, or other horizontal Plane, its real Place being given thereon; the Intersection of the Plane it is in being given.

There are several ways to find the representation of a Point.

Plate XI.

Let A be an Original Point in the Geometrical Plane, of which, BD is the Intersection; C is the Center of the Picture, and CE its Distance; E is the Eye.

Fig. 52.
No. 1.

Through C , draw EF parallel to BD , the Intersection; then is EF the Vanishing Line of the Original Plane; which being horizontal, consequently, EF is the Horizontal Line, or Vanishing Line of the Ground Plane.

Now, since BD is the Intersection of the Original Plane, and EF is its Vanishing Line, if the Original Plane was produced infinitely, beyond the Picture, its whole perspective Representation would be between its Intersection and Vanishing Line; consequently, the Representation of any Point, Line, or Figure, in that Plane (beyond the Picture) must be somewhere between those Lines; to find which observe the following Rules. (See Introductory Preface; Page 109.)

Find S the Seat of the given Point; i. e. draw AS perpendicular to the Ground Line or Intersection, cutting it in S ; which is the Seat of the Point A ; because it is in a Plane perpendicular to the Picture.

Draw SC , and AE cutting it, in a , the Point sought. (See Problem 6.)

For, EA is a Visual from the Eye, at E , to the Point A , which would pass through the Picture at a , making Sa to aC , as AS to CE †; therefore, a is the Representation of the Point A . † Theo. 13.

METHOD 2nd. On C describe a Semicircle, with the Radius CE , cutting the Horizontal Line in E and F ; which are the transposed places of the Eye E to the Vanishing Line. (See Fig. 37, No. 1, the Vertical Plane, V , being turned down, on either Side, into the Picture.)

Therefore, having made CE or CF , on either Side, equal to the Distance of the Picture, make SB , or SD , equal to SA , and draw DE or BF , on either Side, it will cut SC in the same Point, a , as before.

For CE is parallel to SB or D , and, CE is to SB or SD , as CE to SA , viz. as the Distance of the Picture, to the Distance of the Original Point from its Seat, i. e. from the Picture. (See Prob. 6.)

If CE^2 , and SF be drawn perpendicular to SC , or parallel between themselves, it is still the same. For Fa is to aE^2 , as Sa is to aC , as before.

Note. This Method is the most eligible of all other; for, the Distance of the Picture being known (as it is always supposed to be) and being placed on either Side of the Center, and SB , or SD , equal to the Distance of the Point, on the other Side, ED or BF , is a Visual Ray from the Eye to the Original Point, as before.

N. B. If the Original Point be situated in the Station Line, as at A , the first method cannot be applied; because its Seat, D , being also in the same Line, DC and EA are one Line, and cannot intersect; in which Case, the Eye being transposed to E , on either Side, and A to B , then is EB a Visual Ray, from the Eye, on one side of the Picture, to the Point A (i. e. B) on the other Side; supposing the Vertical Plane, in which the Visual Ray must be, turned on CD , its Intersection with the Picture, direct before the Eye.

Plate XI. If f be the Seat, on the Picture, of a Point in any other Plane, (suppose Vertical) then fG being drawn, parallel to CE , is its Intersection; and, having drawn fC , make fG equal to its Distance, and draw GE , cutting fC in g , the Representation of G ; i. e. of a Point situated beyond the Picture at the Distance fG . Thus the Representation of any Point may be obtained, knowing its situation and Distance from the Picture.

No. 2. METHOD 3rd. Through the given Point, A , draw AB and AD , at pleasure, cutting the Intersection in B and D .

From E , the Eye, draw EF and EG , parallel, respectively, to AB and AD , cutting the Vanishing Line in F and G , the Vanishing Points of AB and AD .

Draw BF and DG , intersecting in a , the Representation of A .

For BF is the indefinite Representation of BA , and DG of DA ; consequently, the Point, in which they intersect, is the Representation of the Point in which the Lines BA and AD intersect. (Cor. 5. Theo. 11.)

N. B. The 2nd Method will be found, on inspection, to be the same as this; for, if EE and AD be drawn, they will be parallel, and EC is parallel to AS ; also CE is parallel to SD ; consequently, C and E are the Vanishing Points of AS and AD respectively. So that to find the Representation of a Point is to find the Representation of a Line; seeing, it must be supposed in some Line.

No. 3. METHOD 4th is rather a matter of curiosity than real use, being seldom, if ever, practised; it may be performed without either Intersection or Vanishing Line; nothing more being required than the Place of the Eye, and the Original Point; their Distances from the Picture being known, or the Ratio of their Distances.

On A the given Point, with the Radius AS , its Distance from the Intersection, or from the Picture, describe an Ark, BSD ; and, on E , with the Radius EC , the Distance of the Vanishing Line, or of the Picture, describe the Ark FCG .

Draw the Tangents, BF and DG , intersecting in a , the Representation of A .

Or, if the Radius be taken, in the Ratio of the Distances, respectively, it will be the same, i. e. the Tangents will cut each other in the same Point, a .

DEM. Draw AB and AD , EF and EG perpendicular to the Tangents, BF and DG .

Then the Trapezium $ABaD$ is similar to a FEG ; for $aB = aD$ and $aF = aG$; (C. 2. 16. 3. El.) also $AB = AD$, and $EF = EG$; the Angles at B , D , F , and G are Right, and $BaD = FAG$ (2. 1. El.) consequently, $BAD = FEG$. (See Th. 1. 10. 1. El.)

Wherefore, $Ba : aF :: AB : EF$; i. e. as $AS : EC$; or, as Aa is to aE , as in the first Method (No. 1.) for, AE is a Visual Ray, in both, and a is the Point in which it cuts the Picture.

P R O B L E M XV.

To find the Representation of a Line perpendicular to the Picture; its Place being given in the Original Plane, the Intersection and Vanishing Line of the Plane it is in, and the Place of the Eye.

Fig. 53. Let AB be the Original Line; AD is the Intersection of the Plane it is in, and ECE is the Vanishing Line; E is the place of the Eye.

Draw EC perpendicular to the Vanishing Line, cutting it in C , the Center; and, because AB cuts the Intersection, A is its Intersecting Point.

Draw AC , and BE cutting it in b ; then is Ab the Representation of AB .

Or (having drawn AC) make CE equal to the Distance of the Picture, and AB equal to the Original Line, AB , and draw BE , cutting AC , in the same Point b . In which process, the measures, it is obvious, must always be placed on contrary Sides of the indefinite Representation, or the Visual Ray cannot cut it.

DEM.

DEM. Because AB, the Original Line, is perpendicular to the Picture, EC, the Direct Radial, is its Radial; wherefore, C, the Center of the Picture, is its Vanishing Point †; and, because A is its Intersecting Point, AC is the indefinite Representation of AB, infinitely produced (by Theorem 12th.)

† Def. 22.

But, EB (or EB) is a Visual Ray, from the Eye, E, to some Point, B, in the Line; which must cut the Picture somewhere in the Line AC; which is the Section of a Radial Plane passing through the Original Line and the Eye †; and consequently it will cut it in b; making $Ab : bC :: AB : CE$.

† Theo. 1.

Therefore, since A, one extreme of the Line AB, is in the Picture, and b is the Representation of B, another Point in the Line, Ab is the perspective Representation of AB. Q. E. D.

To illustrate this, ocularly (See Fig. 37, No. 1.) turn up the Picture AIKB, vertical; also turn over the Plane W, till EC coincides with the Center of the Picture, then E will be in the true place of the Eye, and EC is perpendicular to the Picture, consequently parallel to all other Lines, which are perpendicular to the Picture; therefore, to AC and FD, &c. on the other side of the Picture; consequently, C is their Vanishing Point. (Def. L.)

Turn over the Plane AFDC, or X, till it coincides with W; then, the Plane WX is a Radial Plane, passing through the Original Line, ABC, and the Direct Radial, EC, its Parallel, consequently through the Eye; producing, by its Section with the Picture the Right Line RC; which is the indefinite Representation of AC; (Theo. 12) for, it passes through R, the intersecting Point of AB, and also through C, its Vanishing Point.

Now, EA, EB, and EC, are Visual Rays, from the Eye to the Points A, B, and C; and since they are Right Lines (Def. H) and the two Extremes, E, A, &c. are in the Radial Plane, WX, consequently, the whole Line, EA, &c. are in that Plane (Ax. 1.) and consequently, they will cut the Picture, somewhere in RC, the Intersection of the Plane they are in.

Therefore, in a, b, and c; as by Theorem 13th.

N. B. Any Point, B, in the Line AB, may be found, by drawing BB, at pleasure, and EE parallel to it; cutting the Intersection and Vanishing Line, in B and E, and drawing EB; as in Prob. 14.

Fig. 53.

Or, having drawn BB, at pleasure, and EE parallel to BB; make Ba to Ec, as AB to EC, and draw ae; which will cut AC in the same Point, a.

If the given Line does not cut the Intersection, as FG, it must be produced till it does, as at D; and then proceed the same as before; making DG equal DG, and DF equal DF; draw DC; and EF, EG, cutting DC in f and g; fg is the Representation of FG.

If I be the Intersecting Point of a Line, perpendicular to the Picture, whose Representation is required; draw IC; and IH, or IK, parallel to either the Horizontal or Vertical Line; make IH, or IK, equal to the Distance of any Point, in the Original Line, from its intersecting Point, and draw HE or KE, cutting IC in a. Ia is the Representation of a Line, perpendicular to the Picture; from its intersecting Point, I, equal to IH or IK.

It may appear somewhat strange to begin with perpendicular Lines before parallel, but since parallel Lines are found, best, by means of perpendicular ones, I presume it may not be thought improper or irregular.

PROBLEM XVI.

To find the Representation of a Line, parallel to the Picture; in a Plane perpendicular to the Picture.

Let AB be an Original Line, in the Ground Plane; C is the Center of the Picture, ECL is the Vanishing Line of the Ground Plane, and DI is its Intersection with the Picture.

Fig. 54.

If the Original Line was applied close to the Picture (as DF) it would have its full Dimensions delineated thereon, and be its own Representation.

But, if AB be situated at some Distance from the Picture (as AD) draw AD and BF, perpendicular to the Intersection, cutting it in D and F, the Seats of the extreme Points, A and B. Draw DC and FC.

Draw

Plate. XI. Draw CE perpendicular to the Vanishing Line, and equal to its Distance; and
Fig. 54. draw AE and BE, cutting DC and FC in a and b; which are the representations of A and B.

A Right Line, joining a and b, will be parallel to AB, and is its Representation.
Or, having drawn AE only, projecting the Point a, in DC; a b, drawn parallel to the Intersection, or Vanishing Line, till it cuts FC, is the Representation of AB.

DEM. Because AD and BF are Lines perpendicular to the Picture, C, the Center, is their Vanishing Point (Prob. 15) and D and F are their Intersecting Points †; consequently, DC and FC are the indefinite Representations of AD and BF ‡.

† Theo. 11. But EA and EB are Visual Rays, from the Eye to the Original Points, A and B; which, it has been proved, would cut the Picture, somewhere, in the Indefinite Representations, DC and FC, making $Da : aC :: AD : CE$, &c. by Theorem 13.

§ Theo. 10. But, the Representation of a Line, parallel to the Picture, is parallel to its Original §; and consequently to the Vanishing Line of the Plane it is in; and has that proportion to the Original, as the Distance of the Picture, to the Distance of a Plane passing through the Original Line parallel to the Picture; which shall be proved, here.

¶ 15. 1. El. Now, $DF = AB \parallel$; and, in the Triangle DCF, because ab is parallel to DF, the Triangle aCb is similar to DCF; wherefore, as $Ca : CD :: ab : DF$, i. e. as a b is to AB, equal DF. (2 & 4. 6. El.)

But $Ca : aD :: CE : AD$; consequently, $Ca : CD$ (i. e. $Ca + aD$) :: $CE : CE + AD$.

But, CE is equal to the Distance of the Picture, and AD is equal to the Distance of the Original Line, beyond the Picture; wherefore, $AD + EC$ is equal to the Distance of a Plane, passing through the Original Line, parallel to the Picture.

Therefore, a b, the Representation, is to AB, the Original Line, as the Distance of the Picture, CE, is to $CE + AD$. Q. E. D.

If CE be made equal to CE, the Distance of the Picture, and Da equal to the Distance of the Point A, from the intersecting Point D; E is the place of the Eye, transposed to the Vanishing Line; and Ea is a Visual Ray, as before, projecting the same Point, a.

Which Method is the best, on account of its intersecting DC more direct; especially when the Point D falls near the Vertical Line. Besides, it is not always necessary or convenient to place the Eye in the Vertical Line, at E, or to have the Original Line drawn in the Geometrical Plane.

The Demonstration of it is the same as before. For $CE = CE$, and $Da = DA$.

Note. The Representations, a and b, of the Extremes, A and B, of any Line, may be found, by any of the Methods for finding the Representation of a Point, in Problem 14th, which, it would be superfluous to repeat here.

N. B. Any other Line, as GH, being parallel to the Picture, is found after the same manner.

Or, being situated in any other Plane, as GH, whose Intersection, ab, and Vanishing Line, ECG, is given, or found; whether the Plane it is in be perpendicular to the Picture, or inclined, having the Center and Distance of the Vanishing Line, or of the Picture.

a and b are the Seats of G and H, and EH or Ec are Visual Rays; the rest is obvious.

P R O B L E M XVII.

To find the Representation of a Line, any how inclined to the Picture, situated in a Plane perpendicular to the Picture; having the Intersection and Vanishing Line given.

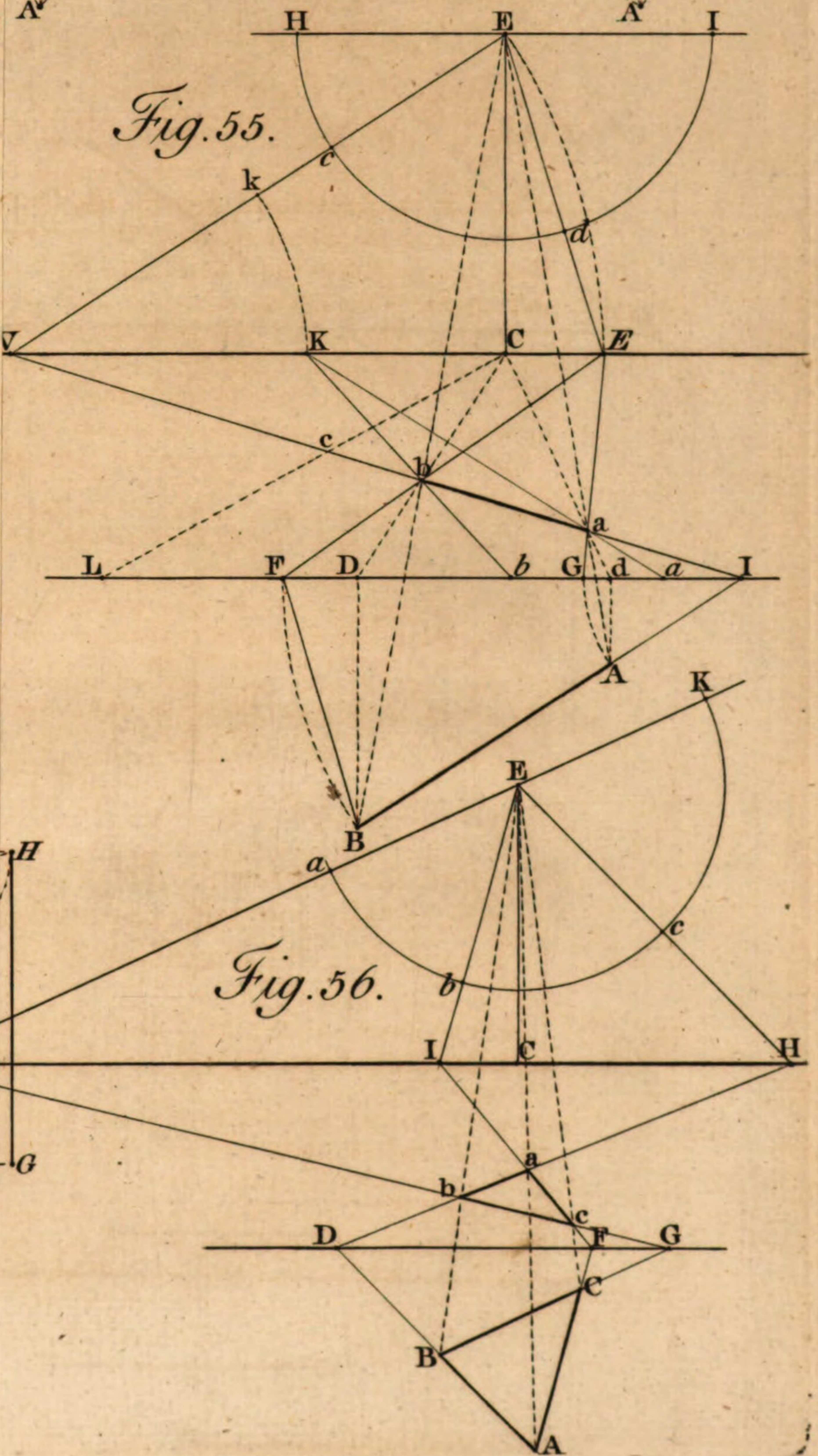
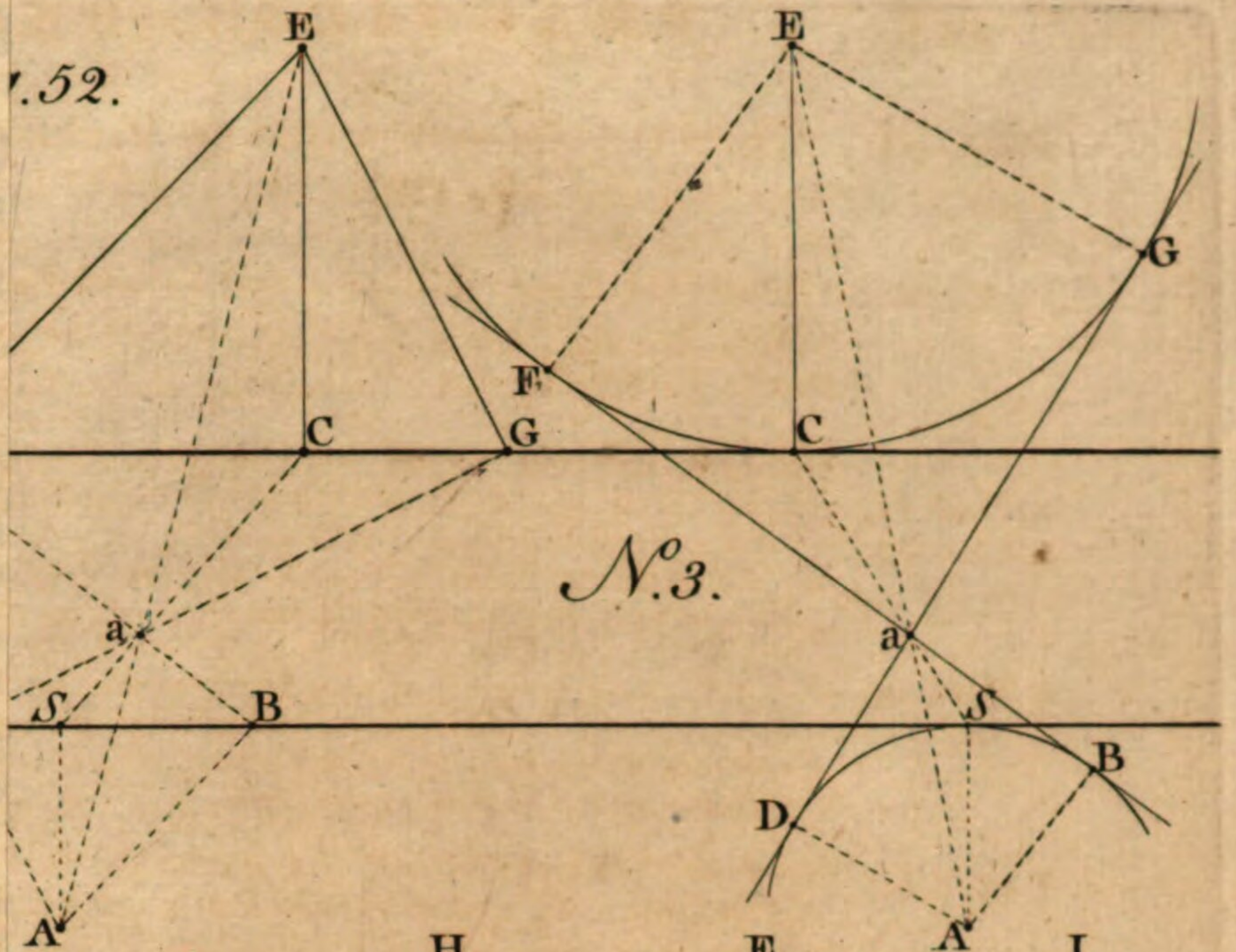
Fig. 55. Let AB be an Original Line in the Ground Plane, whose Intersection is LI, and Vanishing Line, VC; C is the Center of the Picture.

Draw CE, perpendicular to the Vanishing Line, and equal to the Distance of the Picture. Produce BA, to its intersecting Point, I; and draw EV, parallel to AB, cutting the Vanishing Line in V, the Vanishing Point of AB.

Draw IV, the indefinite Representation of AB; and the Visual Rays, AE, BE, being drawn, will cut it in a and b, the Representations of the two Extremes, A and B. ab is the finite perspective Representation of AB.

Or

152.



Or make VE equal to VE , IG equal IA , and IF equal to IB .

Draw GE and FE , cutting IV in the same Points, a and b .

Or, the Seats of the extreme Points being found, by drawing Ad and BD , perpendicular to the Intersection; dC and DC , being drawn, project the same Points a and b , as before.

DEM. Because EV is a Right Line, from the Eye, parallel to the Original Line, and cuts the Picture in V , V is the Vanishing Point of the Line AB †; and I being its intersecting Point, IV is its indefinite Representation‡; a and b are the Intersections of the Visual Rays, with the Picture, as proved in the former Problems. Therefore ab is the Representation of AB . † Def. 22. ‡ Theo. 12.

GE and FE also project the same Points, a and b .

For VE is parallel to FI , and equal to EV , the Distance of the Vanishing Point; also IG is equal to IA , and IF to IB ; by Construction.

Wherefore, if EE and BF be drawn they will be parallel; for the Triangles, EVE and BIF , are similar Isosceles; and since IF , IB are respectively parallel to EV and VE , conf. BF is parallel to EE .

Therefore, E is the Vanishing Point of BF ; and conf. $Fb:bE::Bb:bE$, i. e. as $Ib:bV$, &c.

N. B. This Method of proportioning inclined Lines will be found the most convenient, in Practice, of all other; and it may also be observed, that if the Representation, a , of any Point, A , in the Original Line, be given or found; and the Distance of that Point, from the Intersecting Point, I , or from the Picture (as Ad) the Representation of any other Point, B , in that Line, may be determined, its Distance from A being known, without the Intersecting Point I .

The Inclination of AB being known (equal BIF) and the Vanishing Point, V , found; by making the Angle HEV , with the Parallel of the Eye, HJ , equal BIF ; or CEV equal to its Complement; or, if EE be the Radial of any other Line whose Vanishing Point is E , make the Angle EEV equal to the Angle which the two Lines make with each other; all which, produce the same Point V .

Then, having made VE equal VE , the Distance of that Vanishing Point from the Eye; and, if a be the known Representation of some Point A , in the Original Line (AB) and FI the Intersection of the Plane it is in, draw the indefinite Representation, aV , from that Point, and draw Ea cutting the Intersection, in G ; make FG equal to the Distance the Point B lies from A , and draw EF , cutting the indefinite Representation, aV , in b , the Representation of B .

By which means any other Point in that Line may be obtained.

If the Vanishing Point, V , be out of the Picture, having found its Distance from the Center, C , and from the Eye, E (by Prob. 12) CE will be equal to the Difference; i. e. make CE equal VE , less by VC .

Or, when the Vanishing Point is in the Picture, and the Point E cannot be had thereon; take any Portion of VE , viz. VK half VE ; draw Ka , cutting the Intersection in a ; make ab equal half AB ; or the same Portion VK was taken of VE , draw Kb , which will project the same Point, b , for the Representation of B , as before. This Expedient will be found, frequently, necessary in Practice.

If the Representations, a and b , of any two Points, A and B , in any Line, be found; their Seats, d and D , are ascertained by drawing Ca and Cb , from the Center, to the Intersection, FI , of a Plane perpendicular to the Picture, in which the Original Line is situated, cutting it in d and D .

By which means, the Representation of any other Point, in that Line, may be found; making DL to Dd , as the Distance of the Point from B , is to AB , and draw CL , cutting aV in c , the Point sought. (See Prob. 8.)

After some one or other of these Methods, all Lines inclined to the Picture are drawn on the Picture, and divided perspectively, as the Original is divided; either by the real measures, being applied, or by the known Ratio of the Originals. Various Expedients for performing the same thing will be found necessary, because the same Method cannot always be applied, in all Cases; for which reason, I have given all the Methods which are really useful.

These Methods of proportioning inclined Lines are general and applicable in all Cases whatever; and, on inspection of the Figures, they will be found the very same as for Lines perpendicular to the Picture. For the Center of the Picture being the Vanishing Point of all such Lines, its Distance is laid down, on either Side as is most convenient, on the Vanishing Line, from the Center; and the Lines, which vanish in the Center, are proportioned by the very same means. (See Prob. 15, Fig. 53.)

O o

When

Plate XI. When the Vanishing Point, V , cannot be had, on the Picture, the transposed place of the Eye, E , may be thus found.

Fig. 55. The inclination of the Original Line, to the Intersection, being known subtract it from 180 Degrees, or two Right Angles; take half the sum of the remainder, and make the Angle VEE equal to it.

It may be found, geometrically, thus.

Through E , draw HEJ , the parallel of the Eye, parallel to the Vanishing Line; make HEk equal to the Angle of Inclination of the Original Line; bisect the remainder, kEJ , by the Line EE , cutting the Vanishing Line, at E , the transposed place of the Eye, for the Vanishing Point V .

§ 9. 1. El. For, the Triangle EVE is Isosceles (EV being equal VE) consequently, the Angle $VEE=VEE$ equal EEJ , by construction, and by 4. 1. of Elements.

Hence it is evident, that Ib is the perspective Representation of IB .

† Cor. 1. For, suppose BIF to be the Original of the Triangle bIF ; one, Side, IF , being in the Picture, therefore, it has no Vanishing Point†.

Theo. 2. Now, EV is parallel to the Side IB , and EE to BF ; wherefore, V and E are the Vanishing Points of the other two Sides, and IV , FE their indefinite Representations; consequently, Ib and IF represent equal Lines; for IF being in the Picture, retains its full Dimensions, and is its own Representation on the Picture; and, Fb represents the other Side, FB ; therefore, Ib represents IB .

P R O B L E M XVIII.

How to find the perspective Representation of a Triangle, having the Original given, in any Plane, whose Intersection and Vanishing Line is also given, and the Place of the Eye.

Fig. 56. ABC is the Original Triangle, DG is the Intersection, and LH the Vanishing Line; E is the Eye.

Produce the three Sides, AB , AC , and BC , to the Intersection, cutting it in D , F , and G , the intersecting Points of the Sides, respectively.

Draw EH , EI , and EL , respectively parallel to AB , AC , and BC , cutting the Vanishing Line in the Points H , I , and L , their Vanishing Points.

Draw the indefinite Representations, DH , FI , and GL , cutting each other in the Points a , b , and c , and giving the representation of the Triangle by their Intersections.

This is manifest, seeing that the Sides of the Triangle, are in the Lines AD , AF , and BG ; consequently, their Representations must be in the indefinite Representations of those Lines, and consequently, between their Intersections (by Theorem 1 and 12.)

† Cor. 3. N. B. The Angles LEI , IEH , and HEK , at the Eye, are equal, respectively, to the Angles ACB , BAC , and ABC ; and they are also equal to two Right Angles†; and so are the three Angles of the Triangle†.

‡ 10. 1. El. Hence, if any one Side of the Triangle, as ab , be given, on the Picture, the Vanishing Points, I and L , of the other two Sides, are determined by Problem 4th. And, by drawing Ia and Lb , intersecting at c , the Triangle is completed.

See this illustrated, by moveable Planes, in Fig. 37.

§ Def. 14. Raise up the Picture $AIKB$ perpendicular to the Ground Plane, and let the Horizontal Plane be placed parallel to the Ground Plane, i. e. perpendicular to the Picture; or if the Picture be inclined to the Ground Plane, the Horizontal Plane making an equal Angle with the Picture, as it makes with the Ground Plane, will be parallel to the Ground Plane. In which Case, the Lines EN , EO , and EL are the Radials of the three Sides of the Triangle XYZ on the other Side of the Picture; being respectively parallel to them §. Consequently, the Points N , O , and L , are their Vanishing Points||; B , P , and S are their Intersecting Points, and BN , PO , and SL are their indefinite Representations, producing the perspective Representation, xyz , by their Intersections.

|| Def. 22. Let the Picture be turned down, and imagine the Geometrical Plane turned over on its Intersection, AB , to the other Side; in which Case, the Triangle is inverted. Turn down the Horizontal Plane into the Picture; the Radials EN , EO , and EL , are still parallel to the three Sides of the Triangle, and produce

produce the same Vanishing Points, N, O, and L; also, the Visual Rays EX, &c. being drawn on the Picture, it is obvious they would pass through the Picture, to the Original Points X, Y, and Z, cutting it in x, y, and z, their Representations.

N. B. The Angle NEO, which the Radials EN and EO make, at the Eye, is equal to the Angle Y, of the Triangle: for, they are respectively parallel to them. EO and EL, the Radials of YZ and XZ, make the Angle OEL equal to the Angle Z; and if NE or LE was produced beyond the Eye, E, they would make an Angle equal to X; which is consonant to Cor. 1st, Theorem 8th.

P R O B L E M XIX.

How to find the Representation of a Square or other Rectangle, given in the Geometrical Plane; one Side being parallel to the Picture.

If the 15th and 16th Problems be well understood, there will be little occasion to explain the Method of proceeding in this; for, if any Rectangle have one Side parallel to the Picture, the other two adjoining Sides must, necessarily, be perpendicular to the Intersection of the Plane it is in, if not to the Picture.

Let ABFD be a Square; one Side, AB, lying close to the Picture, consequently it is in the Intersection; AD and BF are therefore perpendicular to it. C is the Center of the Picture, or of the Vanishing Line, EE, of the Plane of the Square, AB, is its Intersection.

Plate XII.
Fig. 57.

Now, AD and BF are perpendicular to the Intersection, therefore they vanish in the Center. (See Problem 15.)

Draw AC and BC, their indefinite Representations; make CE, on either Side, equal to the Distance of the Picture, or Vanishing Line, and draw BE (or AE) cutting AC in d, the Representation of D, (or BC in f.)

Draw df parallel to AB. AdfB is the representation of the Square ABFD.

For, BE is the indefinite Representation of the Diagonal, BD; E being its Vanishing Point; for EE is parallel to BD, (CE being equal to CE, and AD to AB) and DF being parallel to the Picture, its Representation, df, is consequently parallel to the Intersection. (Prob. 16.)

2. If another square be required, draw fE, cutting AC in g, and draw gh parallel to df. By which Expedient any length of AC may be obtained.

If the length AG had been required, equal twice AD; AG on the Intersection being made equal twice AB, and GE drawn, gives the same Point g; as before.

Or, if the Diagonal of the whole be drawn, BG, draw EK parallel to BG; or make the Angle CEK equal GBH, cutting the Vanishing Line in K, the Vanishing Point of that Diagonal; draw BK, cutting AC in g, as before.

3. If the Square be at some Distance from the Picture, as ABFD, produce the two perpendicular Sides to the Intersection, cutting it in a and b; also produce the Diagonal FA to I, its intersecting Point; or, make aI equal aA, and proceed as in the former Case. The Figure explains the rest.

COR. Hence, a Pavement of Squares, having their Sides parallel to the Picture, may be delineated, with great facility.

Let AB be the Ground Line, and ECD the Horizontal Line.

No. 1.

Take the geometrical measure of a Square, and apply it, on the Intersection, AB, as often as it is required, from A to B; as a, b, &c.

From each Division, draw Right Lines to the Center, AC, aC, &c. and draw a Diagonal, from A or B, to the Eye, at E or D, cutting each indefinite Representation in the Points a, b, c, &c. through which, draw the Lines FG, HI, &c. parallel

Plate XII. parallel to the Intersection, or Vanishing Line, and the several Figures X, Y, Z, &c. are the Representations of Squares on the Picture; which may be repeated, by drawing other Diagonals to any length or width.

Now, if one of these Squares (as Y or Z) was single, it would scarce have the appearance of a Square, having no other, contiguous to it, to bias the judgment; but, by the affinity of the whole, the Eye (being accustomed to see Objects as they appear, in all situations) is not offended, and readily gives the assent; altho' it is certainly capable of determining, that the several Representations of Squares, are not Squares, but have the appearance, only, of Squares, in certain Positions and Situations.

P R O B L E M XX.

To find the Representation of a Square, or other Rectangle, whose Sides are all equally inclined to the Picture.

First, by the Original Figure being geometrically drawn, in its determined Position to the Picture; the Intersection of the Plane it is in being given.

Fig. 58. Let ABCD be a Square, the Sides of which are equally inclined to the Picture. C is the Center of the Vanishing Line EE , or of the Picture; E, E , are the transposed places of the Eye, to the Vanishing Line, viz. CE equal CE .

As one Angle of the Square, A, touches the Intersection, it is, consequently, the Intersecting Point of the two Sides AB and AD.

Let the other two Sides be produced to the Intersection, at F and G.

Draw AE , both ways; also, draw FE and GE , diagonal ways, cutting each other. $abcd$ is the Representation of ABCD.

For the Point A being in the Picture, is its own Representation, AE , AE are indefinite Representations of AB and AD; and FE and GE , of FC and CG (Theo. 12) consequently, they cut each other in the representations of the several Angles, B, C, and D. (Cor. 5, Th. 11.)

If the Rectangle HIKL be at some Distance from the Picture, the Sides being produced to their intersecting Points, a, b, c, d , and the indefinite Representations aE, bE , &c. being drawn (as in the Figure) gives the Representation $hikl$ of that Rectangle; its Sides being parallel to the Sides of the Square.

EV , parallel to the Diagonal, IL , produces its Vanishing Point.

Note. In this Case, it may be observed, that there is no necessity for the Eye, i. e. the Distance of the Picture or Vanishing Line, being placed above it, but placed equally on either Side of its Center, C, in the Vanishing Line, as CE . The Squares, or Rectangles (wherever they are situated in the Original Plane) having the same Position to the Picture, have their Sides parallel, and consequently, they have the same Vanishing Points.

N. B. The Diagonals of the Square are, in this Case, the one, BD, parallel, and the other, AC, perpendicular to the Picture; consequently, their Representations are either parallel, as bd , or vanish in its Center, as Ac .

Let it be, here also, particularly noticed, that E , being the place of the Eye, in the Vanishing Line (commonly called the Point of Distance) is the Vanishing Point of the Diagonal of a Square, whose Sides are parallel and perpendicular to the Picture. Consequently, if the Diagonals are parallel and perpendicular to the Picture, they are the Vanishing Points of its Sides.

By which Points, all Lines perpendicular to the Picture are proportioned, perspectively; as it may be observed in the preceding Problems.

2nd. How to find the Representation of a Square, in this Position, not having the Figure drawn out geometrically, only its measure and place known.

Let A be the Intersecting Point of an Angle of the Square, situate on the left side of the Station Line; at the Distance AJ.

Make AF and AG each equal to the Diagonal, and proceed as before.

Or,

Or, by the measure of its Sides.

Make EF equal to the Diagonal of a Square, whose Side is CE ; i. e. make EF equal to the Distance of the Vanishing Point, E , from the Eye, equal EE .

Make Af equal to AB and draw fE , cutting the indefinite Representation AE in b , the Representation of the Angle B .

Draw bd parallel to FG , the Intersection, cutting AE in d ; and, lastly, draw bE and dE diagonal ways, cutting each other, which compleats the Figure.

COR. Hence, a Pavement of Squares, diagonal-ways, may be delineated.

Fig. 58.
No. 1.

Let AB be the Ground Line and ED the Horizontal vanishing Line.

Make Aa , ab , &c. equal to the Diagonal of the Square; make CE , CD equal to the Distance of the Picture (C being the Center.)

Draw AE , aE , &c. and AD , aD , &c. cutting each other in the representations of Squares, placed diagonal-ways.

Through d , where AD and BE intersect, draw ef parallel to AB ; and where it cuts the several Lines, drawn from a , b , c , &c. viz. in a , b , &c. draw Da , Db , and Ea , &c. contrary ways, by which means they may be continued at pleasure.

P R O B L E M XXI.

To find the Representation of any Rectangle, obliquely situated to the Picture.

First, by having the Original drawn in the Geometrical Plane; the Intersection, Vanishing Line and its Center being given.

$ABCD$ is the Rectangle to be delineated; FI is the Intersection of the Plane it is in; KL is the Vanishing Line, and C its Center.

Fig. 59.

Make CE , equal to the Distance, and perpendicular to KL .

Draw EK and EL , parallel to the Sides of the Rectangle, AB and BC , respectively, producing their Vanishing Points K and L .

The Original being at some Distance from the Picture, produce every Side DA , CB , &c. to the Intersection, cutting it in F , G , H , and I , their Intersecting Points.

Draw the indefinite Representations FL , GL , HK , and IK ; which, by their mutual Intersections, give the Representation, $abcd$, of $ABCD$.

METHOD 2. By the Seats of every Angle, on the Picture, and their Distances from their Seats, respectively.

If the Original be in a Plane perpendicular to the Picture, the Seats of all its Angles are in the Intersection of the Plane they are in.

Let a , b , c , and d , be the Seats of the Angles A , B , C , and D , respectively.

Draw aC , bC , &c. to the Center; make ab equal to the Distance of the Point A , from its Seat, be equal to the Distance of B , cd of C , and df of the Ang. D .

Make CE and CF each equal to the Distance of the Picture, and draw bE , eF , dF , and fE , cutting aC , bC , &c. in the Points a , b , c , and d , respectively; which are the representations of the several Angles A , B , C , and D .

Join the Points a and b , b and c , &c. as in the Figure; and the Quadrilateral, $abcd$, is the representation of the Rectangle, $ABCD$, situated as in the Figure.

Note. This Method, is used by all the old writers on Perspective; particularly in the Jesuits.

In which process it may be observed, that there is no occasion for the Vanishing Points, K and L ; for if they made use of Vanishing Points, at all, they were found by producing the Sides ba , bc , &c. to the Vanishing Line; i. e. to the Horizontal Line, for they know no other.

The Difference, which is very material, will be explained in the Appendix.

P p

METHOD

PlateXII. METHOD 3. By the known Proportion of the Original; its Position, Situation, and Distance being determined.

Fig. 60.

The Original Figure, ABCD, is drawn out in the Geometrical Plane, to shew how the measures, &c. are applied, but it is, otherwise, of no use in the operation; as the careful and accurate observer will perceive.

IN, the Intersection; KL, the Vanishing Line; C, its Center; and CE its Distance, are given, the same as before.

Through E, draw HI, parallel to the Vanishing Line; draw EK and EL, making the Angles, HEK, and IEL, equal to the known Inclination of the Sides of the Rectangle (AB and DC) to the Intersection, respectively; i. e. make HEK equal to ABF, and IEL equal to CBG; FG being parallel to the Intersection, the Angles ABF and CBG are equal to their inclination to it †.

† 4. 1. El.

Make DB equal to JB; i. e. to the distance of the nearest Angle, B, to the Station Line, and draw BC; also, make Bd equal to its distance from the Intersection (equal BB) and, CE being made equal to CE, draw dE, cutting BC in b, the Representation of the Angle B. (Prob. 14.)

Draw the indefinite Representations, bK and bL, from the Point b.

It remains, now to cut off (from b) ba and bc, in the perspective Representations of AB and BC, the Originals.

Make KE¹ equal to KE, and LE² equal to LE; which points are used for proportioning all Lines which vanish in K and L respectively. (Prob. 17.)

Draw E¹b, cutting the Intersection in b; make ab equal AB, and draw aE¹, cutting bK in a, the Representation of A.

Also draw E²b cutting the Intersection in b² and make b²c equal BC (the other Side, whose vanishing Point is L) and draw cE² cutting bL in c, the Representation of C, another Angle of the Figure.

From the Points a and c, draw aL and cK, intersecting at d, which compleats the Figure; the Originals of those Sides, being parallel to the Originals of ab and bc.

This Method, which is perfectly consonant to the new Principles by Brook Taylor, may appear to some Persons more difficult than either of the other, particularly the first, which is performed, also, entirely on the same Principles; the difference is very obvious, notwithstanding the effect is the same, as it may be seen, by comparing the Figures; or by comparing both, with the 17th Problem, which contains all the various Methods of proportioning inclined Lines, in general.

In the first, there is a necessity for having the Original Figure drawn geometrically, either on the Picture or somewhere apart; for which there is not, frequently, room to spare on the Picture; and we are liable to errors, in transferring the intersecting Points to the Intersection of the Picture; but, without the Original being placed in the very Position we cannot draw the Radials, or Parallels, from the Eye producing the Vanishing Points; as by that Method.

Whereas, by the last Method, the Angles, being known, are made equal to the Originals; in which Case, the Radials would be parallel to the original Lines being in their true places.

Or, if there be not room on the Picture, or interfere with the Objects, the Vanishing Points and their Distances, from the Center and from the Eye, are all determinable, by Problem 12th; the Vanishing Points, K and L, and their Distances KE¹ and LE² being ascertained by it.

There is likewise no need for the Original Figure on the Picture, but being any where drawn out, geometrically, or its measures being known, and the Position determined, they are applied to the Picture with the greatest facility, for which, a little Practice will render it quite familiar; regarding always, carefully, to make use of the proper Points for particular Lines, and to distinguish between the Vanishing Points and those which are used, only, for cutting indefinite Lines in the Ratio required.

Note. The Rectangle ABCD, in this Figure, is in the same Situation, but differently inclined to the Picture, as the Rectangle ABCL, which is the Plan, or Seat of the Object, on the Ground Plane of the Apparatus.

P R O B L E M XXII.

To find the Representation of a regular Pentagon, in any Position to the Picture.

PlateXIII.
Fig. 61.

Let ABCDF be a regular Pentagon, having one Side, AB, parallel to the Intersection, IK, consequently parallel to the Picture.

LM is the Vanishing Line, and E the Eye.

Produce

Produce the inclined Sides, FD, CD, AF, and BC, to the Intersection, cutting it in G, H, I, and K.

Draw EL, EM, &c. respectively parallel to them, producing the Vanishing Points, L, M, N, and O, of each Side.

Draw the indefinite Representations GL, HM, IN, and KO; producing, by their intersections, the Figure, *fjcd*, of the Original FJCD, (No. 1) and *Ifdc K* of IFDCK (No. 2) so that, the representation of one Side, AB is wanting, in each; which, on account of its parallelism to the Picture, has neither Intersecting nor Vanishing Point†; and must be found by Problem 16; or, by drawing a Visual Ray, EA, cutting the indefinite Representation, IN, of the Side AF, in a; or, make NP equal NE, and Ia equal IA, and draw aP. (Prob. 17.)

† Cor. to Theo. 2.

Having, by any of these Methods, found a, the Representation of A, draw a b, parallel to the Intersection, cutting KO in b; which compleats the Figure.

2nd. How to determine all the Vanishing Points in this Position, without the Original Figure on the Picture.

Through E, draw RS parallel to the Vanishing Line; and make the Angles REL, LEO, &c. each of 36 Degrees; i. e. divide the Ark of the Semicircle, R23S, into five equal Parts, and produce the Lines E1, E2, &c. to the Vanishing Line, cutting it in L, O, &c. the Vanishing Points of the Sides of a Pentagon, having one Side parallel to the Picture.

The reason of this is obvious; for three of those Angles, viz. REN, is equal to the Angle of a Pentagon; and since one Side is parallel to the Picture, RE is parallel to it; and consequently, EN will be parallel to AF, another Side; the Angle REN being equal BAF.

Also, the Angle which any two Sides, not contiguous (as AF and CB) make with each other, viz. FJC, is equal to one of those Angles; wherefore, EN being parallel to one of those Sides, EO is consequently parallel to the other. (By 6. 1. El.)

See this fully explained, after Problem 11th, in the 4th Book of Elements.

To find the Representation when every Side is inclined to the Picture has nothing particular; for, if every Side be produced to its intersecting Point, and their Vanishing Points are found by drawing parallels to every Side, from the Eye; the indefinite Representations being drawn, produce the Representation of the Original; as in the last Problem, or Prob. 18.

If the Vanishing Point of any Side be found, all the rest are determined as before; by producing that Side and describing a Semicircle; and dividing it into five equal Parts, as in the Figure.

P R O B L E M XXIII.

How to find the Representation of a Pentagon, having only one Side given, in its true Place and Position, in the Geometrical Plane.

Let AB be the given Side.

Fig. 62.

It is required to find the Representation of a regular Pentagon, whose Side is equal to AB; and inclined to the Picture in the Angle ADF; or to the Intersection FD. IM is the Vanishing Line, C is its Center, and CE its Distance.

Through E, draw EH parallel to the Vanishing Line, and make the Angle HEI equal to BDG, the given Angle, producing the Vanishing Point I.

Produce BA to D; draw the Indefinite Representation DI; and find the finite part a b, the representation of AB (by Prob. 17) i. e. draw the Visual Rays AE and BE; or, make IP equal IE; and, DF, DG, equal to DA, and DB, respectively; draw FP and GP, cutting DI in a and b.

Produce IE, and describe a Semicircle NacO; divide the Ark into five equal Parts, at a, b, c, and d; draw Ea, Eb, &c. to the Vanishing Line, producing the Vanishing Points, K, L, &c. of the remaining Sides of the Polygon.

Having obtained a b, the Representation of AB, as above; draw aM and bL the indefinite Representations of two Sides, from those Points; for, IaM represents an Angle, IEM, equal to the Angle of a Pentagon; and IbL represents an Angle equal to IEL; which is equal to an external Angle of a Pentagon.

Draw

Plate XIII. Draw a K, cutting bL in c; bc is another Side of the Pentagon; for, ac represents a Diagonal (which, in a Pentagon, is parallel to the opposite Side) whose Vanishing Point is K.

Draw If, through c, cutting aM in f; cf represents a Diagonal parallel to the Side ab; consequently, they have the same Vanishing Point I; and consequently, af represents another Side.

Lastly; draw fK, and bM cutting it in d, and draw cd, which compleats the Figure, abcdf, required.

The Vanishing Point Q (which is out of the Picture) of the Side cd, and its parallel Diagonal bf, has not been wanted in this process.

Nc and Ob are Diagonals, EN, Ec, or EO and Eb, being supposed Sides of a Pentagon; and EQ, EK are Parallels to them, from the Eye, producing their Vanishing Points. (See Prob. 10.)

Note. If ab or bc, or any Side in the Representation had been given, the whole Figure may be compleated, as above, without the Intersection.

P R O B L E M XXIV.

To find the Representation of a regular Hexagon, situated any how to the Picture.

There is no Figure whatever, except a Square, easier to describe than a Hexagon.

To have the Original Figure drawn in the Geometrical Plane, it is evident, is the same as has already been explained, in the foregoing; I shall, therefore, beg leave to pass over that description.

Fig. 63. Let AB be a Side, given, of a regular Hexagon; the Original of which, is parallel to the Picture. KL is the Vanishing Line.

Make KEL an equilateral Triangle, whose Perpendicular is CE.

Through E draw HI parallel to the Vanishing Line, and, on E, describe a Semicircle; which, divide into three equal Arks, at a and b.

Draw Ea and Eb, and produce them to the Vanishing Line, cutting it in K and L; which, are all the Vanishing Points required for this Position.

Draw AK and BL; make Ab and Ba each equal to AB, in AB produced; and draw aK and bL.

Draw BK and AL, or AC and BC, cutting them in F and G, and join FG, which is parallel to AB, and compleats the Figure. ABCGFD.

A regular Hexagon having an even number of Sides, the opposite ones are consequently parallel, and the Diagonal, which passes through the Center, is also parallel to them; and because AB is parallel to the Vanishing Line, its Original is parallel to the Picture; and consequently, the opposite Side FG is also parallel to AB; and, because they are equal, AF and BG are parallel, and consequently their Originals were perpendicular to the Intersection; therefore they vanish in the Center of the Vanishing Line.

The two Sides, AD and CG, and the Diagonal, BF, represent parallel Lines; consequently they have the same Vanishing Point, K; also BC, AG, and DF; all which may be seen in the Hexagon ABCGFD, which may be supposed the Original Figure, one Side AB, being in the Picture.

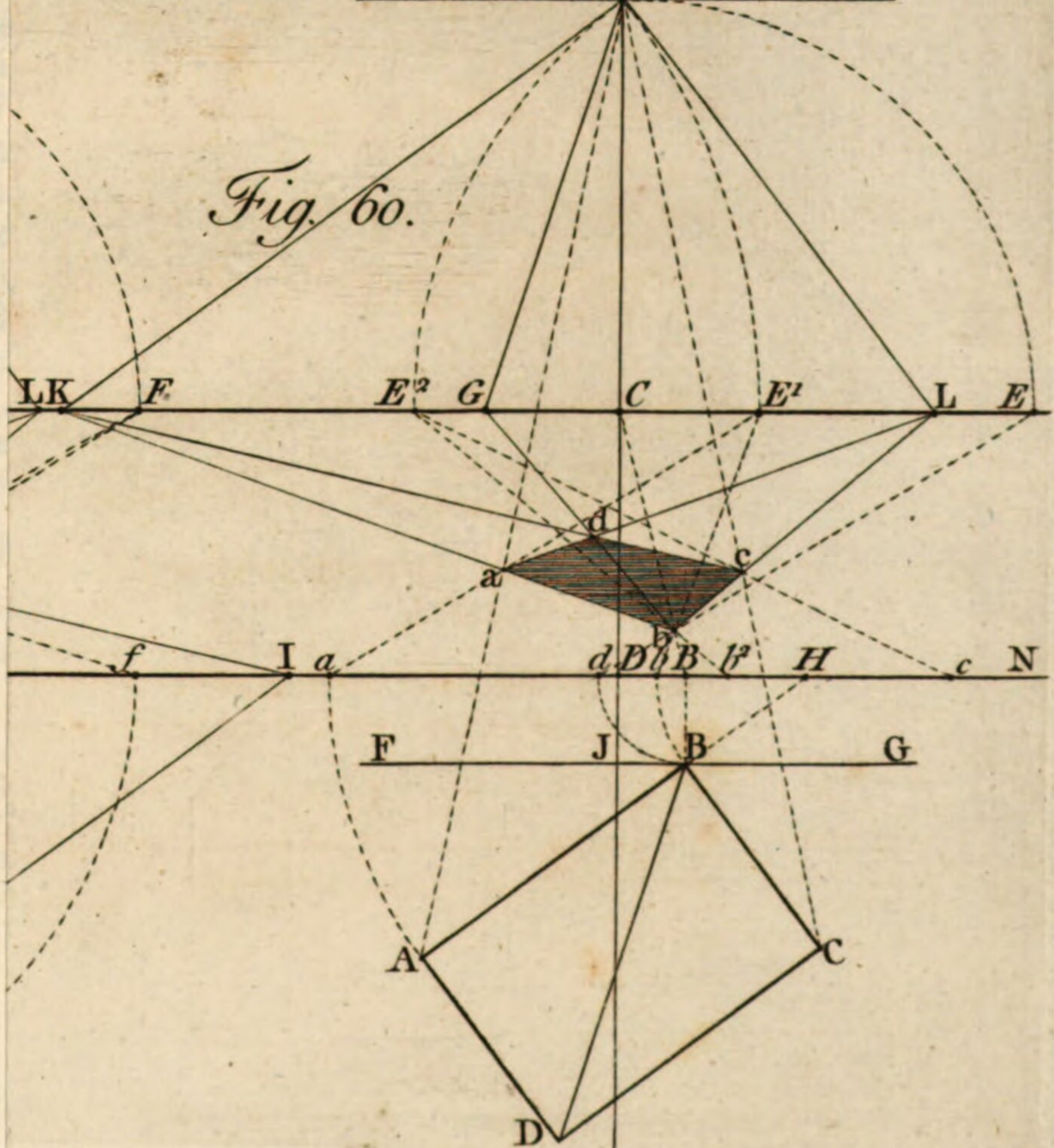
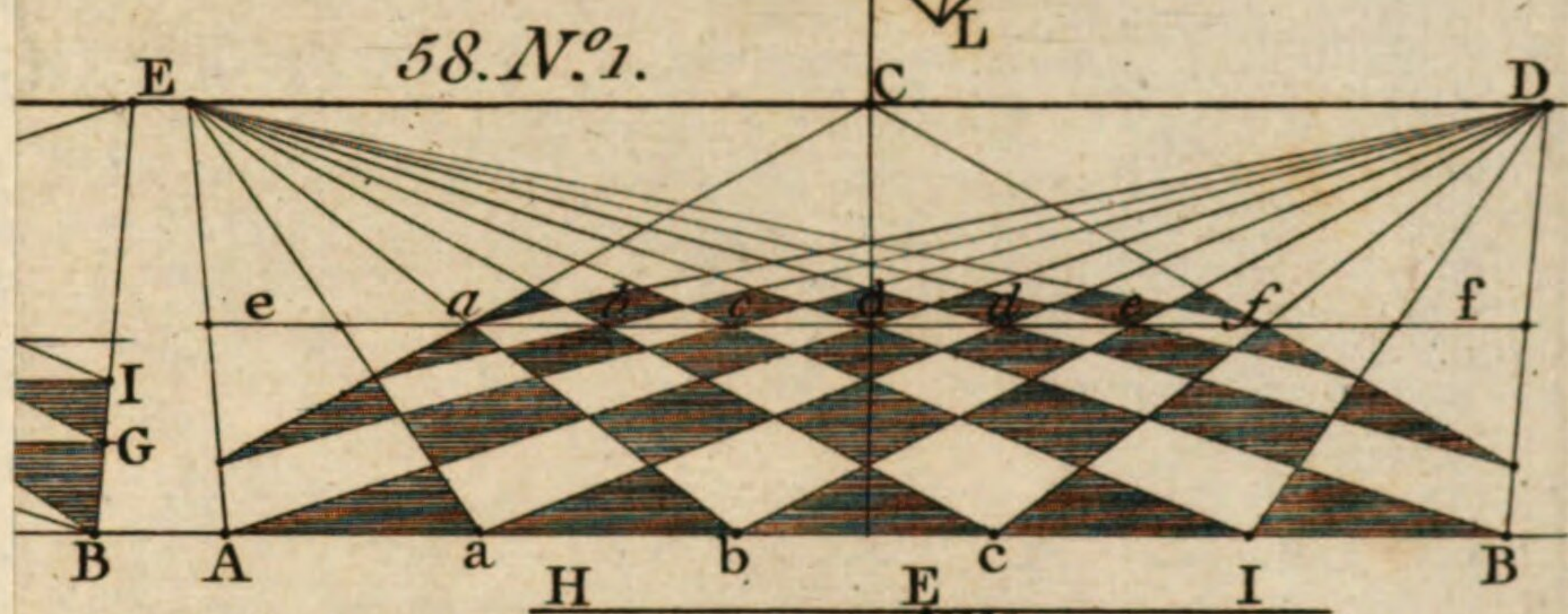
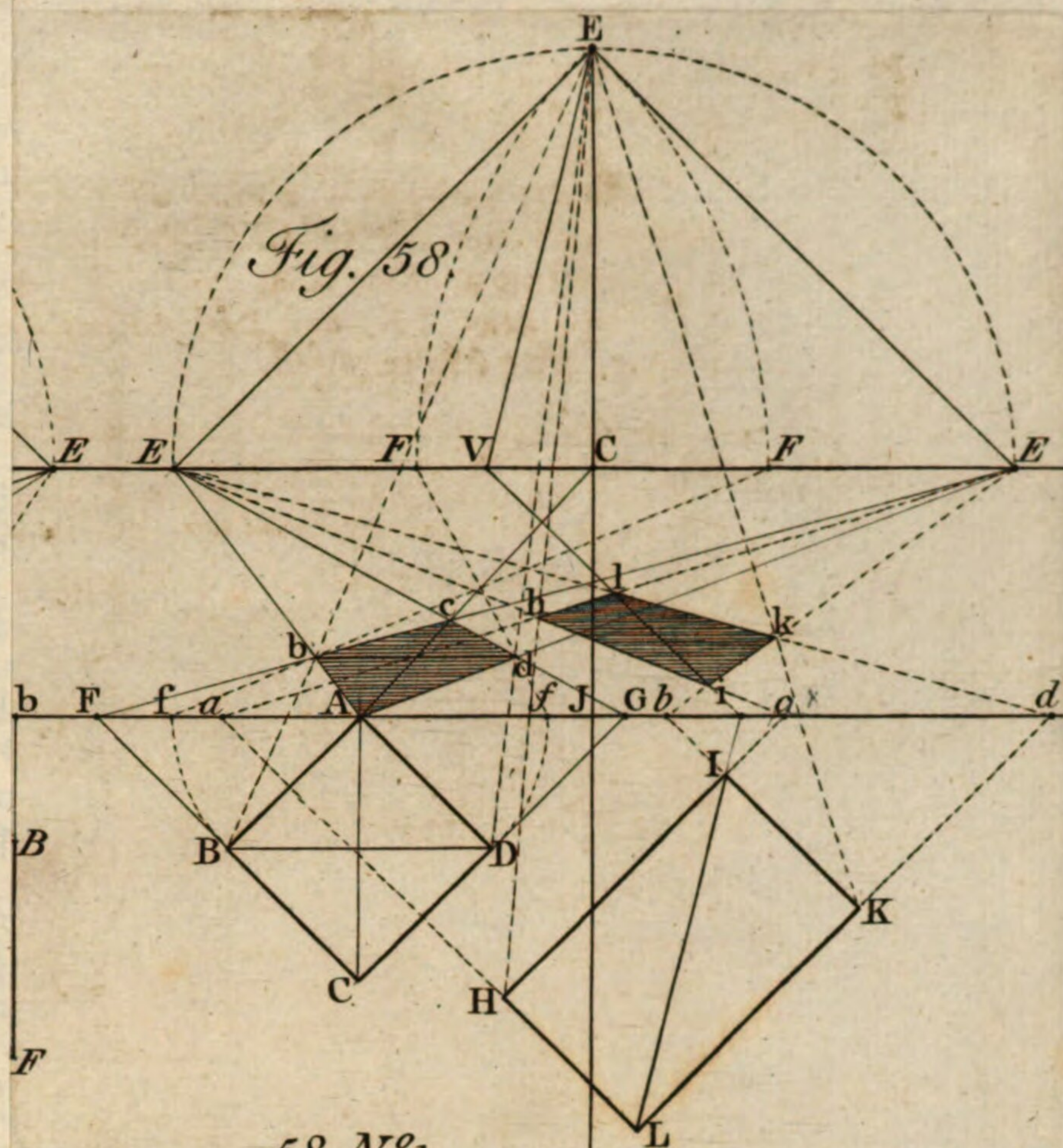
By drawing the Diagonals AG, BF, and CD, the Hexagon is divided into six equilateral Triangles, AOB, BOC, &c. and KEL has its three Sides respectively parallel to them; consequently, since one Side in each Triangle is parallel to the Picture, and has no Vanishing Point (Theo. 2) EK and EL are parallel to the other two Sides of each Triangle; and consequently, to the Sides AD, CG, and BC, DF, of the Hexagon; K and L are, therefore, their Vanishing Points.

COR. Hence, a Pavement of regular Hexagons, or equilateral Triangles, may be easily delineated.

Let AB be the Intersection of the Picture, or the Ground Line of the Pavement; and let Aa be the determined measure of one Side of a Hexagon.

Make ab, bc, &c. equal to Aa, as often as there is occasion.

If C be the Center of the Picture (its Distance being known) find the Vanishing Points, D and E, as before.



Draw AE, AD, and aE, aD, &c. and, where they intersect, draw Lines parallel to the Intersection, as fg, hi, &c. which divides the whole into equilateral Triangles; six of which, round the same Point o, as *a c d e f b* form a Hexagon; and thus, as many may be described as are required; for which, the inspection of the Figure is sufficient.

Case 2. When the given Side is inclined to the Picture.

Let AB be the Side given, FD is the Intersection, and GI the Vanishing Line of the Plane it is in; E is the Eye. Fig. 64.

Find a b, the representation of AB, by any of the former Problems, its Vanishing Point is G; draw GE, and produce it; on E describe a Semicircle, *a b c d*.

Make *a b* and *b c* each equal *a E*, and draw *E b*, *E c*, cutting the Vanishing Line, in H and I, the Vanishing Points of the other Sides.

Draw aI and bH, the indefinite Representations of two Sides.

For, *b a f* represents the Angle GEI, which is the Angle of a Hexagon; equal *a E b + b E c*, twice 60 Degrees; and *a b c* represents the Angle *b E d*, equal *a E c*.

Make a f and b c represent Lines equal AB (by Prob. 10, Case 3rd) i. e. bisect the Angle GEH, by the Line EK; or, *E d* being equal *E b*, having drawn *b d*, draw EK parallel to *d b*.

Or, because EI is the Radial of a f; consequently parallel to its Original, make IEK a Right Angle, i. e. draw EK perpendicular to EI; and EK is the Radial of a Diagonal of two contiguous Sides, which is perpendicular to the Original of a f, and parallel to *a b* (for *a b c d* is half a regular Hexagon in the Position of the Original) consequently, EK is parallel to the Diagonal whose Vanishing Point is K.

Draw aK cutting bH in c, and draw Gc till it cuts aI in f; for, the Original of the Diagonal cf is parallel to the Original of a b. As *a d* is parallel to *b c*.

Draw cI, aH, and fH; and Gd, cutting fH in e, which compleats the Figure.

If the Vanishing Point H had coincided with C, the Center of the Picture, G and I would be equally distant from C; and the Original of the Hexagon would be regularly posited; having two Sides and a Diagonal perpendicular to the Picture; or to the Intersection of the Plane it is in.

By which means, a Pavement of regular Hexagons may be drawn in that Position.

Let AB be the Ground Line of the Pavement, C the Center of the Picture, and DF the Horizontal vanishing Line. No. 2.

On AB, take as many equal divisions Aa, a b, &c. as you please, each equal to half the width of the Hexagon required.

Make CE equal to the Distance of the Picture, and make the Angles CED, CEF, each of 60 Degrees, i. e. having described an Ark *a b c*, on the Center E, make *b a* and *b c* each equal *E b*, and draw *E a* and *E c*, to D and F; which are the Vanishing Points of all the Sides.

From all the Divisions A, a, b, &c. draw Lines to the Center, C; and from every other Division a, c, e, draw aD and aF, &c. to both the other Vanishing Points D and F, and, where they cut AC and BC, viz. in g, h, i, and k, l, m; draw gD, kF, &c. as in the Figure; by which means they may be continued at pleasure. The rest is obvious, on inspection.

P R O B L E M XXV.

To find the Representation of an Octagon and of a Circle inscribed, having only one Side given.

As an Octagon is a Figure which may be inscribed in a Square, it is very readily delineated in Perspective, seeing that, if one Side be parallel to the Picture, two are necessarily perpendicular to the Intersection, and four are inclined to it, equally, viz. in an Angle of 45 Degrees or half a Right Angle; consequently, the Vanishing Points are the Center, and Distance, of the Vanishing Line of the Plane it is in.

Plate XIV. To draw an Octagon inclined to the Picture has nothing singular or particular in it; as every Line, which is inclined to the Picture, is projected, on the Picture, by the same general Rule (Prob. 17) which has been so often exemplified, in the preceding Problems, it would be quite superfluous to repeat it.

Fig. 65. Let AB be the given Side of an Octagon, parallel to the Picture; EF is the Vanishing Line of the Plane it is in, and C its Center.

Make CE and CF each equal to the Distance; also make FJ equal FE .
Draw AE and BF , contrary ways, which are two Sides, indefinite.

For, since the given Side, AB , is parallel to the Picture, the adjoining Sides are consequently inclined in half a Right Angle to the Intersection; therefore, E and F are their Vanishing Points. (Pr. 19 & 20.)

Produce AB , both ways; make BD equal AB , and draw DJ , cutting BF in G ; and draw FG parallel to AB , cutting AE in F .

Draw CF and CG , and produce them, till they cut AB , produced, in H and I ; draw IE and HF , cutting HC and IC , in K and L , and draw KL .

Draw AC and BC , cutting KL in M and N ; and draw EN and FM , and produce them, cutting IC and HC in O and P , which compleats the Figure $AFPMNOGB$, of an Octagon.

Or, without drawing AC and BC , make KM equal NL , where DJ cuts KL , and draw EN and FM , as before.

Or, from a and b , where the Diagonals HL and IK cut AF and BG , draw aC and bC , cutting the Diagonals, again, in d and c ; and through them, draw Ec and Fd .

A Curve described, carefully, by hand, touching every Side of the Octagon, passing through the Points a , b , c , and d , will be an Ellipsis; for it is the representation of a Circle, in Perspective.

Or, for greater exactness, through S , where the Diagonals HL and IK intersect, draw ef parallel to AB ; and CS to g , bisecting AB and KL , in g and h ; by which means there are eight Points obtained in the Circumference.

Note. The Figure below HD (which may be considered as the Intersection of the Plane of the Original) is the Original, geometrically drawn. The Italics, corresponding with the Roman Letters in the Representation, shew the Original of each Point, or Line; S represents S the Center.

Of all the various Methods for finding the Representation of a Circle, in Perspective, there is none preferable to this; which I shall exemplify more at large in the 8th Section. For, if any regular Polygon whatever, be drawn in Perspective, a Circle may be described through all the Angles, or touching every Side. Six Points are not sufficient for describing the Curve with accuracy; besides, an Octagon is easier to describe than a Hexagon, seeing that, the Vanishing Points, required, are only the Center of the Vanishing Line and its Distance. The Octagon being inscribed in a Square, renders it, of all others, the most expeditious for finding the Representation of a Circle.

P R O B L E M XXVI.

The Intersection of a Vertical Plane being given, and its Inclination to the Picture, to find the Representation of any Figure in the Plane.

Fig. 66. Let AB be the given Intersection, and C the Center of the Picture.

Through C , draw SD perpendicular to the Intersection, and CE perpendicular to SD , and equal to the Distance of the Picture.

Make CES equal to the Complement of the Angle of Inclination, cutting CS in S ; and, through S , draw MN parallel to AB ; MN is the Vanishing Line, S is its Center, and ES is its Distance. (See Prob. 3rd.)

If it be required to find the Representation of a Square, whose Side is parallel to the Picture, and equal to AB ; at the distance Ad from the Intersection.

Draw AS & BS ; make SE^1 & SE^2 equal SE , and draw dE^1 , cutting AS in F .
Draw FE^2 , cutting BS in H ; and draw FG and HI , parallel to AB .

Then, $FGHI$ represents a Square, in that Plane, at the distance Ad from the Intersection.

If

If another Square be required, draw another Diagonal HE^1 or IE^2 .
 Or, if a greater length than a Square be required, make SF to SE (equal SE^1) as one Side of the Rectangle, required, is to the other, and draw HF , cutting AS in K , and draw KL . For EF , being drawn, is parallel to the Original of FH .

See this illustrated by moveable Planes. (Fig. 37, No. 1.)

Turn up the Plane $AFDC$, or X (on the other Side of the Picture) at right angles with the Ground Plane, RS is its Intersection with the Picture, and AB , with the Ground Plane.

AB and FD , being perpendicular to the Picture, vanish in its Center, C ; and, if the Vertical Plane, V , be turned up, perpendicular to the Picture, EQ will be parallel to the Diagonals, AE and BD , and produce their Vanishing Point; and, Q , on the other Side of the Center, C (in the Vertical Line) equally distant from C , is the Vanishing Point of the other Diagonals, FB and EC .

The rest is obvious; if the Rectangles $AFEB$ and $BEDC$ were Squares, their Diagonals would vanish in E ; CE being equal to the Distance of the Picture.

2nd. Let ab be the given Side of a Hexagon, in the Plane $AIHB$, parallel to the Intersection AB ; it is required to describe the Hexagon.

SE being made equal to SE , draw OP , the Parallel of the Eye, parallel to MN , the Vanishing Line; and, on E describe a Semicircle, which divide into three equal Arks, in a and b , and draw Ea , Eb , cutting the Vanishing Line in M and N , the Vanishing Points of the Sides of the Hexagon.

Produce ab , and make bc equal to ab . Draw aM and aN , bM and bN .

Also, draw cM , cutting bN and aN in d and f ; draw de and fg , parallel to ab ; and lastly draw eN ; or join the Points e and g only, which compleats the Figure.

P R O B L E M XXVII.

To find the Representation of any irregular Figure (entirely on the Principles of Brook Taylor) from the known dimensions of the Figure, and the Angles which every Side makes with the adjoining Side or Diagonal; the Place, Position, Situation, and Distance of the Figure, in respect of the Picture and of the Station Line, being given; in a Plane which is inclined to the Picture, in a given Angle, the Center and Distance of the Picture being given, and the Intersection of the Plane of the Figure.

Note. The Original Figure ($ABDFG$) being geometrically drawn, in the Original Plane, is of no other use (in the following Operation) than to determine its Situation and Position; otherwise it is not necessary. The Place of the nearest Angle, A , and the Inclination of a contiguous Side, AB , or AG , in respect of the Intersection, being all that is wanted; the rest are determinable, in respect of themselves; as it will be exemplified.

Fig. 67

C is the Center of the Picture, HI is the Intersection of the Plane of the Original Figure, and X is the Angle of its Inclination to the Picture.

A is the place of the nearest Angle of the Figure, and JAB is the Angle of the inclination of the Side AB , to the Intersection; AB is the Distance of the Angle A from the Intersection, and Ae is its Distance from the Station Line.

Through C , draw EC perpendicular to the Intersection, which is the Vertical Line of the Original Plane of the Figure. (Def. D.)

Draw CE^1 perpendicular to EC , and equal to the Distance of the Picture.

Make the Angle CE^1C equal to Z , cutting EC in C ; and through C , draw DG , the Vanishing Line of the Plane of the Figure; C is its Center, and CE^1 its Distance. (Def. 19 and 20.) See Exam. No. 3, Prob. 3.

CE , on the Vertical Line, being made equal to CE^1 ; through E , draw ER parallel to the Vanishing Line, DG .

Draw

Plate XIV. Draw ED ; making the Angle RED , equal JAB (i. e. to BKH , the Inclination of the Side AB to the Intersection) cutting the Vanishing Line in D ; the
 Fig. 67. Vanishing Point of AB †, and make the Angle DEG equal BAG , cutting the Vanishing Line in G , the Vanishing Point of AG ‡.
 † Prob. 2. Also, make the Angle DEH , equal to ABH , the Complement of ABD ; and
 ‡ Prob. 4. H is the Vanishing Point of BD ; by the same.

Make the Angle GEI equal AGI , the Complement of AGF ; cutting the Vanishing Line in I , the Vanishing Point of FG .

Lastly, make the Angle IEF equal to DFG ; EF is the Radial of FD ; which, if produced would cut the Vanishing Line, in the Vanishing Point of FD .

Thus, are the Vanishing Points D , G , H , and I , produced, by the known Inclination of one Side to the Intersection, and the Angles which one Side makes with another (by Prob. 4.)

The place of the Angle A being given, in the Geometrical Plane (which is inclined to the Picture, in the Angle $E'CC$; and to the Horizon, in the Angle $CE'C$) find its Seat on the Picture.

Draw AB , perpendicular to the Intersection, HI , and make the Angle ABL , with the Intersection, equal to $CE'C$, by drawing BA parallel to $E'C$.

Make BA equal BA , and draw AS parallel to LB , i. e. perpendicular to AS , cutting AB produced, in S , S is the Seat of the Point A , on the Picture, and SA its Distance from its Seat. (See Orthography, Page 49, General Introduction.)

§ Prob. 6. Draw SC , and AE' cutting it in a , the Representation of A §

Draw aD and aG the indefinite Representations of AB and AG , from the Point a ; which, if produced, would pass through their Intersecting Points, K & L ,

Make DE equal DE ; and, through a , draw Ea to the Intersection, cutting it in a .

Make ab equal AB , and draw bE , cutting aD in b ; ab represents a Line equal to AB (Prob. 7, or 17.) Draw bH .

Produce DE , and make EK and EL respectively equal to AB and BD ; or in the ratio of AB to BD ; and draw EM parallel to KL , cutting the Vanishing Line, in M .

Draw aM , cutting bH in d . bd represents a Line in the ratio to that which ab represents, as EK to EL , i. e. as AB to BD . (Prob. 10*.)

|| Def. 22. For, EK is parallel to AB , and EL to BD ; wherefore KL , consequently EM , is parallel to the Diagonal AD ; therefore, M is its Vanishing Point ||; and abd represents the Triangle ABD . (Pr. 18.)

Now, F , the Vanishing Point of FD (being much inclined) is not in the Picture.

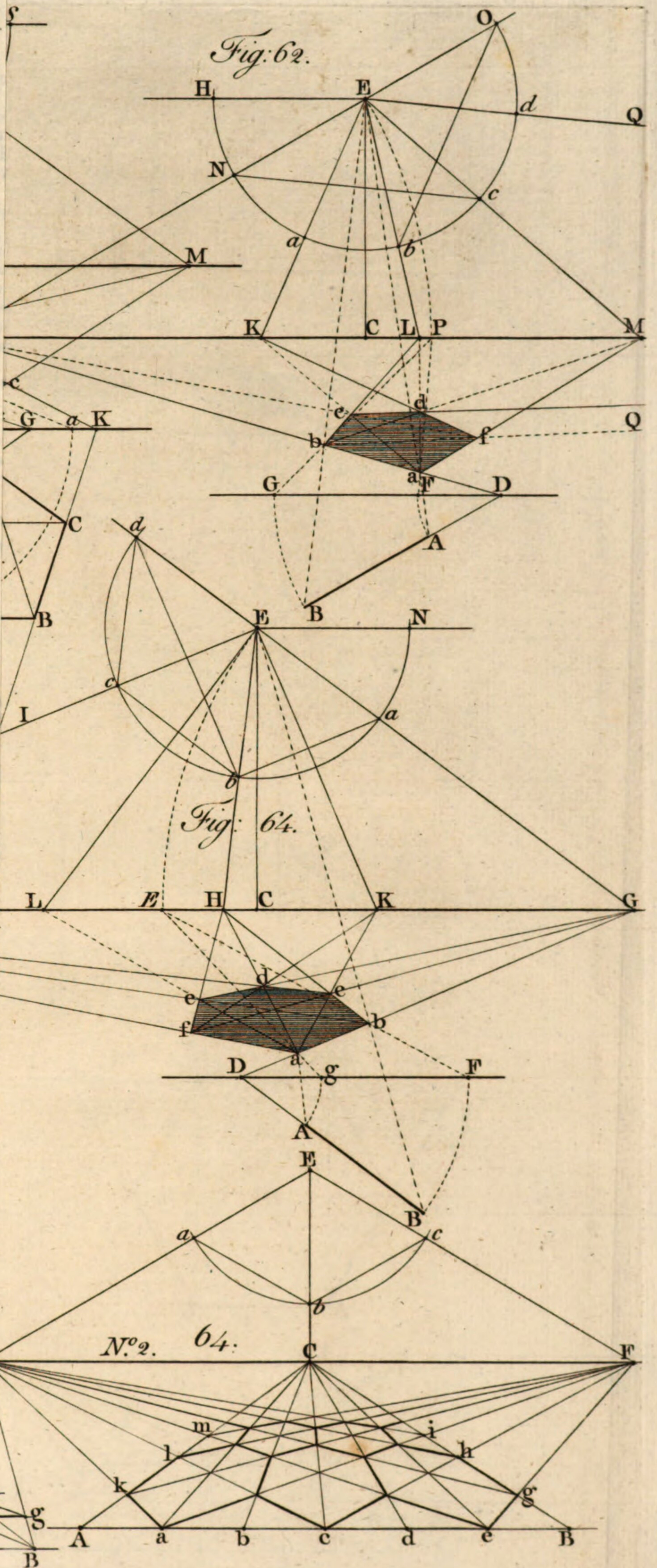
Draw df at pleasure, cutting the Vanishing Line, and EF , in e and f ; and draw gi parallel to df (at any distance, at discretion) and make bi to gb , as ed is to ef .
 e. g. Draw the Diagonal fb ; and draw dk parallel to the Vanishing Line, cutting fb , produced, in k ; draw ki , parallel to FE , cutting gi in i ; and draw di ; which will tend to the Vanishing Point F ; (by Prob. 13, No. 2.)

Produce GE , and make EN equal AG ; and, on EI , take EO equal GF (or, make EN and EO in the ratio of AG to GF) and draw EP , parallel to NO , cutting the Vanishing Line in P ; the Vanishing Point of the Diagonal AF .

Draw aP , cutting di in f ; and lastly, draw If , cutting aG in g , which compleats the Figure.

N. B. If the Sides of the Original Figure be produced to their intersecting Points, H , I , K , and L , the truth of the process may be perceived, by its affinity and agreement with the former Methods, viz. when the Original Figure is drawn in the Geometrical Plane, its Vanishing Line, Center, and Distance being given; which, in this Problem, are given only by Position and Distance; the Original Figure being useless in the Operation, otherwise than to shew the meaning of every step; and that, if the Original Figure be supposed in its true Place, and Position, each Line, from the Eye, producing a Vanishing Point, would be parallel to the corresponding Side, or Diagonal of the Figure.

* From the Position of AB and BD the measure of AB , or its Ratio to BD , is taken beyond the Eye, in the Radial of AB , produced.



In this Problem, I have summed up most of the Rules given in the two last Sections; which are called elementary, because, by them, the whole of practical Perspective is performed.

It will, I know, appear, to young practitioners in Perspective, somewhat difficult; yet, if they do but see the Principles on which it is performed, and will be at the trouble to go through the Process a second time, and compare each Operation with the Problem it refers to, that apparent difficulty will vanish; and they will find it of great advantage to them, in applying all the elementary Problems to real use, in delineating Plane Figures.

Now this Process, difficult and operose as it may appear, at first, is infinitely preferable to any other Method of performing it; nay, it is scarce possible to perform it at all, by any Rules given by the old writers on Perspective, or indeed by any; and, considering that I have given the whole procedure, from the beginning to the end, it is not a long one. I have, not only, referred to the foregoing Problems for each particular step in the Operation, and (as is customary) left the Reader to apply it; but, I have gone on with him, socially, hand in hand; and, like a trusty Guide, pointed out every step he should take.

I have, also, drawn every Line in the whole Operation, which remains in the Plate; yet there is not the least confusion, the use of each being obvious, on inspection; but, being taken regularly, in the course of the Work, every apparent intricacy is unravelled.

At the same time, let it be observed, that there is no need for half the Lines to remain at once; e. g. after having found the Vanishing Line, DG, its Center and Distance, and the Vanishing Points of all the Sides of a Figure, all the operative Lines may be rubbed out before we begin to draw the Figure, itself; also, having found the Seat of A, all that were preparatory to it are of no further use; but they must all remain in the Diagram; which circumstance frightens many, with the apparent intricacy; which, in reality, is but apparent.

In order to compare the difference, I will shew, how it may be performed otherwise. But, as a Figure of so many Sides would be somewhat confused, I have made choice of a Triangle, in which the whole may be distinctly seen.

Let ABD be the given Figure, in the Geometrical Plane; of which, GI is the Intersection, and JIM is its Inclination to the Horizon; let NI be considered as a vertical Section of the Picture.

Fig. 68.

Produce NI; draw AK, BL, & DM, parallel to GI, cutting IM in K, L, and M.

Make IK, IL, and IM respectively, equal to IK, IL, and IM; and draw MN, LO, and KP perpendicular to the Picture; NI being perpendicular to JI.

Draw AF, BG, and DH, perpendicular to GI, and produce them, till they cut KP, LO, and MN, produced, in A, B, and D, the Seats, on the Picture, of the Angles of the Triangle.

Having thus found the Seats of the three Points A, B, and D, the Representation of each may be found (by Prob. 6) as a, the Representation of A, in the preceding Figure.

C being the Center of the Picture, draw CE at pleasure, and equal to the Distance of the Picture; and, having drawn AC, BC, and DC, draw Ak, Bl, and Dm (or Dm) parallel to CE (or CE) and equal to the Distance of each Point from its Seat, respectively; viz. Ak equal KP, Bl equal LO, and Dm or m equal MN.

Draw kE, cutting AC in a; lE (or lE) cutting BC in b, and mE (or mE) cutting DC in d.

The three Points a, b, and d, are the representations of the Angles A, B, and D; which, being joined by Right Lines, compleats the Figure.

In this Process, it is obvious, there is neither Vanishing Line nor Vanishing Point required, the whole being performed by the 6th Problem. If the Intersection, GI, be parallel to the Horizon, ECE may be considered as the Horizontal Line. But, if the Intersection of the Plane of the Figure, be given, it is immaterial what Position it has to the Horizon; the Center of the Picture and Distance, the Place and Position of the Object, and the Inclination of the Plane it is in, being also given.

Although this Method is consonant to the Principles of Brook Taylor, yet it is by no means so masterly or correct, that is, it is more liable to error, than the other, by means of Vanishing Points; which, in complex Objects, having various Lines in various Planes, is preferable to all other. In short, it is truly Perspective, which cannot be said of the old Authors; having few or no elementary Principles, to support or demonstrate the Rules they prescribed.

Plate XIV.

P R O B L E M XXVIII.

To find the Representation of any Line, or Plane Figure, by means of the Directing Plane.

Fig. 69. Let AB be a Line perpendicular to the Picture, or to the Intersection, IK, of the Plane it is in. Let E be the Eye, in its true Place as in the foregoing Problems.

+ Theo. 3. At the Distance EP, equal to the Prime Director*, draw NO, the Directing Line, parallel to the Intersection, IK †.

The Space between NO and IK represents all that Space which lies between the Directing Line and the Intersection of the Original Plane with the Picture.

In which Construction, the whole of that Space, together with the Directing Plane, NEO, is supposed to be turned up, on the Intersection IK, till it falls into the Picture; the Original Figures being turned along with it, into the same Position as usual.

Now, IK is the Intersection, and NO is the Directing Line.

† Def. 12. Produce AB, cutting the Intersection in I, its Intersecting Point; and the Directing Line in D, its Directing Point. Draw ED, which is the Director of AB ‡; to which, draw IC, parallel.

For, C being the Center of the Picture, and I the Intersecting Point of a Line perpendicular to the Picture, IC is its indefinite Representation; and EC, the Direct Radial, is parallel to AB, and equal to ID, a part of AB, produced; consequently, IC is parallel to ED. (15. 1. El.)

As EC (Fig. 37) is equal to BR, a part of AC, intercepted between the Intersecting and Directing Lines; also, EO is equal to GP, and EL to HS; and being parallel, respectively, the Lines RC and EB, &c. are also equal and parallel.

If the Sides of the Triangle, FGH, be produced, till they cut the Directing Line, in the Points M§, N, and O, their Directing Points, EM, EN, and EO, are their Directors; to which their several Representations are parallel; L, K, and J, are the intersecting Points of those Lines.

Draw Lh parallel to EO, Kh parallel to EN, and Jf parallel to EM; which, by their Intersections, produce the Figure fgh, the Representation of FGH.

Through C, parallel to IK, draw RS, the Vanishing Line of the Plane of the Triangle; and, having produced the Indefinite Representations to their Vanishing Points, R, S, Q, the Lines ER, ES, and EQ, are the Radials of the Sides of the Triangle, and consequently parallel to them, respectively.

The agreement between these two Methods of producing the Representation, fgh, is so very obvious, as not to need any further explanation.

See this further illustrated, in Fig. 37.

The Sides of the Triangle, ZY and ZX, on the other Side of the Picture, being produced, cut the Intersection, AB, in S and P; and, the Directing Line, GH, in G and H; EG and EH, in the Directing Plane, are respectively parallel to the Representations of those Lines, PO and SL, the Directing Plane being parallel to the Picture. For, they are the Intersections of Radial Planes with the Picture and Directing Plane, which are parallel; by Def. 4.

The Planes W and X being turned over, till E coincides with E; the Section with the Picture, RC, is the indefinite Representation of AC (Theo. 11 and 12) and EB, its Section with the Directing Plane, is the Director of the Line AC (Def. 12) which is parallel to RC (by Theo. 14) being the sections of parallel Planes, by another Plane.

* In Theory, the Prime Director is a Right Line joining the Eye, or drawn through the Eye, and the Station Point of the Original Plane.

§ Suppose FG produced till it cuts ON, produced, and EM a Line tending to that Point; then EM is the Director of FG.

S E C T I O N

S E C T I O N VI.

THE last Section comprehends the whole Art of practical Perspective, in respect of Plane Figures; illustrated with variety of Cases and Examples; in which, I have studied more to render it easy and familiar, than to embellish the Subject with what is no way useful. Every Figure, which I have given are such, as are common, and applicable to Buildings and other Objects, except the Triangle and Pentagon, which are not so useful in themselves, as for the sake of managing inclined Lines, in all Positions; so that, the Lessons deduced from them are excellent. By varying their Positions and Situations, and diversifying the Cases, as much as is consistent with utility, I am persuaded that no Person, who has a tolerable Capacity, will be at any loss to know how to describe any Plane Figure, and in any Position whatever.

Although some Persons, of keener Talents, may imagine, that the preceding Section contained Instructions sufficient for every occasion (it certainly contains the Elements of the whole) yet, I presume, if no more had been given, it would be found of but little use to many; when, by applying those valuable Lessons to familiar Subjects, what, before, might appear somewhat mysterious will, hereafter, be applied with ease, as occasion may require.

It may with equal propriety be alledged that there is no need for shewing how Plane Solids are formed; seeing they are only composed of Plane Figures, in various Positions, all which have, already, been copiously treated of. Yet, a few Lessons, and familiar Examples, will not be found superfluous or unnecessary. I shall however dwell as little as possible on any thing not really useful, but hasten to apply the whole to useful Objects; for which, all the foregoing is but preparatory.

In this Section, I shall always consider the Object as situated on a horizontal Plane, and the Picture as vertical; most of the foregoing Problems, being general, are applicable in all Positions whatever.

In the following part of this Work, I would advise the young Student, as he proceeds, to draw every Object, or a similar one, at his own discretion. Or, if that be not necessary, in some Cases, let him carefully notice what things are given, in the Proposition, and what is required to be done; and then proceed, step by step; not supposing any thing as done, but what he has passed over; by which means, he will see, clearly, how every Line is produced, by which the Objects are formed.

This precaution would have been necessary in the third or fourth Section, but more particularly so here.

P R O B L E M XXIX.

How to describe a Cube, perspectively, or any other right angled Parallelopiped*, having one Side, given, parallel to the Picture; at any Distance beyond the Picture, its Situation and Dimensions being known.

ECE is the Horizontal Line, and PM the Intersection or Ground Line.

C being the Center of the Picture, make CE, on either Side, or on both Sides, equal to its Distance; and let this be understood in future Examples, that CE (E being the Place of the Eye) either on the Horizontal or Vertical Line (the Picture being vertical) always denotes the Distance of the Picture; sometimes CE.

First;

* See the Definition of a Cube, in the General Introduction, Section I, Page 44.

Plate XV. First; let the Picture be supposed applied close to a Face of the Cube; in which Fig. 70. Case, being parallel to the Picture, it coincides with the Picture.

This is generally the Case, when there is but one Object; as it answers no purpose to suppose it at any Distance, from the Picture, as in Figures 59, 60, &c. or, when there are various Objects to be delineated, it is, most commonly, supposed to be applied close to the nearest, as in this Example (see Fig. 38) so that, the Distance of the Picture is the Distance of a Plane direct before the Eye, and touching the Object, or the nearest Object, if there are more than one.

Let AB, in the Ground Line, be the measure of a Cube, to be represented; having one Face in the Picture.

On AB, describe a Square, ABDF, which, being in the Picture, has the full dimensions of the Side given; wherefore, ABDF is a Face of the Cube required. (Cor. 5, Theo. 10.)

Draw DC and FC; and DE or FE, diagonal-ways, cutting FC in G, or DC in H; draw GH, parallel to FD, which compleats the Figure, AGHB, the representation of a Cube, in that Position, and Situation.

If another, of equal dimensions, be required, situated on the left side of the Station Line, at the Distance LJ; and distant from the Picture equal La.

Make LM equal AB; and, on LM, describe the Square LMNO, as before.

Draw OC, NC, &c. and draw aE, cutting LC in a, and MC in e.

Draw ab parallel to LM; and ad, bc, to MN; also, draw cd parallel to ab. i. e. having drawn ab parallel to LM, describe a Square on ab; and, at e, describe the Square efgh, parallel to abcd, which compleats the Figure.

Or, having drawn LC, MC, and aE, compleat the Plan abeh. (Prob. 19.)

Describe a Square on ab, and draw cC and dC; draw gh parallel to ad, and fg parallel to cd, which compleats the Figure.

† Cor. 5.
Theo. 10.

DEM. abcd being parallel to the Picture (by Hypothesis) is similar to the Original, LMNO†; and its Sides have that proportion to the Originals, as the Distance of the Picture (CE) to the Distance of the Plane abcd; viz. as EC+La; i. e. ab (or ad):LM::EC:EC+La. (Theo. 10.)

But, LMNO is a Square; therefore, abcd is a Square.

And, since it is parallel to the Picture, the Originals of the Sides ah, dg, &c. are perpendicular to the Picture; consequently they vanish in its Center C†.

† Cor. to
Theo. 5.
§ Schol. to
Theo. 5.
|| Th. 3 & 6.
† See N. B.
Prob. 20.

Also, adgh represents a Square in a vertical Plane, perpendicular to the Picture; for LO is the Intersection of that Plane§, and ECE its Vanishing Line||; wherefore, CE, being made equal to CE, E is the Vanishing Point of Lines (in that Plane) inclined to the Intersection in half a Right Angle; consequently, if one Side (ad) be parallel to the Intersection (LO) and OP being made equal La, PE passes through a Diagonal of that Side†, therefore, adgh represents a Square; and Jb being equal La, bE is a Diagonal of the Top, dcf g, which also represents a Square, parallel to abeh; and ON is its Intersection.

Therefore, agfb represents a Cube, having three Faces seen, each of which, is the representation of a Square. Q. E. D.

PQ is the Intersection of a Diagonal Plane cdhe, whose Vanishing Line would pass through E.

The Cube AGHB being situated on the Station Line (which, on the Picture, coincides with the Vertical Line) has but two Faces seen; the Front, AFDB, and Top, FGHD, the Eye being above it, equal CZ. The other Faces, AFGK and BDHI, seeing they apparently incline towards the Vertical Line, are consequently lost to sight in this Position; as is obvious, supposing the Solid transparent.

E X A M P L E I.

To draw the Representation of a high Wall, the End being parallel to the Picture and at some Distance from it.

This Object, being a right angled Parallelopiped is easily delineated.

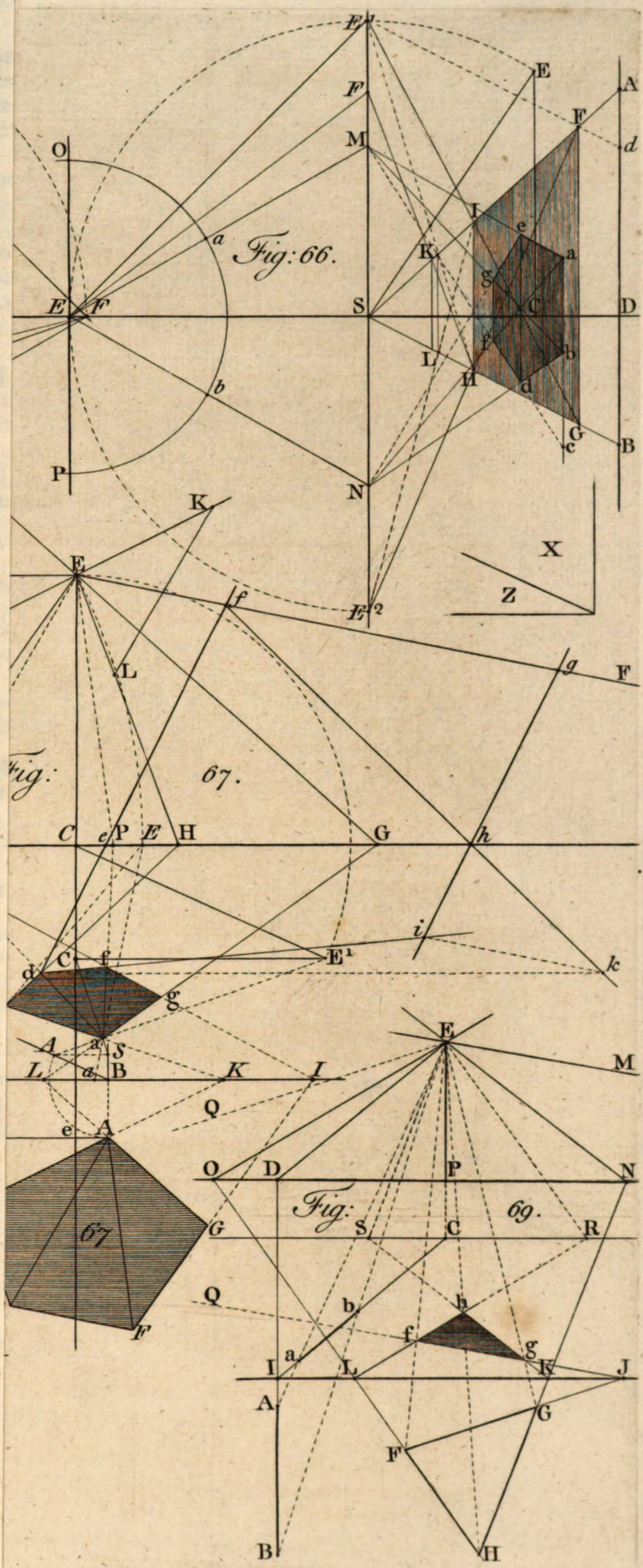
Fig. 71. Let PJ be equal to the Distance of the Wall from the Station Line.

Make PQ equal to its thickness, and draw PC and QC; make Pd equal to the distance of the end of the Wall, from the Picture; draw dE cutting PC in R, and draw RS parallel to PQ.

Now, since P is the intersecting Point of RX, the common Intersection of the Plane of the Wall (which is supposed vertical) with the Ground; PT, perpendicular to the Ground Line, or parallel to the Vertical, is the Intersection of that Plane†.

† Cor. 1.
Theo. 3.

And,



And, since the Wall is perpendicular to the Horizon, consequently, its Angles or Corners, RU and SV, are parallel to PT or QW the Intersections of the Planes those Lines are in (for they are parallel to the Picture, being vertical) therefore, draw RU and SV parallel to PT, i. e. to the Vertical Line (or perpendicular to the Ground Line.)

Make PT equal to the known height, and draw TC, cutting RU in U, and draw VU parallel to RS; then RUVS, represents the End of the Wall, which is parallel to the Picture.

Lastly. Make PM equal to the Distance of the farther end of the Wall from the Picture, or dM equal to its known length.

Draw EM, cutting the indefinite Representation, of its common Section with the Ground Plane, in X; and draw XY, parallel to RU, which compleats the Figure, required.

Or, if CF (on the Vertical Line) be made to CE or E, as the height of the Wall to its Length, F will be the Vanishing Point of the Diagonal RY, which cuts TC, in the Point Y, for its length; draw XY parallel to RU.

Let it be observed, here, that if there be not room enough, on the Intersection, to set off the whole length of the Wall, equal dM, take half the Distance, PJ (equal Pf, in the Plan below) make Ce equal half CE (the Distance of the Picture) and draw Je, projecting the same Point X.

If the half measure be too much, take a third or fourth, or any equal portion, of PM (equal Pm) the same part being taken of CE will answer the same purpose (see Prob. 17.)

E X A M P L E II.

How to represent several Parallelopipeds, as Blocks of Stone, &c. for the Basement of a Building, ranged in a Right Line perpendicular to the Picture.

Let ABD, the Front of the first, be close to the Picture, i. e. in the same Plane; consequently, in its geometrical Proportion, of height and width. Fig. 71.

Draw AC, BC, and DC. Make Aa, on the Intersection, equal to the length of the first, ab equal to the space between the first and second, and bc equal to the second.

Draw aE, bE, and cE, cutting AC in F, G, and H; draw FI, GK, and HL perpendicular, cutting BC; and IM, KN, and LO, parallel to BD, cutting DC, in M, N, and O, and compleat them, as in the Figure.

Now, in order to continue them further, to any length, this Expedient may be used, when the measures exceed the limits of the Picture, and, consequently, cannot be applied to the Intersection.

Draw Hg, from the farthest Corner of the second Parallelopiped parallel to the Intersection, and draw aC and bC, cutting it in e and g.

If it be required to continue them of the same Dimensions, and Space, make Hf equal eg, and draw fE and gE, cutting AC in a and b, and compleat the Parallelopiped abcd as in the Figure.

After the same manner they may be repeated as often as you please by drawing bg parallel to gH, cutting fC and bC in f and g, and then proceed as before.

E X A M P L E III.

To draw several long Parallelopipeds, parallel amongst themselves, and perpendicular to the Picture; representing large Joists, supporting a Floor (over Head) parallel to the Horizon.

Let W, X, Y, and Z be the ends of the Joists, of equal Dimensions, and equally spaced; and, since they are supposed to be parallel to the Picture, therefore, they have their geometrical Proportion on the Picture. (See Cor. 5, Th. 10.) Fig. 72.

Let them be drawn accordingly, by a Scale of equal Parts.

S f

Then

Plate XV. Then (because the Joists are perpendicular to the Picture, in respect of their
Fig. 72. length; i. e. they are horizontal, and at right angles with the Picture) draw a C
and b C, &c. from every Angle, necessary, as in the Figure; and determine their
length, by Prob. 15, i. e. make AB or AB equal to the required length, and
draw BE, cutting AC in D; or AC in D .

Through D, draw FG parallel to the Vanishing Line, CE, which determines
the under Sides, Fe, &c. and the perpendicular Lines, de, &c. compleats them.

The Divisions of the Boards are determined by Prob. 8th; i. e. take any mea-
sure, Aa , and repeat it as often as there is occasion, if the Boards are supposed
equal; otherwise Aa , ab , &c. must be made in the same Ratio as the Boards, to
each other; and at the last Division, e , draw eD , cutting the Vanishing Line in
H; and draw aH , bH , &c. cutting AC in 1, 2, 3, &c. through which, draw
Right Lines parallel to the first, AB , i. e. to the Vanishing Line.

Or, divide AB into the same number of Parts, and draw Lines to E, which
will produce the same, as is obvious; seeing that it does not depend on the di-
mensions of the Parts, but on their number and ratio to each other. (See Pr. 8.)

P R O B L E M XXX.

To draw the Representation of a Cube, or other right angled Pa-
rallelopiped, any how inclined to the Picture.

Fig. 73. First, Let the Square ABCD be the Plan of a Cube, in the Geometrical
Plane, equally inclined to the Picture, and to the Intersection.

Lie down the Distance of the Picture, CE' , from the Center, as usual; E and
E are the Vanishing Points of all the Lines of its Sides. (Prob. 20.)

Draw AE, both ways, A being the intersecting Point of two Sides, AB and AD.
Find the perspective Plan ABCD (by Prob. 20) or of the two Sides AB, AD only.

Draw AF perpendicular to the Ground Line, and equal to AB, a Side of the
Cube, and draw FE both ways.

Draw BG and DH parallel to AF; and draw GE and HE diagonal-ways cut-
ting each other, at I, which compleats the Cube AGH.

Otherwise, without drawing the perspective Plan, by the Vanishing Lines of
its Faces.

Draw AF perpendicular to the Intersection, and equal to a Side of the Cube.

Draw AE and FE, both ways; and through E, on either Side, draw the Va-
nishing Line of the contiguous Face of the Cube. (Prob. 3.)

Make EE or EF, on either Side, equal EE' , and draw AE or AF, cutting the
indefinite Representation FE, in G or H, and draw BG, or DH, perpendicular.

Draw BD parallel to the Intersection, and DH parallel to AF; and lastly, draw
GE and HE, intersecting at I, as before.

ABGHD is the Representation of a Cube, in the Position required; situated
on a horizontal Plane, and its vertical Faces equally inclined to the Picture.

DEM. For, ABCD the given Plan is a Square, wherefore ABCD represents a Square (Prob. 20) and
FGIH also represents a Square, in a Plane parallel to ABCD. (Th. 5, and Cor. 1.)

And, they are between the same Parallels, AF, BG, &c. therefore equal - - - (18. 1. El.)

But, AF is the Intersection of the vertical Planes, AG and AH; and EE is the Vanishing Line of
AG (Theo. 3 and 11) E is its Center (Def. 19) and EE' its Distance (Cor. 2, 4.)

Wherefore, E is the Vanishing Point of Lines inclined to the Intersection of that Plane, in half a
Right Angle or 45 Degrees; consequently, it is the Vanishing Point of the Diagonal of a Square, in
that Plane, whose Sides AF and BG are parallel to the Picture (Prob. 19;) and, AB and FG, perpen-
dicular to them, vanish in E, the Center of the Vanishing Line, EE.

Therefore, AFGH represents a Square, at right Angles with ABCD and AFHD, which (after the
same manner) may also be proved to be the representation of a Square; and their opposites, DHIC
and CIGB, being between the same parallel Planes, are also representations of Squares; conse-
quently, ABGHD represents a Cube. (See Defin. Page 44.) Q. E. D.

a c f g

$a c f g$ represents another Cube of the same Dimensions, and in the same Position to the Picture; whose situation in respect of the former, is as the Plan, W , to BD ; which, on account of the short Distance (CE) has a distorted appearance, being remote from the Station Line.

By means of the Intersection (AF) of the Face $a d f g$, or $a f$ of the Face $a b c d$ (AF , or $a f$, being made equal to the Side of the Cube) the proportion of the parallel Lines ($a d$ and $f g$, or $b c$) in those Planes are determined. For, AF , $a d$, and $f g$; also $a f$, $a d$, and $b c$ are in the same Plane, and are all parallel to the Picture; consequently, they are parallel between themselves, and to their Originals†. † Theo. 10. Cor. 1.

E X A M P L E IV.

How to draw Parallelopipeds ranged in a Right Line, and inclined to the Picture, obliquely.

Let X and Z be the Plans of right angled Parallelopipeds; their inclination to the Picture is the Angle AIA , which they make with the Ground Line IC . Fig. 74.

C being the Center of the Picture, and CE its Distance, find the Vanishing Points, G and H , of the Sides and Ends of the Parallelograms, X and Z , and lie down their Distances on the Horizontal Line at E^1 and E^2 .

Transfer all the measures IA , IB , &c. of the Objects, and the spaces between them, to the Intersection, at A , B , and C ; and, having drawn the indefinite Representation, IG , of the whole length, draw AE^1 , BE^1 , &c. cutting it in a , b , & c .

Because the Angle I touches the Picture, IF , perpendicular to the Ground Line, will be the Intersection of the Plane of the Fronts, and also of the End, IK .

Make ID equal to the height of the Objects, and draw DG , DH , and IH .

Make IK equal IK , and draw KE^2 cutting IH ; Ik represents IK . (Pr. 17.)

Draw ad , be , and cf , parallel to ID ; and, where they cut DG , in d , e , and f , draw dH , eH , and fH ; and from i , where ki cuts DH , draw iG , cutting them in j , h , and g , which compleats the upper faces.

hl , parallel to ID , &c. cutting kG , compleats the End $b e h l$.

If another Object be required, in the same Line, seeing that the measures on the Ground Line, would exceed the limits of that Picture, take GE^2 half GE^1 ; and draw $E^2 c$ till it cuts the Intersection, at a .

Make aB equal to half the space between the Objects, and Bj equal half the width of the next Object, and draw BE^2 , &c. cutting IG in b and c .

If it be required higher than the rest, make IF equal to its known height, and draw FG . Draw perpendiculars from b and c , cutting FG in g and h .

Draw bH cutting kG in d , and draw gH and di parallel to bg , which compleats that Object.

Or, if cn be drawn parallel to the Ground Line, and BG cutting it in n ; divide cn , in m , as AC (equal AC) is divided in B ; and, from m and n , draw to E^1 cutting IG in the same Points b and c as before.

By either of these expedients they may be continued, if required, to any length.

Note. G , the Vanishing Point of the front Line IC , and the parallels to it (being much inclined) may be supposed to be beyond the limits of the Picture; consequently, Ic , Df , &c. are tending to a Vanishing Point which is not on the Picture, and must, therefore, be drawn by means of the Expedients, in the 13th Problem; which are very convenient when but few Lines are wanting.

But, a better Expedient than them all is (when the Point is not very remote) to fix a Lath to the Drawing Board, or straining Frame of the Picture, and continue the Vanishing Line as far as is requisite, on the Lath; fix a Pin in the Vanishing Point, and, with a long Ruler, draw the Lines IG , DG , &c. for no other Expedient whatever can be so true, i. e. it cannot be performed so accurately, as to have the Vanishing Point itself.

Prisms of all kinds may be represented after the manner of the foregoing, which are right angled Prisms, having found the Plans of their Bases, on the Ground Plane or other Plane, whether they be triangular, quadrangular, or multangular; of which one or two Examples will be sufficient.

E X A M P L E

Plate XVI.

E X A M P L E V.

To represent a hexagonal Prism, perpendicular to the Ground Plane.

Fig. 75. The Situation, Distance, and Position being determined, or AB being a Side, given or found, in Perspective, whose Radial is EV, find the Vanishing Points, I and K, of the other Sides, and compleat the Plan ABCDEF of its Base (by Pr. 24.)

Draw Aa, Bb, &c. perpendicular to the Ground Plane, i. e. to its Vanishing Line IK or Intersection GD.

Produce any Side, as AB, to its intersecting Point, G, and draw GH, perpendicular to the Ground Line, GD.

GH is the Intersection of the Plane of the Face AabB, or gh of BbcC (Pr. 3) for it is vertical; and, G, or g, is the Intersecting Point of one Line in the Plane.

† Prob. 13. Make GH equal to the known height of the Prism, and draw HV† cutting Aa and Bb in a and b; the Original of ab being parallel to the Original of AB.

Then, because Aa and Bb are the common sections of the contiguous Faces with AabB, draw aI and bK, cutting the other Perpendiculars Ff and Cc, in f and c; which compleats as many Faces as can be seen.

The other Faces (which are all Parallelograms, See Def. Page 44) Fe, Ed, and dC are supposed to be seen through, the Object being imagined transparent; which, in some Cases, is a necessary Expedient; by which means, the connection of the several Parts are more accurately determined.

AB and AF, below the Ground Line, are the Originals of AB and AF in their true place and position to the Picture.

E X A M P L E VI.

To represent a pentangular Prism, laid along on the Ground Plane; the Intersection and Seat of the Object, on the Ground Plane, being given.

Fig. 76. AB is the given Side of the Pentagon, and BD the Seat of one Face of the Prism.

C being the Center of the Picture, and CE its Distance, find the Vanishing Points, I and K, of AB and AD (Prob. 2) by making the Angles JEI and OEK equal, respectively, to BAB and DAD; or, having determined the one, find the other, by Prob. 4.

Make ab to represent AB (Prob. 17.) and, on ab construct a Pentagon, in a vertical Plane, on the same Principles as in Prob. 23.

I being the vanishing Point of ab; FG, passing through I, is the Vanishing Line of the Plane of the end of the Prism (being perpendicular to the Ground Plane) I is its Center, and EI its Distance. (Prob. 3.)

As there is not room, on the Picture, beyond the Vanishing Line, FG, to find the Vanishing Points of the Sides of the Pentagon, take IE on this Side equal to IE, through which draw MN parallel to FG, and, on E describe a Semcircle; which, divide into five equal parts.

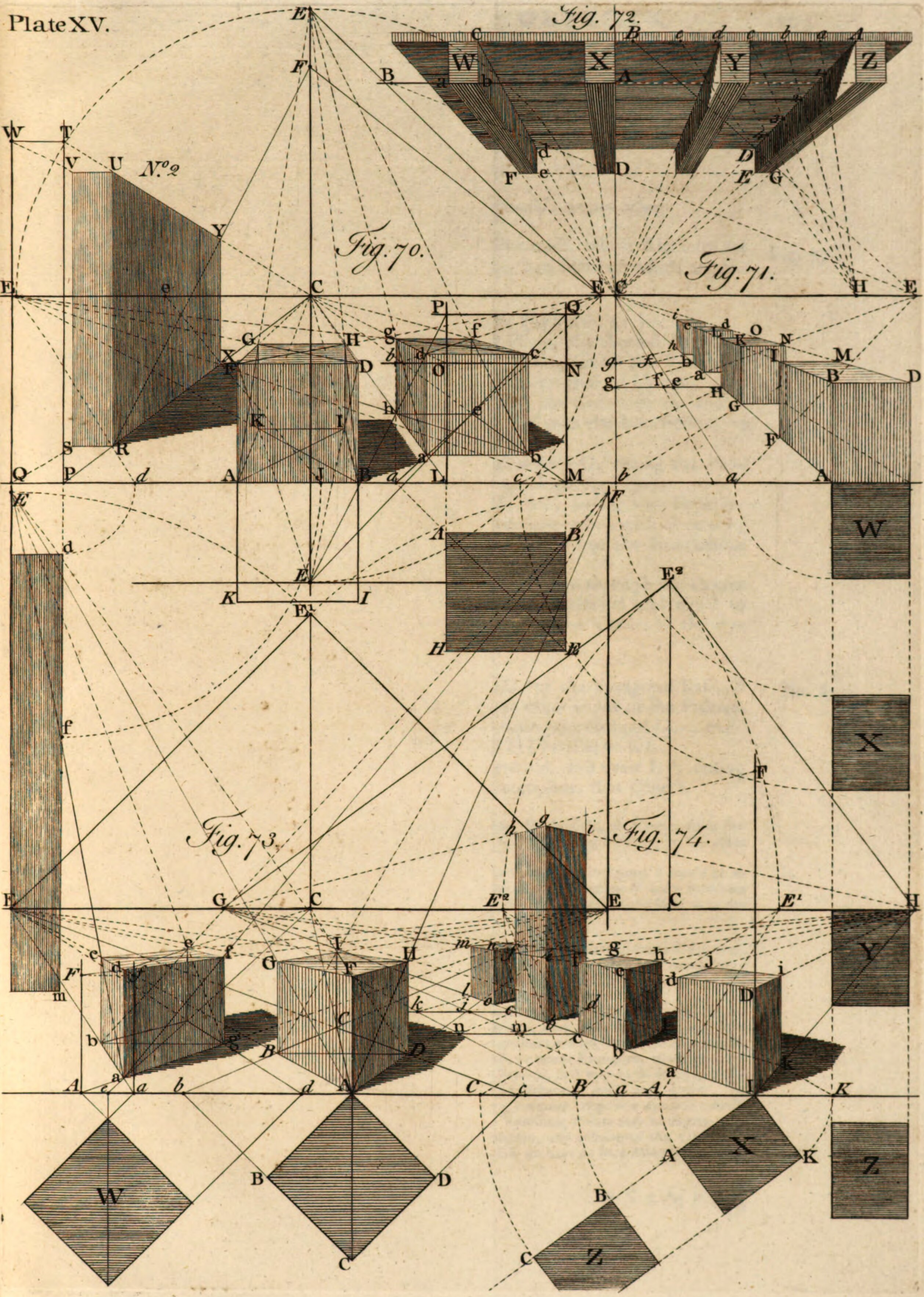
Make ab, bc, and ad, de, each equal to a fifth part, and draw Eb, Ec, &c. which produce to the Vanishing Line, producing the Vanishing Points, F, G, &c. by, which the Pentagon abcde is compleated, as in the Figure (by Prob. 23.)

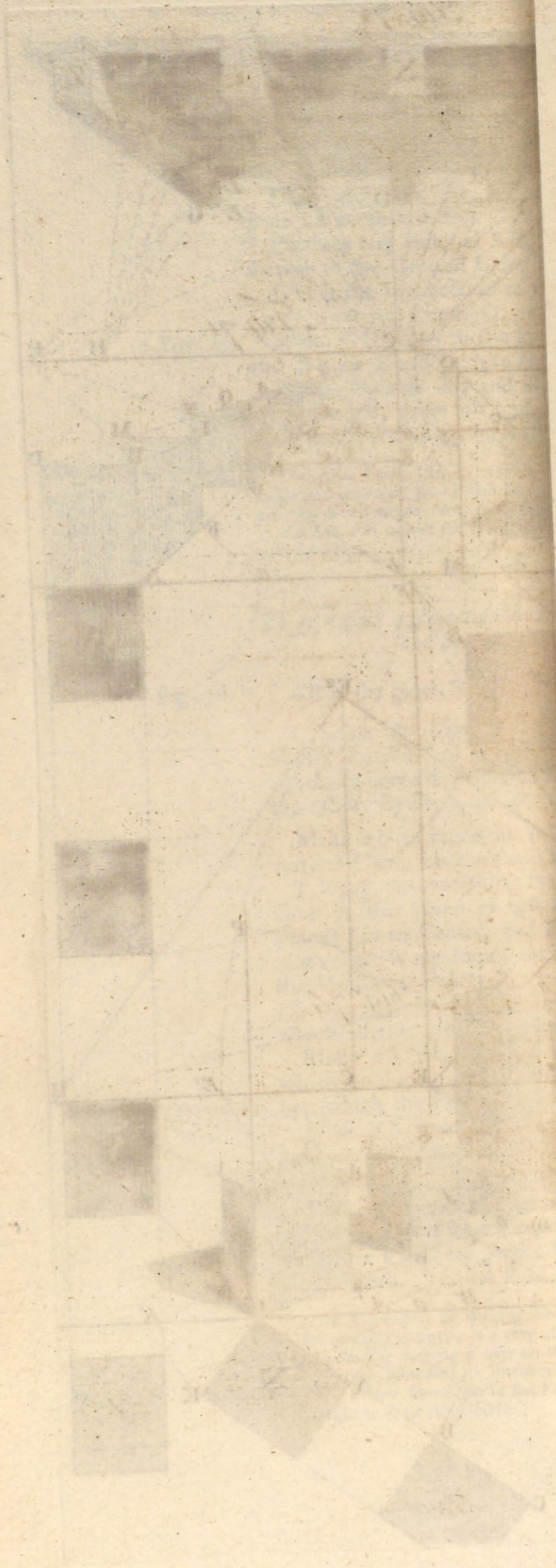
Draw aK indefinite, of the Side AD; and make af to represent a length equal to AD (Prob. 17) also, draw eK and dK.

Draw Hg, through f, and gF, cutting dK in h, which compleats the Figure.

For, afge and eghd represent Parallelograms, which are Faces of the Prism afhdb; and abcde represents an End which is a regular Pentagon; to which the other Faces are perpendicular, IEK being a Right Angle (which Iak represents, Prob. 4) equal BAD.

The Expedient, of turning over the Vanishing Plane, FEH, to find the Vanishing Points of the Sides of the Pentagon, is a very useful and necessary Expedient; because it often happens, that there is not room for turning it over on the other Side of the Vanishing Line, if it be remote from the Center. And, notwithstanding it interferes with the Object, in this Diagram, yet being done first, and the Vanishing Points found (as in the Figure) all the operative Lines (for finding them) are rubbed out before we begin to draw the Object.





In Fig. 37, the horizontal Vanishing Plane, NIKL, or the vertical Plane V, being turned over on their Intersections with the Picture (which are the Vanishing Lines they produce) it is obvious that the Angles, formed by the Radials, EN, ED, &c. are the same on both Sides, and consequently they produce the same Vanishing Points, N, M, &c. whether the Vanishing Plane be turned up or down, to the Right or to the Left.

E X A M P L E VII.

To represent a quadrangular or hexagonal Pyramid; or any other.

Let W and Z be the Plans of the Bases of two Pyramids, whose Altitudes are known, the one a square Base, the other a Hexagon; two Sides of which are parallel to two Sides of the Square.

Fig. 77.

Find the perspective Plan ABCD, of the Base, W (by Prob. 21.)

If the Original Figure be drawn in the Ground Plane, the shortest way is by producing its Sides to the Intersection, AK; and, having found the Vanishing Points, M and N, of the Sides, draw their indefinite Representations (Method 1st.)

Draw the Diagonals, AC and BD, intersecting at H, the Center of the Base.

Draw HI perpendicular; and where the Diagonal AC cuts the Intersection, at A, draw AF, also perpendicular to the Ground Line.

Make AF equal to the height of the Pyramid, and draw FG, cutting the Perpendicular HI in I, and draw AI, BI, &c. which compleats the Figure.

If (as in this Example) on account of the Diagonal, AC, having very little inclination to the Ground Line, the Altitude cannot be determined with accuracy; and the other Diagonal, BD, is so much inclined as not to cut the Intersection within the Picture; it may be thus determined.

From either Vanishing Point, M or N, draw a Right Line through the Center of the Base, till it cuts the Ground Line, at a; draw af parallel and equal to AF, and draw fN, cutting HI in the same Point, I, for the Vertex of the Pyramid, as before. Or, as in the following.

2nd. Having found the perspective Plan ABCDFG, of the hexagonal Base, Z (Prob. 24) M and O being two Vanishing Points; the other is out of the Picture. From any Point, P, in the Vanishing Line, draw PH cutting the Ground Line, in K.

No. 2.

Draw KL perpendicular to the Ground Line, and HI parallel to KL.

Make KL equal to the known Altitude of that Pyramid, and draw LP, cutting HI in I; and draw AI, BI, &c. as before, which compleats that Object.

Prisms and Pyramids are very useful Subjects for practical Lessons. By the first, we learn to form Pavillions, Temples, Cupolas, Alcoves, &c. which are, generally, of some prismatic Form; by the other we may form a Spire, Obelisk, or Pyramid, of any Figure.

As those Objects admit of infinite variety (as many as there may be various Poligons) it would be to little purpose to give more Examples of them, seeing that, if a Polygon of any number of Sides be drawn in Perspective, for the Base (by the various Problems of the last Section) the rest is the same as in the Examples given.

It may, I presume, have been observed, how inconvenient it would be to have the Ground Plans of all the Objects, to be delineated, geometrically drawn, in the Geometrical Plane; besides, the impossibility of having room for them, when the Objects extend to any considerable Distance; as the Plans, W, X, Y, and Z, of the Parallelopipeds in the 2nd Example (Plate XV) evinces.

It may also be observed, that they are of no other use than to know how the Objects are situated, in respect both of the Picture and of each other; but since it is obvious, from what has been done, that they are not absolutely necessary to be drawn, seeing that, if their measures are applied to the Intersection of the Plane they are in, it will answer the purpose; therefore I shall, in future Examples, where they are not absolutely necessary, do without them. Yet it must not be understood, that we can do entirely without, which is impossible; but, in many Cases, their Measures and Distances, only, are requisite. In others, the Situation and Position of one Object to another, being irregular, require a true and correct Plan to be first drawn (but not on the Picture) from which, all the Vanishing Points may be ascertained; as every Line, in Perspective, is determined from geometrical Proportion, and position of the Object to the Picture; consequently, they must be known or imagined, otherwise we have no foundation to build on.

Plate XVI.

E X A M P L E VIII.

To represent right-lined, or streight Steps, parallel to the Picture.

Fig. 78. Let ABIH be the Plan of three Steps; AB, CD, and FG are the Seats of the Fronts on the Ground Plane. X is a Section of the whole.

The first Step AB is in the Interfection; consequently (being right angled) the Ends, AH and BI, are perpendicular to it.

EC is the Horizontal Line, C the Center of the Picture, and CE its Distance.

Draw AC and BC. Make Aa , ab , and bc , each equal to the width of a Step, and draw aE , bE , and cE , cutting AC in C, F, and H.

Draw CD, FG and HI, parallel to AB, cutting BC, in D, G, and I.

CD, FG, and HI, are the perspective Seats of the several Steps.

Draw Ak perpendicular to AB; on which take Aa , aj , and jk , each equal to mn (the height of a Step in the Section, X) and draw aC , jC , and kC .

From the extremes of the Seats, CD, &c. draw Cc , Ff , and Hh , parallel to Ak, i. e. perpendicular to the Interfection, cutting aC , jC , and kC , in ec , ff , and h .

Draw ed , cd , fg , fg , and hi , cutting the Perpendiculars from D, G, and I, in b , dd , &c. and draw bd , dg , and gi , tending to C, which compleats the Steps.

Otherwise; draw KN perpendicular to the Ground Line, at a convenient distance from the Plan, and draw KC; on which, make KO, OP, and PQ represent the measures of the Steps, perspectively, as at C, F, and H, on AC.

Make KL, LM, and MN each equal to mn , and draw LC, MC, and NC, cutting the Perpendiculars from O, P and Q, in R, S, T, &c.

Make $AabB$ a Rectangle, equal to the Front of a Step, geometrical.

Draw aC and bC ; and from R, draw Re parallel to ab , cutting them in d and e ; draw ec and dd , perpendicular; and from S, draw Sc cutting them in c and d ; and proceed as before, by drawing cC and dC , and Tf, cutting them, &c.

By this method of proceeding, the Work may be kept cleaner, as it does not interfere with the Object; but it is not so much to be depended on for accuracy; especially, as the Steps advance higher, and approach near the Vanishing Line; seeing, the Lines intersect so very oblique, that the point of section is not easily distinguished.

The front of each Step, being parallel to the Picture, are similar to each other; and have that proportion to each other, respectively, as their several Distances, i. e. the second Step, cd , is, in length and height, to the first, ab , as EC is to $EC + Aa$; and $fg : ab :: EC : EC + Aa$; also, $fg : cd :: EC + Aa : EC + Ab$. †

† Theo. 10.

For, EC is the Distance of the Picture, and Aa , ab , were made equal to AC, CF.

The Triangles, ACa , ECC , also AFb and EFC are similar; and so are the Triangles aCA , and cCC ; and also, aCb and ecd ; and cd is equal to ed , &c. (15. 1. El.)

Wherefore, $CC : AC :: EC : Aa$, and consequently, $CC : AC :: EC : EC + Aa$; and $Cc : Aa :: CC : AC$, and $ec = Cc$, consequently, $ec : Aa :: EC : EC + Aa$; also, $ec : aC :: CC : AC$, and $ed : ab :: ec : aC$, i. e. $ec : aC :: CC : AC$, i. e. $EC : EC + Aa$; consequently, cd (equal ed) : $ab :: EC : EC + Aa$, &c. that is, as the Distance of the Picture (equal to the Distance of the first step) is to the Distance of the second Step; and so of the rest; as affirmed above; by 4. 6. El.

E X A M P L E IX.

To represent Steps with Kirbs of stone at the ends; as at the entrance into a House, &c.

First, when they are parallel to the Picture; and the Picture close to them.

Fig. 79. Take AB, on the Ground Line, equal to the width, or more properly, to the length of the Steps; and, AD and BJ to the thickness of the Kirbs.

Make

Make AF equal to their height, and describe the Rectangles $AFGD$, and $BHIJ$, geometrically; which are supposed to be in the Picture.

C is the Center of the Picture, and CE the Distance. Draw AC and BC .

Make Ba equal to the Distance of the first Step from the Kirb; and ab , bc , and cd , each equal to the breadth of a Step, and draw aE , bE , &c. cutting BC in a , b , c , &c. the perspective breadths of the Steps, on the Ground.

Make Be , ef , &c. each equal to the height of a Step, and draw eC , fC , &c. cutting the Perpendiculars, from a , b , c , &c. in l , m , &c. and transfer them, by the parallel Lines af , bg , &c. on the Ground, to the other End, and compleat the Steps, as by the last.

The upper Step having a greater breadth than the other, make dD equal to its breadth, and draw DE cutting BC in e ; the Perpendiculars do and ep cut bC in o and p ; and ou , pv , being drawn parallel to the Ground Line, cut the corresponding Perpendiculars iu and kv , which determine it; viz. $opvu$.

If the Kirbs are square, they are right angled Parallelopipeds, and are delineated, as described in Problem the 29th. $AFGD$ and $BHIJ$ are the Fronts, $AFvk$ and $BHpe$ are the Sides, which inclose the Steps; and, $FvwG$ and $HpqI$ are their upper Faces.

If they incline with the Steps (as is common) make the Rectangles AK and BL equal to the Ends; suppose, equal to the height of a Step.

Draw CC perpendicular to the Horizontal Line; and, CE being equal to the distance of the Picture, make the Angle CEC equal to the inclination of the Steps, cutting CC in C , which is the vanishing Point of their Inclination.

VL , passing through C parallel to the Horizontal Line, is the Vanishing Line of a Plane inclined to the Horizon, in the Angle CEC , equal ECL , and C is its Center (see Fig. 15, No. 3, P. 72, or Sec. 12)

For CC is perpendicular to VL ; and EC producing the point C , is the Radial of such Lines in the inclined Plane as are perpendicular to its Intersection KL ; therefore C is their Vanishing Point. (Def. 22.)

Draw KC , LC , &c. cutting GC , IC , &c. in xy , &c. which compleats the inclined Faces of the Kirbs, as in the Figure; by drawing xu and oy .

CASE 2nd. EXAMPLE X.

When the Steps are inclined to the Picture; the inclination being determined, also their Situation, in respect of the Station Line.

In this Example I shall suppose, that there is not room on the Picture for ascertaining the Vanishing Points and their Distances, as usual; in order to apply the 12th Problem.

C being the Center of the Picture, and KCL the Horizontal Line, draw CE perpendicular, and take CE any equal part (suppose one third part) of the determined Distance of the Picture. Fig. 80.

Make the Angle CED equal to the Inclination known; and CD will be one third part of the Distance of the Vanishing Point L , of one Side; which being determined, all the rest are determinable, arithmetically (by Prob. 12.)

Or, make DEF a Right Angle; CF will be a third part of CK ; and FE will be a third part of its Distance, by the same, &c.

Having obtained the Vanishing Points, K and L , and their Distances E^1 and E^2 being laid down (CE^1 being equal to three times the difference between FC and FE ; and CE^2 to three times the difference between CD and DE) then, proceed as usual; AE being the Intersection of the inward Angle of the Kirb.

Draw AK , the indefinite Representation of the Front, and AL of the End.

Let AJ be the length of the Steps (eq. AB , Fig. 79) draw JE^1 cutting AK in A .

Make Aa equal to the distance of the first Step; ab , and be , &c. each equal to the breadth of a Step, and draw aE^2 , bE^2 , &c. cutting it in a , b , &c. and, seeing there is not room on the Intersection, Ac , to apply the measure of the top Step, which, suppose equal to Ac , draw df parallel to Ac , and cL cutting it in f ; and draw fE^2 cutting AL in B .

Draw

Plate XVI.
Fig. 80.

Draw the Perpendiculars aj , bf , &c. indefinite.

On AE , take AB , BC , &c. each equal to the height of a Step, and draw BL , CL , &c. cutting the Perpendiculars from a , b , &c. as in the Figure.

Draw a K , and AL cutting it in k ; draw kl perpendicular, and jk cutting it in l ; draw lL , and eK cutting it in m , and fK cutting the Perpendicular, mn in n , and proceed, after the same manner, throughout.

Or, having drawn all the Lines eK , fK , &c. indefinite, draw lL , and mn perpendicular to the Ground Line; then nL , and op , &c. by proceeding after that manner the Steps are completed.

The Kirb being equal to BJ (as in the former Figure) draw BE' , cutting AK in D ; AD represents the thickness of the Kirb, at that end.

The Original of the Point, G , being supposed on this Side of the Picture, and being in the Ground Plane, the Representation (G) is consequently below the Ground Line, AB . (See N. B. Prob. 8. Fig. 45. The measure being applied on this Side, i. e. below AB , as AH , supposes AB proportioned perspectively; but, being at the other Extreme, as aB , it is projected; and is, consequently, larger than the Original.)

Make Ad equal to BJ , and draw $E'd$, cutting KA produced, in G ; AG is the projective representation of the end of the Kirb, the Original, of which, is equal to Ad , equal BJ .

Draw the Perpendiculars GH , AF , and DG , indefinite; and, AE being made equal to the height of the Kirb, draw KE , cutting them in G , F , and H .

EL cuts a Perpendicular from B , in I ; and, if FL and GL be drawn, KI , cutting them, compleats the upper Faces, FJ and AIH . KB and GL intersecting at g , and gb perpendicular, cutting HL , at b , compleats the End.

If the Kirbs are inclined with the Steps, as in the former Case, draw LV , perpendicular to KL ; which is the Vanishing Line of the Plane of the End, $AEIB$.

LE^2 being its Distance, draw E^2V , making the Angle LE^2V equal to the inclination of the Steps, cutting LV in V , the Vanishing Point of the inclined Sides*.

KV is the Vanishing Line of the Inclination. (Theo. 11, Part 2nd, Cor. 1.)

AB being made equal to the height of the Front, draw KB , cutting DG , AF , and GH , in K , H , B , and L ; from which Points, draw KV , HV , &c. cutting the horizontal Lines GL , HL , &c. in s , r , u , &c. through which, draw Ku , or join the Points rs , tu , only.

Note. The Picture might, with equal propriety, have been supposed on this side of the Kirb, entirely; but, as it frequently happens, in Practice (the Picture being fixed inadvertently) that some parts of the Object would project on this Side; I thought it necessary to give an Example how to proceed in that Case.

$ABob$ is the Section made by the Picture, with the inclined Kirb, and shews how much is supposed to project on this Side. Ab is the section of the Bottom, consequently, parallel to the Horizontal Line, bb is the section of the End, which is vertical, therefore parallel to VL its Vanishing Line; and Bb is the Section with the inclined part, consequently, parallel to the Vanishing Line, KV , of the inclination of the Steps. (Theorem 3rd.)

* This will be clearly demonstrated and made manifest, in the 12th and last Section of this Book.

N. B. The Vanishing Line (VW) of the Roof of the Object in the Apparatus, is determined in this manner (as KV) and is in a similar Position, on the direct Picture, $MNOP$.

V , the Vanishing Point of HG , answers to K , in this Figure; Y answers to L , and W to V .

SECTION VII.

THE foregoing Section contains many useful Lessons in Plane Solids, which may be considered as parts of Buildings, &c. In this, I intend to shew how the more sublime and decorative parts are formed, such as Pedestals for Columns, Cornices and Entablatures, &c. of the various Orders; without which embellishments, a Building seems naked and destitute of Ornament.

...the ...
...the ...
...the ...

...the ...
...the ...
...the ...

...the ...
...the ...
...the ...

...the ...
...the ...
...the ...

...the ...
...the ...
...the ...

...the ...
...the ...
...the ...

...the ...
...the ...
...the ...

...the ...
...the ...
...the ...

...the ...
...the ...
...the ...

The last Lessons, of Steps, are very necessary to the art of delineating Mouldings; but, there yet remains another construction of Steps, which, when we know how to manage well, Mouldings very readily follow; such Steps as return on every Side of a Pedestal, &c. forming mitre Angles. For Mouldings breaking round a Pedestal, or the internal and external Angles of a Cornice, &c. properly considered, are but so many Steps, one above or below another, of different dimensions; formed by the larger or smaller Fillets, between the cylindrical parts, which are, properly, the Mouldings; and are effected only by Light and Shade. The Fillets between them, are small Planes, cutting the curved Surfaces in parallel Lines; which being described, by the Rules given, and the mitre Angles drawn, the business of the linear part is done, and nothing remains but to give the appearance of solidity, convexity and concavity, by a just disposition of Light and Shade.

E X A M P L E XI.

How to delineate square Steps, returning on every Side.

First, when they are parallel to the Picture. AB is their length, ABCD is half the geometrical Plan of the first Step; FGHI of the second, and KLMN of the third; and let OP be the measure of a Cube, on the upper Step.

Fig. 81:

C being the Center, draw AC and BC; and AE, which is a Diagonal, represents AQ, in which are the Seats of G, L, and O, the Angles of the Steps.

Compleat the Square ADCB (Prob. 19) and draw the other Diagonal BD; which, it is evident, tends to a Point on the left hand of C, equal to CE, the Distance of the Picture.

Produce FG, KL, &c. to the Ground Line, cutting it in g, l, &c. i. e. make Ag, gl, Bb, &c. equal to the breadth of the Steps, and draw gC, lC, &c. cutting the Diagonals in G, L, H, &c. the perspective Seats of the several Angles, or Corners of the Steps.

Draw Ad perpendicular to AB, and make Aa, ab, and bc, equal to the height of the Steps, as in the former Examples; and, having drawn the Perpendiculars Ge, Li, &c. draw aE, bE, and cE, cutting them in c and e, g and i.

Draw ab, cd, ef, &c. parallel to AB, cutting the Perpendiculars from B, H, &c. in b, d, f, &c. which give the representations of the Fronts, corresponding with GH and LM. AabB, being in the Picture, has its full dimensions, in height and length; to which the other two are similar. (See Example 8th.)

Having obtained the Fronts (by means of an imaginary Plane passing through the Diagonal AC, which ACFC represents) finish the square of the Top, iklm†. † Prob. 29.

Then, draw fC and bC, till they cut hk and df, which represents the return of the Steps on that Side, so far as they can be seen; on the other Side they are seen to their full extent, the Point of view being on that Side.

Draw aC and eC, &c. cutting Perpendiculars from D, I, &c. in a, j, and m; and, having compleated the Side gmi, from j and a, draw Lines parallel to the Ground Line, cutting the adjacent Step, which terminates their appearance, and compleats the Steps.

To represent a Cube on the upper Step; draw the Perpendiculars Or, and Pq indefinite; make cd (on the vertical Intersection, Ad) equal to OP, in the geometrical Plan, and draw cE and dE, cutting Or, in o and r.

Draw op and rq, parallel to the Steps, which compleats the Square orqp.

Or, having obtained op (as above) equal OP (the perspective Seat of OP) on op describe a Square, and finish the End orsn, as in the Figure. (Prob. 29.)

I presume that the Reader will, ere this, have discovered, how inconvenient it is to have the perspective Plans, of complex Objects, in the very place where the Object itself is drawn; which, I am sensible, must render it, to young practitioners, perplexing and intricate, to distinguish one part from another. That difficulty shall be obviated in the next Example; but I must observe, that the connection of the several parts, and the agreement between the Plan and Elevation, would not have been so distinctly seen, without the Plan in its true place; hereafter we shall place it either above or below, as is most convenient.

Pl. XVII. Let it be observed, notwithstanding, that this apparent intricacy will vanish at a second process; and that the perspective Plans, &c. being drawn with a fine Pencil (which the dotted Lines represent) are rubbed out, as soon as we have obtained the Perpendiculars of the Corners of the Steps.

Fig 81. Above the Vanishing Line, let AB be drawn parallel to it, which let be equal to AB ; the Point A perpendicularly over A , and B over B .

Then, if AC and BC be drawn, and the Diagonal AE , cutting BC in C ; and CD being drawn parallel to AB , compleats the Plan of a Square, $ABCD$, corresponding with $ABCD$ below.

And, if the measure of the Steps be set off, from A and B , at a , b , c , and d , e , f ; aC , bC , &c. being drawn, cut the Diagonals AC and BD , in g , h , &c. which correspond with G , H , &c. below; as may be seen by the dotted Lines bH , mM , pP , &c.

Wherefore, if there be room above, and not below, the Plan may be formed above; by means of which, the Object may be compleated; drawing the Perpendiculars gEc , lIg , &c. cutting aE , bE , and cE ; and hfd , &c. cutting the parallel Lines ef , &c. which terminates the other ends of the Steps.

E X A M P L E XII.

Is an Expedient, or Lemma, by means of which, Mouldings, &c. may be delineated, without having the perspective Plan in the Work.

Fig. 82. Let $ABCD$ be a perspective Plan of a Square, whose measure is AI , on the Intersection (described by Prob. 20 and 21) F and G are the Vanishing Points of the Sides of the Square, and H of the Diagonal; consequently, FHG is the Vanishing Line of the Plane of the Figure; S is its Center.

The Distance of the Vanishing Line, FG , is a mean Proportional between SF and SG (Prob. 12) the Point E , which is the Distance of the Vanishing Point F , from the Eye, is determined by the same; and, the Vanishing Point, H , of the Diagonal, by bisecting the Angle, which the Radials of AB , and AD , make at the Eye; or, by making FH to HG , as the Radial of AB is to the other (3. 6. El.)

See Prob. 10, Case 3rd, Fig. 49. EH , bisecting the Angle DEG , made between the Radials of AC and CB , gives the Vanishing Point H ; by which, the Lines AC and CB are cut, perspective, representing equal Lines. As, in this Example, by drawing AH (H being obtained, as above) AB being made to represent a measure equal to AI (Prob. 17) and BG drawn; BG is cut, in C , representing an equal Line as AB represents, i. e. equal to AI (Prob. 10.) Then, draw AG ; and FC , till it cuts AG , in D ; $ABCD$ represents a Square, whose Side is equal AI .

It is required to draw, within the Square $ABCD$, the representations of several less Squares, of certain dimensions in proportion to the other, about the same Diagonals (AC and BD) and consequently, having the same Center; i. e. to draw the representations of Borders or Margins within it.

Make Aa and ab respectively equal to the breadths of the Margins.

Draw aE and bE , cutting AB in c and d ; then, draw cG and dG , cutting the Diagonals in e and h , i and m ; and draw eF , iF , &c. cutting the Diagonals again, at f , k , &c. and join fg and kl ; or, draw fG and kG .

$efgh$ and $iklm$ are the representations of Squares, having the same Center, O , and are about the same common Diameters, AC and BD .

Now, because the Intersection (AI) of the Plane those Squares are in, is so near its Vanishing Line (FG) the Sides of the Squares, AB , ef , &c. cut the Diagonal BD very oblique; for which reason, the Points of Section, f and k , cannot be ascertained with accuracy; nor can the true breadths of the Margins be determined. Therefore, either below or above the Vanishing Line, draw AB , or a B parallel to AI ; in which, take A or a , in a perpendicular Line from A , and make AB , or a B equal AI ; and make $A1$, or a 1 , and 12 , respectively equal to Aa and ab .

Draw AF and AG , or aF and aG ; and BE , $1E$, $2E$, cutting AF in B , p , and q .

Compleat the Square $ABCD$, or $abcd$, by the same Vanishing Points, F , G , and H , and draw the Diagonals BD , or bd . Draw pG , and qG , cutting the Diagonals, in E , H , i and m ; from which Points draw EF , iF , &c. and finish the interior Squares, $EFGH$, &c. as in the Figure.

If Perpendiculars are drawn from the Points E, F , or e, f, i, k , &c. they will cut the Diagonals AC and BD in the Points, e, f, i, k , &c. as it is obvious from inspection of the Figure.

For, if AI be the Intersection of the Plane of $ABCD$, with the Picture, AB, aB may be considered as the Intersections of other Planes, parallel to the former, and therefore, they have the same Vanishing Line, FG ; and consequently, AB, AB , and aB ; also AD, AD , and aD , and all other Lines, whose Originals are parallel to their Originals, have the same Vanishing Points, F and G ; notwithstanding, the Lines are in different Planes; and H , is the Vanishing Point of the Diagonals, AC and aC , seeing, that they represent parallel Lines, and in parallel Planes.

† Theo. 5.
‡ Cor. to
Theo. 5.

Therefore, $ABbaDD$ represents a right angled Parallelopiped or Prism, whose Base, $ABCD$, and Top, $abCD$, are Squares; consequently, they are equal and parallel to each other; and similarly posited. $ABCD$ may be considered as a Section of that Prism, by a Plane parallel to its Base; and consequently, it is also a Square, equal, similar, and parallel to the other.

§ See Def.
Page 44.

The same may be said of all the interior Squares; which, with the Perpendiculars Ee, Ff , &c. also form Prisms.

In Example 5, the hexagonal Prism has its Base and Top similar Figures, and similarly posited; and being in parallel Planes, their Sides are parallel, and consequently, they have the same Vanishing Points.

Hence it is manifest, that, either the Plan $ABCD$, or $abCD$, may be used, for the purpose of drawing perpendicular Lines, in order to determine the extremes of Steps, &c. instead of the real Plan $ABCD$; in which, on account of their being farther from their Vanishing Line, the Intersections are determined with greater exactness, and without incommoding the Object.

E X A M P L E XIII.

How to represent square Steps, obliquely situated to the Picture and having a Pedestal situated on them.

Let AB be the Ground Line, and FG the Horizontal vanishing Line, C is its Center; A is the intersecting Point of the nearest Angle of the Ground Plan.

Fig. 83.

The Distance of the Picture being known, and the Inclination of the Sides of the Object determined, find the Vanishing Points, D and F , of the Sides (by Prob. 12) and G of the Diagonal, as directed in the last Example; also, find E , making DE equal to the Distance of the Vanishing Point D .

Draw AD and AF , indefinite; make AB equal to the Side of the Square of the Steps, and draw BE , cutting AD in b .

Draw AB parallel to AB at any Distance at discretion*.

Draw AA perpendicular to AB ; and at the Point A , describe the representation of a Square $ABCD$ (by means of the Vanishing Points D and F ; and G , of the Diagonal) whose Side AD , is equal to AB .*

Make Aa, ab , and Bd, de , each equal to the width of the Steps; and draw aE, bE , &c. cutting AD in g, h, j , and k .

Draw the Diagonals AC and BD ; and draw gF, hF , &c. cutting them in E, F, G , &c. and compleat the interior Squares, as in the last Figure.

Draw AH , perpendicular to AB . Take Aa and ac equal to the height of the Steps, and draw aD and aF , terminating at b and d , where Perpendiculars from B and D cuts them.

Draw aG and cG , cutting a Perpendicular from F , in e and f .

Draw eD and fD , eF and fF , cutting Perpendiculars from G and H , at g and h , which terminates that Step; bD and dF cutting the next Step, at g and h , compleats the first.

It, remains, now to delineate a Pedestal upon the upper Step.

IK is the perspective Plan of its Base, in the place of the third Step.

Set off the geometrical projectures of the Mouldings, from b to c , or from e to f , on the Intersection; and transfer them to AD , by means of the Point E ; and draw iF and lF ; cutting the Diagonals at K, L , &c.

Then

* Note. This Point (B) is in the Plinth of the next Figure, 84.

Pl. XVII. Then, on the Intersection AH, make cH equal to the height of the Pedestal; make ci equal to the Plinth, ik to the Base Moulding, kl to the Dado, lH to its Cornice or Sirbase, and Hj to the Plinth of the Base of the Column; which, notwithstanding it is a part of the Base, always goes with the Pedestal.

At X and Z, on the left hand, the Profile of the Mouldings and Steps are described, geometrically; from which they are transferred by means of parallel Lines, to the vertical Intersection AH.

Draw cG, iG, kG, &c. cutting Perpendiculars from K and L, in m, n, o, p, and q; the representations of the corresponding Points in the Profile.

Draw mD, nD, mF and nF, &c. cutting Perpendiculars from I and H, in r, s, t, m, n, o, &c. and having divided ik and lH into the smaller divisions of the Mouldings (as at X and Z) draw to G, cutting Perpendiculars from the corresponding Parts in the Ground Plan, at JIK, by which means, the whole is completed; as in the Figure.

Now, when this Operation is well considered, what are the several Parts which compose the Pedestal, but so many Steps of different heights and breadths. The Plinth, mnm, is in the place of the next Step, about twice the height; and the Fillet, which follows it; is another of a much less height; the Dado, after that, is another still higher, equal kl; and the Cornice, v, q, x, is but Steps reversed.

The Curve Lines st, no, and no, joining the Angles of the several Fillets, are all that have any linear curvature; although noon represents a cylindrical Surface, yet the appearance of it is effected by Light and Shade only; which, according as it is supposed to be situated, in respect of the Light, will appear either convex or concave; to which, the curve Lines, at its extremes, do not at all contribute.

And now I might take leave of the Reader, and of this Section, and endeavour (as others have done) to persuade him, that I have, in this Lesson, given him sufficient instructions for delineating all kinds of rectilinear Mouldings; but, I have not quite so good an opinion of his capacity (if it be his first essay) as to suppose any such thing; my intent in this, is only to give him some little Idea of it, by comparing the Process with that of delineating Plane Steps. There remains yet somewhat more to be said on the Subject; therefore I shall not trespass on his time, but give some other Examples for his further Instruction.

E X A M P L E XIV.

How to represent Mouldings round the Basement of a Building, being a regular Pedestal, with an internal and external Angles; whose Planes are parallel and perpendicular to the Picture, and also one to another.

Fig. 84. Let AB be the Ground Line, and AD the Intersection of the Picture with the vertical Plane of the Dado, bcge; on which, set off all the measures of the heights of the Mouldings, and their Distance from each other.

Aa is the height of the Plinth, ab of the Base moulding; bc of the Dado, and cD of the Sirbase, or Cornice of the Pedestal.

Let each Moulding be drawn, geometrical, cdD the Cornice, and abc the Base; draw the Perpendicular ac, and draw the diagonal Lines bc and cd.

C being the Center of the Picture, and EC the Distance, draw AC indefinite.

Make AF the measure of the first break, and draw EF, cutting AC at G.

Draw GI parallel to AB; make AF equal to the projecture of the Pedestal, and draw FC, cutting GI, at I.

Make IJ to GI as the front of the Pedestal to its projecture; that is, as FB to AF; and draw JE, cutting FC, at K; or BE, cutting AC, at H, and draw HK parallel to AB.

From the several Angles, G, I, and K, thus obtained, draw Gr, Is, and Kt, perpendicular to the Ground Line; which constitute the several Planes, from which the Mouldings are supposed to project.

Draw bC, cC, and DC, cutting Gr, at e, g, and e; draw ef, gm, and ek, parallel to the Ground Line, and where they cut Is, at f, m, and k, draw Lines to the Center, cutting Kt, at g, n, and o.

Now, Degc, ekmg, and konm, is the Seat of the Cornice on those Planes; cge b, &c. is the Dado or plane part between; and Ab eG, GefI, and IfgK are the Grounds of the whole Base.

Draw

Draw aC , cutting EF at b ; draw bb parallel to AB , cutting EI produced, at b ; and draw bC , indefinite.

The Angle k is determined, by drawing a Line from K to the Eye, on the other Side of the Center, equal CE ; for Kk is a Diagonal of a Square; whose Vanishing Points are, in this Case, the Points of Distance. (Prob. 19.)

Or, if the Vanishing Point of the Diagonal Kk is not on the Picture, draw Kd parallel to the Ground Line; on which describe the Square $Kikd$ (by Pr. 19) which will give the Angle, k , required; i. e. draw dE cutting KC ; and ik parallel to Kd , cutting dC at k , the Angle sought.

From the several Angles, b , b , and k , draw the Perpendiculars bf , bl , and kp ; and, through e and k , draw Ee , and Ek , cutting the two first, at f and l .

Or, from c and d , draw Lines to the Center, cutting the first at d and f ; from which, draw dB and fl , cutting the second, at B and l ; and from them draw Lines to the Center, cutting kp , in l and p ; which gives all the extreme Angles of the Mouldings.

Draw the diagonal Lines ed , fB , and fg , &c. and observe how the parallel Lines in the geometrical Mouldings, cut their Diagonals; as, at h , the great projection of the Facia goes beyond it.

Draw the lower Line of the Cimma or Ogee, at h ; and, where it cuts the Diagonals, at i and j , draw the perpendicular lines of the Facia, which will terminate it, at the several Angles; by drawing hi , tending to the Center, and ij parallel to the Vanishing Line, &c. The rest is obvious on inspection of the Figure.

The Fillet at Z between the Ovolo and Cavetto, touches the diagonal Line, cd ; by which, it is easily described, as above.

It may perhaps be imagined, that bc , and cd are mitre Angles, at the Corner AD , which they are not. For, suppose $ADvu$ to be a returning Plane, parallel to the Picture, and at right angles with $ADeG$.

Then, because AD was considered as the Section of that Plane, $ADvu$ is in the Picture; and consequently, $Abca$ and cdD are sections of the Mouldings, by the Picture; and if they are continued on the Plane $ADvu$, they will project on this Side of the Picture.

Draw EA , meeting ba , produced, at n ; and draw nx parallel to AD .

Produce fd to x ; draw the Diagonal cx , and draw the parallel Lines vx , &c. cx is the mitre Angle of the Moulding, at that Corner.

Also, produce dc , till it cuts the Perpendicular nx at o ; and draw op and nq parallel to the Ground Line; a diagonal line, ob , is the Angle of that Moulding.

It may be observed, that, if AD coincided with uEv , the mitre Angles would be in that Line entirely; or, if that Line was beyond E , the mitre Angle would be on the left hand of it.

AB being the Intersection of the Ground Plane with the Picture, all the Mouldings on this Side, viz. $acbyqn$, and $cdxvw$ project through the Picture, and they are considered as projected to the Picture†.

Dq is the height of the Plinth of the Base, which determines it, at r , s , t , on the Pedestal.

† See Projection, P. 52.

E X A M P L E XV.

Is a general and universal Rule for delineating Mouldings, parallel to the Picture; whether they are above or below the Eye.

At either extreme of the Picture, if there be room (or it may be done on another drawing Board, and the Scale Line transferred, carefully, to the Picture) describe the Cornice, &c. geometrically.

If the Student be not acquainted with Architecture, or have not a knowledge of the geometrical proportions of Mouldings, let him not attempt the delineation of them in Perspective, before he has studied, and practised himself a little in that kind of Projection; as he will but lose his time; it being impossible to succeed in one without the other; seeing that the projection of Mouldings, in Perspective, depends on the true geometrical Profile.

X x

Let

Pl. XVII. Fig. 85. Let AB be the height, and BD the projecture of a Cornice, intended to be delineated; to which let there be added an Architrave, FG; between which, the plane part, AF, is called the Frize; the whole together composes an Entablature.

Let the several Mouldings be geometrically described, according to their height and projecture; at $a, b, c, \&c.$ and, CD being drawn perpendicular, may be considered as a vertical Section of the Picture, applied close to the greatest projecture of the Cornice, at D.

According to the height which the Cornice is supposed to be above the Eye, take the Point C, and draw CE perpendicular to CD, i. e. horizontal; and equal to the Distance of the Picture.

Now, E being considered as the Eye of a Spectator, viewing the Cornice, AD, &c. EA, ED, EF, &c. are Visual Rays, in which direction the several parts are seen; and, CD is supposed to be a Plane, interposed, cutting those Rays; consequently, the several Points, $A, a, b, \&c.$ projected by them, are the apparent places of the several edges, or parallel Lines of the Mouldings, on the Picture; which needs no further illustration.

C is the Center of the Picture, and EC is its Distance, by which the perspective Representation of them must be projected; provided that the drawing be required by the Scale of the Original, ABD.

But, it may, from the same Profile, be made either greater or less. e. g.

If the Rays ED, &c. be continued, beyond D to H, and HI be considered as the Plane of the Picture, the projection of the whole Cornice is JH, which is greater than AD, and so of the rest; EI is the Distance of that Picture.

Or, if any other Plane be interposed, as at Kd, or CH; the proportions of the several Parts on each, viz. GF, FA, and AD; gf, fa, ad , or gf, fa, ad , are to each other, as their several Distances, EC, to EK, or EC. (6. 6. El.)

Hence it is evident, that, from parallel Sections of the Rays, EA, ED, &c. any where, the Mouldings will have the same proportion to each other.

The several Sections, CD, Kd, and CH, are Scales of the perspective Proportions for each respective Distance.

It is required to delineate an Entablature by the Scale CH.

Let E be considered as the Center of the Picture or Point of View, and EC the Distance of the Picture; the terms being inverted.

To the farthest Corner (B) of the given Cornice (i. e. to its height, or Seat of the extreme projecture, D, on the Perpendicular AB) draw EB, cutting CH at e .

Take any length, required, as CI, for the Ground Plane of the Cornice.

Draw IK parallel to CH, i. e. perpendicular to EC, the Horizontal vanishing Line; and from e , where EB cut CH, draw eB parallel to the Horizon, cutting IK at B. Draw Dd also parallel; and CB, cutting it, at D, gives the Angle, D.

Draw aA parallel to eB , cutting IK; and, having drawn a diagonal Line AD, then, from the Intersections of the Rays, Ea, Eb, &c. with CH draw Lines parallel to Dd, till they cut AD; and, from b , draw a Perpendicular, cutting the Parallel from c , at i , which compleats the Corona.

Draw iC , cutting the Parallel from b , at k , $icbk$ represents the Planceer, bc, in the Profile. The rest is obvious, for the parallel Side of the Cornice.

The projecture of the Architrave, at F, is obtained, by drawing CF, after the same manner as the Cornice, at D.

If the length of the returning Plane exceeds the limits of the Picture, take any equal part of the whole length, as aB, in eB , produced, and draw aC, cutting BE in b; draw aE, and bc parallel to aB; and cC, cutting BE at d, which may be repeated as oft as occasion requires; according to what part aB was taken of the whole length. Or, if aB be half the length required; make EE equal to half EC, and draw aE, cutting EB, at d, as before.

To ascertain the mitre Angle, e , seeing that the Vanishing Point of the other Diagonal is not in the Picture, draw dh parallel to aB ; and DE , cutting it in i ; make hi equal id , and draw hC , cutting DE in e , the Point sought.

Or, draw dL parallel to aB , cutting the Diagonal, DC , at L ; draw ELA , cutting Be produced, at A ; draw Ad , and produce it, till it cuts DE , at e .

For, $dBAL$ represents a Square (Prop. 19) consequently, BL and dA , being Diagonals of a Square, bisect the Angles, which are Right ones.

Draw a diagonal Line ef , and from all the Angles, b, i, k , &c. on the Diagonal, AD , draw Lines to E , cutting ef ; observing, that the extreme Angle of the Corona, goes beyond the Diagonal; as at k .

This, I presume, is a clear explanation of this Method of representing Mouldings, which is deduced from the most natural and simple Ideas of it, and cannot fail of being intelligible to the meanest capacity, who has any emulation to attain to the art of Perspective.

E X A M P L E XVI.

Pl. XVIII.

To represent a Doric Entablature, with an internal and external Angles.

On account of the variety of Parts, and the many breakings of the Fillets, round the Triglyphs, in the Doric Frize, it is necessary to have it described, geometrically; so that, the Parts may be clearly understood. Indeed every Moulding, delineated in Perspective, ought first to be geometrically drawn, to the Scale of the Drawing; although the measures may be applied from a Scale only, as it will be shewn.

I have shewn, in the 12th Example, how a perspective Plan may be drawn either above or below the Work; by which, Mouldings, &c. may be projected on the Picture with more facility; as exemplified in the 13th. But, that process (though the most to be depended on, for accuracy) is attended with extraordinary trouble, which may be lessened greatly, when we are tolerably acquainted with Mouldings. A Specimen of both will be shewn, in the following Example.

Let AB be the height of the Entablature, according to the Scale of the Drawing. Let it be bisected at C ; and AC , or CB , is a Module, or Diameter of the Order. AC divided into 60 Minutes, is the Scale; by which the whole is proportioned.

 Fig. 86.
No. 1.

QM , the projecture of the whole Cornice, is a Diameter; the rest is proportioned as by the Scale AB . DF is the Architrave, FG is the Frize, with its Triglyphs, and GMQ is the Cornice. HI is the projecture of a Mutule or Modilion, and K of the whole Planceer; which being seen in Perspective (the Eye being below it) has a fine effect, and adds greatly to its august appearance.

$RSTU$ is a geometrical Plan of the Cornice, with an internal Angle at S , and an external, at T ; shewing the Planceer of the Mutules, and panneling between them; for, unless we know the true geometrical form, it is not possible to describe any thing, perspective. Each return of the Cornice is the same, having two Mutules each way, except the last, on the Right, which is supposed unlimited; and, on the Left, it is limited by the bounds of the Picture; which, on account of its distance from the Center, would be distorted, if it was continued much further.

No. 2.

$BAFG$ is a perspective Plan of the whole; which is the best method of proceeding, if accuracy be required in the several parts, and we do not grudge the time spent in doing it. It is formed as follows.

At any Distance from the Horizontal Line, ECE , either above or below it, draw AB parallel to it; one Side, in this Example, being parallel to the Picture.

Having determined on the Place of the Angle a , in the Design, take A perpendicular over it, and draw AC , indefinite.

No. 3.

Take AD equal ST , in the geometrical Plan; and, having made CE in the Horizontal Line, equal to the Distance of the Picture (equal EC) draw DE , cutting AC in F ; then, AF represents the length of AD (equal ST) and F is the internal Angle of the extreme Moulding in the Cornice.

Draw FG parallel to AD , and DC cutting it, in G , the external Angle; for FG also represents an equal length as AF †, both equal to ST .

† Prob. 19.

Make AC equal MQ , the projecture of the whole Cornice, and draw CC and AE cutting it. The Diagonal FI (i. e. DE) also cuts CC in X ; from which, draw XY parallel to AB .

The Angles K, L , and M , of the Corona (K , in the Profile) are determined by making Ad equal to MN , and drawing dC , cutting the Diagonals AV and FX ; by means of which, they are carried round, to L and M , and, by the same means, the whole Plan is completed, as in the Figure.

To

Pl. XVIII.
Fig. 86.
No. 3.

To describe every Step, by which the whole perspective Plan is formed, would be as tedious as it would be useless; seeing that, the various Lessons, already given, are sufficient for any right-lined Figure whatever. The Plans of all the Mutules, *Z, Z*, are the representations of Squares having one Side parallel to the Picture (found by Prob. 19) their places are determined as follows.

Having made *Ae* equal *MO* (in the Profile) draw *eC* cutting the Diagonals *AV* and *FX* at *S* and *W*, and draw *Ww* parallel to *AB*.

Make *Aa* equal to *JM*, in the Profile (equal *Tr* in the geometrical Plan) make *ab, bc, &c.* equal to the width of the Mutules and the spaces between them (*12, 23, &c.* in the Plan) and from each Point, *a, b, &c.* draw Lines to *C*, the Center, cutting a parallel Line from *S*, in *R, P, &c.*

For, the returning Side, *AF*, make *Af, fg, &c.* equal *Aa, ab, &c.* and draw *fE, gE, &c.* cutting *AF*, at *1, 2, 3*, from which, draw Lines parallel to *AB*, cutting *SC* at *T, V, &c.* and *HC* at *m, n, &c.*

For the other parallel Side, *FG*, make *Dg, gf, &c.* also equal to *Aa, ab, &c.* from which draw Lines to the Center; cutting *Ww*, at *XYZ*.

For the apparent width of each Moulding, &c. in Front, draw *MC* perpendicular to the Horizontal Line; take *EC* equal to *EC*, on the Horizontal Line; and, from every Angle, *G, H, K, &c.* in the Profile, draw *EH, EI, &c.* cutting *CM* in the several Points, *g, h, k, &c.* as in the last Example.

Being thus prepared, we now proceed with the Representation.

Fig. 86.

a is the determined Angle of the extreme Moulding; draw the fillet *az* of the upper Moulding (which is in the Picture) geometrical.

From *V, X*, and *Y* (in the perspective Plan) draw perpendicular Lines indefinite; which are the Angles of the Ground Planes of the whole.

Then, from the several Angles *H, K, &c.* in the perspective Plan, draw Lines perpendicular; and, from the corresponding parts on the vertical Section, *CM*, draw Lines parallel to the Horizon, cutting them. e. g.

From *K* draw a Perpendicular, *Kc*, and from *k* (where *KE* cut *CM*) draw horizontal Lines cutting it, at *c*, the representation of the external Angle of the Corona.

Draw *cC*, cutting the Perpendicular from *L* at *l*, the internal Angle of the Corona; and from *l*, draw parallel Lines, cutting the Perpendicular from *M* at *m*, the other external Angle of the same.

Then, from *h* (where *HE* cuts *CM*) draw horizontal Lines cutting the Perpendicular from *H* (in the Plan) at *h*, the representation of the Angle *H*.

Draw *hC* cutting a Perpendicular from *I*, at *j*, and the horizontal Line *j n* gives the other external Angle, *n*.

For the Mutules, draw a Perpendicular from *S*, in the Plan (where they would meet if they were continued to the Diagonal *AV*) and from *i* in the Profile draw parallel Lines cutting it, at *f*; which must be returned at all the Angles, as if it was a continued Facia.

From *O, P, &c.* draw perpendicular Lines cutting them, in the several Points, *o, p, &c.* which are the front Faces of the Mutules. Draw *rC, qC, &c.* cutting the horizontal Line *hh*; where they fall against the Facia.

In the returning Side, draw Perpendiculars from *T, V, &c.* till they meet *SC*, the returning Facia, and so of all the rest; which are best described by the Figure; observing, that if from the several parts in the first or nearest part of the perspective Plan, *BAV*, perpendicular lines be drawn, and from the corresponding parts in the Section, *MC*, parallel Lines cutting them; and, by carefully remarking the mitre Angles of each Member, the true perspective proportions of them are carried round as many Breaks, in the Object, as are required; by means of the Vanishing Point *C* (the Center) for one return, the other parallel; the Originals of them being, in this Example, parallel to the Picture, and the Object right-angled.

The

Fig. 82.

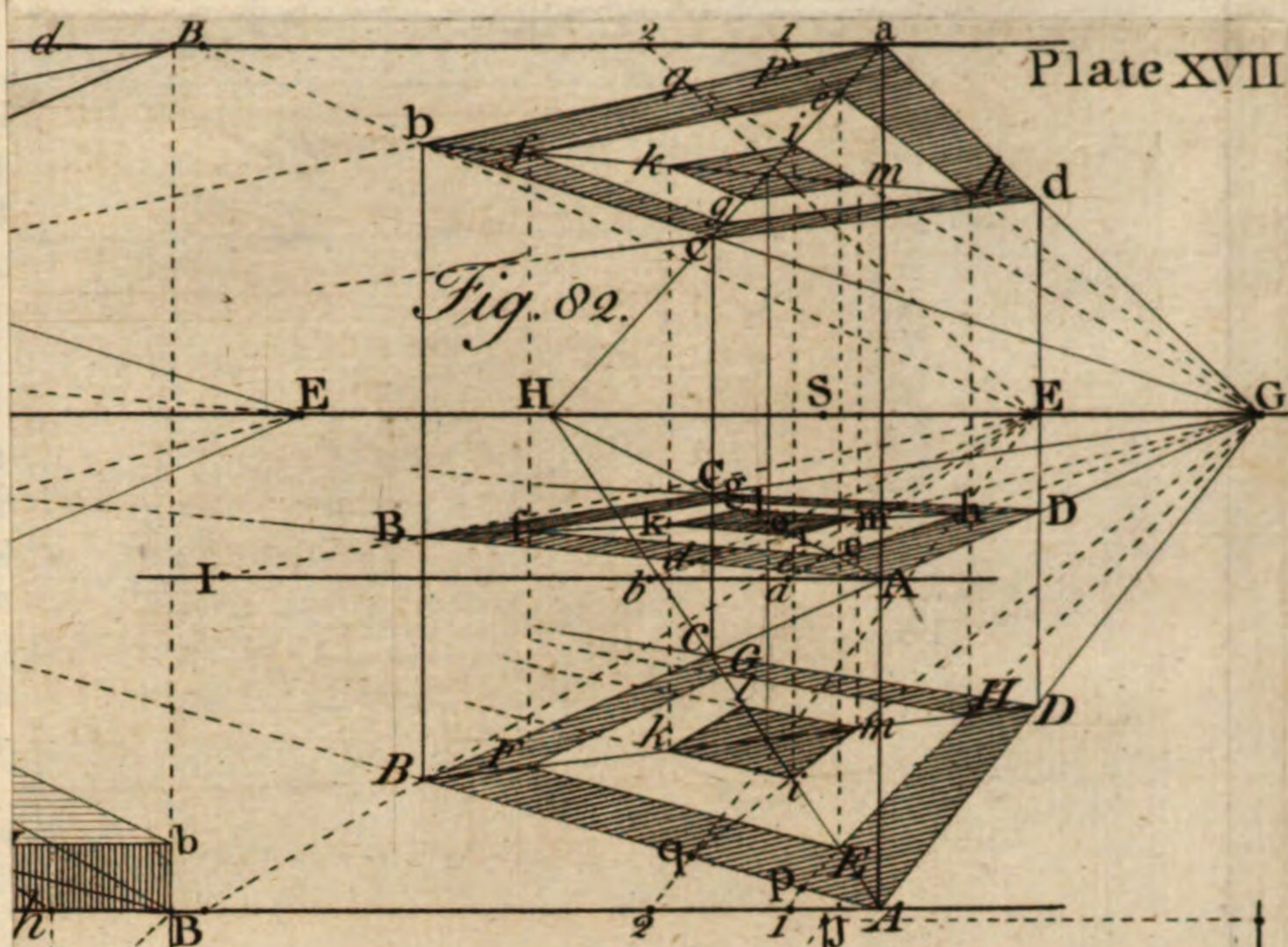


Fig. 83.

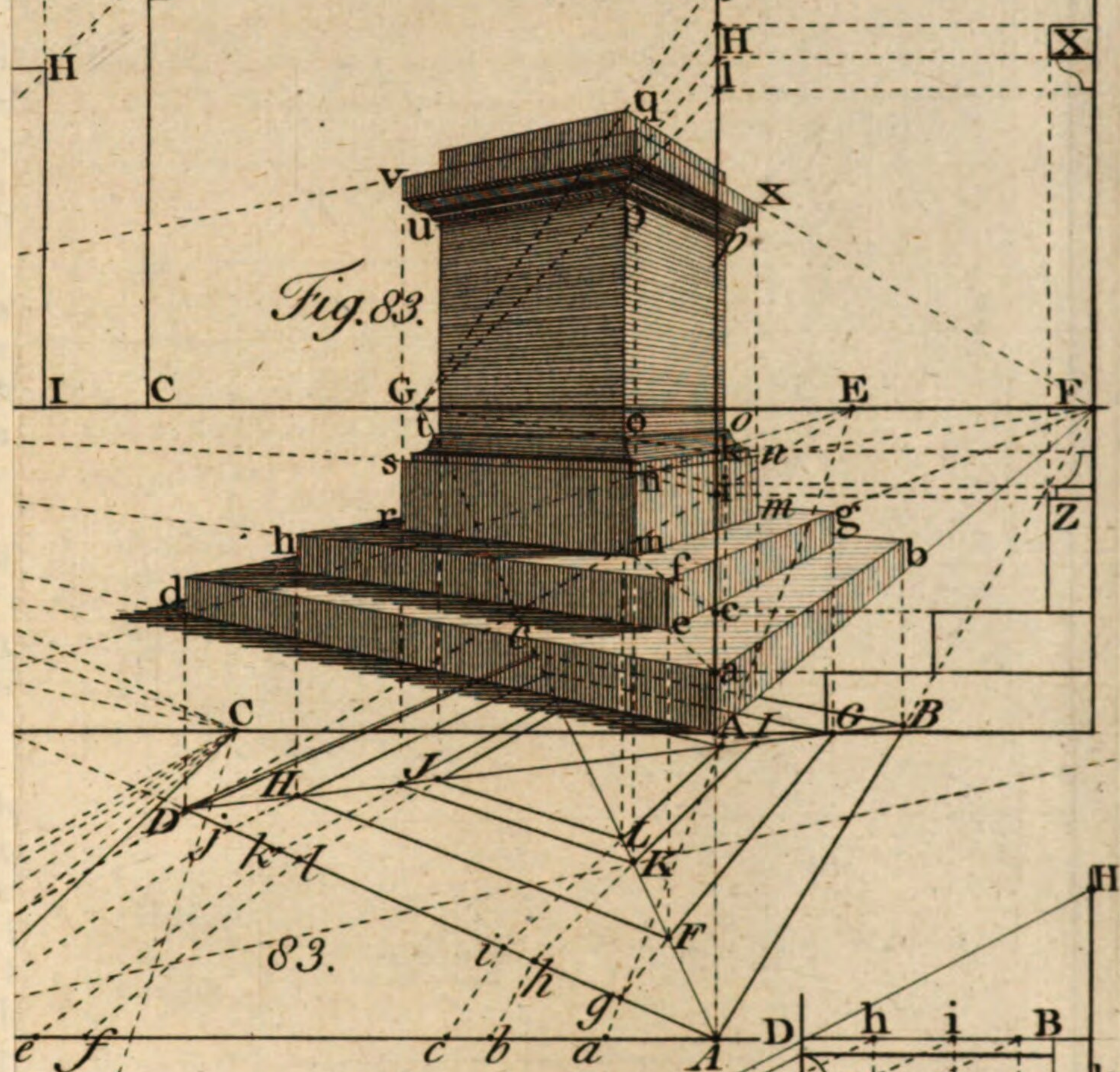
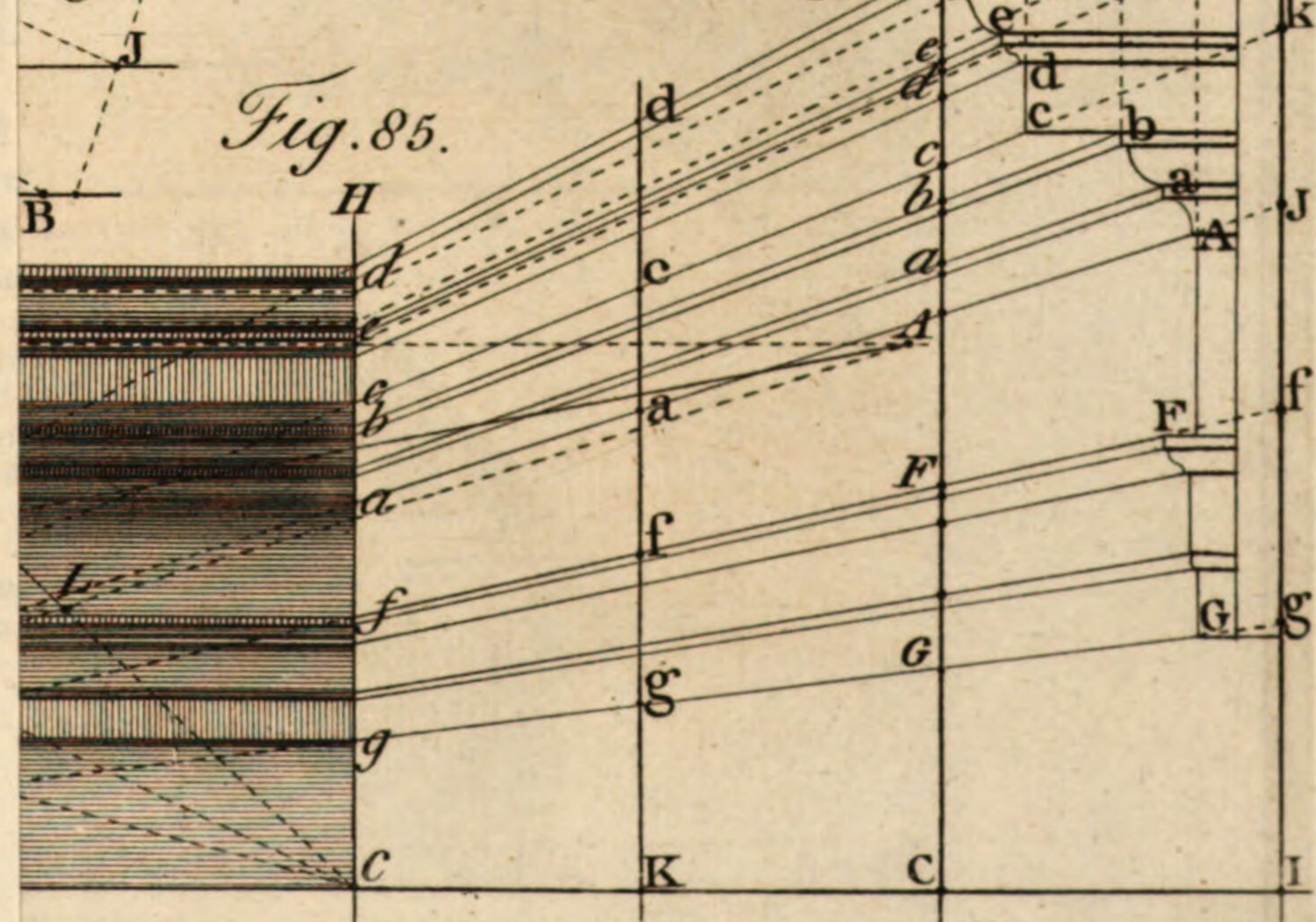


Fig. 85.



The Mouldings around the Mutules are determined, at their projectures, from the Plan, above (at *O*, *P*, &c.) and the width, in Front, from the Section of the Picture, *MC*, (at *m*) by means of which, and the Vanishing Point *C*, they are very easily continued around the Mutules, from one Angle to the next, adjoining. First, drawing parallel Lines, from *m*, till they cut Perpendiculars from *O*, *P*, &c. in *e*, *f*, &c. and *fC*, *bC*, &c. cutting Perpendiculars from *J*, at *i* and *j*; through which they are drawn, parallel, to the Angle at *k*, and from *k* they are continued after the same manner, around the whole.

Every thing being correct, and very particular in the Figure, makes it unnecessary to give a further description of it. To describe every Line in the whole Process, would take several Pages, and be extremely tedious and apparently prolix.

For if, as I have before observed, the Student be not acquainted with Architecture, nor understands the several Parts of the Order, it will be impossible for him to succeed in this Example; but if he is, it will be found sufficiently intelligible.

The Architrave, of this Order, it is needless to say any thing about; seeing it is composed of plane Facias, only; projecting, one over another, like Steps, of different heights and projectures, and is managed in the same manner; which, from inspection of the Figure, may readily be described.

The Frize and Triglyphs have nothing difficult in them, especially in this Position. In the parallel Face they are geometrically proportioned and spaced (Theo. 10, Cor. 5) and in the returning Side, their places are determined from the Plan above, or by the 10th Problem; dividing the upper Line of the Frize, *st*, in the same Ratio, perspectively, as the front Line, *ns*, is divided, at *o*, *p*, *q*. (Prob. 8)

On the right hand, I have given two Triglyphs, more at large; in order, that the Parts may be more distinctly made out; in which, after dividing the front one, as in the Profile, geometrically, for the flutings (which are right angled) the indented Angles may be obtained, as in the Plan *ABD*, above; by drawing a Line from each edge, *a* and *b*, to the two Distance Points, if they are within reach, cutting at *c*.

Or, if one Distance (*E*) only; bisect the width of the Flute, at *d*, and draw *dC*, to the Center, cutting *aE* at *c*, as before; *ef* drawn, to *E*, and *fg* drawn parallel, gives *f* and *g*, at the extremes.

For the Triglyph in the returning Side; having drawn the front Line, *ad*, to its vanishing Point, *C*; from each angle *a*, *b*, &c. in the front Triglyph, draw lines to *E*, cutting *ad*, at *b*, *c*, and *d*.

Or, if it be convenient to have the Distance of the Eye on the other Side, it would be better; draw *ah* parallel to *AB*, and take the divisions, from *a*, at *f*, *g*, *h*, equal to the geometrical measures; and, from them, draw Lines to the other Distance, as in the Figure (supposing it within reach) which gives the same Points more accurately defined. (See Prob. 8.)

From the several divisions, on each Side, draw Lines perpendicular, as in the Figure; by which means, the Triglyphs, *X* and *Y*, are compleated. The Perpendiculars, from *c* and *b*, (in the Plan, above) gives the indented Angles in the front Triglyph, in the other they are not seen.

This operation is supposed either at the Top or bottom of the flutings.

The inclined Lines at the Top are determined, truly, by drawing a Perpendicular at the middle point, equal to half its width, as at *e*, and drawing a line to *C*, the Center, cutting the Perpendicular from *c*, at *f*, and join *af* and *bf*.

It is unnecessary to be more particular, or their vanishing Points may be easily determined; by making the same Angle at the Eye, as the inclined Lines make, either with the horizontal or vertical Line (Prob. 4.) and where it cuts a Line, passing through *E*, perpendicular (the Vanishing Line of an inclined Face) is the Vanishing Point of *af*. Either being found, determines the other; and, the inclined Planes of *Y* being parallel to those of *X*, have the same Vanishing Lines, respectively, passing through the Points of Distance.

The Vanishing Points of the inclined Lines, in the front Triglyph vanish below the Horizon, and those in the returning one (*Y*) which are seen (at *f*, *g*, *h*) vanish at the same Distance above it, at *⊙*.

Y y

The

Pl. XVIII. The other Vanishing Point is below, on the opposite Side; for they are parallel to those in the other Tri-
Fig. 86. glyph, as fg , and consequently, they have the same Vanishing Point. (Cor. Theo. 5.)

Although this method will seldom be practised, yet I affirm it to be the best, being by much the readiest and the most correct. Nor, is there any occasion to be at the trouble of forming the Plan, to get the indented Angle; for, the Flutes being proportioned at ab (as above) and the Vanishing Points determined, the Lines, af and bf , being drawn to their respective vanishing Points, determine at the same time, the internal Angle.

The Tenia (v and z) both above and below, breaks regularly around; as it may be seen, and would be needless to explain; similar Subjects having so frequently been repeated. Such minutias are best described by the Figure, only, being accurately drawn, and well defined.

The Abacus W which may be supposed over a Column, is a Square; and the entire Capitals, over the Pilasters, Y and Z , at the internal and external Angles, although they are detached Mouldings, are managed (from the Profile) after the same manner as if they were continued; their perspective Plans being delineated, as above; from which, the dotted Lines, corresponding with the Profile Section, (MC) determines their several Angles.

METHOD 2nd. EXAMPLE XVII.

How to represent the same thing without having the Profile drawn, on a perspective Plan.

Let AB be the given height, which divide into two Modules, and into Minutes, as before (the rest being supposed not drawn.) The Scale (AM) of the projecture of the Mouldings, &c. at the top, is also necessary.

From a , the determined Angle, draw a k perpendicular, and transfer all the measures of the several Mouldings, from the Scale to ak ; at b , c , d , &c.

Make aa , ab , &c. equal to the several projectures MN , NO , &c. and proceed as in the Plan, above; drawing a E for the diagonal Line of the top; and, from the several divisions a , b , c , &c. draw Lines to the Center, C , cutting the Diagonal, at e , f , g , &c. from which draw perpendicular Lines; and, from the measures on ak , draw diagonal Lines, to E ; which gives the same Angles c , h , &c. as before; from which they are carried around the several Faces.

The perspective Plan, in this, is supposed to be formed on the Top of the Cornice, the same as above; and since ak is the Intersection of a Plane, passing thro' the Diagonal or mitre Angle of the Cornice (one Side, in this Case, being parallel to the Picture) E , the Distance Point, is the vanishing Point of that Diagonal, consequently, all horizontal Lines, in that Plane (being parallel) vanish in E .

Wherefore, aE , bE , &c. are each, the indefinite Representation of a Diagonal of a Square, in different horizontal Planes, whose Intersecting Points are a , b , &c. and, the distance of each Angle from the Picture, is aa , ab , &c. which being transferred, perspectively, to the Diagonal ag , each Angle, in its proper Place, will be perpendicularly opposite to the Points e , f , g , &c. as in the Example.

And thus may the whole be completed, when we are a little versed in Mouldings, by transferring the measures perspectively, from one Diagonal to another, which will be further illustrated in the following Example.

EXAMPLE XVIII.

How to represent a Cornice when it is inclined to the Picture; on both Sides.

If the last Example be tolerably well understood, in the last Process, this will be found easy, being performed by the same means. It must be observed, that the first Method, respecting the Profile, cannot be applied here, nor in any Case; but when the Mouldings are parallel to the Picture. The extra Plan may be used in all Positions; but I shall in the following Examples, do without; as it is only supposing the Plan formed at the Top, from which the Perpendiculars are drawn, and the several Angles of the Facias and Fillets determined.

Let

Let ABE be a Profile of the Cornice, to be drawn, and AC the Side of one Plane, on which it is to be projected. Plate XIX.
Fig. 87.

LM is the Horizontal Line, S is the Center of the Picture, and L the Vanishing Point of AC ; which is supposed the upper edge of the Plane from which the Cornice is to project. Let the Top be supposed a Square.

S being the Center of the Picture, and L the Vanishing Point of one Side of a Right Angle (the Distance of the Picture being known) find M the Vanishing Point of the other Side; by Prob. 12. SM is a third Proportional to SL and the Distance of the Picture (found by Prob. 32, Geo.)

Also, find N the Vanishing Point of the Diagonal; by making MN to NL as one Side of the Triangle (whose Perpendicular, at S , is the Distance of the Picture) to the other.

Provided there be not room, on the Picture, to draw the Triangle at large, take any equal part of LN , and of the Distance known; as in that Problem; exemplified in Example 10th.

Draw AM and CM , and AN cutting CM at K ; draw LK , till it cuts AM at D . $ACKD$ is the square of the Top. Prob. 20.

From each Angle, A , C , and D , draw perpendicular Lines, which represent the Corners of the Planes of a square Prism; on which, the Cornice, ABE , is to be projected; the Profile being proportioned to the nearest Angle, or Corner AB .

From B (AB being equal to AB) draw BL and BM , cutting the Perpendiculars, from C and D , at G and H . $ACGB$ and $ADHB$ are the Grounds or Seats of the Cornice on the two Planes, which are seen.

The Projecture of the Cornice, around the Prism, is next to be determined.

Draw the Diagonal DC , and produce it both ways; also, produce NA indefinite, and draw Ak parallel to the Horizon; on which, take the diagonal projectures of the Cornice, as on AK , in the Profile; (EK being made equal and perpendicular to AE ; consequently, AK , the Diagonal of the Square $AJKE$, of the projecture AE , is the mitre Angle of a Right Angle.)

From the several Projectures, C , D , &c. draw CG and DF , parallel to AB , and produce them to the Diagonal, cutting it in H and I .

Make Ah , hi , and ik respectively equal to AH , HI and IK ; and having made NO equal to the Distance of the Vanishing Point N , of the Diagonal, draw Oh , Oi , and Ok , till they cut NA , produced, in b , i , and E ; from all which, draw Lines to both Vanishing Points, L and M , cutting the other Diagonal CD , produced, both ways, at F , I , k , l , &c. which forms the perspective Plan of the principal Mouldings; and EB , FG , and HI , being joined, are diagonal Lines of each Angle, from the greatest projecture to the bottom of the Cornice.

Let it be observed, that N being the Vanishing Point of the Diagonal of a Square, i. e. of a Line bisecting the Right Angle, is the same whether the Top be a Square or other Rectangle; but, if it be not a Square, CD , produced, would not be the Mitre of the other Angles; because it would not bisect them; neither would AN pass through the opposite Angle, or Mitre KL ; yet N would be the Vanishing Point of both, because they would still be parallel. The others are also parallel, and consequently, they have the same Vanishing Point.

Having shewn how the Mouldings are projected forward, on the Diagonal AE , and transfered to the other Diagonal; suppose No. 2 the same thing, prepared in the same manner; being divested of several preparatory Lines, which, altogether, render the Work confused, and are supposed to be rubbed out. Fig. 87.
No. 2.

On AB , take a , b , and c , equal to the several heights of the Mouldings (as at a , b , and c , in the Profile) and from N , project them (as Na , &c.) till they cut Perpendiculars, from i and b , in d , e , f , and g ; and, from them, draw Lines to both Vanishing Points, L and M , cutting Perpendiculars from k , l , &c. at o , p , and q , which compleats the Facias and small Fillets; and there remains only to join them by curved Lines, of the same kind as in the Profile.

If the Mouldings were very large, as many Points may be found, in the Curves, as are necessary to describe them with accuracy; but, they may be as well performed by a careful Hand; for after all attempts at exactness, in such minutias, a judicious Person, in Mouldings, and Perspective, would describe them as perfectly by hand; regarding the Position in which they are seen.

If

Plate XIX.
Fig. 87.

If the Diagonal Section AEB be but little inclined to the Picture, and fall near its Center, the Curves, of the mitre Angle of the Mouldings, approach nearly to Right Lines; i. e. if the Eye be nearly in the Plane of the Diagonal; for if it be in the Plane (however situated) they are Right Lines.

This manner of proceeding is properly Projection; seeing that, the full measures are applied, at AB , and projected forward to Ed , where they are larger than the Originals; that is, than the given measure; as $Eabcd$, than Aa, ab , &c. on AB ; equal Aa, ab , &c. in the Profile

In which Case, if AB be supposed in the Picture, $AehB$ on one Side, and $AfgiB$ on the other, are Sections of the Mouldings by the Picture; and, the whole, $efgB$, of that Section, being on this Side of the Picture, is projected, to the Picture. $AEdfB$, $CFpG$, and HID , are diagonal Sections through the mitre Angles; and, klm is a Section perpendicular to the Plane $ACGB$, and to the Horizon.

If what I have advanced be well understood, all that follows respecting right-lined Mouldings, will be found easy, and intelligible, almost from inspection of the Figures.

E X A M P L E XIX.

How to represent an Entablature with Modillions in the Cornice, obliquely situated to the Picture, having an internal, and external Angles.

Fig. 88.

ABC is the geometrical Profile of the Cornice; F is the Front of a Modilion, and G is its Profile, or geometrical side View.

CD is the Frize, and DE the Architrave; with two Facias.

In this Example, I shall suppose the whole Cornice to be beyond the Picture, and touching it at the Angle A .

AFG is the Intersection of the Plane of the Top, HL is the Horizontal vanishing Line, C is its Center, and CE the Distance of the Picture. H and L are the Vanishing Points of the Sides; i. e. of the horizontal Lines, of the Mouldings; M and N are the Distances of those Vanishing Points H and L , for proportioning Lines which vanish in them, respectively; and O is the Vanishing Point of the Diagonal, bisecting the Angle, made by the Radials of the Sides.

Draw the vertical Intersection, AE , of the diagonal Plane, passing through the mitre Angle; and, transfer all the measures of the heights of the Mouldings, from the Profile, to c, d , &c. equal Bc, cd , &c. also, their projectures, to Aa, ab, bB , equal Aa, ab , and bB .

Draw AL , indefinite; and from all the Points a, b , &c. draw Lines to N , cutting AL at $1, 2, 3$; from which, draw Lines to H , cutting a Diagonal, AO , at f, g , &c. the perspective Seats of the projectures; i. e. of the mitre Angles of the Corona, K , &c. (No. 1.)

Draw perpendiculars from f, g , and b ; and from c, d , &c. (on the vertical Section AE) draw diagonal Lines to O , cutting them, at k, l , &c. the perspective Representations of the mitre Angles, of the several Facias and Fillets, of the Mouldings in the Cornice.

From the several Angles, k, l , &c. thus obtained, draw Lines to both Vanishing Points, H and L , indefinite; and proportion them to their respective lengths, by means of the Distances, M , and N , respectively, of those Vanishing Points.

The length being determined, according to the number of Modillions, contained, or otherwise; make Ak , equal to the first Break, and draw kN , cutting AL at f , the internal Angle; and draw fO , the Diagonal Line of that Angle, in the Plane of the Top; indefinite.

Draw bL , cutting that Diagonal, at g ; from which, draw a Perpendicular; and cL cutting it at e , and join ef ; the Diagonal of the projecture.

Draw He, Hf , and Hg , indefinite; and, make fF to represent a Line in the proportion of the Original, of fF to Af ; (by Prob. 10) or, draw Mf , and produce it to the Intersection, at B ; make BF to Ak in that proportion, and draw FM , cutting Hf produced, at F . (Prob. 17.)

Draw FO , cutting Hg , produced, at h ; from which, draw a Perpendicular, cutting He , produced, at i ; and draw FL, hL , and iL , indefinite.

Produce NF to the Intersection, and make FG equal to the length of the front Line of the Cornice; and GN , cutting FL at m ; and draw mH , cutting hL at n .

Draw On and produce it to o , and draw oH cutting hL at p ; from which, draw a Perpendicular cutting iL at q .

Thus

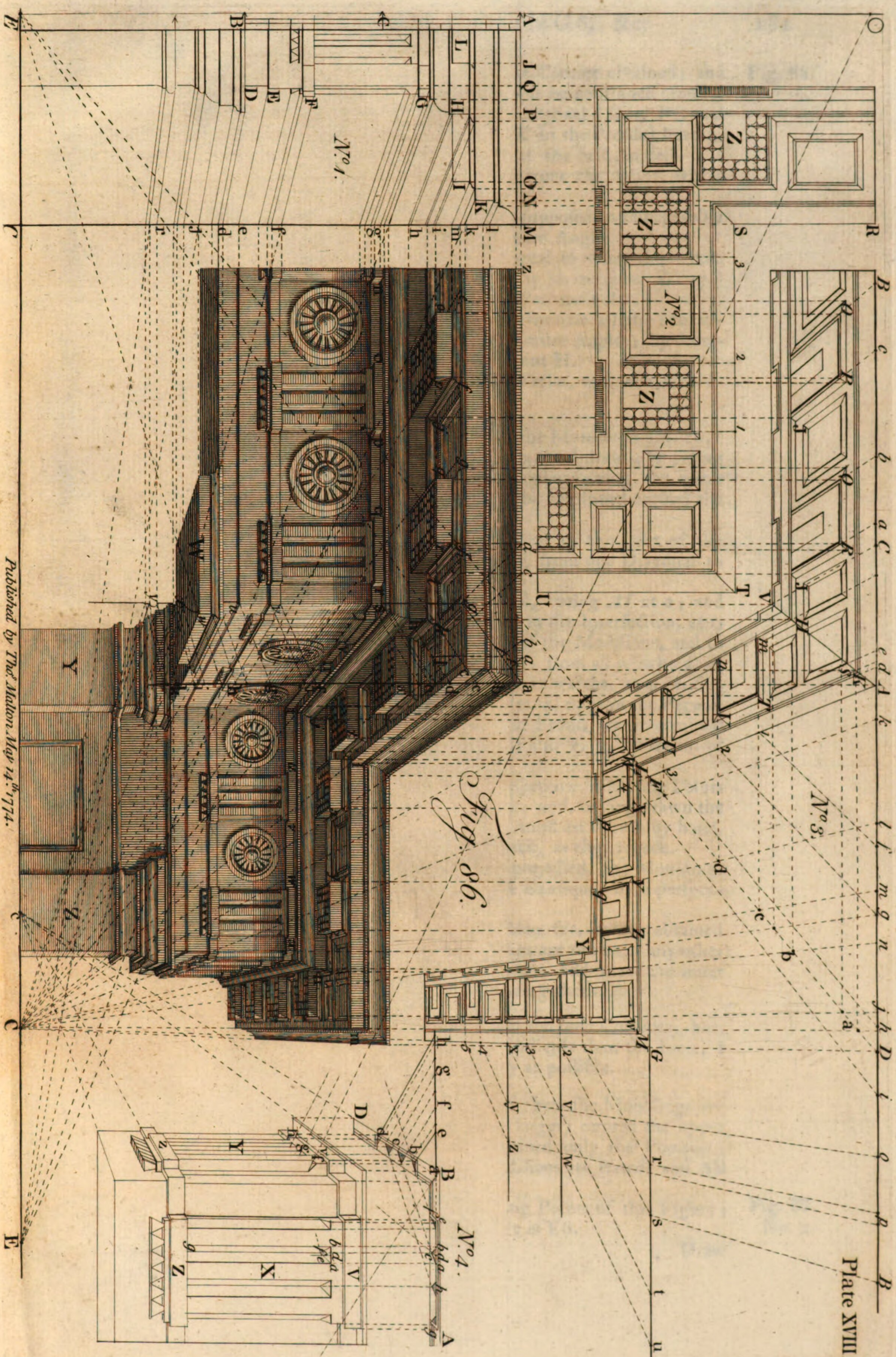
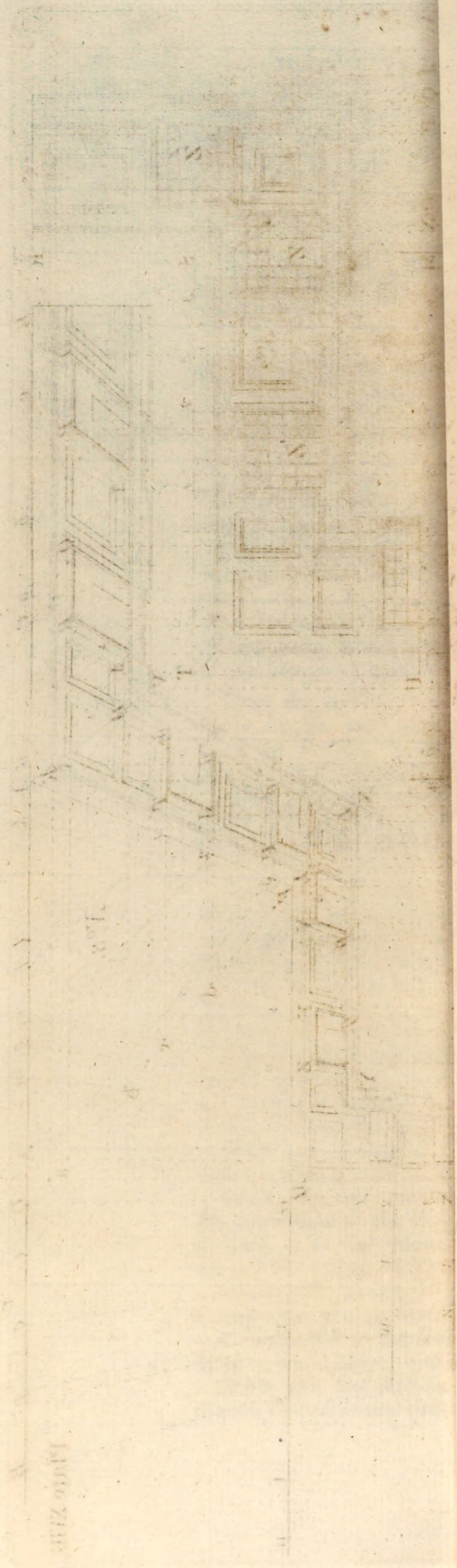


Fig. 86.



Thus, are all the Angles at the top and bottom of the Cornice obtained; and having set off the measure of the upper Fillet, at *A*, let it be continued around, by means of the Vanishing Points *H* and *L*; then draw diagonal Lines, *Fi*, and *mq*, by which the Mouldings are all determined (as at *AC* in the Profile) having, before, obtained their places on the diagonal Line, *Ac*, at the first Angle.

The perpendicular Lines of the Corona fall below it, from the Points where they are cut by the upper Line of the same, at *k*.

On the returning Side, on the left hand, the Cornice is supposed to fall against a Wall, or cut off streight, and consequently has not a mitre Angle.

Draw *AH*, indefinite; make *Aa* represent a length equal to what the whole projects from the Wall (by means of *Af*, Prob. 10; or, by its measure, Pr. 17.)

Draw *aL* and *bH* cutting at *r*; from which, draw a Perpendicular.

Draw *cH* cutting it at *d*, and draw *da*, which will terminate all the Mouldings cutting the wall; as the diagonal Lines determine the mitre Angles; by drawing Lines from every Angle, on *Ac*, to the Vanishing Point *H*.

The Architrave, *E, H, I, K*, being composed of plane Facias, with one Moulding, only, on each Face, needs no particular description.

The Modilions are determined, in the same manner, as the Mutules in Ex. 16.

Make *Aa* equal to *Aa*, and draw *aN*, cutting *Af*, at *4*, and draw *4H* cutting the Diagonal *AO*, at *f*; and, from *f*, draw a Perpendicular, giving the mitre Angle, *S*, of the front Planes, of the Modilions. Let it be continued around the several Breaks (as the Corona) in Pencil-Lines.

Draw *fL*, cutting the next Diagonal, at *l*. *fl* is the Seat of the front of the Modilions on that Side; which may be continued around, from one Diagonal to the other, by means of the Vanishing Points *H* and *L*.

Make *Ab* equal to *Ab*, in the Profile, and draw *bN*, cutting *Af* at *2*; and draw *2H*, cutting *fl* at *b*. From *N*, project the Point *b* to the Intersection, at *i*; and make *ij*, *ji*, *jk*, &c. respectively equal to the width of the Modilions, and to the space between them, alternately, as often as is requisite; from all which, draw Lines to the Point *N*, cutting the Seat, *fl*, in their perspective widths, at *m*, *n*, &c. from which, draw Perpendiculars, giving the several Fronts, *x, x*, as in the Figure.

The Modilions, *yy* and *zz*, in the returning Side and Front, are determined after the same manner, viz. those in the Side, *y, y*, and also *v, v*, by means of the Point *M*, and the front ones, *z, z*, by the Point *N*.

Thus, having obtained the Fronts, draw Lines to the respective Vanishing Points *H* and *L*, till they cut the Plane from which they project; and, having drawn the Right Lines for the edge underneath, the curved Lines must be drawn by hand, as in the Figure, regarding the different appearance of each, as they recede.

If the Parts are large, and require to be accurately projected, the Moulding, around the Modilions, is managed the same as in the last Example, by a perspective Plan, above the Cornice.

But, a judicious Person will save that unnecessary trouble; for, having obtained their mitre Angles, as at *s, t*, and *u*, the front Mouldings are drawn as any other continued Moulding; and they may be returned at the Sides, and meet the inner Moulding, sufficiently correct without the trouble of planing them.

In this Example, there is all the variety that is requisite for such Cornices; but, as the Corinthian Modilion may, to some, appear more difficult than the Ionic, I shall give a specimen how it may be delineated, as briefly as possible.

In the following Lesson, I shall not describe, over again, how the Mouldings are to be drawn, and I have (in order to have the Modilions larger) omitted the upper Mouldings of the Cornice, and the Corona; having retained only the Planceer; which I shall consider as the Plane, on which the Modilions are seated, and *AB* the Intersecting Line of that Plane.

The Vanishing Points, *H* and *L*, are also the Vanishing Points of this Figure; but the Center or Point of view is at *S*, and the Distance is *ES*.

Z z

Draw

Fig. 88.

Fig. 88.
No. 2.

Plate XIX. Draw the vertical Intersection of the Diagonal, AF ; and, by a geometrical Fig. 88. Scale of the Proportions, set off the heights of the Mouldings at Aa , ab , &c. No. 2. also, make ab , bc , &c. equal to the width of the Modilions and spaces between; also the projectures of the Mouldings; and transfer them, by means of the Point P (the Distance of the Vanishing Point H) to AB (the dotted Line) which is the Seat of the fronts of the Modilions; and finish the square Blocks $efgb$, &c. which encloses the Modilion, as in the former Example, by which means, they are truly proportioned, perspectively, as in the Figure; which would otherwise, be somewhat difficult.

In the Sides, of each, must be drawn, by hand, the Profile of the Modilion, perspectively, as it is represented at X (the geometrical Profile) according as they are contracted, or obliquely situated to the Eye.

In the Front, of each, is also described the end of the Scroll, and of the leaf. In short, having obtained the square Block or Case which contains them, the rest must be delineated by a judicious hand and Eye; for such Figures will baffle all Rules, nor is it possible to subject them to any, by which they may with certainty be described.

The Dentils have nothing particular in them; the proportion being known, of their width and spaces between; a Right Line drawn through either Corner, at g , parallel to the Intersection, and divided in the Ratio, and Lines drawn to any Point, G , in the Vanishing Line, according as the measures are taken, greater or less, will give their measures perspectively (as by Prob. 8) but, their true measures can only be applied, at the Intersection of the Plane they are in, with the Picture (drawn through C) and projected by means of Visual Rays, to the Eye, at P .

E X A M P L E XX.

How to represent a Door Head, with a Pediment, supported by Trusses or Consoles.

Fig. 89. Let A be the determined Angle of the Cornice of the Object, in the Picture. At No. 1. is the true geometrical proportion of the whole, in Front.

† Prob. 3. Through A , draw AD perpendicular, the vertical Section of a diagonal Plane, passing through the mitre Angle, whose Vanishing Point is G †. H and L are the Vanishing Points of the front and side Lines, which are horizontal; S is the Center of the Picture, and SE its Distance; I and K are the Distance Points of each, respectively, for proportioning Lines which vanish in them‡; EG bisects the Angle HEL ; conf. G is the Vanishing Point of horizontal, diagonal Lines. (Pr. 21.)

‡ Prob. 17.

These things, here premised or given, are supposed to be found and determined, from the known position and situation of the Object, as in the former Examples. (See Prob. 12.)

All the measures, from the Profile, being produced, or applied to the Intersection AD ; and, by means of the Diagonal AG , are got the mitre Angle of each Moulding, as in the foregoing Examples.

To determine the breakings of the Mouldings around the Trusses, draw ad , the Intersection of the Plane they are in, above the Cimma reversa; and, by means of the Point I , project the Point a to that Intersection.

Make ab , bc , and cd , respectively, equal to the Breaks, and to the opening between them, geometrical (as at vu , No. 1.) and draw bI , cI , &c. cutting aL , at b , c , and d , their perspective Proportions.

Draw cH , indefinite; and by means of the Point K (the Distance point of H) project the Point c to the Intersection, at e .

Make ef equal to the returning Side, and draw fK , cutting cH , at f ; and, through f , draw Lf , cutting bH ; which determines all the mitre Angles.

The Mouldings are described, or delineated, as in the last Examples.

To determine the proportion of the Trufs, or Console; of which X is the Profile, and Z the Front.

Fig. 89

Through D, in the Profile (No. 1.) draw a horizontal Line, DF, and produce kb (from H) to that Intersection, cutting it, at k .

Draw kn , perpendicular; and, from k , set off, geometrically, all the proportions of the Trufs, at l, m, n , in respect of its height (as in the Profile at X) from which, draw Lines to H, cutting kn , at l, m, n , from which they are transferred to the other Side, by the Vanishing Point L, at v, u, x ; and, by the Point H, projected forward; which proportions the heights in the other Trufs.

The geometrical projectures are perspectively proportioned, in the same manner as the returning Moulding, at cf , by projecting the Point k (from K) to the Intersection DF, at i , and make $i, 2, 3$, &c. equal to the projectures in the Profile; from which, draw Lines to K, cutting kH at g, h , &c. and from them, draw perpendicular Lines, as in the Figure; by which means, finding as many Points as are necessary, the true perspective form may be determined.

At No. 2, is shewn how the Trufs is described, separate from the Work, having all the same Letters of reference; and, in proportion to the other, as 3 to 2.

If the width be not already determined, by the Mouldings; draw Ib till it cuts the Intersection, DF, at h .

Make hi equal to the width of the Trufs, and draw iI , cutting bL at i .

Draw gL, bL , and kL , cutting a Line drawn from e to H, at r, s, t ; from which, perpendiculars being drawn, determines the projecture of that Trufs.

Having, by those means, obtained as many Points as are requisite, as at $1, 2, 3$ (No. 2.) the Curves must be described by a judicious and steady Hand; for, no Rules can possibly describe the Curves, otherways.

To determine the Pediment. Having obtained the Angle B, its perspective length (Prob. 17) equal twice AA , geometrical; at I (the distance of the Eye from the Vanishing Point L) make the Angle, LIV, equal to the Angle of the Pediment, cutting VL (the Vanishing Line of the front Planes, Prob. 3) at V, and set off an equal Distance on the other side L; from which Points, Lines drawn through A and B, determines the middle, at C; and all the Mouldings vanish in those Points; and is the only means, by which they can be projected with accuracy.

The height and true pitch, or inclination, may be thus determined.

Make BD equal AB; i. e. make AD equal to twice the height of the Pediment. Draw BE also perpendicular, and draw DL, cutting it at E.

Draw AE and BD, intersecting at C; ACB is the true perspective outline of the Pediment.

Or, having bisected AB, perspectively at G (by Prob. 8) draw a Perpendicular; and, from B, draw BL, cutting it, at C as before; and draw AC and BC.

From all the Points, between B and C, draw Lines to the Vanishing Point L, cutting CG; and the projectures of the Mouldings being also perspectively proportioned, on CH, at r, s, t ; perpendicular Lines, from them, will cut the others, from CG, to H, in the true Mitres of those Angles; and, from those Angles, draw Lines to both Vanishing Points, V, of the Pediment, which will give all the Mouldings, with accuracy, beyond any other method whatever.

The horizontal width of the Frize and Architrave, are proportioned to the Trufs and Mouldings, on kn ; by drawing Lines to L; the perpendicular widths of the Architrave (being parallel to the Picture) and the opening of the Door, by the Vanishing Points of the Diagonals of a Square (as at Y) in the Vanishing Line VL of that Plane; regard being had to the projecture of the Mouldings (see Pr. 26.)

The recess of the Door, pq , is determined (by Prob. 10) by its width op ; determined above.

Produce

Plate XIX. Produce the Radial LE; make EM equal to the width, and EN to the recess;
Fig. 89. or, make EM and EN, in the Ratio of one to the other.

Join MN, and draw EO parallel to MN. O is the Vanishing Point of a Diagonal of the Soffit, or head of the Door Case; and oO being drawn, cuts pH at q, as required. The rest is obvious, from the Figure.

This Method, when it is applicable, is preferable to any other; for, having obtained the true proportion of one Line (op) in any Plane, any other Line (pq) in that Plane is easily determined, by the 10th Problem. Indeed, it may always be applicable (provided, the Diagonal Line oq (i. e. MN) be not very oblique to the Picture; and consequently, its Vanishing Point O, (very remote) for, if the whole Distance (SE) cannot be used, half, or any other portion, may be taken, with equal propriety; and the Point, O, ascertained the very same (by Prob. 12.)

Otherwise; if no Line, in the same Plane, be found or determined, there is but one general Method; which was applied, to proportion the return of the Moulding ef; or the front Line ad, at b and c, viz. by the true measure applied to the Intersection of the Plane it is in (Prob. 17) which being frequently used, would be needless to repeat; particular regard being had to the true Intersection of either Plane, opq, of the Soffit (which is horizontal) or of the vertical Plane, W, of the Door Jamb.

For, since pq is the common Intersection of both Planes, it is consequently in both; and therefore, either Intersection will answer the same purpose.

PQ is the Intersection of the horizontal Plane opq; its true geometrical Distance, from any other, being known, equal DQ; a Line drawn through Q, parallel to the Horizon, is its Intersection with the Picture; for, all parallel Planes have parallel Intersections (8. 7. El.) And, if Hp be produced, till it cuts PQ; a Line drawn through P, perpendicular, is the Intersection of the vertical Plane W.

For, pq cuts the Picture at P; therefore, P is its intersecting Point (Def. K) and consequently, PR is the Intersection of the vertical Plane, W, that Line is in. (Prob. 3.)

E X A M P L E XXI.

How to delineate a Block-Cornice, and to break the same, or any other, around a Bow Window; which is half a hexagonal Prism.

Fig. 90. HL is the Horizontal vanishing Line, C the Center of the Picture, and CE is its Distance; H is the vanishing Point of the Front of the Bow, and L of the Side of the Building, at right angles with it.

Draw EH and EL making a Right Angle, HEL; and, with any Radius, on E, describe an Ark, α , γ , z , cutting EH, at α .

Make $\alpha\gamma$ and γz each equal to E α ; and draw E γ , cutting the Horizontal Line, at M; and E z , which, would cut it, if produced; M, and N (the supposed Point where E z would cut HL, produced) are the vanishing Points of the Sides and Diagonals of the Hexagon.

Bisect the Angle α E α , at u , and draw E u , to P; which is the Vanishing Point of the Diagonal of the Right Angle.

Let AD be the Intersection of the nearest Right Angle of the Object with the Picture; and A the determined height of that Corner; let Aa be the height of a Plinth, above the Cornice; & ac the height of the Cornice, of which X is the Profile.

The Dimensions of the Bow window, and other parts of the Building, being known, it would almost be superfluous to describe how it is to be determined in Perspective; sufficient instructions for that purpose are contained in the 4th and 5th Examples. However, as the application of them to real Objects, may not, to some, be familiar, I shall, briefly, describe it.

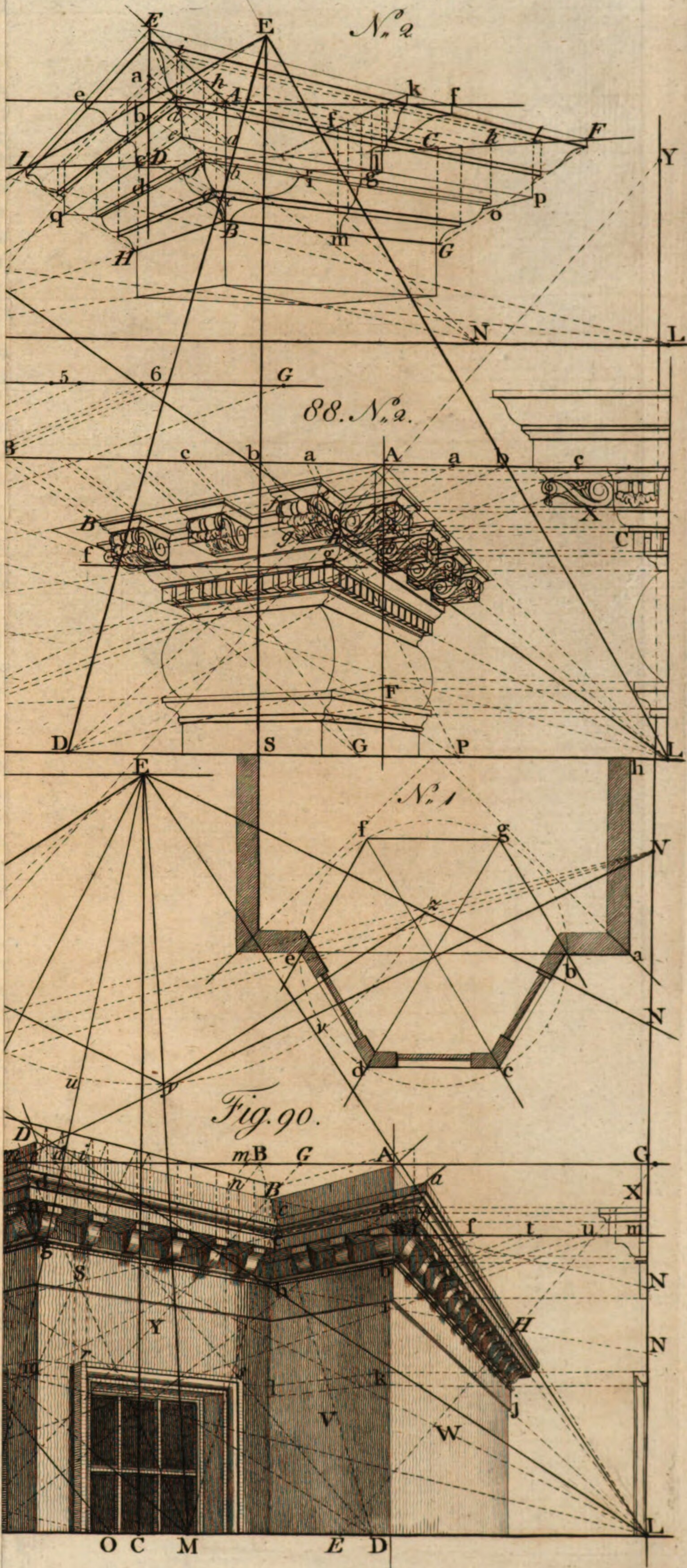
At No. 1. is a Plan of half the Building, to a Scale of half the measures applied in delineating; and about one sixtieth part of the real Object.

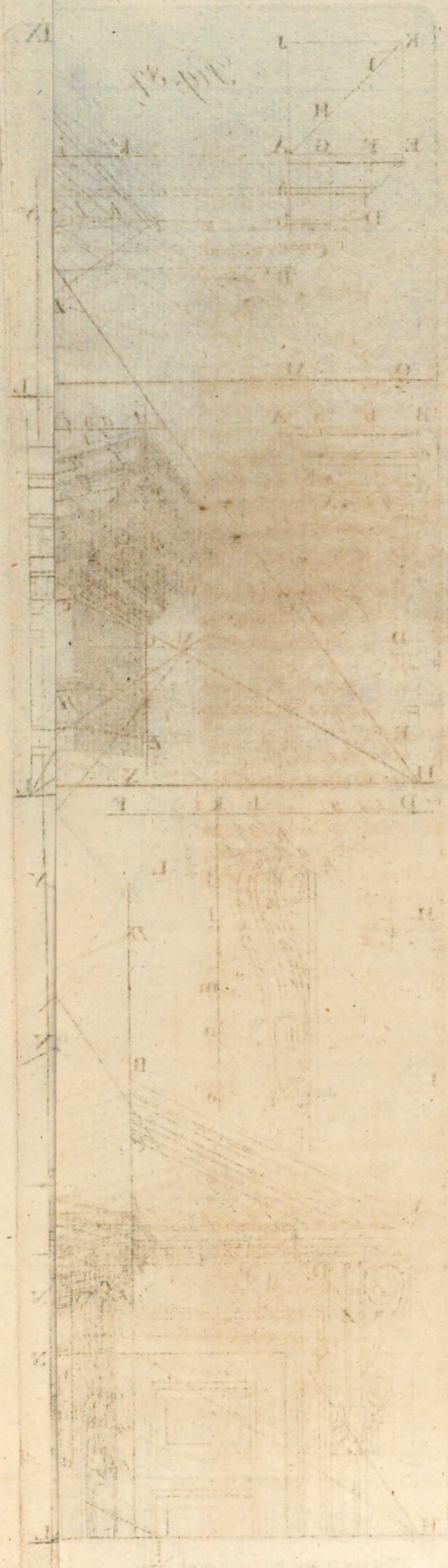
Draw AF the Intersection of the Plane of the Top, parallel to the Horizontal Line; make HD equal to EH, the Distance of the Vanishing Point H; and draw AH and AL indefinite.

Make AB equal to the short returning Plane (V) which is at right Angles with W, the long Side of the Building (twice ag in the Plan No. 1.) i. e. make AB equal twice ab in the Plan, and draw BD, cutting AH, at B.

Draw NB indefinite (Prob. 13) and having found the point O (the distance of N, by Pr. 12) draw OB to the Intersection AF, cutting it at G.

Make





Make Ge , on the Intersection AF , equal to twice bc (No. 1) and draw Oe , cutting NB at D^* . Draw DH , indefinite; and draw DD cutting AF at d ; make dF equal to Ge (i. e. to the Front) and draw FD , cutting DH at F .

From all the Angles, B , D , and F , draw Perpendiculars; which gives all the Faces of the Hexagon, that can be seen (Y , and Z) i. e. bc , and cd (No. 1.)

The Plane W , which represents the long Side of the Building is thus determined.

As there is not room, on the Intersection, to set off the whole measure (equal four times ah , No. 1) take AG a third part of it, and LE one third of EL , and draw GE , cutting AL at H ; from which draw a Perpendicular.

Thus, having determined the Object, we now proceed to the Cornice.

From X , the Profile, transfer all the measures, to AD , of the heights of the Mouldings, at ab . Draw the Diagonal Pa ; and determine the mitre Angle of the Moulding (as in Example 17th) at abb .

Draw aH and bH , cutting Bh , at c and h . Draw Nc and Nh , till they cut Dg , at d and g ; and draw dH and gH , cutting Ff , at e and f . Also, from b and i , draw bL and iL , representing a Facia, below the Cornice, and from i draw iH , cutting Bh , and continue it around each Face of the Hexagon.

The mitre Angles of the Hexagon are thus obtained.

In every regular Polygon, having an even number of Sides, the Diagonals, which pass through the Center, bisect the Angles of the Polygon; and in a Hexagon, they divide it into six equilateral Triangles, each Diagonal being parallel to two opposite Sides. (See the Figure, No. 1.)

$\propto Ey$ and yEz are two such Triangles; consequently Ex , Ey , and Ez , are parallel to all the Sides and Diagonals of the Hexagon†, producing the Vanishing Points, H , M , and N , of the Diagonals or mitre Angles.

† Cor. 1,
Th. 8.

But, the Angle, at b (No. 1.) where the Hexagon joins with the Building is internal, and its Mitre is gb , produced; consequently parallel to fc ; therefore, they have the same Vanishing Point, M .

ab is the Angle of the Building (which is a Right one) where the Mouldings are first projected; ch is the internal, and dg , ef , two external Angles of the Hexagon.

Draw dM , cutting aH , at S , the representation of the Center of the Hexagon; and eM , cutting it, at l ; $cdel$ is the Plan of the Top of the Cornice, around.

Produce Se , Sd , and Mc , indefinite; and draw aH , cutting Mc , produced, at c .

Draw Nc , cutting Sd at e , and eH cutting Se , produced at f ; a , c , e , and f , are the extreme Angles of the Cornice; which being obtained, the rest is managed as in the former Examples; by transferring all the measures, of all the heights of the Mouldings, from ab to ch , and from ch to dg , &c. also, the projectures of the Mouldings, from the Diagonal aa to cc , from cc to de , and from de to ef ; by means of the vanishing Points H and N ; from which Diagonals, perpendiculars being drawn, giving the Corona, at b , which is carried around in the same manner; and also the small Mouldings, at bhg .

The Blocks, are obtained after the same manner as the Modillions in Ex. 19th.

Or; having, from the internal Angles, made by two Blocks (at n and o) draw the sides of each, to their respective Vanishing Points, H , and L ; and Q of the Side Y (making NEQ a Right Angle) by which means, the Fronts are obtained, as at p . Draw pq parallel to the Vanishing Line; and having, also, found the point q , of the farthest Block; from any Point, whatever, in the Vanishing Line, as P , draw Pq , till it cuts pq at q .

Divide pq , geometrically, into the number of Blocks and spaces between them, at 1, 2, 3, &c. from which, draw Lines to the same point, P , cutting pq , at g , b , &c. the true perspective proportions of the fronts of the Blocks, on the Face Z .

On the other Sides, they may be determined after the same manner, or otherways; as on the Side Y , by their Seat, BD , on the Top; how they are finished is best explained by inspection of the Figure.

* Because the point D (in BD) is beyond the Intersection, AF , it is considered as projected on this Side of the Picture,

Plate XIX.
Fig. 90.

On the Side W, they are determined from their true measures, by drawing $m n$, through n , parallel to $A F$; $m n$ is the Intersection of the Plane they are in with the Picture (which $p q$ is not) therefore, having (from the point Q) projected the first to $m n$, at r , set off the true geometrical measures, from r towards m , at $r, s, \&c.$ and, by means of the same point Q, project them to $r L$; i. e. draw $r Q, s Q, \&c.$ cutting $r L$, which gives their true places, on that Side.

The Blocks, in the returning Side, V, are determined, after the same manner, from the true measures; by means of the point D, the Distance point of the vanishing Point, H, of that Side.

The Windows, and the Mouldings around them, are determined as the Door, &c. in the foregoing Example; by setting off the true space and measure of the Moulding from i to k , and transferring them from one Plane to the other, as in the Figure.

$G e$ and $d F$, on the Intersection $A F$, being the true geometrical measures of each Plane; divide them in the true measures of Piers, Mouldings, and Sash Squares, at i, k, l , and m ; from which draw Lines to the Points D and O, respectively, cutting $B D$ and $D F$, at n, o, p, q ; and, from them, Perpendiculars being drawn, determine their perspective Proportions on those Planes, at $r, s, \&c.$ and the proportions of the Sash Squares are projected to their true places, from t and u , by means of the Vanishing Points L and Q, respectively.

In every regular Polygon, having an even number of Sides, the Diagonals, which pass through the Centre, bisect the Angles of the Polygon, and in a Hexagon, every Diagonal is to an equal Diagonal, each Diagonal being parallel to two

SECTION VIII. OF CURVILINEAR OBJECTS.

THE Perspective of curve-lined Objects, the Subject of this 8th Section, is the most difficult, of all other; seeing that, Curve Lines cannot be projected as Right Lines, by means of intersecting and vanishing Points, indefinite; neither can any portion be taken, or cut off, perspective, otherwise than by drawing a Chord Line from one Point to another in the Original, and finding its Vanishing Point; or, by any means, finding the representation of the extreme Points, from their corresponding Points in the Original.

There are various ways of obtaining the representation of a Circle, in Perspective; all which, do no more than find the representations of various Points in the Circumference. For, by the Theory of curvilinear Perspective, it is supposed, that the description or delineation of a Circle, or Sphere, in Perspective, is some one or other of the Sections of a Cone; as in Fig. 28, Plate 7; it is obvious, that if Right Lines, $E A, E B, \&c.$ from the Eye to the several Points A, B, C, &c. in the Curve (which is supposed to be a Circle) in the Plane Z; be cut by another Plane, X or Y, the Points a, b, c, &c. being joined, carefully by a steady hand will generate a Curve, $a d g$, which, to the Eye at E, will (as it is obvious it must) exactly coincide with the original Curve; seeing that, it is in the surface of the same Cone, of which, the Eye is its Vertex.

Hence it is manifest, that, the more Points there are found in the Representation, the more exactly may the curve be described; but after all, it depends greatly on the Hand and Eye; insomuch that, without great nicety in both, the Representations of curve-lined Objects will have a lame, and very disagreeable Appearance. It is, therefore, no wonder to see such bad Representations of round Objects, as are to be met with; but it is a matter of surprize, that any Person, who attempts it, should have so little judgement as to turn the Curves the contrary way; or to make them flatter in those parts, where, it is obvious that, they would have a greater curviture.

Without having the least notion how to project Curves, perspectively, is it possible for a Person, who has been used to sketch at all, to place a cylindrical Object, of any kind, or a Vase, &c. before him, and not see, immediately, how the curves are to be described? or, what part of the Object appears more or less curved than others? is it not obvious to a common Eye? yet may we frequently see, not only on the Pannels of Coaches, &c. Vases represented, whose greatest swell, at the Top, is a Right Line, whilst the Curves of the lower part take a contrary direction, to each other; indicating, that the Eye is between them; in which Case the Top would be the most curved. Would not such attempts at Perspective be better let alone? and content themselves with a perfectly geometrical Representation? in which they would all be Right Lines; save only, the external Figure of a vertical Section through the middle.

But, what can be said for the performances of those Artists, whose Works are an honour to their Country and to the Age they lived in, to see them, often, greatly deficient in those particulars. I could wish to see the Works of the present Age more perfect; which, in other respects, seem to vie with the most celebrated amongst the Antients; yet do not pay sufficient attention to those necessary Appendages, which are essentially requisite, to a perfect Picture.

As a Circle is the first and principal of curve Lines, so it is the only one that can be reduced to any certain Rules, in delineating it perspectively. And, of all the various ways to project the representation of a Circle in Perspective, the best, and most practicable, is to suppose a regular Octagon to be inscribed, or the Circumference divided into eight equal Parts; or, if very large, into sixteen.

Irregular curved Objects are not Subjects for Perspective; all attempts at a Spiral, or twisted Column, &c. by Perspective Rules, would be in vain. Various other Objects, as Rocks, Mountains, Rivers, Trees, &c. are not fit Subjects for Perspective; and consequently Landscape Views cannot be taken or delineated by its Rules; because it is impossible to have the true geometrical Figures and Proportions of such Objects, as before mentioned. I shall however, in the Appendix, describe the use and application of an Apparatus for taking views, with ease and great exactness; the best calculated, for the purpose, of any I know or have ever heard of. For, notwithstanding what many imagine and affirm, of the possibility of taking Landscape Views with Accuracy, by Sight only, I know it is impossible to be done; and cannot conceive it to be any way derogatory to the abilities of the most eminent Artist, to make use of any expedient; by means of which, he may be enabled to make a more correct Portrait, and Picture. I do not mean that he should, rigidly, describe every minutia of the Objects, as in Trees, &c. by it; but I must affirm, that he would take the Magnitudes of the several Objects, and their Bearings in respect of each other, with infinitely greater accuracy than it is possible to do by Sight.

P R O B L E M I.

To find the Representation of a Circle; the Original being given, in any Plane, whose Vanishing Line, its Center and Distance are given; according to Brook Taylor.

First; by means of the Vanishing Line, and one Vanishing Point only.

Let AFG be a Circle, in the Geometrical Plane; of which GK is the Intersection, and VE the Vanishing Line; C is its Center, and CE its Distance.

PlateXX.
Fig. 91.
No. 1.

Draw AB, at pleasure, cutting the Intersection at a; and through C, D, G, &c. (Points assumed at pleasure, in the Circumference) draw Lines parallel to AB, cutting the Intersection, at a, c, d, &c.

Draw

PlateXX. Draw EV parallel to AB, producing the Vanishing Point, V, of those Lines.
 Fig. 91. Draw a V, c V, &c. and, to E, draw Visual Rays from every Point, A, D, G, &c. cutting the indefinite Representations of the Lines passing through those Points, at *a*, *d*, *g*, &c.

Having thus obtained as many Points as are necessary, a Curve *adifb*, described carefully through those Points, will be an Ellipsis, and it is the true Representation of the Circle AFG.

Or, having drawn the parallel Lines AB, &c. and their indefinite Representations, as before; make VE equal to VE; also, make ab equal to aB, ge equal to gH, &c. and draw bE, eE, &c. which will give the same Points as before.

This needs no Demonstration; seeing that, the Points *a*, *b*, *c*, *d*, &c. are projected the same, as in Prob. 6th, where it is fully demonstrated. And, that the Curve is an Ellipsis, is demonstrated in Th. 2, Sect. 5, of Curvilinear Perspective; for it is evident, and manifest, that the Visual Rays EA, ED, &c. from the Eye to every Point in the Circumference, would cut the Picture in the corresponding Points *a*, *c*, *d*, &c. therefore the Curve *adif* is the true Section of the Cone of Rays, and consequently it is an Ellipsis.

Secondly; by the Directing Line and Director. No. 2.

Fig. 91. Let No. 2. be a Circle, nearly in the same Position to the Eye (at E) as before;
 No. 2. having the same Intersection, GKI, and the same distance of the Eye.

Draw CD parallel to the Intersection, and distant from the Eye equal to the distance of the Vanishing Line, VL, from the Intersection GKI. CD is the Directing Line. (Def. 10.)

Draw AD at pleasure, cutting the Directing Line at D; and, from several Points, B, F, &c. in the Circumference, draw Right Lines to D, cutting the Intersection at *c*, *d*, *e*, &c. the Intersecting Points of those Lines.

Draw ED; and, from the Intersecting Points, K, *c*, &c. draw Right Lines parallel to ED, which are the indefinite Representations of those Lines, respectively.

Draw the Visual Rays EA, EB, &c. as before, cutting those Lines at *a*, *b*, *f*, &c. and describe a Curve through them, which is the true Representation of the Circle AFH. Draw VL, the Vanishing Line of the Plane of the Circle.

DEM. For, because the Lines AD, BD, &c. have the same Directing Point, D, their Representations are parallel between themselves (Cor. 1. Theo. 14.)

Consequently, seeing that Ka, cb, &c. pass through the Intersecting Points, K, *c*, *d*, &c. parallel to ED, they are the indefinite Representations of those Lines; and consequently, the Visual Rays EA, &c. will cut them, in the same Points as before, which is manifest; for, if Ea, Eb, &c. be drawn, parallel to AD, BD, &c. respectively, their Vanishing Points, *a*, *b*, *c*, &c. are produced; by which, the affinity between the different Methods of producing the same thing is accounted for.

P R O B L E M II.

To describe the Representation of a Circle, having the Representation of one Diameter given.

Fig. 92. Let AB be the given Diameter; let ECE be the Vanishing Line of the Plane it is in; C is its Center, and CE its Distance.

Produce AB to its Vanishing Point, V; and bisect AB, perspectively (Prob. 8) e. g. through A draw Abc parallel to the Vanishing Line, and take two equal Divisions Ab, bc, at pleasure. Through c, draw cB, and produce it to the Vanishing Line at G, and draw bG cutting AB, at C, the Center of the Circle; through which, draw DF, parallel to the Vanishing Line.

Make VG equal to VE, and draw AG, cutting DF at D; and, make CF equal to CD; or, through B draw GF. DF is a Diameter of the Circle.

Make CE, on both Sides, equal to CE; draw CC indefinite; and, through D or F, draw ED or EF, cutting CC produced, at H; through which, draw ab parallel to DF; and through D and F, draw CD, CF, cutting it at a and b.

Draw

Draw the Diagonals aE and bE ; which will pass through C , the Center of the Circle, and cut aC , and bC , at d and c ; draw cd , cutting CH at I ; IH is a Diameter, and $abcd$ is the representation of a Square, circumscribing the Circle.

Make EE^2 , and EE^3 , each equal to EE ; from both which Points, draw Lines through D and F , cutting the Diagonals at e , f , g , and h ; which Points are also in the Circumference.

Through the Points, A , H , f , F , g , I , h , and D , if a Curve be described, it will be the true Representation of a Circle, whose Diameter is equal to ab .

DEM. For, suppose ab the Intersection of the Plane the Original Circle is in; and ECE its Vanishing Line. E , E are the Vanishing Points of the Diagonals of a Square†, and the two Diagonals, ac and bd , cut each other in its Center, C ‡; which is, consequently, the Center of a Circle, inscribed. † Prob. 19. ‡ 16. 1. El.

And, because HI passes through C the Center of the Circle, HI represents a Diameter perpendicular to ab seeing it vanishes in C ; and DF , passing through C , is also a Diameter, parallel to the Picture.

Also, because CD is equal to CF , and EE^2 is equal to EE ; E^2 and E^3 are the Distance Points of the Diagonals; and consequently, seeing CD is equal to CF , the diagonal Diameters, eg and fh , represent Lines equal to DF . (See Prob. 8th and 10th, Case 3rd, for a further Demonstration.)

P R O B L E M III.

How to describe the Representation of a Circle, in any Plane whose Vanishing Line, Center and Distance are given; and Intersection.

Let AB be the Intersection of a vertical Plane, and ECE its Vanishing Line; its Distance is CE . Let AB be the Diameter given. Fig. 93.

Bisect AB , at D ; and draw CD perpendicular to AB .

Make DC equal to AD , and describe the Ark DEF , a fourth part of the Circumference. Draw AC , cutting the Circumference, at E ; from which, draw a Perpendicular, Ee , to the Intersection.

Make Bc equal to Ae , and draw AC , BC , and DC ; also cC and eC ; and draw the Diagonals AE and BE , cutting AC and BC , at I and K ; draw IK ; and DF , through S , parallel to AB .

Through the Points, D , D and F , also through a , b , c , d , and e , where the Diagonals, and IK , are cut by cC , eC , and DC , if a Curve be described, accurately, it will be an Ellipsis, and the true representation of a Circle, viewed oblique.

If the Circle be large, and eight Points are not sufficient; bisect the Arks, DE and EF , at f and g ; from which, draw Perpendiculars to AB ; and make b and d , equally distant, as a and f , from D ; or from A and B .

Draw aC , fC , dC , and bC . From A and G , &c. where the Diagonals are cut, draw Af and Gg parallel to AB , cutting fC and aC at f and g ; and the others at b , i , k , l , m , and n , through which Points, the Representation will also pass, and may be described with more accuracy.

The affinity between the Original and the Representation, which the corresponding Characters particularize, is sufficient Demonstration, S represents the Center of the Circle, C .

This Method of projecting the Representation of a Circle is, of all others, the best and most practicable. It is nearly the same thing as Prob. 25th; for, the eight Points a , D , b , c , d , F , e , and D being joined by Right Lines, will be the Representation of an Octagon, which is circumscribed by the Circle; as, in the other, the Circle is inscribed, i. e. touches every Side, as this passes through its Angles.

Notwithstanding, the Methods, in Prob. 1st by Brook Taylor, are facile and simple, yet I believe, they are scarce ever used in Practice. If the Circle be large, and Distance adequate thereto, they are utterly impracticable; because there is a necessity for having the whole Circle and Distance, at once, in their true places. Whereas, by the last, the Distance is applied on either, or on both sides of the Center, as in all other Cases whatever. Nor is AB necessarily the Intersection of the Plane of the Original Circle. For, if the place of the Circle be determined on the Picture (either its Center, or the nearest part of the Circumference, at D) a Line drawn through S or D , parallel to the Intersection, or Vanishing Line, answers the same purpose. AB or DF being made equal to the known Diameter, in those places, and a quarter of a Circle described, as DEF , of that proportion (which, it must be obvious, is as sufficient as the whole) the rest is as already described. Other Points, if requisite, may be obtained, as f and g , and more, if necessary.

Plate XX. In common Practice (in a Circle not very large) eight Points being sufficient, there is no real necessity for describing an Ark, geometrically; for *e* (or *c*) the Point where a Perpendicular, from *E*, cuts the Diameter, is distant from *A* or *B* somewhat more than one seventh part of the whole Diameter, *AB*; so that, in all common Cases, it may be ascertained near enough.

Fig. 93.

The 2nd Problem is useful in many Cases. Having obtained a Line, *AB*, by any means, on the Picture; which, being known to be the Diameter of a Circle, the whole Circle may be projected by the means there described; or by Prob. 10th, Case 3rd, with the greatest exactness. Having obtained the parallel Diameter, *DF*, the similarity with this last Problem is discernable.

E X A M P L E XXI.

How to represent a plain, circular Arcade, casually inclined to the Picture.

Fig. 94.

Let *VM* be the Vanishing Line of the Horizon, *C* the Center of the Picture, *CE* its Distance, and *A* the Intersecting Point of the hither Angle of the Steps.

Through *A*, draw *AJ* parallel to the Horizon; which may be considered as the Ground Line; also, draw *AG* perpendicular, the vertical Intersection of a Diagonal Plane; on which, set off, from *A*, the several heights and proportions of the Object, at *D*, *G*, &c.

† Ex. 13.

The Angles of the Steps being first obtained, as at *A*, *a*, *b*†; their length may be acquired by Prob. 7th. If they exceed the bounds of the Picture, take any equal portion of their length, as *AJ*, one third part; also, *V* being the Vanishing Point of that Side (see Prob. 21, Meth. 3rd) and *VE* its Distance, make *VD* one third of *VE*, and draw *JD*, cutting the indefinite Representation *AV* at *N*. *AN* represents a length equal to thrice *AJ*. (Prob. 17.)

The Steps are finished as in the 13th Example.

Next, the proportion of the Plinth, *ecf*, is determined by the same; and the others, *gh*, *ik*, and *l*, by Example 4, which, with the Piers, are so many Parallelopipeds, of equal magnitude and equally spaced.

Their measures are set off, at 1, 2, 3, on the Ground Line; and projected to their Seats, at 4, 5, 6, &c. by means of the Point *E*, on one Side; the Distance, *VE*, of the other Vanishing Point, *V*, falls out of the Picture.

Their height, and the upper Fillet at *H*, are obtained, by their geometrical height, *AD* (as the Pedestal in Example 13th.) These others are perpendicularly over the Plinths below; and the Fillet at the Top is determined from *G*; and, by drawing Lines to both Vanishing Points, *V* and *Y*. The last is not in the Picture, and must be drawn by Prob. 13, or the Point must be ascertained; where, *EY*, produced, would cut the Vanishing Line *VM*.

To represent the Arches; which are, in this Example, inclined to the Picture; and consequently, their Representations are Ellipses.

The last Figure and Problem is adapted to this Example.

D on the vertical Intersection, *AG* is the height of the spring of the Arch.

Make *DE* and *EF* equal to the measures on *AB* (Fig. 93) i. e. make *DF* equal to the height of the Arch, half the space between the Piers (equal *CF*) and *DE* equal *De* (equal *LE*) and, by means of the Vanishing Point of the Diagonal (*M*) transfer them to the Angle of the Building, at *H*, *I*, *K*; or, if *HK* be the determinate height of the Arch, at that Angle, the rest was unnecessary.

From *H*, draw Lines to both Vanishing Points, *V* and *Y*, cutting the Piers, at *a*, *f*, *m*, *n*, &c. Bisect *mn*, perspectively, at *S*†, the center of the Arch.

† Prob. 8.

Draw *Sp* perpendicular, cutting a Line, from *K* to the Vanishing Point, *Y*, at *p*, the crown of the Arch; also, draw *no* and *mq* perpendicular; *m q o n* is half a Square, circumscribing the Arch.

Draw the Diagonals *So*, and *Sq*, cutting a Line from *I*, at *r* and *s*.

A Curve described through *m*, *r*, *p*, *s*, and *n*, is the front of the Arch, the Representation of a Semicircle. If more Points are requisite, see the last Problem.

The inner Curve is described as the outer; nn being the thickness of the Pier.

From all the Points in the outer Curve, draw Lines to the Vanishing Point V ; and, mn , the inner Diameter, answering to mn , being drawn, SV cuts it at f the Center; from which, the Diagonals fo , fq , being drawn, in the Rectangle $mgon$, give the Points r , and s ; and a Perpendicular from f gives p ; then, a Curve drawn through m , r , p , s , and n , determines as much of the Soffit of the Arch as can be seen.

After the same manner, the Arches adf , &c. are described, in the returning Side; which would be superfluous to repeat over again; as the Lines themselves shew their use and application the same.

E X A M P L E XXII.

How to determine the true Diameters of Columns from any Station, and on a Picture in any Position.

Let AB , DF , and GH be the Sections of three Columns by a horizontal Plane, in which the Eye may be supposed to be, at E ; and, let AH be a Section of the Picture, i. e. suppose a Plane standing upright on AH parallel to the Columns; EC perpendicular to AH gives its Center.

Fig. 95.

The Visual Rays EA , EB , &c. being drawn, are in the same Plane; and the Points A , B , D , &c. where they cut the Picture, it is evident, are the places, where the apparent edges of the Columns will appear, and consequently, AB is the apparent width of the Column AB , DF of DF , and GH of GH ; which, on account of the Rays, EG , EH , intersecting the Picture more oblique than those from DF , has a larger Representation; notwithstanding it is really further from the Eye, and from the Center of the Picture, at C .

If the Eye be moved to E , the dotted Lines shew the difference in their Proportions, from the two Stations or Points of View; where the difference between the Representations of DF and GH are much larger than at E .

If the Picture be at ah (the Eye being at E) parallel to AH , the Proportions of the Representations are in the same Ratio, as their Distances, Ec to EC .

The true position of the Picture from that Station, is ab , whose Center is at c , Ec perpendicular to ab , bisects the Optic Angle, aEb ; which Optic Angle of the other Pictures, is iEh ; ci being equal to ch .

And thus the Diameters may be obtained on any Picture, situated to the Columns in any Angle, at pleasure, as HAK , the apparent Diameters on AK , are where the Visual Rays cut it, at A , i , k , l , m , K .

See this matter more fully treated, in the sixth Section, of the Theory, Fig. 34.

E X A M P L E XXIII.

To represent an upright Cylinder, of any given Dimensions.

Let AB be its Diameter. The height of the Cylinder is supposed to be known. Let V be the Center, and VC the Distance of the Picture.

Fig. 96.

Describe a Square $ABDg$ (Prob. 19) and inscribe a Circle $aceg$ (by Pr. 2 or 3.)

At the two Extremes of the Ellipsis, a and d , draw Perpendiculars, which represent Sides of the Cylinder. Their height must be determined by a Perpendicular either from A or b , or any Point in the Circumference.

Make Aa and bb , each equal to the determined height of the Cylinder; the Point b is in the Circumference at the Top; and, if AC be drawn, it will cut Perpendiculars from a and e , in a and e , which are in the same Circumference. bV will cut a Perpendicular from f at f ; and thus, as many Points as you please may be obtained, as a , b , c , d , e , f , g , and h , corresponding with a , b , &c. below; through which, the upper Curve may be described.

Or,

PlateXX. Or, having obtained any three Points, the Curve *a, b, c, d*, may be determined, by Prob. 11, with the greatest accuracy.

Fig. 96.

The Plinth, ABD is parallel to the Picture; and the Abacus, BFG, is equally inclined on both Sides (see Prob. 29 and 30) the Curves are still the same; and if they are equally distant from the Vanishing Line, VC, they are equal and similar Ellipses.

E X A M P L E XXIV.

How to represent several Cylinders, in the same Right Line; inclined to the Picture, at pleasure.

PlateXXI.
Fig. 97.

Let X, Y, and Z, be the Seats of three Columns, in the Ground Plane, between the parallel Lines, AB and CD; inclined to the Picture in the Angle BAF, at discretion. AF is the Intersection; and HL, the Horizontal Vanishing Line; C is the Center, and CE the Distance of the Picture.

Find the Vanishing Point, H, of the inclination of the Line of the Columns, AB (Prob. 17) and make HEL a Right Angle; which bisect by the Right Line EO.

L is the Vanishing Point of the other Sides of the Squares; in which the Columns, i. e. their Plans are inscribed; and O of the Diagonals.

It would be superfluous, after so many Examples of the same kind given, to shew how the Representations of those Squares are obtained; either by applying their several Distances from A to *a, b, c*, &c. (as in Ex. 4) or, as the Square ABFD is found (Prob. 19) severally, at discretion.

The dotted Lines shew how the last is managed; and it is the best, when there are Circles to be inscribed; as they are represented at *af, cg*, and *eb*.

Which being obtained, severally, by the last Example, draw AK, perpendicular, and equal to the height of the Columns.

† Prob. 3

Find the corresponding Squares of the Tops of the Cylinders, in which inscribe Circles perspectively†, and draw perpendicular Lines, *ai, gk, em*, &c. representing the apparent edges of the Cylinders. If they were to represent Columns, diminishing at the upper ends, the Squares containing the Circles must be represented less, in proportion to their respective Diameters; and the Lines, which are, in this Case, perpendicular, will be gently curved; having obtained the Diameters above and below, a curved Ruler is the best expedient, for drawing the apparent Lines of the sides of the Columns.

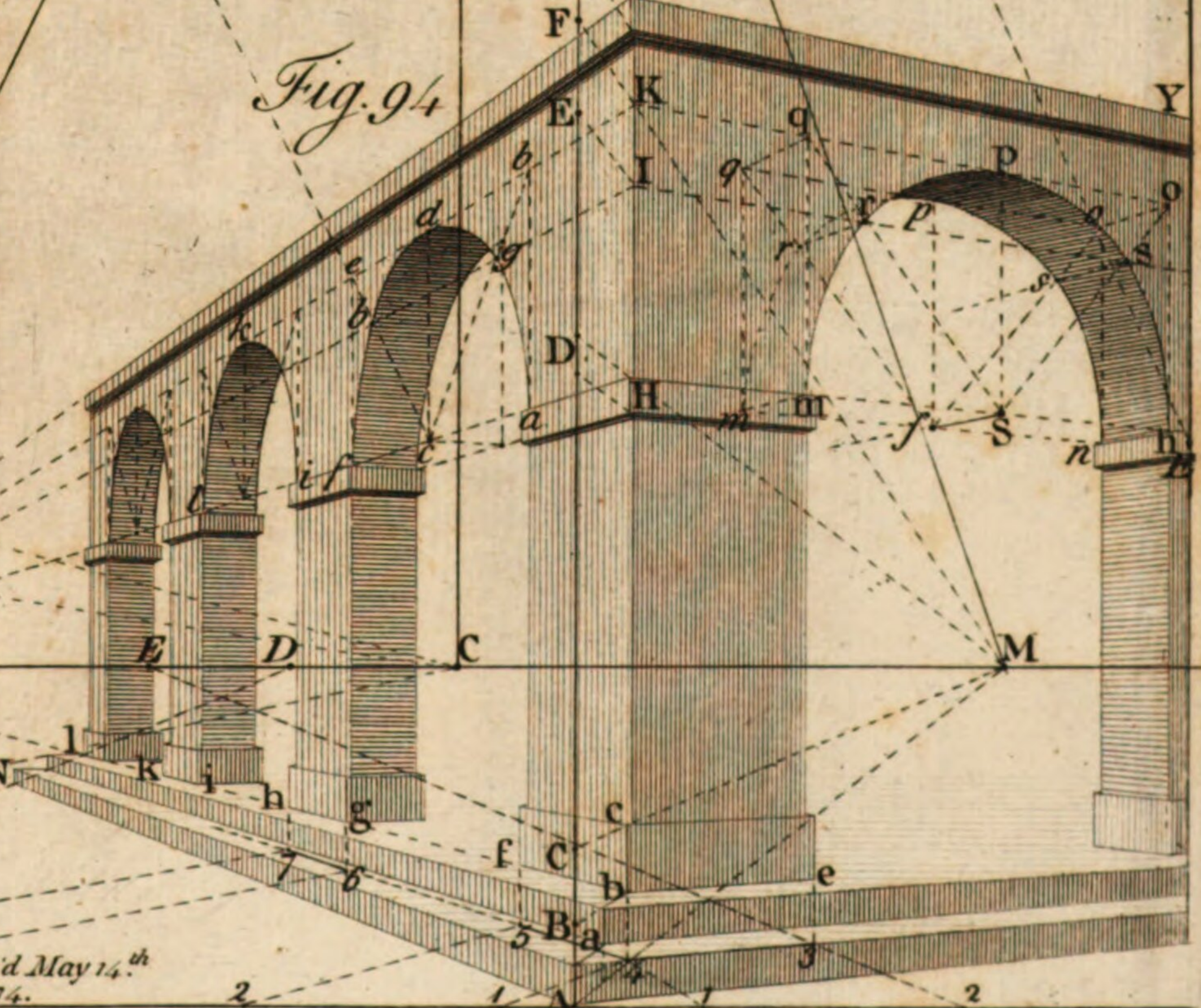
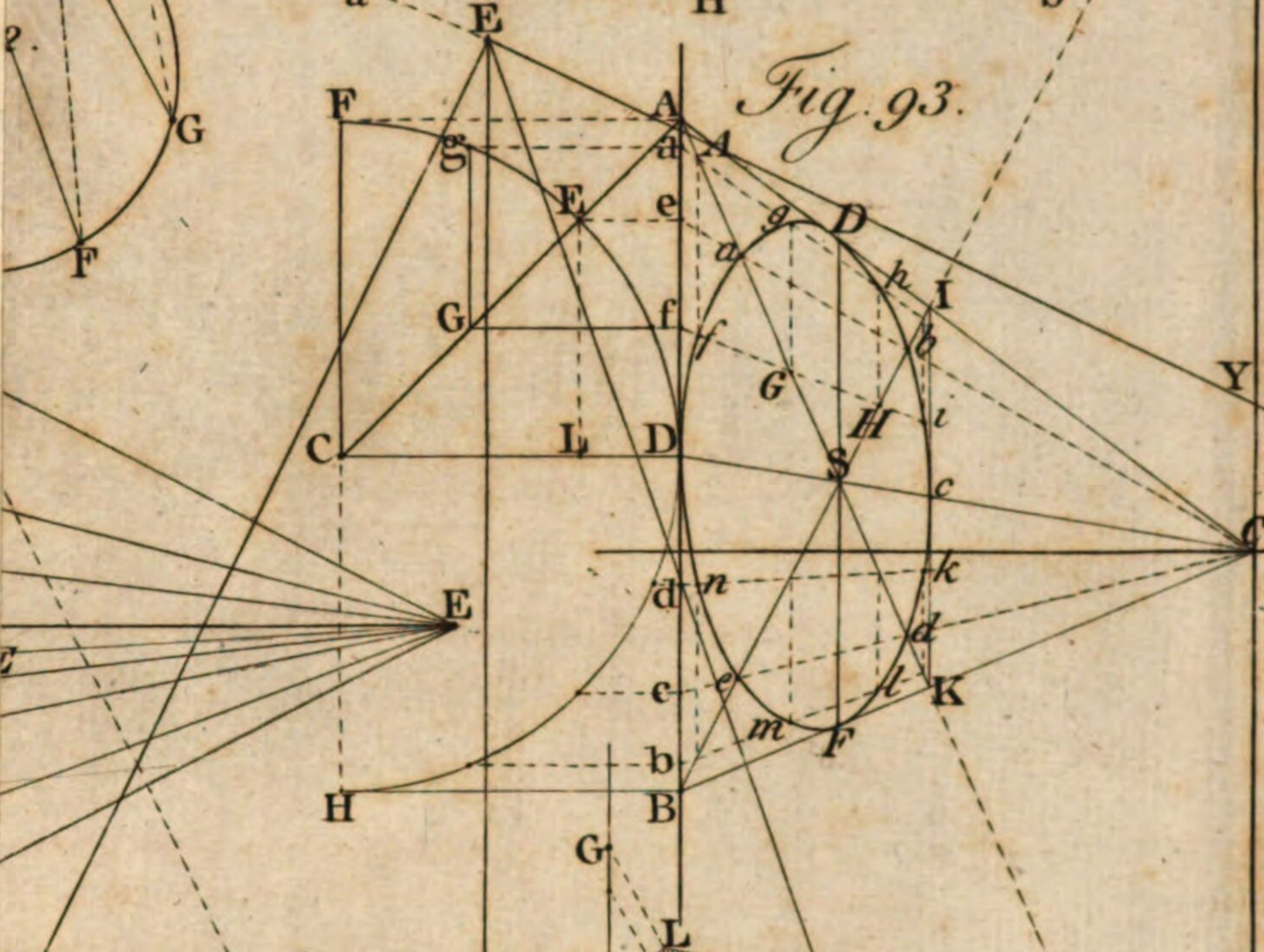
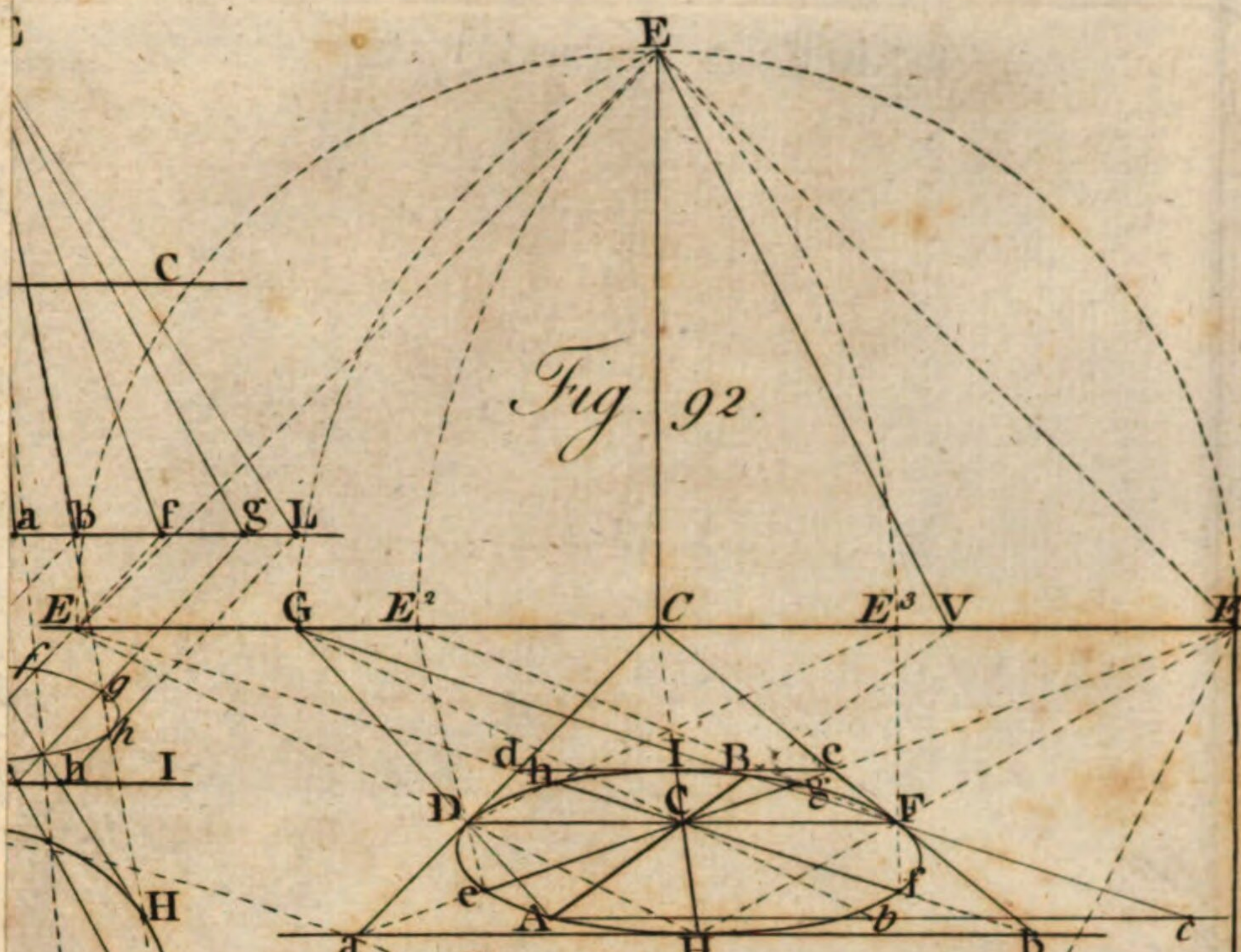
Now, although this Method of obtaining the apparent Diameters, if it be accurately performed, is strictly true; for, the representations of their Bases and Tops being true Ellipses, there cannot possibly be any error; yet, the performance of it is liable to great error, because it is impossible to describe the Ellipsis accurately; and therefore, the Diameters cannot, by this means, be truly obtained; especially at the bottom, being so near the Vanishing Line; but, much more accurately, by Example 22.

Then, since EC is the Distance of the Picture, produce it to the Intersection at G; make SG equal to EC, and conceive the Picture to stand erect, on its Intersection AF, and S to be the Station Point, at the foot of the Spectator; for, SG the Distance of the Picture is equal to EC, from the Eye to its Center; the space between the Intersection and the Horizontal Line not being a part of the Distance, seeing they are both on the Picture. (See Fig. 37, No. 1.)

It is equally the same, if S be considered as the Eye, and AF the Horizontal Line; and suppose X, Y, and Z, sections of the Columns by the Horizontal Plane.

Right Lines drawn from S, as the Station Point; or being, considered as the Eye, in the Horizontal Plane, are Visual Rays to the extreme edges of the Columns; which, by their Intersections with the Picture, at 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, and 6, give the apparent proportions of the Columns, on the Picture; from which, Perpendiculars, being drawn, give their true places, beyond any other means whatever.

E X A M P L E



Ed May 14th
74.

It is a very old book

It is a very old book

It is a very old book

It is a very old book

It is a very old book

It is a very old book

It is a very old book

It is a very old book

It is a very old book

It is a very old book

It is a very old book

It is a very old book

It is a very old book

It is a very old book

It is a very old book

It is a very old book

It is a very old book

It is a very old book

It is a very old book

It is a very old book

It is a very old book

It is a very old book

It is a very old book

It is a very old book

It is a very old book

It is a very old book

It is a very old book

It is a very old book

It is a very old book

It is a very old book

It is a very old book

E X A M P L E XXV.

How to represent the Tuscan Base, its Plinth parallel to the Picture, and seen obliquely.

C is the Center, nearly as in the last; but the Distance is greater, equal CH: Fig. 98.
the Horizontal Line is the same; and the Intersection, or Ground Line, is AB.

At X is a Profile of the Base, consisting of one Torus and Plinth.

Being parallel to the Picture, the Plinth, A a b B, in Front, is geometrical; compleat the square of the Base, perspectively†; and within that another Square (a b c d) equal to the Circle at the bottom of the Torus, in which describe an Ellipsis‡; the nearer part, e f g, will only be seen. † Prob. 19.

Produce the corner of the Plinth, from A; A J may be considered as the Intersection of a Diagonal Plane. Make A J equal to the height of the Fillet above the Torus; and having made a Perspective Plan below (the geometrical proportions, from the Profile, being set off, from A and B, as A a, B b) from the Angles A, B, and D, draw Perpendiculars A I, B K, and D L. ‡ Prob. 3.

From J, on the vertical Intersection, draw J H, cutting A I at I; also draw I K parallel to the Ground Line, A B, and compleat the Square I K L, of the Fillet; in which, describe the Ellipsis d e f, and another parallel to it, perspectively, equal to its width.

Make A G equal to B E; or, through E, the middle of the Torus, draw E G, and compleat the Square E F; in which describe an Ellipsis, as at g h i k, which gives the greatest swell of the Torus; and, if greater accuracy be required, describe another Ellipsis, above that; and thus, as many representations of Circles as you please being described, a Curve, d g e, on the left side, and f k g on the right, falling into the Ellipsis on the Plinth, at e and g, will be the true Contour of the Torus, in Perspective.

Now, although I can hardly suppose that any Person would go through this process, who would delineate a Base; yet is there no better or readier way of doing it, with certainty. Nevertheless, this dissection of it will greatly assist the imagination; and is the best method of acquiring a true knowledge of the nature of curvilinear practical Perspective.

h i k, at the bottom of the Plinth, is an Ellipsis, which is the perspective Seat of the Shaft of the Column; from which may be obtained the edges of the Column, at M N; but it is of no other use, seeing the Curve of the Ellipsis, at M N, is very different from that below, on account of its being nearer to the Vanishing Line; in which, the Curve would be lost totally.

On account of the oblique situation of the Eye, in respect of this Object, it must necessarily appear distorted, when the Eye is opposite to it; but, let the Eye be placed opposite to the Center, at C, and at the Distance C H, the Eye being then in the true Point of view, it will appear perfectly round, and without any distortion.

E X A M P L E XXVI.

How to represent a Doric Capital, inclined to the Picture, casually, or at Discretion.

S is the Center of the Picture, and C is the Vanishing Point of one Side of the Abacus; the other is out of the Picture; the Distance is equal to C H. Fig. 99.

E is the Eye, i. e. the Distance of the Vanishing Point of the other Side (found by Prob. 12) and F is the Vanishing Point of a Diagonal, bisecting the Angle.

Let A be the place of the nearest Angle, in the Picture; and let Z be the geometrical Profile. A B is the Intersection of the Plane of the Top; and A B is the measure of the square of the Abacus.

A B being drawn indefinite§, draw B E cutting it at B, and draw A C, and B C, and a Diagonal A F, cutting B C; compleat the Square A B C. (Prob. 21.) § Th. 12.

Draw A D the Intersection of the mitre Diagonal, and transfer all the measures from the Profile to A D; from which, draw Lines to F; and having got the Points c and e, on the Diagonal A F, the Seats of the Projectures of the Facia, Z, and the Fillet at x; obtained as usual, by setting off the measures at a and b; from which draw Perpendiculars, giving the Points a and e.

Plate XXI. Fig. 99. Compleat the Squares cd and fg , in which describe Ellipses; ab being drawn parallel to AB , may be considered as the Section of the under Face of the Abacus.

From E , or any other Point in the Horizontal Line, draw Ec to b ; bisect ab , at d , and make $a1$, $b2$, each somewhat more than one seventh part of ab ; or with the Radius ad describe an Ark of a Circle, and get the Points 1 and 2 , as by Prob. 3rd, by which means, the Ellipsis, i. e. the Points e, f, g, h, i , by which it is described, are obtained.

After the same manner, in the Square efg of the fillet at x , describe the Ellipsis j, k, l , and another parallel to it, equal to the width of the fillet; and also, another above that, for the thickness of the small Bead, at x ; which, being so little distant from each other, will not vary much in their Curves; otherwise, every different representation of a Circle must be severally described, as the foregoing.

As it is somewhat more difficult to get the necessary Points, when the Square is inclined than parallel; let the remainder of the Curves be thus obtained.

Through y draw a Line parallel to AB ; and (because this Object is viewed centrally) where it cuts the Vertical Line, at i , set off if and ik equal; making fk equal to the Diameter of the fillet, at y , geometrical; draw fS and kS .

From the Point j , where fd cuts AD , draw jF , cutting iS at o , the representation of the Center of that Circle; and, through o , draw Lo , cutting fS and kS at h and m ; through which, draw gh and lm parallel to fk ; $ghlm$ is the Square of that Circle, in which an Ellipsis must be described, as before; with the Fillet and Astragal, as was done above; particular care being had, to make them lead true, at the Extremes, as if they were continued around.

The Square of the section of the Shaft (pq) is obtained in the same manner; and, an Ellipsis being described in it, from the Extremes of which, perpendicular Lines are drawn, for the Shaft or apparent edges of the Column. How they fall into the Cavetto is impossible to describe, seeing the Line is lost insensibly.

The large Ovolo can only be described, truly, as the Torus, by means of various representations of Circles, and describing, carefully, a Curve over the Extremes of them all; for it must be obvious, that the Contour of such Mouldings, though circular, is not in a Plane, but is continually changing its place, from the upper Circle to the lower.

Let it be observed, that the Curves are the very same, whether the Squares, in which they are described, be parallel to the Picture or oblique, in any inclination whatever.

E X A M P L E XXVII.

How to represent a large Crane, or Water Wheel, vertical.

Fig. 100. Let $ABCD$ be the geometrical Figure, and proportion of the Wheel; and S , its Center or Axle. Its Position is accidental, as the vertical Line, lm , passing thro' the Center, indicates.

Let C be the Center of the Picture, and CE its Distance, in the Horizontal Line.

Let AB be the Intersection, of the Plane of the Wheel, with the Picture; which, the Wheel is supposed close to; and let BD be the Ground Line.

Transfer the measure of the Wheel to the Intersection, AB , at FG .

Draw CV perpendicular to the Ground Line, which is the Vanishing Line of the Face of the Wheel. Make CE equal to CE ; draw FC and GC ; and FE , cutting GC at H , and draw HI , parallel to AB .

$FGHI$ represents a Square, containing the Wheel; in which, describe the Ellipsis, $abcd$; and within it another, representing the Rim of the Wheel.

Make BK equal to its determined width, and draw KL parallel to AB , by which describe the Curve OPQ , representing the cylindrical Surface of its convexity; and there may be two other Curves described, equal in width, representing the breadth of the Rims, and another, shewing their thickness.

The Levers* a, b, c, d, &c. may be thus obtained.

Make AG and BF each equal to their width; and draw AC and BC ; produce EF , cutting CB , at C , and draw CD parallel to AB cutting CA .

On CD describe, perspectively, the exterior Square, $CDHI$, in which describe, an Ellipsis, by a Pencil Line; which, with the interior Curves, represent concentric Circles (as $ABCD$, $abcd$, No. 1) this last will limit all the Extremes of the Levers. Their places are found, by drawing Perpendiculars, from each, to the Ground Line; as ip , nq , &c.

Draw a Perpendicular from the Rim, at J (No. 1) cutting the Ground Line at B ; from which transfer all the measures Bp , Bq , &c. to Bp , Bq , Br , &c. from which, draw Lines to E , cutting BC at 1, 2, 3, &c. from which, draw Perpendiculars cutting the outer Ellipsis at b , f , &c. as in the Figure, where the corresponding Characters particularize the several Levers.

Any one being obtained, a Line drawn through S , which represents the Center of the Wheel, gives its opposite, as bSd .

By the same Method the cross Timbers, &c. may be obtained.

This Method, though the same as all the old Authors practised, is not repugnant to the new Principles, by Brook Taylor; and may do, accurately enough, in common Cases, and where room is wanting; but, as a contrast, I will also shew, how much more simple, masterly, and correct, they may be obtained, by means of their respective Vanishing Points; and, when they are not very remote, Intersecting Points.

AB was considered as the Intersection of one Plane of the Wheel, with the Picture. A Right Line, CV , drawn through C , the Center of the Picture, parallel to AB , is the Vanishing Line of them both, and C is its Center. (See Th. 5 & 6.)

The Horizontal Line is of no use, in this operation; no regard being had to any other Vanishing Line or Intersection, whatever, but that of the Plane of the Figure.

CE , perpendicular to CV , the Distance of the Picture, is also the Distance of this Vanishing Line, which, is the Vertical Line of the Picture; and E is the true Place of the Eye, for that Plane.

Find the Vanishing Points, D and V , of the Inclination of the Timbers, parallel to AC , and BD (No. 1) i. e. make the Angles CED , CEV , respectively equal to the known or determined Inclination of AC , and BD , with the Horizon†; cutting the Vanishing Line at D and V , the Vanishing Points of those parallel Timbers.

† Prob. 2.
Sect. 3.

Or, having found either, make DEV a Right Angle, it will give the other; because the Timbers are at right angles with each other. (Prob. 4, Sect. 3.)

Bisect the Angle DEV by the Right Line EF ; F is the Vanishing Point of the other Timbers, E , F , &c. (No. 1.) which make half Right Angles with these. In the same manner, i. e. by bisecting the Angles all the other Vanishing Points, G and H , &c. of the Levers are acquired; which, seeing they tend to the Center of the Wheel, may be drawn without more preparation; as GS and HS , &c. which gives the Levers, at i and k , &c. and FS gives the Timbers at EG .

The Timbers at I are parallel to them, and have the same Vanishing Point; the others, at O , and F , H , are at right angles with them. Make FEY a Right Angle, and they will tend to that Point, where EY would cut the Vanishing Line.

The cross Timbers, do not pass through the Center of the wheel, but may be thus obtained; with the greatest accuracy.

Draw KL , at the farther extreme of the Wheel (No. 1) and produce the Timbers, &c. till they cut it, at M and N ; also the Lever, at w , cutting KL at K . KL may be considered at the Intersection of the Picture, coinciding with AB , or KL .

Transfer the measures KM , MN , &c. to AB and KL , at v , x , y , & z , & K to A .

Draw vD and xD , giving the representations of the Timbers, parallel to AC ; whose thicknesses are obtained at v 1, x 2. yD and zD give those on the other side of the Wheel, as they are seen between the hither Timbers.

From A draw a Line through the Center S , which gives the two Vanes, at n and o , whose Vanishing Point is not in the Picture, nor necessary.

The

* They are, by some, called Ladles; but I think that Term very improper, unless they were intended to scoop the Water away.

Plate XXI. The Intersecting Points of the other cross Timbers are below the Intersection, Fig. 100. *BD*; which, if they were remote could not be acquired.

Therefore, draw *rF* and *sF* cutting the inner Curve of the Rim at *t* and *u*; and, through them, draw *Vt*, and *Vu*, which gives those Timbers.

Or, describe a Square, perspectively, at the Center *S*, equal to the width of the other two, and use the Vanishing Point *V*, as before.

The Levers, it is obvious, are all between the two Ellipses, as their Originals are between the Circles, at No. 1.

The Points *a*, *i*, *e*, &c. being obtained, draw *aa*, *ii*, &c. parallel; for the Front is, supposed, at right angles with the Picture.

The parts where they are hid, by the Rim of the Wheel, need not be drawn; which, with the Supporters, or Stays behind them, are best described by the Figure; to particularize every minutia, would take above another Page to little purpose. The Square of the Axle being got, at *S*, the Sides are parallel; and the Timbers at *I* and *O* form a Square, whose Vanishing Points are *F* and *Y*.

Or, those at *I* may be produced to the Intersection *KL* cutting it at *J* and *L*; and one of the other, at *P*. The rest is obvious, on inspection.

E X A M P L E XXVII.

How to represent circular Steps, in Perspective.

Pl. XXII. Let *CE* be the Horizontal Vanishing Line; *C* the Center, and *CE* the Distance. Fig. 101. Let *AB* be the Intersection of the Plane of the first Step; and let *AB* be the measure of that Step.

Describe a Square *ABDF* (Prob. 19th) in which inscribe the Ellipsis *abcdefgh*. Make *cG* equal to the height of a Step, at *X* (No. 1) and by drawing Perpendiculars, *b1*, *c2*, &c. and, from *A* and *B*, Diagonals cutting them, the lower Curve may be described.

Draw *GH*, or *AI* perpendicular; and on them, from *A* or *c*, set off all the measures of as many Steps as are required, viz. *Gc*, *ci*, or *AA AC*, equal (as in the Profile, for two Steps) and from them draw to *C*, or *E*, as in the Figure.

Find the Square of the next Step *JKLM*, in which describe the Ellipsis *abcd*, &c. as before; and the lower Curve, *ghikl*, may be obtained, likewise, in the same manner. And thus, as many Steps may be represented as are required.

AB is not necessarily the Intersection of the Picture, but parallel to the Intersection; and *AB* the known or determined measure of the first Step, in that Place.

E X A M P L E XXIX.

How to represent a circular Pedestal, on the Steps.

Fig. 101. At No. 1 is the Profile of the Pedestal; from which transfer all the measures of the Plinth, Mouldings, &c. to the Vertical Intersection, *GH* or *AI*, or both; the one considered as the Section of a vertical Plane perpendicular to the Picture; thro' the Axis of the Pedestal, and the other a diagonal Section.

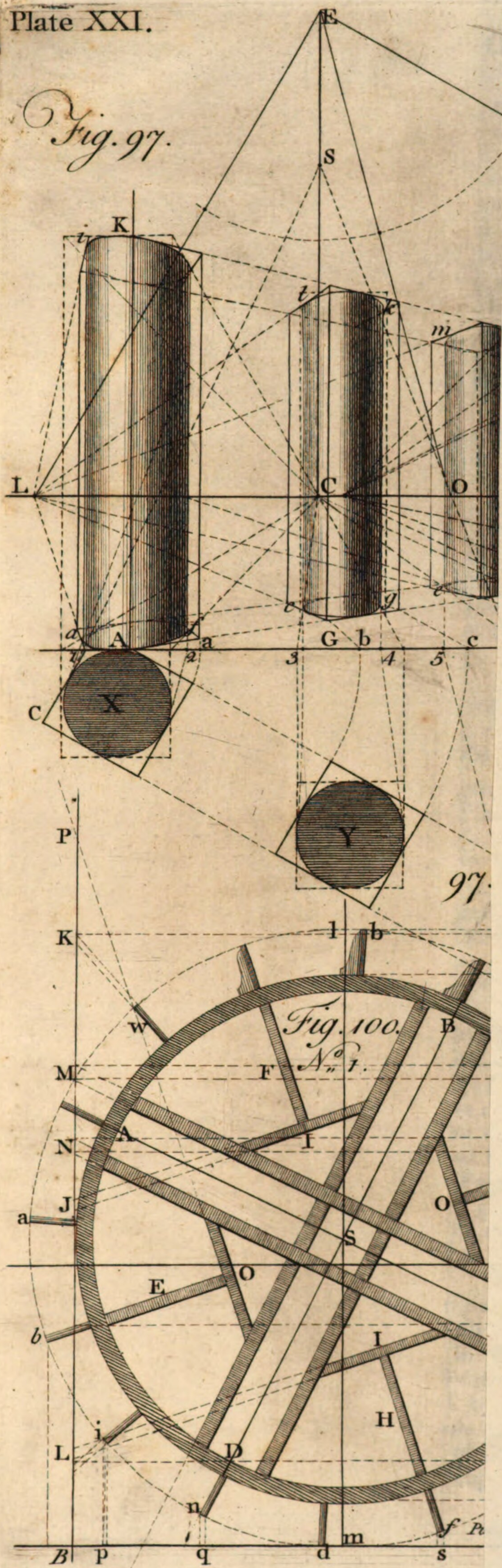
Make *CD* equal to the Plinth of the Base; *CI* the height of the Cornice, and at 1, 2, 3, &c. set off the proportion of the Mouldings.

The square of the Plinth being obtained, at *NO*, and an equal one at *PQ*, in both which describe Ellipses; as, for the Steps below.

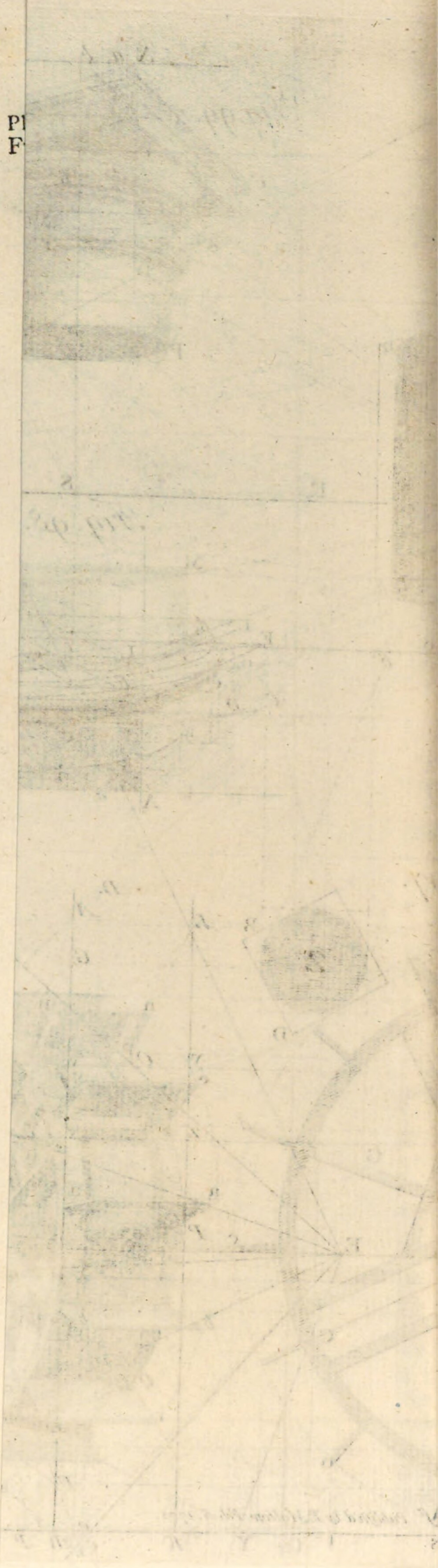
The other Curves must all be obtained after the same manner, by inscribing Ellipses in Squares; as *pq* of the Facia, *rs* of the lower line of the Cornice, and *tu*, of the upper Line of the Base Moulding.

For, let it be observed, that, in curved Objects, if the Plane of the Curve falls near the Vanishing Line, consequently, the Curve will be more excentric and flatter; yet there is no possibility of describing them in another Plane either above or below, as in Right-lined Objects, so as to be of any service, in respect of the Curve, seeing

Fig. 97.



Pl
F



seeing that every Curve, the farther it is removed from the Vanishing Line of the Plane it is in, becomes more curved, i. e. it is more convex; or, as workmen phrase it, quicker; which implies, that it falls off from a Tangent, more suddenly.

Let it also be observed, that if the Curves, that is, the Planes they are in, be equally distant above and below the Eye; being equal and similar Curves, of any kind, and perpendicularly one over the other, their Representations will also be equal and similar, but inverted. For, let it be particularly remarked, that, wherever the Eye is situated, in respect of a convex Object, as a Vase, &c. (Fig. 102) the Vanishing Line of the Plane of the Circles, CE, cutting the Object, the Curves *abc*, *def*, &c. or *abc*, *def*, &c. on either side of the Vanishing Line, are always concave towards it; and, consequently if a concave Object be represented (as the Abacus, of the Ionic or Corinthian Capital, Ex. 30 and 32) the Curves will be convex, towards the Vanishing Line. Fig. 102.

How is it possible then, for any Person, who has any pretensions to the Art of delineating, to run into such gross absurdities as are exhibited in No. 2. I have seen a Vase so represented, on the Pannel of a Coach Door, which was very well painted, and, in other respects passable.

The Plinth, AB, was parallel, and the Side, BCD, was seen; but, instead of the Lines CB and DB tending to a Vanishing Point, they inclined to each other towards the Eye; and consequently, gave the top, ABC, the appearance of an inclined Plane. The Mouldings, at E, where curved contrary to the Base, which plainly indicates the Horizontal Line, HI, to pass between them; and, the Curves, being regular, also evinces the Eye to be at E, and consequently the Side, BCD, of the Plinth, could not be seen. No. 2.

The Lines at FG, the greatest swell of the Vase, were Right Lines, which also evinces the Eye to be on a level with them; whilst the nulled, or fluted part, *abc*, was a parabolic Curve, rising as in the Figure; and the Top, at K, gently curved.

Is it not surprizing, that any Artist could be so regardless of his Reputation, as to suffer such a medley of inconsistencies to go out of his hands; and to palliate it by saying, in such things, it is not worth the while to stand considering about it. I grant it would not be worth the while, to delineate the whole by the Rules of Perspective; but surely, the Lines in the Plinth are as easily made to incline the right way, as wrong; and if, by curving the horizontal Lines of the Vase, it was intended to give an appearance of roundness; would not that be better effected by curving them properly? it would take no more time; and, if the Delineator was not inclined to think much about it, I would advise all such, to place an Object before them, and their Eye in the Point of View, as they intend the Object to appear; they will then assuredly see, how unpardonable such misrepresentations are, because they are as readily, without loss of time, done right as wrong.

I have also seen full as gross absurdities on the stage; which ought to be regulated by the strictest Rules. In Theatres, Perspective might be displayed to great advantage; and certainly, its Rules ought not to be dispensed with, on any account whatever. I do not mean in every minutia, but in the whole Design; for, if liberties be taken, in order to appear better in one Point of View, it will appear worse in another; particularly in Scenes representing a grand Palace, &c. or other regular piece of Architecture, there is no possibility of departing from the Rules; in detached Planes, as in Scenery, they could not form one entire Building, without adhering strictly to Perspective.

To the best of my remembrance, in that Master-piece, by Servandoni, in the Pandemonium (though I think, that the grotesque Stile, of that Design, is not altogether consonant to the grand description of it, in Milton's Paradise lost) the Eye, in that Scene, is on a level with the Bases; and consequently, the Rustics appear curved. It is a long time since I saw it; but I believe, the first, from the Base, is as much curved as the upper one. The whole has a grand and striking effect, chiefly occasioned by the magnificent display of Lights and Colours; and which, being left out, I am persuaded that this Design would lose much of the applause it has obtained.

Pl. XXII.

E X A M P L E XXX.

Fig. 103.

How to represent an Ionic Capital, perspectively, having one Face parallel to the Picture.

This Example, and more particularly the next, of the Corinthian Capital, is a matter of real difficulty. To represent such Objects as the Volute (and other decorative parts, of which the latter is composed) will indeed baffle all Rules. I shall nevertheless attempt to lay down some, which will give their true places, with certainty; and, if the Practitioner will carefully observe how such Objects appear, according to the position in which they are seen, and intended to be delineated, he will not be much at a loss; if he has any hand at Ornaments, Foliage, &c. and carefully adheres to the Rules I shall prescribe.

At Fig. 103, No. 1, is the true geometrical Plan and Elevation of the Ionic Capital; not according to the Antique which is not difficult, seeing that the Volute or Scrolls are in one Plane. On the left (at X) is the Plan of the Volute, shewing its position in respect of the Abacus and Ovolo, &c. On the right (at Y) is the Elevation; which appears elliptical, on account of its Position, which is known from the Plan.

If ab be the Line of its direction (which is somewhat curved) to the front, AB ; it is obvious, that it makes a considerable Angle with it; to which Perpendiculars being drawn, give ec , its apparent width in Front; which measures being transposed to the other Side, at d and g , and perpendiculars drawn, give its apparent geometrical Front; of which Z is the true.

Having thus described the geometrical Plan and Elevation, I now proceed to shew how it may be delineated, perspectively.

Let AB be considered as the Intersection of the Picture, with the Plane of the top of the Abacus. Let HL be the Horizontal vanishing Line, and C the Center of the Picture. The Distance is CE ; which, seeing it is greater than can be applied on the Horizontal Line, take CE half CE , and describe the Square $ABDG$ (Prob. 19) which contains the whole Abacus.

The Curve efg , which is the sixth part of the Circumference of a Circle, may be easily obtained; as thus.

From c , F , and d , any Points at pleasure, in AB , draw Perpendiculars, $c1$, $d2$, &c. to the Curve; and draw cC , FC , and dC , which represent those Lines, indefinite. Make cc , Ff , &c. represent the finite Parts; through the Points e , c , f , d , and g , describe a Curve, which will be a portion of an Ellipsis, and represents the Curve efg .

The returning Side, BD , is obtained by means of Ordinates, after the same manner, which are parallel on that Side. The interior Curves may be projected by the same means, and the Plans X , Y , and Z of the Scrolls, as any other geometrical Figure (in Sect. 5) from which, their Representations are projected, as below; the returning Angles at A and B , being perpendicular and parallel to the Diagonal AC , tend to the Distance Points.

This preparation is sufficient for an extra Plan; I shall next shew how far it is useful in finishing the Representation below. This Plan may be supposed to be the Top of the Abacus, as a Plane simply; but I shall suppose it to be above, as in Example 12th, and that the Representation itself is below it.

Let AB , No. 3, be now considered as the Intersection of the Top, instead of AB ; to which Line transfer all the measures from AB ; and form the out Line of the Plan ABD , as before; by means of the same Vanishing Points.

To compleat the Abacus; bisect AB , at F , and draw a Perpendicular FG .

From F , set off all the measures of the heights of the Mouldings, and draw Lines from them to C ; and suppose FG a vertical Section of a Plane through the middle of the Capital.

The Center, S , being obtained, draw a Perpendicular, from S , cutting those Lines; through which, draw the parallel Lines ce , df , &c. till they cut Perpendiculars from the corresponding Mouldings, in the Plan above. Or, for greater

accuracy, make BC equal to Ff , the receding of the Curve from the Picture; where, make a true Profile of the Moulding, of the Abacus; from which, draw Lines to the Center of the Picture cutting ce , df , &c. from the Axis, Sd , at e and f . Having obtained the returning Moulding, at the Corner B , by means of the perspective Plan, above, and a perspective Section at FG (observing, that it is a mitre Angle touching the Picture, and consequently, recedes more than the true Moulding, as may be seen by the geometrical Plan, No. 1, at A or B) from which, Lines tending to the Point of Distance, on the right, cutting Perpendiculars from the Plan, give the other Mitre, gi .

From g , b , and i , draw Lines to the Center, C , cutting Perpendiculars from the Angle D , in the perspective Plan; by which means, the several Angles at D are obtained; and the curve Lines may be drawn by a careful hand, as in the Figure, nearly parallel amongst themselves; otherwise, if great accuracy be required, each Curve must be got, severally, in different Planes.

The Abacus being compleated, proceed to the Scrolls or Volutes.

Having carefully obtained the perspective Plans (X , Y , and Z) of the Scrolls, which are regular Trapezia (as at X , No. 1) not regarding the hollowing.

In this Diagram, it is too near the Vanishing Line; but may, for greater exactness, be at a greater Distance from it (as in Ex. 13.)

Draw ab parallel to AB , the Intersection of a Plane passing through the middle of the Scrolls (as at ab , No. 1) its Distance from AB , is equal to the distance of ab from the top of the Capital, geometrical.

By means of the Intersection, ab , the representations of those Trapezia, x , y , and z , are easily obtained; transferring the geometrical measures to this Intersection, first; Perpendiculars, from No. 2, will cut Lines tending to C , the Center of the Picture, and give all their Angles, sufficiently correct; but, if greater accuracy be required, their Vanishing and Intersecting Points may be had, as in other Figures, which are in the Horizontal Line; but, on account of their Inclination to the Picture, they are beyond its limits.

Now, the great use of these Figures is very obvious; by which means, the several apparent Faces, with their several Divisions, are determined, passing through the Eye of the Volute, &c. But, if an extra Plan be drawn, as above, Perpendiculars from X , Y , and Z , give the same, in respect of their widths.

Hence may be seen the unavoidable distortion of the Volute on the left; which, on account of its oblique Position to the Picture, and the Eye, is dragged out beyond its geometrical proportion; and consequently, cannot please the Eye but in the true Point of View. It is true the Distance is too short; nevertheless, every oblique parallel Representation of such Objects, must be more or less distorted, according to the Distance, and oblique situation of the Eye.

Having got their Dimensions, of height, by means of a Perpendicular, hi , from the middle of their geometrical Plan (X , No. 1) and the place where they fall on the Ovolo (which, must be drawn as in the Doric Capital, without its Abacus, Ex. 26) the rest must be delineated by a steady hand, guided by a nice Eye; for, without great nicety in both, it is not possible, by the Rules of Perspective, to project such Objects; seeing that, the Curve is not only continually varying from the Center to its utmost extent, but it is also continually growing forward, from the utmost extreme to its Center, and is not described on the same Plane, or other Surface; which circumstance renders it utterly impossible to be described perspective, by Rule; nevertheless, by the Rules prescribed and judgment in drawing, it may be projected so as to please the most critical Eye.

Below this outline is a finished Capital, divested of the necessary Lines for projecting it. It is somewhat further removed from the Horizontal vanishing Line, but, in other respects, it is the same; excepting the decorative parts, of foliage, &c. which, according to the position in which the Capital is viewed, will differ in Figure; they were omitted, above, for the sake of continuing the Lines of the Abacus, which they hide, in this. No Rule can possibly be of any use in delineating such Ornaments; a real Object, before the Eye, is the best and only means to effect it.

E X A M P L E

Pl. XXII.
Fig. 104.

E X A M P L E XXXI.

Is an Ionic Capital, according to the Antients, which is inclined to the Picture.

This Capital is delineated with much more ease than the other, for several reasons; because its Abacus is a Square, with only a Cima reversa; and, the Volutes are both in one Plane, which is vertical.

The Abacus, is supposed to cut the Picture, at A, through which draw AB, parallel to the Horizon; V is the Vanishing Point of the front Lines, the other is out of the Picture.

Make AB equal to a Side of the square of the Abacus, and project the Square ABC, perspectively (Prob. 21) and finish the Abacus, as in Ex. 13. of the Pedestal.

The hither Scroll projects through the Picture; because the corner of the Abacus, at A, cuts the Picture, and the Scroll projects beyond it, in this Capital.

Draw ab perpendicular, the Intersection of the Plane of the Volutes; which may be thus determined.

At X is an Angle of the Abacus, geometrical, being inclined to AB as the Object is supposed inclined to the Picture.

The whole Moulding projects before the Plane of the Scrolls; therefore, produce cb to a, cutting AB. Make Aa equal Aa, draw ab perpendicular, and produce ab, cutting ab at c; all that part of the Scroll, on the right hand of ab, projects through the Picture.

Make cd equal to the height of the Scrolls, or ad of the Capital, and draw dV.

Describe a Rectangle, inclosing the Scroll, at each extreme; as cdef, cdef; and, within these, others may be described, as in the Figure; by means of which, the Scrolls may be very accurately delineated, perspectively.

The other Front, or rather the End of this Capital, is different, and is not easily delineated, truly. Having obtained the outline of the opposite Scroll; at ghi, bisect the returning Line of the Abacus, at k; where, describe the representation of a Semicircle, kl, in a Plane parallel to the Front, but different in dimensions to the Scrolls. The proportion, and figure of it, may be had in Books of Architecture.

This End represents a kind of Balluster, spreading at its extremes, to the width of the Scroll; but the Axis of it does not pass through their Centers.

The Ovolo is the same in this as in the Modern Capital; save only, that it is not seen at the Ends, at all, being wholly hid by the Ballusters.

E X A M P L E XXXII.

To represent a Corinthian Capital inclined to the Picture.

Fig. 105. This Object is supposed to be direct before the Eye; and consequently, the Axis of the Capital passes through the Center of the Picture, at C.

CE is the Distance, VL the Horizontal Line, and V the Vanishing Point of one Side of the Capital, or rather of its Position; for, the Object not being right lined, save the short returning Angles, it has indeed no Vanishing Point; yet they are necessary, in the Delineation.

Let a be the Point in which a Square, inclosing the Abacus, touches the Picture; through which, the Intersection of the Top may be drawn; but it will be more eligible to take another, above, at BD, parallel to the Horizon.

The Abacus of this Capital is the same, in Proportion, and every other respect, as the modern Ionic; therefore, the measures may be taken from Fig. 103, No. 1, being delineated by the same Scale; and excepting its supposed Position, being different, the delineation of it would be the same.

Take A perpendicularly over a, and draw AV; and AY to the Point in which EY would cut the Horizontal Line (Prob. 13) indefinite.

Bisect the Angle VEY, by the Line EL, L is the Vanishing Point of a Diagonal.

Find

Find F, the Distance of the Vanishing Point Y (Prob. 12) and, because the Distance of V cannot be in the Picture, take VG three fourths of VE (or any other Part, at discretion.)

Take AB three fourths of AB, No. 1, which bisect at *c*, and take all the other measures, at *a*, *b*, &c. on that Side, each three fourths of the real measures on AB (No. 1) but, on the other, take *d*, *e*, *f*, &c. the full measures.

From all which Points, draw Lines to F and G, respectively, as in the Figure; cutting AV, and AY, at *g*, *h*, *i*, &c. from which, draw Lines to both Vanishing Points, V and Y, indefinite.

Take A 1, and A 2, equal Ff, &c. (No. 1) and draw 1 F, 2 F, cutting AY; from which Points draw Lines to V, cutting the Lines from *g*, *h*, &c. to Y, at *n*, *o*, *p*; and from *j*, where 1 V, 2 V, cut the Diagonal AL, draw Lines to Y, cutting *k* V, &c. at *r*, *s*, *t*; through which Points, on both Sides, draw the Curves of the Abacus.

At the Corner A, describe an Equilateral Triangle (*x*) perspectively, and the same at each Corner, B and C; which are the mitre Angles of the Moulding, as at A and B. (No. 1.)

This operation done, draw a V, and a V' indefinite, to which draw Perpendiculars from *g*, *h*, *i*, *k*, &c. also, from *r*, *s*, *t*, &c. and draw *k* V, &c. cutting them at *r*, *s*, *t*; through which Points, the Curve *b n o p q* may be described.

The corresponding Letters, on the other Side, shew the Operation the same.

N. B. The Operation above would have done here, if the other be not absolutely necessary; on account of its being near the Vanishing Line.

After the same manner, the Abacus may be compleated; i. e. by projecting the Curves of the Fillet, in the middle; and also, the bottom Line, in their respective Planes.

The places of the Leaves are obtained by describing an Ellipsis in a Square, inclined to the Picture, as the Abacus.

This may also be done above, at *v*, *u*, *x*, *y*, *z*. The Diagonals and the two Diameters, whose Originals are perpendicular to the Fronts, give the middle of each Leaf, in the first Row; and they also give the widths of the upper Leaves, between each, allowing a little space between them.

The Heads of the Leaves may also be obtained, by describing the representation of a larger Circle, concentric with the other.

Their Profiles and projectures, are represented at X: with the Front of one Leaf, over the Plan, at Z.

Describe two Ellipses, *c e f* and *g h i*, giving the greatest projecture of the Leaves, in their true places; their heights above the Astragal, *FG*, are taken, from the Profiles, at X, to the greatest projecture of the Heads at *a* and *b*; which projectures, *a c*, and *b d*, respectively, are added to the Diameter of the Column at the Astragal, for the Diameters of those Circles, represented by the Ellipses *c f* and *g i*.

Those Ellipses being obtained, in their true places, the representative Diameters of the upper one, give the true middle of each head of a Leaf; the lower Row falls between them; as may be seen in the Plan above.

The Volutes, at the Corners of the Abacus, are, except in dimensions, the same as the Ionic, and must be obtained the same, by perspective Plans, at *x*, *y*, *z*.

How they fall into the Caulicula, with the other decorative parts of the Capital, the Figure only can describe; for, I fairly own that it is not in words to describe it, so as to be of any Service in delineating. Being well acquainted with the several parts of the Capital, the Rules I have given are sufficient; the rest is best described by a careful perusal of the Figure.

Those who are not versed in it, would do well to draw from a real Capital, first, in all positions; after which, they will be enabled to delineate it by Rule.

SECTION IX.

Shews the application of the whole, to entire Buildings and regular pieces of Architecture.

IN this Section, I shall apply the whole of what has been already done to complex Objects, and particularly to Architecture; as being, of all other, the fittest Subject, and gives the greatest Lustre to Perspective; on account of the regular disposition, and arrangement of the several parts of a Building, and being composed, chiefly, of plane Surfaces, which generate Right Lines.

It is, to me, surprizing, that Artists, in general, have no better notions of Perspective; if they would give themselves time to think about it, seriously, they could not commit such palpable mistakes and gross absurdities; even suppose they were not acquainted with the Rules, having a true Idea of the meaning and intent of Perspective; which cannot but be obtained, from the Apparatus.

Whatever we are about to delineate, it is supposed that the Object, itself, is on the other Side of the Picture, generally (it may be on this Side.) Is it not then rational to consider, and thence to conclude, that the Picture we are delineating should be directly between the Eye and the Object; or what reason can possibly be assigned that it should not? and yet, it is, almost generally the Case. Some, not considering it properly, would tell us, that it is in order to see the End or Side of an Object, as well as the Front; as if that could not be effected otherwise; true, it cannot, on their Hypothesis, that one Side must necessarily be parallel to the Picture.

I shall illustrate the whole of this matter in few words.

Figure 106 exhibits the Plan and Elevation of a plain Building geometrical, which is to be delineated; nearly the same as the Object, BFIL, in the Apparatus; in the same Position, and at the same Distance, nearly, by a Scale of one to two, or half the Proportion.

In the first place, I shall shew how to determine the true Position of the Picture, the Station being previously determined.

Let S be the Station fixed on, from which it is intended to delineate the Building; X is the geometrical Elevation of the Front, Z is the Plan, or Seat of the Building on the Ground; in the Position, and at the Distance, the Building is to be represented, as seen from the Station S.

The Station, and consequently the Point of View being determined, it is evident, that the Building cannot vary in its appearance at that Station; but, it is nevertheless manifest, that there may be a great variety of Pictures, or Representations of the Object; seeing that, every different Position of the Picture, or Section of the Pyramid of Rays (forming a solid Angle, under which the Object is supposed to be seen) will produce a different Picture. All which, Representations, will affect the Eye alike, in the true Point of View; nor is it possible it should be otherwise, seeing that, when the Eye is in the true Point of View, every Point or Line, on the Picture, is seen under the same plane Angle, and consequently, the whole Representation under the same solid Angle, as the Original.

Hence, it is easy to account for the many distorted and preposterous Representations which are frequently to be seen; and which, is mostly owing to the absurd Position of the Picture, in respect of the Object and of the Eye; or frequently to the Distance of the Object, itself; a Circumstance which ought to be particularly considered; for, if it be too near, it is impossible, in such Case, to produce an agreeable Picture.

Then, since every different Section of the Pyramid of Rays produces a different Picture (for all parallel Sections produce similar Representations†) certainly, that Section which is perpendicular to the Axe of the Eye, or the Station Line, SL, will be the most natural and agreeable Representation; seeing that, the parts of the Representation will differ but very little (if the Optic Angle ASC be not large) from the true Appearance, i. e. from a Section made by the Surface of a Sphere, of which S is the Center.

Consequently,

† 1. 8. El.

Consequently, then, if the Station be fixed, from which it is determined to delineate an Object, the Position of the Picture is also determined, as follows.

ABC is the place of the Object, its Seat on the Ground Plane; and S is the Station determined on. Draw the Right Lines AS and CS, which determine the Optic Angle of the Object, ASC; for, S may as well be the Eye, and AS, CS Visual Rays, the Eye being perpendicularly over S.

Bisect the Angle ASC, by the Right Line SL; SL is the Station Line for that Object; to which, the Picture must (if placed properly) be perpendicular; and all such Sections are similar Representations.

VY, perpendicular to SL, is the true Position for a Picture of that Object, delineated from the Station S; and if Right Lines are drawn, from S, to the several parts of the Plan, as a, b, c, &c. their Sections with the Picture, a, b, c, &c. determine the apparent widths of each Part on the Picture, perhaps with greater accuracy than by any other means.

Here the Picture is supposed close to the nearest Angle of the Object, at B; and consequently, the perspective Section of the Rays, by VY, is the largest that can be made on this Side the Object. Now if an Ark, ABC, be drawn on the Center S (Radius SB*) it is obvious that the Section of the Rays by that Ark (or a Sphere of that Radius) differs but little from the Section by the Plane, on VY; because the Optic Angle, ASC, is but small, and therefore the extreme Rays, AS and CS, cut the Plane not very oblique; which, being increased, occasions Distortion.

SV parallel to AB, and SY to BC, determine the Vanishing Points of those Sides of the Building. 1, 2, 3, &c. may be considered as Intersecting Points of several Lines in the Object.

Having thus determined the true Position of the Picture from the Station S, answering to the Picture, MNOP, in the Apparatus; which is directly between the Eye and the Object; I shall, next, shew the great absurdity of placing it otherwise.

Let every thing remain in the same Position; S is the determined Station for the same Object; and consequently it must appear the same, whatever Position the Picture is supposed to have, in respect of the Object. But let it be observed, that the Representation may again, differ very widely.

It is usual with all (who know a little of common Perspective only) to make one Face of the Object parallel to the Picture, in which Case (the Object being right angled) the Center of the Picture, is necessarily, the Vanishing Point of the horizontal Lines in the other Side†. Consequently, if a Side of the Object be seen, the Picture, must necessarily be obliquely situated, in respect of the Object and the Eye.

Now, can any Person conceive it rational or eligible, to place the Picture in the Position of ED, parallel to the End of the Building, to be seen from the Station S; and yet, this is the very supposition, in the Representation exhibited by Fig. 107; whose Center is C, and Distance CE (equal twice SE, 106) which Position answers to the Picture MNOP, in the Apparatus.

How egregiously absurd is the Idea of viewing a Picture in that Position; and yet, in any other Point of View it cannot appear like the Object represented. The Distortion of the Front of the Building is obvious, but much more so, is the Face X, of the Bow Window; whilst the other (Z) is geometrical, as well as the end of the Building.

The Position being determined, and the Center (C) fixed; and also, the Intersection BG, of the Front Plane (its distance from the Center, equal twice EF, 106) the Representation is delineated by Prob. 19; as by Ex. 1 and 2; in which Case, C, the Center of the Picture, is the only Vanishing Point.

Now,

* BS perpendicular to the Picture does not necessarily fall on the Angle B; in the Apparatus it is somewhat on the Right hand; for, if the Station was ever so little on either Side it would fall differently, as it must be obvious from the method given of determining it.

† See Theorem 6th, and the remark after it.

Fig. 107.

Pl. XXIII. Now, those Artists, who make a kind of necessity of delineating their Objects, after this method, cannot, I conceive, give a reason, why the Picture ought not to be placed parallel to the Front, AB, as well as the End, BC; excepting, that they rather choose the one to be parallel than the other; for, there is as much propriety in one, as in the other, but the Representation will be much more distorted; because the Distance, SG, of the Picture standing on AG, is less than SE in the former; and the much greater length of the Front, AB, occasions a greater obliquity of the Rays, with that Picture. For, SG being the Direct Radial of that Picture, ASG is but half the Optic Angle under which it is seen; for it is manifest, that the Eye can take in as much on the Right; in which Case the whole Angle will be very obtuse.

C A S E T H E S E C O N D.

Fig. 108. Fig. 108 Exhibits a Representation of the same Object and from the same Station, in that Position, of the Picture; in which, the Front is geometrical; but the projectures of the Cornice, Steps, &c. are dragged out preposterously; and the Face X, of the Bow Window, is worse distorted than before.

C is the Center of the Picture, and CE its Distance, equal to twice SG (106) The whole of the Object ought by no means to exceed the Point E; whereas it extends above twice CE, which is preposterous.

KL is the Vertical Line; and the Angles, CEK, CEL, being made each equal to the Inclination of the Roof, determine the Vanishing Points of the Lines FG, and FD in the Roof; K is also the Vanishing Point of HI parallel to FG; the rest is determined as the former.

In both these Pictures, the horizontal Lines, in the Face, X, of the Bow Window, vanish in the Point of Distance, in the Horizontal Line; equal CE, on the other Side of C, because the Figure of it is a regular Octagon. (See Prob. 25.)

C A S E T H E T H I R D. E X A M P L E XXXIII.

Fig. 109. Fig. 109 Exhibits a true and natural Representation of the same Object from the same Station, in the most judicious position of the Picture; and, in order to shew the affinity between this and the Picture MNOP, in the Apparatus, I have made use of the same Letters for Reference, where they can be properly applied.

VY is the Horizontal Line, and C the Center of the Picture.

† Th. 9. Draw CE perpendicular to VY, and equal to the Distance (equal twice SB, 106) and make the Angles CEV, CEY equal, respectively, to the Angles BSV, BSY (106) or, make CV equal twice BV, and CY twice BY; V and Y are the Vanishing Points of horizontal Lines in the Side and End of the Building†.

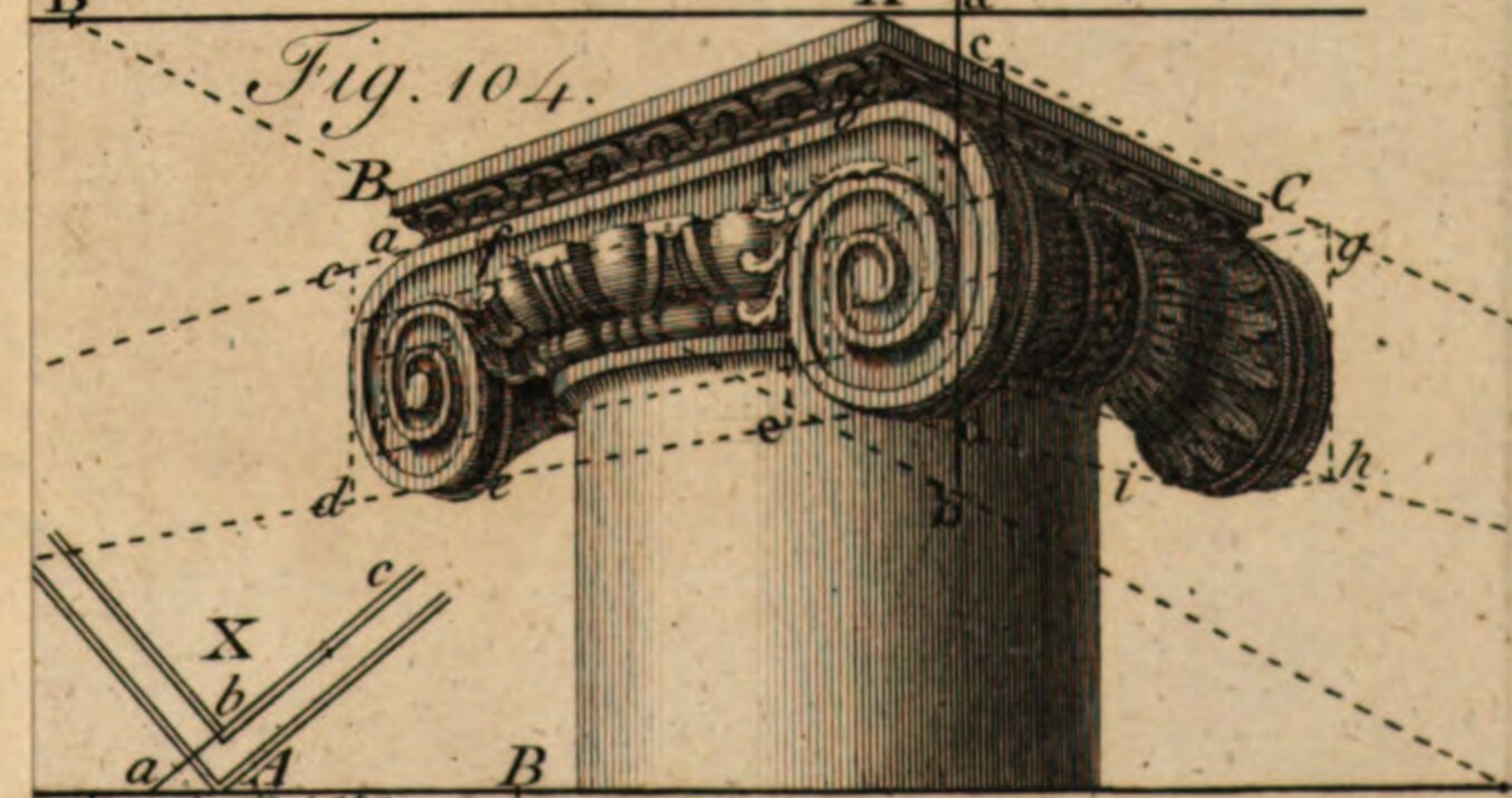
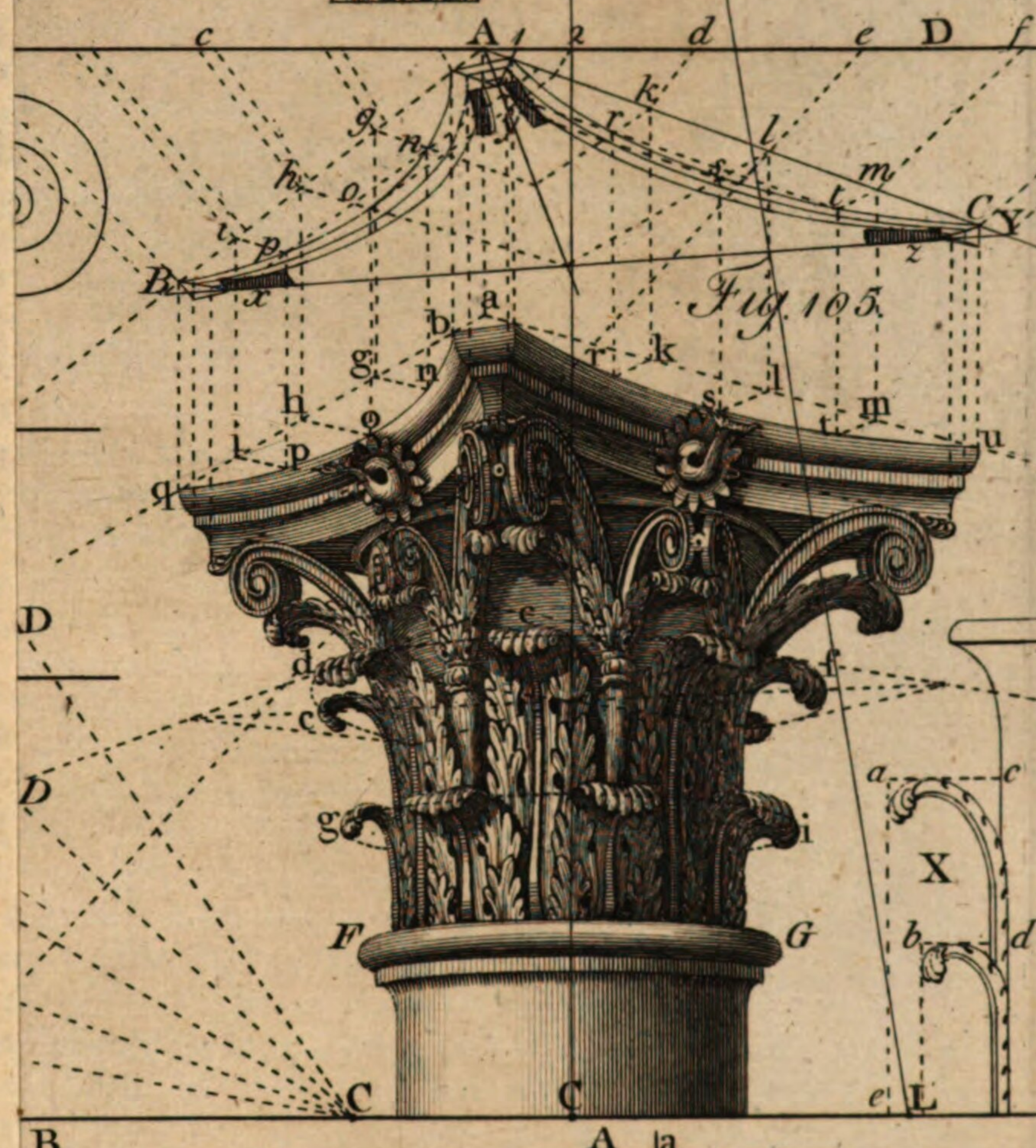
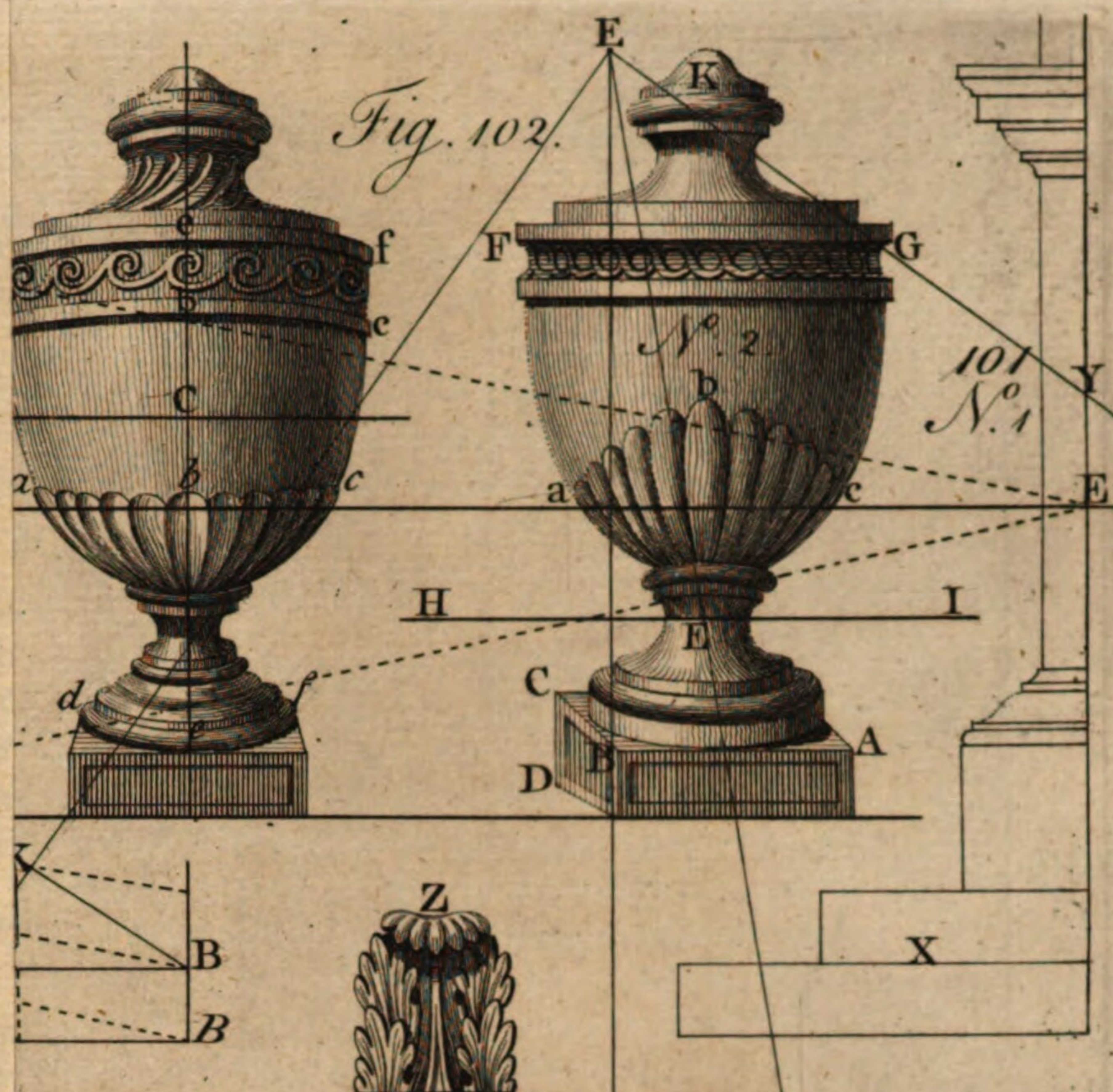
Then, because the Angle B touches the Picture, BG is the Intersection of both Planes (in the Apparatus, the Object being at some Distance from the Picture, each Plane has a separate Intersection, BG and BG) on which all the measures, of the heights of the Windows, &c. are set off, geometrically (as in the Elevation, X, 106; each being double) as Bm, mn, &c. from which draw Lines to both Vanishing Points, V and Y, indefinite.

Make VE equal to VE, and YE 2 equal YE. From B, set off Ba, a b, &c. as in the Plan (106) and draw aE, bE, &c. cutting BV and aV, in the Points a, b, &c. the perspective proportions of the Windows, or Steps; from which, draw Perpendiculars, cutting Lines drawn from the several heights, on BG to V, in the Representations of the Windows, &c. AB is the length of the Front, which gives BA its perspective length.

Or, if B1, 2, 3, &c. be set off, as from B to V (106) from which, Lines drawn to Y determine the same Points; on BV, or aV.

By which means, they are projected in the Apparatus, viz. by the Intersecting Points; and the Steps by the same, which may be finished by Example the 13th. Or, the place of each may be taken, from VY, 106, where the Lines, AS, &c. cut the Picture; which for the Face, X and Z, of the Bow Window, will be the readiest; observing to take them double, because it is but half the Scale of Proportion.

Otherwise,



Otherwise; the Bow Window may be projected, by Example 5th, observing the difference in Figure; and, being too near the Vanishing Line, another Intersection may be taken, at pleasure, at a sufficient Distance (Ex. 12.) as it has been exemplified in various Cases.

The Cornice, being plain, is managed by Ex. the 18th, and the Pediment, by the 20th. The Vanishing Points are determined by making the Angle YE^2W equal to the inclination of the Pediment; cutting the Vanishing Line YW , of the Plane of the End, at W ; the other will fall as much below the Horizon.

W is therefore the Vanishing Point of GF and HI (as in the Apparatus) and FD tends down to the other, in WY produced.

The semicircular Window, and the Circle in the Pediment, are determined on BY , in respect of their widths; the heights on BG ; as the Arches in Ex. 21, Sect. 7; for, the Plane being inclined to the Picture, they are consequently Ellipses; as also in the former Position; in the other they are Circles. (Theo. 10, Cor. 5.)

Thus, are delineated three different Pictures, or Representations of the same Object, from the same Station and Point of View; and, notwithstanding they are so very different, yet they are all true Perspective. It is obvious, which is the nearest to the true Appearance, but, when the Eye is in the Point of View, of each, they will appear the same.

In Fig. 107; let the Eye be placed opposite to the Center, at C , at the Distance CE ; and having attentively observed the Appearance, then let the Eye be moved to 108, viewing it, at its proper Distance, CE ; and lastly, to 109, at its respective Distance. I say, that, each being seen in the true Point of View, exactly (which can only be done perfectly, by fixing a small Pin hole at the true place of the Eye) every Part of each being seen under the same Angle as the Original, must necessarily appear the same.

Now, because the Eye is perpendicularly on the Picture, at 109, and at the proper Distance, the Angle it subtends is equal to ASC (106) and, because the Angle does not exceed 25 Degrees, the portion of a Sphere, of that Radius, will not differ much from the Plane of the Picture; and consequently, this Representation is the nearest to the true Appearance.

This Lesson, properly digested, will give the Student a clear Idea, of the Cause of distortion, in the Representation, and teach him how to avoid it; for notwithstanding the Distance may be sufficient for the Object (the Picture being judiciously placed) yet if the Picture be placed according to the two first, it must necessarily be distorted. Although the real Optic Angle, respecting that single Object, is not varied; yet the Angle under which the Representation is seen, may be varied and increased infinitely, from 25 Degrees to any quantity, less than 180, two Right Angles.

I shall, in this Place, take occasion to display the whole Theory, and shew the immediate and absolute dependance of the Practice on the Theory.

Observe, that No. 15 also refers to the Apparatus.

In Theorem the 1st. it is asserted, and proved, that the Representation of every Right Line, in Perspective, is a Right Line.

Any two Visual Rays, EF , EI , or EF , ED , together with the Original Line, form a Triangle, which are all in the same Plane, passing through the Original Line and the Eye; which, by its Intersection with the Picture, generates the Right Line fi , or fd , its Representation; and if the Original Line was extended, infinitely, its representation will still be a Right Line. (1. 7. El.)

The second Theorem is exemplified in the Picture $MNOP$, which is parallel to the Plane $BGFDC$. This is applied to Practice, by the 10th Theorem.

The third demonstrates, that the Vanishing Line, and Parallel of the Eye, &c. are always parallel to the Intersection of the Original Plane.

This has been exemplified, throughout the whole; but as it has been chiefly in horizontal and vertical Planes, I shall illustrate it generally.

Fig. 15, No. 2 and 3, illustrates the Theory for all Planes perpendicular to the Picture; or inclined in a certain Position, respecting the Horizon and the Picture; and if a Plane passes through the Spectator's Eye (at E) parallel to the Original Plane $HIFG$, its Vanishing Line, VW , is parallel to the Intersection, FH . (8. 7. El.)

Fig. 15.

The great use of this knowledge is obvious, for, if either be determined or found, as FH , and any one Point, as V (the Vanishing Point of AB , &c.) the Vanishing Line, VW , is determined; and consequently, the Parallel of the Eye is also determined, its Distance being known.

Theorem 4th. A Line drawn through the Center of the Picture and the Center of a Vanishing Line is perpendicular to the Vanishing Line.

The use of this Theorem is to find the Center and Distance of every Vanishing Line, the Center of the Picture being determined, and Distance known.

To do which, there is only to draw a Perpendicular, as CS (109) from the Center of the Picture, to the Vanishing Line; and, forming a Right angled Triangle, of the Direct Radial, or Distance of the Picture, CE , and the Distance between the two Centers; the Hypothenuse is the Distance of the Vanishing Line. Def. 20.

Theorem 5th has been frequently exemplified, and bespeaks its use and application sufficiently; particularly in Example 12. The Corollaries deduced from it, especially the first, is derived from the second general Theorem, Book the first.

The 6th is a generally useful Theorem; because in Practice, especially in common Perspective, more Planes are perpendicular to the Picture than in any other Position. The Horizontal Line, the Vanishing Line of the Ground, and all other horizontal Planes; also the Vertical Line, of all which are perpendicular to the Picture and to the Horizon; both pass through the Center of the Picture.

The Plane $HIFG$ is perpendicular to the Picture $MNOP$; its Vanishing Line, CV , also, passes through the Center, C , of that Picture.

The 7th; that Planes, whose common Intersection is parallel to the Picture, have parallel Intersections and Vanishing Lines, is exemplified in the Apparatus.

The Line BG , in the Object, is parallel to both Pictures, and it is the common Intersection of the two Planes, $AHGB$ and BFC .

If those Planes are produced they will cut the Picture in BG and BG ; which are their Intersections; the Planes being vertical and the Picture vertical, their Intersections are vertical and consequently parallel. For the same reason, their Vanishing Lines, OP and RW , are parallel; and because they are parallel to their Intersections, respectively, by Theo. 3rd.

The use of this knowledge is evident; having obtained, by any means, one Intersection or Vanishing Line; and also, by any means, the Intersecting or Vanishing Point of a Line in any other Plane (whose common Section, with it, is parallel to the Picture) the whole Intersection or Vanishing is consequently determined.

In the last Example the common Intersection (BG) of the contiguous Planes is in the Picture; consequently, it is the Intersection of both.

By the 8th Theorem, Vanishing Lines, of contiguous Faces of Objects, are determined according to the Inclination of the Original Planes, to one another.

In the last Example they were at right angles; but, being inclined in any Angle whatever, their Vanishing Planes being parallel to them, consequently they make the same Angle with each other, at the Eye; and their common Intersection, which passes through the Eye, is parallel to the Intersection of the Originals; and consequently, when it is not parallel to the Picture, produces its Vanishing Point (Def. 22) which, Vanishing Point, is the Intersection of the Vanishing Lines.

How the Vanishing Lines are found, in particular Cases, is determined by Fig. 15, No. 2 and 3; viz. when the common Intersection is either parallel or perpendicular to the Picture. When it is perpendicular by Problem the first; and when parallel, by the third; and, when it is inclined to the Picture, in general, by the fifth. In all which Cases, it is observable that the Intersection of the Vanishing Lines, is the Vanishing Point, and the Intersection, of the Intersecting Lines, is the Intersecting Point, of the common Intersection of the Original Planes; which is an essential thing to be well understood; for Practice.

Theorem 9th is of the greatest use; insomuch that, without it, we cannot draw the representation of one Line, inclined to the Picture, except by means of expedients; making use of Lines, otherwise, unnecessary in themselves.

Notwithstanding this is the 9th Theorem; yet its application is prior to several others, respecting Vanishing Lines; seeing by its means, only, they can be determined; as in Prob. 2. It being impossible to determine any one Vanishing Line, before the Vanishing Point of some Line in the Plane be determined, through which the Vanishing Line must necessarily pass.

For first, the Center of the Picture must be determined, before the horizontal and vertical Vanishing Lines can be drawn; or that of any other Plane, perpendicular to the Picture; or indeed of any other whatever; because it is by means of Lines; in horizontal Planes, others are determined; whose Vanishing Line is always determinable from its known Position, the Center of the Picture being fixed; or which is the same thing, the height of the Eye being determined. Notwithstanding the Center of the Picture (being the Vanishing Point of Lines perpendicular to the Picture) is fixed arbitrarily, yet it is as much subject to the 9th Theorem as any other; and is only determinable from the fixed and invariable Position of the Lines, which vanish in it, to the Picture.

As this Theorem has been applied in almost every Example, or Problem, where Vanishing Points of Lines, inclined to the Picture, are required; I shall only illustrate it by an Example or two, from the Apparatus.

The Parallel of the Eye must be imagined, passing through the Eye of the Spectator parallel to the Vanishing Line. Def. 9.

For the parallel Picture; EC cuts them both perpendicularly; therefore it makes equal Angles (i. e. Right Angles, with the Parallel of the Eye and the Horizontal Line; as the Original Lines, AB, HG, &c. make with the Intersection of a horizontal Plane passing through them; or any other, whatever.

In the direct Picture; EV, producing the Vanishing Point of the same Lines, also makes equal Angles with the Parallel of the Eye and the Vanishing Line, of either Plane, AHGB, or FGHI, as the Original Lines, make with the Intersection.

And lastly; EW, makes equal Angles with the Parallel of the Eye of the Plane FGHI, and the Vanishing Line, VW, of that Plane, as FG, or HI, makes with FH, the Intersection of that Plane with the Picture. Or, with WY, of the Plane BFC, as FG makes with BG, its Intersection.

This is practically exemplified, in Problems 5, 21, Method 3; 23rd, &c.

The 10th Theorem contains the whole Practice, relative to Planes which are parallel to the Picture.

First; all Lines in such Planes, are parallel to the Picture; consequently they have no Vanishing Point (Cor. 1. Th. 2.) but their Representations are (by the 10th) parallel to the Originals; that is, to the Vanishing Line and Intersection of whatever Plane they are in; and their Proportions to the Originals are also there determined; viz. as the Distance of the Picture, to that, of the Plane they are in.

The Corollaries, of this Theorem, are most useful Lessons; which need only to be read over, with attention, to apply them to Practice. The fifth sums up the whole; that the Representation of every Figure, in such Position of the Original Planes, is similar to its Original; that is, it has the same geometrical Figure.

Theorem the 11th is self-evident, being read attentively; and the Corollaries are useful practical Lessons deduced from it, which are fully explicit in themselves.

By Theorem 12th, the Indefinite Representation, of a Right Line, is a Line drawn through its Intersecting and Vanishing Points.

This Theorem has been exemplified frequently; but I shall in this place illustrate it further, it being most essential in Practice.

Whatever Plane any Right Line is in, if it be not parallel to the Picture, it will cut it, somewhere, in the Intersection of the Plane it is in; IF, HG, and FG, are all in one Plane; which being produced, the two first cut both Pictures, at F and G; the other (FG) is parallel to one Picture, and therefore cannot cut it; but it will cut MNOP at H; F, G, and H are, therefore, the Intersecting Points of those Lines; and consequently, the Plane FIHG, being produced, would cut that Picture, in the Line FGH; and the other in FG; as by the 11th.

But,

* But, EV and EW being parallel, respectively, to those Lines, the Points V and W are their Vanishing Points; wherefore, the Lines FV and GV , also HW , are the indefinite Representations of those Lines; by this Theorem.

The same thing is applicable in all Planes whatever; as BV , GV , &c. in the Front and End, which are vertical; and aV , BV , MV , &c. on the Ground Plane.

By changing V for C , it is all applicable to the parallel Picture ($MNOP$) save only, FG is parallel to it, and therefore has no Vanishing Point; for the Indefinite Representations of all Lines, in such Case, are infinite, seeing they have neither Intersecting nor Vanishing Point; and are, consequently, parallel to the Vanishing Line of the Plane they are in.

In Theorem 13th, is contained the whole knowledge of proportioning Right Lines, indefinitely drawn on the Picture (by the 12th.) It may, to some, appear too mathematical for Practice; but, notwithstanding that Theorem is more strictly and rigidly demonstrated than any other, it is nevertheless applicable to practice. For, whether it be considered mathematically or not, 'tis certain that it is put in practice, by every one, in proportioning Lines; even without its ever entering into his Head what Proportion means; on the contrary, if he really understood what is there demonstrated, with how much more pleasure, satisfaction, and certainty, would he proceed in the application of it to Practice.

The Theorem tells us, that the Distance of the Representation of any Point (in the indefinite Representation) from the Intersecting Point (of the Original Line) is in that Proportion to the whole Indefinite Representation; as the Distance, between the Original Point, and the Intersecting Point, is to its Distance from the Directing Point of the same Line.

Now when the Premises of this Theorem are clearly understood (for which purpose, the words are adapted, for brevity and perspicuity, as much as may be) what is there of Mystery in it? For the first, in respect of the Proportion, simply. If the Distance of the Original Point, from its Intersecting Point, be to its Distance from the Directing Point, as 2 to 3, or as 3 to 2; as 3 to 4, 5 to 6, 7, &c. in any Ratio, whatever; then, the Distance, of the Representation of that Point from the Intersecting Point, will be in the same Ratio to the whole Indefinite Representation†.

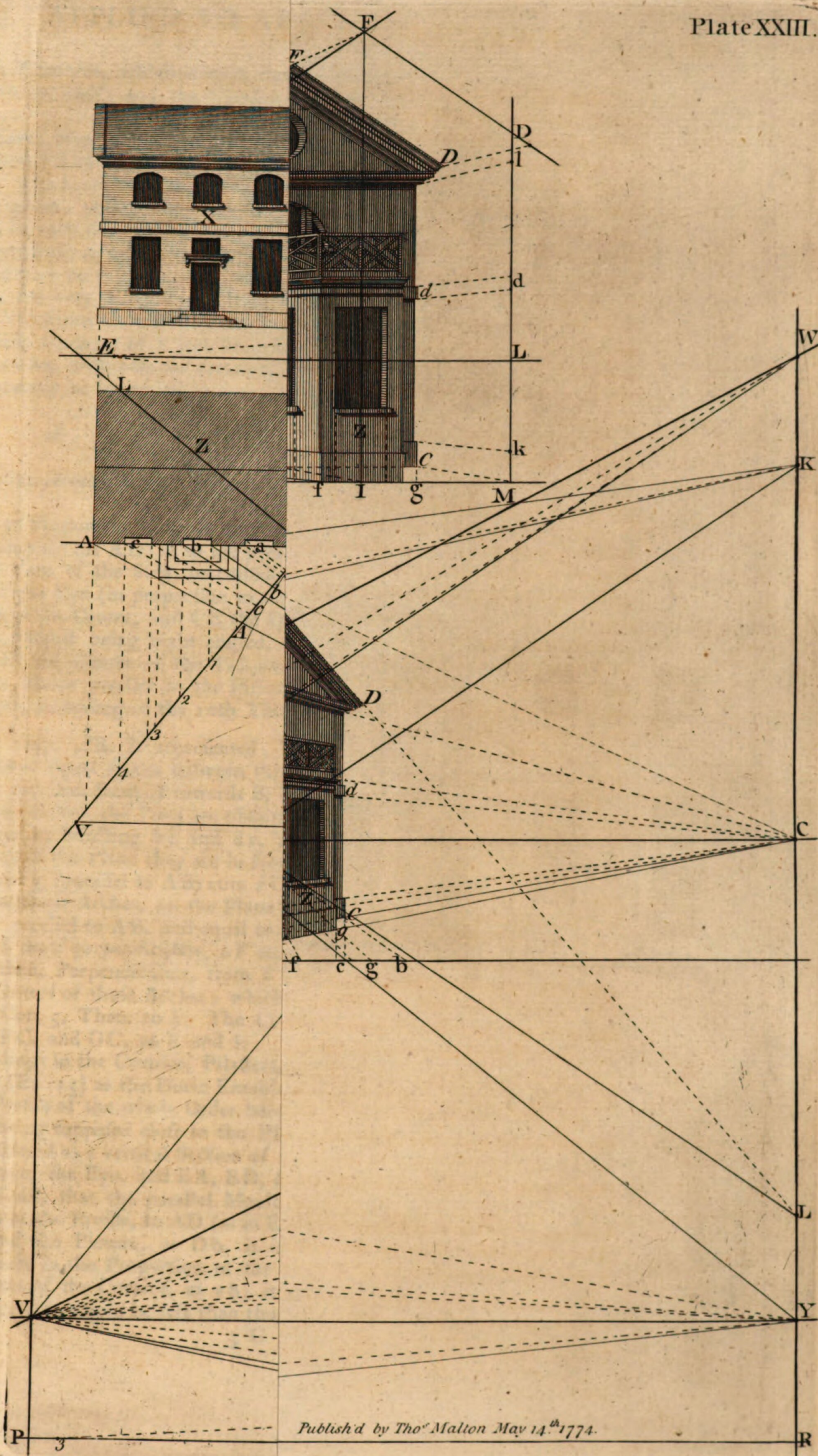
Can any thing be more simple and easy? it does not depend on the real Measures, but on the Ratio of one to the other. Wherefore, since the Distance of some Points, in Original Lines, cannot easily be obtained, from their Intersecting and Directing Points; I have shewn, further (which Dr. Brook Taylor has not) that the Distance of the Original Point, either from the Intersection of the Plane it is in, or from the Picture, is in the same Ratio to its Distance from the Directing Line or Plane, a Circumstance of great utility; because we may, with ease, have the measures of one, when we cannot, without applying Geometry, or by Calculation, have the other. For, the Distance of any Original Point from the Picture may be had; and the Distance of the Directing Plane, from the Picture, is nothing more than the Distance of the Eye from it; hence it is, with the greatest facility imaginable, reduced to Practice, in any Position of the Lines whatever. It is most frequently done by the last; and commonly, by its Distance from the Intersection of the Plane the Original Line and Point are in.

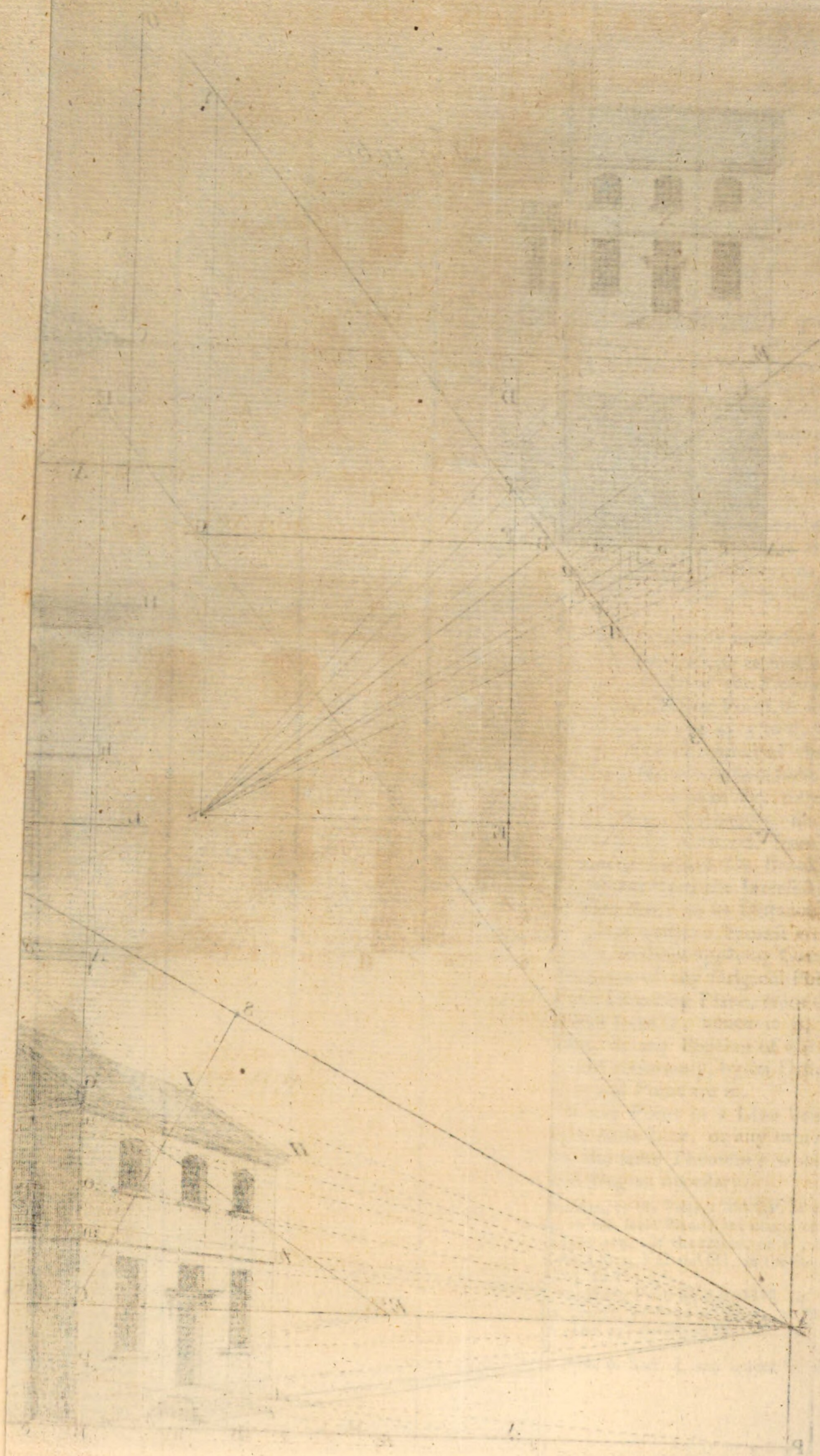
And further; the Representation of any Point in a Line being obtained, the Representation of any other Point in the same Line, or any other, cutting the former in that Point, may be obtained by the same Theorem; when the Intersecting Point cannot be had, nor is in the least Degree necessary.

* Let the triangular Piece be fixed, by the two Pins, to the Picture $MNOP$, of which it is a continuation; and bring the Piece, which folds back, to the same Plane; the continuation of the Vanishing Lines, &c. on them, show their affinity with Figure 109. If the thread, at W , be drawn through the Eye of the Spectator, EW will be parallel to the Lines, FG and HI , in the Roof of the object; and consequently, W is their Vanishing Point. (Def. 22.)

By the same, the thread EV determines the Vanishing Point of AB , GH , &c. on both Pictures; to the first, it is perpendicular; therefore C is its Center, or Point of View; whilst another, EC , perpendicular to the other Picture, gives its Center (Def. 17) directly in the middle of the Representation, as it ought always, where there is but one Object.

† See this fully and practically illustrated in Prob. 6. Sect. 4. and indeed in almost every Problem and Example, throughout the whole Work.





The 14th Theorem, which is more theoretic than practical, or really useful, is fully explicit in itself; and the Corollaries, deduced from it, needs no further Comment.

Thus I have, briefly, taken a transient retrospect of the whole Theory; and I think it cannot fail of answering the End I aimed at, which is most obvious. As the Reader, who has advanced thus far, must now be perfectly acquainted with every Rule given; yet, being eager in his pursuit of what he deemed really and only useful, he may not have given that attention to the Theory (which is frequently referred to) as I could wish, for his more perfect knowledge in it.

He cannot now be insensible of the great advantage resulting from a well-founded Theory, the very Effence of all useful knowledge; for, without it, like a blundering Workman in any mechanic Art, he may continually be running into Error; which, for want of a just knowledge of the Theory, he must, unavoidably; nor can he, with ease and certainty, extricate himself from the Difficulties he will frequently be immerfed in.

E X A M P L E XXXIV.

Is a Tuscan Arcade, with Pilasters; having one Face parallel to the Picture.

The scale of Proportion being determined, and a Profile, of the Order, proportioned to that Scale (at AD) as in the previous Examples, let AB, the Intersection of the upper Face of the Step, be considered as the Ground Line; and, equal to the height of the Eye (in proportion to the Object) let CE be the Horizontal vanishing Line, C its Center, and CE the Distance. Pl. XXIV.
Fig. 110.

Then, the Object being right angled, the horizontal Lines in the returning Side vanish in the Center of the Picture†; in the other Face, every part of it, which are in Planes parallel to the Picture, are represented by Figures similar to their Originals, according to the 10th Theorem.

† Cor. to
Theo. 6.

First, the Step, AB, is represented; then, the Plinths, X, Y, and Z, are equal, and have equal spaces between them; their places are obtained by setting off their true measures from A towards B, as a, b, c, &c. on the first Step; and after the same manner, the Piers are obtained, and the Plane of the Arches, whose Centers are got by bisecting bc and de, at a and b; and ac being made equal to the Distance of the Plane they are in from the Picture. Draw cE, cutting aC at f; and a Line fg (parallel to AB) cuts bC, in g; f and g are the Seats of the Centers of the front Arches, on the Plane of the first Step.

Draw FG parallel to AB, and equal to the height of the foot of the Arches; from a and b draw perpendiculars, aF and bG, and from F and G, draw to the Center, C; then, Perpendiculars, from f and g, cutting FC, and GC, in h and i, give the Centers of those Arches; which, being parallel to the Picture, are Semicircles. (Cor. 5, Theo. 10.) The Centers of the inner Curves, are in the same Lines, FC, and GC, at k and l.

The Mouldings in the Cornice, Pilasters, &c. may be proportioned by the general method (Ex. 15) as the Doric Entablature in the 16th.

The true Profile of the whole Order being described geometrical, at AD, and the Picture being supposed close to the Plinth, at A, draw AD perpendicular; which is considered as a vertical Section of the Picture, and CE its Distance.

Then, E being the Eye, and EA, ED, &c. Visual Rays from every Part to the Eye, it is obvious, that the parallel Mouldings have their places and proportions transferred from the Profile, to AD (as in Ex. 15 and 16) and, because the Cornice projects beyond the Picture, as Db, it is projected to the Picture, at d; the difference is only in the Proportion of the whole; for if the Picture was at the greatest extreme of the Cornice, as ab; it is manifest, that the proportion of all the Mouldings, &c. would be less than those on AD. (See Example 15th.)

3 G The

Pl. XXIV. The returning Face, *AHIK* being perpendicular to the Picture, the Vertical Line
Fig. 110. (*AD*) is the Vanishing Line of all Planes in that Front. (Theo. 5.)

The measures of the Piers, Arches, &c. being set off, at *d*, *e*, &c. are proportioned, by drawing Visual Rays *dE*, *eE*, &c. as in the foregoing Examples; and the Arches, are managed as in the 21st Example (Sect. 8) their Representations are semi-Ellipses; to particularize the whole would be superfluous.

The Mouldings, in all such Cases, viz. when a true Section of them is parallel to the Picture, may be proportioned, by making a geometrical Section of them, at *S*, where the Picture is supposed to cut the returning Mouldings, if they were continued beyond the Picture.

In this Example, the Distance is considerably too little, for taking in so much as is represented; in this position of the Picture. The design, of which, is to shew how distorted the returning Mouldings of the Pilasters, &c. are, beyond the first Arch; which is necessarily the Case in all such Views, being parallel, except a sufficient Distance be taken; in which Case, the returning Front would be greatly contracted. On the contrary, being both inclined, they may be shewn to much greater advantage, at a less Distance, without any sensible distortion; as may be seen in the next Example.

E X A M P L E XXXV.

Is the Representation of a Doric Arcade inclined to the Picture.

Fig. 111. If the Problems and preceding Examples are understood, there is nothing more requisite to the delineation of this Object; the Situation, Distance and Position to the Picture being previously determined.

In Prob. 21, the Rectangle may be considered as the Plan of such an Object, promiscuously situated; or the Plan of the Building in Fig. 106, inclined to the Picture, on *VY*; the foregoing Example supposes the Picture in the Position *DE*; the Representation, of which, is as Fig. 107.

The height of the Eye being determined, and the Center of the Picture (*C*) draw the Horizontal Line; and, at a convenient Distance, take *AB* for the Intersection of the Ground Plane, on which set off the Measures, *a*, *b*, *c*, &c. and, having obtained the Vanishing Points of the Sides (both which are, in this Case, off the Picture) and their Distances, *D* and *E*, being fixed (by Prob. 12) compleat the perspective Plan; as in Ex. 16, of the Doric Entablature.

The direction of the Lines, in the Figure, shew how it is effected; a repetition of it would be trifling and impertinent.

Let the Reader observe, once for all, that, either a true geometrical Plan of the Building, must be drawn out, or its measures known; which are applied to the Ground Line, or other Intersection, as there is found Occasion. The Profile, and measures of Elevation, must also be known; for it must be obvious, that every Object delineated by the Rules of Perspective, are projected by the true and real Proportion of one Part to another, which must be known, or conceived.

The perspective Plan being compleated, or so much as is necessary (for those Parts which cannot be seen, it would be useless to particularize, except for the affinity of those which are) take *A*, at the proper Distance from the Vanishing Line (perpendicular over *A*) equal to the determined height of the Eye; and from it draw indefinite Lines to the Vanishing Points (as *AB*) and, from the Plan below, cut off such portions as are the representations of the several Parts; and proceed as in the foregoing Examples.

Here, the necessity of a Plan being formed, or, which is the same thing, the Lines proportioned, below, by an imaginary intersection, *AB*, is obvious; on account of the great Distance, and the Eye not being far out of the Ground Plane; otherwise, that operation would be unnecessary; for, if the height of the Eye was equal to the Distance of *AB*, from the Vanishing Line, then, the Plan formed, by means of that Intersection, would be the real Base, or Bottom of the Representation, of the Object, and no other would be wanted; in which, the expediency of Ex. 12 is remarkably obvious.

The Step being first drawn, the Sub-Plinths, next, are but so many equal Parallelopipeds of a certain proportion and distance from each other (as in Ex. 4th.) The places and proportions of the Columns are determined from their Plans below, by drawing Perpendiculars from them (or by Ex. 22) the Bases and Capital, being inclined; by Ex. 26; and the Cornice, by Ex. 17, 18 and 19.

The Ballustrade, at the Top, may be planed on the Top of the Cornice, or at some distance from it; the Pedestals, or plane parts, are directly over the Columns, and equal to their Diameters at the Top; and the places of the Ballusters are got by dividing the Line *CD*, perspective (by Prob. 8) into the number of Ballusters and spaces between them (equal or otherwise.) The Plinths, at their Tops, are perpendicular over the Bases; and central Lines (*hi*) being drawn, through each, the Ballusters are easily formed, from the known geometrical figure of them.

The Doric Entablature is described at large in Ex. 16 (but parallel to the Picture) how it may be inclined is shewn in the 18th and 19th Examples.

The Plane of the Arches being obtained, as in the last, the Arches are represented by Ex. 21 (Sect. 8) and the Consoles by 20; the rest, it would be needless to describe, as the previous Lessons contain every necessary Example for complex Objects.

E X A M P L E XXXVI.

Is the Representation of a compleat Building, with a Portico in the Ionic Order; having a circular Dome, and Cupola.

At No. 1 is half the geometrical Plan, and, at No. 2 is the Elevation; in proportion to the Representation, as one to four. Pl. XXV.
Fig. 112.

The Design is intended as an exterior Building, adapted to St. Stephen's, Wallbrook, but of a different Order; having a Front towards the Mansion House.

This Example sums up all the foregoing, in one compleat Building.

The Horizontal Line being drawn, at discretion, and the Center of the Picture fixed, as usual, let *AB* be the Ground Line, and *D* the Place of the nearest Angle of the Building. The Distance of the Picture is 15 Inches.

The Inclination of the Front and End, to the Picture, is determined by the Line *ab* (No. 1) on which the Picture is supposed to stand.

The Distance of the real Ground Line from the Horizontal, being equal to the height of the Eye, which is elevated above the common height, yet is too low to form a correct Perspective Plan, in its true Place; therefore, at any convenient Distance take another Line *AB*, parallel to *AB*, and proceed as in the last Example.

Having laid down the Distance of each Vanishing Point, at *E* and *C*, as usual; take the known measures of the several parts of the Building and apply them on each Side, from the Angle at *D*. Compleat the exterior Plan, *CDEF*, as in the last Example; from which, the several parts of the Building, above, are proportioned; as the perpendicular dotted Lines shew. *F* is the Vanishing Point of Diagonals; i. e. of a Line bisecting the Angle of the Building.

It must be obvious, that any Line (*AB* or *AB*) being considered as the Ground Line, will give the same proportions; which, being properly considered, there is nothing more in it, than a supposition of the Eye being more elevated above the Ground Plane; and consequently it is more seen and better defined.

The exterior Plan being compleated, the Columns are erected and finished as in the last Example; and the Capital, being the antique Ionic, by Ex. 31. The interior part of the Portico has a Pilaster opposite each Column, which are also determined from the Plan, below; some of which are hid behind the Columns; perpendicular Lines from the Plan, shew how much, and where they are seen entire.

The Plane of the Front, of the Pediment, over the Portico, being much inclined to the Picture, its Vanishing Line is very remote; the Distance of the Vanishing Point of horizontal Lines, in that Face, may nevertheless be ascertained, (as *E* and *C*) by Ex. 12, and the Lines drawn by the Expedients, in the 13th.

As

Pl. XXV. As the Distance C, of the Vanishing Point of the horizontal Lines on the left Hand, would fall off the Picture, it is taken half; and consequently, the measures applied on the Intersection or Ground Line (AB, or AB) for that Side, are also, each half of the real measure, agreeable to the 13th Theorem, and Prob. 6 and 7.

The front Pediment is thus determined. If the Cornice projected equal to the Steps, which the Picture is supposed to touch, a Right Line drawn through D, perpendicular to the Ground Line, would be the Intersection of the Plane of the Pediment; but, as its projecture is less, it will fall to the left hand of it; as the Line ab (No. 1) which is a continuation of the front Line of the Cornice, cutting a b , at d , indicates sufficiently.

Or, having determined the perspective Plan of the Cornice, at a , b , c , produce a b , till it cuts the Ground Line at d , and draw de perpendicular, which is the Intersection, of the Plane of the Cornice in the Pediment.

Then, having obtained the front Line of the upper Moulding, as fg , let it be produced to the Intersection de , cutting it at e ; where, set up the height of the Pediment, from e to i , and draw ik , tending to the Vanishing Point (by Prob. 13.)

Bisect fg (perspectively) at h , and draw hl perpendicular, cutting ik , at l , the true pitch, or middle of the Pediment, which may be compleated, by Ex. 20.

The Pediment in the other Front, on the Left hand, may be projected by means of its Vanishing Points, by the same Example.

To this Front is added a Pedestal which is continued around the Building; more for the sake of diversifying the Lesson, than propriety in the Building; the heights of the Pedestal, Window, &c. are proportioned on the Intersection DI, of that Front, at a , b , c , &c.

The Body of the Building being compleated, and the Circle of the Dome planed, below, at GH, perpendicular Lines from the extremes of that Ellipsis, give the extreme apparent edges of the cylindrical part, IK, below the Dome; of which Cylinder, the Ellipsis, on the Ground Plane, may be supposed its Base.

The curve Lines, in the Cornice, around the Dome, are described in their respective Planes; which are thus determined.

From the Vanishing Point on the Left, draw through the Center, S, of the Plan below, cutting the Ground Line at J; which represents a Line passing through the middle of the Plan (No. 1) supposing a Section made by a vertical Plane through the middle of the Building.

Draw JL, perpendicular, the Intersection of such a Plane with the Picture (Prob. 3) on which, all the measures of the heights of the Dome, &c. are applied, in the same Ratio as on de , in the Elevation (No. 2) at M, N, &c. From M, the height of the Cornice, draw a Line parallel to the Ground Line, which is the Intersection of the Plane of the Cornice, with the Picture. A Right Line, drawn from M to the Vanishing Point on the Left, will cut a perpendicular Line from S at f , the Representation of the Center of the Circle of the Cornice.

From C, the Center of the Picture, draw CS, through f ; and through f , draw mn , parallel to the Intersection; make SR and ST each equal to half the Diameter of the extreme Circle of the Cornice; and draw RC and TC, cutting mn , at m and n . mn is a Diameter of the Representation, parallel to the Picture; the whole Circle may be compleated, by Prob. 2, Sect. 8th.

After the same manner all the other Circles, of the Corona, &c. may be projected, in their respective Planes, as the several parallel Circles in parallel Planes, in the 28th and 29th Examples.

The Cornice, &c. being compleated, make NO equal to the height of the Dome, and between N and O take several Divisions a , b , c , &c. answering to the same Ratio on de , in No. 2.

Through these Divisions, parallel Lines being drawn, as rs , each may be considered as the Intersection of a Plane, cutting the Dome (as rs , No. 2) in each of which, an Ellipsis being described, representing a Circle of the true Diameter, made by that Section; a Curve described over all their extremes (as in Ex. 25 and 26) is the true exterior Contour of the Dome; which may be considered as an Ovolo, inverted; as in the Doric Capital.

By

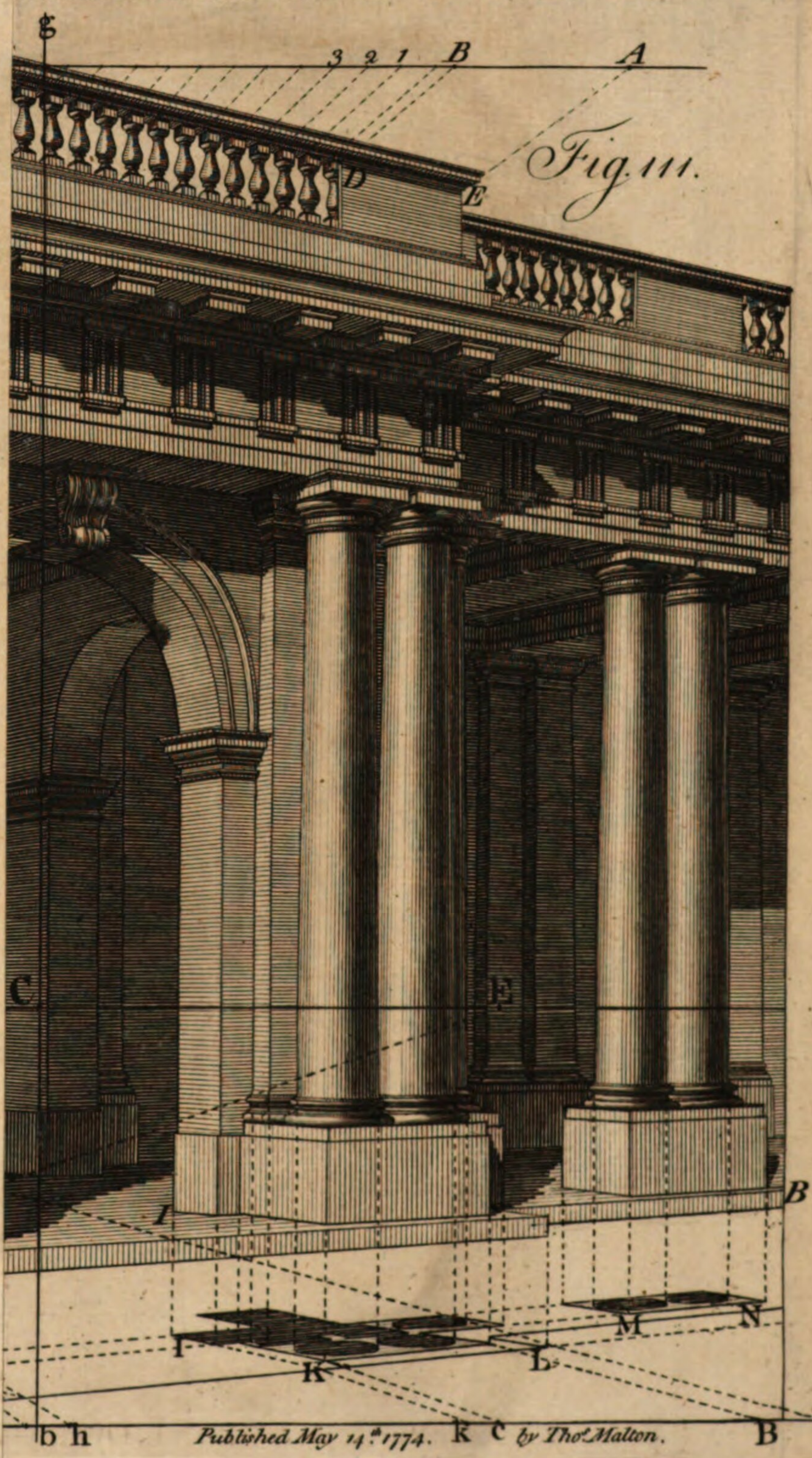
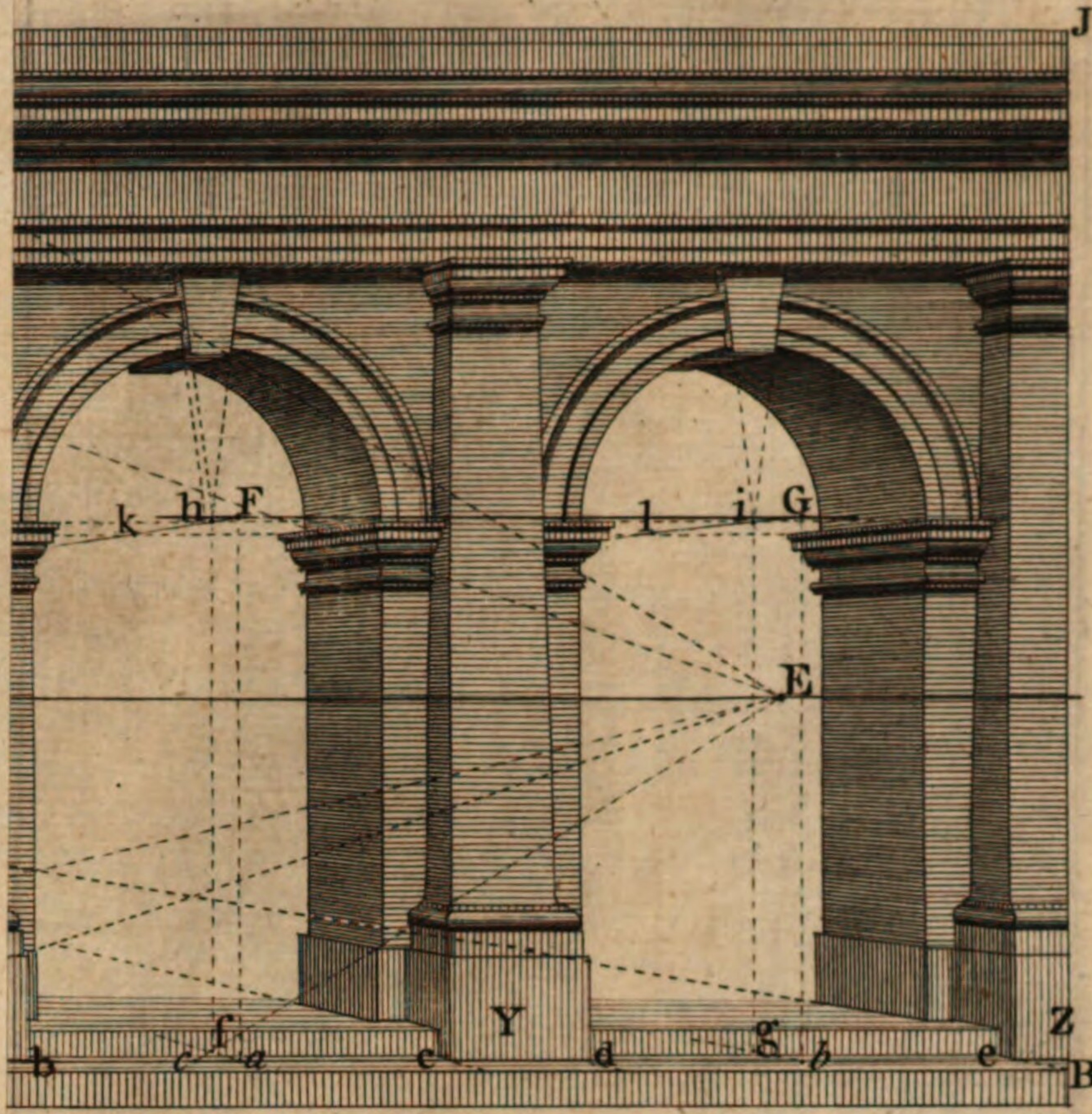
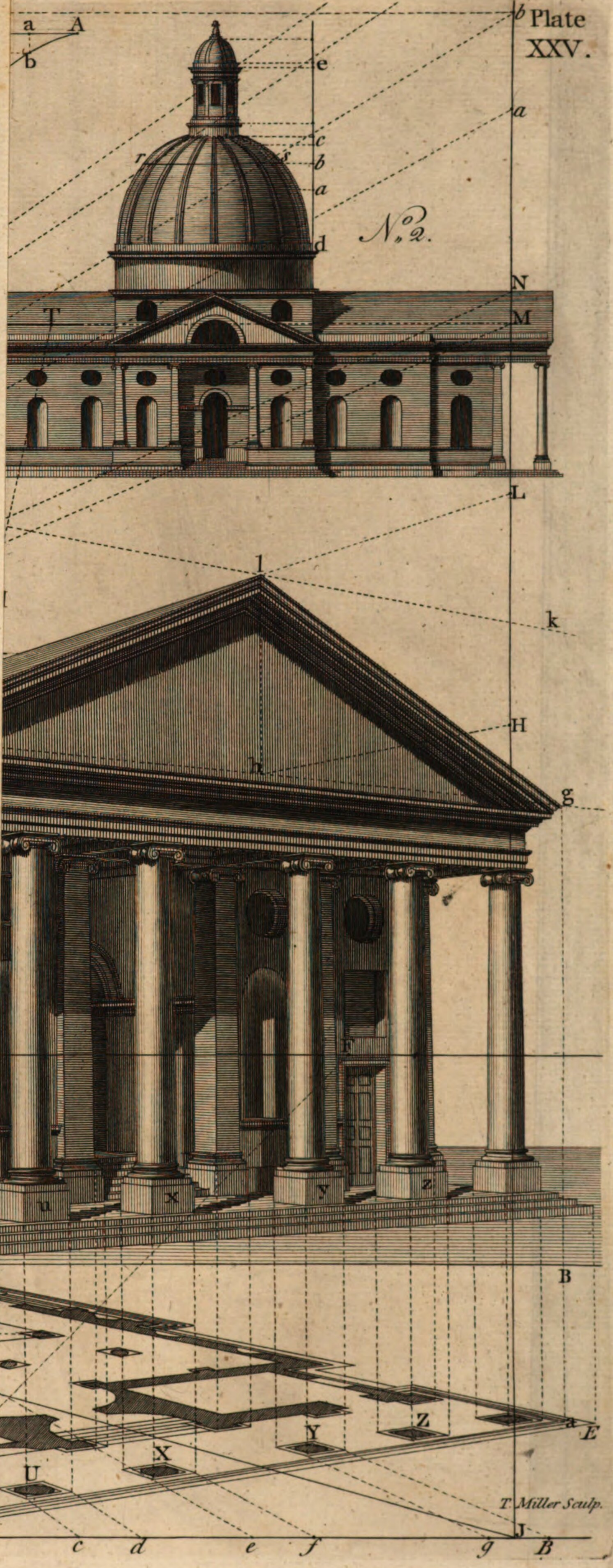
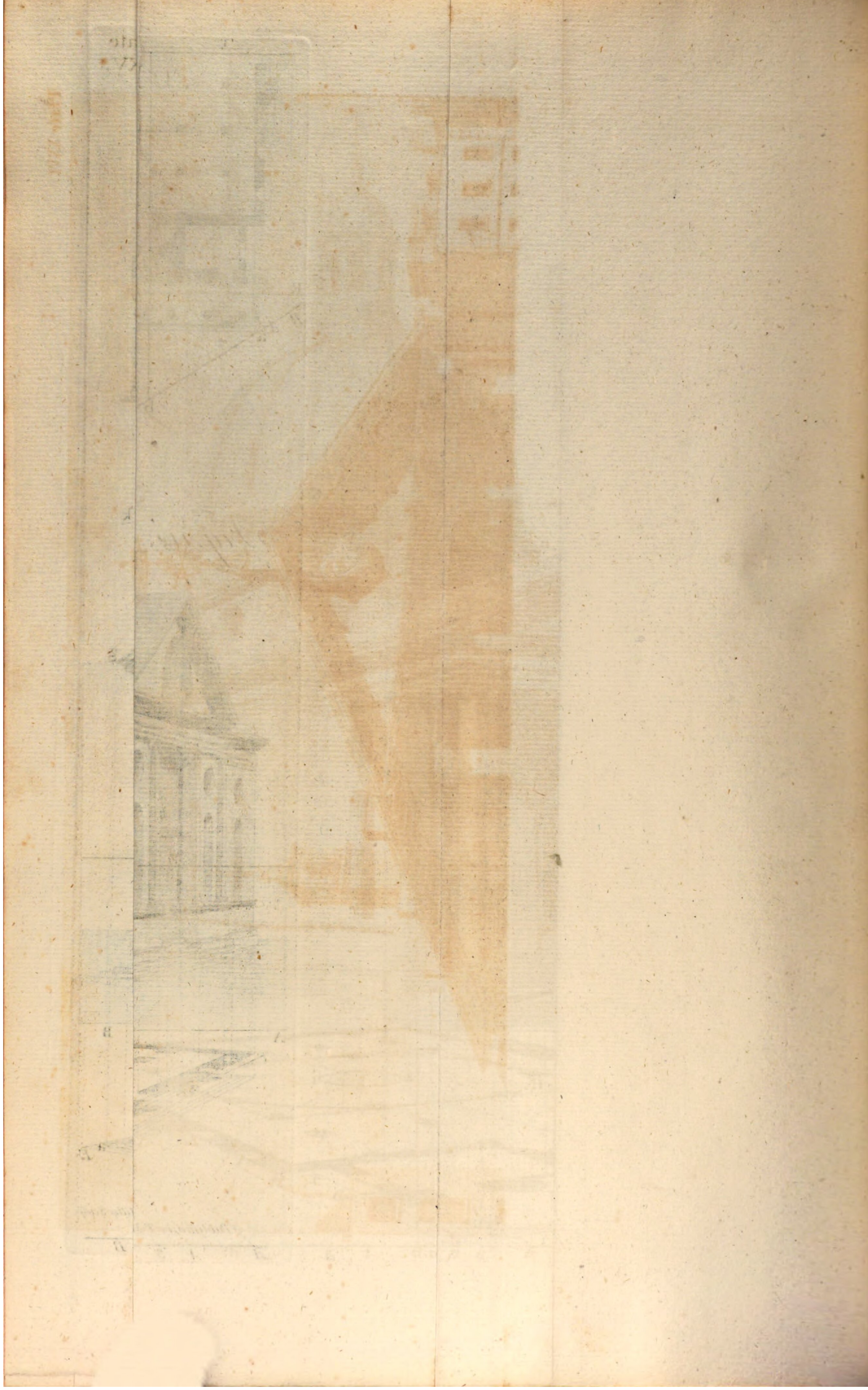
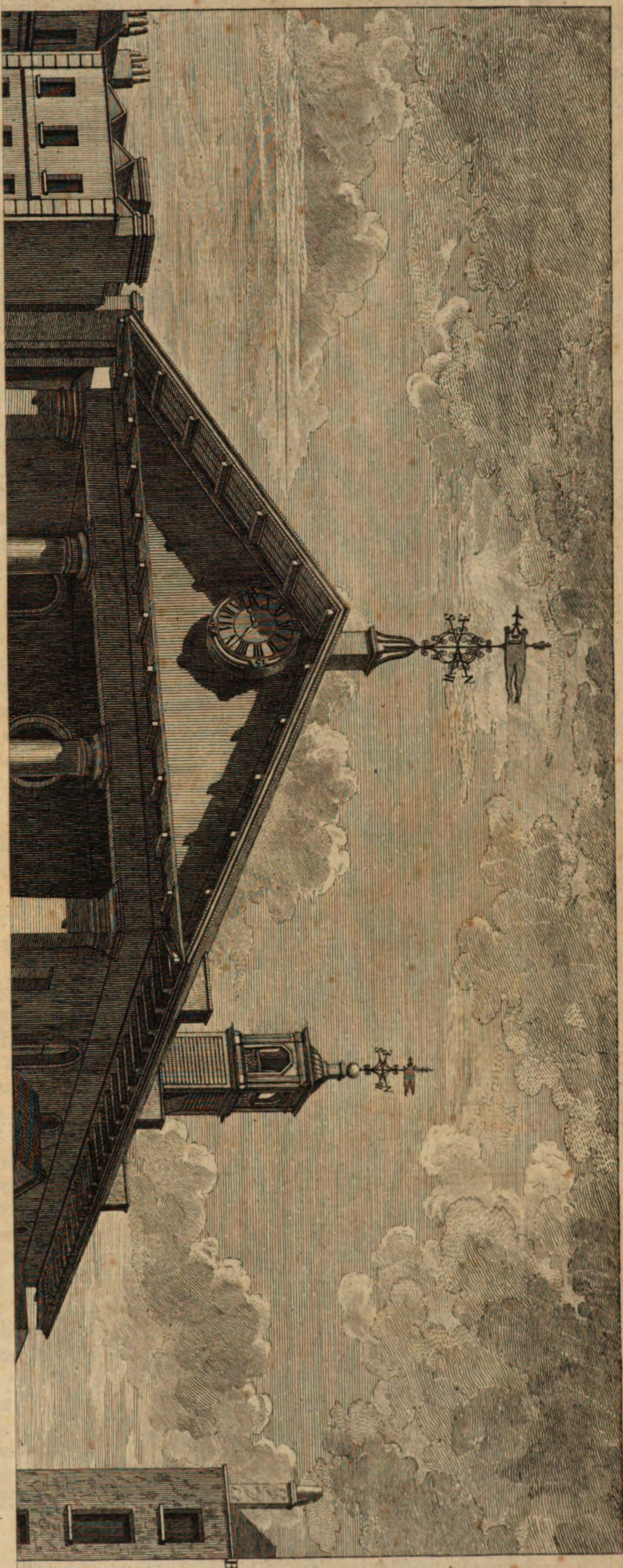


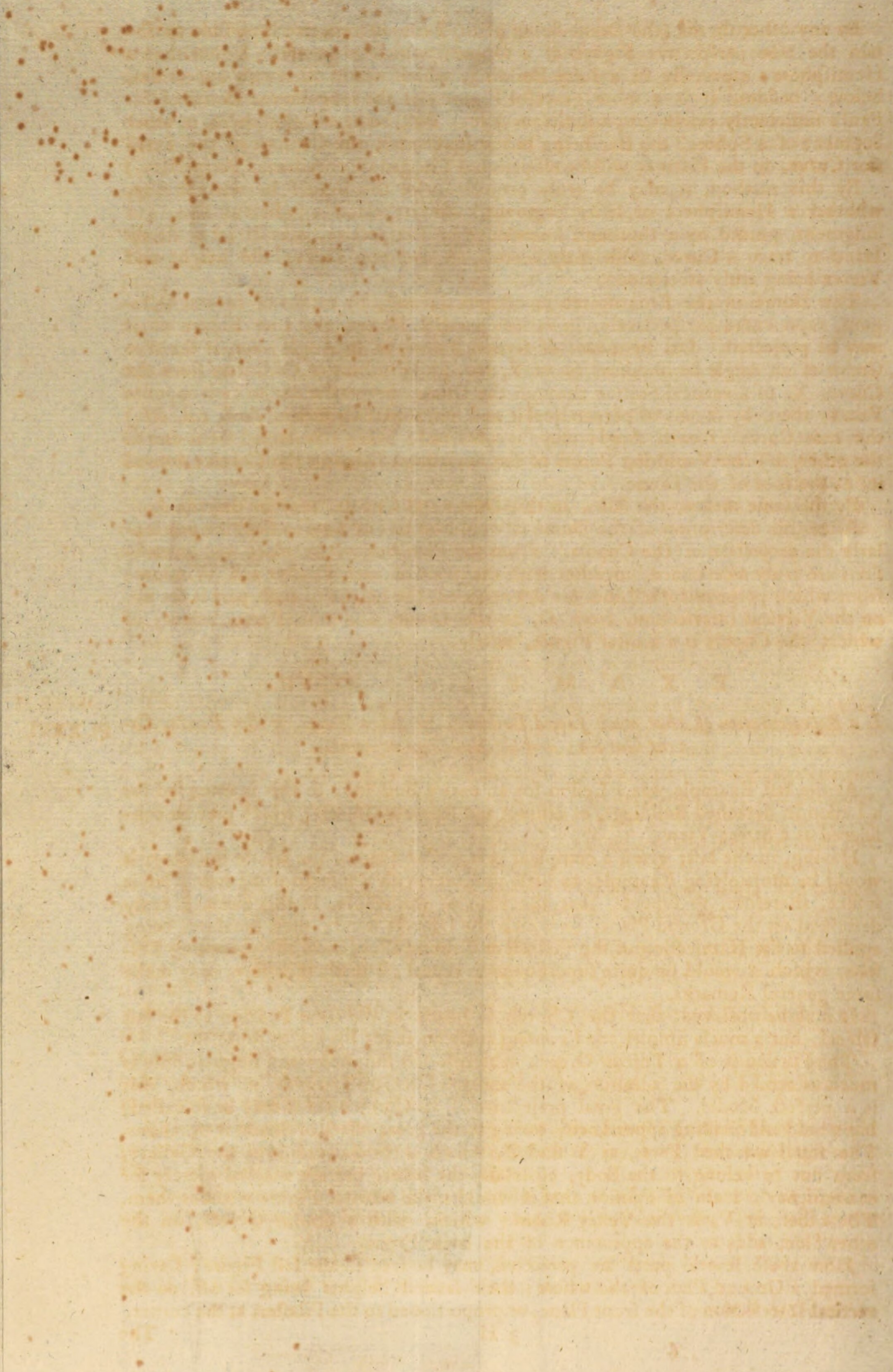
Plate
XX











By any other means (the Dome being plain) I cannot conceive it possible to obtain the true perspective Figure of a Dome; which is generally higher than a Hemisphere; especially in a lofty Building, which would otherwise appear flat, below; besides, it is a more graceful Figure; as the magnificent Dome of St. Paul's sufficiently evinces, to a judicious Eye. But, being a Hemisphere, or other Segment of a Sphere, the Eye being below its Center, the Contour of the exterior Curve, on the Picture, will be elliptical. (Th. 3rd of curvilinear Perspective.)

By this method, it may be truly projected, let the Figure be what it may, whether a Hemisphere or lesser Segment. Nevertheless, a judicious Eye, and judgment, guided by a thorough knowledge of Perspective, may direct a steady Hand to trace a Curve, sufficiently correct, in common Cases; the height and Vertex being truly ascertained.

The Dome in the Frontispiece is octagonal; and, by means of several Octagons, represented perspectively, in various parallel Planes, the true Figure of it may be projected. Or, by means of several Points, in an Angle; for, if the true Curve of an Angle be obtained (as at Y, No. 3) by means of Ordinates from the Curve, X, of a vertical Section through the Dome, perpendicular to two opposite Faces; then, by means of perpendicular and horizontal Ordinates (*ab, cd, &c.*) the true Curve of each Angle may be obtained; being transferred from one to the other, by the Vanishing Points of the horizontal Lines in the Cornice around it, at the foot of the Dome.

By the same means, the Ribs, in this Dome and Cupola, may be described.

After this description of the Dome it would be loss of time to describe particularly the projection of the Cupola. From the Plan below, its place and dimensions are truly ascertained, together with the place of each Pilaster and Window; from which perpendicular Lines are drawn; and, the height of each part is set up, on the Vertical Intersection, from O, as the Dome, and other Parts, below; of which, the Cupola is a similar Figure, nearly.

E X A M P L E XXXVII.

Is a Representation of that much famed Building, by Inigo Jones, of St. Paul's, Covent Garden; and the Buildings adjacent. Pl. XXVI.

As the last Example was a Lesson for an entire Building, so this is intended for a Lesson in detached Buildings, or distinct and separate Objects; which may be considered as a Street-View.

Having, in the last, given a compleat perspective Plan of the whole Building, it would be multiplying Examples to little purpose to do the same thing here; let it suffice, therefore, to suppose, that the Plan of the whole, in this piece, is truly described on the Ground Plane, on which the Objects stand; their measures being applied to the Intersection of the Picture or Ground Line, as in the preceding Lessons, which it would be quite superfluous to repeat; I shall, therefore, only make some general Remarks.

It may be observed, that the Church is nearly in the same Position as the last Object, but a much simpler, and consequently an easier Figure to represent.

The Portico is of a Tuscan Order; which for its simplicity and singular Stile is much esteemed by the admirers of the antique Grecian Temples, of which, this is a perfect Model. The great projecture of its Cornice (if it may be so called) has a bold and striking appearance; owing to the great effect of Shade it occasions. The small attached Parts, at Y and Z, which is the staircase into the Gallery, seem not to belong to the Body, especially the latter, but are adapted merely for conveniency; I am of opinion that it would make a better Figure without them. The other, at V, is the Vestry Room; which, with a similar Object, on the other Side, adds to the appearance of the back Front.

How these several parts are projected, may be seen in the last Figure; having formed a Ground Plan of the whole; their several heights being set off, on the vertical Intersection of the front Plane, or proportioned to the Pilaster, at the corner.

Pl. XXVI. The two Gates, or entrances into the Church-Yard (X) are a great ornament to the Church, and graceful in themselves. After what has been done, there is nothing singular in their Construction, the geometrical Figure being known.

The Houses, one on each side, are equally distant from the Church; 'tis pity they are not both in the same stile, as that on the Left, for the sake of uniformity. The Hut, adjoining to the House on the Left, at W, is the Parish, Watch-House. I could wish some other place had been destined for it, as it blocks up an Avenue, and breaks the regular Order.

The Fronts of the Houses and the Gates are in a Right Line, much inclined to the Picture; the Portico projects before them. There is no occasion for a Ground Plan of the whole, for the measure of each Part being known, the Line may be proportioned, by the Problems in the 4th and 5th Sections; and, their heights are determined on the Line AB, which may be used as an Intersection of the whole, considered as one Plane.

The Pediment has been frequently described; and, the Bell-Turret may be determined by the length of the Roof; or, more correctly, from a Plan formed below; as the Cupola in the last Example.

On the Left is seen the opening into Henrietta-Street, at P; and one of the Green-Sheds, at Q; the place, of which, is obtained by its known distance from the Church, and the line of Direction in which it stands, respecting the Church, projected if necessary. Or, the Ground Line may be supposed on this side of the Shed, parallel to the bottom edge of the Picture. The Horizon is about the natural height of the Eye; the Center of View is at C, in the middle of the Picture, and the Distance is about 16 Inches.

E X A M P L E XXXVIII.

*Is the Representation of another well-known Building, by the same Architect; viz.
The Royal Hospital, of Invalids, at Chelsea.*

Pl. XXVII. The Stile, of this Building, is somewhat similar to that of St. Paul's, Covent-Garden. There is, in the Gusto of the whole, something remarkably pleasing; the Symetry of the several Parts, in respect of each other and of the whole, is finely preserved, in a regular and gradual subordination, from the Principal to the several Offices; the agreeable arrangement, of which, is uniform, and perfectly harmonious. Here, the attention is not attracted by the richness of the dress, or masterly execution; the mind is not captivated by grandeur and magnificence, but most agreeably entertained with an elegance of Design; simple, yet majestic; and comely, though unattired; perfectly agreeable in its native simplicity, and almost naked Beauty, devoid of every luxuriant Ornament.

In the last Example, the Line of the Building was much inclined to the Picture; in this, it deviates little from a Perpendicular; which is far more agreeable than to be perfectly so.

In this View, many, who pretend to know Perspective, would immediately fix on the Point V, in which all the horizontal Lines, of the Front, converge, to be the Center of View; but it is not so; for, according to my general maxim, it is at C, in the middle of the length; and, notwithstanding there is not one Line vanishes in it, yet, it governs the whole.

If V had been the Center, or Point of View, the Lines BD and HI, &c. would be parallel amongst themselves, and to the Horizon; but, they converge to a Point, at a great Distance, on the left Hand.

The Distance of the Picture is about 19 Inches; at which Distance (the Eye being perpendicularly opposite to C) the whole will appear as the Original, at the station intended; and, I am persuaded no Person will suppose that it would have a better effect, or so good, if V had been the Center of View; for, the Optic Angle would then be almost double of what it now is; and consequently, the Representation

tation would differ more from the true Appearance; which, now, is inconsiderable, the Optic Angle not exceeding 34 Degrees.

The Inclination of the Building to the Picture, and the Distance, being determined, the Vanishing Point, *V*, is fixed by Prob. 12; and the indefinite Line, *GV*, being drawn, it is proportioned as usual, by setting off the real Measures, or their Ratio, from *G*, at *K*, *L*, &c. and drawing Lines, which represent Visual Rays, to *E*, in the Horizontal Line.

The measures are taken half, because *EV* is but half the Distance of the Vanishing Point, *V*; as the whole Distance exceeds the bounds of the Picture.

The horizontal Lines on the returning Side, whose Vanishing Point is at a great Distance, may be drawn by the Expedient, No. 5, Prob. 13. Or; having proportioned the Line of the Angle, at *AB*, into the several Divisions, at *a*, *b*, *c*, &c. for the Windows, &c. and having drawn one Line to its Vanishing Point, as *BD* (by the 12th) the Distance of the Vanishing Point being determined*; produce *BD*, and at a convenient Distance, draw *FG* parallel to *AB*, and proportion *FG* in the same Ratio as *AB* (by Prob. 33, Geom.) draw *a a*, *b b*, &c. which will tend to the same Point.

But, when the Inclination is not very great, the best Expedient is to fix a Lath to the Board and make use of a long Ruler; or, in Large Work, fix a smooth String to the Vanishing Point, and strain it, in a Right Line, to the several Points *a*, *b*, *c*, &c.

The Hip of the Roof, at *H*, may be determined from a Plan, on the Ground Plane; or by the known Inclination of *BH* to the Picture, and its Vanishing Point; and, the Line *HI* by the 13th Problem.

The Window Frames, in the Roof, being drawn, as the other Windows, draw *fV*, &c. and having found the Vanishing Line of the Roof (by Prob. 5) or, of the front Plane (Prob. 3rd) and the Vanishing Point of *gh*, &c. which is at *X* (by the 4th) draw *gX*, cutting *fV* at *h*, which determines the Triangle *fgh*, &c.

The Cupola is best done by a Ground Plan, as in the 37th Example.

The Columns and Pediments have nothing particular in the delineation, save that, the middle Pediment is more contracted than the hither one; but is done after the same manner; and, if they have the same Inclination to the Horizon, the Lines have the same Vanishing Point; because the Pediments are in parallel Planes†.

† Theo. 5.
and Cor. 1.

The Trees (on the Right hand) excepting their Distances from each other, are not subject to the Rules of Perspective; because no proportion of the Boughs can be taken. The Rails and Posts have nothing singular in them; as the Rails are parallel to the Front of the Building, they have consequently the same Vanishing Point (*V*) as the horizontal Lines, in the Front; and the Posts, being equally or otherwise spaced, are determined as in all other similar Cases.

The heights of the Figures, in the Walks, are thus determined.

Take any Point, *L* or *M*, in the Ground Line, and make *MN* equal to the height of a Figure (by the Scale of proportion, of the measures of the Building) and draw *MO* and *NO*, to any Point in the Horizontal Line; then, wherever you intend a Figure, as at *a*, *b*, *c*, draw *am*, *bm*, &c. parallel to the Ground Line cutting *MO*, at *m*, or *m*; and draw *mn*, or, *mn*, parallel to *MN*, which is the height of the Figure in that place, representing an equal height to *MN*.

For, *MO* and *NO* represent parallel Lines (Cor. 1, Th. 5.) and *MN* is a vertical Intersection of the Picture; wherefore, every Right Line drawn between *MO*, and *NO*, parallel to *MN*, represents an equal measure, equal *MN*; for *MNnm* and *mnmn* represent Rectangles, having equal Altitude, and consequently their opposite Sides are equal (15. 1. El.) therefore *mn* and *mn*, represent equal heights.

By the same means, the proportion of any other Object may be determined.

E X A M P L E

* This Vanishing Point is about seven Feet Distance, from the Center of the Picture.

Pl. XXVIII.

E X A M P L E XXXIX.

Is a View of the Queen's Palace in St. James's Park, and adjacent Buildings.

This neat and elegant Building was formerly the Town Residence of the Dukes of Buckingham; which Title becoming extinct, it had for some Years been occupied by a distant branch of that ancient Family, without the Title, who made no Figure, suitable to such a noble Mansion; insomuch, that it was gone greatly out of repair when purchased by his Majesty. It has, since, been much enlarged, repaired and beautified, and made the Winter Residence of the Royal Family. The octagon Building, on the Left, was added at the same time, and is the Library.

Since which, there has been great improvements made; the Semicircular Area, in Front, has been enlarged; but I think it would have been more advantageous, had the Pallisadoes stood on a Dwarf Wall; for want of which, they are not distinguishable, at some Distance from it. The Gate leading to Chelsea, and the Lodge are also new; and, several old Trees were cut down, to make a more spacious and open View to the Canal, &c. in the Park.

This Building would, with propriety, admit of a full Front View; but such a one is by no means picturesque; as, one Side, in such Case, is but a duplicate of the other, which is not the Case in this View; the Center, of which, is in the middle of the Picture, as usual.

The Front is inclined, and consequently, the horizontal Lines vanish; but at a great distance, because the Inclination is very great; the Distance of which Vanishing Point is determined by the 12th Prob. The Vanishing Point of the End is at V, in the Pavilion on the Left hand, the Horizon is high, for the convenience of seeing the Area, more commodiously.

The Distance of the Picture being determined*, and the Vanishing Point V, the Distance of the other is a third Proportional, to CV and the Distance of the Picture, found by squaring the Distance, and dividing by CV. (Pr. 12.) (Pr. 31. Geo.)

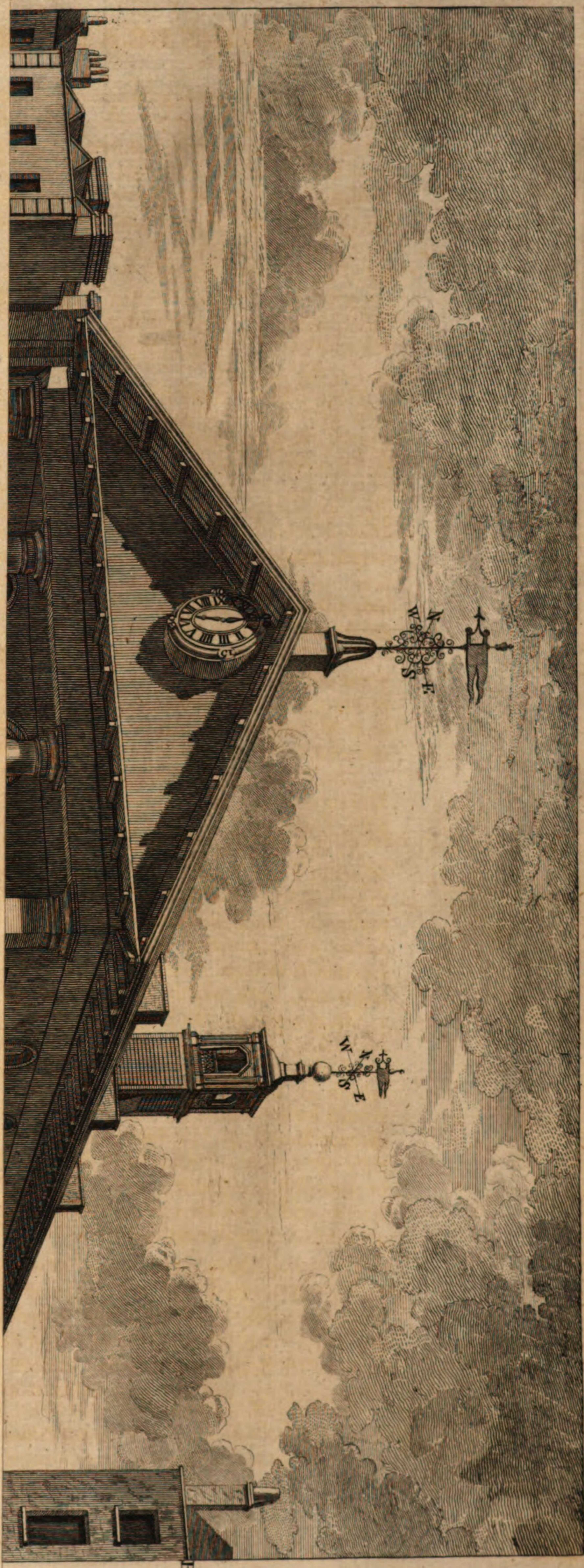
As the octagon Building has two Faces parallel to the Fronts of the House, the adjacent Faces vanish in the Diagonals on each Side; i. e. all the horizontal Lines, in one Side of the Octagon, vanish in that Point where a Line bisecting the Angle, made by the Radials of the Front and End of the Building, cut the Horizontal Line; and the other, on the Left, where a Line, making a Right Angle with the Line of bisection, cuts it; as it has been exemplified in various Cases, in Mouldings, &c. both which fall out of the Picture.

On account of the great Distance, and the Horizon being high (between the Mouldings in the upper part) their inclination is not perceptible; as is frequently the Case, in Views taken at a tolerable Distance, and perhaps from an Eminence, which is generally made choice of in Landscape Views; otherwise, the Ground would be too much contracted, unless diversified with rising Grounds, &c. The distant Buildings, in such Cases, are represented nearly geometrical; for, unless they are situated considerably above or below the Eye, the inclination of the Lines is not distinguishable; and, if they are obliquely situated to the Picture, the Fronts and Ends are contracted, almost geometrically; so that, distant Objects, of all kinds, are not cognizable to the Rules of Perspective.

It is unnecessary to say more, in respect of this Object, as Rules have been given for projecting all kinds of Figures of which it is composed, and finding the Vanishing Points. I shall, in the Appendix, give a general Method for contracting the Faces, &c. of each Object, and for obtaining the true place of each, in respect of its Bearings with other Objects; which, in many Cases, is the best method of proceeding, and the least liable to error.

* In this Picture it is about 12 Inches.

SECTION



Frontispiece
to this work.



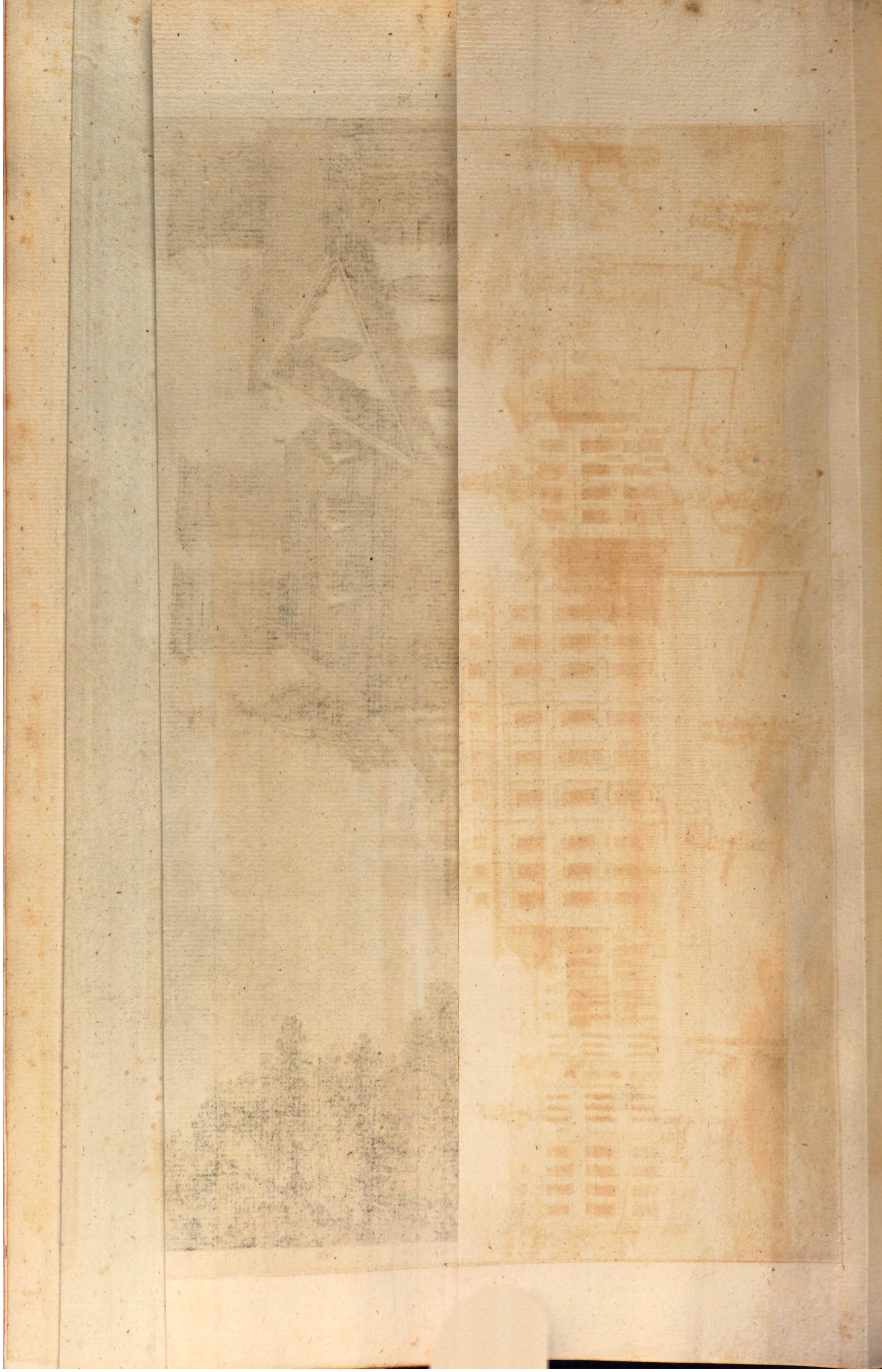
Publ'd by Tho. Malton April 1st 1775.

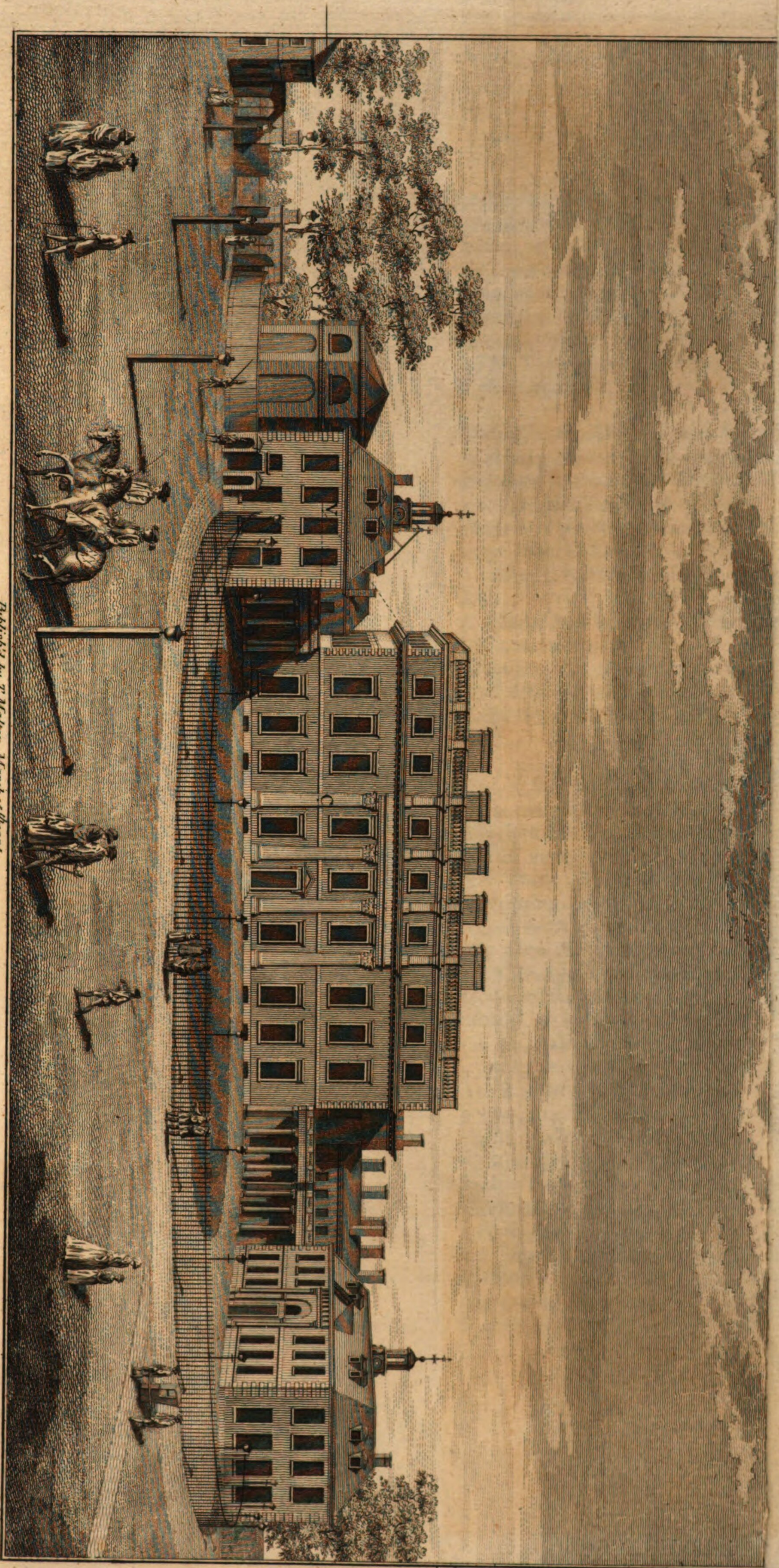
P. Malton



Published by Tho: Mason April 21 1775

P. Mazell sculp





Published by T. Malton March 16th 1775.

THE
S. I. O. T. 1. 9
OF THE

The first of the three parts of the work is a general introduction to the subject of the history of the world. It is divided into three parts: the first part is a general introduction to the subject of the history of the world; the second part is a general introduction to the subject of the history of the world; the third part is a general introduction to the subject of the history of the world.

S E C T I O N X.

O F I N S I D E V I E W S , I N G E N E R A L .

THE application of the Rules of Perspective, whether to the interior or exterior parts of Objects, is the same, deduced from the same Principles, the Theory being general and universal; for, Planes and Lines, of which Objects are composed, are the same however situated; whether they form internal or external Angles, of Objects seen externally; or, forming Rooms or Concavities of any kind. Nevertheless, at first Sight, there appears a difference; for I believe that, many who have practised Perspective with tolerable success, in exterior Objects, are somewhat puzzled, at the first attempting an Inside View; not knowing, rightly, where to begin or where to leave off; how to place their Picture, or determine its Distance.

I have seen an attempt to represent an Octagon Building, internally, in which Picture were introduced seven Sides or Faces, out of the eight; 'twas a misfortune that the other could not be seen also, quite around, and then it would have been a master-piece, indeed. However, from what was seen, and the tendency of the Lines, it was manifest, that the Distance of the Picture was not more than one fourth part of its width, or length; and consequently, the Optic Angle was above 120 Degrees, which ought not on any account (except when the Eye is confined to the true Point of View, always) to exceed 60.

'Tis the same thing, if, in Order to see the whole Dome and Cupola, internally, we advance so far into the Building, that the Representations of such Subjects are only fit for horizontal Pictures, or Cieling-Pieces; for, when they are represented on a vertical Picture, they appear (at a proper Distance to take in the whole) as if falling, or not upright. Yet are these things to be met with in Pictures and Prints, by Men of some distinction in the Arts.

That the Perspective Representation of the inside of a fine Building is more difficult to manage than the exterior is certain, and is manifested in theatrical performances; which, being represented on several detached Planes, it is impossible, by the Rules of Art, to make them correspond in every Point of View; but, they are very rarely connected in any one Point. There are, undoubtedly, many fine Performances of the kind; yet, without attempting to disparage their Authors, I am confident, that, were they better acquainted with Perspective, they would produce better and more natural Representations; even that famed Scene in Cymon is a jumble of inconsistencies, both in point of Design and Execution; although, it was a bold attempt out of the common mode of Representations.

Few Artists have made Perspective so much their Study, to know how to proportion one Part to another, on detached Scenes, so, as to make the whole unite in the proper Point of View, whether the Representation be internal or external; indeed, from the present Construction of the Theatres, it is hardly possible to be done; nor are the Rules of Perspective sufficient, for the purpose, without a tolerable knowledge of Lines, geometrically. It is the least qualification of a Scene Painter to be excellent in Landscape, in which a small knowledge of Perspective is requisite; but, in order to execute Designs in Architecture with correctness, and a just proportion of the several Parts, requires a thorough knowledge of Perspective. It is somewhat surprizing, that all who are concerned, or any way engaged in Scene Painting, do not make Perspective their immediate Study; being the Basis, the very soul and existence of their Profession; yet, to my certain knowledge, several Artists, employed in it, are not only totally ignorant of it, in Theory, but they are, almost, wholly unacquainted with its Rules, which, to me, is most unaccountable.

Pl. XXIX. In inside Views, the Bounds of the Picture limits the whole, every way, which renders the Operation, in some Cases, more difficult than external Views.

In order to shew the inside of a Room, Temple, &c. properly, a Section is supposed to be made; that is, the hither Wall (or inclosure of any kind) is supposed to be removed, and the whole Inside laid open to View; so that, a proper Station and Distance may be taken, from which, the whole Inside, or as much as is required, may be taken into the Optic Angle, without being too large; for, to suppose that we can be within a Room and exhibit the whole, or nearly, would be truly absurd, yet it has been attempted, by such as have not a true notion of Perspective.

In respect of proportioning Doors, Windows, &c. it must be obvious, there can be no difference whether they are interior or exterior; the whole of which is contained in Prob. 8th, and has been universally applied throughout the Work; particularly in Ex. 2nd and 4th, also in the 16th, 19th, and 21st, in finding the places of the Mutules, Modillions, Blocks, &c.

Fig. 113. EXAMPLE. Let AV be the indefinite Representation of the Side of a Building in any horizontal or vertical Plane; which, from the point A, is required to be perspectively divided into certain finite parts, representing Windows, Piers, &c.

By the 8th Problem, Ab and VE are drawn parallel, between themselves (VE may be considered as the Vanishing Line, and Ab, the Intersection, of whatever Plane the Original Line is in, either horizontal or vertical, or in any other position.)

Make VE equal to the Distance of the Vanishing Point (V) of the Line AV; and, on Ab, take Aa, ab, &c. equal to the known proportions of the Piers and Windows, or Apertures of any kind.

Draw aE, bE, &c. cutting AV in the Points a, b, c, &c. which are the representations of the Original Points, a, b, &c. Wherefore, if ab be supposed the geometrical proportion of a Window, then ab represents the same perspectively, and so of any other division.

By the same means, all other divisions are acquired, as bc of a Pier, &c.

N. B. Let it be observed, that it does not depend on the real measures being applied on Ab, but, that they are in the same Ratio, respectively, as EV is of the Distance of the Vanishing Point; agreeable to Theorem 13th, which is frequently exemplified in the preceding Work; and, whether AV represents a Line perpendicular or inclined to the Picture, there is no difference in the process.

E X A M P L E XL.

How to represent Doors, &c. open, in any given Angle; or otherwise, at pleasure.

Fig. 114. Let AB represent the Aperture of the opening of a Door, in the side of a Room, &c. which is required to be seen open, in any position, at pleasure.

Now, AB, the width of the Door, is the Radius of a Circle, which it would describe if the Door revolved quite around; and consequently, the Door itself (being a Rectangle) would describe a right Cylinder, of which, BC is its Axis†.

By Prob. 10th, Sect. 4th, or, Pr. 2, Sect. 8th, describe the representation of a Semicircle, Aa a F, whose Radius (given or found) is AB.

It is manifest, that AB the perspective width of the Door, would, in its semi-revolution (from AB to BF) describe the semi-Ellipsis Aa a F; that is, the point A (B being fixed) would describe the semi-circumference of a Circle: and consequently, in whatever position the Door is open, the point A will be somewhere in that Semicircumference, as at a or a, wherefore, aB, aB, &c. are also the Representations of Radii, of the same Circle.

Take the Point a or a, in the Circumference, at pleasure (according as you require the Door more or less open) and draw aB or aB, which produce to its Vanishing Point, H or H.

Draw the Perpendicular ad, or ad, and through C, draw HC, or HC till it cuts ad or ad, at d or d; then is aBCd, or aBCd, the representation of the Door open in the position required.

† Def. 4,
8 Geom.

Or, if the Angle of the opening, on either side, be known or determined; produce AB to its Vanishing Point, V; S being the Center of the Picture, draw SE perpendicular, equal to its Distance, and join EV; make the Angle VEH, or VEH, equal to the Angle determined; which will give the Vanishing Point H, or H, of the top and bottom edge of the Door, in the Position required.

If the Door be required more open, as AB, making an acute Angle, ABF, on the other side; then, the Vanishing Point will be on the other side of V.

The process is the same, in every Position.

After the same manner, the Window Shutters, being vertical, are determined; Fig. 115. the Radius, of each, being half the width of the Window.

Also, the Shutters Y and Z, which describe Semicircles in vertical Planes, as Fig. 116. $abcd$, or $abcd$; or, more properly, they describe half horizontal Cylinders.

The first, being parallel to the Picture, is a Semicircle†; the other is perpendicular to the Picture; or it may be inclined, in any Angle whatever; the Vanishing Points are in the vertical Vanishing Line, VL, of the Plane of the Circle; as at V and L, &c.

† Theo. 10.
Cor. 5.

E X A M P L E XLI.

To represent an elegant Room, having a large, circular, Bow Window, in the Side, and a Cove-Cieling.

In representing the Inside of a Room, Church, &c. it is usual to take the Station in a Line drawn through the middle of the Building, which indeed appears the most rational; but, in such Case, in a regular Building (one Side being a duplicate of the other) it is not so picturesque, as when the Station is towards either Side, as at E; from which, the inside of the Room AHIB, is to be viewed; by Fig. 117. which means, either Side may be shewn to greater advantage, being more inclined to the Picture than the other.

From the Station E, if Right Lines are drawn to F and B, the extreme on each Side of the Room, intended to be delineated, FEB is the Optic Angle under which it is seen; and, if AB be the Intersection of the Picture, EC, perpendicular to AB, determines its Center, at C, and EC is its Distance; in which Case, the Center of View is not in the middle of the Picture. But, if the Optic Angle be bisected by the Right Line ES, then, FG, perpendicular to ES, is the true Position of the Picture, S is its Center, and ES its Distance; and the farther End, HI, is consequently inclined to the Picture; as it is represented in the next Plate. See Figure the first.

Let AB be the Ground Line, which is not necessarily the bottom of the Picture; but, whatever falls on this Side is supposed projected to the Picture. Pl. XXX. Fig. 1.

Draw AD and BI, perpendicular (the vertical Intersections of the Sides) on which, set up all the measures of the heights (by the Scale of Proportion) for the Dado and Mouldings, the Windows, Chimney Piece, the Entablature, Cove, &c.

On AD, describe, geometrically, the true Profile-Section of all the Mouldings; as DEF for the Cornice, &c. and DG, the Cove, is the fourth part of the Circumference of a Circle, generally.

The Lines in the Cornice (in this Case) not being perpendicular to the Picture, the Section of it, with the Picture, is not the true Profile; the deviation, in this, is inconsiderable. But, when the Lines are more inclined to the Picture, an Expedient for truly proportioning the Mouldings may be necessary.

Let ABC (Pl. 29, Fig. 118) be the Profile of the Cornice to be represented in the Picture.

The Section with the Picture, being vertical, makes no variation in the heights of the Mouldings; but according to the Inclination of the Picture; their projectures are varied considerably.

From each projecture a, b, c, &c. draw Lines perpendicular to BC, consequently parallel amongst themselves; make the Angle BCD equal to the complement of the inclination of the Cornice to the Picture; CD will be the extreme projecture of the Section of the Cornice, whose Inclination to the Picture is ECD; and, FDC is the true Section, in that position of the Picture; the projecture of each Moulding being taken from CD, where the parallel Lines cut it, at a, b, c, &c.

The Cove must project in the same Ratio to its height; viz. as CD to CB.

Fig. 118.

On

Pl. XXX. On the other Side, the heights of the Windows, &c. are set up from B to I.
 Fig. 1. Having drawn the Horizontal Line, VL, and fixed the Center of the Picture, the Vanishing Point V being determined as usual; which, on account of the inclination of the Sides of the Room, is not in the Center, as is customary in Inside Views; the Room, or Building of any kind, being right angled.

In this Case, these Preliminaries are best determined by a geometrical Plan.

If a Ground Plan of any Building which we intend to delineate be drawn, truly geometrical, the Station may be determined, so, as to see such parts of the Objects as we require, whether internal or external.

Fig. 117. If it be required to see part of the second Window in the Bow; draw a Right Line, from J, through the Angle at L, allowing so much of the recess of the Window, &c. as you wish to represent. It is manifest, that the Station must be somewhere in that Right Line, produced; but if the View was to be central, it would be too near, as at O, for, the Optic Angle, A, or FOB, is too large for the Eye to take in, at one View.

At a further Distance, in the same central Line, at P, if PL be drawn, it is plain; that the Window cannot be seen at all, as it cuts the Pier at M; whereas, any where in the direction of JL, as at E, if the Station be fixed so, that, drawing EF and EB, the Optic Angle does not exceed 50 Degrees, it may be represented from that Station, without much distortion. Then, making EG equal EF, FG is the position of the Picture; and ES, bisecting the Angle FEG, is its Distance; consequently S is its Center (Def. E) for ES is perpendicular to FG†.

† 9. 1. El. Now, E, is the Station, or Point of View, and FG is the position of the Picture. Draw the perpendicular ES, and ED parallel to AH and BI; consequently, D, and not S, is the Vanishing Point of those Sides. (Def. L.)

† 7. 6. El. The End, HI, vanishes in a Point where EK, parallel to HI, would cut the Picture, FG, produced; its Distance, from the Center S, will be to SE, as SE is to DS‡. (Prob. 12.) And, if the Angle DEK be bisected, by the Line EN, then, N is the Vanishing Point of a Diagonal, or Mitre Angle.

Now, if AB (Fig. 1, Pl. 30) be equal to FG, then, make VC equal to DS; or, in whatever Ratio AB (Fig. 1) is to FG, so make VC to DS, and V will be the Vanishing Point of the Sides of the Room; that is, of all the horizontal Lines in those Sides, and of all other Lines parallel to them, whether in the Cieling, or on the Floor, or elsewhere. (Theorem 5, Cor. 1.)

Being thus prepared, we now proceed to the delineation.

Pl. XXX. Draw the indefinite Lines AV and BV, and proportion them, by setting off the measures of the several parts from A or B, and drawing Lines to the Distance Point of the Eye, placed on either Side (at E, or E²) EV being half, and VE² one third part of the Distance of the Vanishing Point V, there not being room, on the Picture, for the full measure.

Make Aa, ab, &c. each one third of the measures of the Originals, and draw a E², &c. cutting AV at a, &c. which give the Angle of the Chimney, &c.

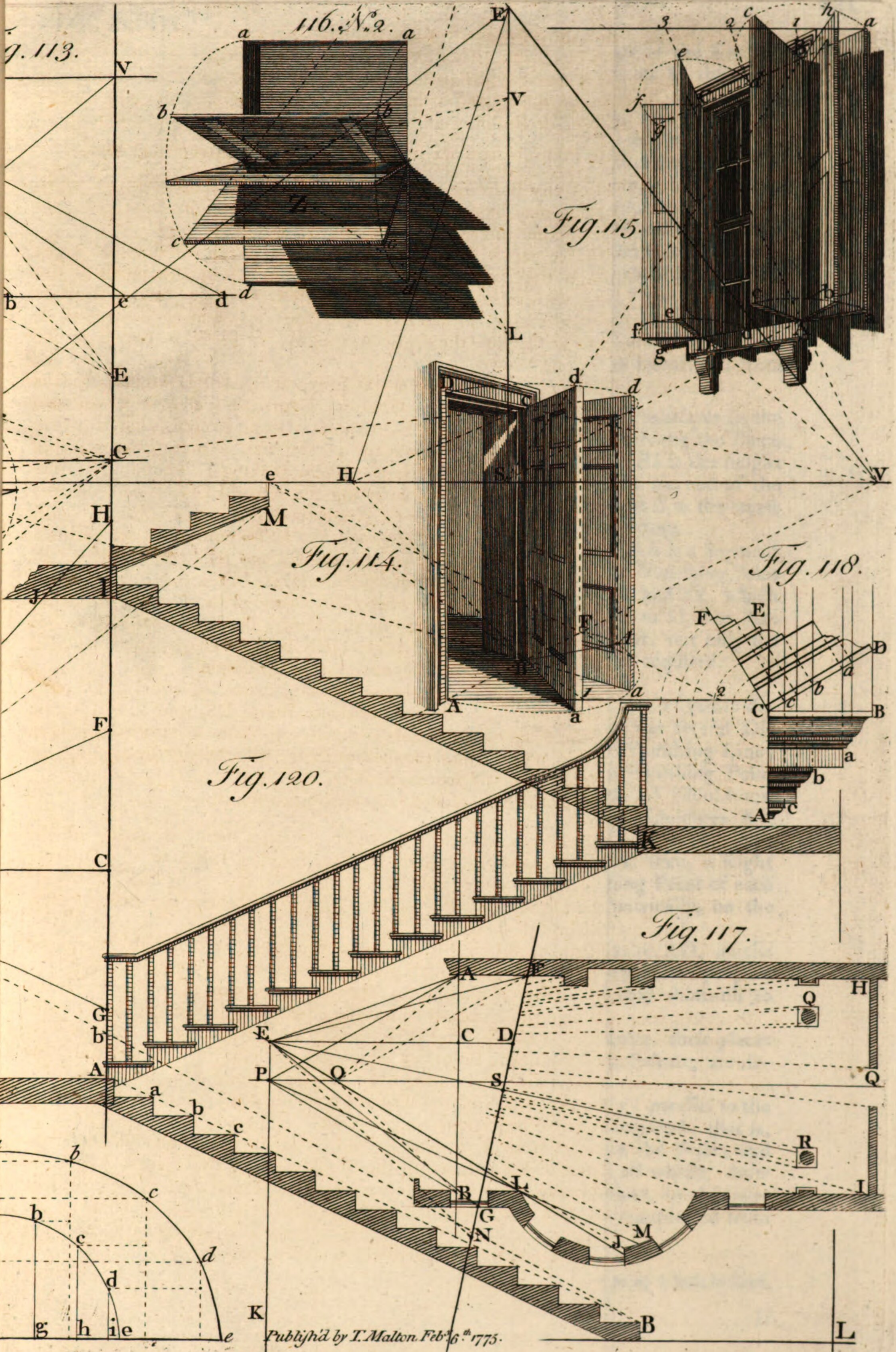
For its projecture, make Aa equal to, or somewhat more than the real measure (because, AB being inclined, it cannot be equal, but is the Diagonal of the Inclination; i. e. as CD to CB, Fig. 118) and draw a V, cutting a Line drawn from a to the other Vanishing Point, at b. Make ad one third part of the front of the Chimney, and draw dV, cutting a parallel Line from b at c.

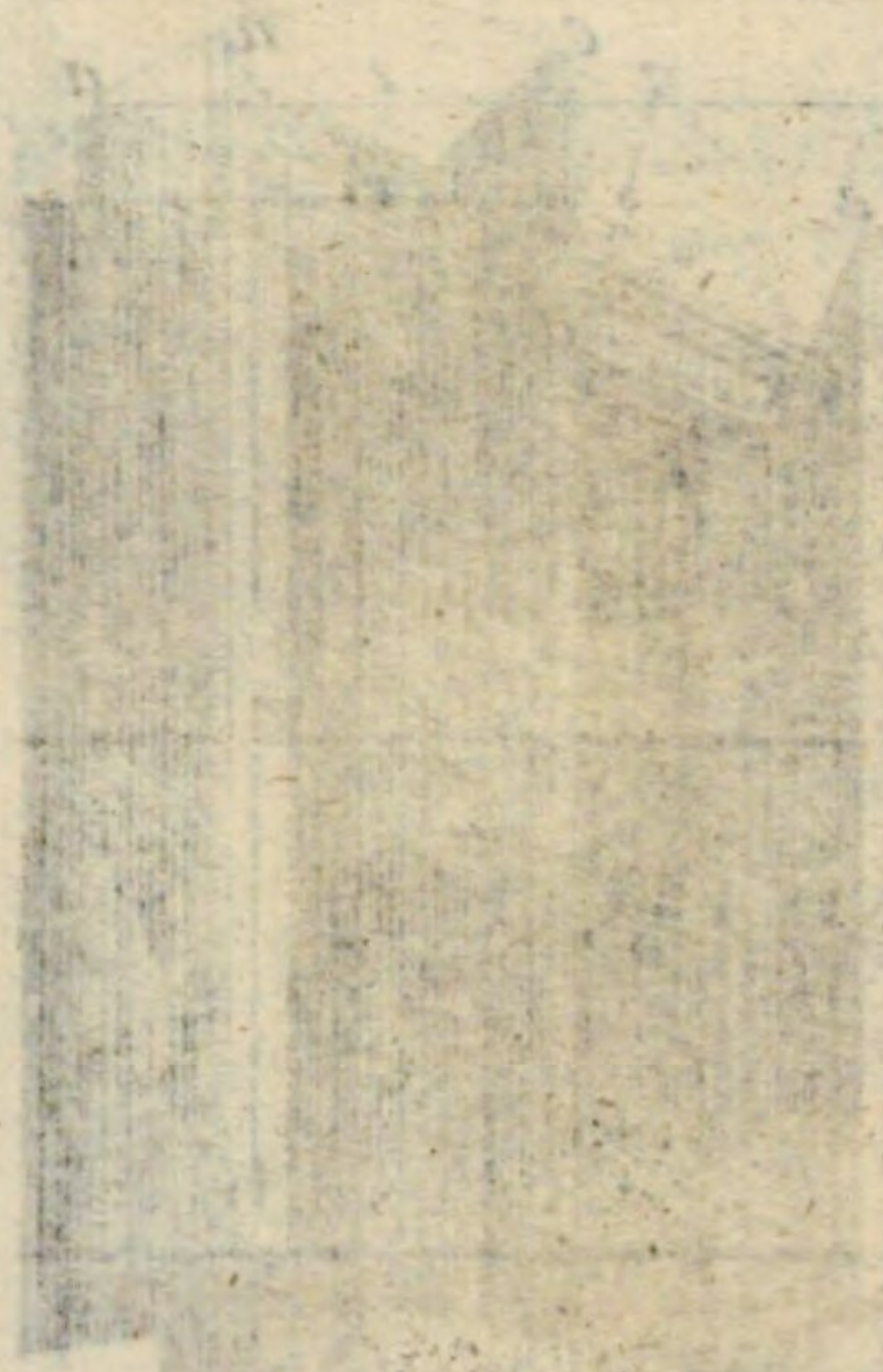
Divide bc in the proportion of the Trusses, &c. and draw Lines to E², cutting bV in their perspective Proportions.

Draw perpendiculars from a, b, and c; and, from all the Angles of the Cornice, &c. draw Lines to V; and return the Mouldings, at the several Angles of the Chimney, internally, at gb, and externally, at ik and lm, as described in Example 19; also, at no, the length being obtained by a Perpendicular from f.

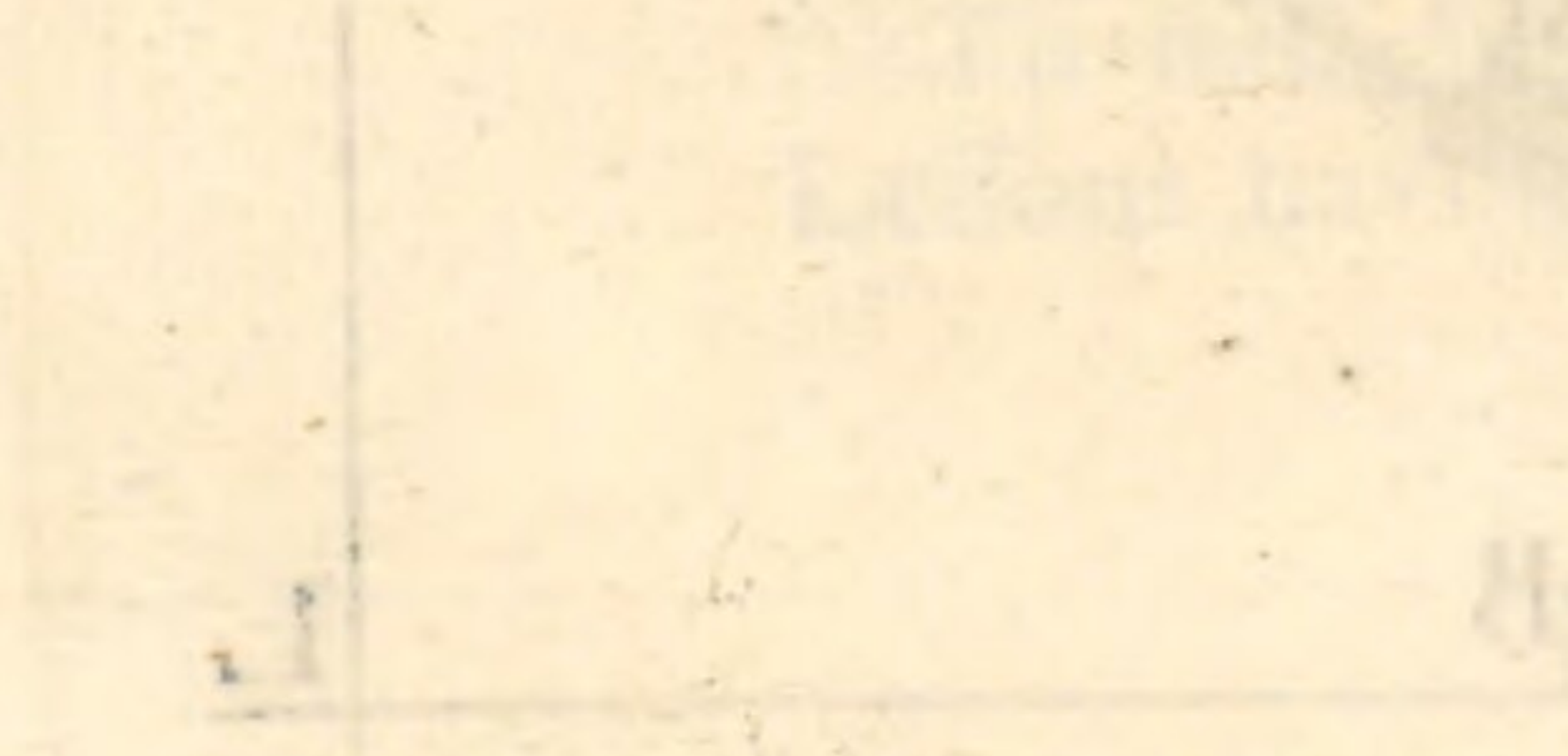
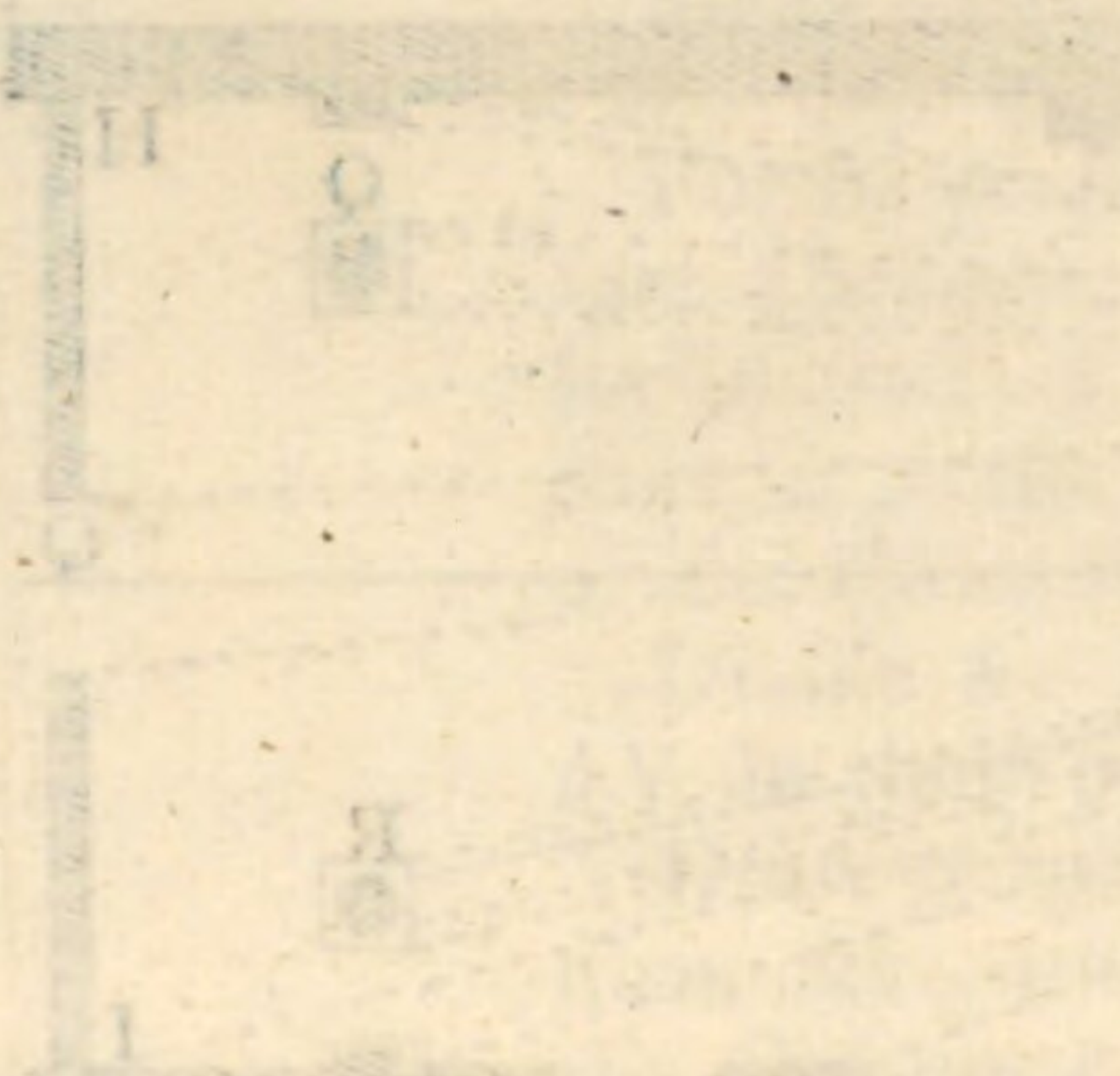
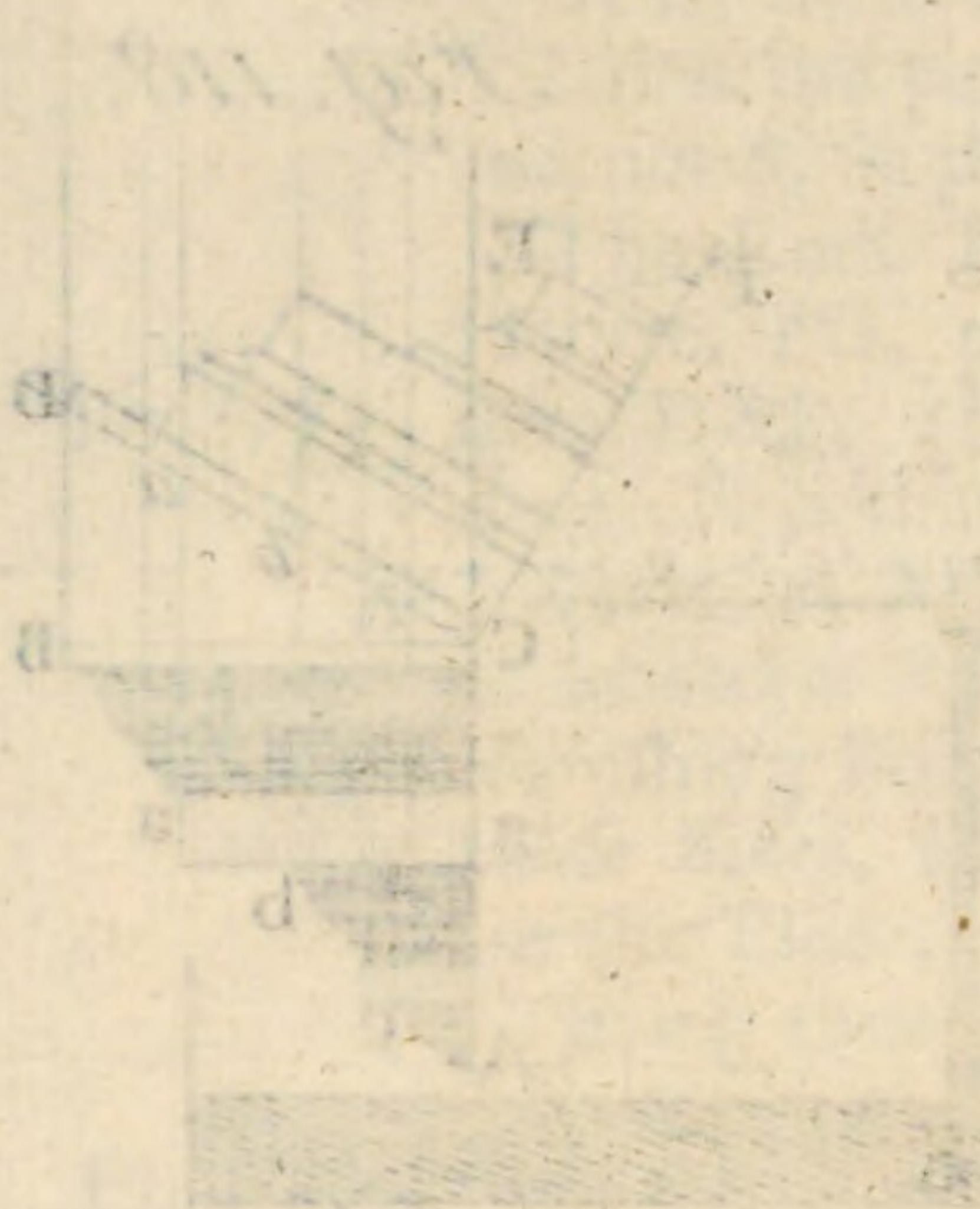
To describe every particular would be superfluous and unnecessary, previous Lessons having been frequently and particularly explained.

Having





V



Having obtained the mitre Angle at no , return the Mouldings of the Entablature, at the End, by means of the Vanishing Point of the End; or by the Expedient in Prob. 13, No. 5.

The Angle of the Cove may be thus obtained, with accuracy.

DG is its geometrical Section with the Picture, and M is the height of the Room. Draw MV, cutting the Perpendicular fn at p ; draw the Diagonal (pq) of the Angle, indefinite, and, from G, draw GV, cutting it at q .

But, because the Vanishing Point of that Diagonal is not determined, and is out of the Picture; from p , draw a Line tending to the Vanishing Point of the End; and, where it is cut by GV, at r , make rs equal pr^* , and draw a Line from L, the Vanishing Point of the other Diagonal; which will give the Point q . The other Angle is determined by the same Point, L, the Vanishing Point of that Diagonal, found by bisecting the Angle DEK, by EG. (Fig. 117, Pl. 29.)

After the same manner, by drawing several Ordinates to the Curve DG, at t, u , &c. the perspective Curve at the Angles may be described, and transferred from one Angle to the other.

On the other Side, VE being half the distance of the Eye, the measures on the Ground Line, AB, are applied half the real measures, for proportioning the Piers, and the opening of the Bow Window, &c. from B, to e, f , &c. BI is the height of the Windows. Draw Ih tending to the Vanishing Point of the end of the Room (as the projecture of the Chimney) and Bd being made equal to the recess of the Window, draw dh; regarding the projectures of the Mouldings.

Having obtained the opening of the Bow Window at ik , which is a Segment of a Circle (Be, ef, &c. being in proportion to the distance of the Vanishing Point V, i. e. half) find S the representation of its Center, and draw Si, and Sk, which represent Radii; by means of which, other Radii may be obtained, as Sl, Sm, &c. making certain Angles with Sk perspectively (Prob. 10) and thus, not only the Curve (klmn) but also, the true place of each Window, &c. is acquired.

The Curve at the Top may be described by the same means.

The recedings of the Windows, if they tend to the Center S, are readily determined; by dividing the Perpendicular RS, geometrically, into the several Divisions for the Mouldings, &c. and producing Sl, &c. to the Vanishing Line; then, Lines drawn from each Division, on RS, to the respective Vanishing Point of each Jamb, will divide each Window into its several divisions of Mouldings, Sash Squares, &c. and, by the same means, all the Curves, in the Mouldings, &c. at the Top, may be described with the greatest accuracy.

If the Jambs of each Window be parallel between themselves, then, a Right Line, So, bisecting the Angle lSm, &c. will produce the Vanishing Point of each respectively, and each Jamb must, in that Case, be divided geometrically, on the Angle, into the several Divisions required.

The Entablature may also be proportioned on BK, the same as on AD, on the other Side; which will be more accurate, than to depend entirely on the proportions being carried around, from the other Side; which, as they diminish so much, are liable to error.

In the Columns, at the farther End, there is nothing particular, their places being obtained; which, as the Line they are in is inclined to the Picture, are determined by Prob. 8th, thus.

The Angle f at the foot of the Pilaster being obtained, draw fj parallel to the Ground Line, which divide, geometrically, in the Proportion required; that is, $f1$, equal $j4$, is the Distance of the Column, at the Plinth, from the Wall; and 12 , equal 34 , is the width of the Plinth of the Column; from all which, draw Lines to V, cutting the inclined Line, in which the Columns stand, in the perspective proportions of the Columns and Spaces; which may be completed from the known proportions of the Order, as in former Examples.

* This is not strictly true, prs not being parallel to the Vanishing Line; but, being so little inclined, the deviation is inconsiderable.

Pl. XXX. If rs be taken, geometrically, the width of the Door, &c. in proportion to the Columns and spaces, Lines drawn to V will give the place of the Door, at the farther End, which may be compleated, by Example 20.

The Figure of the Cieling has nothing of difficulty in it, being composed of Right Lines, and circular ones, regularly disposed; which, from the geometrical Figure, may easily be determined.

If MN be considered as the Intersection of the Picture with the Cieling, the Divisions on MN are geometrically disposed; from which, Lines are drawn to V ; and the several Divisions, in the length, being found perspectively, on GV or NV , Lines drawn to the other Vanishing Point will cut each Line, drawn to V , in the ratio required; by which, the perspective Figure is formed on the Picture.

E X A M P L E XLII.

Is the Representation of the inside of the Piazza, Covent Garden, from the farther corner of the entrance into the Playhouse.

The Position of the Picture being determined, and consequently, the Inclination of the Lines, in which the Piers stand, is known.

Fig. 2. Let C be the Center of the Picture, EV is the Horizontal Line, and V is the Vanishing Point of one Side of the Piers, found, or determined at pleasure; the other is out of the Picture, on the Left, found as usual; the Distance of the Picture is six Inches and a half, nearly*.

Let AB be the Intersection of the Picture, i. e. the Ground Line, and, let S be the determined Seat (on the Picture) of the corner of the Pier, on the Ground, its Distance from the Picture being known.

Because there is not room, on the Picture, to set off its whole Distance, take CE half the Distance; and make SD half the distance of the corner of the Pier; draw DE cutting SC in a , the true place of that Corner, on the Picture.

Draw a V , the indefinite Representation of one Side of the Piers, and a Y , to the other Vanishing Point, whose Distance, from C , is nine inches and three fourths.

Draw a d parallel to AB ; and having transferred the full measure of the Piers and Arches from AB , the Ground Line, to a d (by means of the Vanishing Point C , or any other) at b , c , and d , draw Lines to E , the Distance Point, of V , giving their places, at a b , and c d , &c. the rest may be obtained to any length, required, by Example 4th. a d may be the Ground Line, by a less Scale.

On the returning Angle, they are obtained by the same measures, applied on the other Side, by the Point F the distance Point of Y .

Produce Va to the Ground Line, cutting it at A , and draw AH perpendicular, on which, set up, from A , the measures of the heights of the Piers, &c. at G and I ; from which, draw Lines to V . Perpendiculars, from a , b , c , &c. cutting them at e , f , g , &c. give the Piers.

From, a e , the common Intersection, they are returned on the other Side, to the Left.

The circular Arches are all constructed by Exam. 21, as the one on the Left; and the Curves over them, by means of Ordinates ab , cd , &c. their heights being set off from e to i and k , &c. the true Curve being determined (see Fig. 119) and as many Ordinates drawn as are requisite, they are returned on both Sides.

The flat Arches and Borders, from the Piers to the Wall may be thus described.

Produce Ya and Ye , and having found the Point J (Prob. 8.) in the middle of the whole width; from J draw a Perpendicular, cutting Ye and Yk , produced, at l and m ; m is the middle Point of the Arch; which might be determined as J , below, by the same Problem.

* Let it be observed, that the Distance, here used, is too little; but, being a true Portrait of so public a Place, I thought proper to dispense with it; by representing it as it appears, from the Station determined above. See Preliminary Observations, Page 117.

Draw lV and mV ; and, from the Vanishing Point Y , produce Lines through g, j , &c. from each Pier at the foot of the Arches, cutting lV at n and p , &c. from which, draw Perpendiculars, cutting mV at o and q , &c. the height of each Arch, respectively; as lm, no , and pq .

Then, by means of several Ordinates, as ab, cd , &c. perspectively found, on the Base Line of the Arch, at a, c, e , &c. (see Fig. 119, Pl. 29, for the geometrical construction) their several heights are set off on ek , and projected, by the Vanishing Point Y , cutting Perpendiculars from a, c, e ; by which means, half the Curve of the first Arch is described, as $ebdfm$; the other half is determined by the same means, and all the other Arches after the same manner, by drawing Lines from the Seats, a, c, e , &c. of the Ordinates, to V , cutting the Base Line of each Arch, as gn , at $1, 2, 3$, &c; from which, Ordinates being drawn, and Right Lines from b, d, f , &c. to V , cutting them at $2, 4, 6$, &c. then, through their Intersections, the Curve $g4ov u$ is described.

Thus, having obtained all the Arches, or Borders, the Groins are easily determined. The middle Points, r, s, t , &c. are in the Line mV (allowing somewhat for the thickness of the Border) and by means of several horizontal Ordinates, whose Vanishing Point is V , drawn from b, d, f , &c. their lengths, from those Points, as bg, db, fi , &c. are determined, by the Point E , as in all other similar Cases whatever.

Or, their Seats may be easily obtained on the Floor; or at the foot of the Arch, in the Diagonals fu and gx intersecting at z ; xV being the indefinite Line, at the foot of the Arches, against the Wall, which is hid by the Column.

The Plan of the Plinth of the Column, being determined, from its known measure and place (by its Seat on the Ground Line, or otherwise) there is nothing singular in its construction; save the Blocks or Rustics (W) which are each equal to a Diameter, in height; the space between is the same; they project equal to the Plinth of the Base. Y and V are the Vanishing Points of the horizontal Lines, in the Cornice, &c. The Picture is supposed to cut the Column, consequently its full measures are applied, on BL or somewhat more, seeing it is projected.

The Piazza, on the Right, is seen to the End; and, through the Arch, at K , is seen the front of the next, on the other Side of James Street.

The distant View of the Church and adjacent Buildings, being so little seen, are best sketched from the place; as it would be attended with unnecessary trouble to find their places, &c. perspectively, from their true geometrical proportions and positions. The Rustics, in the Piers, are a Scale for proportioning them.

E X A M P L E XLIII.

Is the Representation of a Staircase, internal; shewing the descending Stairs, direct. Pl. XXXI.

This Lesson, is calculated, not merely for an Inside View, but in order to shew that a descent is represented by the Rules of Perspective, on the same Principles as any other Subject whatever.

In this Example the Window Side is parallel to the Picture, and consequently, the Sides of the Staircase are perpendicular to it; therefore, the Center of the Picture is the Vanishing Point of horizontal Lines, in the Sides.

C is the Center, and HL the Horizontal Vanishing Line; and VL , the Vertical Line, is the Vanishing Line of the Sides of the Staircase.

The Vanishing Lines of the ascending and descending Planes, i. e. of the Stairs, are determined by Prob. 2, making CE equal to the Distance of the Picture, and the Angle CEF equal to the inclination of the Stairs to the Horizon. Make CG equal CF , and through F and G , draw Lines parallel to the Horizon; one is the Vanishing Line of the ascent, the other of the descent; and because they are, in this Case, parallel, the Vertical Line, VL , is common to them all†, and consequently, F and G are the Centers of those Vanishing Lines, respectively, and their Distance is EF , equal EG . (Theo. 4, and Def. 20.)

† Theo. 7,
Cor. 2.

As

Pl. XXIX. As this is a circumstance which has occasioned some disputes amongst Artists, I shall display it in the best light I can, and doubt not I shall do it satisfactorily.

Fig. 120. In order to which, let Fig. 120 represent a Section of the Staircase, geometrical, by half the Scale of the Picture; AB is the descent, from the landing, at AD, on which the Spectator is supposed to stand, at ED; E is the Eye or Point of View, and EC is the Distance of the Picture, of which AH is a section. AK is the flight of Stairs, immediately ascending, as AB is descending, and KI is the under side of the next flight, over them, parallel to AB.

Now, because the Vanishing Point of every original Right Line is where a parallel from the Eye cuts the Picture†, and EC the Direct Radial, produces the Center, C is the Vanishing Point of the sides of the Half pace BL, and of the extremes of the Steps, as may be seen in the Picture; also, EF, and EG, being parallel respectively to the Ascent, AK, and Descent, AB, consequently, F and G are the Vanishing Points of all Lines, on the Picture, parallel to them (as the Hand-Rails, the Wainscoting at the Sides, &c.) and consequently, Planes passing through the Eye and those Lines, respectively, parallel to the Stairs, must cut the Picture in the Lines IK and MN passing through F and G, respectively, and therefore they are their Vanishing Lines. (Def. S.)

This I presume is sufficiently intelligible; and, if Visual Rays are drawn to the several Parts of the Staircase, they will determine what can be seen and what cannot; as EB determines how much the Descent rises on the Picture, which it cuts at b; Ab is, therefore, its whole Appearance. The ascending Flight, parallel to AK, it is evident, is seen on the under Side, as the Visual Ray EM evinces; and consequently, it descends on the Picture.

CE, the Distance of the Picture, it must be observed, is too little, for taking in so much as is here represented; but it is manifest, that, if the Distance was a fourth part more, we should not see the descending Stairs at all, as the Eye would be either in the Plane of the Stairs, or on the other Side.

Pl. XXXI. Let AB be the Intersection of the Picture with the landing of the Stairs, which in this Case, is the Ground Line, the Picture being supposed close to the Stairs; all that lies on this Side is projected to the Picture; as the Door on the Landing, and Ceiling, as well as the Floor; and it is obvious, that, whatever appears to descend, below the Landing, has its place on the Picture above the Ground Line; consequently, it rises on the Picture.

Make BD equal to the known width of the Stairs, the width of the whole, being represented by AB; the Station is determined by the Vertical Line, VL.

Draw BG and DG, to the center of the Vanishing Line MN; the Originals of those Lines being perpendicular to the Intersection, AB; in which Lines are all the upper edges, or nosings of the Steps; whose places are obtained by Prob. 8th.

Make GE equal EG, the Distance of the Vanishing Line MN, or IK (Def. 20) Make Ba, ab, &c. double Aa, ab, &c. (Fig 120) and draw aE, bE, &c. by which means their places a, b, c, &c. are obtained on the Picture; and parallel Lines, ad, &c. being drawn, give the edges of the Steps; the Ends, being at right angles with the Picture, vanish in its Center; therefore, draw Ca, Cb, &c. and produce them to the next Step; and thus the descending Stairs are completed.

The Half paces below, at X, and above, at Y, being horizontal; their Sides, consequently, vanish in the Center, C; also, the ends of all the Steps, every where. The width of the Half pace being equal to the Steps, draw eC and fE cutting eC at g, which gives the Angle gb, at the farther end of the Staircase.

The height may be determined on a Perpendicular from B, as BJ, and drawing JC.

The ascending Flight is managed by Example 9th in every respect. The Vanishing Point of the Hand Rails, Wainscoting, &c. of that Flight is at F, as well as of the Lines de and fg, of the Plane defg, being parallel to those below; the other, with the Lines in the Plane Z, is at G.

The height of the Hand Rails, &c. are set up on the Intersection BJ, as Bh; and from D, as Di, allowing for the ramping Curve, equal ik.

The

Fig. 1.

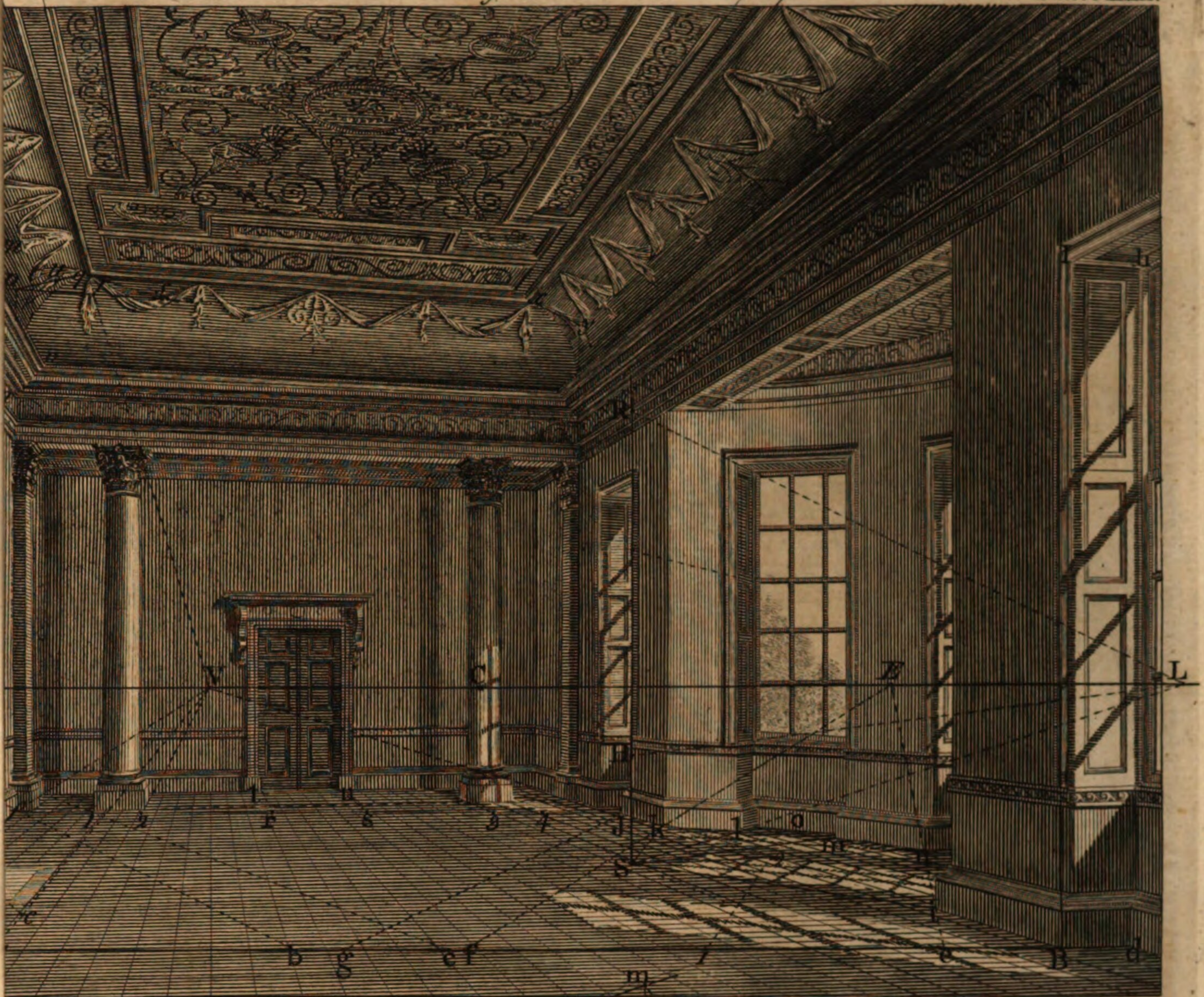
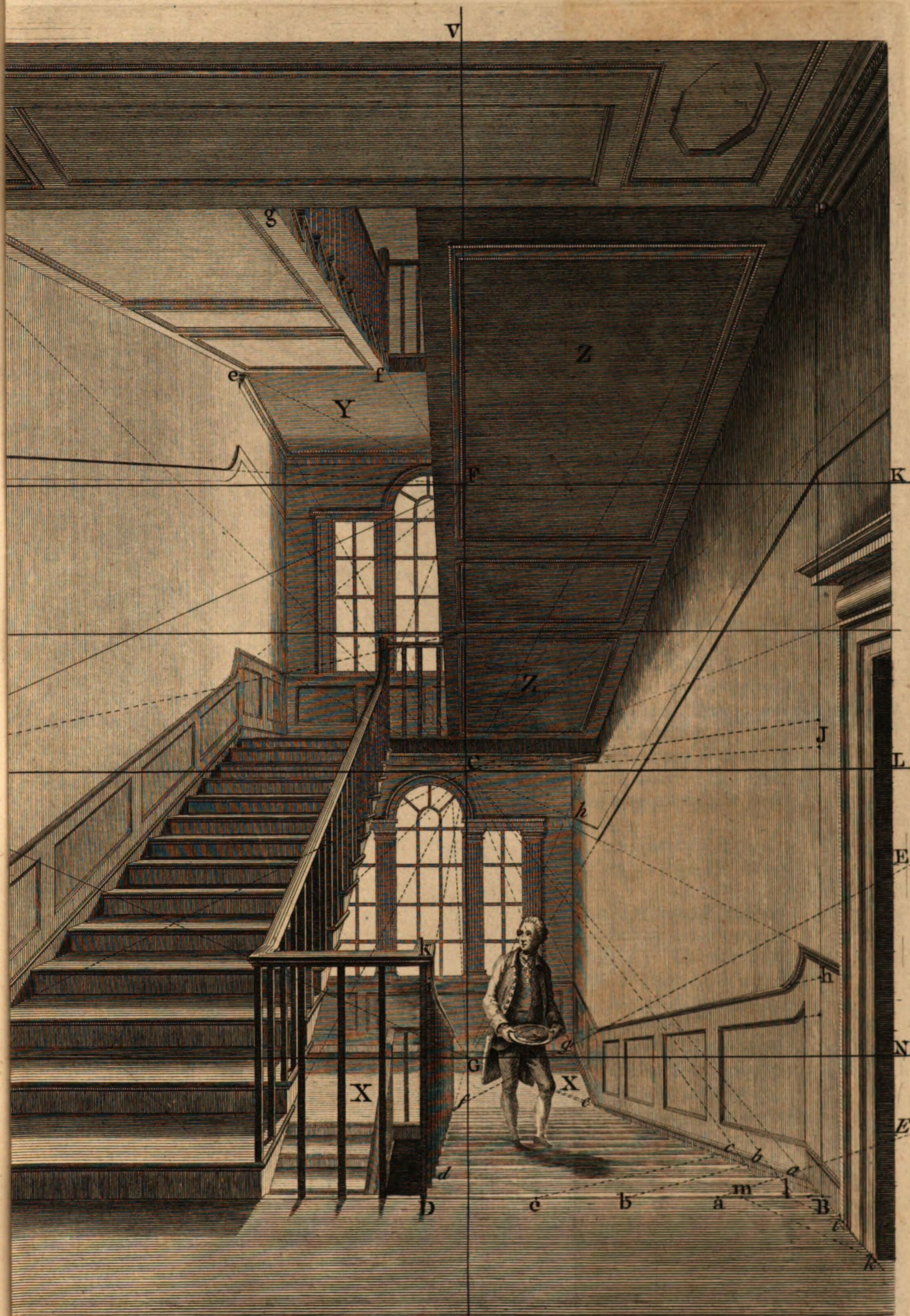


Fig. 2.





Publiſh'd by T. Malton March 1st 1775. L

Mazell Sculp.

This image shows a blank, aged, cream-colored page, likely an endpaper or flyleaf of a book. The paper has a textured appearance with visible creases, discoloration, and faint, illegible markings near the bottom edge. The overall tone is warm and slightly mottled, characteristic of old paper.

The panneling of the Wainscot is divided in the ratio required, as in any other Case, by Prob. 8th, making use of the Distance EG, not EC, for the inclined part.

The Windows may be proportioned on $g b$, at the farther end, geometrical.

The Cornices, and other Mouldings, are managed by the Lessons in Sect. 7.

The Architrave around the Door, being projected, is thus done.

Make Bl, lm, equal, respectively, to its distance from the Steps, and width of the Architrave, and draw El, Em, projecting those measures to CB, produced, cutting it at i and k , and giving ik for the Architrave.

The Cieling is projected in the same manner; and all beyond BP.

AOPB is the Section of the whole by the Picture; OP is the Intersection with the Ceiling, and AO and BP with the sides of the Staircase; on which Intersections, all the measures are applied, for each Plane respectively.

OF HORIZONTAL PICTURES.

Horizontal Pieces are considered, by many, as performed by Rules different from vertical Pictures; whereas, they are the same, in every respect, being founded on an universal Theory, which regards no particular position of the Picture; but only, the positions of the Planes and Lines in Objects, to the Picture, and to the Eye. For, however the Picture be situated, the Eye being considered as a Point, can have but one position to a Plane; and consequently, its Center and Distance, being determined by a Perpendicular from the Eye to the Plane, are the same in all positions of the Plane, respecting the Horizon, to which we are naturally partial; but, being properly considered, we shall find it of no consequence in the Theory of Perspective.

Let the Picture be situated as it may, all Original Lines perpendicular to the Picture vanish in its Center (Cor. to Th. 6.) Planes, or Lines, being parallel to the Picture, have no Vanishing Line, or Vanishing Point; but, in such Case, the representations of all Figures, in Objects so situated, are similar to the Originals (Th. 10, Cor. 5) also, all Original Lines, however inclined to the Picture, vanish in that Point, where a parallel Line from the Eye would cut the Picture; and consequently, all Lines, which are parallel, amongst themselves, have the same Vanishing Point (Th. 5, Cor. 1.) with every other circumstance in the Theory given, which is quite general, and cannot possibly regard any particular position of the Picture, to the Horizon.

The Representations of most Objects (in common Cases) on a vertical Picture, are managed by means of the Horizontal Vanishing Line, only; but, in many Cases, other Vanishing Lines are requisite.

The Horizontal Plane, which, in other Cases, produces the Horizontal Vanishing Line, is, in this Case, parallel to the Picture, and consequently cannot cut it; for it is the Directing Plane, of Pictures in such position. (Def. 4.) The theoretic construction of the elementary Planes is the same, however the Picture be situated. All the difficulty seems to be in fixing the Vanishing Lines, in this Case, having no particular bias, in respect of the Horizon.

As, in all common Cases, the Horizontal Line and Vertical Line cut each other, at right angles, in the Center; so, in this, two Lines cutting each other, perpendicularly, in the Center, answer the same purpose, either of which may be considered as the Horizontal Vanishing Line; for, if the Picture be changed to a vertical position, and, the Objects being supposed changed with it, keeping their position to the Picture, it is then a common Case, in every circumstance; the placing of those Lines, most conveniently, is therefore the principal business.

Now, if the Piece be viewed centrally, it is immaterial how they are drawn, for representing a Dome only; but, if we would represent the Inside of any prismatic Object, whatever, it is most eligible to draw the Vanishing Lines parallel to its Sides, as AB and DE; because they are, then, the Vanishing Lines of those Planes, respectively. But, if the View be not central, then, one of the Lines (DE)

Fig. 121.

Pl XXXII. generally passes through the center (C) of its Base and divides the Dome equally; Fig. 121. which may be considered as the Vertical Line of the Picture; the other (FG) as the Horizontal Line; S being the Center of the Picture, whose Distance is known.

The chief difficulty, in Cieling pieces, is the representing Objects in such unnatural Positions, they being seen on the under sides, instead of looking direct at them, as standing before us, upright, in common Cases; and are represented as if lying horizontal, in respect of a vertical or upright Picture; in which, the difference consists, wholly. The Cielings, Soffits of Doors and Windows, Plan- ceers of Cornices, &c. are, in this Case, parallel to the Picture, as, in other Cases, they are perpendicular to it; being thus reversed, and seldom practised, makes the difficulty greater.

There is one particular circumstance attending Cieling pieces; the Center of the Picture is the only Vanishing Point, generally; not owing to the position of the Picture, but of the Objects to be represented. For the Base of the Dome, or whatever else is represented, is always parallel to the Picture; and consequently, all Lines perpendicular to the Base (being also perpendicular to the Picture) vanish in its Center; and, since the Objects to be represented are always upright, there is no occasion for any other Vanishing Point; as, all Right Lines, in the Objects represented, are either parallel or perpendicular to the Picture. Nor can it be otherwise, unless represented on an inclined Cieling; in which Case, there may be as much variety of Vanishing Lines and Points, as in any other.

These Preliminaries being well considered and digested the difficulty will vanish, and leave the whole, subject to the same common Rules already laid down; for there are no other used, or necessary.

E X A M P L E XLIV.

How to represent on a Cieling, or horizontal Picture, the representation of a Gallery of Communication; with a Dome and Cupola, as seen from below.

Fig. 122. ABCD is a geometrical half Plan of the Gallery, &c. to be represented, which is a Square, suppose of 30 feet; and BFGHC is a Section of the same. The height, BF, to the Cove, is 18 feet, the Cove 3 feet, and the Base of the Dome (which is a Hemisphere) is 24 feet. Through the Arches, in the middle of three Sides, Galleries are supposed to communicate to various Appartments, above.

The Base of the Gallery being a Square, and the Picture horizontal, consequently parallel to its Base, its representation is therefore a Square.

Fig. 123. Describe a Square, AHIB, of the dimensions you intend the Picture, which is here, double that of the Plan.

The Station being determined, and the Distance of the Picture, which, in this Case, cannot admit of much variation, from the true, to any Eye which views it. For, I suppose, every Cieling Piece is calculated to be seen from some particular Station, below; and every Person who would see the Piece, truly, must stand in the same place; consequently, the difference, in Distance, is equal to the different heights of the Spectators.

Suppose the Hall, or Saloon, to be a Cube of 30 feet; then, allowing 5 feet for the height of the Eye, its Distance from the Cieling is 25 feet, which is the Distance of the Picture; upon which, is to be represented, a continuation of the Walls, &c. with the Entablature, from B to F, near 20 feet, with the Cove, Dome, and Cupola, covering the whole.

Now, the Distance of the Picture is 25 feet, which is not equal to its width, but cannot, here, be more, unless the Spectator be supposed to sit or lie down. Then, as, in common Cases, the height of the Eye is next to be determined, so, in this, the place of the Eye in respect of the Picture; which, I would never advise to be in the middle of the Piece, as it cannot produce an agreeable Representation; seeing that, the longitudinal Lines in the Dome (which in that Case are represented by Right Lines) will be but so many Radii of a Circle tending to its Center,

Center, as aC , bC , &c. (Fig. 124) and, the latitudinal Circles will be so many concentric Circles, as abc , abc , &c. also, every Side of the Room will advance equally towards the Center.

Therefore, let the Station be determined towards one Side or another, where the Cieling may be seen most advantageously; nor is it necessary to be situated centrally, in that Side; although it is a deviation from my general Maxim, of fixing the Center of View in the middle of the Picture; but, since the position of the Picture cannot, in this Case, be varied, I shall rather dispense with it than have duplicate Representations.

Let C , then, be the Center of View; somewhat to the Right hand. Let AB be considered as the Ground Line; and if, through C , a Right Line, EF , be drawn, parallel to AB , it may be considered as the Horizontal Line of the Picture; and DG , perpendicular to AB , also passing through C , is the Vertical Line, i. e. they are the Vanishing Lines of the Sides of the Square Room respectively.

The Galleries, on three Sides, which are supported by Trusses from the Walls, are first to be represented; which I have made to project but three feet, as they would hide the Walls too much if they projected more.

Now, since the Picture is parallel to the Trusses, and they are spaced equally, divide the three Sides AH , HI , and BI , geometrically, into as many spaces and Trusses as are to be represented, at X , X , and describe their Seats on the Picture, truly geometrical. Then, the Lines which measure their thickness or height, being perpendicular to their Bases, and to the Picture, vanish in its Center, as in all common Cases whatever.

Make CE equal to the Distance of the Picture, in the Vanishing Line EF ; draw their indefinite Representations, as aC , bC , &c. and proportion them in height, making a equal to the height, and draw aE , cutting aC at b ; which, by drawing parallel Lines, to AH , HI , &c. will determine them all around.

The Cieling of the Gallery, between each Truss, is consequently determined. The under side of the Truss is like an Ionic Modilion, having, also, a Cimma reversa, around the top; which, the Figure sufficiently describes.

The Cornice of the Gallery is described as any other; save only, that the Facias, or upright Fillets, are contracted, in this Case, as the under Sides, or Planceers, in common; the difference is owing to the position of the Picture only, the appearance is the same; as it is illustrated in Fig. 125.

Let AB be the Profile of a Cornice, seen from the Point E , by means of the Visual Rays AE , BE , &c. If the Rays are cut by a vertical Plane (Ab) the representations of the several Angles, at C , D , &c. are where the Rays are cut by the Plane, at c , d , &c. and a horizontal Plane, Ba , cuts the same Rays, at a , c , d , &c. It is manifest, that the proportions of the Members, on those Planes or Pictures, differ considerably, yet it is obvious, that each appears the same, in the Point of View, E ; the difference, in the Representations, arising from the different Sections of the Rays, as in any other Case.

For the Iron work, which is in the Plane of the Facia of the Cornice, from each internal Angle, k , draw kC . Make Ad equal to its width, and de equal to its known height, from the Cieling (equal twice de , Fig. 122) and draw eE , cutting dC at f ; draw fg parallel to AH , and gh parallel to HI ; also fi , parallel to AB , cutting cC , where it joins the Wall, on the other Side.

The divisions and proportions of the Railing are determined, geometrically, on dk , &c. at c , d , &c. from which, Lines are drawn to C .

The Gallery, with the Ballustrade, being compleated, we next proceed with the decorations of the Walls, seen beyond or over it.

Having drawn, geometrically, the Plans, or Seats of the Pilasters, with all the projectures of the mouldings of the Pedestal, &c. at Y , Y ; from each exterior

* dk is the Intersection of the Plane $dfgk$ of the Ballustrade, distant from AH , equal Ad , i. e. equal to its known distance from the Walls; consequently, d is the Intersecting Point of that Angle.

For, because the Picture is parallel to the Base of the whole, the section of every Plane with it, being perpendicular, is geometrically determined; therefore, the Intersecting Point of every Perpendicular Line in the Objects, as d or k of the Angles of the Ballustrade, is readily found, its distance from each Wall being known, or determined; the whole being a true geometrical Plan.

Angle, draw Lines to C, as jC , &c. and from l , set off, first, the height to the Plinth; then, the measures of the Plinth, Mouldings, Dado, &c. of the Pedestal, at m , n , &c. and draw mE , nE , &c. cutting lC in their several perspective Proportions, at e , f , &c. from each of which draw Lines parallel to their Seat, lj , cutting jC , and return them at right angles. From f , draw parallel to the Ground Line, cutting pC , which gives the upper Line of the Dado; the Mouldings are determined as usual.

The Base Moulding is hid by the projecture of the Plinth, and also the Bases of the Pilasters, on this Side, being greatly foreshortened; which, where they can be seen, are managed after the same manner.

From o , p , &c. draw Lines to C; make pq equal to the height of the Capital, from the Cieling, and draw qE , cutting pC , at i , and compleat the square of the Abacus; which being parallel to the Picture, the curvature of it is geometrical.

The Mouldings of the Capital are managed as usual; their measures of height, being obtained, from pq , at r , &c. and their projectures from the Plans below, drawing Lines from each, to C.

The Volute may be determined, from its Plan, below, in respect of its projectures; but to describe it, particularly, would baffle all description.

The Windows, in this Side, and Niches, &c. in the others, are determined geometrically, on AB , &c. the perpendicular Lines of which, vanish in C, and the circular heads are semi-Ellipses, described, by Prob. 3, Sect. 8.

The other Sides are managed after the same manner, from Plans below.

For the Entablature. Let M , N , O , and P , be the Seats of its projecture, on the Picture. Draw MC , NC , &c. Make MQ equal to its height from the Picture, and draw QE , cutting MC at n ; draw no , op , &c. parallel, respectively, to the Sides of the Picture, $nopq$ is the extreme projecture of the Cornice, around.

Make QR , &c. equal to the measures of the Cornice, Frieze, and Architrave, with their several Mouldings; and draw RE , &c. giving them perspective, on MC . Their projectures are determined on the Diagonal, AM , geometrical; or, on Diagonals from n , o , &c. parallel to AM , &c. mn , &c. being divided in the same ratio, as AM , (Cor 2. Th. 10.)

The Square of the Cieling above the Cove is thus determined.

From T and U , the Seats of the projecture of the Cove (in the Diagonals AI and BH) draw TC , and UC ; and, TV being made equal to its height, draw VE , cutting TC at r ; draw rs parallel to the Cornice, and compleat the Square $rstu$; in which, inscribe a Circle; and, concentric with it, another, leaving a border around the Dome; and also, compleat the same within the Square $rstu$.

For, because the Cieling is parallel to the Picture, its perspective form is truly geometrical; consequently, one Side being perspective, the rest are also determined, in the ratio of rs to the Original.

The Angles of the Cove are determined by Ordinates, on the Diagonals rv , &c. at 1, 2, &c. geometrically proportioned, alike on each; and others, on AC , &c. perspective, at 4, 5, &c. from which, Lines drawn parallel to the Diagonals, and others cutting them, from C, drawn through 1, 2, &c. will give Points in the Curve, perspective, at each Angle. (See the geometrical construction, Fig. 126, which determines three Points, a , b , and c , in the Curve, equally spaced.)

To represent the circular Cornice, at the foot of the Dome.

The Frieze or Facia, below the Cornice, is perfectly cylindrical, its height is determined on AC , which represents a Perpendicular from that Angle; on which, every measure of height may be transferred from AB , geometrical, as s , t , u , &c. of the several divisions in the Dome.

From S , the Center of the Base, draw SC , in which Line are the Centers of every Circle in the Dome, &c. for, the representations of all Circles, in Planes which are parallel to the Picture, are Circles; and, because SC represents a Line perpendicular to the Base, in its Center, SC is the Axis of the Dome, and passes through the Center of every Circle in it; which being determined, on SC , or transferred

N. 2.

Fig. E 124.

Fig. D 121.

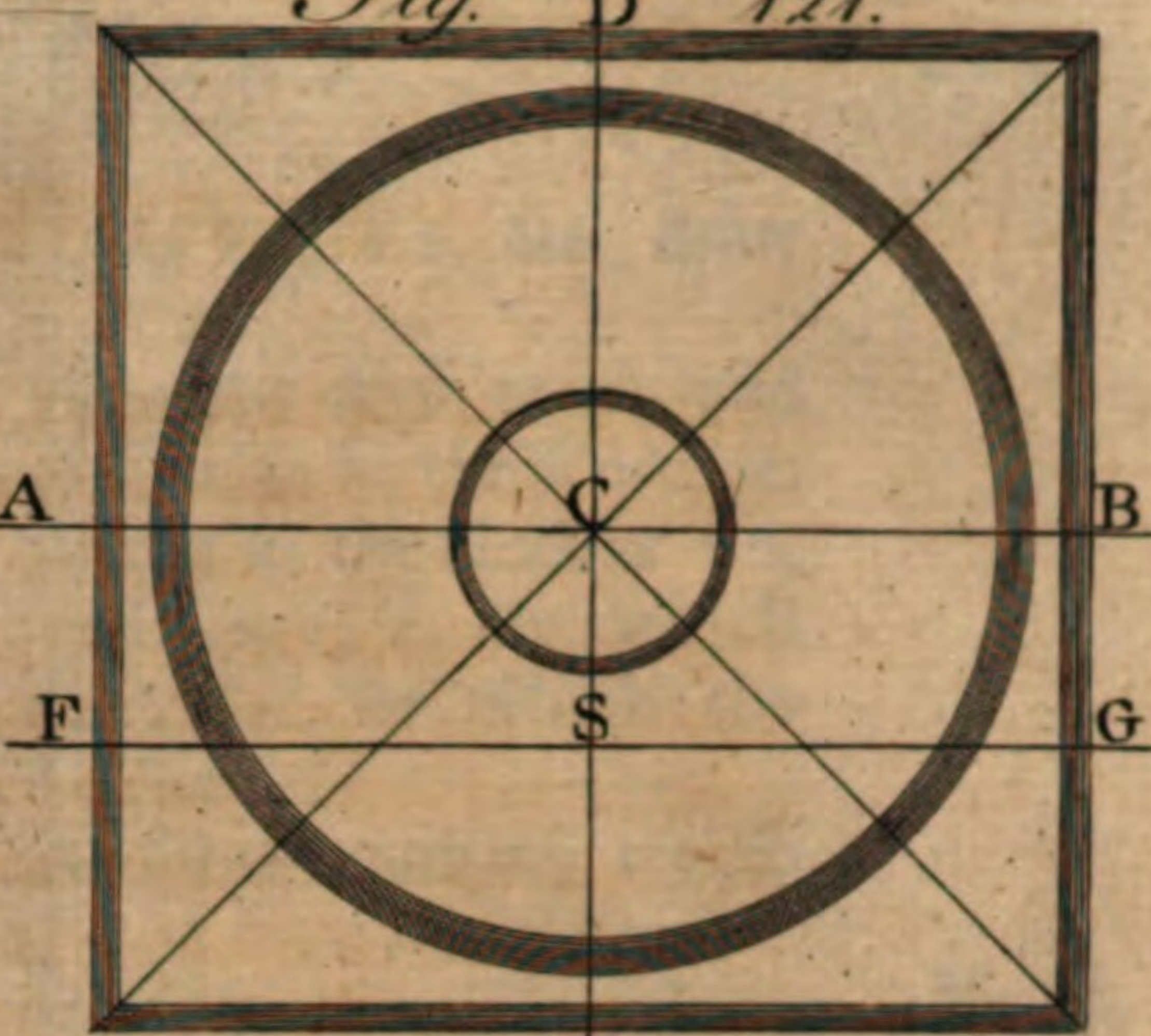
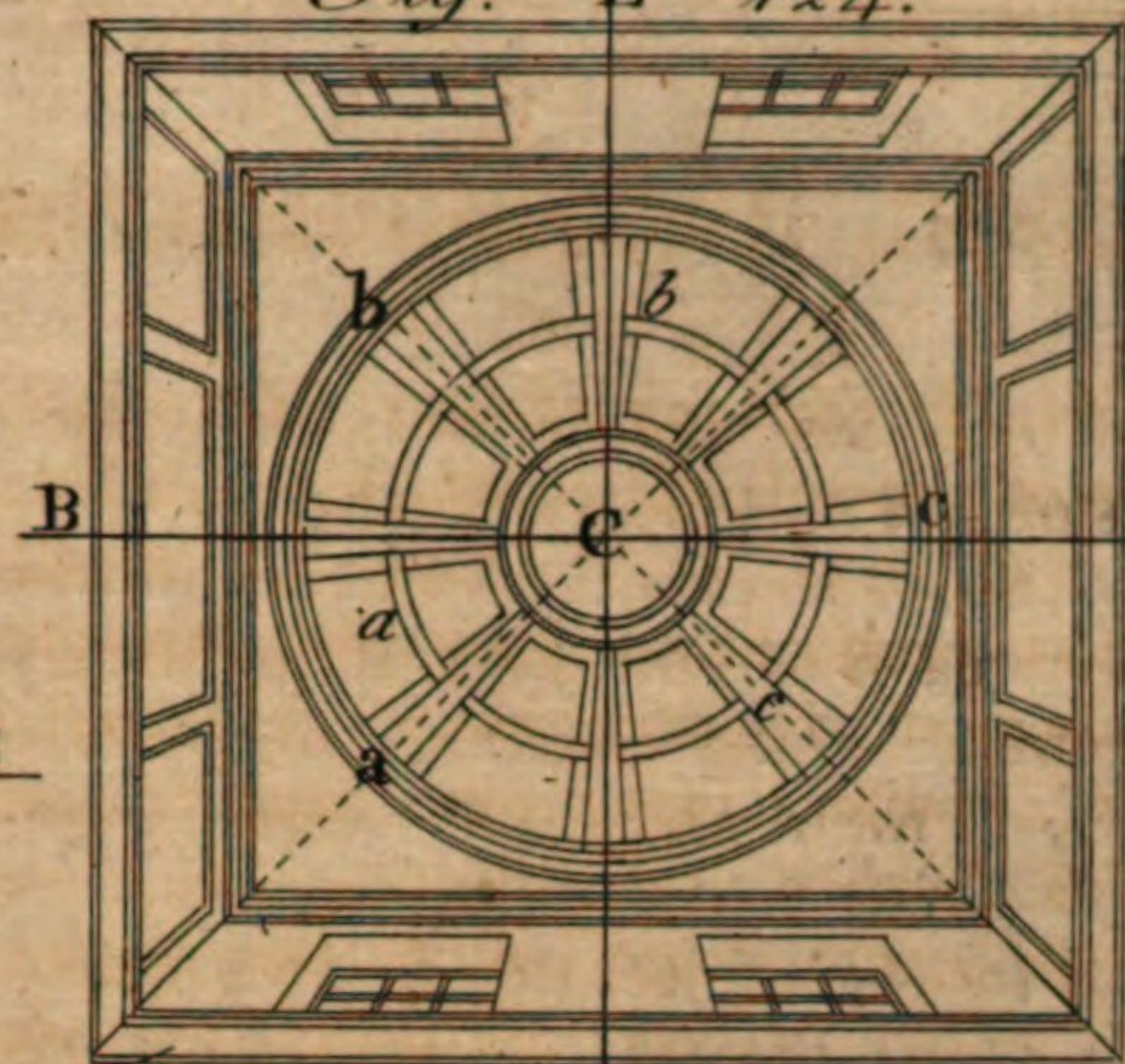
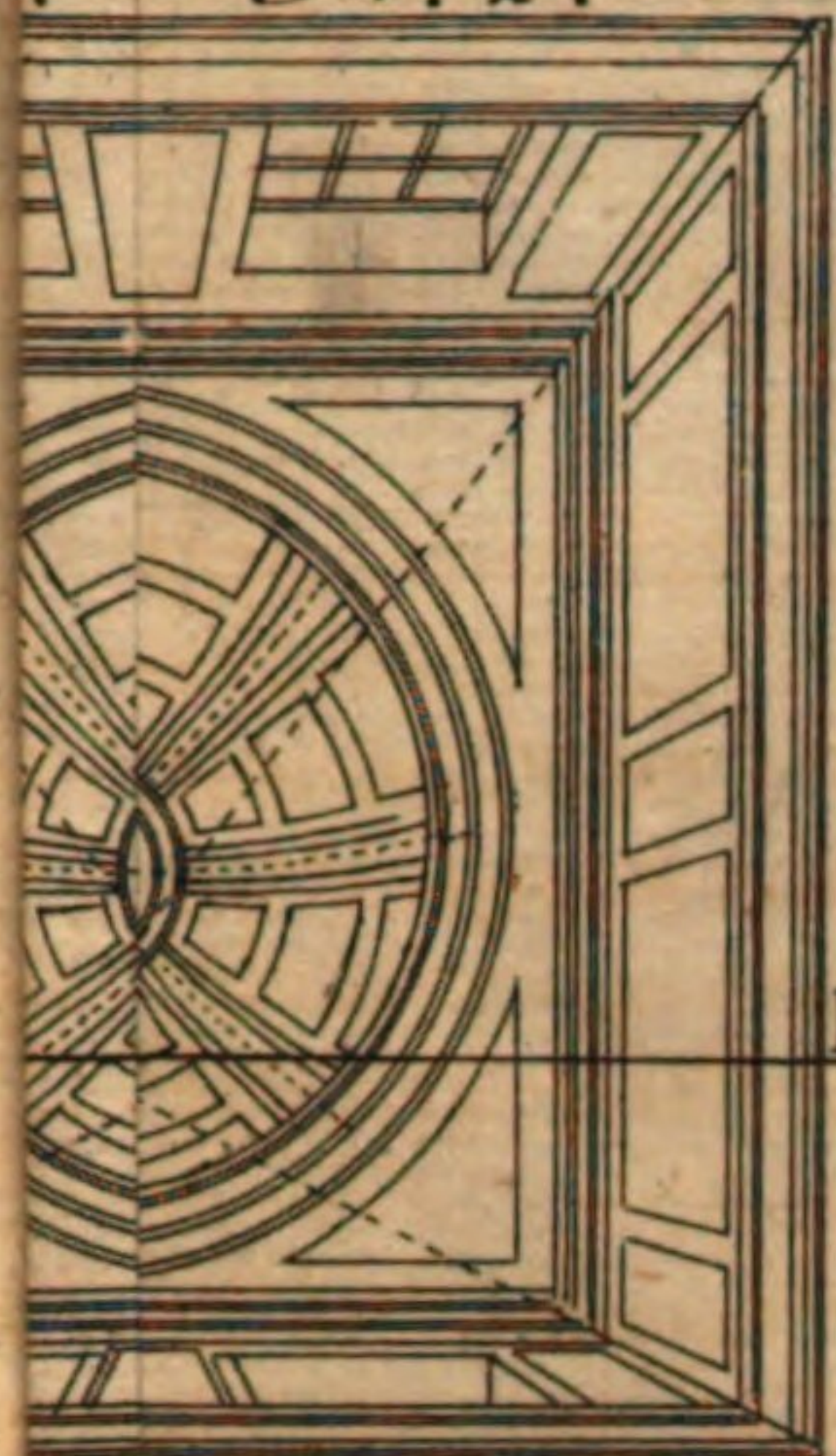


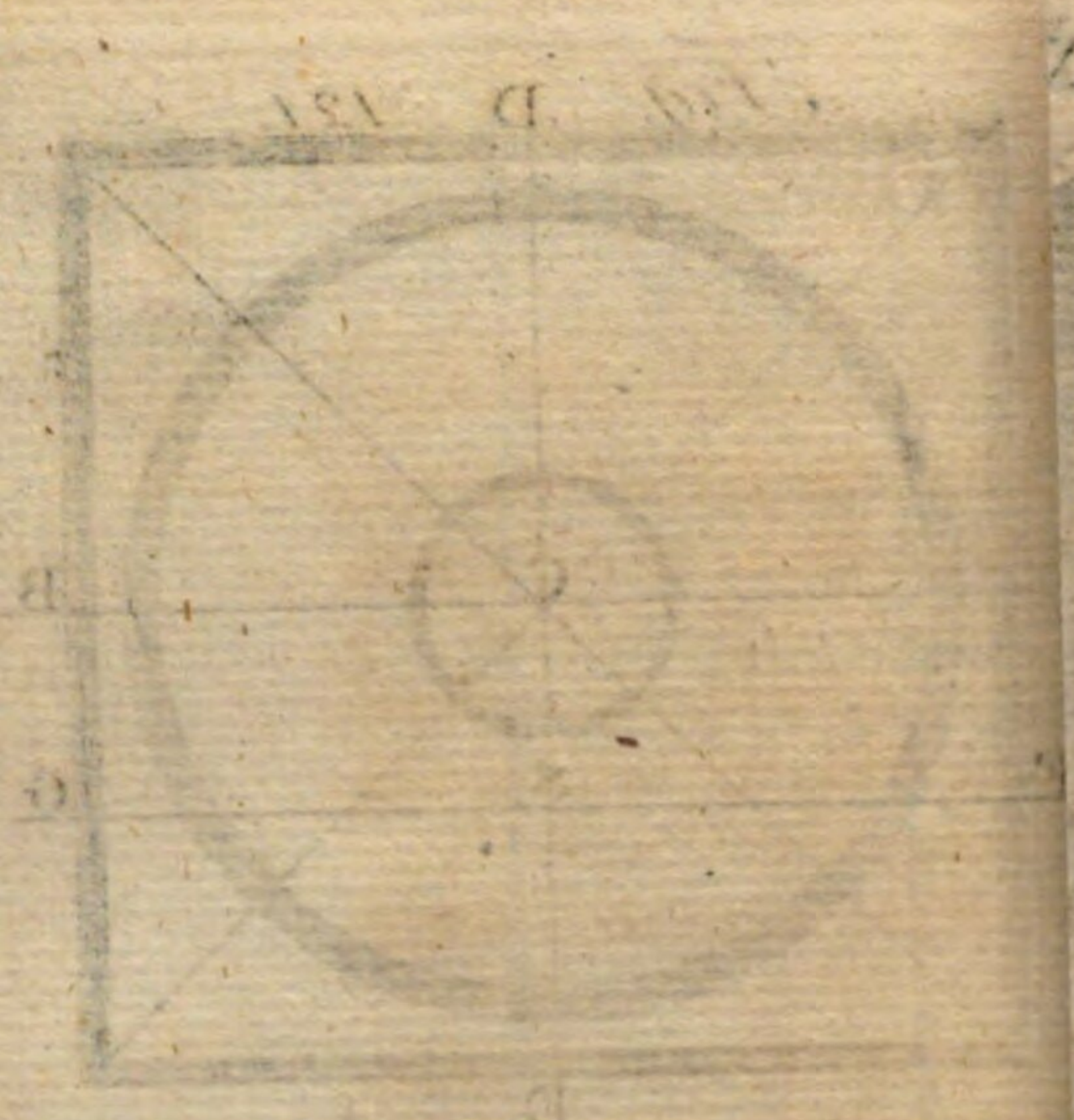
Fig. 123.

D

E



Miller Sculp.



11. 222

11. 222

11. 222

11. 222

11. 222

11. 222

11. 222

11. 222

11. 222

11. 222

11. 222

11. 222

11. 222

11. 222

11. 222

11. 222

11. 222

11. 222

11. 222

11. 222

11. 222

11. 222

11. 222

11. 222

11. 222

11. 222

11. 222

11. 222

11. 222

11. 222

11. 222

11. 222

11. 222

11. 222

11. 222

11. 222

11. 222

11. 222

11. 222

11. 222

11. 222

11. 222

11. 222

11. 222

11. 222

11. 222

11. 222

11. 222

transferred from AC, by lines parallel to the Diagonal AI, as $r\ 1$, $s\ 2$, &c. draw lines through 1 , 2 , &c. parallel to AB.

Now vx is the Diameter of the Base of the Dome, cutting the Axis at o ; and 1 , 2 , &c. are the representations of the several Centers, of Circles in the Cornice.

From v , set off the projectures of the Cornice, in proportion to the Radius vo , at a , &c. from which draw Lines to C, cutting parallel Lines from 1 , 2 , &c. which give the Radius of each Circle in the Cornice, as $1b$, $2c$, &c. by which the Cornice may be completed; being composed, wholly, of Circles.

The parallel Circles in the Dome are determined after the same manner; which are necessary, for describing the longitudinal Borders.

In Fig. 122, draw as many Ordinates parallel to its Base, GI, as are necessary, from the several points a , b , c , equally spaced in the Curve, to the Axis, or central line CH, cutting it at d , e , f . Then, make oa , od , and oe in the same ratio to ov , as ad , &c. to the Radius GI; from which draw lines to C, as aC , dC , eC ; and, from the perspective Centers, 3 , 4 , and 5 , obtained as above, draw parallel lines cutting them at f , g , and h , which give the Radius of each Circle in its true place, viz. $f\ 3$, $g\ 4$, and $h\ 5$, which, last, is the Base of the Cupola.

Divide the Base of the Dome into eight equal parts, at a , b , c , &c. so that, ah and de are parallel to AB, &c. and set off the widths of the Borders regularly from those Points (half on each Side) draw oa , ob , &c. and, from the Centers 3 , 4 , 5 , draw lines parallel to oa , ob , &c. cutting their respective Circumferences at i , k , l , m , &c. through which, Curves being traced, by a careful hand, they are the central Lines of each Border. Their widths may also be set off at each Circle, in proportion to its Radius, as at the Base, by which they are completed.

The Compartments are done after the same manner, from those central Lines, respecting the Margins and Mouldings which are longitudinal; the parallel Mouldings are in Circles parallel to the Base.

The semicircular Compartments, at the Bottom, may be truly determined by several parallel Ordinates, geometrically divided at the Base, and parallel Circles cutting them, as at $jiklm$. The Margin about it may be done by the same means.

The Base of the Cupola being obtained, as above, the Windows in it, are geometrically divided at the Base, and Lines drawn to the Center.

Their apparent height may be obtained on SC or AC, as the other parts.

Thus have I described the whole process of this Cieling Piece, from the beginning to the End; to say more concerning it would be superfluous, as it must be obvious, that the Rules made use of are the same as have been applied in all other Cases, and Subjects whatever.

S E C T I O N XI.

Is applied to Furniture, Wheel Carriages, Machines, &c.

THE foregoing Sections contain the Elements and Rules for the practice of Perspective, in all common Cases; I have also shewn how to apply them, in familiar Lessons and Subjects, adapted to any capacity, in the 6th, 7th, 8th, and 9th Sections; and, in the last, to particular Subjects, and in a particular situation of the Picture; so that, there remains little more to be done in respect of the application of it, to all useful Subjects, almost whatever.

In this Section, which relates to Objects in particular Professions, yet useful to Artists, I shall only make some cursory remarks, in respect of the representations of such Objects as are here treated on. The former Lessons, being well understood,

Plate
XXXIII

will be found applicable to whatever Subject the Artist chuses, or has occasion for. To multiply Cases and Subjects, in which the application of the Rules of Perspective may have the appearance of something particular or singular, would be endless, as, in almost every different Object, there is occasion for some variety in the application of its Rules; which, nevertheless, it is obvious, are all founded on the same universal Principles, though the Rules deduced from them are variously applied.

It is a necessary requisite, in many Professions, to be able to give a Design, to a Gentleman, of whatever may be wanted, out of the common run of things; and though a perfect Drawing may not be required, yet to give a slight sketch with propriety is certainly an Accomplishment which cannot well be dispensed with. In an Architect it is absolutely necessary, to give a correct Design, but they are generally contented with geometrical Representations, which does not give the true appearance and effect; that can only be done perspective. Geometrical Drawings to a Workman are necessary; but to give a true Idea how the Object will appear, when executed from any particular Station, requires somewhat more; to give such an Idea, without knowing something of Perspective, requires a much greater share of genius than falls to the lot of many.

There are few Persons, who have not had a good deal of Practice, in Perspective, know any thing more of it, than the application to Objects, whose Planes are parallel and perpendicular to the Picture, and consequently, have seldom occasion for any other Vanishing Point than the Center of the Picture; they always, therefore, adapt every thing to that position, without thinking about the propriety of it. Some cannot think a Drawing is Perspective, unless an End of the Object is represented; for which reason, we seldom see any Object delineated in Perspective without having an End seen, which, in an Object of a tolerable length, is absurd to represent, the Front being parallel.

E X A M P L E XLV.

Suppose it be required to make a Drawing of a large Library Book-Case.

Fig. 127. In order to give an Idea of the real proportion and figure of such an Object, to a Person, who, perhaps, knows not what Perspective means, and who has no other Idea of its proportion and form, than what the Figure really exhibits, it is most proper to give it parallel, as it is here represented, but by no means to shew an End. The Station is central, and consequently, the Point of View is in the middle. The receding parts, and breaking of the Mouldings around them, sufficiently indicate that it is perspective. I am of opinion that it has a much more natural Appearance, than when viewed oblique, from either End, which always occasions Distortion; as may be seen in Plate 23, Fig. 108.

In respect of the Delineation of it, I shall only observe, that the Plinths of the middle part and the two Ends are in one Plane, which are geometrically proportioned, by the Scale. The parts which recede are determined as usual; for the upper part, proceed thus.

At either Corner, as A, of the Plinth, draw the perpendicular AG; on which, set up all the measures of its height, as AB for the Dado part, with its Base and Sirbase; BD the height of the upper Doors, &c. and DF, FG, of the Cornice, and other decorations, at the Top.

To the Center, C, draw Lines from each division; make Bc equal to the receding of the upper part; or, because the whole Distance cannot be on the Picture, take CE half its Distance, and Ba half Bc, and draw aE, cutting BC at b.

Draw bd perpendicular, cutting the Lines drawn from B, D, &c. to C, which gives the height of the Doors, &c. perspective, according to their distance from the Front. For the widths, make Ba, equal to the projecture of the Mouldings, and ab to the width of the Door, and draw aC and bC cutting a Line drawn from b, parallel to the Base.

The

The other End and middle Door are obtained by the same means. Or, being all in the same Plane, if either the height or width of one be obtained in its place, the whole is determined; for, being parallel to the Picture, the Doors are all represented similar to their Originals; that is, geometrical.

For the Cornice; if CE, on each Side, be made equal to the Distance of the Picture; they are the Vanishing Points of the Diagonals, which are drawn through the Angles at the Top, *e*, *f*, &c. obtained from the Perpendicular at F, transferred to *f*. The general method, in Example 15, for Mouldings parallel to the Picture, is applicable here; X, being the Profile, and E, the Point of View.

The Figure of the Outline of the Pediment is geometrical; which certainly gives the best Idea of its true Figure.

If it be required to see an End of any Object of which a Design is to be made, Fig. 128: the Front should then be inclined to the Picture, as in Fig. 128; which exhibits a representation of a Library Table, by a larger Scale than the foregoing Figure; for however prepossessed many Artists are, in the parallel position of the Picture, I am confident, that, were they practised in inclined Positions, and saw clearly into Perspective, they would not retain their prejudice long. Whenever a single Object is the subject of a Picture, being right angled, and seen oblique, it is most palpably absurd to be placed parallel to either Side; or in any Case, to have the Center of View out of the middle of the Picture.

The delineating this Object has nothing in it particular. The Inclination of it to the Picture and the Distance being determined, the Vanishing Points are determined (Prob. 2 and 4) both which are, in this Piece, out of the Picture.

S is the Center, and d the Distance Point, by which the Front is proportioned; the measures being applied on the Ground Line, AB, as usual, at *a* and *b*, for the Front; which give *a* and *b*, on AB, the line of the Plinth, on the Floor, tending to its Vanishing Point.

As there is not room on the Ground Line to set off the full measure of the End, take Ae a third part, and let *f* be in proportion, to the Distance of the Vanishing Point of the Lines in the End; then, *ef* cuts AD in the perspective length required.

From each Angle, A, B, and D, Perpendiculars are drawn, and the real measures of the heights of the Drawers, &c. being applied on EF, where the Seat of the Plane they are in, on the Floor, cuts the Intersection, lines drawn to the Vanishing Point of the front lines, give their perspective heights.

Perpendiculars from *a* and *b* determine the opening; and if, from *b*, a line be drawn to the Vanishing Point of the End, and another from D, to the other, of the Front, cutting the former, at *c*, the perspective width of the inside End is determined. The Mouldings are done as usual.

E X A M P L E XLVI.

Is the representation of a large Chamber-Organ.

Fig. 129.

It would be downright tautology to repeat over again the method of proceeding, in obtaining the general proportions, which are subject to one general Rule (Prob. 8) the measures, or their ratio to each other in proportion to the Distance used, being always applied on the Intersection of whatever Plane the Lines are in, or on a Line parallel to it; as on AB, for the Piers, &c. I shall, therefore, pass over that description, and only explain the Parts, where there is any apparent difficulty.

The Finger-Board, *ac*, is usually made to draw out, the length of the Keys, about 6 Inches. Its place being acquired, and V being the Vanishing Point of the End, draw Va, and produce it; draw *ae* parallel to the Ground Line, make *ae* represent 6 Inches, in proportion to the length, and draw *Ee*, till it cuts Va produced, at *b*; and, from *b*, draw *bc* to the other Vanishing Point, of the Front, by the Expedients, Problem 13.

Plate XXXIII Fig. 129. Draw bd parallel; and, on bd , set off, from b , as many divisions as there are Keys; join dc and produce it to the Vanishing Line cutting it at D ; to which Point, draw Lines from all the divisions 1, 2, &c. which give the Keys.

The Mouldings, breaking about the Piers, &c. have nothing singular in them. I shall next shew how the Pipes, &c. are delineated, which are the principal business.

The Column of Pipes, at each End, are Segments of Circles containing five Pipes each, which are unequal; let their Perspective Plans be formed above, at X and Y ; from their extreme Edges, a , b , &c. draw perpendiculars, as shewn by the dotted Lines, giving the places, below, of the cylindrical Part.

The Mouth of each Pipe, at f , &c. is at about one fourth part of their height, from which it is conical, inverted. The Ornaments, at the tops and bottoms, are regular, from the middle Pipe, which it would be impossible to describe; their Figure being known, such minutias are drawn by the Eye.

The Pediment, and middle compartments of Pipes, being inclined, it may be necessary to shew how they are described perspectively.

Let the geometrical Figure of the Pediment be the same as in the Book Case (Fig. 128) which, inscribe in a Rectangle, and draw Ordinates parallel to both Sides, from various points in the Curve, as in that Figure.

The Cornice, at the End, being described, as usual, and the Angle F determined, draw FI to the Vanishing Point of the Front; and make FI represent the Distance of the two extreme Angles; at each of which, draw Perpendiculars.

Make FG equal to the height of the Pediment in proportion to the whole height, which divide in the same Ratio as HI (Fig. 128) from all which, draw lines to the Vanishing Point of the Front; and having divided GH perspectively, as IK (Fig. 128) perpendiculars drawn from each division, cutting the other, give the Points a , b , c , &c. through which the perspective curve is described.

The middle Column, or Pilaster of Pipes, projects somewhat from the Face.

If the geometrical figure of the two Sides be also determined; then, on dg , take the divisions e , f , &c. geometrical, and draw lines to the Vanishing Point; let the horizontal Line gk be divided perspectively, at h , i , &c. from which, perpendiculars being drawn, cutting the other at m , n , &c. give several Points in the Figure. The rest may be drawn, accurately enough, by hand.

The proportion of the Pipes may be determined on any horizontal Line crossing them, as gk , either above or below as is most convenient; dividing it perspectively, in the ratio of the Pipes (by Prob. 8) as they are all in the same Plane.

The mitre Angle, of the straight Mouldings with the circular, must be determined by a geometrical Plan, which varies according to what portion of the Circle is taken; also, where it falls against the Plane, their projectures may vary considerably; in a Semicircle they have their true projecture.

It is unnecessary to give more examples of Furniture, seeing that, if the Rules of Perspective, here used, be clearly understood, the Examples, given, are sufficient for any Person who is clear in the Principles on which they are founded; and may, by such be applied in any Case, whatever, in right lined Objects. Nevertheless, as Chairs, from the various directions of the Lines in them, are somewhat difficult to delineate, I shall give one specimen, how far the Rules of Perspective are applicable to such Objects.

E X A M P L E XLVII.

Fig. 130.

How to represent a Chair, perspectively.

The position, and inclination of its Front to the Picture being determined, and the representation of the hither Angle, a , b , of its Foot, given at discretion, to the scale of the Design you intend.

Let V be the Vanishing Point of horizontal Lines, in the front of the Chair. C is the Center of the Picture, and CE its Distance.

Let

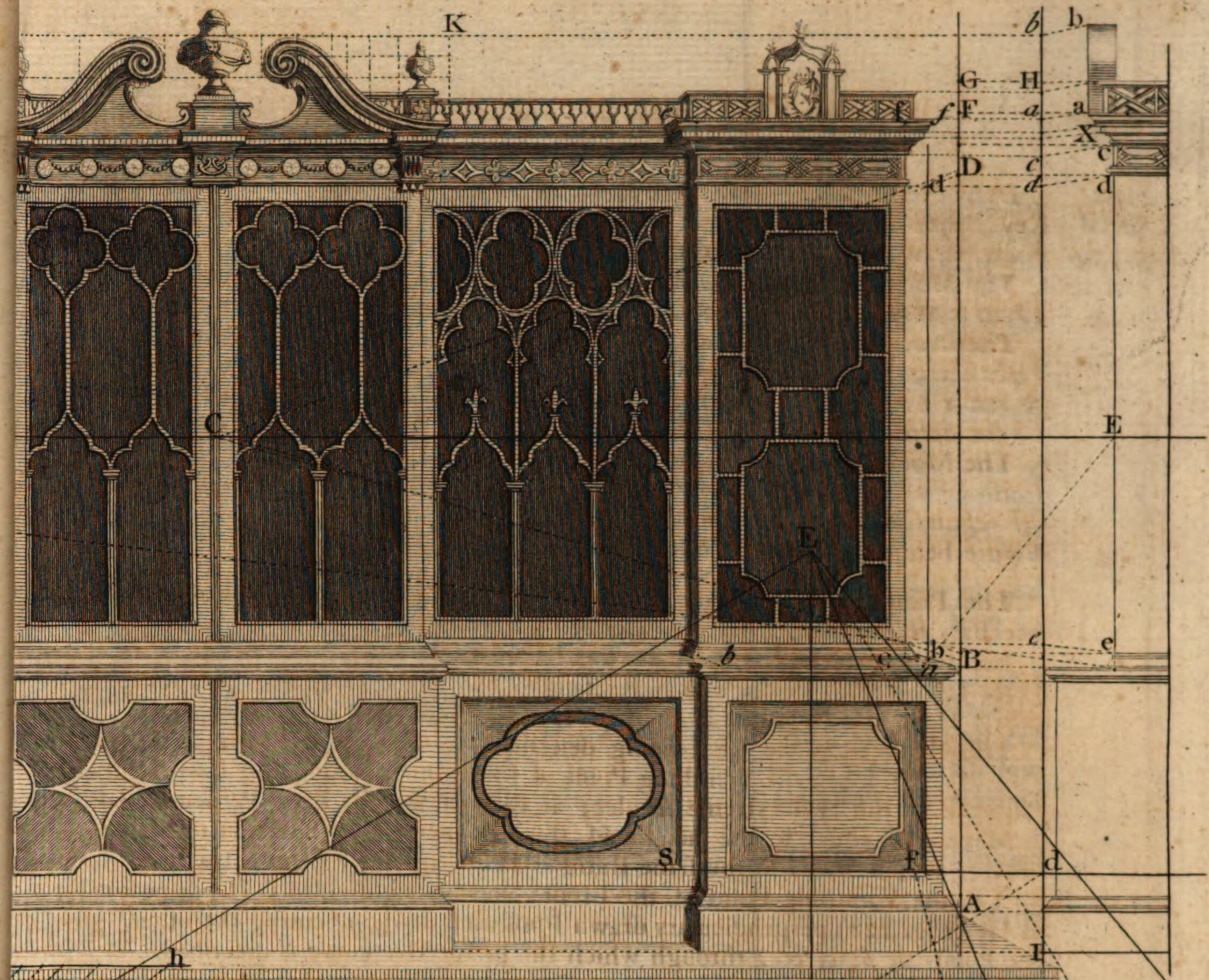


Fig. 128.

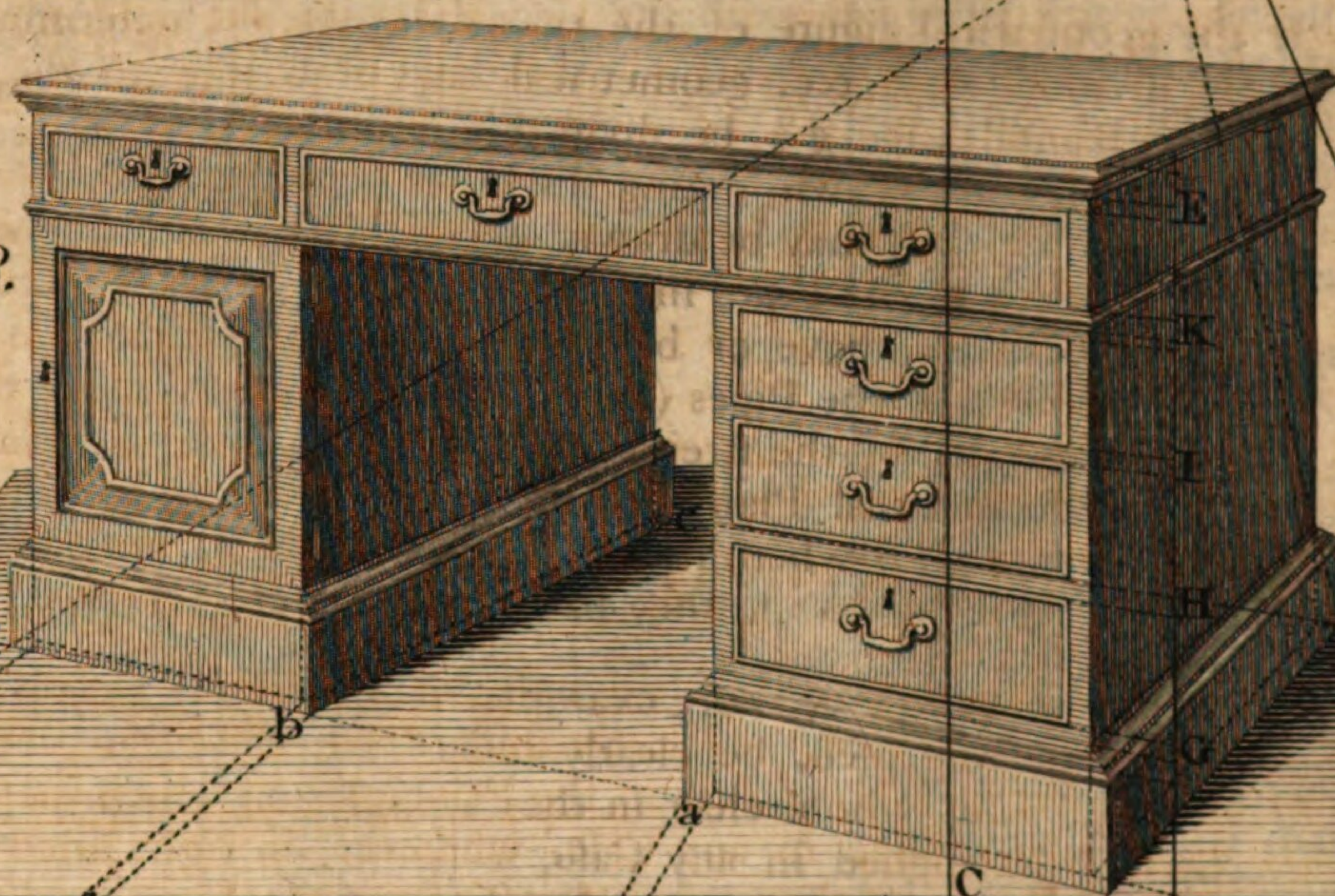


Fig. 131.

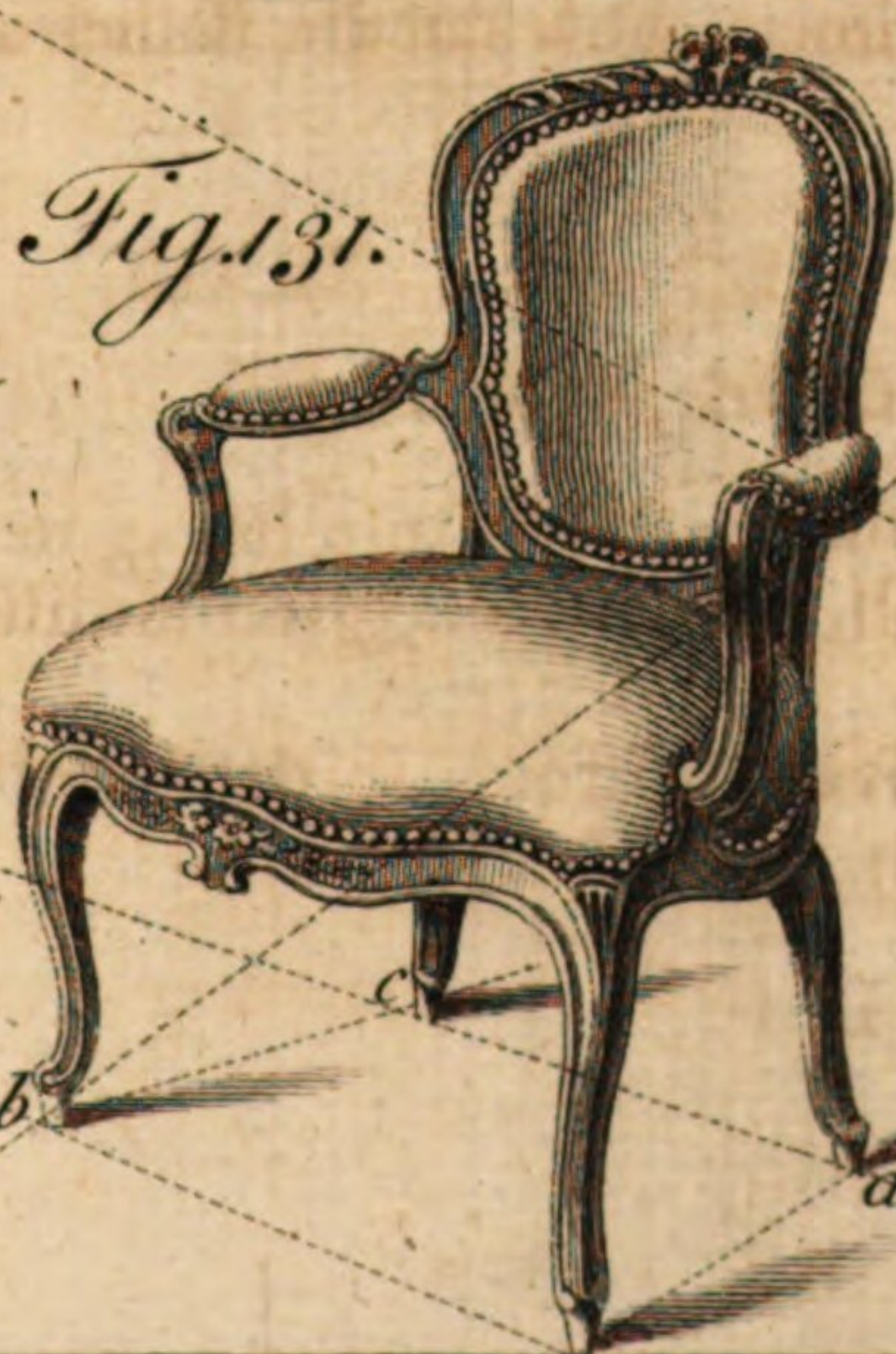
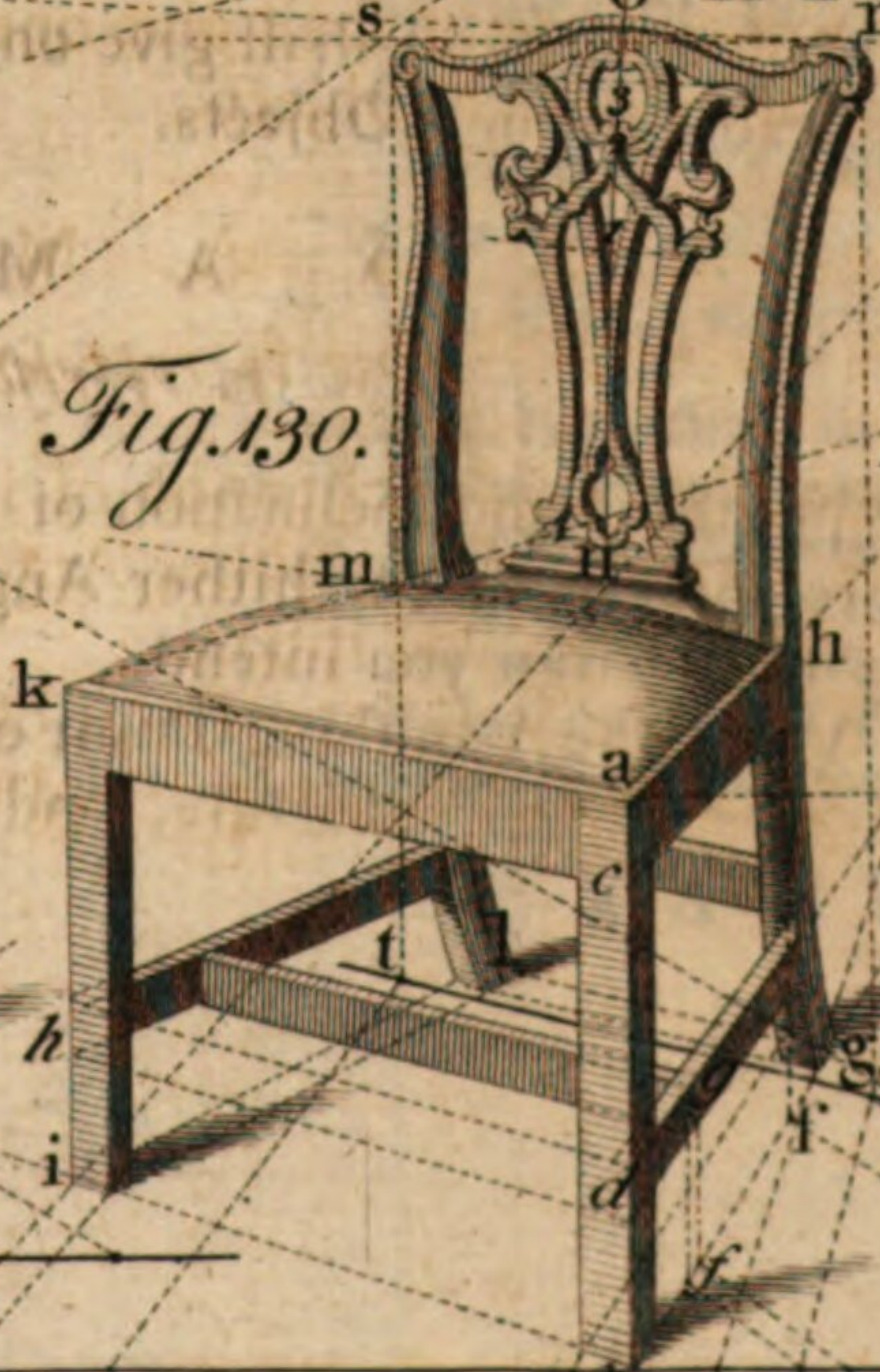
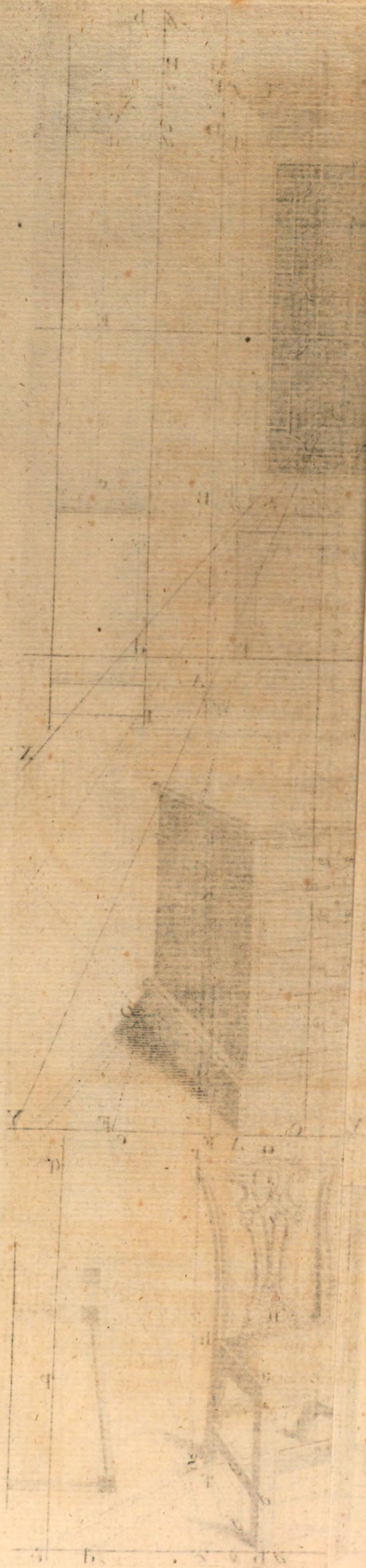


Fig. 130.



Published by T. Malton April 1st 1775.



Draw EV, and make the angle VEY equal to the inclination of the Side to the Front, giving Y for the Vanishing Point of the Rails, in that Side; also, make the Angle YEX, equal to the inclination of one Side to the other; giving the Vanishing Point of the other side Rails, &c.

Then, draw a V, and b V, a Y, and b Y; and c d, through b, parallel to the Vanishing Line.

Make bc, equal to the width of the Front, in proportion to the height.

Make VF equal VE, and draw cF, giving the place of the other front foot, at i; also, the breadth of each are set off at ba and bc.

Let bd be equal to the side of the Chair, at its Seat, and de to the splay of the back foot; make YG equal YE, and draw dG and eG, cutting b Y at f and g; g is the place of the foot on the Floor; and if a perpendicular be drawn, at f, it will cut a Y in the true width at the Seat.

Make ac equal to the width of the seat Rails, and bd to the height and width of the low Rail; draw cV; and cY, cutting the Perpendicular from f; also, draw dY for the low Rail, to the back foot.

From g and h draw Lines to V, and from i and k to Y, cutting them at l and m, which gives the place of the other back foot, and compleats the Seat.

Make be, equal to the recess of the inner Rail from the Front; draw eG cutting b Y at f; from which, draw a perpendicular, giving its place on the low side Rail, at g; and from g, draw to V, cutting the other Side Rail, the measure of which was transfered from d to the other foot.

The height of the low back Rail is obtained on the front Foot; and transfered to the Back, by means of the Vanishing Point Y.

Thus much is practicable, with the greatest accuracy; but beyond this, little can be done, the whole Back being curved every way.

The height may be truly determined, by means of perpendiculars, from the floor; and the various proportions of the Banister, may, in some degree, be obtained, by dividing a line (no) drawn through its middle, into the several heights, 1, 2, 3, &c. through which, Lines drawn to the Vanishing Point, V, determine the raking of the several parts, as in the Figure. For, whether the Back of the Chair be streight or curved, it deviates so little from a Right Line, and from a Perpendicular, that the measures may be applied, geometrically, without any sensible error.

In respect of the modern Chairs, now in use, there is no such thing as applying the rules of Perspective to them, except to ascertain the place of the Feet, on the Floor; also, by inscribing the Seat in a Square, or other Rectangle, its Figure may be nearly determined in its true place. Fig. 131.

The height of the Back, and of the Elbows may also be had, but, as the whole Chair is composed of irregular curved Lines, it is absolutely impossible to give its true figure by the Rules of Perspective; such Objects, must therefore depend on the Hand and Eye, for a representation of them; in which, a Person who has judgment in Drawing can only succeed; but, being well versed in Perspective, he will find great assistance from it.

WHEEL CARRIAGES are the next Subject to be handled; on which, as they are frequently necessary to introduce into a Picture, or for the sake of giving a Design to a Gentleman, by those whose profession it is to make them, I shall make a few Observations; but, like many other Objects, not composed of Planes and Right Lines, little can be ascertained or done by the rules of Perspective, further than to give the proportion of one part to another, which may be done with tolerable accuracy. Nevertheless, I am conscious, that few Persons who have occasion to delineate them (except the makers) will take the necessary pains to project them by rule; for such as will, I shall lie down some which are practical.

N. B. It must have been observed, that to delineate any Object by the Rules of Perspective, its true geometrical form and proportion of one part to another must be known, or determined on; consequently, the more complicated the Object is, being composed of irregular curved Surfaces, the greater is the difficulty in applying the measures on the Picture; which, as the several parts to be delineated are not Planes, or plane Figures, their places can only be obtained, on the Picture, from their Seats on some Plane or other, to which they are contiguous. By which means, a sufficient number of Points, in any curved Line in the Object, being perspectively found, and joined carefully by hand, the perspective Figure is determined.

Plate
XXXIV.
Fig. 132.

E X A M P L E XLVIII.

How to represent a Coach in perspective.

No. 1. Let ABCD be a geometrical Plan of the Carriage of a Coach; AB is the Axle of the fore Wheels, and CD of the hind Wheels, whose Diameters are ab and de . EFGH is the Plan of the Top of the Coach, all the other Parts are in proportion to them; as in the Figure.

In order to see the fore part better, a little inclination is given to the position of it, to the Picture; of which, IK may be supposed the Section, or Ground Line.

The Vanishing Point, v , of the Axles, &c. being determined, according to the Distance and Station, which is at s ; the other is out of the Picture, its distance from c (the Center) is to cs , as cs to cv . (Prob. 12.)

These Preliminaries being settled, as usual, let C be the Center of the Picture, and V , the Vanishing Point, by a Scale of 2 to 1; AB is the Ground Line; and D , the intersecting Point of the line of direction of the Wheels, on the Ground, which are, here, supposed to be in the same Plane.

The Plane of the Wheels not being vertical, but somewhat inclined, from the Carriage, let DG be the Intersection of the Wheels, with the Picture, on which, make DF equal to the Diameter of the fore Wheel, and DG of the hind Wheel.

Describe the representations of Circles in that Plane, $abcd$ and $efgh$, on the Diameters DF and DG , according to their distance from each other, making DH equal to the Distance of the Center of the hind Wheel, from the Intersection, and drawing EH , cutting De at e ; eg parallel to DG , is the Diameter of the Wheel, perspectively obtained, in its true place; from which, the circumference of the Wheel, $efgh$, is described (by Prob. 3, Sect. 8.)

The end of the Nave is not in the plane of the Wheel, but somewhat beyond it, at i and k ; also, the Spokes dish inwardly, from the front of the Wheel. Find the circumference of the Naves, $abcd$ and $efgh$, in their true places, perspectively, at the part where the spokes are fixed in it, and the place of each; also let each Rim be divided, perspectively, into equal parts, the number of Spokes, at 1, 2, 3, &c. (by inscribing a Polygon) from which they are drawn to their corresponding parts in the Nave; for, as they are not in the plane of the Rim, their Vanishing Points are not easily determined.

The hither Wheels being compleated, the Body of the Coach is next to be determined; which, as the Sides are not in one Plane each, their Intersections are not easily determined. Therefore, from the Seat, on the Ground, of the hither Angle of the Coach, perspectively determined, at i (from the Plan) draw ik perpendicular; in which, by means of the Vanishing Point, V , of horizontal Lines in the Front, determine the Angle k ; the true height being IK , in the Intersection of the Front. The other Angles, m and n , may also be determined from their Seats; or, by their known distances from k , as in other common Cases.

If the corners of the Coach are perpendicular, as in some Coaches, the measures may be determined on ik , geometrical; but if they are inclined, the point l may be obtained as k , from its Seat; and from l lines are drawn to the Vanishing Points, and proportioned as usual.

The Door is not in the same Plane, with the Line kn , but may be determined from the Seat of the hither Line, op , where it opens; and, on any perpendicular line, cutting the Ground Line, as IK , set up from I , its true measures, of height, at a , b , and c ; then, from I , draw a Line through its Seat (s) to the Vanishing Line, cutting it at L ; draw aL , bL , and cL , cutting the Perpendicular, from s , at o , p , and q ; from which, draw Lines to the Vanishing Point of the Side.

The Curve of the Bottom being geometrically determined, it may be done perspectively, by means of Ordinates, as in foregoing Examples; and, from the Vanishing Point V , draw a Tangent to the hither Curve, at r , which also touches the other.

The contour of the Top may be determined, by several vertical Sections described, perspectively (as *dep*, and *fgb* at the Door) then, a Curve described over them all would be the true Contour.

The Axles being parallel to the front of the Coach, their Vanishing Point is V; their thickness may be proportioned to the diameter of the Wheel, and their Shape by means of Ordinates, at 1, 2, 3, &c.

The true geometrical Figure of the Crane Neck being described (No. 2) then, by means of squares (the whole being inscribed in a Rectangle, ABCD) it may be accurately drawn in Perspective; with the other appendages of Springs, &c. by the same means.

The height and true place of the Seat may be easily determined from its Plan on the Ground Plane, perpendicular over the fore Axle.

The other smaller Appendages, such as Iron Stays to the Seat and Springs, Rings, Straps and Buckles, &c. it would be trifling to describe.

The true Figure and proportion of the Carriage being obtained, the Ornaments of carving, &c. will depend on the Hand and Eye, wholly.

Figure 133. represents a light Phaeton, more foreshortened, and going from the Picture; by which the hind part is more seen, as the fore part in the former Figure. A description of the method of delineating it, it is obvious, would be, in a great measure, a repetition, consequently tiresome. The Position to the Picture being fixed and its Proportions known, the method of proceeding is as in the last.

E X A M P L E XLIX.

To represent a Machine, for driving Piles; which is in the Repository of the Society, for the encouragement of Arts, Science and Commerce, in the Adelphi, Strand.

C is the Center of the Picture, whose Distance is about 8 Inches; the Vanishing Points are determined, as usual, according to the Inclination given. Fig. 134.

Let AB be the Intersection of the Picture, with the Plane of the Frame at the Bottom; and A, the Intersecting Point of the nearest Angle of one of the Timbers; also, let E and F be the Distance Points, for the Vanishing Point of each Side, respectively.

The Vanishing Points being ascertained, draw AD and AH, tending to them.

Make Ab equal to the length of that End beyond the other cross Timber; and bd equal to the width between the Timbers, allowing the thickness of one, and draw bE and dE, giving the Points c and d; through which, the other Timbers are drawn.

Make Ac equal to the Diagonal of the Inclination, and draw cV, to the Vanishing Point; through c and d, draw Lines to the Vanishing Point of the Side, and produce ec, to the Intersection, AB, cutting it at J.

Make Ab equal to their thickness, and compleat the Ends (v and x); from the two upper Angles of each, draw lines to the Vanishing Points.

How that Frame is finished, the Figure describes sufficiently.

The places of the other Timbers are obtained by setting the Distances, &c. on the Intersection AB, at e and f, and thence transferred to AD.

From J, the Intersection of the long Timbers, draw a Perpendicular; on which, set up all the measures of the Frame for the Wheels, j, i, k, and l, from each of which draw lines to the Vanishing Point of the Side, cutting Perpendiculars from c and f, giving the height of the Platform, &c. the length of which, mn, may be obtained from the Timber, below; and the breadth, no, by the Vanishing Point of a Diagonal (mo) beyond E.

The feet of the Supporters, (f) being got, and the Bearers, or head pieces (X) drawn to the Vanishing Point of the Front, giving what thickness is necessary, at l; draw the Supporters, as in the Figure; also, the Bearers (y) and Stays (z) of the Platform. Their Vanishing Points may easily be obtained, was it necessary, in the vertical Vanishing Line of the End; by Prob. 4. The

Plate
XXXIV.
Fig. 134.

The top of the cross Braces being got, by a line from k , the Figure shews how they are drawn, so as to shew their thickness, properly; first drawing the Front. Produce the inside of the long Timber to the Ground Line, and somewhat beyond it, at I , draw IK , perpendicular, the Intersection of the vertical toothed Wheel, which begins the motion.

Make $I p$ equal to the height of its Center, and, let $p q$ be its Radius, and $q r$ its Diameter. Draw from p to the Vanishing Point of the Side; and, having bisected the head of the Frame, at g , draw, from g , to the Vanishing Point of the End, which will pass through the Center of the Wheel, at s , through which, draw $h k$ its Diameter, and compleat the Rim $h i k l$ (by Prob. 3, Sect. 8.) Its Vanishing Line passes through the Vanishing Point of the side Timbers, perpendicular.

The cross Bars ($h k$ and $i l$) have their Vanishing Points in it; making right angles, perspectively, with each other, at discretion.

The Teeth, where they are seen, may be done by hand; for although the Rim may be divided into equal parts, yet, to divide it into so many would be unnecessary trouble; observe, as the Wheel is contracted so are the Teeth.

The other vertical Wheel, (Z) of a larger Diameter, on the same Axle, is managed by the same means; having the same Vanishing Line, and Vanishing Points. Its use is to accelerate the motion, by its weight.

In such Objects, great regard should be had to describe the hither parts first; taking particular care that they do not cross each other, improperly.

The middle, upright Timber, $m n$, and the Bearer, $n o$, being drawn, the place of the long Axle is opposite the middle of the vertical Wheel; its place may be found in a Line drawn through the foot of the upright Supporter, at r .

The small horizontal Wheel ($p q$) being nearly on a level with the Eye, appears almost in Right Lines. Its Diameter is, in proportion to the vertical Wheel, nearly geometrical.

The height of the upper horizontal Wheel may be had from any perpendicular Line, cutting the Ground Line, as IL ; drawing a Line through r , the Seat of its Center, on the Ground, to the Horizontal Line, at Q .

Make IL , equal to its height, and draw LQ , cutting a perpendicular from r at s , and gives s for the Center of the Wheel.

Draw LM parallel to the Ground Line, make LM equal to the radius of the Wheel, and draw MQ , cutting a Line drawn through s parallel to LM , at t ; st is the Radius, in its true place; by which, the Circumference, $t u v w$, may be described. The thickness of the Rim, and height of the Teeth, are set up from L ; and the cross Bars tend to the Vanishing Points of the Timbers; or at discretion.

The place of the Stay (Y) is also determined on IL , at N .

The large upright Timbers may be determined, in height, by the same means.

Produce the bottom Line of the hither cross Timber (at its foot) to the Ground Line, at O ; draw OP perpendicular, and equal to the height. Then, having obtained the place of the upright Timbers, in the middle of the Rails, below, at R and S ; and the perpendicular Lines being drawn, a line drawn from P to the Vanishing Point, on the Right, determines the height of the hither one, at T ; and, from T to the other Vanishing Point, they may be compleated.

The Center and Diameter of the Wheel V may also be obtained on OP , at p and q , and transfered to its place, giving s for its Center, and rs for its Radius; by which it may be compleated. (Prob. 3, Sect. 8.)

Observe, it is the circle of the back part of this Wheel that is first got.

The place of the Weight, or Ram, W , is at pleasure; its height is in proportion to the upright Timbers; also the short Stay above.

The Roller (Y) for winding up the Ram, is a Cylinder, on the Axis of the vertical Wheel; and it is so contrived, as to revolve on the Axis freely, while the Ram descends, without retrograding the motion of the Wheels. When the Ram is down, it catches, and when the Ram arrives at the Top, the Cylinder is set at liberty again; so that, the motion of the Wheels is continual, the same way. Behind the Frame is another heavy vertical Wheel (UX) on the Axis of the Cylinder, intended to accelerate the motion, whilst the Ram descends.

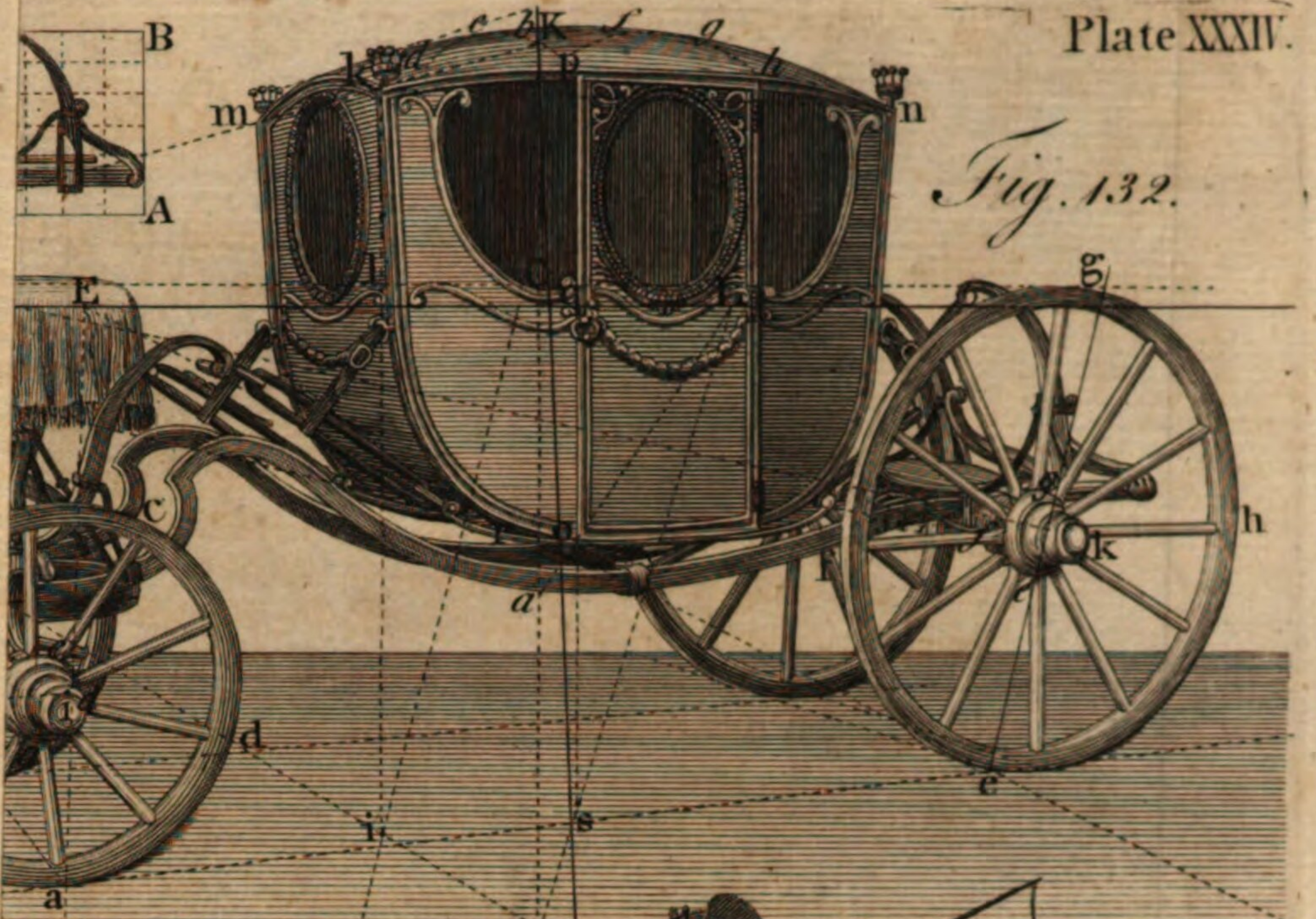


Fig. 132.



Fig. 133.

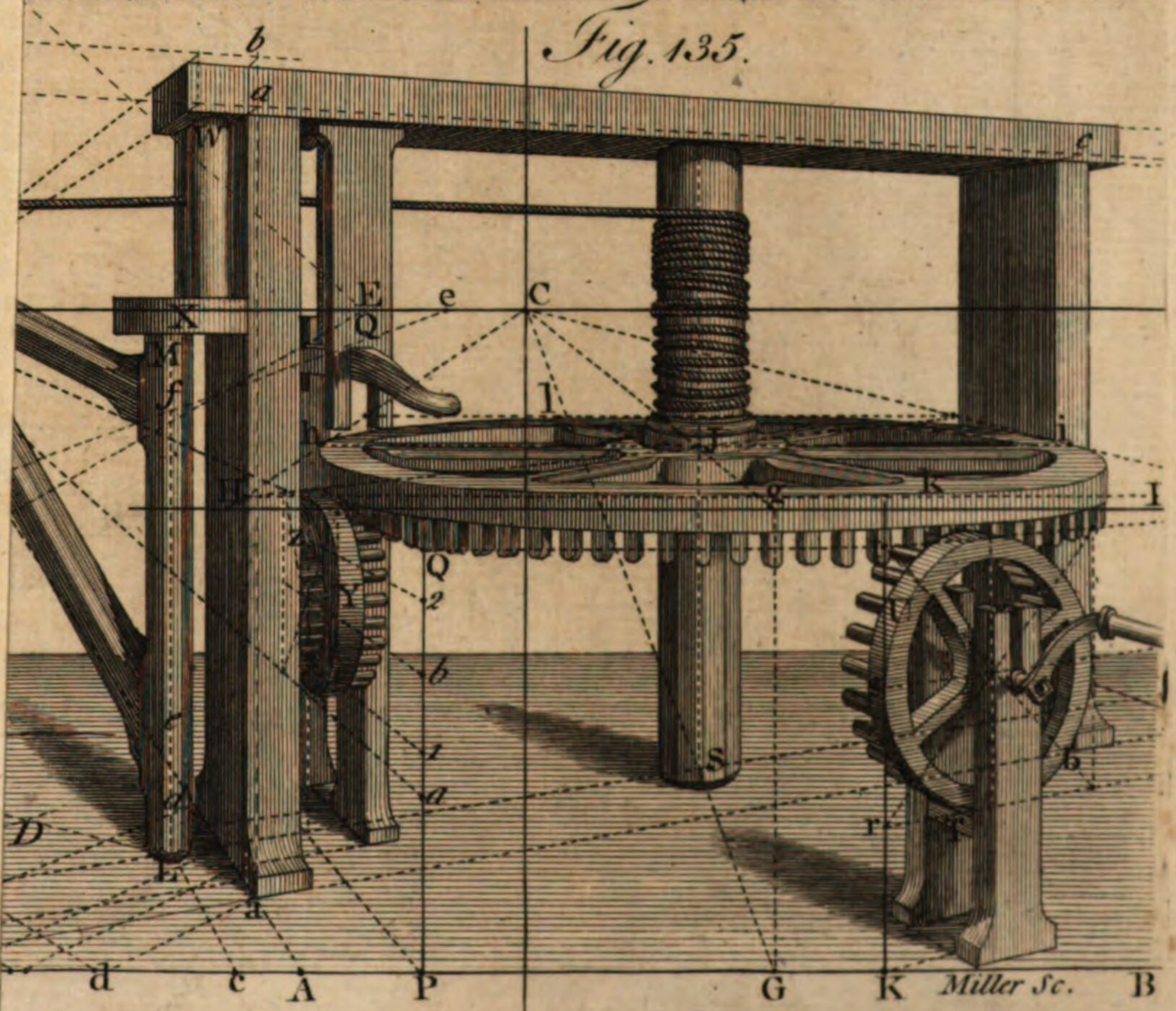


Fig. 135.

E X A M P L E L.

Is the representation of a Crane, from the same Repository.

Having been minutely particular in the description of the foregoing Machine, less will suffice in this. It is worked after the same manner, by means of Winches; the Model has three, here is but one; which, is sufficient for the purpose of describing the manner of delineating it.

A geometrical Plan, of the place of each upright piece of Timber, &c. in the Frame, being drawn, to any Scale, and the position of the Picture determined, let Perpendiculars be drawn, from each, to the Picture, giving their Seats. Or, being so prepared, let the Lines, of some of the principal, be produced to the Picture; which, where it can be conveniently done, facilitates the process.

The Center of the Picture is at C, in the same Horizontal Line; the Distance is about 6 Inches and a half. V is the Vanishing Point of horizontal Lines at the Ends, determined at discretion; the other runs out, on the Right, distant from the Center almost 14 Inches (a third Proportional to CV and the Distance of the Picture, always, when the Lines are at right angles with each other) BD, on the Floor, is the Ground Line of the Picture, on which it stands. Fig. 135.

From A, the intersecting Point of the end Line, at the foot of the hither Post, draw AV; and in it, find a, the nearest Angle (Prob. 7) from which draw a Line to the other Vanishing Point, and produce it to the Ground Line, at B; and draw BF, perpendicular; on which, the several measures, of the heights, are set up, from B, and Lines drawn to the other Vanishing Point cutting Perpendiculars from a and b.

The Center of the Axle of the large Wheel is in the middle of the Supporters; a line drawn from its seat G, on the Ground Line, to the Center, determines its place, at S; and its Diameter is got by the same means.

The height of the Wheel from the Floor being known, draw its Intersection HI, parallel to the Ground Line; and from G, draw Gg, perpendicular, and gC, cutting the Axle in the Center of the Wheel. Make gH and gI each equal to the Radius of the Wheel, and draw HC and IC, cutting a line drawn through the Center J, parallel to HI, at h and i; by which Diameter, hi, the Circumference may be completed. (Prob. 3. Sect. 8.)

Then, if V be made the Vanishing Point of one of the Spokes, kl, the Vanishing Points of the other are found by making Angles at the Eye, with the Radial of that, equal to the Angles they make with each other; which, in this, are equilateral, having six Spokes, forming a regular Hexagon. (Prob. 24.)

The Winch Wheel (U) touches the Picture; its place being obtained, at K, from the Plan, draw its Intersection Kt, and set up the height of its Center Ks; make rs, and st, each equal to its Radius; and, on the Diameter rt, describe the Circumference.

Observe, that the hither upright piece, of the Frame, must be first drawn.

On the Intersection Kt, of the Face of the Wheel, its height, and also the place of the cross piece (T) may be determined.

The other vertical Wheel, at Y, is got after the same manner, on PQ.

Its use is to stop the Crane from going backward, by means of the Catch, at Z.

The upper Gudgeon-piece (X) being drawn; find the foot of the Crane, at L, in the central line; its dimensions being obtained, draw the upright Piece, LM, and set up the measures of the Brace and Headpiece, at d, e, and f.

On the Floor, describe a portion of the circumference of a Circle, perspectively, on the Center L, (Radius, the projecture of the Crane) and, according to the direction of the head of the Crane, its Seat being somewhere in that Curve, as at N, draw NO perpendicular, and make NO represent its height from the Floor.

The Rollers, which direct the Cord, are Cylinders; their upper Bases are determined at W, from which, perpendicular Lines are drawn to the head Gudgeon-piece at X, which is level with the Eye, so that, its Plane is not seen.

The Cord, the Pullies, Teeth of the Wheels, the canting of the Timbers, and all such minutias, I shall pass over, as the Figure describes those parts better than the Pen. For those who would be particular, in large Drawings, various Lessons may be found in the Work, for truly projecting every part.

Plate
XXXV.

SECTION XII.

On INCLINED PICTURES and PLANES, in general.

AS the Plan which I have hitherto pursued, has been solely confined to the useful study of Perspective, so, this Section is adapted more for the curious Artist than the useful; yet, the inclined Picture may, in some Cases, be necessary. However the universality of the Principles are, here, more fully evinced; it being demonstrated that the position of the Picture to the Horizon, is not of the least consequence, nor has any meaning in the Theory of Perspective, as it has already been shewn, in respect of horizontal Pictures, and is, in this Section, made general.

For, whether the Picture be vertical or horizontal, and the Planes or Lines, in Objects represented on it, be inclined to the Horizon or to the Picture, or both, 'tis the same thing if the Picture be inclined, and the Planes or Lines be either parallel or perpendicular to the Horizon; seeing they are, or may be, nevertheless, inclined to the Picture. Wherefore, however either the one or the other be situated to the Horizon, it matters not, if the inclination of one to the other be known, and the Intersecting Points of any two Lines in either, with the other, be determined; the situation of the Eye being known, in respect of either, as shall be made manifest, to conviction.

PROBLEM I.

The Intersecting Points of any two Lines in a Plane being given, and the Inclination of the Plane, to the Picture, known; to find the Vanishing Line of that Plane, its Center and Distance; the Center and Distance of the Picture being given.

Fig. 136.

The Intersecting Points of two Lines, in any Plane with another, being given, the common Intersection of those Planes is determined. (Theo. 11.) Therefore, if A and B are the intersecting Points given, or found, AB is the Intersection of the Plane they are in, with the Picture. (Cor. 3.)

Draw AB, and CE parallel to AB, equal to the Distance of the Eye; through C draw DF perpendicular to AB; make the Angle CEF equal to the complement of the inclination of the Plane to the Picture, cutting DC, produced, at F. Through F draw GH, parallel to AB, which is the Vanishing Line required; its Center is F, and its Distance is EF.

Turn up the Triangle CEF, on CF, till EC be perpendicular to the Picture; then, E, is the true Place of the Eye, and EC the Direct Radial.

† 9. 7. El.

DEM. Now, because DF is perpendicular to AB (the common Intersection) and CEF is a Plane, perpendicular to the Picture, passing through DF, it is perpendicular to the other Plane,† for, it is perpendicular to their common Section; therefore, DF is the vertical Line of that Plane, (Def. 11.)

Then, because CEF is the complement of the Angle of Inclination of the Plane to the Picture, EFD is the real Angle, (Cor. 3. 10. 1. El.) for, ECF is a Right Angle, by Construction.

Consequently, since the Vanishing Line of any Plane is parallel to the Intersection of that Plane, (Th. 3) if a Plane be supposed to pass through the Eye, at E, parallel to the Original Plane, it is inclined to the Picture in the Angle, EFD; and the Line GH, in which it must cut the Picture, is the Vanishing Line of that Plane, (Def. 8.) for, the Sections of parallel Planes, by another Plane, are parallel between themselves. 8. 7. El.

But, EF is perpendicular to GH; therefore F is its Center (Def. 19.) and consequently, EF is its Distance (Def. 20.) Also, CF is perpendicular to GH, (Th. 4.) for, it is a Line drawn in the Plane CEF, from the Point F, in which a perpendicular (GH) to that Plane, cuts it. 2. 7. El.

COR. Hence it is manifest, that, as the Center of the Picture is the Vanishing Point of all Lines which are perpendicular to the Picture; so, the Center of every Vanishing Line is the Vanishing Point, of all Lines which are perpendicular to the Intersection of any Plane, of which it is the Vanishing Line; and of all Lines parallel to them.

Because, EF, producing the Center, (Def. 19.) is parallel to all such Lines.

It

It must be obvious that this Problem is universal, and cannot possibly regard any position either of the Picture, or of the Original Plane to the Horizon; for, let them be any how situated in that respect, every thing remains the same. But, nevertheless, in many Cases, the position they have to the Horizon is necessary, in practice, to be known; seeing that, all Plain Objects, as Buildings &c, are determined from the position of their Planes to the Horizon, as well as to the Picture; nor is it possible to determine any thing, in respect of their Projections on the Picture, without the previous determination of some Plane or other in respect of them and the Picture, and which is best done, by means of a Plane perpendicular to the Picture, either horizontal or vertical.

P R O B L E M II.

The Center and Distance of the Picture being given, and the Vanishing Line of some Plane which is inclined to the Picture; to determine the Inclination of that Plane, and to find the Vanishing Point of Lines perpendicular to that Plane.

Let AB be the Vanishing Line given, and C the Center of the Picture.

Fig. 137.

Through C , draw DF perpendicular to AB , indefinite; draw CE perpendicular to DF , i. e. parallel to AB ; make CE equal to the Distance of the Picture, and draw ED ; also, EF , perpendicular to ED .

EDC is the angle of the Inclination of the Original Plane, to the Picture; and F is the Vanishing Point, of Lines perpendicular to the Plane.

Turn up the Triangle DEF perpendicular, also turn over the Plane X on AB .

DEM. Because CE is perpendicular to the Picture, and equal to its Distance, EC is the direct Radial, and E is the Point of View (Def. 15 and 16) and, because the Plane AEB passes through the Eye, E , and the Vanishing Line, AB , it is parallel to the Original Plane, (Def. 8.) and its Inclination to the Picture is the same, equal EDC .

But, the Plane DEF is also perpendicular to AEB , and consequently to the original Plane; therefore, it is the Vertical Plane, (Def. 5.) and DF is the Vertical Line, (Def. 11.) which, being in a Plane cutting two parallel Planes, perpendicularly, makes equal Angles with them both.

Therefore, the Angle EDF is equal to the inclination of the Original Planes.

But, EF is in the Vertical Plane, and it is perpendicular to ED (by construction) consequently, EF is perpendicular to the Plane AEB , and consequently it is parallel to all Lines perpendicular to the Original Plane; and therefore, F is their Vanishing Point. (Def. 22.) Q. E. D.

P R O B L E M III.

The Center and Distance of the Picture being given, and the Vanishing Point of Lines, which are perpendicular to some Plane, to find the Vanishing Line of that Plane.

C is the Center of the Picture, and F is the Vanishing Point given.

Fig. 137.

Join FC , and produce it; draw CE perpendicular to DF , and equal to the Distance given; draw EF , and ED perpendicular to EF , cutting FC , produced, at D ; and through D , draw AB perpendicular to DF .

AB is the Vanishing Line required; which is manifest, from the foregoing.

P R O B L E M IV.

The Vanishing Line of a Plane being given, and the Vanishing Point of the Intersection, of that Plane, with another Plane, perpendicular to each other; with the Center and Distance of the Picture; to find the Vanishing Line of the other Plane.

Every thing remaining as in the last Figure; let AB be the Vanishing Line given, and A the given Vanishing Point.

Find the Vanishing Point, F , of Lines perpendicular to any Plane, whose Vanishing Line is AB (by Prob. 2.) and draw AF the Vanishing Line required.

DEM. For, since the Plane, whose Vanishing Line is required, is perpendicular to that Plane whose Vanishing Line is AB , F will be the Vanishing Point of some Line in that Plane, viz. of Lines perpendicular to the other Plane; and A is the Vanishing Point of one Line in it, by Supposition; consequently, AF is the Vanishing Line sought. Th. 11.

N. B. If the Vanishing Line given was of a Plane perpendicular to the Picture, seeing it would pass through the Center of the Picture. (Theo. 6.) Wherefore, Lines perpendicular to it, would have no Vanishing Point; for EG , perpendicular to EC , being parallel to DF (a Line in the Picture) can never cut the Picture and produce a Vanishing Point; consequently, AF , the Vanishing Line (in that Case) would be perpendicular to AB .

Plate
XXXV.

P R O B L E M V.

The Vanishing Line of a Plane being given, and the Vanishing Point of the common Intersection of another Plane with that Plane, whose Inclination to the former is known; to determine the Vanishing Line of the other Plane; the Center and Distance of the Picture being given.

Fig. 138. Let AF be the given Vanishing Line; and F the given Vanishing Point.

Find AB, the Vanishing Line of a Plane, to which, Lines whose Vanishing Point is F are perpendicular (by the third.)

Make DG equal to DE (the Distance of AB) and draw AG; also draw GB, making the Angle AGB equal to the inclination of the two Planes, cutting AB at B, and draw BF, the Vanishing Line required.

DEM. If the Triangle DEF be turned up, as before, and the Plane AGB be also turned over on AB, DG will coincide with DE. Then, if the Plane AHF be turned over, on AF, AH will coincide with AG, and AHF will be parallel to the Original Plane, whose Vanishing Line is AF (Def. 8.) seeing it passes through the Eye, E, and the Vanishing Line.

† See Art. 4.
Page 44.

But, AGB is perpendicular to AHF (9. 7. El.) for EF is perpendicular to AGB; and conseq. the Angle of inclination of any other Plane, with that Plane, may be determined in the Plane AGB.†

But, AGB is the Angle given, of the Inclination of the Planes; wherefore, if BIF be turned over on BF, till BI coincides with BG; then BIF, passing through EF, is also perpendicular to AGB; consequently, it inclines to AHF in the Angle AGB.

But, Planes producing the Vanishing Lines of Original Planes are inclined to each other as the Originals; and, their common Intersection passes through the Eye, parallel to the common Intersection of the Original Planes. — — — — — Theo. 8.

Wherefore, EF is parallel to the common Intersection of the Original Planes; consequently, F is its Vanishing Point, (Cor. 2.) for, it is the common Intersection of the Vanishing Lines; and BF, the Line in which BIF cuts the Picture, is the Vanishing Line sought; (Def. 8.) for, BIF is parallel to the Original Plane, and passes through the Eye, at E. Q. E. D.

N. B. If AGB was a Right Angle; then, AF, AB, and BF would be the Vanishing Lines of a solid Right Angle; each Plane, of which, being inclined to the Picture, respectively, as the Planes AGB, AHF, and BIF; all which pass through the Eye, at E.

The Center of each Vanishing Line is where a Perpendicular from C cuts it; as D, K, and L, (Theo. 4.) and DG, KH, and IL are their Distances respectively; G, H and I, are considered as the Eye for each Vanishing Line, in the application of them to practice; each Distance being the Hypothenuse of a right angled Triangle on CE; with CD, CK and CL, respectively. (Def. 20.)

Note. When the given Vanishing Line passes through the Center of the Picture, it is the Vanishing Line of a Plane perpendicular to the Picture, which also passes through F, as DF; in which Case, A and D coincide; and, the Angle is made with DF, as DGA or DGB; according to which Side of that Plane the other Plane inclines.

P R O B L E M VI.

The Intersection of any Plane, which is perpendicular to the Picture, being given, and the Intersecting Point of the common Intersection of that Plane with another Plane, whose Inclination to it is known, and, the Angle which their common Intersection makes with the Picture; to determine its Intersection and Inclination to the Picture.

Turn over the Plane Y out of the way, it being of no use in this Problem.

Fig. 139. Let AB be the Intersection given, and A the Intersecting Point.

Make BAE equal the Angle which the common Intersection of the two Planes makes with the Picture; and, at any point (E) in AE, make a right Angle, AEB.

Make BED equal to the angle of Inclination of the two Planes, and draw BD perpendicular to BE, cutting ED.

Draw BG perpendicular to AB; make BG equal to BD, and draw AG.

AG is the Intersection of the inclined Plane, with the Picture.

Turn up the Picture (X) on AB perpendicular, and the Triangle BDE on BE, also perpendicular; then, BD will coincide with BG; also, turn over the Triangle AIE; EI being equal ED, and AI equal AG, they will form a solid Angle, at the Point E.

DEM. BAE is the given Angle, which the common Intersection, AE, makes with the Picture; and, the inclination of the Plane AIE to AEB (which is perpendicular to the Picture, cutting it in AB) is BED; consequently, AG is its Intersection with the Picture.

For, if the Plane AEI be supposed continued; beyond the Picture, it will cut the perpendicular Plane in a continuation of EA, making equal Angles on the other Side; wherefore, A is the Intersecting Point of their common Intersection, and the Intersection AG remains the same.

Secondly. From any Point, E, in AE, draw EC perpendicular to AB, and CH perpendicular to AG, cutting it in H; make CF equal CH and draw EF. CFE is the Angle of inclination of the inclined Plane to the Picture.

DEM. For, if the Picture be turned up, and the Plane AIE, meeting it in AG; then EH is the Hypotenuse of a right Angled Triangle CHE, congruous with CFE; consequently, those Angles are equal.

But, CH and HE are both perpendicular to the common Intersection of the Plane AIE with the Picture, therefore, CHE (equal CFE) is the Angle of its Inclination to the Picture. (See Inclined Planes, Art. 4. Page 44.)

This Problem, is general; for, the Intersection given is not, necessarily, either horizontal or vertical; nor is the Picture necessarily either, all that's required is, that the Plane be perpendicular to the Picture, whose Intersection is given.

But if it was inclined to the Picture, that inclination being known, and which Side it inclined on, the rest is determinable; whereas, the given Intersection being of a Plane perpendicular to the Picture, it cannot possibly be misunderstood and applied.

In Prob. 5. Sect. 3. is shewn how to find the Vanishing Line of a Plane which is inclined to the Horizon, and to the Picture, when its Intersection with the Horizon is also inclined to the Picture, as in the last Problem. The horizontal Plane, being considered, simply, as a Plane perpendicular to the Picture, the Problem becomes general, and universally applicable; however that Plane or the Picture be situated in respect of the Horizon.

I shall here, as it is there proposed, give a brief Demonstration of that Problem, which will now, I presume, be better understood, the foregoing being previously necessary; and the assistance of moveable Planes will render it far more intelligible and satisfactory, which, to have used there, would be improper for several reasons.

Let the Picture be turned up perpendicular, and the Plane Y perpendicular to it; also, turn over the Plane V, till FB coincides with EB; and W being turned over, AE will coincide with AE, &c.

The Planes being thus constructed, let the former be also placed as was directed.

Then, if the Original Plane, Z, be horizontal, Y, i. e. AEB being parallel to it, is the Horizontal Plane; or, Z being considered, simply, as a Plane perpendicular to the Picture, Y is its Vanishing Plane; for AB the Vanishing Line, produced by it, passes through C, the Center of the Picture (Th. 6.)

The Plane V passes through the Eye, parallel to AGE, and therefore produce its Vanishing Line, AG; and, EB being parallel to EB, also, the Angle BEG being equal to BEG, EG is parallel to EG; and consequently, G is the Vanishing Point of EG (Def. 22.) also, EA being parallel to EA, A is the Vanishing Point of EA. Wherefore, since A and G are the Vanishing Points of two Lines in the Plane, EA, and EG, consequently, AG is the Vanishing Line of the Plane those Lines are in. (Theo. 11.)

Also, because E is the Eye, and EA, EG, are parallel to EA and EG, respectively; therefore, the Plane AEG is parallel to AEG (7. 7. El.) and it passes through the Eye, at E; therefore, AG is the Vanishing Line of the Plane. (Def. 8.)

Now, if the Plane BEG, be turned on BG into the Plane of the Picture, on either Side, BF being equal to BE, and the Angle BFG, equal BEG; consequently, the Point G is the same, however the Plane V be situated to the Picture, in its revolution on BG; therefore, the Vanishing Point G, is truly ascertained; and consequently, the Vanishing Line AG; being parallel to the Intersection AG of the Original Plane, also BG to BG. (Theo. 3.)

For, the Original Planes, being situated any where on the other Side of the Picture, being parallel, respectively, to their present Station, their Vanishing Lines are the same. (Theo. 5.)

And if the Intersection EA of the inclined Plane AEG be the same, produced on the other Side, as AH, and the Plane be inclined on the same side, its Intersection, AG, with the Picture is the same; as the Plane U, being raised up to the same inclination with the Horizon (equal BEG) evinces.

P R O B L E M VII.

The Inclination of a Line to the Picture being given, and the Angle of inclination of any Plane that Line is in, to the Picture; to determine the inclination of the Line, to the Intersection of the Plane it is in, with the Picture.

Let AB be the given Line, and ABD the Angle of its inclination to the Picture.

3 P

From Fig. 140.

Plate
XXXVI.

From any Point, A, draw AC perpendicular to BD; make the Angle CAD equal to the Complement of the inclination of the Plane to the Picture, and ADC, is the Angle of Inclination.

On AB describe a Semicircle; and, with the Radius AD, describe the Ark DE, cutting the other at E; i. e. make AE equal AD; draw EB, and ABE is the Angle required.

Draw AE and produce it; make EF equal CD, and draw BF.

DEM. Turn up the Triangle ADC, on AC, and CAB, on AB, till AD coincides with AE; then, turn up the Plane X, till BC coincides with BF.

Now X being considered as the Plane of the Picture, and ACB as a Plane passing through the Line AB perpendicular to the Picture, ABC is the angle of its inclination to the Picture, given. But, ADC is the inclination of the Plane it is in, to the Picture, and EB is the Intersection of that Plane with the Picture; consequently, ABE is the inclination of the given Line, AB, to the Intersection, EB.

From these Problems it must be obvious, that the Position of the Picture, to the Horizon, is of no consequence in the Theory of Perspective; but is very much so in common Practice; because, all perpendicular Lines, in Objects, are parallel to the Picture, being vertical; and horizontal Lines are easily determined, whether perpendicular or inclined, their inclination being known. To an inclined Picture, their inclination is the Angle they make with their Seats, on the Picture.

N. B. The Vanishing Line and Intersection of some Plane in the Object, must be given, to determine others, if necessary; for which end, the Center and Distance of the Picture are absolutely necessary. The Vanishing Line of horizontal Planes, being perpendicular to the Picture, is therefore first determined, and the Intersection of the Ground Plane; which of all other are fittest. Without them there would be great difficulty in proceeding. For want of that consideration, the work of Dr. Brook Taylor is almost useless to a Practitioner; he not giving, properly, one Specimen, how to find the representation of a Line, from its known length, situation, and place, in respect of the Picture; but only, by means of the Intersecting Points of other Lines, or drawing Visual Rays, from the Eye to the Original Points, in their true places, which is not practical in many Cases; or, to determine the Figure from some Line given in it, on the Picture; so that, the Student knows not how or where to begin the process, from the geometrical proportions of the Object, and its known or determined position to the Picture, and to the Horizon.

E X A M P L E I.

To find the representation of a right angled Parallelopiped, whose Sides are known, situated at some distance from the Picture; whose Faces are all inclined to the Picture, the inclination of one being determined, and the inclination of one Side in that Face, to the Picture. The Center and Distance of the Picture, with the Seat, and distance of the nearest Angle of the Object, to the Picture, being given.

Fig. 141. Let C be the Center of the Picture, and S the given Seat of the hither Angle.

Find a, the representation of that Angle. (Prob. 6. Sect. 4.) Draw DF, at pleasure, through C, and CE, perpendicular to DF; make CE equal to the Distance of the Picture, and the angle CED equal to the given inclination of a Face.

Through D, draw AB perpendicular to DF (the Vanishing Line of that Face, Prob. 1.) and, perpendicular to DE draw EF; F is the Vanishing Point of Lines perpendicular to that Plane. (Prob. 2.)

Find the representation of that Face whose Vanishing Line is AB, D is its Center, and DE its Distance. (Prob. 21.)

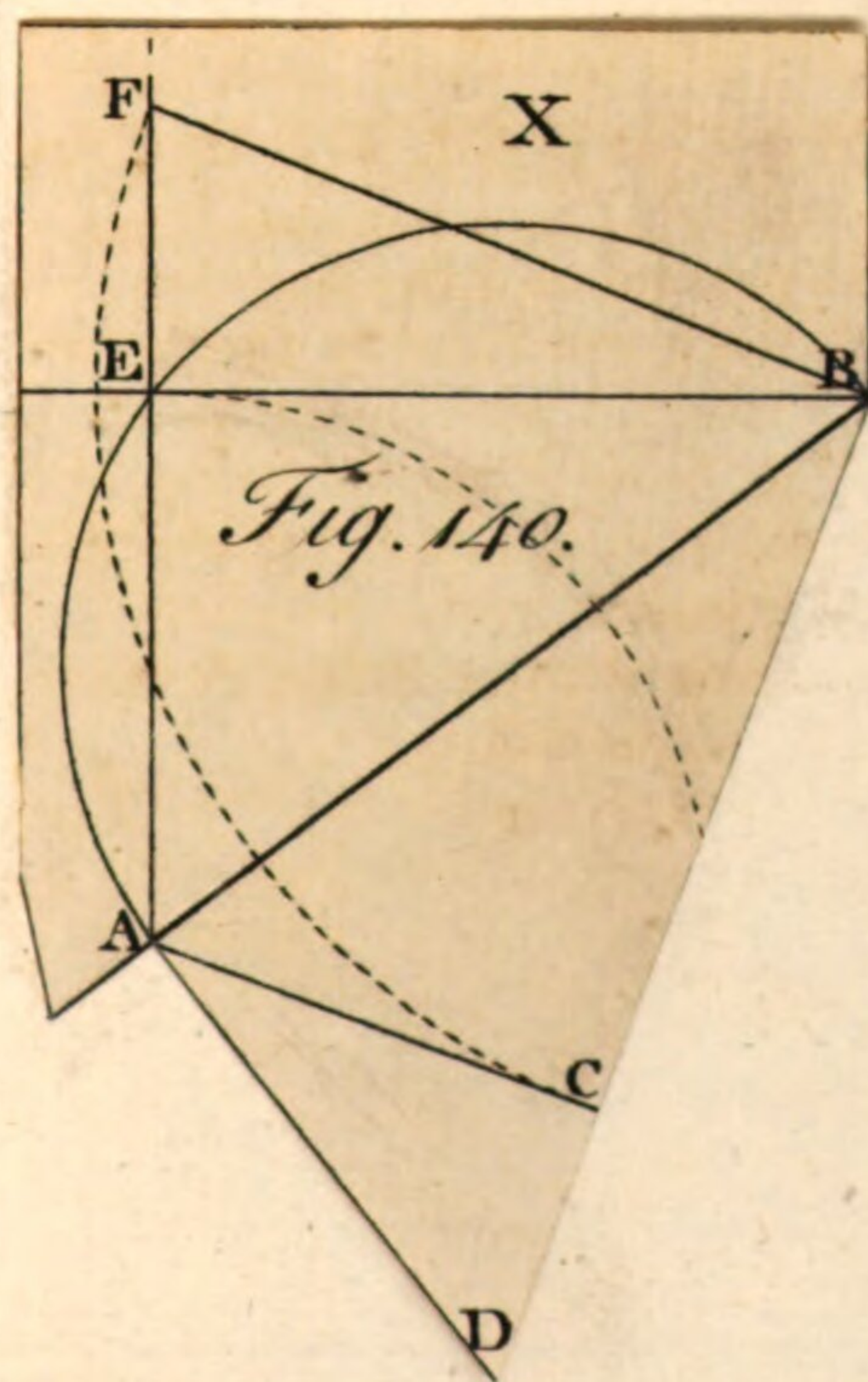
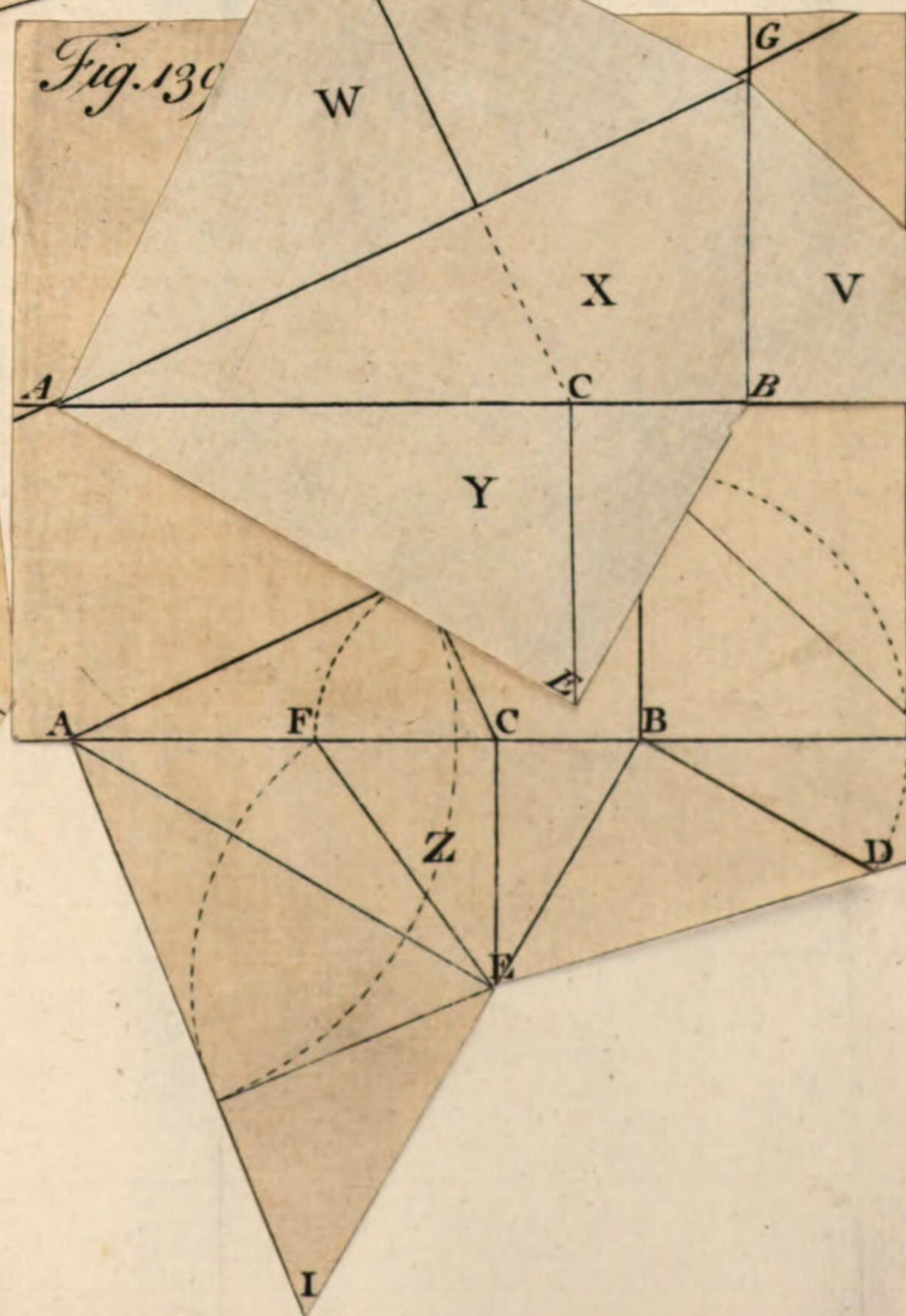
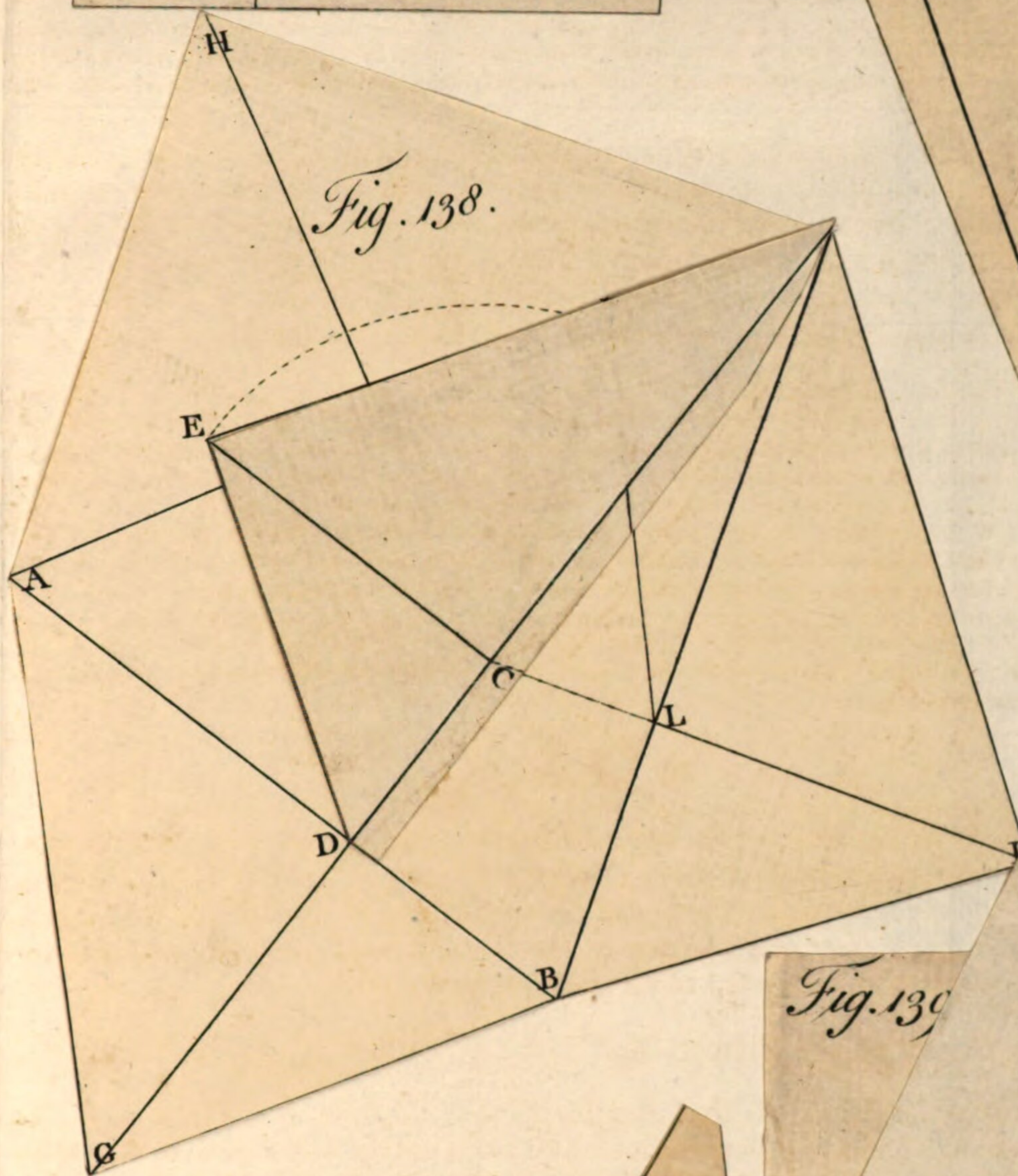
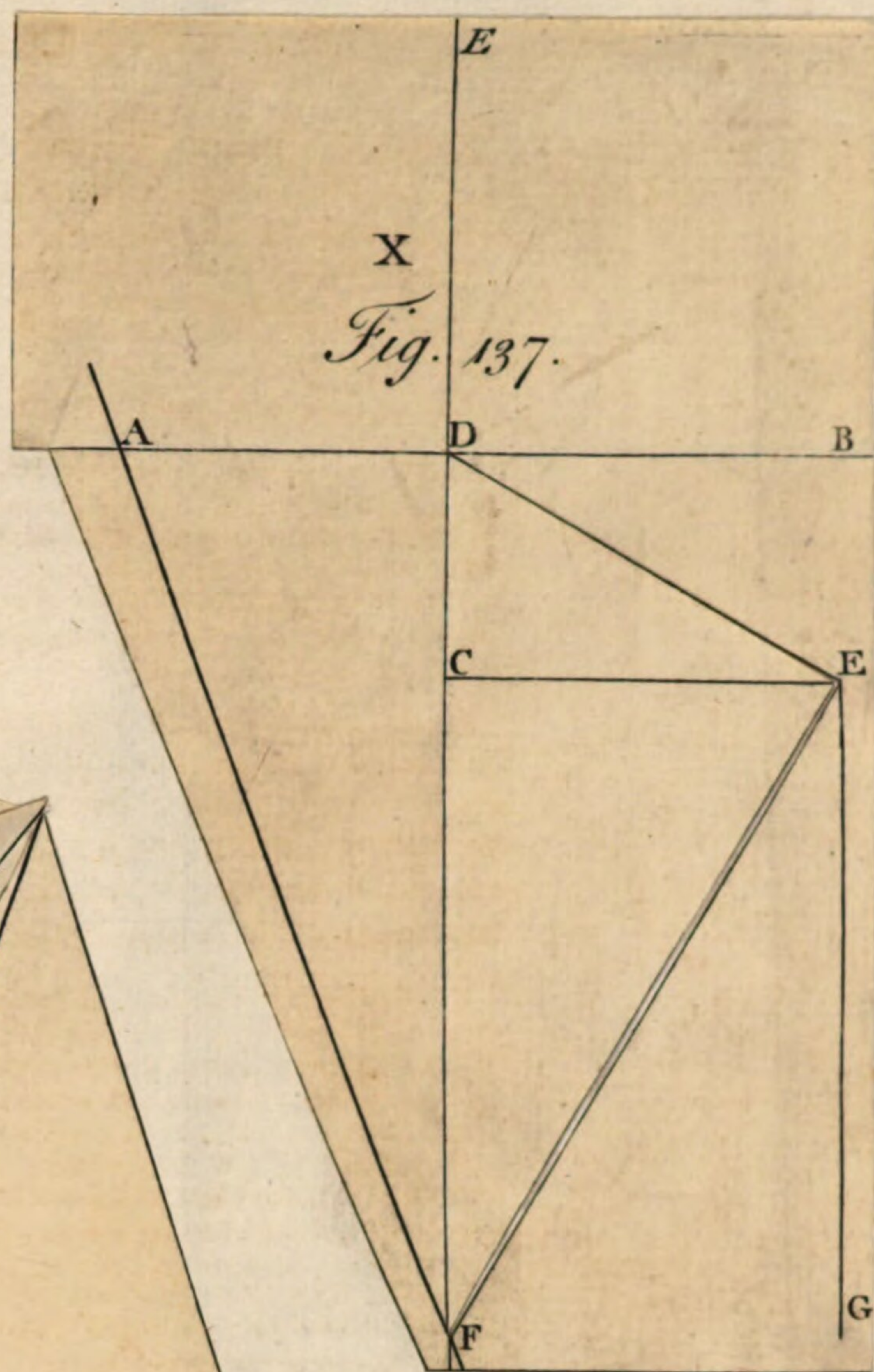
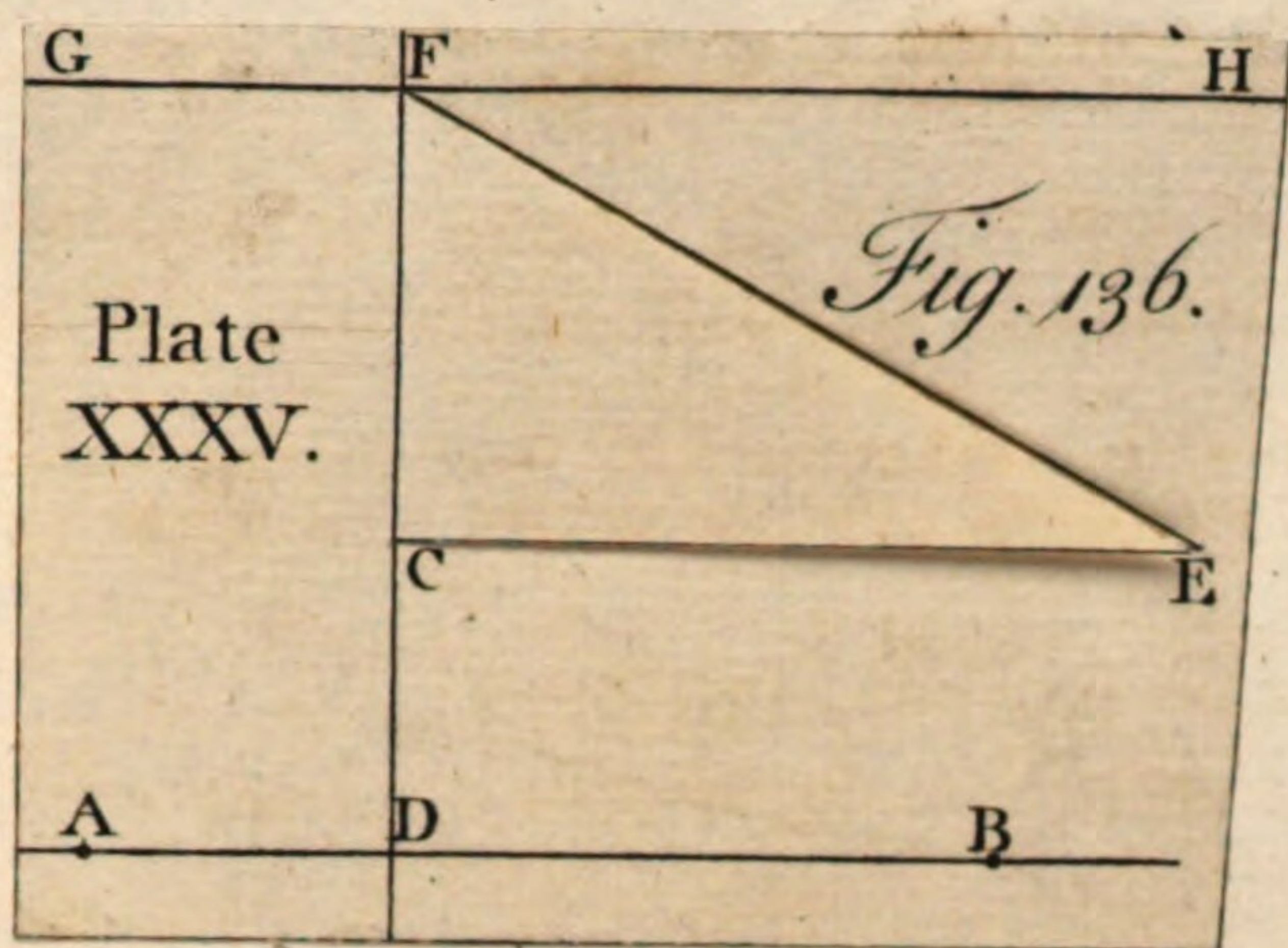
Produce FD; make DG equal DE, and draw GH parallel to AB.

Make the Angle HGA equal to the inclination of the given Line to the Intersection of that Face, whose Vanishing Line is AB (Prob. 7.) and, make AGB a right Angle; A and B are the Vanishing Points of its Sides; and, F being the Vanishing Point of Lines perpendicular to that Face, AF, and BF are the Vanishing Lines of the other Faces; as it is manifest by Problem 4.

Draw a A, a B, and a F, the indefinite Representations of three Sides, forming the hither Angle; how to proportion them, I shall shew, as follows.

Fig. 141.

The



The measures of those Sides are known, and the distance of the Angle a , from the Picture; which was found by its given Seat, S , and its Distance Sa .

Now, A , B , and F , are the Vanishing Points of the Sides of the Object, any one of which may be in the same Plane with SC (Ax. 6.) wherefore, ACS is the Vanishing Line of such a Plane. (Theo. 11.)

Make ab to represent a Line in proportion to that which Sa represents, as the Original of ab is to the Distance of the Angle a (Prob. 10.) thus.

Make CE equal to CE , and perpendicular to AC ; draw AE , and produce it; make EM , to EN , in the ratio of the Side, to the distance of the Angle a ; join MN , draw EJ parallel to MN , and draw SJ , cutting aA at b ; so shall ab represent a Side of the Object, whose length and inclination to the Picture was given.

Draw bB and bF ; and, by means of the Radials AG and GB , make ad , or bc , to represent a Line, in proportion to the Original of ab , as one Side of that Face is to the other (Prob. 10.) viz. as GI to GK ; and draw Ad (through c) and dF .

The Face $abcd$, whose Inclination was given, being compleated; find e or g , so, that de , or bg , shall represent the proportion of the other given Side, by means of ab , or ad , as before; the Center and Distance of either Vanishing Line being determined, (by Prob. 1.) as S , the Center of BF , by a Perpendicular from C (Th. 4.) and SO the Distance, in AS produced; making BO equal BG , and joining OF . BO and OF are the Radials of the Sides in that Face, forming a right Angle BOF , at the Eye, O .

Make OP to OQ in the ratio of the Originals of ad to de ; draw PQ and OR parallel to PQ . Draw a R which will cut dF at e ; and, through, e , draw Bf , cutting aF at f ; and lastly, draw fA , cutting bF at g , which compleats the Parallelopiped, $abcdf$, required.

For, because of the Vanishing Points A , B , and F , the Sides ab , ad , and af , form a solid Right Angle, at a ; AGB , ATF , and BOF being Right Angles, which bad , baf , and daf represent, respectively; and the other Sides vanish in those Points, respectively; as dc and de , &c. which represent Parallels to ab , af , &c. (Cor. 1. Th. 5.) Therefore $bd f$ represents a right angled Parallelopiped, whose proportion was known, and position to the Picture determined.

ac , ae , and ag , represent Diagonals, in each Face, respectively, which are in proportion to the Sides, as IK , PQ and TV , respectively, to GI and GK , OP and OQ , TX and TY , respectively.

The Parallelopiped, $bd f$ is truly determined, according to its position given, in respect of the Picture, its place in respect of the Eye, and its proportion in respect of its Distance; no regard being had to its position respecting the Horizon. Wherefore it is obvious, that, to determine its Position, in that respect, the horizontal Vanishing Line is essentially necessary, and the Vanishing Lines of its Faces are determined in respect of their position to the Horizon, as well as to the Picture, as shall be exemplified in the next.

E X A M P L E II.

*To represent an Octaedron, * perspectively, situated on a Plane inclined to the Horizon, and to the Picture; the angle of Inclination to the Horizon, being given, and the Angle which its Intersection with horizontal Planes, makes with the Picture; together, with the Seat of the Object on the inclined Plane; and, its situation in respect of the Picture.*

Let ABC (No. 2.) be the Seat of that Face on which the Object rests, on the Plane Z , which is inclined to the Horizon in the Angle X ; DF is its Intersection with the Horizon, and DFG the Angle that Inclination makes with the Picture; FG is the Intersection of the Picture with some horizontal Plane. The Station Point is S , the Distance is SG , and SE the Height of the Eye.

Fig. 142.
No. 2.

These preliminaries being determined, let AB be the Intersection of the horizontal Plane, or Ground Line; and, at the height of the Eye (SE , No. 2.) draw the Horizontal Line, DF , parallel to AB ; let C be the Center of the Picture.

* An Octaedron is a regular Solid, one of the five Platonic Bodies, having eight Faces, which are equal, equilateral Triangles; about which Solid, if a Sphere were circumscribed, every Angle of the Solid would be in the Surface of the Sphere.

Its geometrical Construction is necessary to be understood, before it be possible to describe it perspectively. Its geometrical Plan, on the Plane on which it rests, is a regular Hexagon, $AEBFCD$ (No. 1) ABC is the Face, on which it rests. DEF is the upper Face, EAD , EBF , and FCD are inclined Faces, above; and ABE , ACD , and BCF , below, out of sight; $IGHC$ is its geometrical Elevation, or Section through EC , shewing the Inclination of its Faces, to each other; viz. the Angle GIC equal IGH .

No. 1.

Plate
XXXVI.
Fig. 142.

Draw CE perpendicular, equal to the Distance of the Picture, and find the Vanishing Point, D, of the inclination given. (Prob. 2. Sect. 3.) Make DEF a right Angle, and, through F, draw FG perpendicular to DF. FG is the Vanishing Line of a Plane, to which, Lines vanishing in D are perpendicular. (Prob. 3.)

Make FE equal EF, and the Angle FEG equal X, (No. 2.) and draw DG, the Vanishing Line of the inclined Plane, (as by Prob. 5. Sect. 3.) indefinite.

Produce EC, cutting AB at S; make SB equal GF (No. 2.) draw BD, the indefinite Representation of DF, (No. 2.) and find the Points a and b , representing a and b , in which, BA and CA (No. 2.) cut DF. (Prob. 8.)

Find the Center, C, and Distance CE^2 . of the Vanishing Line DK (Prob. 1.) make CE^2 (in CC produced) equal to its Distance, and draw DE^2 .

Make the Angle DEH equal BaD (No. 2.) H is the Vanishing Point of AB (No. 2.)

Make the Angles HE^2I and IE^2K each of 60 Degrees; H, I, and K are the Vanishing Points, of the Sides of the two Faces ABC and DEF (No. 1.) i. e. of AB, AC, and BC, (No. 2.) and consequently of the sides of the opposite Face.

Find the representation of that Face, a b c (Prob. 18) having obtained the Points, a , b , and c (representing a , b , and D, No. 2.) by means of the Intersection AB; making DE^1 , equal DE; or, by the Intersection BJ, of the Face, a b c.

Find the Vanishing Line HM, of the contiguous Face, whose common Intersection, with that found is a b, and its Vanishing Point H. (by Prob. 5.) Its Inclination is the acute Angle GIK (No. 1.) determined by a perpendicular from E, and IG being made equal IC; which Angle is 70 Degrees.

Find the Center (O) and Distance (OE^4) of the Vanishing Line HM, (Prob. 1.)

Draw E^4H and find the Vanishing Points P and Q; as I and K, above; or make equilateral Triangles, X and Y, at the Eye, E^4 , and produce their Sides to the Vanishing Line H Q, cutting it at P and Q.

Through a and b , draw Q a, and P b, cutting at d; giving a b d for that Face.

The Point d is in the upper Face, and the Sides of opposite Faces are parallel, respectively, two and two; therefore, draw d I, and d K; and P c, cutting d K at e; draw e H and a e, which compleats the Figure.

N. B. This Figure having eight Faces, two and two of which are parallel, there are consequently (if none are parallel to the Picture) four Vanishing Lines; but here are only two found, DL, and HM; a third will pass through I and P, and the fourth through K and Q, which, being produced, would meet in the Vanishing Point of a e. (Theo. 11. and Cor. 2. Th. 8.)

It may be observed, that the three Sides of each Face, vanish in its respective Vanishing Line, (Theo. 11.) and the Vanishing Point of the common Intersection, of any two Faces, is the intersection of the Vanishing Lines of those Faces, (Theo. 8. Cor. 2.) as H, of a b and e f, the intersection of the Vanishing Lines DL and HM; and K, of DK and QK, the Vanishing Point of d e, &c.

Fig. 143.

The next Figure exhibits two of the same Objects, on a level Plane (or any Plane perpendicular to the Picture) situate alike to the Picture, but on different sides of the Station Line; the Sides, in both, have consequently the same Vanishing Points, and, their Faces have the same Vanishing Lines, respectively.

AB is the Vanishing Line of the Faces which are perpendicular to the Picture, and C its Center; a g is the Intersection of one of those Faces. The Angle a, of one Object, touches the Picture, the other is at some Distance beyond it.

FG being the Vanishing Line of a Plane perpendicular to the common Intersection a b, and FE (equal EF) its Distance; the Angle FEG is made equal to that of a Diagonal Plane with the Faces, (equal HIC, No. 1) viz. 55 Degrees. AG is the Vanishing Line of the Diagonal Plane a b c d, which is a Square.

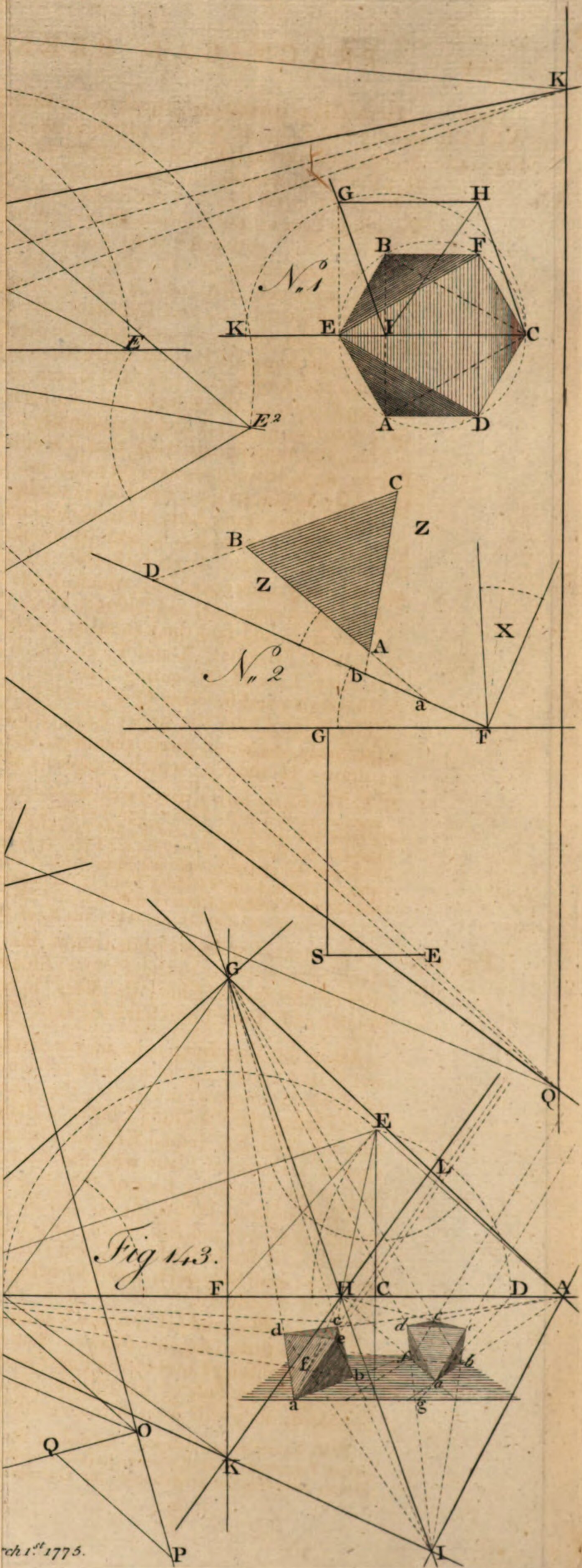
The Vanishing Points, A, H, and B, of the Sides a b, a f, and b f, or d e, being found (as above) and EK drawn, perpendicular to EG, cutting GF, produced, at K, the whole is determined. BK and GH intersect at I, the Vanishing Point of e b and d f; and BG, KH, and IA, being produced, would meet in the Vanishing Point of a e and f c.

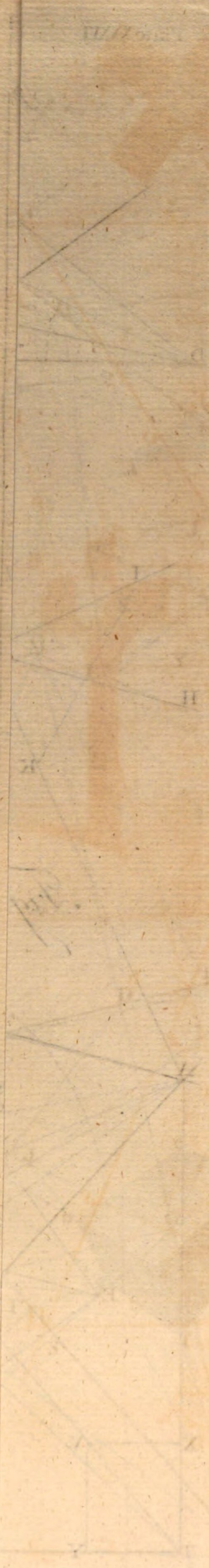
AB, AI, BG, and GI, are the Vanishing Lines of the Faces; and AG, BI, and KL of the three Diagonal Planes. The rest the Figure describes.

The Vanishing Lines of the Faces produce, by their Intersections, the Vanishing Points of every Side of the Figure, viz. six, A, B, G, H, I, and, if BG and IA be produced, they will meet in the Vanishing Point of a e and f c.

These Examples are sufficient, for finding the Vanishing Lines, and applying them to use, in projecting Figures in inclined Planes, in such Objects. I do not intend to lead the Reader through all the Mazes, attending the projection of the Dodecaedron and Icosaedron, because I know no end it can

answer





—

Handwritten text in a cursive script, likely a letter or a page from a manuscript. The text is written in a dark ink and is somewhat faded. It appears to be a personal or official communication, possibly a letter or a page from a manuscript. The text is written in a cursive script, likely a letter or a page from a manuscript. The text is written in a dark ink and is somewhat faded. It appears to be a personal or official communication, possibly a letter or a page from a manuscript.

Handwritten text at the bottom of the page, possibly a signature or a date.

answer to any Person; such Objects never coming in the course of their several Studies. But, if any Person be inclined to amuse himself with them, he may find Rules in this Section and the 5th. for his purpose, in every position he can devise. As they require a geometrical construction, previous to the projecting them perspectively, I recommend the Reader, who has curiosity, to the Work of Mr. Hamilton; or, in that, to the ingenious Mr. Highmore, they being rather foreign to my Plan.

E X A M P L E III.

How to represent a piece of regular Fortification, in Perspective.

The foregoing Examples are calculated more for Lessons than real use; in this, the knowledge and application of inclined Planes is necessary.

In Fortification or military Architecture, as the Walls of the Poligons and other Outworks are all inclined to the Horizon, and mostly to each other, it seems to be the fittest Subject of any I know. Indeed, the vertical Planes of other Buildings are, frequently, as much inclined to the Picture, but, their position to the Horizon familiarizes them, on a vertical Picture; and yet, in reality, there is no difference, in Theory, and very little in Practice.

The position of the Polygon (Z) to the Picture being determined, find the perspective Plan of its Seat on the Ground Plane (Sect. 5.) AB being the Ground Line, and A the intersecting Point of one Line in the Face X, find the Intersection, AD, of that Plane (Prob. 6.) and, F being the Vanishing Point of a b, draw FG parallel to AD; FG is the Vanishing Line of that Face (Th. 3.) S is its Center, ES its Distance, and ESC the inclination of the Plane, X, to the Picture.

Now, if the Figure of the Face X, be known, the inclination of the Sides a c and b d, to the horizontal Lines, a b and c d, which are parallel, their Vanishing Points are determinable (Prob. 4. Sect. 3.) by making the Angles FEG and FEI, respectively equal to them. If they do not fall within the compass of the Picture, yet, by their means, a c and b d may be drawn, by Prob. 13. Then, J being the distance of the Vanishing Point G, draw Ja to the Intersection AD, cutting it at a; make a b equal to the length of the Side a c, and draw b J, which determines the Angle c; and c F gives the Angle d, b d being drawn indefinite.

Or, if the Intersecting Point, D, of c d be obtained, the rest is unnecessary.

Make AK equal to the perpendicular height of a c, and draw KD parallel to AB.

By the same means, any other Face, as Y, may be obtained, and continued around. If the Vanishing Point G be within compass, and the inclination of the Faces, X and Y, to each other be known, the Vanishing Line GH is determined, by Problem 5; or, H, the Vanishing Point of a f, being found, draw GH; by which, the Face Y is described; as X, by means of the Vanishing Line FG.

Of the INCLINED PICTURE.

I presume, the Reader will, ere now, be fully convinced of the universality of the Principles on which the Theory of Perspective is founded; and, that it is the same thing, whether the original Plane or the Picture be inclined, or both, in respect of the Horizon; seeing it is the position of the original Planes and Lines to the Picture, only, that is considered, in projecting them.

In Example 1st. if the Parallelopiped, being right angled, had any of its Faces parallel to the Picture; or, if they were parallel to the Horizon, and the Picture vertical; or, which is the same thing, if any of its Faces are perpendicular to the Picture; then, the Sides which are perpendicular to them, are parallel to the Picture, and consequently, have parallel representations (Theo. 10.) But, the Picture being inclined to the Horizon, whilst some Face of the Object is parallel to it, the Sides may then be all inclined to the Picture; and the perpendicular Lines, which, when the Picture is vertical, are parallel to it, and consequently they have no Vanishing Point; but when the Picture is inclined, they vanish either above or below, according as the Picture is inclined, towards the top or bottom of the Object; of which I shall give some Examples.

Plate
XXXVII

E X A M P L E IV.

How to represent, an upright Object, on an inclined Picture.

Fig. 145.
No. 1.

Let AB be an object perpendicular to the Horizon, and let DF be a Section of the Picture, inclined towards the top of the Object; E is the Eye of a Spectator, EC, perpendicular to the Picture, produces its Center and measures its Distance; ED, parallel to the Horizon, determines the Horizontal Line, and EF, being perpendicular, that is parallel to AB, determines the Vanishing Point (F) of Lines perpendicular to the Horizon (Prob. 2.)

No. 2.

Let the Picture be prepared accordingly, drawing the Horizontal Line as usual, and the Vertical Line, at right Angles, cutting it at D.

Take DC and CF in proportion to CE the Distance taken (as in No. 1.) DI (not EK) is the distance of the Ground Line from the Horizontal.

In this Case, it is obvious, that the Center of the Picture, C, is below the Horizontal Line; as, if the Picture inclined towards B, it would be above it, at S; but, seeing that the Vertical Plane is always perpendicular to the Picture, its Center is always in the Vertical Line, DF.

If the Object be otherwise inclined to the Picture, laterally, that Inclination known, find the Vanishing Points, H, and I, of horizontal Lines in the Object (Prob. 2. and 4. Sect. 3.) and proceed, in every respect, as in Example, 1st.

F, being the Vanishing Point of Lines perpendicular to the Horizon, and, H and I, the Vanishing Points, of horizontal Lines in the Object, at right angles with each other; the Object being right angled; consequently, HF and IF, are the Vanishing Lines of the upright Planes in the Object (Prob. 4.)

† Theo. 3. The Seat (s) of any Angle (the nearest to the Picture is the most convenient) being determined; or, the intersecting Point (A) of some Line it is in; draw AB, the Intersection of any Plane that Line is in†. Find *a*, the representation of the Angle *a*, its distance from the intersecting Point, A, being known. (Pr. 6, or 7. Sect. 4.)

By means of the Intersection, AB, of the upper Plane of the cross Arms, is got *a*, *b*, &c. the real measures being applied on AB, as usual; and, on AL, the Intersection of the upright Plane (parallel to IF, Th. 3.) in which is the same line, *a* *b*, is applied the measures of height (Ab, ac, &c.) and projected by means of the Point Q, the Distance of the Vanishing Point of those Lines; or the intersecting Points, ~~D, H, and I~~, may be found, thus. A being determined (by its height above the Eye, the Seat of *a*, (No. 1.) and distance from its Seat, with the inclination of the Line it is in, to the Picture, or to its Seat) draw *a* *b* through A, perpendicular to HI; make Aa, Ac, Ab, in the ratio of Ab, ac, and bB; as CE, to CE, No. 1; draw aK, cJ, and bL, parallel to HI, cutting the Intersection AL, at K, J, and L; from which, draw to the Vanishing Point I, and thro' *a*, *b*, &c. to F, cutting them at *f*, *g*, *h*, &c. From *f*, and through *b*, *g*, &c. draw to H.

Find the Center and Distance of the Vanishing Line HF, and the place of the Eye at O (Prob. 1.) make OM, and ON, in the ratio of *a* *b* to ac (No. 1.) draw OP parallel to NM; and, through *g*, draw Pi, and compleat the end *ik*, by means of the Vanishing Point R (in IF) of a diagonal of a Square.

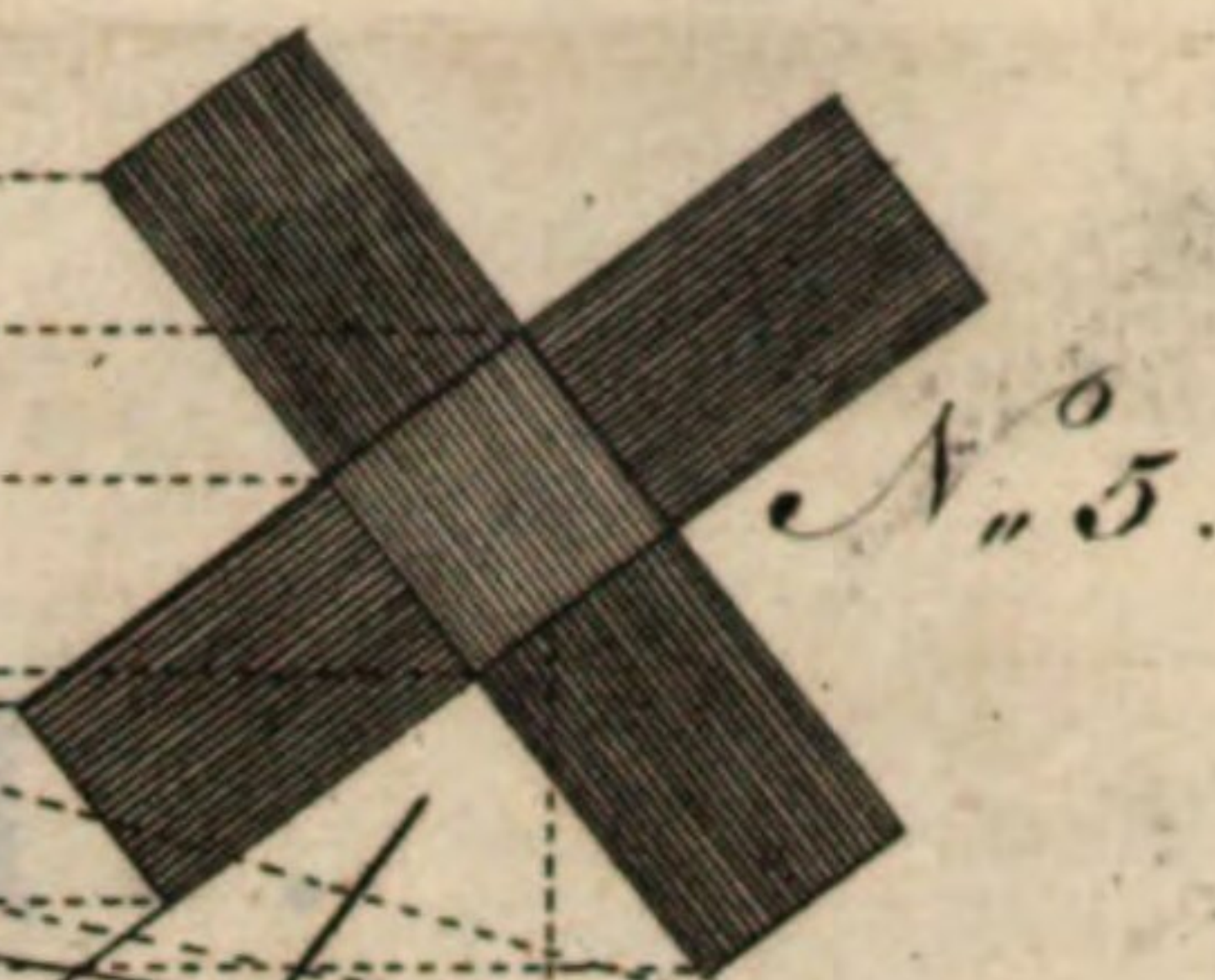
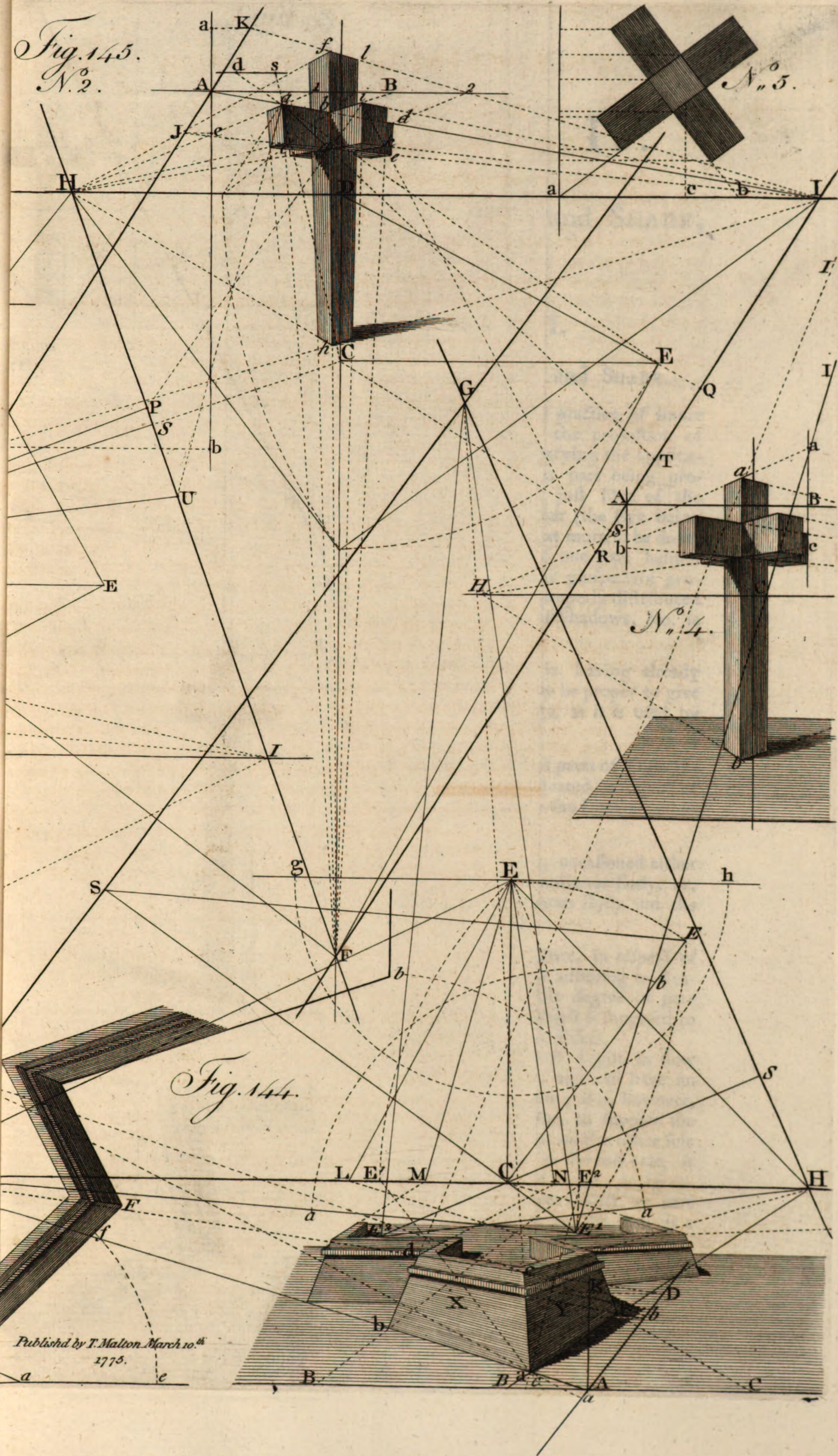
The rest is obvious, from inspection of the Figure.

No. 3. exhibits the same Object, when the Picture is inclined towards the bottom, (as GH, No. 1.) its Center is at S, and the perpendicular Lines vanish at G.

No. 4. is the same Object on a vertical Picture, whose Distance is ED.

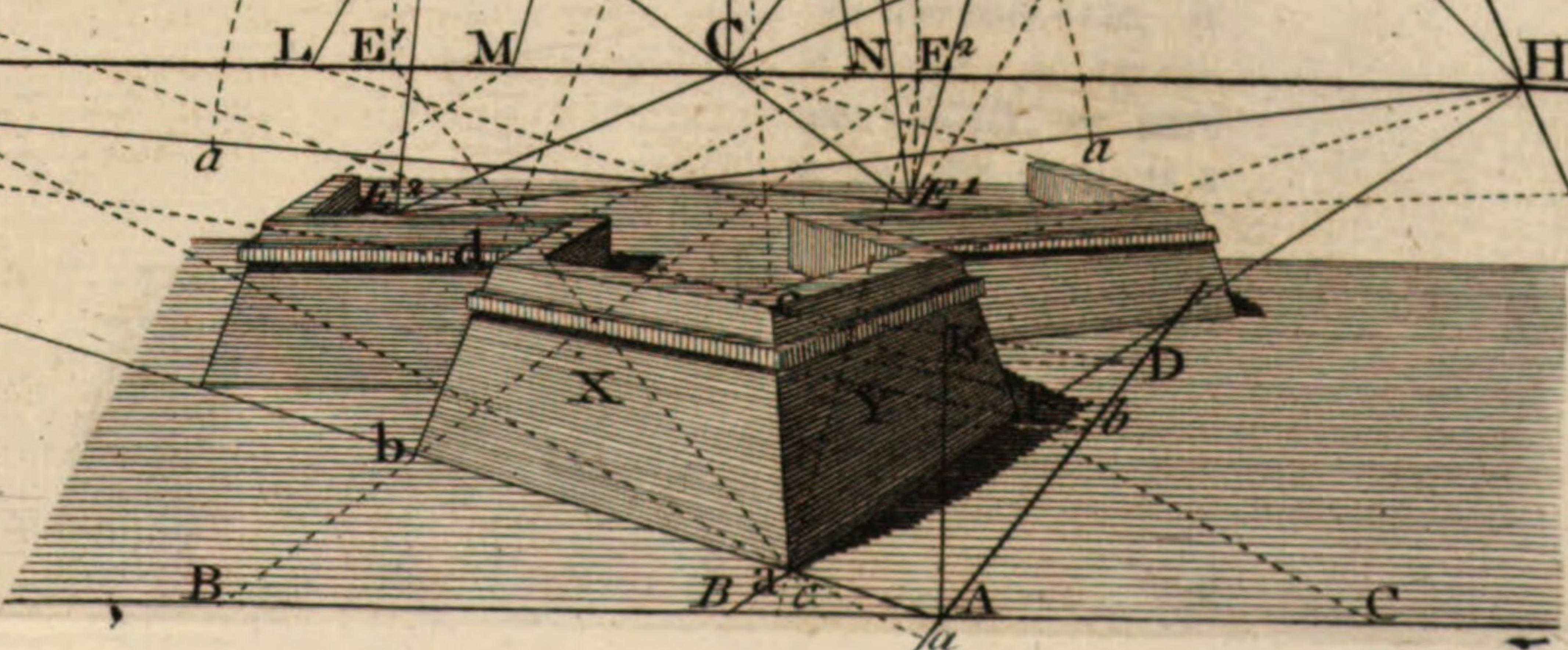
In these Examples may be seen the universality, and the superiority of Brook Taylor's Principles to all other; by which is shewn (in this last Section) that any Plane Object, whatever, may be projected, from the known position of one Plane to another, in the Object, and the proportion of the Lines in those Planes, together with their position to each other; without regarding their position to any other Plane, whatever, except the Picture. Whereas, by the Old Authors, it was almost impossible to project them at all; or, with the utmost difficulty, by the Seat of each Angle on the Ground Plane, and its height above it, a troublesome and laborious process; by which was obtained the several Angles, and then joined by Right Lines; without Vanishing Points, of which they had not the least conception, in any other Lines but horizontal; and those they called accidental Points, for they had no certain method of producing them. Having found the two extremes of an inclined Line, then, drawing the Line, and producing it to the Horizon, they found its Vanishing Point; which is now fixed with absolute certainty, in all Positions, and directs the certain position and place of each Line on the Picture, indefinite. And, by means of Visual Rays, drawn on the Picture, certain portions are cut off (truly mathematical) which represent the Originals, as they appear to the Eye, in the true Point of View.

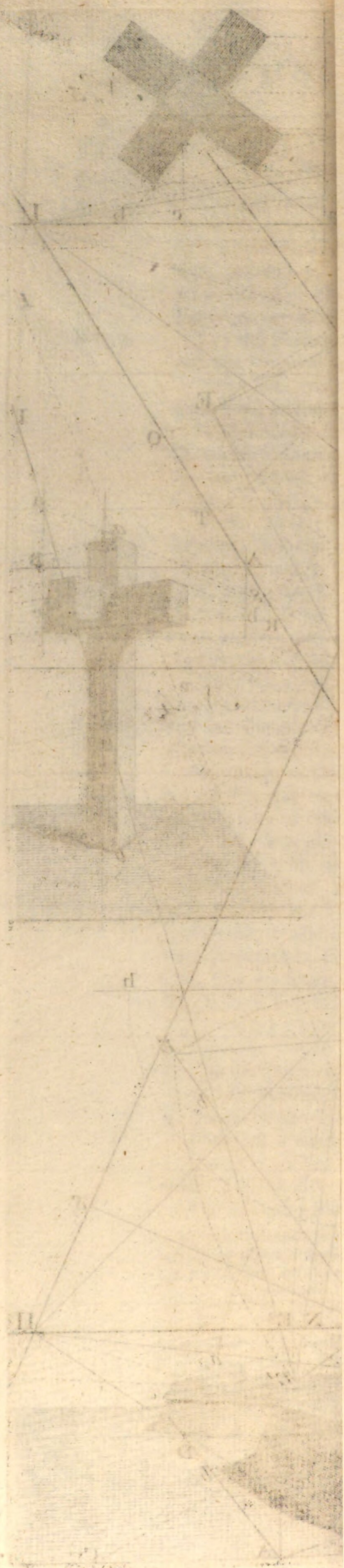
Fig. 145.
N^o 2.



N^o 4.

Fig. 144.





B O O K IV.

Of SHADOWS, in general ; of LIGHT and SHADE, REFLECTION, KEEPING, &c.

S E C T I O N I.

An introductory PREFACE, concerning LIGHT and SHADE.

IN the foregoing Work is contained the full knowledge and practice of linear Perspective ; the last Book containing Rules, necessary for the projection of any regular Object, almost, whatever ; with Examples, varying the application of the Rules, frequently, as occasion requires. The linear part being projected, strictly by the Rules there prescribed, will convey a just Idea of the figure of the Object, and the proportion of its parts to each other (the Eye being in the true Point of View.) Nevertheless, there requires somewhat more to be done, in order to give an appearance of solidity, and receding of one part behind another ; which indeed is effected, in some measure, by their perspective proportions ; and perfected, by a just gradation of Light and Shade, properly distributed to each part of the Object ; and which, with the projection of Shadows, &c. is the Subject of this fourth Book.

It must not be expected that I should define what Light is, having already given my Opinion on that Subject (Sect. 1. Book 1.) yet, it may be proper to give some general Idea of what is understood and meant by Light, as it is used by Artists in general, in the application of it to a Picture.

LIGHT, in that respect, means nothing more than the bright parts of Objects ; which differs greatly in degree, according as the Surfaces are situated in respect of some luminous Body ; which is effected either, directly, from the Luminary, or reflected, from some illumined Object.

SHADE is a deprivation of Light, the dark parts of Objects ; occasioned either by the Object itself, on those parts which are not towards the luminous Body, or, by some other opaque Substance, interposed between the luminous Body and the Object ; depriving it, either wholly or partly, of Light.

To give or prescribe Rules, absolutely, for perfecting a Picture, in respect of Light and Shade, is as impossible as in respect of Colour ; yet, by adhering to Reason, and carefully observing Nature, we may arrive at a tolerable degree of perfection. In the first place, it is necessary to consider how the Object is supposed to be situated to the luminous Body, from which it is to receive the Effect.

It has been almost a general Rule, amongst Artists, to suppose Light to flow from the left hand to the Right ; but that is entirely arbitrary, and can have no foundation in the nature of things, but merely an habitual custom ; it is, however, proper to imagine it to flow from one hand or the other ; for, to suppose the Luminary, or luminous Body, directly opposed, either on this or on the other side of the Object, can never produce a pleasing effect ; seeing that, in the first case, it is almost wholly illumined, in the other, it is wholly deprived of Light ; an agreeable mixture of both, judiciously disposed, is what contrasts one Object, or part of an Object from the other, and renders the whole agreeable to the Eye, as a pleasing imitation of Nature.

Let

Plate
XXXVIII

Let it be carefully observed, that, that part of an Object, to which any luminous Body is most directly opposed, will be the brightest; but, when, from the situation of the Eye, it is much contracted, or foreshortened, it may appear as dark, or perhaps darker than other parts, on which, the Light is not so direct: although that part in the Object, is considerably brighter, than others which appear so.

Fig. 1.

For Example. Let *Z* be the Plan or Base of some prismatic Object, and *AB*, &c. Rays of Light, falling thereon. Because those Rays fall more perpendicularly on the Face *BC*, than on *BD*, that Face is, consequently, more illumined than *BD*, and *BD* than *DE*, whilst *FG* is wholly deprived of Light; and *GH*, being farther removed from the Light, will be darker than *FG*, from the effect of Light simply, or direct. Now, if a Spectator be so situated, at *E*, that the Face *BC*, which is most illumined, is much contracted, it may appear darker than *BD*, which is more opposite to the Eye; whereas, if the Station was at *E*, where both appear equally contracted, the Face *BC* will appear the brightest; but, if the Light was in the direction of *EB* they would be, and also appear equally bright, without distinction.

Thus may any direction to the Rays of Light be given, at discretion, as *AB*; and, by drawing others, parallel to *AB*, it is easy to know which Face should be the brightest, and which the next &c; but to determine in what degree, positively, is not possible; a careful observation of Nature is the best criterion by which to judge of that; and, even in that case, it is not easy to determine, without experience and sound judgment.

After the same manner, the inclination of the Rays of Light to the Horizon, being taken into consideration, may be determined, whether the upper faces of Objects, below the Eye, or inclined Faces, are more illumined than the Vertical. As Light flows from above, the whole Hemisphere being illumined (when the Luminary itself is not much elevated) the horizontal faces of Objects, or such as are much inclined, are, generally, the brightest; provided they are opposite to that quarter from which the principal Light flows. Notwithstanding it is usual to shade the Roofs of Buildings, Pediments, &c, more than the vertical Planes, it can only be from a supposition of their being of darker materials, as Lead, Slate, &c; for, if they were composed of the same, that is, if they are of one uniform Colour (and otherwise, no positive determination can be made, in respect of Light, from observation) inclined Planes, will be brighter than either vertical or horizontal, being more opposed to the Light.

In respect of curved Surfaces, from the effect of Light, simply or directly, those parts which are most prominent, towards the luminous Body, are the brightest; and consequently, those which are farthest removed from the Light will (without reflection) be the darkest.

Fig. 2.

On cylindrical Surfaces, as Columns, straight Mouldings, &c. the Light is always parallel to the sides, or edges of the Mouldings; the greatest Light being on that part which is most perpendicularly opposed to the luminous Body (as *AB*) from which it graduates regularly, on each Side; consequently, that side which is farthest from the Light will be the darkest, supposing the Luminary to be situated on this Side of the Object, on either hand. But, if it be supposed situate on the other Side, the Edge, *AB*, towards the luminous Body, will be the brightest; and it will be graduated from that Edge, not to the other, as in No. 2. (which has not the appearance of an entire Column or Cylinder, but of a Segment, cut off parallel to its Axe) but, it will be darkest somewhat from the other Edge (as No. 3.) not owing to reflection from other Objects, but from the luminous Body, being on the other Side; which, as it is more or less direct, will occasion the darkest part to be more or less removed from the middle.

Convex spherical Surfaces are brightest on that part to which the luminous Body is perpendicular, from which it graduates every way equally; insensibly varying, to the extremes, provided no other Object interfered, to reflect Light.

If

If a Hemisphere, or lesser Segment, be properly Shaded, it will represent equally as well a concave as a convex Surface, by supposing the Light on one Side or on the other; that is, when the Eye is so situated as to see the whole circumference of its Base, or nearly; as Fig. 3.

Respecting streight mouldings, which are composed wholly of Planes and cylindrical Surfaces, their different situations, towards the flow of Light, occasion variety of Shades. As for example; the Cima-recta (composed of a convex and a concave cylindrical Surface) in its proper position, in a Cornice, &c. has two strong Shades and one Light, in the middle; whereas the very same Moulding, reversed, as for a Base, has two Lights, and one Shade, in the middle, with a faint one at each Edge. The Cima-reversa, in its proper position, has two Lights and one strong Shade, in the middle; the same Moulding reversed, has two faint Shades and one Light, in the middle.

Let X be the Profile of a Cornice, and suppose the Light to flow in the direction AB, at discretion. It is easy to determine, what parts of the Cornice will be Light, and which shaded. For, drawing several Lines, touching the projectures and prominances, parallel to AB, it is obvious that the edge a, obstructing the Light, must necessarily occasion a strong Shade, below; which gradually dies away into the Light, in the middle, where the Rays fall directly on it, at b; and where, the prominence or swell of the convex part occasions another Shade, at c; begining faint, and gradually strengthening, reversely.

Fig. 4.

The same reasoning accounts for the Shade in the middle of the Cima-reversa.

The great projecture of the Corona, at B, throws all below in Shade, which gives great expression and force to the whole, making the upper part to stand off, from the Canvas or Paper. The whole, below, being immersed in Shade, would be totally lost to sight, was it not, in some degree, illumined by reflection; on which I shall speak in its place; let it suffice, here, to observe, that the effects are almost wholly reversed, and but faintly expressed.

Let No. 2. represent the upper Mouldings reversed, for a Base Moulding.

No. 2.

Here, it is obvious, that, the Rays, falling on it in the same direction, illumines the whole; insomuch that, no part can be said, with propriety, to be in Shade; nevertheless, the parts a, b, &c. which are most directly opposed, will be brighter than the other, which are faintly shaded, as the Surface falls off.

I shall just make an observation on the prevalent Custom of shading Mouldings, in architectural Designs, as strongly illumined by the Sun; which entirely destroys their effect.

Suppose AB (No. 3.) to represent a Ray from the Sun. It is obvious, that all the part, from B to b, will be in Shade; and, being a Shadow, projected by the upper edge, strongly defined by a Right Line (as aa) has not a very agreeable effect. The Shade, below, is also more sudden and hard.

No. 3.

Now, if by means of Light and Shade, it is intended to give an Idea of Mouldings, I would ask, seriously, which has the most natural appearance and effect? Suppose the Profile cut off, or covered; would any Person conceive what this Moulding is intended to represent? But, where is the necessity to suppose the Sun to shine on them? as there are strong Shades when it does not; nor are they intended as Pictures, but Designs, which ought to exhibit what is intended, in the most expressive manner possible.

If my opinion might be allowed to have any weight, I should suppose that a Section shewing the inside of a Building, geometrical, would be more expressive, by means of penumbral, instead of strong edgy Shades, which are by no means natural, in such Cases. Nay, so fond are some Architects of forced Effects, that we frequently see a strong right line of Light introduced into a Section of a Dome, through an opening at the Top (AB) as strongly defined on the part at C, which is nearly horizontal (where it is absolutely impossible for Light to come) as elsewhere, at D; whilst the concave Cylinder, below, is shaded without any edge at all.

Fig. 5.

Plate
XXXVIII

Similar to this are the forced and unnatural Effects, which may frequently be seen, in Prints and Paintings, of a strong Light being introduced, striking in a Right Line, from the upper edge of the Cornice, across the Side of a Room, as if it was laid open. Also, on exterior Objects, a strong diagonal Shade, frequently crosses a Building, without the least apparent Cause for such an Effect.

There is (to me) another great impropriety; which, though it does not come immediately within my cognizance, I shall beg leave just to mention; which is, the introducing Landscape, and some appearance of Perspective, in a geometrical Design. I am well assured that it need but be pointed out, to convince any sensible Person of its inconsistency, as a Picture; exhibiting a geometrical Elevation of a Building, placed upright in a Garden, &c, where every thing else is real.

S E C T I O N II.

The THEORY of SHADOWS, projected by the Sun.

IN treating of Shadows, it is necessary, first, to consider the Situation, Distance, and Magnitude of the luminous Body, by which the Shadows are projected. Secondly, the Situation of the Object to the Luminary, and, of the Lines forming Planes, &c. whose Shadows are to be projected; their Position in respect of some other Plane, on which the Shadow is to be projected; and lastly, the Position of the Picture, in respect of the Luminary.

The Sun, which is the grand fountain of Light, being placed in the wide Expanse, dispenses its light, equally, all around, and illumines a concave Sphere, as far as its influence extends; which differs, in degree of Splendor, according to the Distance from the luminous Body. If an opaque Body be interposed, that Body is illumined on its Surface towards the Sun; and consequently, must deprive some part of the Expanse of Light; and, if another opaque Body intervene, the Shade, or Shadow of one, is thrown upon, or projected on the other.

A SHADOW, therefore, is the outline projection of one Object on another, Plane or other Superficies, by Right Lines, from some luminous Body to the PLANE of PROJECTION; i. e. the Plane on which the Shadow is projected.

By RAYS of LIGHT is to be understood Right Lines, from the Luminary, passing by the Extremes of an Object, and projecting its Shadow.

Fig. 6.

To illustrate what has been advanced, suppose the Body, a Globe, at S, to represent the Sun, and CD a portion of a concave Sphere, illumined by its Light; let E be supposed an opaque Body, illumined on the Surface towards the Sun.

Now, if this opaque Body be also a Globe, representing the Earth or any other Planet; the Sun being, in proportion to it, immensely great, the Space deprived of Light, in the Expanse, will form a Cone; as ACB.

If a Plane, or any other opaque Surface, be placed at FG, within the extent of the Cone, it will receive, thereon, the Shadow of the opaque Body, at H; which Projection, if the Plane be direct to the Sun, will be a Circle; but, if the Plane be inclined, as DL, it will form an Ellipsis, at I. These Projections, or Shadows, are less than the Object; because the luminous Body is greater. But, if the luminous Body be equal to the Object, or at an infinite Distance; the Shadow, on the direct Plane, will be equal to the Object, and may be considered as its orthographic Projection.

Hence it is evident, that, from the magnitude of the Sun in proportion to the Earth, the Rays of Light, from its extremes to the Earth, are converging; but, when its immense Distance is considered, they are, to all sense, parallel. Then, seeing that the largest Object, on the Earth, can scarce be said to bear any proportion to the whole, we may consider them as being perfectly parallel.

Next, the Altitude of the Luminary is to be considered, so as to give the best and most pleasing effect to the Picture; this is generally at the discretion of the Artist. It may be necessary to explain what is meant by its Altitude.

Let the Semicircle AFB be supposed an Arch in the Heavens, in which is the Sun's *apparent* diurnal motion; and let E be the Earth, *supposed* at rest, in the Center of the Universe.

Fig. 7.

If the Sun be at C, then, the Ark CB is the measure of its Altitude; and, the Angle CEB is the Angle of Elevation; EB, being considered as the Horizon, and CE the direction of the Rays of Light. If the Sun be at D, then, DEB is the Angle of the Inclination of the Rays of Light to the Horizon, and the ark DB the measure of its Altitude; but, when its place is at F, in the middle of the Arch (90 Degrees, each way, from A and B) its Rays have, then, no Inclination to the Horizon, AB; and consequently, a perpendicular Line, GE, will project no Shadow. This can only happen to those parts which lie between the Tropics.

Lastly; the Angle of Inclination which a vertical Plane, passing through the center of the Luminary, makes with the Picture, is necessary to be known, when it is not in the Plane of the Picture.

Now, although the Rays of Light, proceeding from the Sun, are parallel amongst themselves, in respect of the Earth, yet their inclination to its Surface, varies infinitely.

Suppose a Globe illumined by the Sun, at S, whose Center only is considered*. Let AB be the Horizon of the part at D, to which the Sun is directly opposite; the Ray SC is perpendicular to the Horizon, AB; and consequently, a perpendicular Line, as CD, to the Horizon of that place, can have no Shadow, but will be projected towards the Center. But, if any other Tangent, as EF, be drawn; the direct Ray SC, to the Globe, is inclined to it, in the Angle SDE; and consequently, Lines perpendicular to EF will project Shadows. As CE to D.

Fig. 8.

To illustrate this more clearly; suppose the Plane AB, horizontal, a portion of the Earths Surface, to which the Rays are inclined, and SE the direction of a Ray of Light. The Angle of Inclination, to the Plane AB, is SED; and, the length of the Shadow of the Perpendicular CD, is DE.

Fig. 9.

Hence it is manifest, that the Shadow of a Right Line, on a Plane, is always a Right Line (1. 7. El) for it is projected by a *Plane of Shade*, occasioned by the Line; as CED, which cuts another Plane, whose common Section is the Shadow.

And, it is evident, that the greater the angle of Elevation is, the shorter is the Shadow; for, FE projects the same Point, E, to G.

In projecting Shadows by the Sun, there are three CASES to be considered, or situations of the Luminary; viz. it must be either on this side, or on the other side, or in the Plane of the Picture.

* In projecting Shadows by the Sun, in order to describe the true Contour, or outline of the Shadow, it is necessary to consider it as a luminous Point only, at an infinite Distance; for, if its magnitude was taken into consideration, since every part of its Surface emits Light, the Shadow of a Point, at any Distance, would always be, in proportion to the Sun, as the distance of the same Point from the Sun; as in Fig. 10. S is supposed the Sun, and A, a Point whose Shadow is projected, on the Plane X.

Now, the whole extent of the Shadow of the Point A is a Circle, whose Diameter is *ab*; for, since it is obvious, that every part of the Sun must emit Light; consequently, a Ray of Light emitted from *a*, and passing through the Point A, will project its shadow to *a*; and a Ray from *b* will project the same Point to *b* &c. while the Center (S) only, being considered, will project it to B, which is the center of the Shade, and its real Shadow. For (supposing the Point to have substance) any other part of the Shadow, ~~is~~, is more languid, the farther it is from the Center, B; consequently, at its extremes, it cannot be distinguished from the surrounding Light; seeing that, every Point, save *a* or *b*, in the Sun's surface, emits light to *a* or *b*. Wherefore, since the Triangles, *aAb*, *aAb*, are similar, it will consequently be, as, *Aa* is to *Aa*, so is *ab* to *ab*, that is, as AB to AS.

Fig. 10.

Hence, it is easy to account for the Penumbra of Shadows; which, at a distance, appear distinctly defined, but on approaching near, we find it otherwise; insomuch that, except where the Lines, in any Object occasioning the Shade, cut the Surface on which the Shadow is projected, we cannot trace a line at all; and the farther the Shadow is from that Point, the more penumbral it becomes; that is, the less distinctly defined; till, at a considerable distance, it becomes insensibly mixed with the Light.

Plate
XXXVIII

In order to determine the Shadows of Objects, delineated on the Picture; having first considered and determined on the situation and altitude of the Luminary, the next thing requisite, if the luminous Body, or Point (for it is always considered as such) be not in the Picture, is to find the Vanishing Point of the Rays of Light; but, when it is in the Plane of the Picture, the Rays are parallel on the Picture, and consequently they have no Vanishing Point; the Angle of Elevation is, then, only necessary to be considered.

Fig. 11.

Let FGHI be the Picture, and EC the Distance of the Picture. Also, let SE be supposed a Ray of Light.

Imagine the Plane ABFG to pass through the Luminary, and through the Eye; at E, cutting the Picture in FG; in which Line, whether the Sun be on this, or on the other side of the Picture, as at S, its apparent, or transprojected place must necessarily be; as at F or G.

For, being on the other Side, at S (supposed at an immense Distance) and being in the Plane ABFG, consequently ES is in that Plane, and will cut the Picture in their common Intersection, FG, at F. Therefore, F represents the Sun on the Picture, and is consequently the Vanishing Point of the Rays of Light.

When the Sun is on this Side, at S', or S², seeing it is still in the same Plane, ABFG, consequently S', or S²E, being produced, will also cut the Picture in FG, as at G; and because all the Rays are parallel amongst themselves, and all Lines which are parallel have the same Vanishing Point, consequently, G is their Vanishing Point. (Def. 22.) for S¹G is a Ray of Light, to which all other Rays are parallel; or, it is a Right Line, passing through the Eye, parallel to them.

N. B. In the former Case (when the Sun is on the other Side of the Picture) it is obvious, that its place, in the Picture, must necessarily be above the Horizontal Line, as it cannot be seen till it is above the Horizon; so, in this case (seeing it is transprojected) being above the Horizon, its transprojected place must necessarily be below the Horizontal Line; from which (in either Case) it is farther removed, as the Luminary is more elevated above the Horizon. Also, whether its real place be on the right Hand, or on the left, its apparent place is the same, in the former Case, but reversed in the other. (See TRANSPJECTION, in the Introduction; Page 52.)

Hitherto I have proceeded introductorily, which, I have called the Theory of Shadows; seeing that, all which has been said is theoretic. I shall now proceed to practice, and lie down such Rules as are necessary, for projecting the Shadows of all regular Objects, particularly such as are right lined; which may be described on plane Surfaces, with all the facility imaginable, by adhering to the following Rules.

FIRST. The indefinite projection of the Shadow of a Right Line, on any Surface whatever, is the Intersection of that Surface by a Plane, passing through the luminous Point and the Line; which, for distinction sake, I shall call the PLANE OF SHADE. This is obvious in itself.

SECOND. The Vanishing Line of the *Plane of Shade*, projecting the Shadow of any Right Line, is a Right Line drawn through the Vanishing Point of the Rays of Light, and the Vanishing Point of the Line whose Shadow is required (Th. 11.)

Because, the Vanishing Point of the Line, whose Shadow is projected, and the Vanishing Point of the Rays, projecting the Shadow, are in the Plane of Shade.

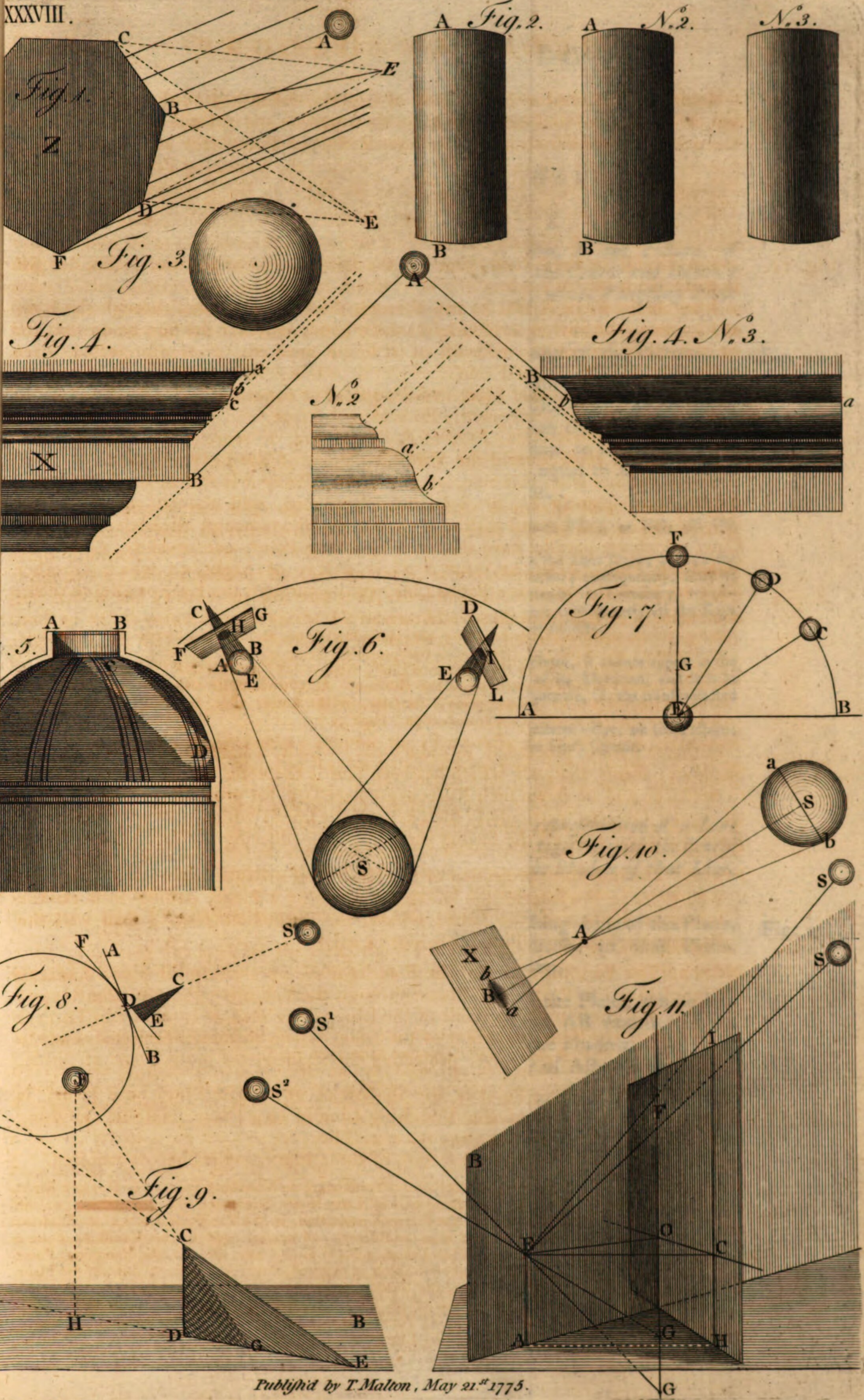
THIRD. The Vanishing Point of the Shadow of any Right Line, on a Plane, is the intersecting Point of the Vanishing Line of that Plane; and the Vanishing Line of the PLANE OF SHADE. (Cor. 2. Theo. 3.)

Because, the common Intersection of those Planes is the Shadow required.

N. B. When the Sun is in the Plane of the Picture, there being no Vanishing Point of its Rays, a Right Line, drawn through the Vanishing Point of any Line whose Shadow is required, parallel to the given Ray, cuts the Vanishing Line of the Plane of projection, in the Vanishing Point of the Shadow.

Also, if the Original Line be parallel to the Picture, and consequently has no Vanishing Point; (the Sun being on either side of the Picture) then, a Right Line drawn through the Vanishing Point of the Rays, parallel to the Line whose Shadow is required, cuts the Vanishing Line of the Plane of projection, in the Vanishing Point of the Shadow.

But, when the Luminary is in the Plane of the Picture, and the Line, whose Shadow is required, parallel to it, the Shadow has no Vanishing Point; for it is, in such Case, necessarily parallel to the Picture; therefore, parallel to the Vanishing Line of the Plane of projection.





51

S E C T I O N III.

Of the PROJECTION of rectilinear SHADOWS.

P R O B L E M I.

Plate
XXXIX.

Having the Angle of the Sun's Elevation (X) and the Inclination, to the Picture, of a vertical Plane passing through its Center (equal Z) with the Center and Distance of the Picture given; to find the Sun's place on the Picture, or the Vanishing Point of the Rays of Light.

Let CE be the horizontal Vanishing Line, and C the Center of the Picture.

Fig. 12.

Make CB equal to the Distance, perpendicular to CE, and draw AB parallel to CE.

Draw BD, making the Angle ABD equal to Z, cutting CE, at D; and through D, draw FG, perpendicular to CE. FG is the Intersection of a vertical Plane, passing through the Sun, with the Picture, whose inclination to it is equal Z.

Make DE equal to DB, and the Angle DEF, or DEG, equal to X, the Angle of the Sun's Altitude; F or G is the Vanishing Point sought.

DEM. Turn up the Triangle CBD, perpendicular, and turn over the Plane FEG, or FG, till DE coincides with DB.

Then, if the Sun be on the other side of the Picture, EF is parallel to the Sun's Rays; because the Luminary is in the Plane EFG, and, the Angle DEF is equal to its Elevation; consequently, since its Distance is, to sense, infinite, EF produced would pass through the Center of the Luminary, wherefore, F is the place of the Sun on the Picture; i. e. F represents the Sun; consequently all the Rays center there, and therefore it is their Vanishing Point. For its Distance is infinite.

CASE 2d. When the Sun is on this side the Picture, being behind the Spectator, it cannot appear in the Picture, but its place is transprojected to G; for, DEG is the Angle of its Elevation, and it is in the Plane FEG; wherefore, EG is parallel to the Rays of Light; consequently, G, the transprojected place of the Luminary, is their Vanishing Point.

Or, as Brook Taylor, very pertinently, calls it, the Shadow of the Spectator's Eye, on the Picture; for E is the Eye, wherefore GE, being produced, would pass through the Sun's Center.

P R O B L E M II.

The Vanishing Point of the Sun's Rays being given, and the representation of a Line perpendicular to some Plane, whose Vanishing Line is given; together with the Center and Distance of the Picture; to find the representation of the Shadow of that Line, on the Plane, and its Vanishing Point.

Let S be the Vanishing Point of the Rays, VL the Vanishing Line of the Plane, and AB the given representation of a Line perpendicular to that Plane. C is the Center of the Picture, whose Distance is known.

Fig. 13.

Find F, the Vanishing Point of Lines perpendicular to the Plane, whose Vanishing Line is VL (Prob. 2. Sect. 12. B. 3.) consequently, AB vanishes in F; draw SF, cutting VL at V. V is the Vanishing Point of the Shadow.

Draw VB and SA, intersecting at D; BD is the Shadow of AB, required.

DEM. Whether S be considered as the Image of the Sun, on the Picture, or S its transprojected place, SF is the Vanishing Line of the Plane of Shade, for all Lines perpendicular to that Plane; seeing that, F is the Vanishing Point of all such Lines; wherefore, V, its intersection with VL, is the Vanishing Point of the Shadow, of all Lines perpendicular to the Plane whose Vanishing Line is VL.

For, SV and AB represent parallel Lines (Cor. 1. Theo. 5.) wherefore, a Plane may pass through both Lines (Ax. 5.) and consequently, SA, VB, AF, and SF are all in that Plane.

But, F is the Vanishing Point of Lines perpendicular to the Plane; and, because S represents a Point at an infinite Distance in that Plane, SF is the Vanishing Line of a Plane passing through AB.

But, S represents the Sun, the Vanishing Point of the Rays of Light, and V is its Seat on the Plane (whose Distance is supposed infinite) consequently, V is the Vanishing Point of the Shadow, BD; for, the Plane of Shade, SABF, projecting its Shadow, is parallel to a Plane passing through the Eye and the Points S and F, seeing they are at an infinite distance; and the Shadow, BD, is the intersection of that Plane with the Plane of Projection; therefore its Vanishing Point is V, the intersection of their Vanishing Lines, VL, and SF. (Cor. 2. Theo. 8.)

Plate
XXXIX.

This Problem is universal; I shall, next, apply it to Planes which are perpendicular to the Picture.

Fig. 13.
No. 2.

SECONDLY. Let AB be a Line perpendicular to the Horizon, whose Shadow is required, and S the representation of the Sun, on the Picture; or S its trans-projected Image, the Sun being supposed on this Side.

Draw SV perpendicular to the Vanishing Line; then, V is the Seat of the Luminary, its Distance being supposed infinite.

Draw VB and SA, as before, intersecting at D; BD is the Shadow required.

For, because AB, whose Shadow is to be projected, is perpendicular to the Horizon, and the Picture is supposed vertical, SV is the Vanishing Line of the Plane of Shade; wherefore, V, the Seat of the Luminary, is the Vanishing Point of the Shadow; and, SD is a Ray of Light, projecting the Shadow of the Point A, which determines its length, BD.

This is universally applicable to all Planes which are perpendicular to the Picture, whether they be horizontal, vertical, or inclined to the Horizon.

THIRDLY. When the Luminary is in the Plane of the Picture.

In this CASE, the Rays having no Vanishing Point, the inclination of the Rays to the Plane of projection, being determined, they are all parallel on the Picture seeing, the distance of the Vanishing Point is infinite.

No. 3.

Draw BD parallel to the Vanishing Line, and SA, cutting BD at D, making the Angle SDB equal to the Angle of the Sun's Elevation; BD is the Shadow required.

For, because the Luminary is supposed in the Plane of the Picture, it is consequently in every Plane parallel to the Picture; wherefore, the Plane of Shade, SDB, is parallel to the Picture, seeing the Line AB is parallel; and consequently, BD, its Shadow, is parallel to the Vanishing Line of the Plane of Projection, seeing it is parallel to the Picture.

If the Plane, to which a Line is perpendicular, be parallel to the Picture, there can be no Shadow of that Line projected on it, but when the Luminary is on this Side.

No. 4.

Let AB represent a Line perpendicular to the Plane X; and, let S be the trans-projected Image of the Sun, on the Picture; C is its Center. Join CS.

Draw BD, parallel to CS, and AS, cutting BD, at D; BD is the Shadow required.

Because the Plane (X) on which the Shadow is to be projected, is parallel to the Picture, it has no Vanishing Line; wherefore, seeing the distance of the Luminary is supposed infinite, consequently its Seat, on that Plane, is also at an infinite Distance.

But CS, produced, is the Seat of a Ray of Light, projecting its Vanishing Point S; for it passes through the Eye, which is perpendicularly opposite to C; wherefore, the Seat of the Luminary is at an infinite distance, in the Line SC produced. Consequently, the Shadows BD, *BD*, &c. are all parallel to CS; and S is the Vanishing Point of the Rays, AS, *AS*, &c. which determine the length of the Shadow BD, &c. which, being of Lines perpendicular to a Plane that is parallel to the Picture, are consequently all parallel amongst themselves.

P R O B L E M III.

To project the Shadows of Right Lines, on a Plane to which they are parallel; and, in all positions to the Picture.

FIRST, when the Lines are parallel to the Picture, and the Luminary in the Plane of the Picture.

The Shadows of Lines, on a Plane to which they are parallel, cannot be determined, conveniently, without having their Seats on that Plane; and is the same as finding the Shadows of Lines perpendicular to the Plane; or, the Shadow of one extreme of the Line being found, the other is easily determined.

Fig. 14.

Let AB be a Line parallel to the Picture, and parallel to the Ground Plane, on which the Shadow is to be projected. Its Seat is *a b*.

If the Sun be in the Plane of the Picture, and if it was in the Zenith of that place, the Shadow of AB is *a b*. But, if the Altitude of the Sun be the Angle SCD; then, drawing AD, parallel to SC, the Shadow of AB is CD; for, the Shadow of a Perpendicular, A*a*, is *a D*; and CD is equal AB. seeing, ABCD, the Plane of the Shadow, is a Parallelogram.

After

After the same manner, the Shadow of the inclined Line, EF (being parallel to the Picture) is projected; by producing the Line till it cuts the Plane, at G; then, drawing GI, parallel to the Vanishing Line, and S^2H , S^3I , through F and E, parallel to SC, cutting GI, at H and I; HI is its Shadow. No. 2.

SECONDLY. If the Line AB be either perpendicular or inclined to the Picture, and parallel to the Horizon, its Seat, at least of one extreme (B) must be determined; which, as it may be in some vertical Plane, (as X) its Seat on the Ground is in the Intersection of that Plane, at b; and because the Plane X is parallel to the Picture, the Luminary is in that Plane; and consequently, the Shadow of the extreme B will be somewhere in the Intersection of that Plane. No. 3.

Draw SD, through B, making the Angle SDb equal to the Altitude of the Sun, giving the Point D, in the Intersection of the Plane X, for the Shadow of B.

Then, because AB is perpendicular to the Picture, C, is its Vanishing Point; and, because the Shadow is projected on a Plane, to which AB is parallel, the Shadow is necessarily parallel to AB, and consequently it has the same Vanishing Point, C.

Wherefore, draw CD and produce it; draw AE parallel to SD, (the given Ray of Light) cutting CD, produced, at E, the Shadow of A.

DE is the Shadow of AB on the Ground; to which it is parallel and equal.

For the Plane of Shade ABDE is a right angled Parallelogram in Perspective.

FG is its Shadow on an inclined Plane, to which AB is parallel; projected by the same Rays of Light, or Plane of Shade.

SCHOL. Because the Sun is in the Plane X, it cannot be said to be illumined; and consequently, no Shadow can be projected on it; otherwise, if the Luminary was ever so little on this Side, the Shadow of AB will be first projected on it, from B to D, and then projected to E; in which Case, BD would not be a Ray of Light, but a Shadow, and consequently, not parallel to AE.

CASE the Second and Third.

When the Luminary is on this Side, or on the other Side of the Picture.

FIRST. Let AB be parallel to the Picture, and to the Plane, on which its Shadow is to be projected. Let S be the Image of the Sun, on the Picture; or $\odot$ its transprojected Image. Let VL be the Vanishing Line of the Plane of projection. Fig. 15.

Now, the Line AB being parallel to the Picture, has no Vanishing Point; consequently, its Shadow, being on a Plane to which it is parallel, is parallel to the Line. Let D be the Seat of A on the Plane; C is the Center of the Picture.

Because the Plane, on which the Shadow is to be projected, is inclined to the Picture, through C, the Center, draw its Vertical Line EF; and because D is the Seat of A, on the Plane, draw AD and produce it, cutting the Vertical Line at F, the Vanishing Point of Lines perpendicular to the Plane.

For the Seat of a Point on any Plane is produced by a perpendicular to that Plane.

Draw SF, or $\odot F$, cutting the Vanishing Line at V, or L, the Seat of the Luminary on the Plane, at an infinite Distance.

Draw DV, or DL; and SA, or $\odot A$, cutting DV or DL, at a or a , the Shadow of the extreme A, on the Plane. Draw ab, or ab , parallel to the Van. Line, that is to AB; and, through B, draw SB, or $\odot B$, cutting ab, or ab , at b, or b .

ab is the Shadow of AB by means of S the Image of the Sun, on the other side of the Picture, or, ab is its Shadow, projected by the Vanishing Point $\odot$, the transprojected Image of the Luminary, on this Side; both which, are Vanishing Points of the Rays of Light. aD, or aD , is the Shadow of the Perp. AD.

SECONDLY. When the Line AB is perpendicular to the Picture, and parallel to the Plane of Projection; C is the Center. No. 2.

Because the Line whose Shadow is to be projected is perpendicular to the Picture, and parallel to the Plane of Projection, that Plane is consequently perpendicular to the Picture, and its Vanishing Line VC passes through the Center. (Theo. 4.)

Let

Plate XXXIX. Let D be the Seat of the extreme A, on the Plane; and let S, or $\odot$, be the Image of the Luminary; projected or transprojected.
 Fig. 15. Draw SV, or $\odot V$, perpendicular to the Vanishing Line; and, through D, draw VD indefinite. Draw SA, or $\odot A$, till it cuts VD, at a or a , the Shadow of the extreme A, on the Plane, in either Case.
 No. 2.

For, AD is perpendicular to the Plane, and Da or Da , is its Shadow. (Pr. 2.)

Draw Ca, or Ca , indefinite, and SB, or $\odot B$, cutting it at b, or b .

a b is the Shadow of AB, the Sun being beyond the Picture; or, ab is the Shadow of AB, the Sun being on this Side, by means of its transprojected Image, $\odot$.

For AB being parallel to the Plane of Projection, its Shadow is parallel to AB; consequently, because AB is perpendicular to the Picture, the Center, C, is their common Vanishing Point. And, because the Rays of Light are parallel amongst themselves, they have the same Vanishing Point, S, or $\odot$.

N. B. When the Line, AB, is inclined to the Picture, and the Plane of Projection is perpendicular to it, there is no difference, in the process, but only in its Vanishing Point.

No. 3. THIRDLY. When the Line AB is inclined to the Picture, and the Plane of Projection also inclined to the Picture. Let VL be its Vanishing Line.

Find the Vanishing Point (F) of Lines perpendicular to the Plane, (Prob. 2.) and draw SF, or $F\odot$, cutting the Vanishing Line at E, the Seat of the Luminary.

Thro' D, the Seat of A, draw ED indefinite, and SA, or $\odot A$ cutting ED, at a or a .

Then, V being the Vanishing Point of the Line AB, and because the Shadow is parallel to it, draw Va, or Va , indefinite, and SB, or $\odot B$, cutting it, at b, or b ; a b, or ab , is the Shadow of AB, projected on the Plane whose Van. Line is VL.

P R O B L E M IV.

To determine the Shadows of Lines inclined to the Plane of Projection and to the Picture; in any Angle, whatever.

Fig. 16. Let AB be inclined to the Plane X, on which the Shadow is to be projected; and, let ST be a given Ray of Light, the Luminary being supposed in the Picture.

Through V, the Vanishing Point of AB, draw VC parallel to the given Ray of Light, cutting the Van. Line of the Plane X, at C, the Van. Point of the Shadow.

For, the Luminary being in the Plane of the Picture, its Rays have no Vanishing Point; consequently, a Right Line drawn through V, the Vanishing Point of any Line, parallel to the Rays, is the Vanishing Line of the Plane of Shade, projecting the Shadow of that Line.

Therefore, draw AC, the indefinite Shadow of AB; and BD parallel to the given Ray; that is, parallel to VC, the Vanishing Line of the Plane of Shade.

AD is the Shadow of AB on the Plane X.

If the Line EF, whose Shadow is required, does not cut the Plane, on which it is to be projected, let it be produced till it cuts the Plane, at G.

Or, if the Seat of either extreme be given, as a of the Point E, or b of the extreme F; then, having obtained the Shadow of either, e or f (Prob. 2.) draw Ce, or Cf; and Rays, through the extremes, E and F, parallel to the given Ray, ST; by which means the Shadow, ef , of EF is projected.

C A S E the Second and Third.

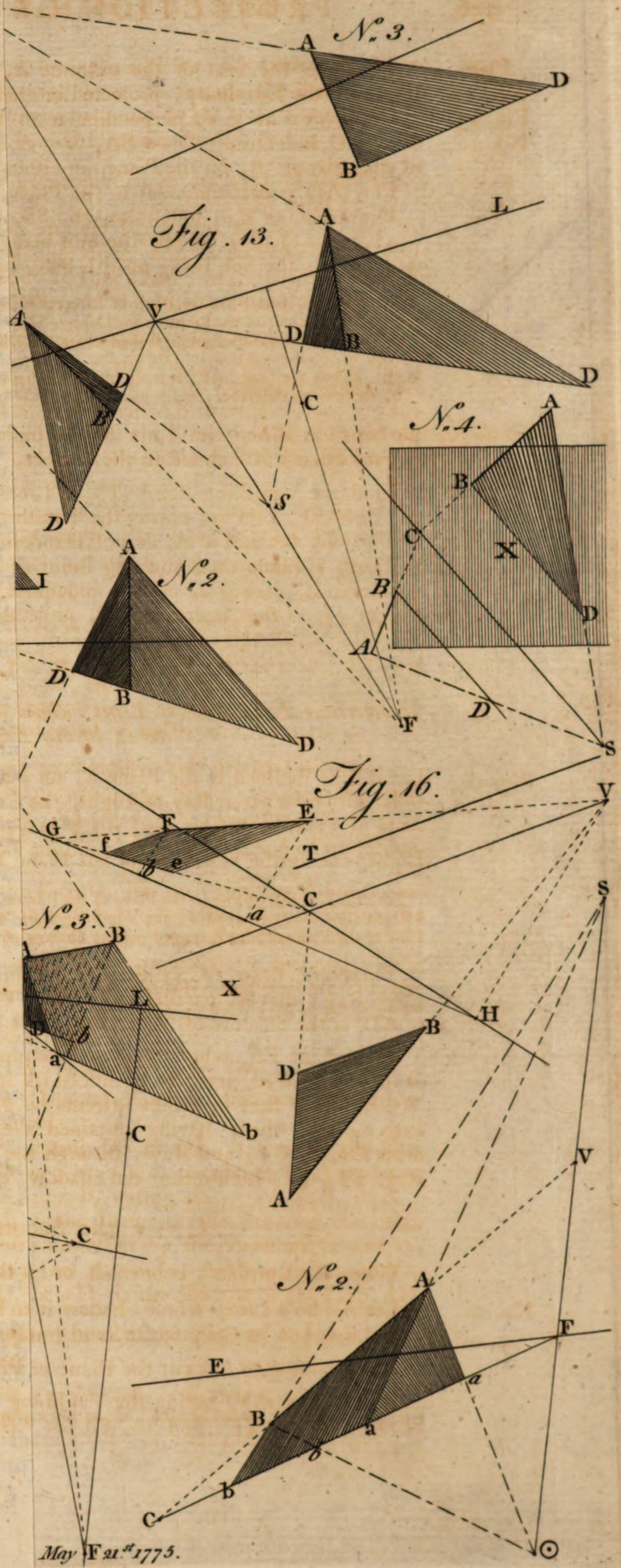
When the Luminary is beyond, or on this Side of the Plane of the Picture.

No. 2. Let AB be a Line, whose Shadow is to be projected. V is its Vanishing Point. Let S and $\odot$ be the projected and transprojected Images of the Sun.

If the Line does not cut the Plane of Projection, let it be produced, to C.

Draw SV or $\odot V$, cutting the Vanishing Line EF, at F, the Van. Point of the Shadow. Draw CF; and SA, SB, or $\odot A$, $\odot B$, cutting it at a and b, or a and b .

a b



May F 21st 1775.

ab is the Shadow of AB when the Luminary is beyond the Picture, and ab , when it is on this Side; according to its determined place.

Or the Shadow may be found by means of the Seat of either extreme, given or found, on the Plane of Projection; as in the first Case.

SCHOL. Any Line, whose Shadow is to be projected, cutting the Plane of Projection, (whose Vanishing Line is given or found) the process is the same, whether the Plane of Projection be perpendicular or inclined to the Picture; for, if the Vanishing Point of that Line be obtained, the Vanishing Line of the Plane of Shade is also; whose Intersection with the Vanishing Line of the Plane of Projection is the Vanishing Point of the Shadow; which, it must be obvious, always passes through that Point in which the Line cuts or would cut the Plane.

2. When the Plane of projection is parallel to the Picture, there can be no Shadow projected on it, but when the Luminary is on this Side; in which Case, whether the Line be perpendicular or inclined to the Plane, it is the same to the Picture, and, its Vanishing Point being determined, the process is the same. In this Case, the Plane of projection having no Vanishing Line, the Shadow, of any Line thereon, is parallel to the Vanishing Line of the Plane of Shade.
3. All Lines which are parallel to such Planes are also parallel to the Picture; and their Shadows, being parallel to the Lines, are always so represented; which is not the Case on other Planes, but when the Lines are parallel to the Picture, as well as to the Plane of projection.
4. The Seats of such Lines, on the Plane, must be had, or the Shadow cannot be determined; in which Case, it is but finding the Shadows of two equal Lines, perpendicular to the Plane; and, joining their Extremes, the Shadow of the parallel Line is obtained, as in Prob. 2.

Having, in these Problems, given every Rule which I conceive necessary for the projection of right lined Shadows, I shall, next, give some Examples of their utility, in the application of them to the Shadows of Objects.

As every Object, which we delineate, is composed either of Planes or curved Surfaces, so likewise, those Planes are bounded by right Lines or curved; and, as the outline of the Shadow only is required, we should carefully observe on what part of the Object the Light falls, that we do not give the Shadows of such Lines as can (from their situation to the Light) have no Shadow; for, according to the altitude of the Luminary, or its inclination to the Picture, different Lines in the Object define its Shadow. Wherefore, since it is from the linear perspective representation of the Object, that the Shadow is projected, it is very easy to mistake the Line which casts the Shadow; and, as they are frequently out of sight, they ought to be determined with caution, before we begin the process.

The consideration of the Luminary being beyond, or on this Side, or in the Plane of the Picture, is also a circumstance which should be maturely considered. The best effects, are (in my opinion) produced, by considering the Sun to be on this Side; because it is obvious, that, when it is beyond the Picture, though ever so little, that is, though ever so much inclined, it is also beyond every Object in the Picture; but, if the Sun itself be represented, that is, if it be so little elevated and so little inclined to the Picture, that the Sun's apparent place is within its limits, it must then be entirely beyond the Objects; consequently, the whole of any Object, on that Side, is immersed in Shade; and the Shadow, of each, is projected towards the Eye, greatly distorted, and larger than the Object. Whereas, the Sun being on this Side, towards either hand, as is most suitable to the Object (according to what Faces we would have illumined) the Shadows are projected forwards, from the Eye, diminished, and great part of it hid by the Object; which, with the various effects of Light and Shade, on the Object, cannot fail rendering the whole agreeable, and most pleasing to the Eye, as a Copy of Nature.

E X A M P L E I.

To represent the Shadow of a Plane Figure, on a Plane.

FIRST. Let the Plane $ABCDE$ be perpendicular to the Ground Plane, on which Fig. 17. the Shadow is to be projected. Let S and $\odot$ be the Image and transprojected Image of the Sun; VL is the Vanishing Line of the Plane $ABCDE$, and FG of the Plane of projection.

Draw SF , or $\odot F$, perpendicular to the Horizontal Line, cutting it at F ; the Vanishing Point of Lines perpendicular to the Horizon. (Prob. 2.)

3 T

Through

Plate XL. Through A, draw Fb, indefinite; and, if the Shadow be projected by the Image, Fig. 17. S, through B, draw SB, cutting the former, at b. Or, draw B $\odot$, cutting it at b.

Then, for the Shadow of BC (on this Side) join SV; if it be parallel to the Horizon, draw bc also parallel; if it be not parallel, then, SV produced will give its Vanishing Point. For the same Line on the other Side, join V $\odot$, cutting the Horizontal Line at H, and draw bH. SC, or C $\odot$, cuts it at c or c, respectively.

CD is parallel to the Plane of projection, and G its Vanishing Point; therefore, draw cG, or cG, and SDd, or D $\odot$, giving d, or d, for the Shadow of D.

Lastly; for the Line DE (on this Side) draw SL, cutting the Horizontal Line at I, and draw Id. For the other Side, draw $\odot$ L; which being produced to the Horizontal Line, will give the Vanishing Point of dE, and compleats that Shadow. Or, join dE, or dE, only.

A b c d E is the Shadow of ABCDE projected on the Ground Plane, by the Image (S) of the Sun, on the other side of the Picture; and, A b c d E is its Shadow, by the transprojected Image, $\odot$, being considered on this Side.

Fig. 18.

SECONDLY. Let the Plane ABCDE be either perpendicular or inclined to a vertical Plane, whose Vanishing Line is VL.

Whether the Plane, whose Shadow is required, be perpendicular or inclined to the Picture, the process is the same. FH is the Van. Line of the Plane ABCDE.

FIRST. Let S be the Image of the Sun, on the other side of the Picture.

The Line, AB being parallel to the Picture, draw SV parallel to it; V is the Vanishing Point, of its Shadow; wherefore, through A draw Vb indefinite, and, through B, draw Sb, cutting it at b, which determines its length, Ab.

H being the Vanishing Point of the contiguous Line BC, draw SH, and produce it to I, the Vanishing Point of its Shadow.

Draw bI, and Sc, through C, cutting it at c. bc is the Shadow of BC.

Then, because CD is parallel to the Plane of projection, and G is its Vanishing Point, draw cG; and SD, cutting it at d, the Shadow of D.

Lastly, draw SF, giving the Vanishing Point J, if it was necessary; but it is obvious, that, dE, being joined, compleats the Shadow, and tends to J.

If the Shadow was obstructed by another Plane, cutting it at MN, the Vanishing Line of which is FN; SV, being produced, would cut that Vanishing Line in the Vanishing Point of the Shadow of AB, on that Plane; from which, draw Mb. SH produced, cuts the Vanishing Line at P; draw bP, cutting the Ray SCc at e; and, SG produced cuts it at O; draw eO; or join ef only, which compleats it.

SECOND. Let $\odot$ be the transprojected Image of the Sun, on this Side.

AB being parallel to the Picture, draw $\odot$ K parallel to it, cutting the Vanishing Line, VK, at K, the Vanishing Point of its Shadow.

Draw AK, and B $\odot$, cutting it at b, the Shadow of B. $\odot$ H cuts the Vanishing Line at L; draw bL, and C $\odot$, cutting it at c. Then, draw cG, and D $\odot$, cutting it at d. cd is the Shadow of CD, being parallel to the Plane of projection.

If $\odot$ F be parallel to the Vanishing Line, VK; then, dE is also parallel to it. Or, it will tend to that Point, in which $\odot$ F, being produced, would cut VK.

SCHOL. If the Plane of projection be much inclined to the Picture, there can be no Shadow cast on it, the Sun being beyond the Picture; or they will be drag'd out to an immoderate length. For, if the Image of the Sun appear in the Picture, it will be behind the Plane of projection, being much inclined.

By observing the Rules, given above, the Shadow of any plane Object may be projected on any Plane, or on various Planes, of which I shall give some Examples.

EXAMPLE

21. N^o 2.

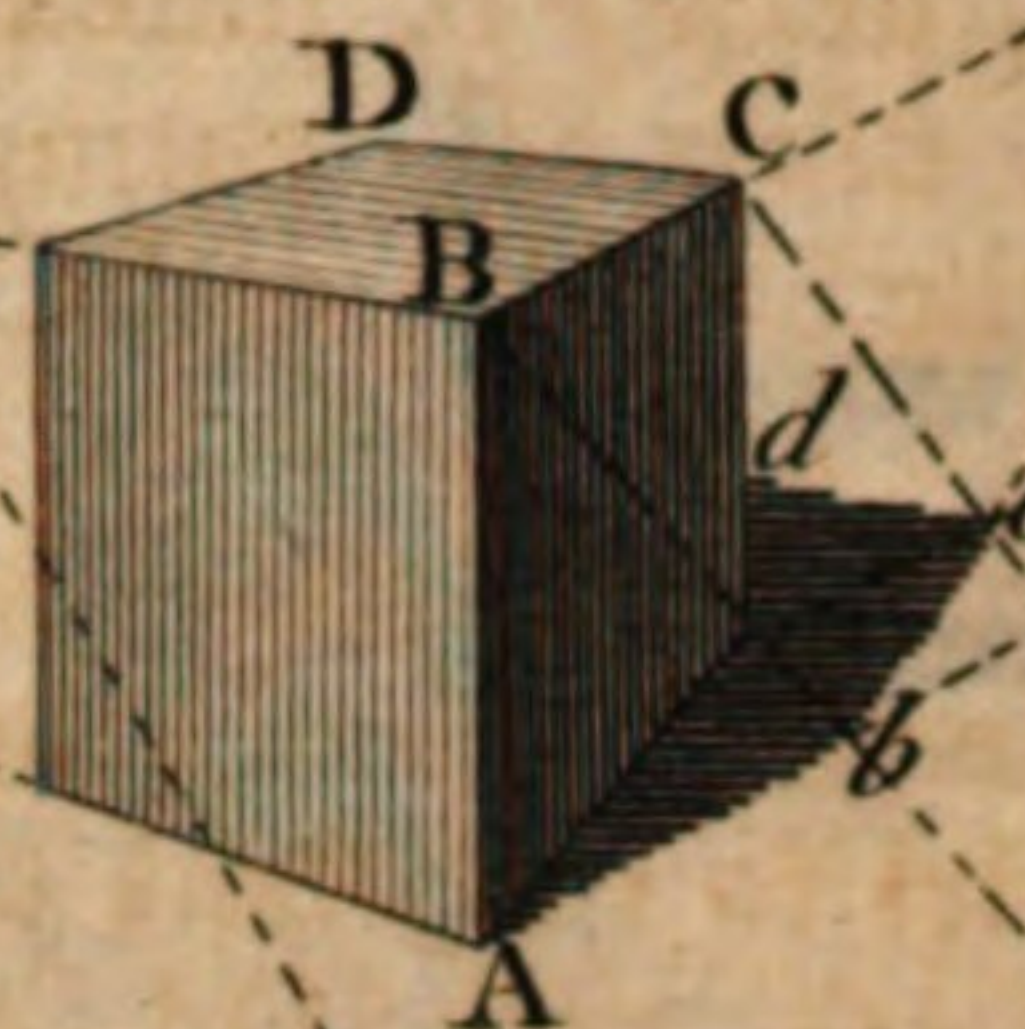


Fig. 21.

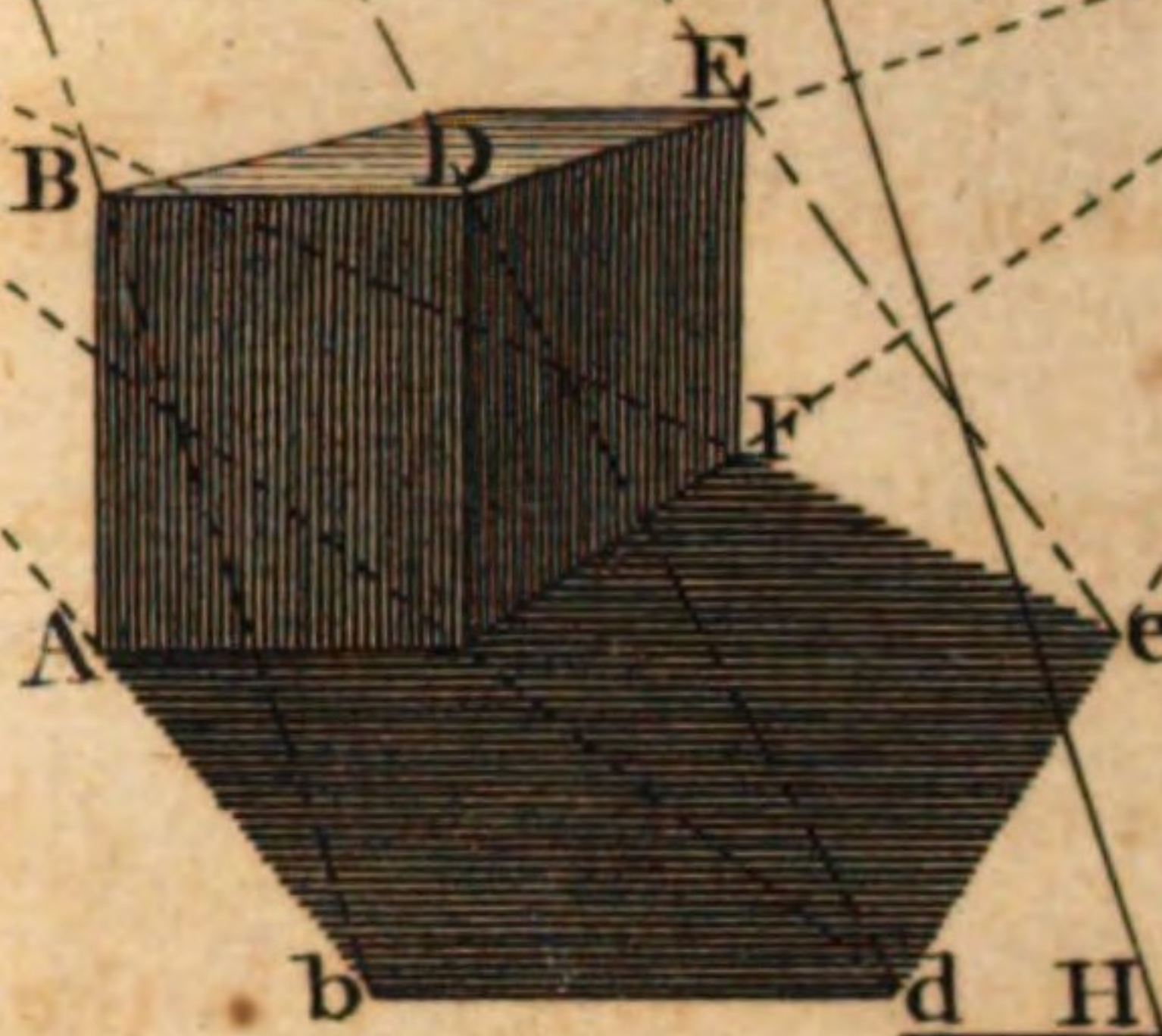


Fig. 18.

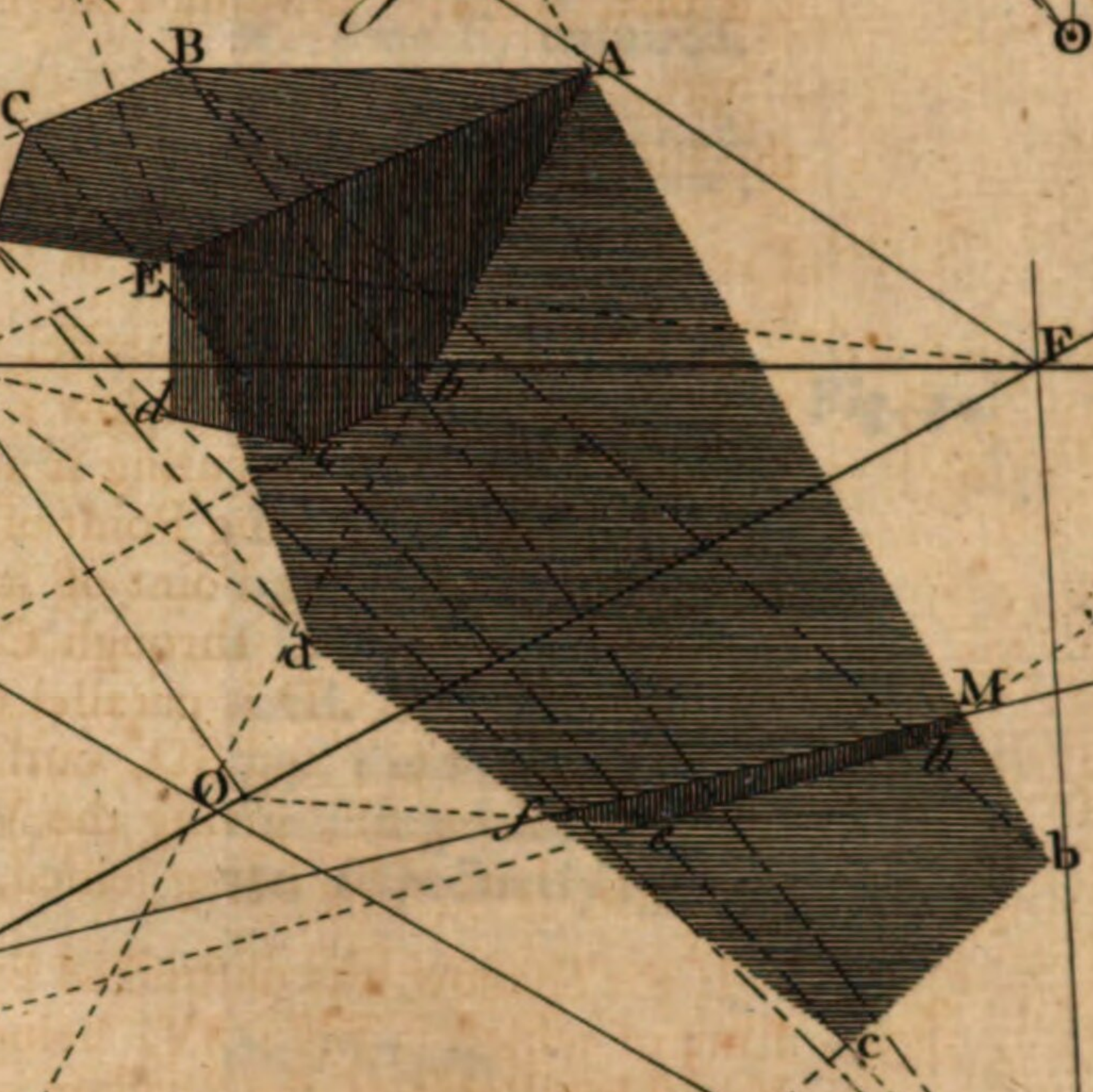


Fig. 17.

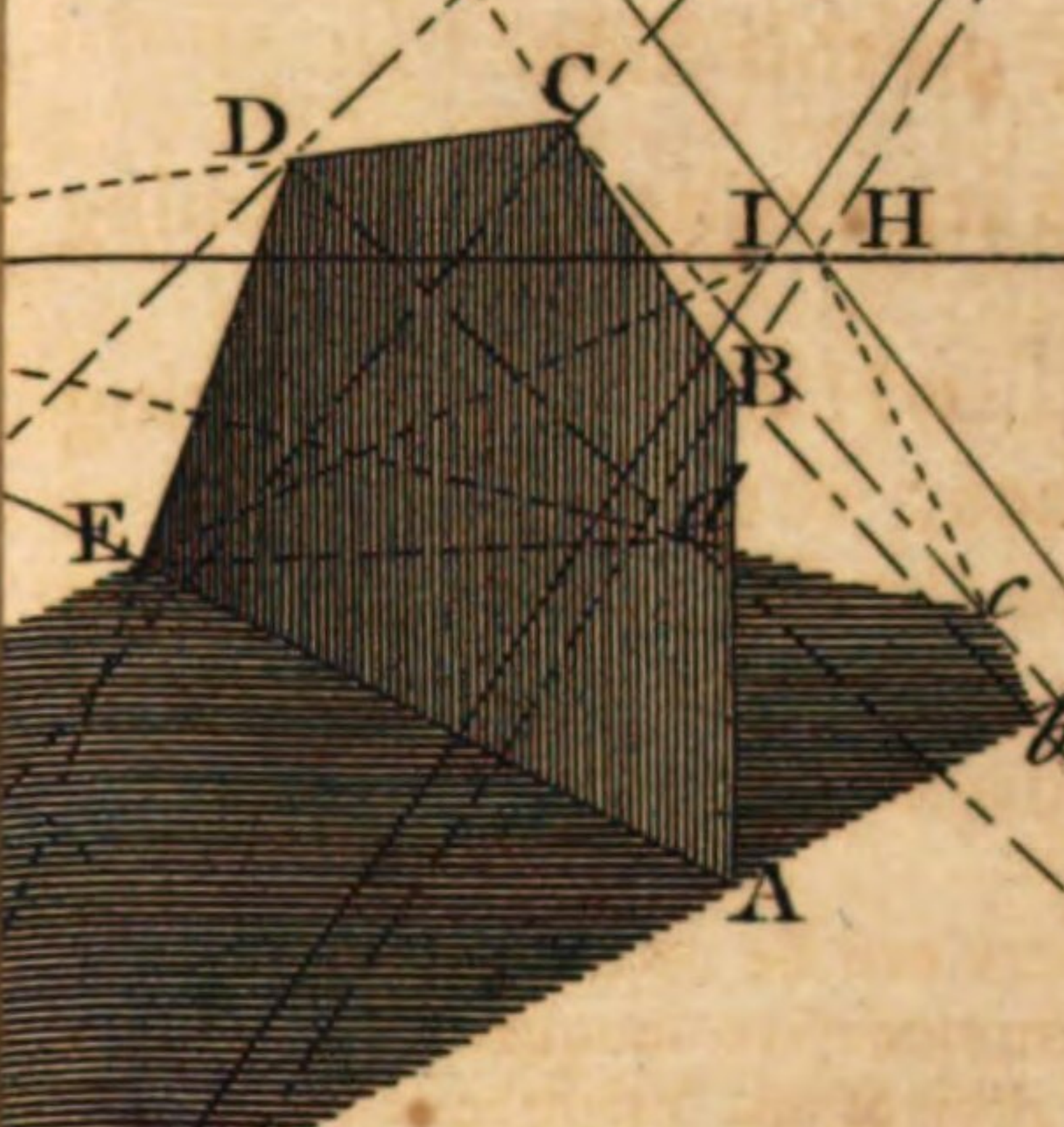


Fig. 20.

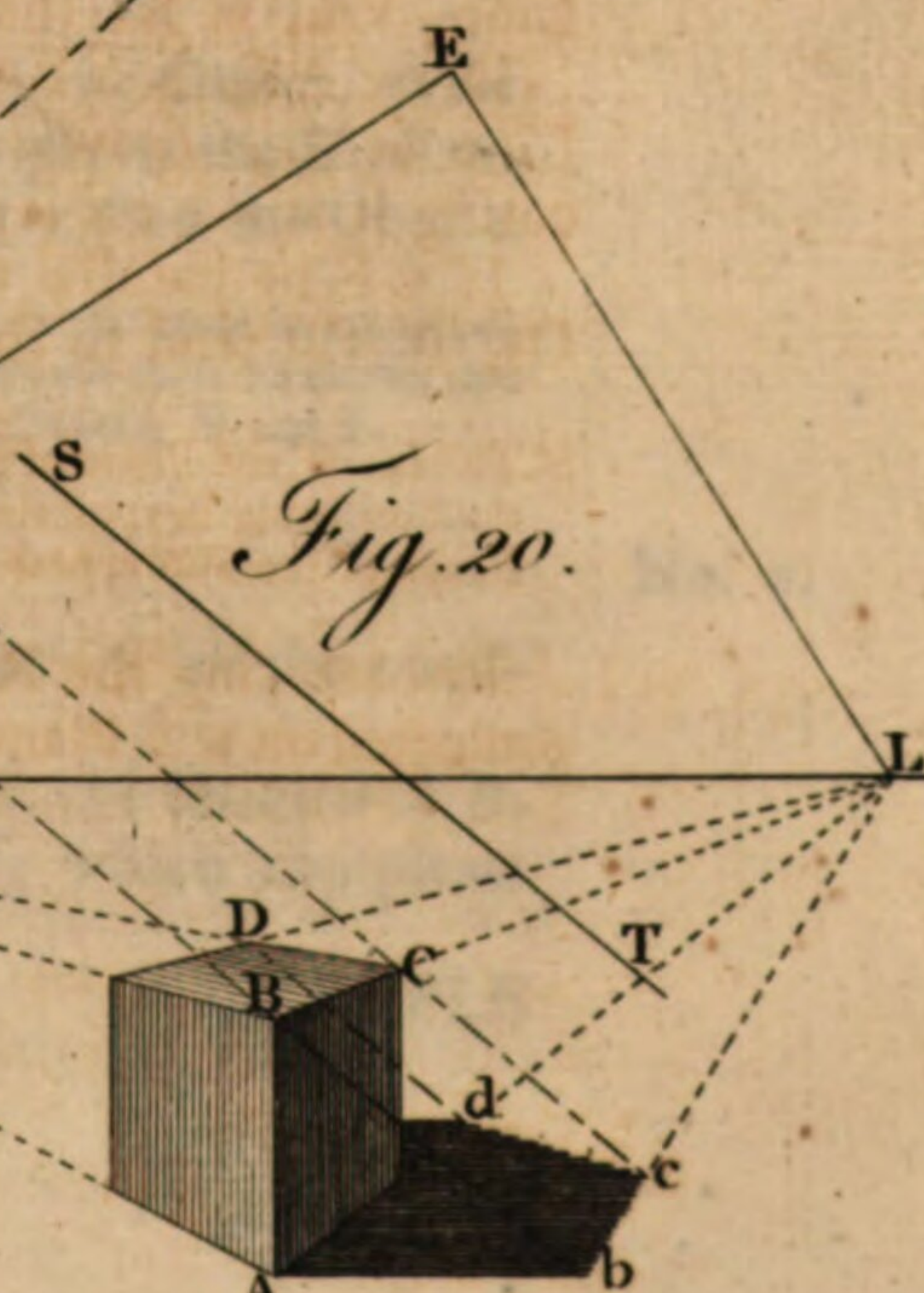
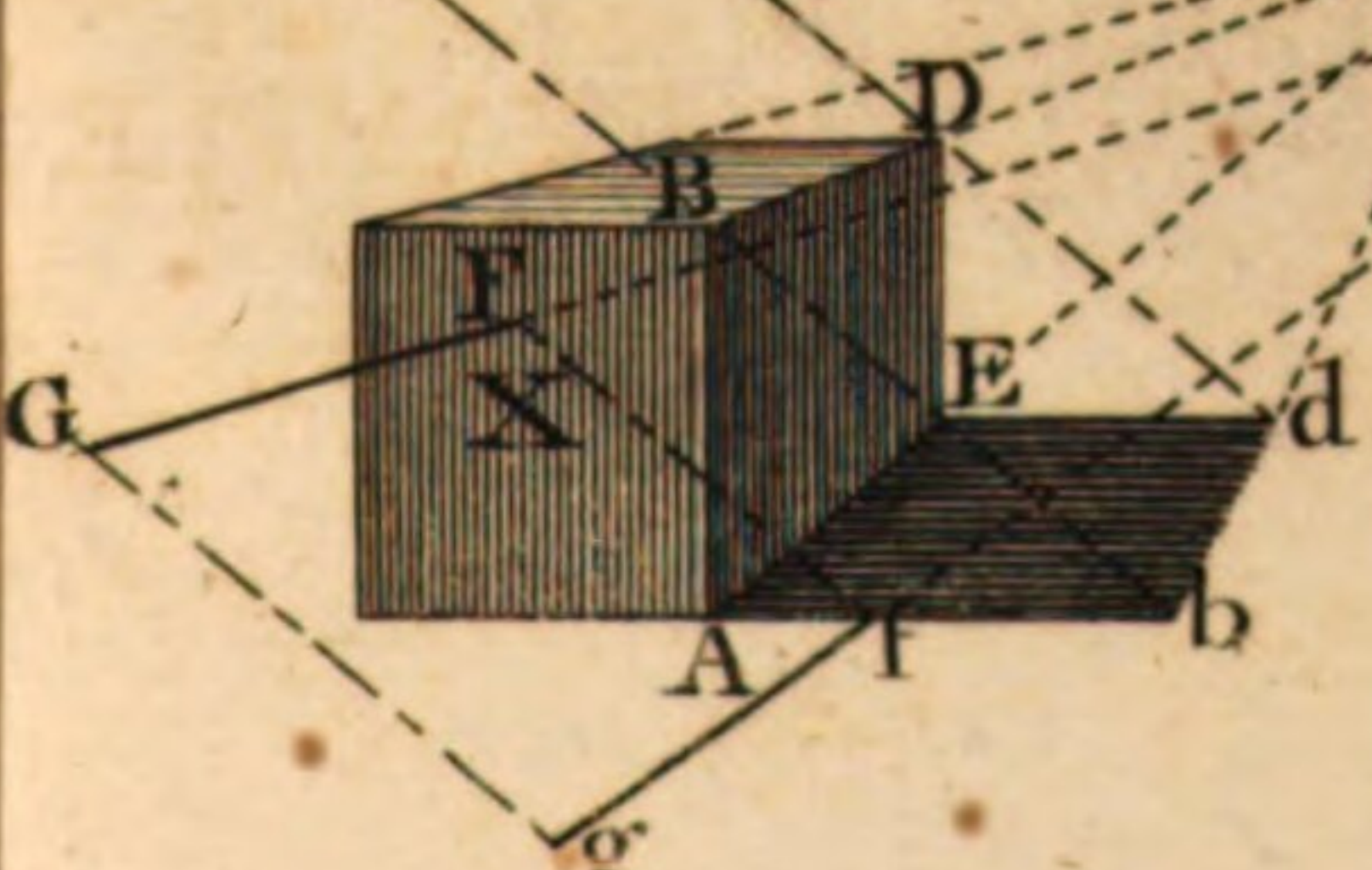


Fig. 19.



E X A M P L E II.

To project the Shadows of right angled Parallelopipeds, on the Ground Plane.

FIRST. When a Face of the Parallelopiped is parallel to the Picture, and, the Luminary in the Plane of the Picture.

X is the Object whose Shadow is to be projected.

Fig. 19.

In this CASE, the Luminary being in the Picture, the Shadow of the whole Solid is no more than of the Plane ABDE. For, the Plane X being parallel to the Picture, cannot be illumined; seeing that the Sun is in the Picture, it is, consequently, in every other Plane parallel to the Picture. The whole Shadow of that Plane is, therefore, but a Line, generated by producing the Plane.

Draw Ab, indefinite, parallel to the Vanishing Line, HL, and, if SB be a Ray of Light, produce it, till it cuts Ab, at b, the Shadow of B.

Then because BD is perpendicular to the Picture, C, the Center, is its Vanishing Point; and, being parallel to the Plane of projection, its Shadow is consequently parallel, and has, therefore, the same Vanishing Point, C.

Draw bC; and through the angle D, draw Dd parallel to Sb, cutting bc at d; or, draw Ed parallel to Ab, which compleats the Shadow, Abde, required.

SCHOL. If a Line, FG, projected from the Plane X, its whole Shadow will be projected on the Ground. For, since the Luminary is in the Plane X, no part of its Shadow can be projected on that Plane; wherefore, fg, its Shadow, is wholly on the Ground Plane.

SECONDLY. When its Planes are inclined to the Picture.

Let AD be a right angled Parallelopiped, the Vanishing Points of its Sides, are H and L; and let ST be a given Ray of Light. Fig. 20.

Draw Ab parallel to the Horizon; and through B, draw Bb parallel to ST.

Then, L being the Vanishing Point of BC, draw bL; and through C, draw Cc, parallel to ST, cutting it at c. Lastly, draw cH; and Dd parallel to ST; and, through d parallel to Ab. Abcd is the Shadow required.

For the Rays, projecting the Shadow, are all parallel amongst themselves; and the Perpendicular AB, has its Shadow Ab parallel to the Vanishing Line; also, the Shadows of BC and CD have the same Vanishing Points, respectively; because BC and CD are parallel to the Plane of projection.

CASE 2d. When the Luminary is on the other side of the Picture.

First; let the Plane AD be parallel to the Picture, and, let S be the Image of the Sun in the Picture. Fig. 21.

Draw SV, perpendicular to the Horizon, V is the Vanishing Point of Perpendiculars, on the Ground Plane. Draw VA and SB, and produce them, cutting at b, the Shadow of B. Then, draw bd parallel to BD; and, through D, draw Sd, cutting it at d; bd is the Shadow of BD.

Lastly; because DE is perpendicular to the Picture, and C is its Center, draw dC; and, through F, draw Ve, or SE, cutting it at e, and compleats the Shadow, AbdeF; which, as it is projected back, towards the Eye, is larger than the Object.

SCHOL. When the Object is inclined to the Picture, as in No. 2, the process is the same in every respect, having regard to the Vanishing Points of the Lines BC and CD, to which their Shadows, bc and cd, are respectively parallel, and consequently have the same Vanishing Points, V and F.

CASE 3d. When the Luminary is on this Side the Picture.

No. 2.

Let AD be a Parallelopiped, right angled, as before; and let $\odot$ be the trans-projected place of the Luminary.

Draw $\odot V$ perpendicular, and, draw AV and B $\odot$, cutting at b, the Shadow of B. Then, draw bG and C $\odot$, cutting at e; and lastly, draw eF, which compleats the Shadow Abed. The Shadow of the Angle D is not seen.

EXAMPLE

Plate
XLI.

E X A M P L E III.

To project the Shadow of a plain Building, on the Ground.

Fig. 22. Let ADF represent a Building obliquely situated to the Picture; and let the Sun be in the Plane of the Picture. The direction of its Rays is SC,

Draw A b parallel to the Vanishing Line, and B b to the given Ray, cutting Ab, and determining the Shadow of AB.

Through V, the Vanishing Point of BC, draw VG parallel to the given Ray of Light; and draw b G; SC produced, cuts it at c, the Shadow of C.

Because the Vanishing Point of CD is below the Horizontal Line, equal VH, the Vanishing Point (I) of its Shadow, will be on the other side VH, equal GH.

Make HI equal GH, and draw cI; and D d parallel to SC, cutting it at d.

Because of the Sun's altitude, and the situation of the Building, the other side of the Roof is illumined; and consequently, the Shadow of CF (the Ridge) is not projected, which is evident; because, being parallel to the Plane of projection, its Shadow is parallel to itself, and consequently has the same Vanishing Point, L. Wherefore, if from c, the Shadow of C, a Line be drawn to L, it will fall on this Side c d, the Shadow of CD; consequently it has no Shadow, here.

Therefore, draw dL, cutting DE; d e is the Shadow of a Line from D, parallel to CF (the Eave of the Roof) on the other Side of the Building.

SCHOL. This Example is according to the Shadow, on the direct Picture, in the Apparatus.

SECONDLY. Let the Sun be supposed beyond the Picture, and let S be its Image.

Fig. 23. Draw ST, perpendicular; and through A, draw T b indefinite; through B, draw S b, giving A b, for the Shadow of AB.

Then BC being parallel to the Horizon, and L its Vanishing Point, through b, draw L c, and through C draw S c, giving b c, the Shadow of BC.

V being the Vanishing Point of CD, draw SV. If SV, be parallel to the Horizon, draw c d, also parallel; if SV, be not parallel, produce it, till it cuts the Horizontal Line, on one Side or the other, and draw c d, tending to that Point; also, through D, draw S d, cutting it at d, the Shadow of D.

Again. Y being the Vanishing Point of DE, draw SY, cutting the Horizontal Line at I, the Vanishing Point of the Shadow DE.

Draw d I, and SE till it cuts d I, at e; and lastly, join e F, which will tend to its Vanishing Point T, and compleats the Shadow, AbcdeF.

In this Case, it is obvious that the whole Building, save the Plane DB, is in Shade.

CASE 3d. When the Luminary is on this Side of the Picture.

Let $\odot$, be its transprojected Image. $\odot K$ being drawn, perpendicular, K is the Vanishing Point of the Shadows of perpendicular Lines. (Prob. 2.)

Draw AK and B $\odot$, intersecting at b, the Shadow of B.

Then draw $\odot V$, cutting the Van. Line at I, the Van. Point, of the Shadow of BG.

Draw b I, and G $\odot$, cutting it at g, the Shadow of G.

Join $\odot Y$; and if it be not parallel, produce it to the Vanishing Line.

Through g, draw parallel, or tending to the Point in which $\odot Y$, cuts the Horizontal Line; which compleats the Shadow, as much as can be seen.

I presume, it is obvious, from these Examples, that the most judicious choice, is to suppose the Luminary on this Side of the Picture, as in this last Case. First, because the object is more advantageously situated to the Luminary, and consequently, has a more agreeable effect of Light and Shade. Also, because the Shadow is projected from the Eye, so that, it does not appear distorted and preposterous, as in the second Case; and it is far from being pleasing to have the Shadows of perpendicular Lines all parallel amongst themselves; as when the Luminary is in the Plane of the Picture. Therefore, as I have given Rules and Examples in each, I shall, hereafter, consider the Luminary only on this Side of the Picture, unless it be otherwise determined, for particular reasons.

E X A M P L E IV.

To project the Shadow of a long upright piece of Timber, or Block of Stone; part on the Ground, and part on a vertical Plane, inclined to the Picture, whose Intersection with the Ground is given.

Let X be the Object, whose Shadow is to be projected; let $\odot$ be the transprojected Image of the Sun, JI the Intersection of a vertical Plane with the Ground, and KL its Vanishing Line.

Fig. 24.

Draw $\odot H$ perpendicular to the Horizontal Line. Draw AH, and B $\odot$ cutting it at *b*, the Shadow of the Angle B on the Ground.

But, A*b* cuts the Intersection JI, at *a*; wherefore, because the Plane Y is vertical, AB is parallel to the Plane; and, being also parallel to the Picture, its Shadow is consequently parallel; draw *ab*, parallel to AB, till it cuts the Ray B $\odot$, at *b*, the Shadow of B on the vertical Plane; as *b* is, on the Ground.

The Vanishing Point of BC is F; which, being inclined to the Horizon is not in the Horizontal Line. Draw $\odot F$, and produce it, till it cuts KL, the vertical Vanishing Line, at K, the Vanishing Point of its Shadow; then, draw *bK*, and C $\odot$ cutting it at *c*, the Shadow of C on the vertical Plane.

Then, G being the Vanishing Point of CD, a Line on the other Side, parallel to BE, which projects a Shadow, draw $\odot G$, cutting the vertical Vanishing Line at L. Draw *cL* and D $\odot$ intersecting at *d*.

If DM be a perpendicular Line, draw *de* parallel to it, cutting the Intersection at *e*, and join *eM*; which tends to the Vanishing Point, H, of Perpendiculars, and compleats the Shadow; A*aef* on the Ground, and *abcde* on the vertical Plane, as it was proposed.

If the vertical Plane was out of the way, its Shadow on the Ground is A*bcd*f.

E X A M P L E V.

To project the Shadow of a Cross, perpendicular to the Horizon, part on the Ground; also, on a Plane inclined to the Horizon, and to the Picture, whose Vanishing Line, and Intersection with the Ground Plane are given.

Let AFBK be the Object, inclined casually to the Picture; whose Vanishing Points are M and N, in the Horizontal Line, MN. Let QR be the Intersection of the inclined Plane with the Ground, whose Vanishing Line is OP. ST is the given Ray of Light, the Luminary being in the Picture.

Fig. 25.

Because the Object is inclined to the Picture, and the Luminary is in the Picture, the Side AB and its opposite, IJ, will project Shadows.

Draw A*a*, and J*b* parallel to the Horizon, cutting the Intersection, QR, at *a* and *b*. Draw *ab*, and *bi*, parallel to the Vanishing Line OP, indefinite; and draw B*b*, parallel to ST, cutting *ab*, at *b*, the Shadow of B.

For the Line AB being parallel to the Picture, the Plane of Shade occasioned by that Line is, in this Case, parallel to the Picture; consequently, its section with every Surface, on which the Shadow of AB falls, is parallel to the Picture; therefore, A*a* is parallel to the Vanishing Line of the Ground Plane, and *ab* to OP, of the inclined Plane.

Draw NO and MP, parallel to the Ray of Light, ST; O is the Vanishing Point of the Shadows, of all Lines parallel to CD; and P, of all that are parallel to EF, on the inclined Plane.

Draw C*c* parallel to ST, cutting the Shadow of AB at *c*. Draw O*c* indefinite, and D*d* parallel to the Rays, cutting it at *d*, the Shadow of D.

DE being parallel to the Picture, draw *de*, its Shadow, parallel to the Vanishing Line, OP, meeting the Ray of Light from E, at *e*.

Pl. XLI. P being the Vanishing Point of the Shadow of EF, draw eP , meeting the Ray from F, at f ; and draw fO , till it cuts the Intersection QR, at j ; from which it tends to N, the Vanishing Point of FG; being parallel to the Ground.

dO cuts the Intersection at b , from which Point it also tends to N, till it meets the Ray, from K, at k . Draw kM , cutting the Ray from L; and LG being perpendicular, draw lg , parallel to the Horizon, which compleats the Shadow of that Arm, on the Ground.

The Shadow, bhi , of the Top, having the same Vanishing Points, respectively, it would be unnecessary to describe, being obvious, from the Figure.

Second. *When the Luminary is on this Side of the Picture.*

In the foregoing Case (as in other preceding) the Vanishing Point of the Shadow of every Right Line, on the inclined Plane, was produced, by drawing a Right Line, parallel to the given Ray, from the Vanishing Point of the Line whose Shadow was required, to the Vanishing Line of the inclined Plane; because the Luminary being supposed in the Plane of the Picture, all its Rays are consequently parallel amongst themselves.

In this, the Rays having a Vanishing Point, a Right Line joining the Vanishing Point of the Line, and the Vanishing Point of the Luminary, cuts the Vanishing Line, or being produced, would (if it be not parallel) cut the Vanishing Line of the Plane of Projection, in the Vanishing Point of the Shadow (Prob. 4.) for, the Rays, instead of being parallel amongst themselves (as in the former Case) converge in a Point, in which consists the difference.

Fig. 26. $\odot$ is the Vanishing Point of the Rays, MN the Vanishing Line of the Ground, and OP of the inclined Plane, of which, QR, is its Intersection with the Ground. M and N are the Van. Points of hor. Lines in the Object, as before.

S being the Seat of the Luminary, on the Ground, draw AS, cutting the Intersection, QR, at a . Then, because AB is parallel to the Picture, produce $\odot S$, (being parallel to AB) till it cuts the Vanishing Line of the inclined Plane, at T.

Draw a T; B $\odot$, a Ray of Light, cuts a T at b , the Shadow of B; and C $\odot$ cuts it at c ; through which, a Line drawn from O gives the Shadow of DK. Rays from D and K, tending to $\odot$, determine the extremes of the Shadow.

It would be useless to describe the whole, the same Letters of reference, as in the foregoing Case, shew how the Shadow of every Line is produced, by adhering to the former Lessons, in this Case.

E X A M P L E VI.

To project the Shadow of a Right Line, inclined to the Horizon and to the Picture, on several Planes, variously inclined to both.

Plate AC represents a Ladder, leaning against a Building, on which its Shadow is to be projected. $\odot$ is the transprojected place of the Luminary; H and I are the Vanishing Points of horizontal Lines in the Building, and E of the Ladder. FI is the Vanishing Line of the Roof of the Building; and GI of the adjoining Shed; on which, the Shadow is also projected.

Fig. 27.

Draw E $\odot$, and produce it to the vertical Vanishing Line (KI) of the Sides of the Building, cutting it at K; the horizontal Vanishing Line is cut at L, and the inclined Vanishing Lines at M and N.

K, L, M, N, and E, are all Vanishing Points of the Shadow. (Prob. 4.)

From the foot of the Ladder, draw Lines to the Vanishing Point I, cutting the Intersection of the Plane V, with the Ground, at a and b ; A $a b$ B, is its Shadow on the Ground.

K being the Vanishing Point of the Shadow, on the vertical Planes, draw Lines from K, through a and b , till they cut the common Intersection of the Planes V and U, at c ; from which, draw Lines to E, the Vanishing Point of the Ladder; because it is parallel to the Plane U.

M being the Vanishing Point of the Shadow, on the Plane X, draw dM , cutting the Intersection of that Plane with the next, at e ; from which Points draw Lines to K; for the Shadow on the Plane Y, being parallel to V, has the same Van. Point.

From

Fig. 24.

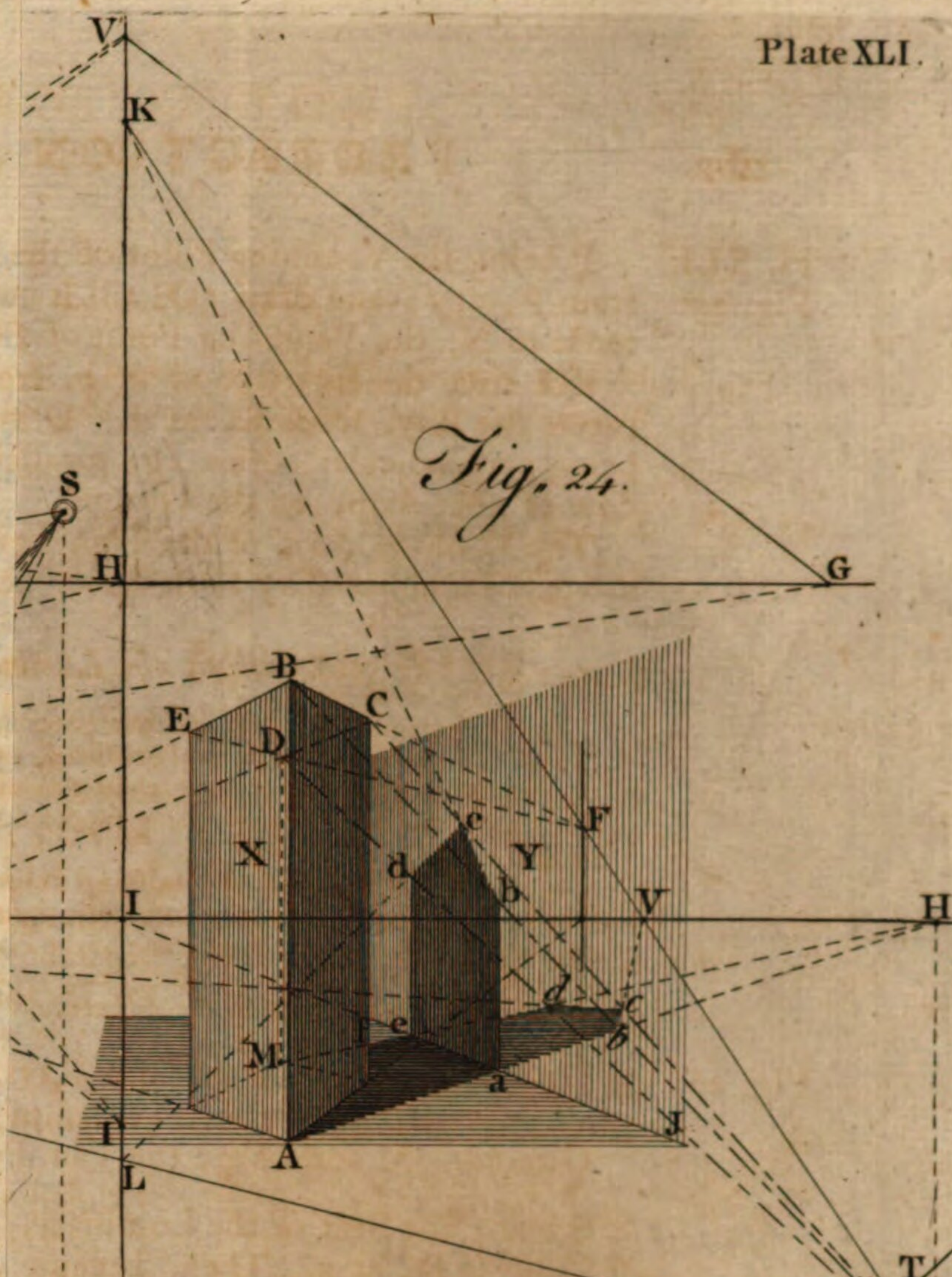
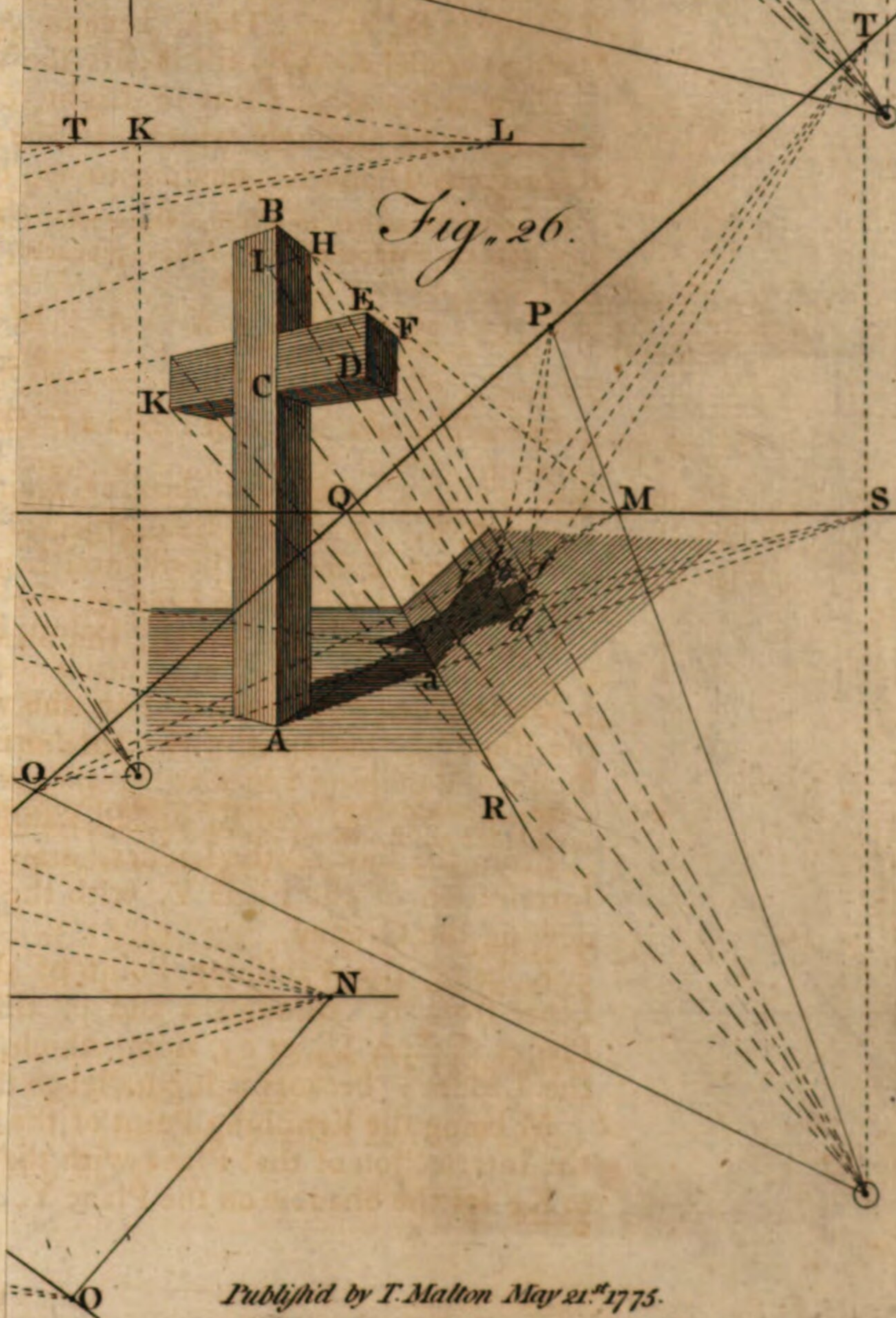


Fig. 26.



From the Points ff (where the Ladder touches the Eaves of the Roof) draw to N ; and from C and D the ends of the Ladder, draw to $\odot$, cutting fN at g , which compleats the Shadow of the Sides of the Ladder, save one End which falls on the Chimney; its Vanishing Point is E .

If from each Step, on either Side, Lines are drawn to $\odot$, cutting the Shadow of that Side, at a, b, c , &c. and from those Points, Lines are drawn to I , the Vanishing Point of the Steps, their Shadows will be compleated, on the Planes V, X, Y , and Z , as well as on the Ground; because the Steps are parallel to all those Planes; being parallel to the Horizon.

On the vertical Plane U , their Vanishing Point is where a Right Line drawn from I , through $\odot$, cuts the vertical Vanishing Line EH , of that End.

The Chimney being perpendicular, $\odot S$, drawn perpendicular, cutting the Vanishing Line (GI) of the Roof, at R , gives its Vanishing Point; $J\odot$ determines its length.

OPQ represents a Sign Post, whose Shadow, Oo , on the Ground, and opQ , on the Wall, is projected by the same Point ($\odot$) whose Seat is S ; which, being so near the Vanishing Point I , consequently, the Luminary is nearly in the Plane OPQ ; wherefore, the Shadow of both, on the Wall, are almost in one Line.

In this situation of this Object, the Shadow is more pleasing supposing the Sun on the other Side of the Picture, as Oo on the Ground, op of the Post, on the Wall, and pQ of the Bearer. The Sun being on the left hand, G , may be the Vanishing Point, of the Shadow pQ ; and, the Seat of the Luminary, is the Vanishing Point of Oo , on the Ground (Prob. 2.) OP being perpendicular. The Rays of Light, Pp , &c. indicate the rest.

E X A M P L E VII.

To project the Shadow of a Building, and the several parts of it on the other; the Luminary being on this side of the Picture, having its Altitude and Inclination given.

Let the Angle of the Sun's Elevation be equal X ; and the Inclination to the Picture, of a vertical Plane passing through its Center, equal Z .

Fig. 28.

Find $\odot$, the transprojected place of the Luminary; by Prob. I.

Draw $\odot S$ perpendicular, giving S , the Seat of the Luminary, on the Ground.

Then, draw AS , cutting the Intersection of the Plane of the Arches, on the Ground, at a ; from which, draw aa perpend. the Shadow of AB on that Plane.

Produce $\odot S$, till it cuts VO , the Vanishing Line of the inclined Plane X , at O ; the Vanishing Point of the Shadow of AB , on that Plane.

Draw aO indefinite; and, because of the projecture of the Cornice at C , casting a Shadow (JB) on the Plane W , draw $B\odot$, cutting aO at b , the Shadow of B ; from which, draw bc , to the Vanishing Point V ; because, bC , projecting that Shadow is parallel to the Plane X .

Then, M being the Vanishing Point of CD , draw $\odot M$, and produce it, till it cuts the Vanishing Line of the Planes V and W , ~~and~~ and, VO being also cut at P , draw cP , cutting the next plane at e , and draw eQ .

L being the Vanishing Point of DE , draw $\odot L$, and produce it to the Vanishing Line VM , of the Roof, at N . Draw NE , and $D\odot$ cutting it at d , and draw Md , to f , which compleats the Shadow of that part.

By means of the Vanishing Points, S and V , of the Shadows of FG , and the Ridge, KE , on the Ground; and, drawing Lines from all the Angles, G, H, I , and K , to $\odot$, the Shadow of the Building on the Ground, and Wall, Z (casually situated to the Building and Picture) is projected; by means of its Vanishing Line.

To determine the Shadow of the projecture of the Cornice. Let mn be the seat of the first Trufs, on the Top of the Cornice, and m its utmost projecture, which projects the Shadow; or, take any other Point, in mY .

L being the Vanishing Point of the Trufs, i. e. of mn , draw from $\odot$ thro' L , till it cuts the Vanishing Line of the Planes W ; from which Point, draw no and $m\odot$, cutting it at o , the Shadow of m , on the Plane W , produced.

Draw

Plate
XLII.
Fig. 28.

Draw $\odot V$, cutting both Planes W , in $G r$, and $B J$, the Shadow of the extreme projecture of the Cornice, on those Planes.

Having, by the same means, obtained the Shadow of the lower edge of the fronts of the Trusses, their places are obtained by drawing Lines, from each to $\odot$. The first falls on the Wall, at p , and the first on the other Side, at q , on the low Roof.

The Shadows of the Piers of the Arcade, against the wall, within, are projected by means of the Vanishing Point S , till they meet the wall, where they are upright. Lines drawn to $\odot$, determine their height. (See Sect. IV. for the Arches.)

Thus, the Shadow of the whole Building and every part of it, is compleated; in which are all the variety of Examples, necessary for projecting the Shadows of right lined Objects.

SECTION IV.

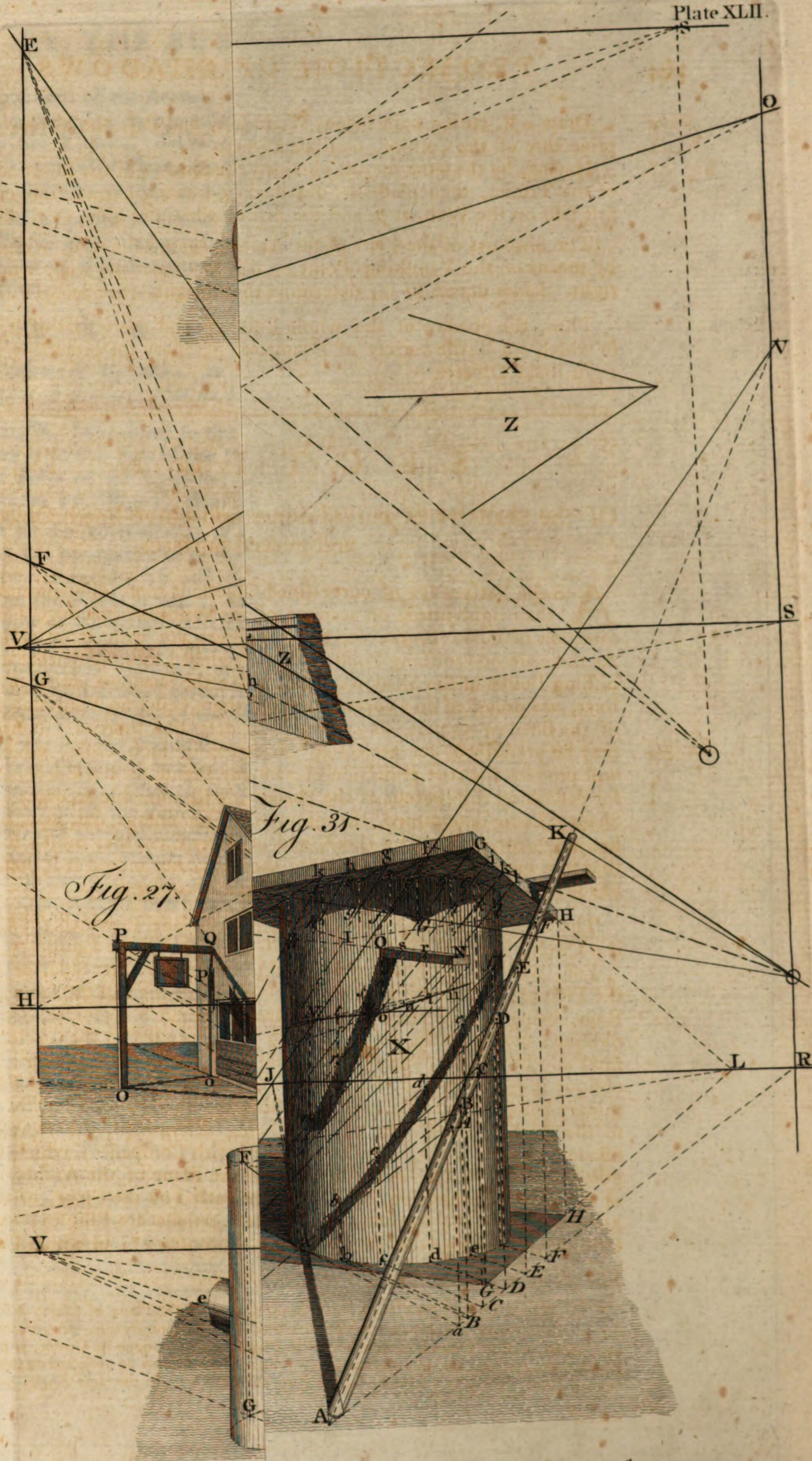
Of the Shadows of curved Lines and curve-lined Objects, on Plane and curved Surfaces.

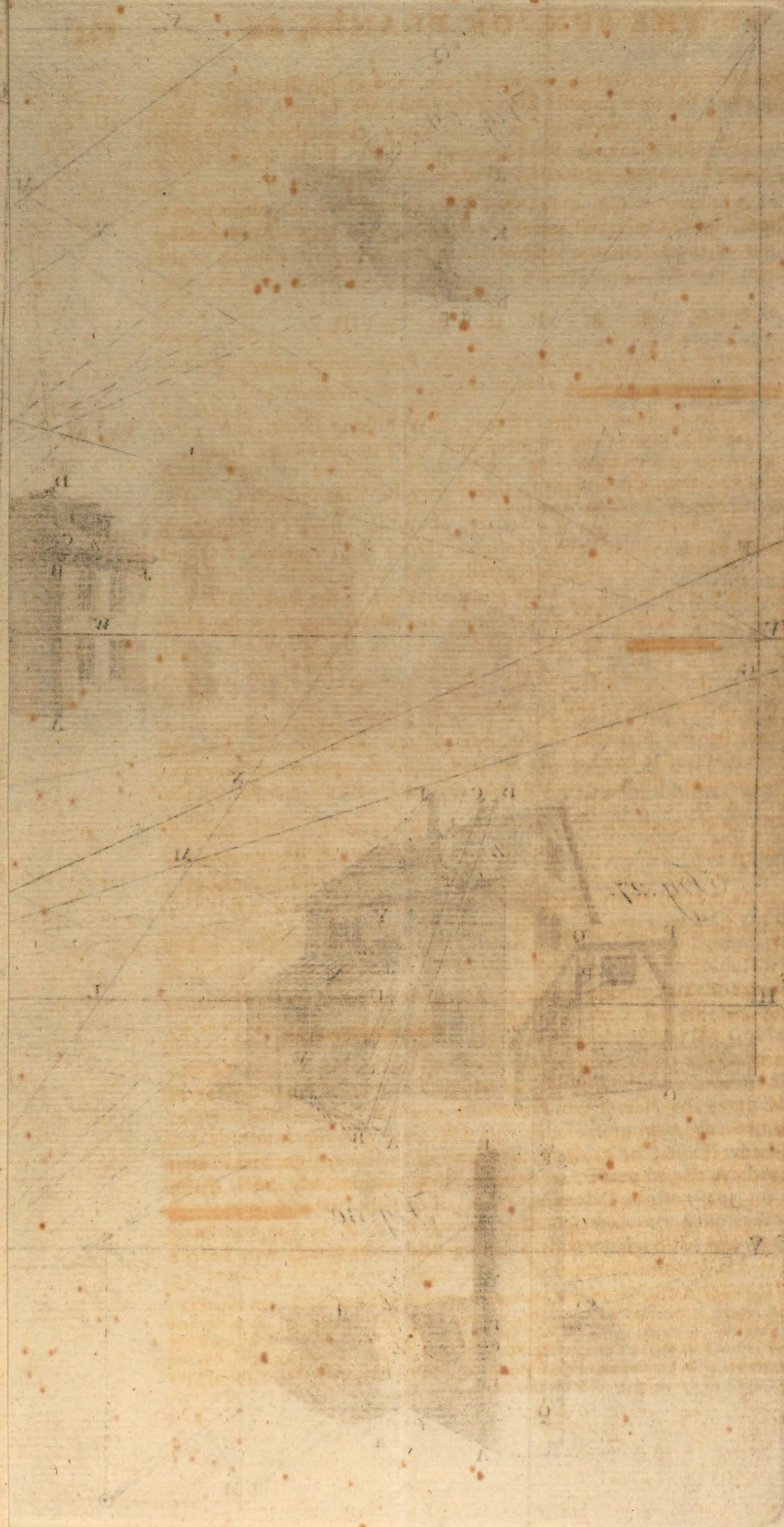
AS the Perspective of curve-lined Objects is more difficult and liable to error than right-lined, on account of the continual bending, and varying in the direction of curve Lines; so, their Shadows are with more difficulty projected. As there are no vanishing Points of the Original Lines, so neither can there be vanishing Points of the Shadows; also, when the Shadows, either of right or curved lines, are projected on a curved Surface, there being no Vanishing Line, the figure of the Shadow cannot, so certainly, be described thereon. Nevertheless, Rules may be prescribed, for projecting Shadows, in such Cases, which, if followed, will produce the true projection of as many Points, in the Curve, as are necessary, for describing the contour of the Shadow, with tolerable accuracy. The principal Shadow being determined, the minutias, of mouldings, &c. may, by a Person who has judgment, be done by Hand, and in many Cases they must; for, I fairly own, that it is more than human patience can bear, nor indeed is it possible, to project Shadows, in many Cases, with mathematical exactness.

The Shadow of a Circle, projected upon any Plane, to which the Circle is parallel, is a Circle, of equal dimensions; in all situations of the Luminary, whatever.

For, whether its situation be on this, or on the other Side, or in the Plane of the Picture; whether it be more or less elevated, 'tis still the same; the projecting Rays, being parallel amongst themselves, generate a Cylinder, for the most part oblique; consequently, being cut by a Plane parallel to the Circle, its projection must also be a Circle, seeing it is the opposite Base of the Cylinder; but, being cut oblique it is an Ellipsis. So that, in Arches, &c. parallel to the Picture, the Luminary being on this Side, and projecting the Shadow on a vertical Plane, parallel to the Arches, the Center of each being determined, the representation of the Shadow of each Arch, may be described with Compasses; which will be in proportion to the Arches, as the distance of the Plane of the Arches, to the distance of the Plane of projection. But, being projected on the Floor, or any other Plane, not parallel to the Arches, their Representations are Ellipses; except when the Cylinder, projecting the Shadow, is cut subcontrary*; in which Case the Shadow will be a Circle.

* An oblique Cylinder or Cone is cut subcontrary, when the Plane of section is so situated, that the Axe of the Cylinder or Cone has the same inclination to it, contrarywise. As, if the Sun was elevated 45 Degrees, and be situated so, that a vertical Plane, passing through its Center, is perpendicular to the Plane of the Arches, i. e. to a vertical Circle; then, if the shadow be projected on the Floor, or any horizontal Plane, it will be a Circle; for the Rays cut the Floor, in the same Angle, viz. 45 Degrees.





In all other positions of the Arches, to the Picture, and in all situations of the Luminary, being projected on a parallel Plane, the Shadows being Circles, their Representations are Ellipses, described as the Arches, themselves; and also, being projected on any other Plane, the Shadows being Ellipses, their representations are also Ellipses, more excentric, generally, though not always so.

The Shadow of a Sphere or Globe (as well as its perspective Projection) on a Plane, is an Ellipsis, in all Cases, whatever; except when a Right Line passing through the Center of the Luminary, and of the Sphere, is perpendicular to the Plane of Projection.

E X A M P L E VIII.

To project the Shadows of Cylinders, on a horizontal Plane, lying along; another upright, so situated, that its Shadow crosses one of the former.

Let the Cylinder, X, be inclined to the Picture; its Vanishing Point, is V.

Fig. 29.

The Luminary is on this Side of the Picture, and $\odot$ its transprojected Image.

The Ends or Bases of the Cylinder, X and Y, being inclined to the Picture, their representations are Ellipses; their Shadows, may be thus projected.

Let ABCD be the representation of a Square, circumscribing a Circle, whose Sides are parallel and perpendicular to the Horizon. Draw the Diagonals AC and BD, also the two Diameters ab and cd, parallel and perpendicular to the Horizon; and, from the Points e and f, draw perpendiculars to the Base, AD.

Find the Shadow of the Square ABCD (by Prob. 2. and 3.) and draw the Diagonals, Ac and Dd; draw dS, also gS and hS, cutting the Diagonals; and, through their Intersection, draw ab, to the Vanishing Point of a b, &c.

Then, if a Curve be described through the eight Points, a, e, d, f, b, c, and d, it will be the true representation of the Shadow of the Circle, acbd.

By the same means, the Shadow of the Base of the Cylinder, X, may be projected; or, because there is but half its Shadow required, proceed thus.

Draw ab perpendicular, through its Center; also, cd and ef parallel to ab.

Find the Shadows of all the Points, a, c, e, &c. (by Prob. 2. Case 3.) S being the Vanishing Point of perpendiculars to the Horizon; and describe the Curve aeb.

Then, the Sides of the Cylinder being parallel to the Plane of projection, draw aV, a Tangent to the Curve at a; and, the Shadow of the other End being described by the same means, compleats the Shadow of that Cylinder.

SECOND. The Shadow of the Cylinder Z, on account of its situation, is but little seen; which is projected after the same manner.

Fig. 30.

THIRD. The Sides of the upright Cylinder being perpendicular to the Horizon, draw AS, a Tangent to its Base, at A, cutting aV, the Seat of the Side be, on the Ground, at A; from which Point, draw Ab perpendicular, cutting be at b.

But, on account of the inclination of the Rays of Light, the Shadow of the Side AE will be continued on the Ground, till it falls into that of the other, at a; and it is continued down the Side, from b towards a, till it is lost, insensibly, in the Shade of the other Cylinder.

Then, take as many Points, b, c, d, in the Curve of the Base, as are necessary; and others, answering to them, that is, of equal height, perspectively, at B, C, D, on the Side, AE, of the upright Cylinder; from all which, draw Lines to S, cutting others, drawn from the corresponding Points b, c, d, to the Vanishing Point V, at b, c, d, &c. through which, a Curve being described, will be the Shadow of the Side AE, on the Cylinder Z.

For, the Side of the Cylinder (AE) projecting the Shadow, is perpendicular to the Plane of projection; wherefore, the Plane of Shade, occasioned by that Line, vanishes in $\odot$ S; consequently, all horizontal Lines (in that Plane) from the Points A, B, C, D, &c. vanish at S; and, consequently, they must cut others, b b, &c. drawn in the Side of the Cylinder Z, being of equal height. Therefore, abcd is the section of the Plane of Shade, with the surface of the Cylinder Z, made by the Side, AE, of the upright Cylinder; and consequently, abcd is its Shadow on that Surface.

Plate
XLII.
Fig. 30.

The upper Base (EF) of the upright Cylinder, is above the Eye, and, being parallel to the Plane of projection, its Shadow is a Circle; wherefore, having obtained the Shadow of any Diameter, as ef, of EF, by drawing $E\odot$ and $F\odot$; the former cutting AS, at e, and drawing ef to the Vanishing Point of EF; then, the Shadow being a Circle, and projected on a Plane, not parallel to the Picture, its representation is an Ellipsis (Theo. 2. Sect. 5.)

Describe the representation of a Circle, egf, whose Diameter found is ef (Prob. 2. Sect. 8.) and through f draw a Tangent, tending to S, the Shadow of the other Side of the upright Cylinder, which compleats it.

E X A M P L E IX.

To project the Shadows of Right Lines, on a convex cylindrical Surface.

Fig. 31. Let AK be a Right Line, any how situated, in respect of the Cylinder X; its Vanishing Point is V. Its Shadow on the Cylinder is required; $\odot$ being the transprojected Image of the Luminary.

Draw $V\odot$, cutting the Horizontal Line at J, the Vanishing Point of the Shadow on the Ground. Draw AJ, cutting the Base of the Cylinder at a; and, through a, draw $\odot A$, cutting AK at A.

Aa, on the Ground, is the Shadow of AA, part of the Line AK; beyond which, its Shadow is projected on the Cylinder.

Having obtained S, the Seat of the Luminary, (Prob. 2.) also, R, the Vanishing Point of the Seat of AK, on the Ground, draw AR; and, from various Points, B, C, &c. at discretion, beyond A, draw BB, CC, &c. perpendicular; from all which Points, B, C, &c. so obtained, draw Lines to S, cutting the Base of the Cylinder, at b, c, &c. from which, draw perpendicular up the Cylinder; and from the several Points, B, C, &c. draw lines to $\odot$, cutting the corresponding Perpendiculars, at b, c, d, &c. through all which, a Curve, abcde, being described is the Shadow of AE, part of AK, on the cylindrical Surface.

The remaining part of its Shadow, falls on the Ground, behind the Cylinder.

SECOND. FH, on the top of the Cylinder, is a Square, which may represent the Abacus of the Tuscan Capital; to project its Shadow on the Cylinder and Floor.

Take as many Points f, g, h, i, and k, as are necessary, in the lower Lines, which cast their Shadows on the Cylinder; from all which, draw to S; also, from the Angle G, cutting the upper Base, or Curve, at 1, 2, 3, &c.

Draw perpendiculars from each Point, down the Cylinder, which are cut, by Rays from each Point, f, g, &c. to $\odot$, at f, g, &c. the Angle G is projected to G. The Ray k $\odot$, touches the Cylinder, at k, whence, it is projected to K, on the Floor.

Curve Lines, drawn through Gfgb, and Gik, are the Shadows of the Lines Gh and Gk on the Cylinder; kF is projected on the Floor.

Draw Sa, a Tangent at the Point a, cutting the Ray, from k at K; a K is the Shadow of the Side of the Cylinder on the Floor.

Draw KF to the Vanishing Point of GF, and F $\odot$, cutting it at F, the Shadow of the Angle F; draw FL, to the Vanishing Point of GH, and FI, the upper Line, on the other side, which casts the Shadow; I $\odot$ cuts it at I; through which, draw IL, tending to the vanishing Point of HI, and compleats the Shadow on the Floor.

THIRD. NO is a Line projecting from the Cylinder, at pleasure; let P be its Vanishing Point; to project its Shadow, on the Cylinder.

Draw Oo and Nn perpendicular, also PQ, cutting the horizontal vanishing Line, in the vanishing Point of its Seat no, on the Ground; or any other horizontal Plane, imagined at discretion, cutting the Cylinder.

The rest is performed as above, for the Shadow of AK; as shewn in the Figure.

EXAMPLE

E X A M P L E X.

To project the Shadow of a Tuscan Base on the Floor, casually situated to the Picture.

⊙ is the transprojected Image, and S the Seat of the Luminary.

Draw AS and B ⊙, cutting at *b*, and draw *bV*; C ⊙ cutting *bV* determines the Shadow of the edge of the Plinth, BC, provided nothing else interfered. But, the Torus, &c. and Shaft of the Column unite their Shadows with it.

For the Column, draw Sa, a tangent to its Base, on the Ground; from the point of contact *a*, draw aD perpendicular; which Line determines where the total Shade, on the Shaft, begins.

Draw SF, a Tangent to the other side, and FE perpendicular; BD, and EF, are the Sides of the Column which project the Shadow, on the Ground.

Draw D ⊙, and E ⊙, cutting aS, and FS, at *d* and *e*, the Shadows of D and E.

Draw DE, which is a Diameter of the Column; *de* being drawn, will tend to the same Point, and may be considered as its Shadow; on which, as a Diameter found, describe the representation of a Circle (Prob. 3. Sect. 8.) or, of a Semicircle, *dfe*, only, which terminates the Shadow. The Column being supposed cut, by a horizontal Plane, through DE, its Shadow is, consequently, a Circle; being projected on a Plane to which it is parallel.

The Shadow of the Fillet *gh*, may be projected after the same manner; but, as so little of it is seen, it would be unnecessary trouble.

Draw a Tangent to its Base, at *b*, from S, and draw *bg* perpendicular, and *g ⊙*, cutting *bS*, at *g*, the Shadow of the Point *g*. By the same means the Shadows of other Points, ~~and of the~~, may be obtained.

The Shadow of the Torus is not easy to describe; seeing its Surface is continually varying, it is scarce possible to determine what part of it projects the Shadow; except the Point *d*, of the greatest swell, determined, as the Fillet, by a perpendicular from *c*. No other Point in that Circle projects a Shadow, on this side; to determine, absolutely, what other Points do, is what I shall not attempt, being persuaded, my Readers will excuse me that trouble.

Its Shadow, on the Ground is mostly beyond *e*, the Shadow of *d*, and falls into the Shadow of the Fillet.

N. B. The Shadow of the Shaft falls, first, on the Cavetto, before it reaches the Ground; the Fillet on the Torus, and the Torus on the upper Plane of the Plinth; which the Figure describes.

The Shade on the Torus, and on the Column, &c. is more hard and edgy when the Sun shines on them, than otherwise; yet there is no edge defined; also, the Light is broader, and graduates more suddenly into the Shade; and the Reflections are much stronger; but that, I shall reserve to another Section.

E X A M P L E XI.

To project the Shadow of a Doric Capital, on a vertical Plane, whose Vanishing Line (BV) and Intersection (AB) with the Ground Plane are given.

CD cuts the Plane at *a*; find its Shadow *cd* (Prob. 4.) ⊙ being the Vanishing Point of the Rays, and G, of the Line; which, being joined and produced, cuts the Vanishing Line, BV, at V, the Vanishing Point of the Shadow.

After the same manner, the Shadow *de*, of DE, &c. may be obtained; and the whole Shadow, *cdef*, of the square of the top of the Abacus, in which draw the Diagonals; and let the lesser Trapezium *abcd*, be the supposed Shadow of the square of the Column, parallel to the former, and found by the same means; in which the Ellipsis, inscribed, may be the Shadow of the top of the Column in the Plane of the Abacus, from which draw Perpendiculars; or, rather (because of the swelling of the Column) somewhat diverging, and gently curved; as *af*, and *cg*.

The Shadows of the Angles, *g* and *h*, are obtained as the Square of the top; and, if great accuracy was requisite, the square of the Astragal, *ik* may be also projected, in its true place. But, as nothing more of its Shadow is defined than what projects beyond the Column, it may be dispensed with, the Points, *i* and *k*, being determined, is sufficient.

Rays

Plate
XLIII.
Fig. 32.

Fig. 33.

Plate
XLIII.
Fig. 33.

Rays of Light, passing by the Ovolo to $\odot$, may be some guide for describing its Shadow; but, on account of the continual variation of its Surface, every way, 'tis not easy to determine at what Points they touch it.

Neither can the curve of the Shadow of fg , be described on the Ovolo, with certainty, as on a Cylinder, yet, somewhat may be done towards it; for example; the Shadow of the point b is required.

In this process, it is necessary to have the perspective curve (aef) of the seat of the small Fillet, from which the Ovolo projects, on the under Plane (gh) of the Abacus.

Then, draw bS , cutting it at a ; draw ab , perpendicular, and describe the curve bcd , a section of the Ovolo, by the Plane of Shade; $b\odot$ being drawn, cutting that Curve, determines the Shadow of b , on the Ovolo, at c ; which, because it touches the Curve only, is the limit of the Shadow on the Ovolo.

The rest of the Shadow of that Line, from b to g , falls on the vertical Plane.

Thus may as many Points be determined (~~as the Shadow of~~) as the Student has patience for; and when done, 'tis a great chance if it be more exact than a judicious Person would describe by guess; nevertheless it is useful, to give an Idea how such Shadows are projected, and what kind of curves they describe.

E X A M P L E XII.

A vertical, concave, cylindrical Surface being so situated, that the Shadow of one part is projected on the other; how to determine that Shadow; also, of Right Lines any how situated to the Surface, and to the Luminary.

Fig. 34.

Let ABX be a Wall, inclosing a circular Area, &c. $\odot$ is the Vanishing Point, of the Rays of Light, and S , of the Shadows of Perpendiculars.

Draw SC , a tangent to the Curve, which determines the point where the Shadow begins, whatever be the Altitude of the Luminary.

Draw AS , cutting the Curve on the Ground, at a ; draw ab perpendicular, and $B\odot$, cutting it at b , the Shadow of B .

By the same means, the Shadows of as many Points, D , E , &c. as are requisite, may be found; through which, the Curve $Cdeb$, may be described; which is the true Shadow of the Curve $CDEB$, on the concave Surface.

SECOND. Let FG be a piece of Timber, projecting perpendicularly from the Wall, whose Shadow is required; its Vanishing Point is V .

Draw Ff perpendicular, either to the top or bottom of the Wall; and, through f , draw Vg , cutting a perpendicular from G . fg is the Seat of FG , on the Plane of the top, being horizontal.

From several Points, h , i , &c. draw perpendicular, cutting fg , at k , l , &c. from g , k , and l , draw to S , cutting the Curve of the Top, at m , n , o , from which, draw Perpendiculars, indefinite; and from the Points g , h , i , &c. draw to $\odot$, cutting them, respectively, in the Points g , b , i , which determine the Shadows of those Points on the Wall; through which, a Curve, being described, is the Shadow of the lower edge of the Timber. The rest is evident.

HI is another piece, also perpendicular to the Wall, its Vanishing Point is Y . Its Shadow is described after the same manner; or by means of a section of the Wall (Hh) parallel to the Horizon. Draw IS , cutting it at h ; from which, draw perpendicular, and $I\odot$ cutting it at K , which determines its length; being so nearly perpendicular it deviates but little from a Right Line.

If its Vanishing Point was at S , the Shadow would be right lined.

THIRD. LM is a piece of Timber, inclined to the Wall, its Van. Point is Q .

Draw $Q\odot$, cutting the Horizontal Line at P , the Vanishing Point of the Shadow on the Ground. Draw LP , cutting the Curve at the bottom, at p ; through p , draw $\odot O$, cutting LM , at O . Lp is the Shadow of LO , on the Ground.

Draw

Draw MN, perpendicular; and LN, being drawn, is the Seat of LM, on the Ground. From several Points *a, b, c*, (between O and M) draw perpendicular to the Seat LN, at *d, e, f*; from which, draw to S, cutting the Curve at the bottom, at *g, h, i*, and from them draw perpendiculars up the Wall; also, from *a, b, c*, draw to O, cutting them, respectively, at *a, b, c*; through which, a Curve being described is the Shadow of OM, on the concave Wall.

For the Shadow of each Perpendicular *ad*, &c. is projected first, from *d* to *g*; and *ga*, &c. is parallel to *ad*, *ad* being parallel to the Wall.

E X A M P L E XIII.

To project the Shadows of Arches; or, the Shadow of the circular outline, on the inside, cylindrical, and plane Surface.

This Example is the same, in every respect, as the first part of the last, except in the position of the Cylinder to the Picture; their position to the Horizon is of no signification.

FIRST; the Arch (X) is parallel to the Picture; C is the Center.

Fig. 35.

The Luminary being on this side, and O its Image; draw CO, indefinite.

Then, because the plane of the Circle is parallel to the Picture, draw a Tangent to the Curve, at A, also, from various Points B, D, &c. at discretion, draw Ordinates, parallel to CO, cutting the opposite side of the Arch, at *b, d*, &c. from all which, draw to C; and lastly, draw BO, DO, &c. cutting *bC, dC*, &c. respectively, at *b, d*, &c. through which, a Curve being described, is the Shadow of all that part of the Circle, from A (where the Shadow begins) to G, where it falls into the perpendicular.

If from A, to *b*, there be too much space, for, describing the curve accurately, take another point (*a*) and project its Shadow to *a*, and more if necessary.

SCHOL. In this, the affinity to the former Example is obvious. The Right Lines, BB, DD, &c. tending to C, (the Center of the Picture) represent perpendiculars to the Bases of the Cylinder; as, in the former they are perpendicular, being parallel to the Picture; also, the Lines Bb, Dd, &c. which are, in this Case, parallel to CO, in the former they vanish in S; because they represent parallel Lines, in a Plane not parallel to the Picture; as, in this Case, they are parallel, being in a Plane parallel to the Picture. The Rays of Light, in both Cases, tend to their Vanishing Point.

2. The Shadow, from A to *f*, notwithstanding its apparent convexity towards the Front, is really concave, the same as the other; the convexity arises only from its position to the Eye, owing to the exterior Curve Ade; which, in the former, is concave, the Eye being between the two Bases, nearly opposite to that part of the Surface on which the Shadows falls; in which position of the Eye, the true curve of the Shadow is seen.

Fig. 36. represents the same thing, inclined to the Picture; in which, the perpendiculars BB, &c. vanish in H, in the Horizontal Line HL, as before in the Center; consequently, *b, d*, &c. vanish in the same Point.

Fig. 36.

Also Bb, Dd, &c. vanish at S, in the Vanishing Line of the Arch, where HO cuts it; H being the Vanishing Point of ~~the Shadow of~~ Right Lines perpendicular to the Plane of the Arch (Prob. 2.) The Rays of Light vanish at O; consequently, HS is the Vanishing Line of the Plane of Shade, for Lines perpendicular to the Plane of the Arch, and S is its Seat on that Plane.

Fig. 37. represents another Arch, with the Light flowing inwardly (as in Example 42. Book 3. of the Piazza.) In which Case, it is the exterior Curve, from A to F, which projects the Shadow, the Sun being on the other side of the Picture (in this Case) at S²; and, G is the Vanishing Point of ~~the Shadow of~~ Perpendiculars, as before.

Fig. 37.

The Figure, having the same Letters of reference, explains the rest.

Here, the curve of the Shadow is seen properly, that is, concave; and it is the same in both the other, in the Object, though represented convex.

In Example 42, of the Piazza, the Luminary is on this Side of the Picture, although it may to some, appear absurd; but, the direction of the Shadows indicate it. It is indeed very much inclined, nearly approaching to parallel; that is, the Luminary is nearly in the Plane of the Picture.

Plate
XLIII.

E X A M P L E XIV.

To project the Shadow of the circular outline of a Nich, on the interior, spherical, and cylindrical Surface.

Fig. 38. FIRST ; let the Front of the Nich be parallel to the Picture.

C being the Center, draw $C\odot$, indefinite, the Intersection of a Plane passing through the Luminary, perpendicular to the Picture.

Draw a Tangent to the Curve at A, parallel to $C\odot$, and several Ordinates, BB, DD, &c. at discretion. On the Diameters BB, DD, and EE, describe the representations of Semicircles, in Planes whose Vanishing Line is $C\odot$, (CI is its Distance) which are sections of the Head, parallel amongst themselves, and to their Plane of Shade.

As the Section, through FF, cuts the cylindrical part of the Nich, also, and that through GG entirely, those Sections are not Semicircles; the former, where it cuts the Head, is circular, but where it cuts the Cylinder (which only is wanted) it is elliptical; and that through GG is a semi-Ellipse, whose transverse Diameter is GG and its Conjugate, the Diameter of the Nich.

Describe the representations of such Ellipses; which being done, from B, D, &c. draw Rays to $\odot$, cutting the Curves, respectively, at b, d, &c. through which, describe the Curve Abdefg, the Shadow of the exterior Curve (from A to G.)

Draw gh, perpendicular, the Shadow of the edge GH, to which it is parallel, and join Hh; which compleats the whole Shadow, in that situation of the Sun.

If the Luminary be less inclined to the Plane of the Nich, but in the same Plane, of which CI is the Vanishing Line, its place being $\odot^2$; Aabdefgb is the Shadow, which is not so convex as the former, being farther removed from the Curve of the Head ABE.

Fig. 39. SCHOL. This process, though apparently troublesome, is the shortest of any that has yet been published, and much more simple than by vertical Sections, as exhibited in Fig. 39; * in which, the several Points, B, D, &c. in the Arch, by means of perpendiculars to the right Line IK, at the bottom, have corresponding Points, B, D, &c.

Then (S, being the Seat of the Luminary) lines are drawn from B, D, &c. to S, cutting the curve of the bottom of the Nich, at b, d, &c. from which, perpendiculars are drawn to the Curve FGH, where the spherical Surface begins; through which, the representations of parallel Sections are made, (as in the Figure) a most difficult and laborious operation. Perpendiculars from each Point, B, C, &c. tending to $\odot$, (as in the former Figure) give the Shadow of each Point in its respective Section; through which, the contour of the Shadow is described.

Sir William Chambers (if Fame reports true) was the first who took notice, to the World of this seeming paradox, viz. a convex Shadow of a concave Line; which, since, has been most fervently copied, by almost every Architect, or other Artist, who had occasion to represent a Nich, either in external or internal Designs. Nay, to such an extravagant excess it is carried, that, in geometrical Sections, and where it is impossible that the Sun should ever shine, almost every Nich is so shaded; which, I do maintain, is, in such Case, most unnatural; nor is the Shadow really convex, but only apparently so; yet it is frequently exaggerated, preposterously.

But, I presume that, in Sun-shine, it has not always the appearance of convexity; for, I have shewn (Fig. 38.) that, the less the Inclination of the Sun, to the Plane of the Front, the less convex is the Curve. There is, also, another circumstance which occasions a different appearance. Those Authors, who have favoured the World with the method of describing it, have always given it direct, with the Center of the Picture in the middle of the Nich, as in Fig. 38. But, certainly, in the Front of a Building, perspectivevely delineated, the Eye cannot be

* In this Example, Fournier is most egregiously mistaken; for, he makes all these vertical Sections pass through B, the Vertex of the Nich, when it is evident, that they are parallel amongst themselves, and to the Plane of Shade of perpendicular Lines. By which means, the contour of his Shadow is more convex than it can ever possibly appear, in any situation of the Luminary, and of the Spectator.

opposite to Niches at each extreme. Suppose, then, the Eye obliquely situated to a Nich, in a Plane parallel to the Picture, on the same side with the Sun; I presume, the convexity will not be so great, as in direct opposition; yet, it is customary to shade all alike, which is most palpably absurd.

Fig. 39. represents a Nich so situated and shaded; the Luminary being on the left hand, its transprojected Image is, consequently, on the Right, at $\odot$; the Center of the Picture is at S, and the Distance is SH.

Now, although the altitude of the Sun, in this, is less, and its Inclination more, than in Fig. 38. yet, the contour of the Shadow is concave, where the other is convex; and this is solely owing to the situation of the Eye, in respect of the Nich; for, being seen directly opposite, it would appear more convex than the other.

I think, none have ventured to describe this Shadow, when the Nich is in a Plane inclined to the Picture; which, in delineating, more frequently happens so than otherwise, if the Picture be properly situated. Yet, in such Case, many, not thinking properly about it, would give the contour of the Shadow the same, which can never possibly happen, except when the Rays of Light are very much inclined to the Plane of the Nich.

Fig. 40. is the representation of a Nich, in a Plane inclined to the Picture; C is the Center, the Distance is CH, and $\odot$ the Image of the Luminary.

Fig. 40.

The same Letters of reference indicate the process the same, as already described, with only this difference; that, as, in the former, the Ordinates were parallel (being parallel to the Picture) so, in this, they vanish ~~to~~, where C $\odot$ cuts the Vanishing Line of the Plane of the Nich.

The outline of the Nich being delineated, and several Points, in the hither side of the Arch, taken at discretion, draw the Ordinates, tending to V; from which Point, draw the Tangent, at A, where the Shadow begins.

Then, representations of Circles being described on those Diameters (Prob. 3. Sect. 8.) and Rays drawn from the several Points, to $\odot$, cutting them respectively, give the contour of the Shadow, as before; which, in this Case (as in the last Example) the Eye being opposite to the Surface where the Shadow is defined, is really concave; and which, in other Points of view, would appear convex.

N B. As the Line which projects the Shadow is concave, the System of Rays form a cylindrical Surface; consequently, the Shadow is concave, towards the Eye, on whatever Surface it falls.

SCHOL. It must have been observed, that the Center and Distance of the Picture are not necessary in the projection of Shadows, except in determining the Vanishing Point of the Rays; but, in this Example, as the Vanishing Line C $\odot$ is of Planes perpendicular to the Picture, it necessarily passes through the Center (Theo. 4) and, the representations of the Sections, through the head of the Nich, could not be described without the Distance.

I have now, I presume, furnished the Reader with Rules and Examples, for the projection of Shadows, by the Sun, sufficient for any purpose almost whatever. The Shadows of straight Mouldings, on Planes, are Right Lines, save the contour of the Profile; which, in Mouldings above the Horizon, in Cornices, &c. are almost wholly shaded by the projecting Fillets, &c. and for circular Mouldings, or the Profile of others below the Eye, the projection of the Shadows of Circles, on plane or other Surfaces (as in this last Section) contain all that can be done in such Subjects.

He who has well digested what is there advanced will never be much at a loss, in the most difficult Cases (where it is possible to project the Shadow, at all, by Rule) in complex, finished Subjects; of which, Examples may be seen, throughout the Work, particularly in the Frontispiece; that being intended as a general Lesson. Yet, in that, I have designedly deviated from the rigid observance of mathematical exactness; which, as I have observed in the Preface, does not always produce the best effect of Light and Shade. For, Example.

According to the general direction of the Rays of Light given, in that Picture, the Vanishing Point of the Shadows of perpendicular Lines being determined,

mined, it must be obvious, that, as the Columns, in the Front, stand off, detached, their Shadows would cover more than the whole space between them, on the Wall; which, I am persuaded, would make that part appear heavy, and too hollow, as receding more than it really does. A little Light is also introduced on the circular Colonnade, on the Right, in order to relieve it from the Building; although it would be wholly in Shade from the Building, according to the situation and altitude of the Luminary, the height, magnitude, and distance of the Object, occasioning the Shade. Such liberties may freely be taken, where it manifestly produces a better general Effect; and, when it does not clash with, and evidently contradict the invariable Law of Nature.

In that Piece, as in most other in this Work, the Luminary is on this side of the Picture; and though, in general, it is productive of the best effects, yet there may sometimes be reasons for supposing it on the other side, or in the Plane of the Picture, as in Plate 26, of Chelsea College. If that Piece had been shaded on the supposition of the Sun being on this Side, either it must be much inclined, and consequently the Vanishing Point at a great Distance, or every Face, in that Object, would be illumined, being on the Right; or, being on the Left, the whole Front would be immersed in Shade; with very little Light, in the Picture; but on the Roof, and end of the Building. Besides, from the situation of that Building, the Sun never can shine on both, the Front and hither End; and I think that circumstance should always be attended to, when a real Object is represented, which is the sole reason why the Queen's Palace (Plate 27.) is shaded from the Left; for I am of opinion, that it would have a better Effect being shaded from the other Hand; but, as we are more accustomed to see it so shaded than otherwise, it has certainly the most natural Effect.

Nevertheless, though there be no Face of this Object, as there represented, but what receives Light, immediately from the Sun, save one Face of the Library; yet, as some Faces are more opposed to the Luminary than others, there are various Tints, which distinguish one Plane from another, though, not so strongly. For, according as the Rays of Light are less or more inclined to the Face of any Object, it may have all the variety of Tints, from the strongest Light to total Shade; and, till the inclination is such, that they are nearly parallel to the Plane, it is still illumined, though in a very small Degree; and, when they become parallel, that is, when the Sun is in any Plane, it is as much deprived of Light, as if it was, in reality, on the other Side; and perhaps more so, as it then receives the least advantage from Reflection.

S E C T I O N V.

Of SHADOWS projected by a Torch or Candle.

IF the Theory of Shadows, in general, (Sect. 2nd.) and the Practice by Sunshine be well understood, little need be said respecting Candle-light Shadows, for in reality there is no difference, except in the Distance; which, on account of the short Distance, and being situated amidst various Objects, its Light is diffused in all directions; as it is from the Sun, respecting the whole System of Planets: also, in respect of any single Object, of the same magnitude, or nearly, as the Flame, the Rays may be considered as parallel.

In projecting Shadows by Candle-light, there is but one Case, or situation of the luminous Point, in respect of the Picture; for, it is always supposed on the other side. In reality it is an Object delineated in the Picture; and, when determined, it is the Center of the Rays of Light; from which, the Shadows of other Objects are projected all around, in every respect the same as by the Sun, in that Case. Therefore, the Theory being the same, and the Practice having but little variation, few Examples will suffice.

Fig. 35.

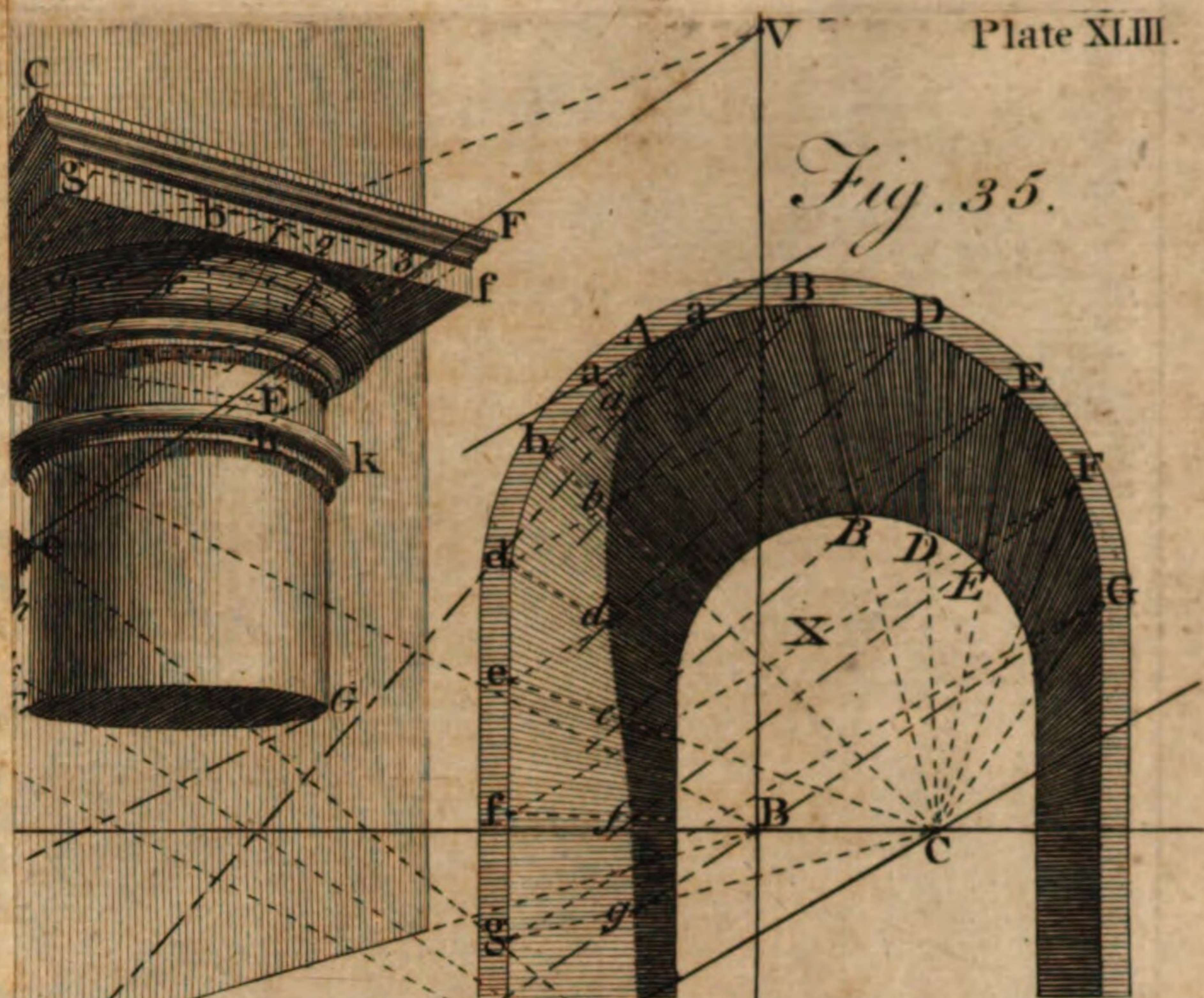


Fig. 37.

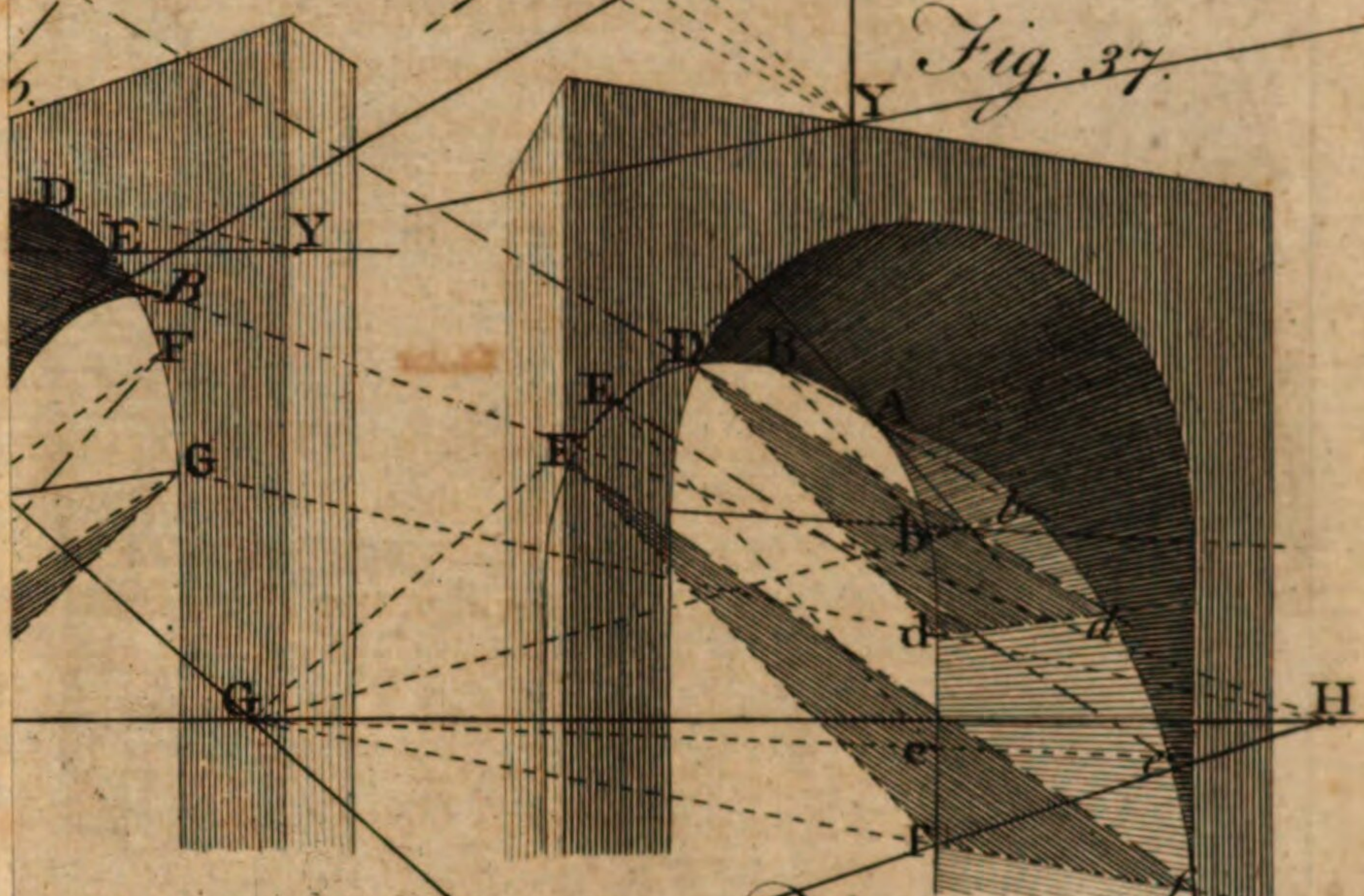
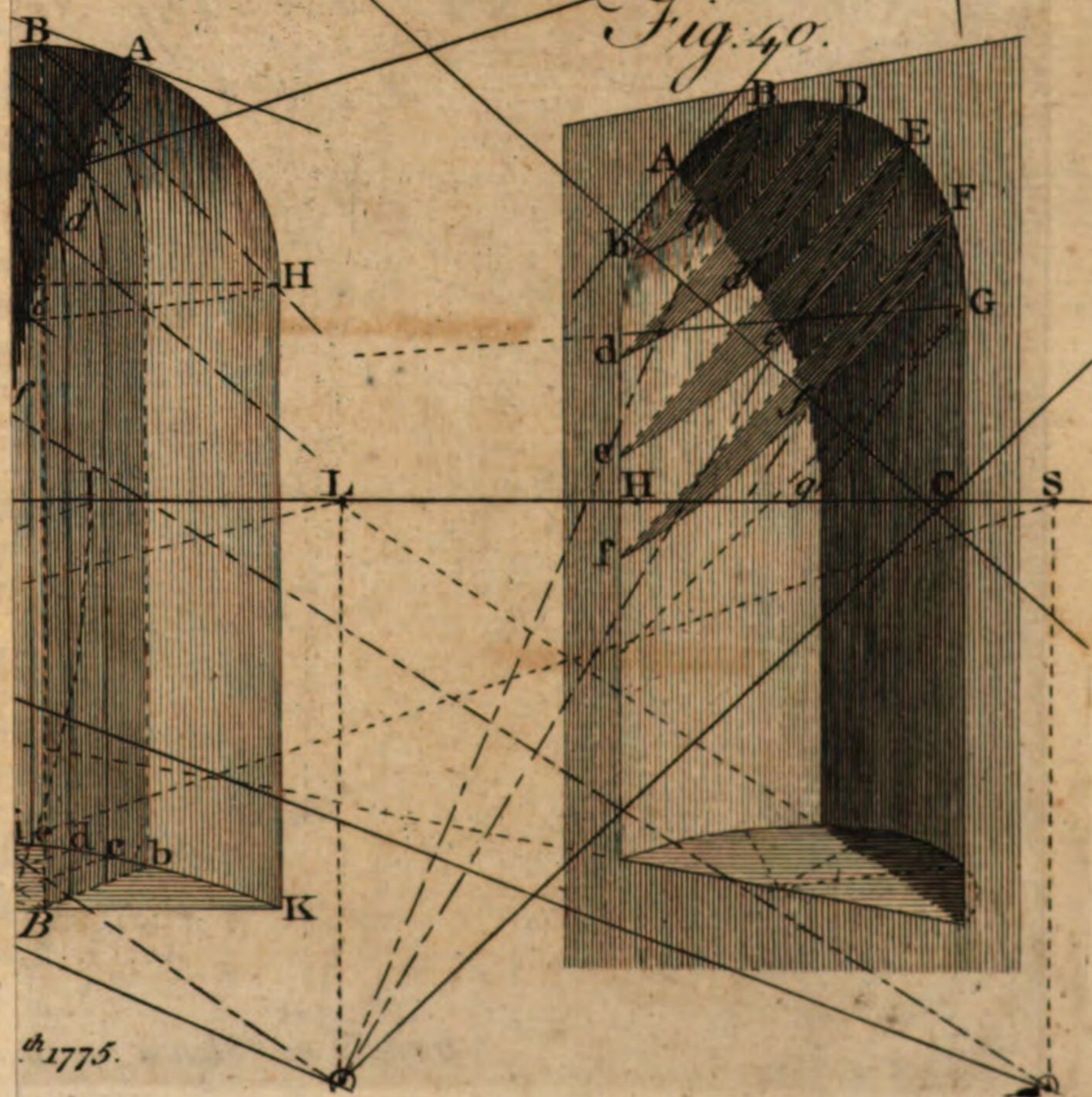


Fig. 40.



10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
43
44
45
46
47
48
49
50
51
52
53
54
55
56
57
58
59
60
61
62
63
64
65
66
67
68
69
70
71
72
73
74
75
76
77
78
79
80
81
82
83
84
85
86
87
88
89
90
91
92
93
94
95
96
97
98
99
100

I shall not suppose it necessary to shew how to find the Vanishing Point of the Rays of Light, which is the same as finding any other Point, in any Object whatever. The Vanishing Point of the Shadows of Perpendiculars, to any Plane, is the Seat of the luminous Point on that Plane; which, in this Case, is finite. In respect of the Sun, being supposed at an infinite Distance, it is, consequently, in the Vanishing Line of the Plane; but in this Case, it must be found on the Plane of Projection; which being found, the Shadows are readily determined.

Shadows projected by a luminous Point, at a short Distance, it is manifest must necessarily be larger than the Object; seeing that, all the Rays diverge from that Point, the same as from the Sun, when it appears in the Picture; which, on account of its immense Distance, the Rays have not so much divergency. But, the Objects whose Shadows are projected by them, are generally of much greater Magnitude; the one being confined to small Objects only, as Chairs, Tables, &c. within a Room, the other is of Buildings, &c. external.

P R O B L E M I.

The representation of a luminous Point, being given, and its Seat on the Ground, or other horizontal Plane, together with the Intersections of other Planes, with that Plane, whether they be perpendicular, parallel, or inclined to the Picture, or to the Horizon, or to both; to determine its Seat on the other Planes, and the Shadows of Right Lines perpendicular to them.

Plate
XLIV.
Fig. 41.

Let O be the luminous Point, given; and S its given Seat.

Let AB be the Intersection of a vertical Plane with the Ground Plane, parallel to the Picture, and BG of a vertical Plane perpendicular to the Picture. Also, let BD be the Intersection of the two vertical Planes; and DE, DH, EI, EF, &c. Intersections of various Planes with each other.

In short, let LABG, represent a Floor, GBDH a vertical Plane, HDEI the Cieling, and IEFK an inclined Cieling, as in a Garret; AFEDB is the farther End of the Room, parallel to the Picture, all the other Planes are perpendicular to it. O is the representation of the luminous Point (as the Flame of a Candle) and S is its Seat on the Floor.

FIRST. To find the Seat of the luminous Point, on any of the other Planes.

OS, being perpendicular to the Floor, consequently parallel to the Picture, imagine a Plane passing through OS, parallel to the Picture, cutting all the Planes (save AFEDB) perpendicularly; the Section of which, with them, is GHIKLG.

Now, because the luminous Point is in that Plane, and it is perpendicular to the Planes BDHG, &c. a Perpendicular from O, to each Plane, must necessarily be in that imaginary Plane; and consequently, must cut each Plane, in its Intersection with the Plane; wherefore, Perpendiculars (O f) to each Intersection, GH, HI, IK, &c. give the Seat (f) of the luminous Point, on each Plane.

The process is so very obvious, that I shall avoid the description.

To find its Seat, on the Plane AFEDB; draw SC, cutting the Intersection, AB, at r; draw rs, perpendicular, and OC, cutting it at s, the Seat of O on that Plane. For, OC represents a perpendicular to the Plane, cutting it at s.

SECONDLY. To find the Shadows of Right Lines perpendicular to those Planes.

Through the Point B, or b, where the Perpendicular AB, or a b, cuts the Plane, draw SB, indefinite; and, through the extreme A, or a, draw Oa, cutting it at C, or c, the Shadow of the Point A, or a.

Consequently, BC, or b c, is the Shadow of AB, or a b.

This process, it is obvious, is the same in each Plane; and, changing S for f, the description, given, serves for all alike.

Plate
XLIV.

The Perpendiculars to the horizontal Cieling are in the same position as on the Floor; to the vertical Planes they are horizontal; and to the inclined Cieling, IEFK, they are (as in all the other) perpendicular to the Intersections, IK and EF.

The Perpendicular ab , to that Plane, is so situated, that the Eye is in the Plane of Shade; wherefore, its Shadow cannot be determined as the rest, being in a continuation of the Line, but may be thus found.

Through the Seat, f , of the Light on that Plane, draw fB , at pleasure; and through b , where ab cuts the Plane, draw bB , perpendicular to ab , cutting fB , at B , and draw Bd , parallel to ab , and ad to bB . Then, through d , draw Oe , cutting fB produced, at e , and draw ce parallel to bB ; which determines, bc , for the Shadow of ab , which could not be determined by the Ray Oc .

SECONDLY. When the Plane is vertical, and inclined to the Picture.

Fig. 42. Let AB , be the Intersection of a vertical Plane, with the Floor, and D its Vanishing Point. The Center of the Picture is C ; O is the luminous Point, and S , its Seat on the Floor.

To determine its Seat on the vertical Plane, draw CE , perpendicular, and equal to the Distance of the Picture. Join DE , and draw EF , perpendicular to DE , cutting the Horizontal Line at F ; the Van. Point of perpendiculars to the Plane.

Then, draw SF , cutting AB , at r , and rf , perpendicular, cutting OF at f , the Seat of O , on that Plane; for, Of , represents a Perpendicular to the Plane.

Let ab , be a Line, perpendicular to the vertical Plane, its Vanishing Point is F .

To project its Shadow on the Plane; draw fb , through the Point b , where it cuts the Plane, indefinite; and through a , draw Oc , cutting fb , produced, at c . bc , is the Shadow of ab , on the vertical Plane.

THIRDLY. When the Plane is inclined to the Horizon, and to the Picture.

Fig. 43. Let AB , be the Intersection of a Plane, inclined to the Horizon and also to the Picture; C is the Center, and D the Vanishing Point of AB . O is the luminous Point, and S its Seat, on the Floor.

Find the Vanishing Point, F , of Lines perpendicular to the Intersection AB , (Prob. 4.) and draw SF , cutting it at r , as in the last.

Then, the Inclination of the Plane to the Horizon being known, find its Vanishing Line, DG , (by 5th of the same) and the Vanishing Point H , of Lines perpendicular to the Plane, (Prob. 2. Sect. 12.) which will be that Point, where a Perpendicular to the Vanishing Line, passing through C , the Center of the Picture, cuts GF , produced.

Draw rG , and OH , cutting it at f , the Seat of O , (the luminous Point) on that Plane. For, H is the Vanishing Point of Perpendiculars to the Plane, and rG represents a perpendicular to AB ; wherefore OH cuts the Plane at f .

Because, OS being perpendicular to the Horizon, and F the Vanishing Point of Sr , is perpendicular to AB ; consequently, GH , passing through F , also perpendicular (that is, parallel to OS) is the Vanishing Line of a Plane $OfrS$, passing through OS , perpendicular to the inclined Plane; and H , being the Vanishing Point of Perpendiculars to the Plane, OH must cut in rG , the common Section of the two Planes; therefore, f , where OH , cuts rG , is the Seat of the Point O , on the inclined Plane.

The Seat f , of the luminous Point being found, and ab , a given Line perpendicular to the Plane, its Shadow is determined, by drawing fc , through b , indefinite, and Oc , through a , intersecting at c ; giving bc , the Shadow of ab , as in all the foregoing.

In this Problem is contained the whole Theory of Projecting Shadows by Candle Light, in which there is not any difference to that of projecting Shadows by the Sun; in respect of Lines parallel or inclined to the Plane of Projection, there is very little difference in the Process.

The chief difficulty in projecting Shadows, by Candle Light, is to find the Seat of the luminous Point; for which, the Rules given will answer in all Cases, and in all positions of Planes, whatever, having the Intersection of the Plane, with some other, on which, the Seat is already determined, and the Inclination of the Planes, to each other, known.

Fig. 41.

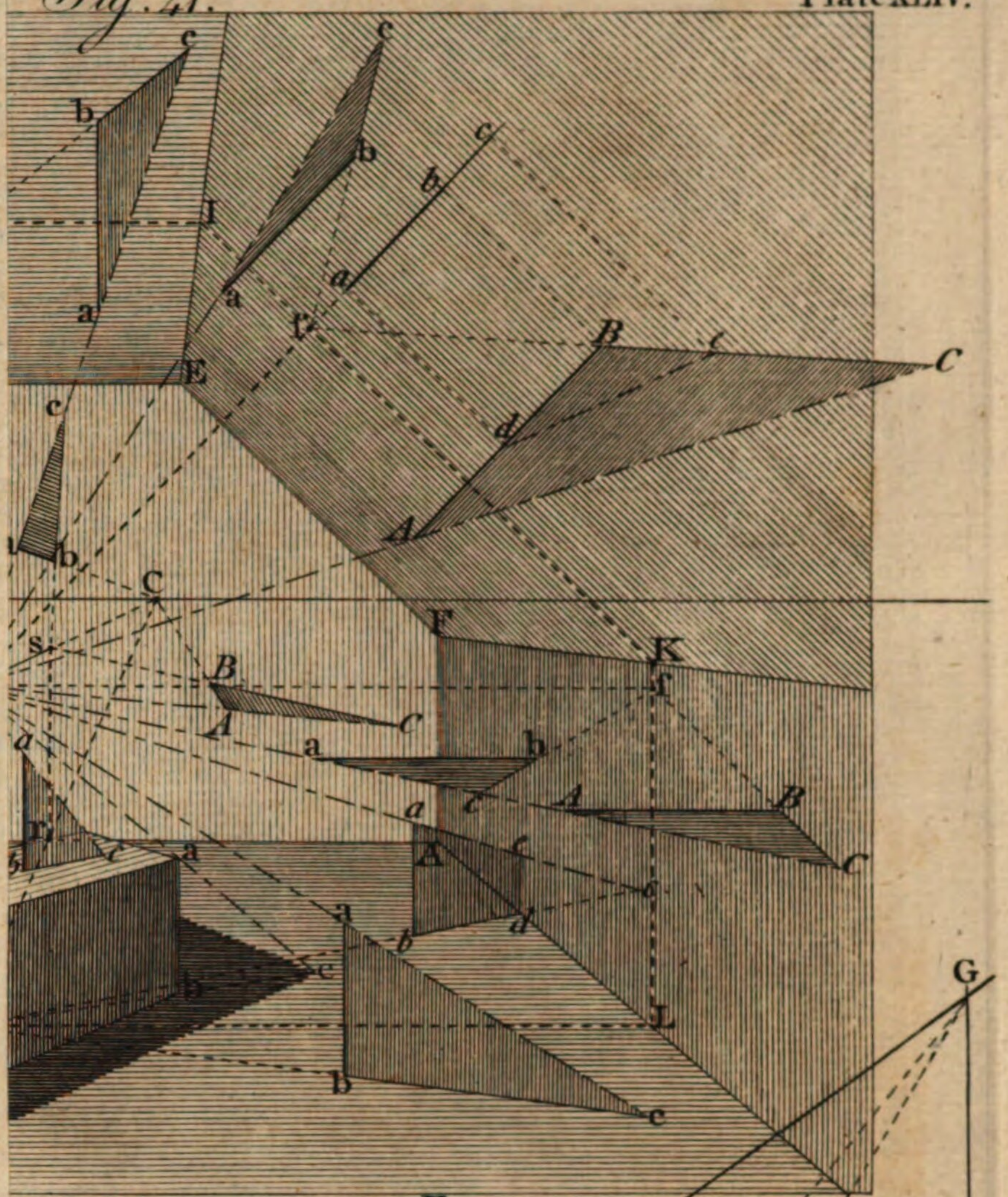
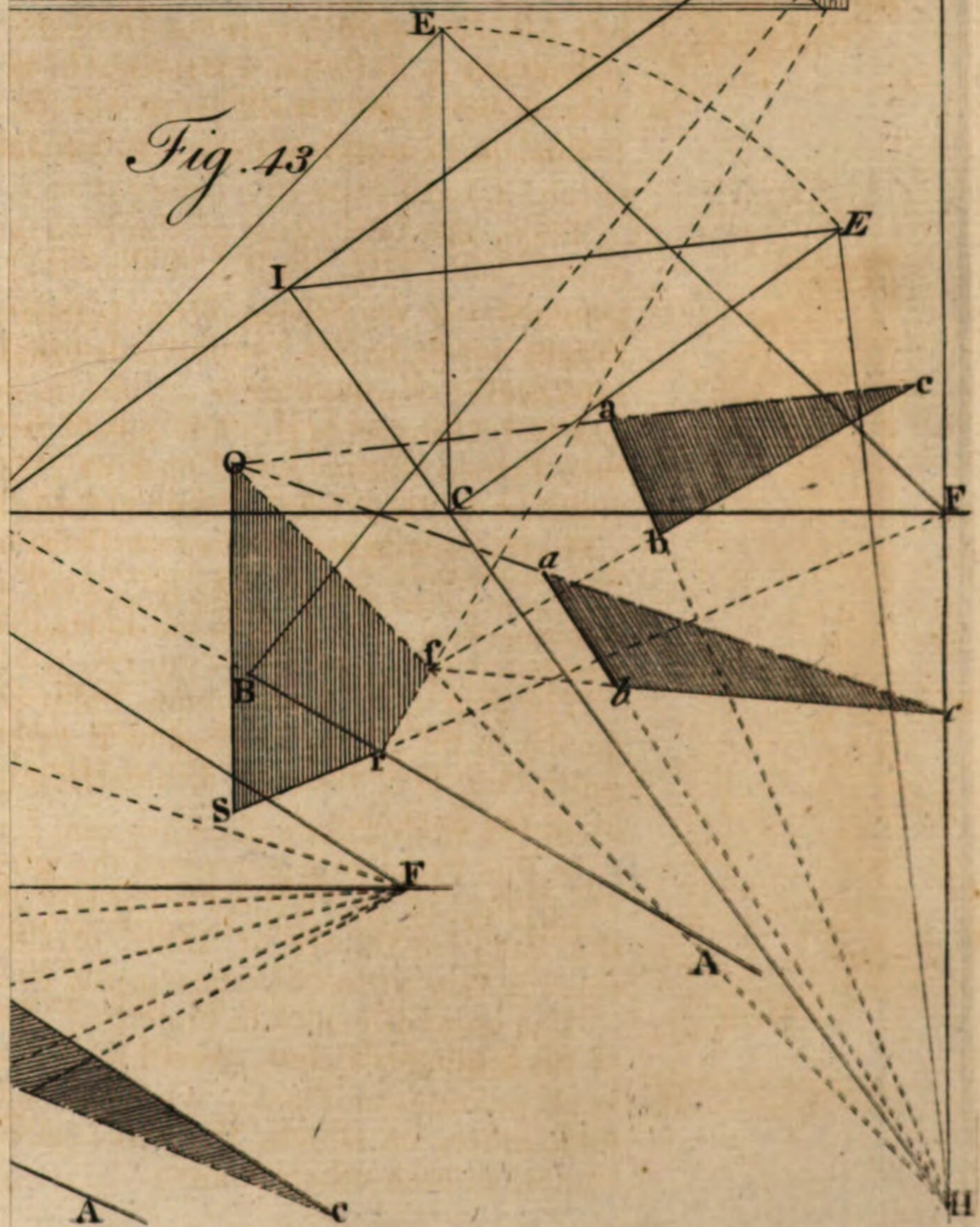


Fig. 43



P R O B L E M II.

Plate
XLV.

To project the Shadows of Right Lines, parallel to the Plane of projection, however situated to the Picture.

The Shadows of Right Lines, on Planes to which they are parallel, whether they are projected by the Sun or by Candle Light, it is obvious, are always parallel to the Lines projecting the Shadows.

For, however the luminous Point be situated, or at whatever Distance, the Rays OA, OB, &c. generating the Plane of Shade, are all cut proportionally by the Line and the Plane of Projection,† consequently, seeing the extreme Rays, OA, OB, or any other, are so cut, as OA is to AC, so is OB to BD, it necessarily follows, that CD is parallel to AB (Case 2. 2. 6. El.)

Then, consequently, if the Line be parallel to the Picture, the Shadow is parallel on the Picture; that is, to the Vanishing Line of the Plane of projection; and consequently, however otherwise the Line be situated to the Picture, the Shadow, being parallel to the Line, has necessarily the same Vanishing Point. (Cor. 1. Theo. 5)

Fig. 44.

† 2. 6. El.

Let ACD be a right angled Parallelopiped, having the Face AC parallel to the Picture; the Sides CD, &c. are consequently perpendicular to the Picture, and parallel to the Floor, on which the Shadow is projected.

Fig. 45.
No. 1.

Let O, be the luminous Point, and S its Seat, on the Floor.

Through A, draw Sb, indefinite, and Ob, cutting it at b; then, because BC is parallel to the Floor, and to the Picture, its Shadow is parallel to the Line.

Wherefore, draw bc, parallel to BC, and Oc (through C) cutting it at c.

Then, because CD is perpendicular to the Picture, and parallel to the Plane of projection, C (the Center) is the Vanishing Point of its Shadow; wherefore, draw cC, which compleats the Shadow, as much as can be seen.

2. EH is another Parallelopiped obliquely situated to the Picture; having one Face so situated, that the luminous Point, is in its Plane, produced.

No. 2.

Produce SE, and, through F, draw Of, cutting it at f, the Shadow of f.

Then, K being the Vanishing Point of FG, draw fK, and Og (through G) cutting it at g; fg is the Shadow of FG, to which it is parallel, having the same Vanishing Point. And, because GH vanishes at I, draw gI, cutting the Parallelopiped, which compleats the Shadow fgh.

To project the Shadows of Right Lines parallel to any other Plane, however situated to the Picture, has nothing more of variety in it; the seat of the Luminary being obtained on the Plane.

3 The Shadows of the Shelves, LM, &c. at the farther End of the Room, are thus obtained, being parallel to the Picture.

No. 3.

Through the Feet, R, and T, draw right Lines, from S, cutting the Intersection, rt, at r and t; from which, draw Lines parallel to LR, and MT, indefinite. From O, draw through the extremes of the Shelves, L, N, &c. cutting them, at l, n, &c. from which Points, draw parallel to the Shelves, cutting the edge of the upright piece, at /, n, &c. and join, Nn, Oo, &c. as in the Figure.

4. The Shelves, against the side Wall, may have their Shadows projected after the same manner, with only this difference; that, the Shadows, instead of being drawn parallel to the edges of the Shelves, tend to the same Vanishing Point.

No. 4.

As ab, the Shadow of AB, and cd of CD, tending to the Center.

5. For the Shadow of the single Shelf on the other Side, find the Seat, f, of the Light on the Wall (Prob. 1.) then, ab being perpendicular to the Plane, draw fa, indefinite, and Ob, being produced, cuts it at b. Draw bV, cutting the Angle of the Room, at c, and join cd.

No. 5.

Plate
XLV.
Fig. 45.
No. 6.

6. For, the hanging Frame and Shelves, above, proceed thus.

Find S , the Seat of the Light on the Cieling; AB and CD being perpendicular, draw SA , SC , indefinite; and, through B , and D , draw OB , OD , cutting them at b , and d . Draw bd , the Shadow of BD ; and, from the Center of the Picture (being the Vanishing Point of BE and DF) draw be , and df , the Shadows of BE and DF , on the Cieling.

Lastly; through G or H , draw Og , or Ob , cutting be , or df , at g or b ; through which, draw gb , parallel to GH (being parallel to the Horizon) and, through the extremes of the Shelves, draw Lines from O , cutting gb at a and c .

The rest, for that Shelf, is obvious.

The other, notwithstanding its inclination, is performed by the same means; only, instead of being parallel, the Shadow tends to the same vanishing Point, as the Shelf; or, both extremes being determined, the vanishing Point is useless. Their widths are determined after the same manner.

No. 7.

7. The Shadow of the Stool, on the Counter and Floor, is thus projected.

From S , the Seat of the luminous Point, draw Right Lines through the feet of the Frame, a , b , &c. till they cut the Intersection, AC , at a , b , c , d ; from which Points, draw Perpendiculars; which, are the indefinite Shadows of the feet of the Frame, on the Side of the Counter, and if, through the Angles, e , f , &c. Lines are drawn from O , cutting the Perpendiculars, at e , f , &c. respectively, their lengths are determined.

The Shadow of the cross Frame is determined, by drawing Lines, from O , through their extremes, cutting the Shadows of the Legs, at i , k , &c. But, as the Shadow of the extreme i , falls on the Floor, if ik be parallel to the Picture, draw ij , parallel to the Horizon, or tending to the Vanishing Point of ik , till it cuts the Intersection AC at j ; and join jk .

No. 8.

8. The Box on which the Candle stands has its upper Face, only, illumined, and consequently its Shadow, only, is projected, on the Floor, &c. by drawing Lines, from S , through the Seat of each Angle, on the Floor; and Om , On , being produced, till they cut them, at m and n . Op , cuts the side of the Counter, in the perpendicular rp , and if no be drawn, to the Vanishing Point of np , till it cuts AC , at o , and the point q being obtained, by the same means, op and pq , being joined, compleats its Shadow.

P R O B L E M III.

To project the Shadows of Right Lines, any how inclined to the Plane of projection, and to the Picture.

This Problem I shall resolve also, by Examples, as in the foregoing.

The Vanishing Point of the Rays of Light, that is, the place of the luminous Point being determined, the process is the same as by Sun shine, having found the Vanishing Line of the Plane of Shade; which passes through the Vanishing Point of the Line, but not through the luminous Point.

Fig. 46.

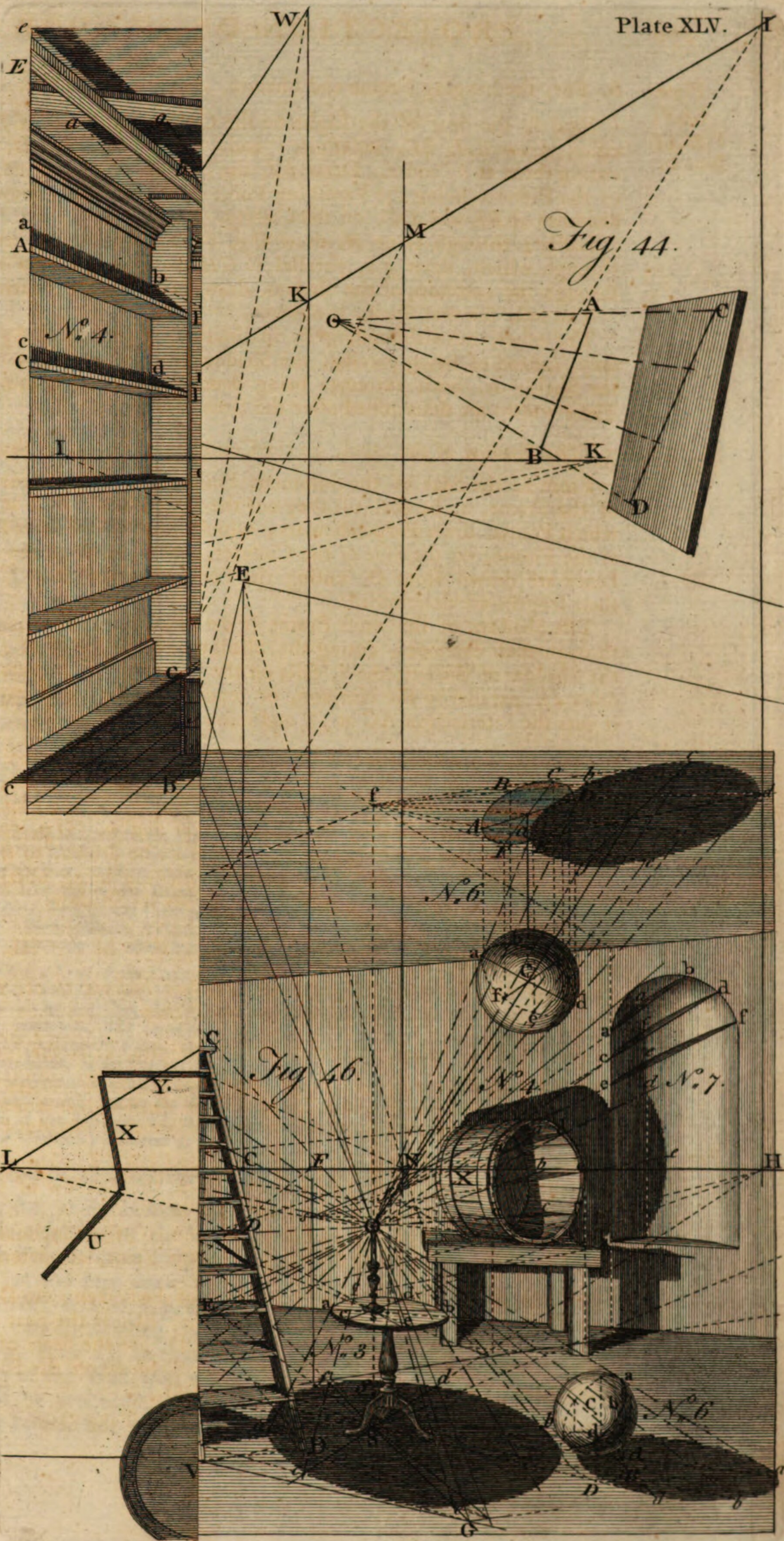
$ABCD$ represents a high pair of Steps, and $UXYZ$ a large folding Screen, so situated, in respect of the Light, at O , that the Shadow of the inclined Sides, AB and CD , of the Steps, fall on the Screen.

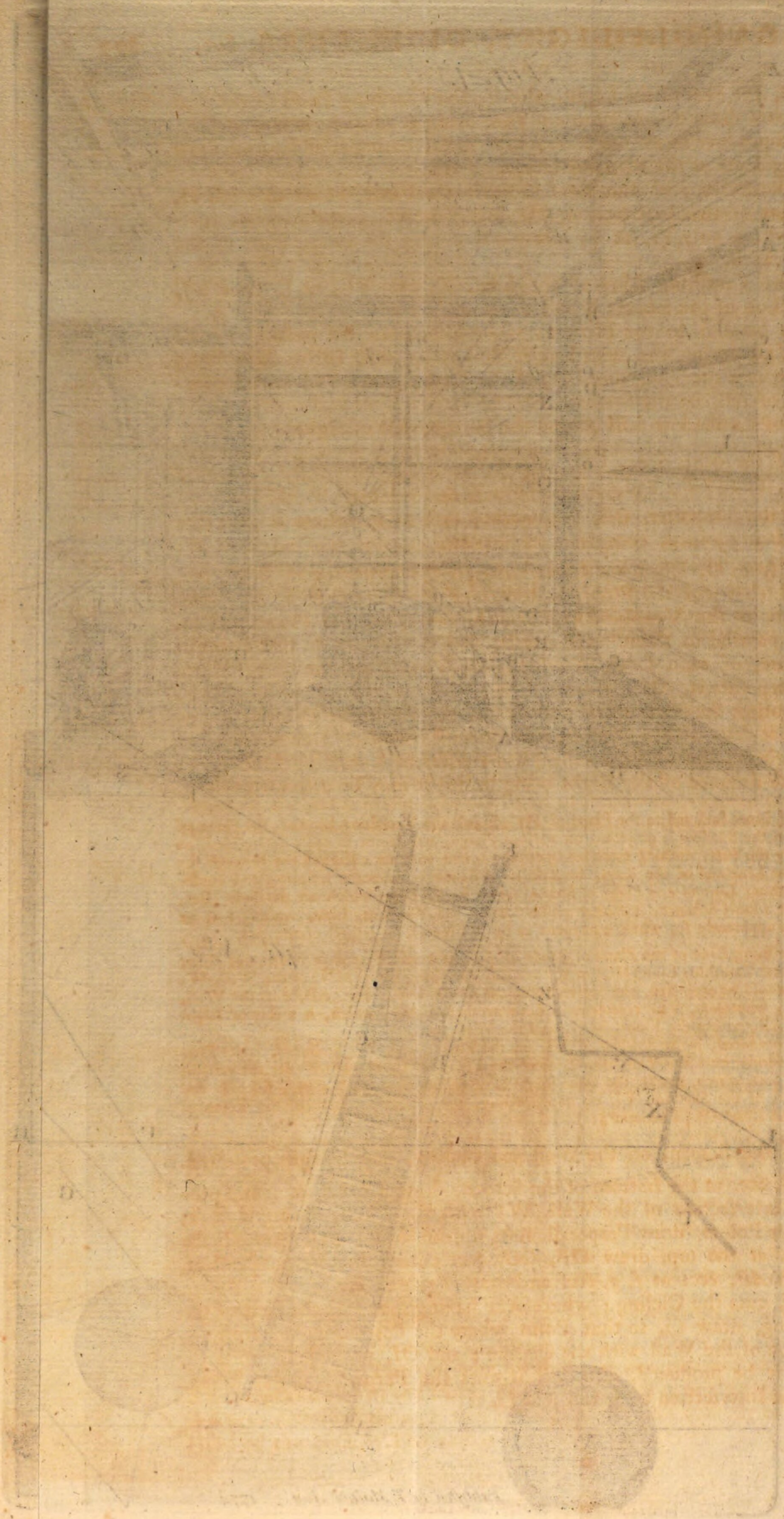
Their position, in respect of the Steps, and also their inclination to each other, together with the Seat of the Light, on the Floor, are determined as in No. 2.

No. 2.

Let U , X , &c. be the Seats of the Leaves of the Screen; A , D , E , F , of the feet of the Steps, and, S the Seat of the Light; BC , is the Seat of the top of the steps, which being contracted, AB and CD , are the Seats of the inclination of the Sides, on the Floor, which cast their Shadows on the Screen; let their inclination to the Horizon be the Angle CDG .

Let V be the Vanishing Point of the Side, AB , of the Steps.





Having found *S*, the Seat of the Light, also *F*, the Vanishing Point of the Seat of *AB*, on the Floor, draw *FS*, indefinite; *VO*, being produced, cuts it at *G*.

Draw *GA*, and produce it to the Horizontal Line, cutting it at *L*, and draw *VL*, the Vanishing Line of the Plane of Shade, of *AB*.

AL cuts the Intersection, of the Leaf *U* with the Floor, at *a*; through *H*, the Vanishing Point of that Intersection, *HI* being drawn, perpendicular, is its Vanishing Line, which cuts *VL* at *I*; draw *aI*, cutting the Intersection of the Leaves, *U* and *X*, at *b*.

Then, where the Vanishing Line of the Leaf, *X*, cuts *VL*, at *J*, draw *bJ*, cutting the Intersection of the Leaves *X* and *Y*, at *c*.

The Leaf *Y*, is parallel to the Picture; wherefore, draw *cd* parallel to the Vanishing Line, *VL*, cutting the next Intersection at *d*; and, lastly, draw *dK*, to the Point, *K*, where the Vanishing Line of the Leaf *Z*, cuts *VL*, which compleats the Shadow of *AB*, on the Screen.

The remainder of its Shadow falls behind the Screen, out of Sight.

The Shadow of the other Side, *CD*, whose Vanishing Point is *R*; falls only on the two Leaves, *Y*, and *Z*; and on the Wall, to *g*, mostly out of sight.

The Shadow of the Supporter, *CE*, is projected first to *f*, where it cuts the Wall; then, *fg*, being joined, compleats its Shadow.

For the Steps; from *O*, Lines are drawn through the extremes *A*, *B*, *C*, &c. on either Side, till they cut the Floor, or leaves of the Screen, at *a*, *b*, *c*, &c. and from, *a*, *b*, &c. to the Vanishing Point of the Steps, on the Floor, and on the Leaves, being parallel to them. Otherwise, they are drawn to that Point in the Vanishing Line, of each Leaf, in which, the Vanishing Line of the Plane of Shade of the Step cuts it. Or, drawing through both extremes, of each Step, as *C* and *D*, &c. cutting the Shadows of both Sides, the Vanishing Point is unnecessary; but when it falls within bounds, it is the most correct. Nevertheless, as every Line (although parallel to some other) has a different Vanishing Line of its Plane of Shade (the distance of the Light being finite) it may be dispensed with.

In this Case (viz. of Lines inclined to the Plane of Projection) the Vanishing Line of the Plane of Shade is necessary, when the Shadow is projected on various Planes, but is not so easily determined, as for Shadows projected by the Sun; nothing more being required than to draw a Right Line through the Vanishing Points, of the Line and of the Rays, because its distance is supposed infinite; and consequently, the same Vanishing Line of any Plane of Shade, serves for all Lines which are parallel. But, here, the Light being at a short distance, it cannot possibly be in the Vanishing Line, which is at an infinite distance; except apparently so, when it happens to be so situated, in respect of the Eye.

That *VL* is the Vanishing Line of the Plane of Shade of *AB*, is manifest; and is determined either by means of the horizontal Vanishing Line (*HL*) or the vertical Vanishing Line (*MN*) of the Wall, *W*, on which the Shadow would be projected, the Screen being out of the way. For, *AB*, cuts the Wall, at *P*, as the Floor at *A*; wherefore, *VO* represents a Line parallel to *AB*; which, is a Ray of Light in the same Plane with *AB*, cutting the Floor, at *G*, and the Wall, at *Q*.

Consequently, *GA*, produced, is the Shadow of *AB*, on the Floor; and, *PQ* produced, is its Shadow on the Wall; the former cuts the Vanishing Line of the Floor, at *L*, the latter cuts the vertical Vanishing Line at *M*; both which, are in the same Right Line passing through *V*; and, since *L* and *M* are Vanishing Points of the Shadow, *VL* is, consequently, the Vanishing Line of the Plane of Shade, occasioned by the Line *AB* (Theorem 11.)

2. The Shadow of the Screen, on the Wall and Cieling, may be thus projected.

Through, *A*, *B*, &c. at the bottom of the Screen, draw *SA*, *SB*, &c. and produce them to the Intersection of the Wall (*W*) with the Floor, cutting it at *1*, *2*, &c. from which Points, draw Perpendiculars up the Wall; and, through the Angles *F*, *G*, &c. at the top, draw *OF*, *OG*, &c. cutting the Perpendiculars, corresponding with *AF*, &c. at *f*, *g*, &c. and draw *fg*, *gh*, &c.

But the Ray *OI*, cuts the Cieling; wherefore, having found *f*, the Seat of the Light on the Cieling, draw *fi*, to that Point where the Perpendicular, from *4*, cuts the Intersection of the Wall with the Cieling; and *OI*, produced, limits the Shadow, at *i*; let it be produced, also, till it cuts the Perpendicular at *k*, and join *b k*, cutting the Intersection at *j*, and join *ji*.

4 A

This

Plate
XLV.
Fig. 46.

This process would be indispensibly necessary, provided the Lines, HI &c. were not parallel to the Ceiling; but being so, they are drawn either parallel to the Line (as for HI) or to the same Vanishing Point (as for IK). $Aifgbjkl$, are the extremes of the Shadow of the Screen, on the Floor, Wall, and Ceiling.

By the same means, the Shadow of AB , may be projected on the Screen, thus.

Draw SA , SB , &c. cutting AF , the Seat of AB on the Floor, at n , o , p , and q ; from which, draw Perpendiculars, cutting AB , at A , B , &c. through which Points, draw OA , &c. cutting the corresponding angles of the Screen, at a , b , c , &c. which, being joined by Right Lines, give the same Shadow as before.

This process, though shorter, is by no means so correct and masterly; but, as it is performed in less room, it may be applied when the inclination is such, that the Vanishing Points are very remote.

3. The Shadow of the Table, on which the Candle stands may be thus determined.

No. 3. Having obtained the Seat (s) of the Light on the Table, and (S) on the Floor, through s , draw ab , parallel to the Horizon, also cd , and ef at pleasure, cutting the Horizontal Line, at H , and, F ; and through S , on the Floor, draw Hc , and Fe , indefinite; also ab , parallel to a .

Then, Rays drawn, from O , through the extremes of those Lines, viz. Oa , Oc , &c. (being produced) will cut the corresponding Lines in the Shadow of each, respectively, by which means as many points may be obtained as are necessary, for obtaining the true curve of the Shadow, which is a Circle, the Table being circular.

The Candle standing towards one edge of the Table, the Rays proceeding from it, around its Circumference, form a scalene, or oblique Cone; which being projected to the Floor (to which the Table is supposed parallel) the Section, thereon (which is its Shadow) is consequently a Circle; and, being seen oblique, its Representation is an Ellipsis (Theo. 2. Sect. 5.)

No. 4. 4. The Shadow of the concave edge of the hollow Cylinder (X) on the interior Surface, may be projected, in the following manner. Find s , the seat of the Light on the Plane of its Base, and draw sa , sb , &c. at pleasure, cutting the circumference on both sides; from the Points, d , e , &c. draw Right Lines to the Vanishing Point of the sides of the Cylinder, and draw Oa , Ob , &c. cutting them, respectively, at a , b , &c. through which, the contour of the Shadow may be described.

No. 5. 5. For the Shadow of the edge, of the conical Vessel (W) on the interior Surface. If Right Lines be drawn from S , the Seat of the Light, on the Plane of its upper Base, cutting it on both sides, and making vertical Sections through them; then, draw Oa , &c. and produce them, cutting the opposite, corresponding lines, at a , b , &c. through which, the curve of the Shadow may be described.

Where they fall on the Bottom, join cd , &c. Oe , Of , &c. cuts those Lines, at e , f , &c. through which, the curve of the Shadow is described.

By taking several Points (g , h , &c.) in the exterior Curve, and finding their Seats on the Floor, its Shadow (gbi) may be described thereon.

6. The Shadows of Spheres, it is not easy to describe, with certainty.

No. 6. If a Tangent be drawn, from the Light (O) to any part of its Surface (as a) and, through that Point, a Section, by a Plane, be described, perpendicular to the Axis, (OC), (which, I freely own, is not easy to do, being obliquely situated) then, take as many Points in its Circumference as are necessary (a , b , d , &c.) and find their Seats, (A , B , D , &c.) on the Floor, or Ceiling; and, through S , or s , the Seat of the Light, draw SA , SB , &c. and Oa , Ob , &c. cutting them, respectively, at a , b , d , &c. a Curve described through a , b , &c. will be an Ellipsis, the true Shadow of the Sphere; being an oblique section of the Cone of Rays.

7. The Shadow in the Nich is described as by Sunshine, with little variation.

No. 7. Find the Seat (f) of the Light on its Plane, (Prob. 1.) from which, draw the Ordinates, ab , cd &c; on which Ordinates describe Sections through the Head, &c. perpendicular to the Plane, and draw Oa , Oc , &c. giving the Points a , c , &c. A Curve described through those Points is the true contour of the Shadow, in the Head of the Nich. The rest is evident.

SECTION VI.

Of reflected Light; and of the reflected Images of Objects,
on Water, and polished Surfaces; Keeping, &c.

Plate
XLVI.

IN treating on this Subject, it may be necessary to consider, in the first place, what is meant by Reflection, simply, or considered abstractedly.

REFLECTION, in a physical sense, signifies a rebounding of Matter, by Percussion. i. e. When an elastic Body, * in motion, strikes another, Body, also elastic; it rebounds, from that other Body, in a different direction, from that in which it was at first impelled; making an Angle, with its first direction, greater or less, according to the obliquity in which it strikes the Surface of the other Body.

If a Globe strikes a Plane, or the Surface of another Globe (or any Surface whatever) perpendicularly, it will rebound from the other Surface, perpendicularly, in direct opposition to its first, or incident motion; as if A falls, perpendicular, to the Plane EF, striking it at B, it will rebound again, from B, towards A. But, it is found, from experiment, that if the incident motion be from C to B, oblique to the Plane, or other Surface, it will rebound, or be reflected from B towards D, also oblique; making the Angle ABC, with a perpendicular, at that Point (called the Angle of Incidence) equal to ABD (called the Angle of Reflection) or, which is the same thing, the Angle CBE, in which it inclines to the Plane, in its incident motion, is equal to DBF, in which it reflects from the Plane. And this is the same, in all positions of the Plane, whether horizontal, vertical, or inclined. Hence, Light is said to be reflected, from one Surface to another; and, probably, from that consideration it is imagined to be material.

Fig. 47:

Without taking Matter into consideration, it is certain, that any Surface (not wholly opaque) being opposed to a luminous Body, becomes illumined itself; and, in an inferior degree, illumines other Objects, in vicinity with it.

The first and grand instance, of which, is the Moon and other Planets; as they are more or less illumined, by the Sun, or rather, the more their illumined Surfaces are towards the Earth, the more the Earth is illumined; even to such a degree (though but reflected) as to project Shadows, strongly defined. The Case is perfectly similar in respect of other Bodies, on the Earth. For, however any Surface be situated to the Sun, being illumined by its Light, that Surface illumines others, which are near it, more or less, according as that Surface is situated to the Sun, and as they are situated in respect of each other. Without which, Bodies, or the Surfaces of Bodies, which are not illumined, directly from the Sun or other luminous Body, would be so totally immersed in Shade as not to be visible, excepting their exterior Figure or Outline.

Now, admitting Rays of Light to be emitted from any luminous Body, at S, and falling, directly, on another Body, or plane Surface, at A, they are said to be reflected, directly, again, towards S; but, falling on it oblique, as at B, they are reflected towards D, making the Angle DBE equal SBA.

Fig. 48:

Hence arises an objection to the Newtonian System, respecting the reflection of Light, from one Body to another, and from that other Body to the Eye; by which means, only, it is conjectured, Objects, not illumined, become visible.

Let AB be a Plane Surface, directly opposed to the Sun; and, suppose AB the utmost limits of the Plane. Let X be an Object, having one plane Face (CD) parallel to AB; and suppose no other Object, or Body, near.

* By Elastic, in this Place, is meant, simply, hard Bodies only, as Stones, Metals, &c. of which, some are more elastic than others. Lead, or pure Gold, yields to the stroke, and therefore, does not rebound like Tin, or Tin like Copper, nor that like Iron, or hard Steel. So Clay will not rebound like Free Stone, nor that like Marble; because, after Percussion, the more remote parts of Matter are still in motion, till the Body is compressed by the Stroke; which deprives it, either wholly or in part, of Motion; and consequently, it rebounds with less force, or not at all.

Now,

Plate
XLVI.
Fig. 48.

Now, the distance of the Sun being supposed infinite, its Rays, consequently, fall perpendicularly on AB, in every part.

Let SA, SB, &c. represent Rays of Light from the Sun. Then, according to the Maxim laid down, they are reflected, directly back again, towards S (which, being material, is somewhat repugnant to our Ideas of Matter, seeing that, it is continually flowing, with equal and unremitted velocity, from the Sun to AB) consequently, the Object X being situated so, that none of the reflected Rays can possibly fall on the Surface CD, that Surface is wholly invisible, to any Eye at E, or *E*. Quere, whether it would be visible or not.

I am of opinion that it would be clearly visible, to any Eye, on this Side CD; not only in respect of its Figure, but that, the Surface, CD, would be illumined, by means of Reflection, from AB; when, according to the general Maxim, it could not, seeing no Rays, from AB, are reflected to CD. Yet, I am fully persuaded that it may be seen; not only, directly, at E, but also oblique, in any direction, as at *E*; although it is manifest, that the Rays, from AB, must be reflected oblique, to CD, and again to E, or *E*, in various Angles and Directions; and yet, the original Rays all fall perpendicularly on AB.

Now, if CD be seen, at all, it is manifest it must be illumined; and it is evident, that it cannot be so from the Sun, directly, consequently, it must be from Reflection; and since no other Body is near, it must be from the Surface AB, Hence, then, it is manifest, that, Light is reflected in other directions, from one Object to another. How or by what means it is reflected, I will not attempt to enquire; but shall only make a few Observations, respecting the effects it produces, on Objects, so essential to the perfecting a Picture, or true Portrait of Nature.

It had, formerly, been customary, with many, to represent Objects, immersed in Shade, so very obscurely, as scarce to be distinguishable; whereas, it is not so in Nature. In clear Day-light, when the Sun does not shine out, we see Objects in their true Colours, and every part is distinct; but, when the Sun breaks out, and darts its Rays on those parts which are opposite, the Colours are more intensely vivid, occasioned by the refulgent lustre of the Sun-Beams. Nevertheless, those parts which are prevented from receiving that additional Light, and appear to be in Shade, cannot possibly be deprived of what Light they had before, but must rather receive additional Light on them; the difference, then, can only arise, from the splendor of the surrounding Light, which dazzles the Eye, and renders those parts obscure which, before, were distinctly seen. But, when out of the full glow of Sun-shine, we perceive every Object or parts of Objects, which are in Shade, as distinctly as before; and in the same Colours, though greatly different from those on which the Sun shines.

Some, again, of late Years, run into the opposite extreme, and make too little distinction, between the fullest Light and the strongest Shade, by which means, their Pieces look flat, and do not produce, on the Mind, a just Idea of what is intended. For, although it is certain, that, in Sunshine, every part receives additional Light, yet, the contrast is so strong, from the brilliancy of the Colours, where the Rays fall, that, the other Parts appear as if deprived of Light, in comparison with these; and, since that vivid lustre cannot be given by Art, and Colours, the difference must be made by keeping the other parts somewhat under.

Respecting the degree of reflected Light on Objects, it is not easy to determine; that being more or less, according to the situation of the Object, in respect of others; also, according as that other Object is situated to the Light.

If one Object be so situated to another, that the Surface of one, being directly opposed to the Light, is also much opposed to the shaded side of the other Object; the reflected Light, on the other, will be stronger than when they are more obliquely situated; either the one in respect of the Light, or the other, in respect of the illumined Surface.

Fig. 49.

For example. The Cylinder, AB, being situated near the Wall X, on which the Light is direct; the shaded Edge (AB) has a much stronger reflection, than if

Fig. 53.

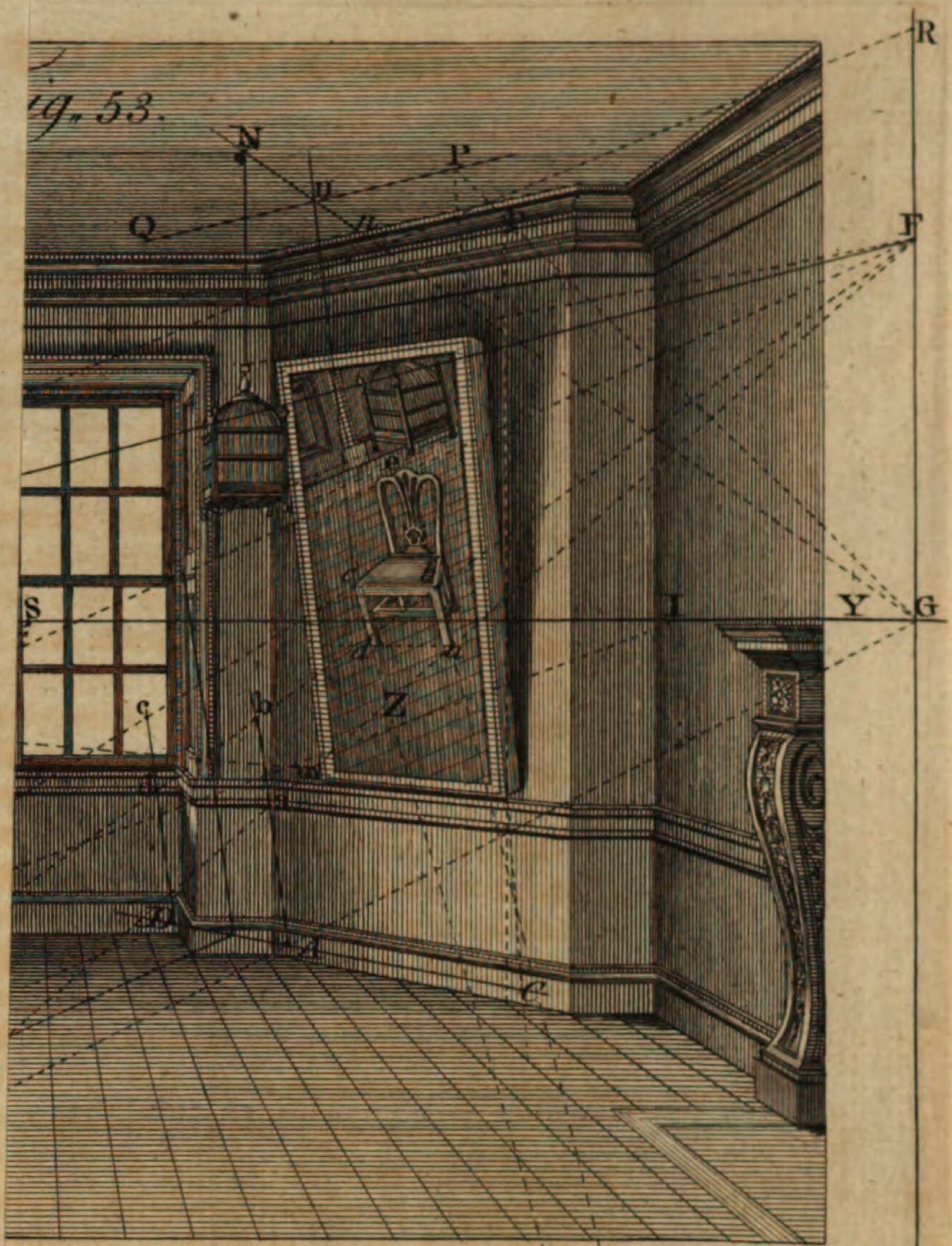
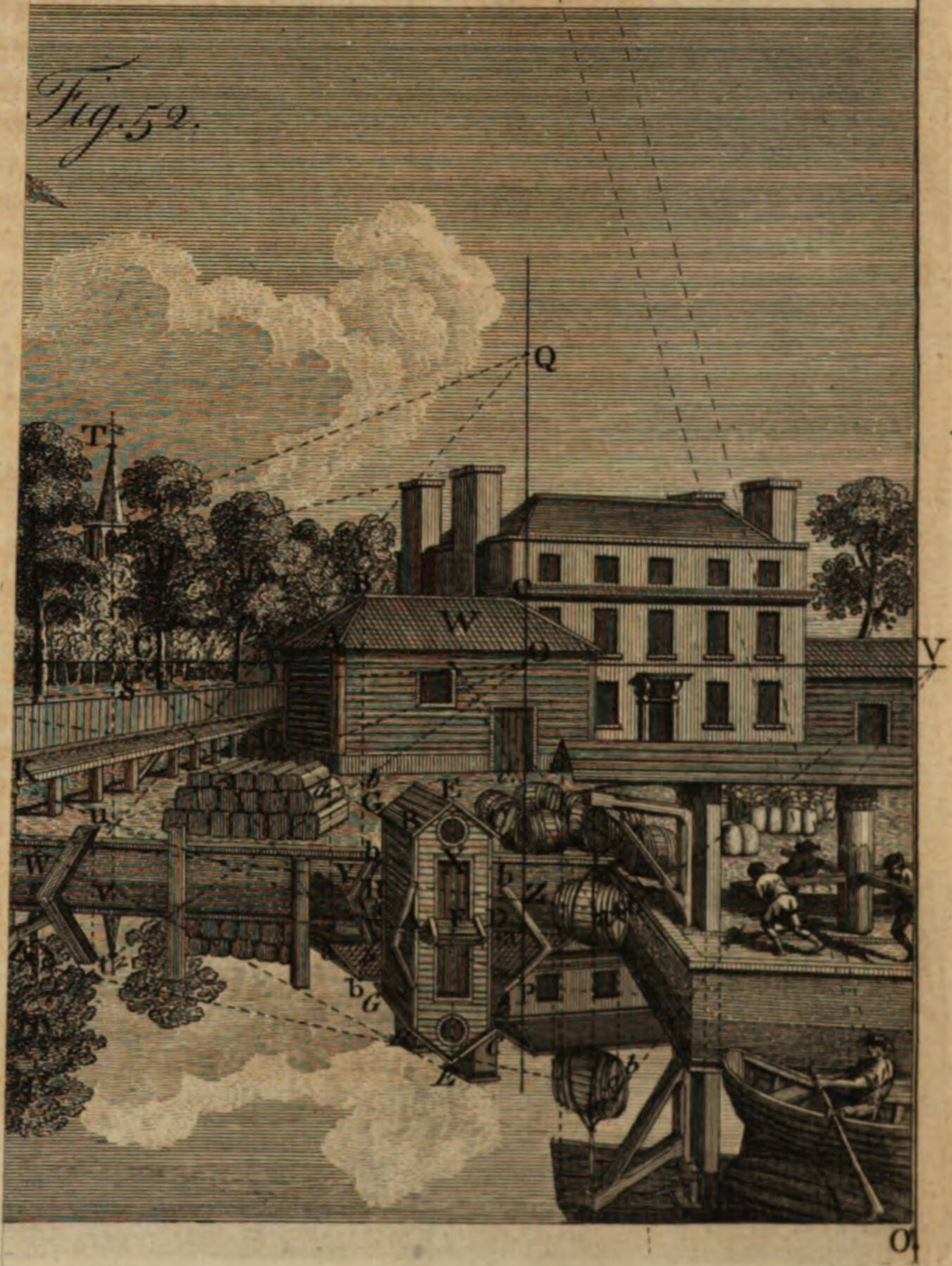


Fig. 52.



The history of the United States is a story of growth and change. From the first settlers to the present day, the nation has evolved through various stages of development. The early years were marked by exploration and the establishment of colonies. The American Revolution led to the birth of a new nation, one that was founded on the principles of liberty and democracy. The years following the Revolution were a period of rapid growth and expansion. The nation's territory increased significantly, and its population grew steadily. The Industrial Revolution brought about profound changes in the way people lived and worked. Factories and cities emerged, and the standard of living improved. However, this period also saw the rise of sectionalism and the eventual outbreak of the Civil War. The war was a turning point in the nation's history, as it resolved the issue of slavery and reinforced the principle of federalism. In the years following the Civil War, the nation continued to grow and develop. The Reconstruction era was a period of great challenge and opportunity. The nation sought to rebuild itself and to ensure that the principles of liberty and democracy were firmly established. The years following Reconstruction were a period of relative stability and growth. The nation's economy flourished, and its influence in the world grew. However, the nation also faced new challenges, such as the rise of the Progressive Movement and the eventual outbreak of World War I. The war was a global conflict that tested the nation's resources and its commitment to its principles. The years following the war were a period of great change and uncertainty. The nation sought to rebuild itself and to ensure that the principles of liberty and democracy were firmly established. The years following the war were a period of relative stability and growth. The nation's economy flourished, and its influence in the world grew. However, the nation also faced new challenges, such as the rise of the Progressive Movement and the eventual outbreak of World War I. The war was a global conflict that tested the nation's resources and its commitment to its principles. The years following the war were a period of great change and uncertainty. The nation sought to rebuild itself and to ensure that the principles of liberty and democracy were firmly established.

the Plane (X) was more inclined to the Light; or, being removed, and no other reflecting Surface near, there would be no Reflection on the Column, in this position of the Light, save what is received obliquely, from the Ground.

Respecting plane Surfaces. We frequently see (in Prints and Drawings) the shaded face of a Pedestal, &c. very dark, at the hither edge, and gradated towards the other, so, as to give it the appearance of concavity; which cannot be, when no other Object is near. But, when one part of an Object projects from the other, as the Plane X from Z, the Plane Z, being much opposed to a strong Light, and consequently the Shadow of the Plane X, on Z, is very narrow; then, the Light, reflected from Z to X, will be strongest where it joins to Z, and gradually lessened, towards the other edge; but not in so extravagant a degree, as may be seen in various Prints; particularly in Mr. Kirby's Perspective of Architecture.

Now, the reason for this is extremely obvious; because, the vicinity of the part which joins to Z, is greater than the more remote; and consequently, the reflected Light is more languid on the remote parts. But, if the Light was very oblique on Z, so as to cast a great breadth of Shadow, on the Plane X; in that Case, the Light reflected, to the Plane X, will be more faint; insomuch that, there is barely a distinction between the Shadow, and the Object occasioning that Shadow; which there always should be, in some degree, the Shadow being darkest. Because it receives little or no advantage from Reflection, which the Object does.

In respect of Mouldings; the edge of the Facia, AB, being in full Light, casts its Shadow on the Cavetto below; consequently the Light, from below, is reflected again on the Mouldings; and the Ovolo, which otherwise would be darkest at the bottom, is reversed, the Shade being strongest on the upper part. On the returning Moulding; the under Facia or Planceer (BC) by means of Reflection, from below, is brighter than the vertical Facia, over it; also the vertical Face of each Fillet &c. is darker than the horizontal; which in other Cases, having the Light directly on them, is consequently brighter.

In a Nich (see Plate 43.) the Shadow is strongest at the edge or outline, and gradually softened towards that edge of the Nich, which occasions the Shadow; owing to the strong Reflection from the other Side, on which the Light falls, direct.

The Shade (without Sun-shine) on a convex or concave half Cylinder is the same; each may be the other, by supposing the Light on either Hand.

More may be said in respect of reflected Light; but, if the Observations I have made be well attended to, it will be found sufficient, for any purpose whatever.

Of the reflected Images of Objects on Water, and polished Surfaces.

The Reflections of Objects on the Surface of still Water gives (where Water is represented) transparency to the Water, and perfection to the Picture; which, if well managed, has a pleasing effect.

It is obvious, whether by means of Rays of Light, reflected to and again, from the Object to the Water, and from thence to the Eye, or otherwise, that, if AD be the Surface of Water (or a polished Mirrour) and AB, an Object, standing erect, we shall see the Image of the Point B, on the Water, at b (the Eye being at E) where the Right Lines, drawn from B and E to the Water, at b, make equal Angles with its Surface. Consequently, if Eb be produced, meeting BA, produced, at B, BA, equal AB, is the apparent place of the Object, which appears on the Surface of the Water. Hence it is manifest, that the Image of the Object AB, represented on the Surface of the Water (and which, in real length, is Ab) is represented equal to the Object itself. For, it is evident, the Point A is common to both, and because B, appears at B, it appears just as much within the Water, as its real place is from the Water viz. AB equal AB, and AC equal AC, &c.

Hence we have an unerring Rule, for representing the reflected Images of Objects on polished Surfaces. But it must be observed, that, if the Object be at some distance, beyond the Water, the measure of the Object must be applied from its Seat, on the Plane of the Surface of the Water, not from the Water edge, as when it is in the Water or close to it. Also, that the Image represented on the Water, is not

4 B

similar

Fig. 51

Plate XLVI. similar to the Representation of the Object, on the Picture, which I shall shew; except when a plane Figure only is represented, parallel to the Picture.

E X A M P L E S.

- Fig. 52. Let X be an Object in the Water, having one Face, X, parallel to the Picture.
- No. 1. Produce the Sides, BA and CD, making AB and CD respectively equal to them; also, make the perpendicular EF equal to EF, and join BE and CE; i. e. make the Figure AED similar to AED, inverted, from the Line AD where the Surface of the Water cuts the Object. The Image of the Door, &c, is also similar. For the Face AG, being perpendicular to the Picture, the horizontal Line, BG, vanishes in the Center, C; wherefore, BG being parallel to the Water, its Image will be parallel to the Line, and consequently, it has the same Vanishing Point. Draw BC, meeting GH, produced at G, which compleats the Image of that Face, and which, it is obvious, is not similar to the Representation ABGH. Likewise, a side of the Roof is represented in the Object, which it is manifest cannot be seen in the Water, by Reflection.
- No. 2. The Piles, which are perpendicular, have their Images also equal, each to the Representation; likewise, the Pile W is reflected equal, and equally inclined, being parallel to the Picture. But, being otherwise inclined, as Y and Z, one hanging towards, the other from the Picture, the Seats of their tops, on the Surface of the Water, being determined, at a, produce the Perpendicular ba, making ab equal to ab, and draw from b, to the Timbers, where they are cut by the Surface. The Vanishing Point of the reflected Image is at the same distance on the other side of the horizontal Line, as that of the Object, whether it be above or below it.
- No. 3. The Image of the Bridge, on the Water, may be obtained after the same manner, in respect of the Piers. The images of all horizontal Lines tend to the same Point, in the horizontal Vanishing Line, as the Representations; for, Right Lines, being parallel to the Surface of the Water, their Images have the same Vanishing Points, respectively. The Images of the inclined Lines (IK &c. at the Top) are got by means of Perpendiculars at each extreme of the Line; or by their Vanishing Point (Q) which is always at the same distance from the Horizontal Line, on the contrary Side, as that of the Representation (at P). For the Arches; draw as many perpendicular Lines, a b, c d &c. as are necessary, and produce them in the Water; making each equal to its corresponding one, ab equal ab, &c. by which means, as many Points, in the Curve, as you please, may be obtained, and the image of the Arch described through them.
- No. 4. The Crane &c, on the Wharf, hanging over the Water, has its Image reflected, by means of perpendicular Lines from each part, and finding their Seats on the Surface of the Water, repeating the same measure downwards. For the Hoghead; draw as many Lines (representing lines parallel to the Horizon) as are necessary, tending to the Vanishing Point V of the horizontal Diameter a b; then, by means of perpendiculars from each extreme of those Lines, their Images are acquired, and the curve of the Head described through them. If other Lines are drawn, from one head to the other, to the Vanishing Point of its Axe (X) the whole Image may be described, as in the Figure.
- No. 5. The Warehouses, &c. standing from the front of the Wharf, have their reflected Images described as the other Objects; by supposing the Surface of the Water produced, and the Seat of each perpendicular Line determined thereon; as A, B, C, of the corners of the Warehouse W; which are made equal, downward, from their Seats, (a, b, c,) respectively, and the horizontal Lines have the same Vanishing Points.
- No. 6. The Spire of the Church, at T, is reflected on the Water; because, its Seat S, on the level of the Water, being obtained, the height, ST, being applied downward reaches the Water, otherwise it would not. Thus much may suffice, for Reflection on a horizontal Surface; which is the same, whether it be a clear Fluid (as Water) or other plane Mirrour.

SECONDLY. Of Reflection in Mirrours, vertical or inclined.

Let W be a Mirrour, parallel to the Picture, whose center is S ; and X , an Object, whose reflected Image is required. Fig. 53.

In this Case, it must be observed, (as in the former) that the Image, of any Point in an Object, is reflected to, the same distance from its Seat on the Mirrour, as the Point from its Seat; so, that distance is, here, represented, and its Seat obtained, respectively; and, because the reflecting Surface is parallel to the Picture, the Center is, consequently, the Vanishing Point of Lines perpendicular thereto.

Draw Lines, from the Feet, A , D , &c. of the Object to S ; and, where they cut the Intersection of the Mirrour with the Floor, at a , d , &c. make a represent a length equal Aa , &c. and draw ab &c. perpendicular; then, BS and CS , cutting those Perpendiculars, respectively, give their reflected Images. For, as every Object appears to be as far on the other side, as it really is on this side, from the Mirrour; consequently, in this Case, it must be so perspectively.

The reflected Images of horizontal Lines, as the rails of the Chair, &c. (in this Case) tend to a Vanishing Point in the Horizontal Line, at the same distance from the Center of the Picture, on the contrary side, as the Vanishing Point of the Representation. If V be the Vanishing Point of BC , the front Rail; then, SY being made equal to SV , Y in the Vanishing Point of bc , the reflected Image of BC .

In a vertical Mirrour, inclined to the Picture there is no difference in the process, but only in the Vanishing Point; and, if the Vanishing Point of Perpendiculars to the Mirrour be determined, 'tis the same in all inclinations.

Let Z be a Mirrour inclined to the Horizon, and casually inclined to the Picture. Fig. 54.

It is required to find the reflected Image of the Chair X , on the Mirrour Z .

V being the Vanishing Point of the bottom of the Mirrour, which is horizontal, find the Vanishing Line, VL , of the Mirrour, its inclination to the Horizon being known (Prob. 5. Sect. 3.) and also, the Vanishing Point F , of Lines perpendicular to the Mirrour (Prob. 2. Sect. 12.) Then, having found the Intersection (CD) of the Mirrour with the Floor, produced, and G , the Vanishing Point of Perpendiculars thereto, draw AG , DG , &c. cutting CD , at A , D , &c. and through them, draw from L , the Vanishing Point of the sides of the Mirrour, indefinite.

Draw AF , DF , &c. cutting them, respectively, in the corresponding Points, a , d , &c. (their Seats on the Mirrour) beyond which, their Images are represented equal, in Perspective; by making a represent an equal measure as A , &c.

Find the Vanishing Point (O) of the Image of AB , &c. i. e. of Lines making a known Angle with the Mirrour. Draw Oa , Od , &c. indefinite and BG , CG , &c. cutting them in their respective Images on the Mirrour.

And thus, as many Points (as e , of E) may be determined as occasion requires, from their Seats on the Floor; by which means, the reflected Image of any Object, whatever, may be represented on the Mirrour; as the Cage, hanging from the Ceiling, &c. or the Door, &c. on the opposite side of the Room.

Of Keeping; or the effect of Distance.

The Term, Keeping, in the Art of Painting, in general, is used to signify a just and proper subordination of all the parts of a Picture to the principal Object; in respect of Magnitude, Colour and distinctness of Parts.

The magnitudes of Objects, in respect of each other, perspectively, are various, according to the Station from which they are viewed; and consequently, the subordination of Colour, &c. is not in proportion to the Objects, but to their Distance from the Eye. It is absolutely impossible to lie down Rules, by which the Artist may, with certainty, produce the desired effect; seeing that, in hazy or foggy weather, or in a misty morning, &c. Objects are less distinct, at a short Distance, than, in a clear Day, at a much greater; wherefore, no proportion or degree can be determined. If Objects, of known magnitude, appear not to be far distant, in the Picture, and yet, their parts not distinctly defined, in comparison of others, in the Fore-ground; it implies, that the Air is more gross and hazy, than if the parts were more perfect.

Keeping

Keeping is, in a great measure, synonymous with Aereal Perspective; which signifies a diminution of Light, Colour, and distinctness of the parts of Objects, in a regular gradation, as linear Perspective of Magnitude; owing to the effect of Air, between the Eye and the Object; which, being a Medium, obstructs the sight, in some degree, at any Distance; consequently, as there must be a greater quantity of Air between the Eye and distant Objects than near ones, so their parts are less discernable; the Lights and Shades are insensibly mixed, and, at a great Distance, it is all a confused jumble, of Light, Shade, and Colour, without distinction.

Fig. 50

No. 2.

It is customary with many, in delineating, and may frequently be seen in Architectural Designs, &c. to make a considerable difference, in Teint, between one plane Surface and another; when the one, in the Original Object, recedes but a few Inches, which is absurd; for, if that sudden gradation of effect was continued to the distance of a few Yards, it would become totally black, before it was possible for the Air to have any apparent effect on it. Now it is far from being so in Nature, which is obvious to any Eye; for, if the materials are clean, and of an even and uniform Colour (without which no judgment can be made) I will venture to affirm, that two Plane Surfaces (V and Y) parallel between themselves, at several Feet distance from each other, and having a full Light on them, cannot be distinguished one from the other, nor so much as the Line or Edge (AD) seen, at a proper distance for delineating; provided the Light be not (on this Side) so very oblique (as at S, No. 3.) as to shade the other, beyond where the Line BC cuts it. I say, the Eye being so situated (at E) that the Angle C, appears to cut the receding Plane, at B, they will appear as one continued Surface. Nevertheless, it may be necessary, in delineating, to make a distinction, in proportion to the Distance; but, if the Plane V has Mouldings, &c. on it, being cut, apparently, by the edge of the other, the Line is sufficiently defined without it.

As it must be obvious, that no positive Rule can be prescribed, I shall just give an Example or two, and conclude the Subject; and with it, the Book.

In respect of Magnitude; it is evident, that Objects may appear, in Perspective, to have any proportion to each other, although not greatly distant. For Example; in Plate 27, of Chelsea College, the farthest Building, with a Pediment, is not above two eleventh parts of the hither one (to which it is equal) in height; and yet it does not offend the Eye, nor appear at too great a Distance. But, if the gradation of Light was in proportion, it would be too great; because, not merely the height is to be considered, but the square of the height, which would reduce it to the proportion of thirty to one; but where we shall fix the standard for unity, I am at a loss to devise.

Now, if we were at twice the Distance from the hither Building (the distance between the two Objects being about twice that) the proportion of one to the other, would not be much greater than one to three; the gradation of Light, in that case, would be nearly as one to ten, but one third part of the former. Yet, I presume, that in two Pictures so delineated, it would not be advisable to make that difference in the effect of Aereal Perspective.

In short, as it is absolutely impossible to fix any criterion to determine the Ratio of the gradation of Light and the effect of Distance, but must ever be at the discretion of the Artist, I shall only observe, that the Objects in the Fore-ground, as the hither end of the Bridge (Plate 46) being supposed near the Picture, must have its parts distinct and perfect, with strong Lights and Shades, which graduate to the other End. The Buildings on the Wharf, &c. are less perfect, each being less so, as it recedes from the Eye. The Church, at a Distance, the Trees and Hills, one beyond another, must consequently be less and less perfect, according to their Distance; till at last they are scarce distinguishable from the Sky. For all which, the Artist can have no other Rule, than carefully and judiciously to copy Nature (the best Mistress) which, in that Case, is not always uniform, but infinitely variable.

F I N I S.

The first of these is the fact that the light is not uniform in intensity. It is brighter in some directions than in others. This is due to the fact that the light is not emitted equally in all directions. The second is the fact that the light is not uniform in color. It is brighter in some colors than in others. This is due to the fact that the light is not emitted equally in all colors. The third is the fact that the light is not uniform in direction. It is brighter in some directions than in others. This is due to the fact that the light is not emitted equally in all directions.

The fourth is the fact that the light is not uniform in time. It is brighter in some times than in others. This is due to the fact that the light is not emitted equally in all times. The fifth is the fact that the light is not uniform in space. It is brighter in some spaces than in others. This is due to the fact that the light is not emitted equally in all spaces. The sixth is the fact that the light is not uniform in frequency. It is brighter in some frequencies than in others. This is due to the fact that the light is not emitted equally in all frequencies. The seventh is the fact that the light is not uniform in wavelength. It is brighter in some wavelengths than in others. This is due to the fact that the light is not emitted equally in all wavelengths. The eighth is the fact that the light is not uniform in amplitude. It is brighter in some amplitudes than in others. This is due to the fact that the light is not emitted equally in all amplitudes. The ninth is the fact that the light is not uniform in phase. It is brighter in some phases than in others. This is due to the fact that the light is not emitted equally in all phases. The tenth is the fact that the light is not uniform in polarization. It is brighter in some polarizations than in others. This is due to the fact that the light is not emitted equally in all polarizations.

